Workshop Manual

Audi A4 2015 ➤ , Audi A4 Avant 2015 ➤ , Audi A4 China 2016 ➤ , Audi A4 allroad quattro 2016 ➤ , Audi A5 2016 ➤ , Audi A5 Cabriolet 2017 ➤ , Audi A5 Sportback 2017 ➤

General body repairs, exterior

Edition 04.2019

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Repair Group

00 - Technical data
50 - Body - front
55 - Bonnet, rear lid
57 - Front doors, door components, central locking
58 - Rear doors, door components
60 - Sunroof
61 - Convertible roof, hardtop, canopy
63 - Bumpers
64 - Glazing
66 - Exterior equipment

Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.

All rights reserved.
No reproduction without prior agreement from publisher.

Copyright © 2019 Audi AG, Ingolstadt

D4B80593892

Contents

00 - Technical data 1
1 Safety precautions 1
1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system 1
1.2 Safety precautions when using testers and measuring instruments during a road test 1
1.3 Safety precautions when working on the convertible roof 1
1.4 Safety precautions when working on the cooling system 2
1.5 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with natural gas systems 2
2 Repair notes 4
2.1 Routing and attaching lines and wiring 4
2.2 Contact corrosion 4
2.3 Self-locking bolts 4
2.4 Rules for cleanliness 4
2.5 Identification plates 5

50 - Body - front 6
1 Lock carrier 6
1.1 Exploded view - lock carrier 6
1.2 Exploded view - actuator 8
1.3 Removing and installing lock carrier 9
1.4 Removing and installing bracket for bumper cover 14
1.5 Removing and installing spring element for bracket for bumper cover 15
1.6 Removing and installing actuator 16
2 Wing 18
2.1 Exploded view - wing 18
2.2 Exploded view - wing covers 20
2.3 Exploded view - repair set for wing 21
2.4 Removing and installing wing 21
2.5 Removing and installing wing panel brace 23
2.6 Removing and installing connecting piece and wing panel brace (outside) 26
2.7 Removing and installing cover (front) for wing 29
2.8 Removing and installing cover (rear) for wing 30
2.9 Removing and installing closure plate 31
3 Bulkhead 32
3.1 Exploded view - plenum chamber partition panel 32
3.2 Exploded view - plenum chamber cover 33
3.3 Removing and installing plenum chamber partition panel 33
3.4 Removing and installing plenum chamber cover 35
3.5 Removing and installing cover (side) for plenum chamber cover 35

55 - Bonnet, rear lid 37
1 Bonnet 37
1.1 Exploded view - bonnet 37
1.2 Exploded view - insulation and impact guard on bonnet 39
1.3 Exploded view - Bowden cable 39
1.4 Removing and installing bonnet 41
1.5 Adjusting bonnet 42
1.6 Removing and installing hinges 47
1.7 Resetting hinge 48
1.8 Removing and installing striker 48
1.9 Removing and installing gas strut 49
1.10 Releasing gas from gas strut 49
1.11 Removing and installing insulation 50
1.12 Removing and installing impact guard 50

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.13 Removing and installing Bowden cable . . . 51
1.14 Removing and installing bonnet lock . . . 53
1.15 Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet lock . . . 54
1.16 Removing and installing operating lever for arrester . . . 54
1.17 Removing and installing mounting bracket for operating lever for bonnet lock . . . 55
1.18 Removing and installing mounting bracket with Bowden cable for operating lever for arrester . . . 55
2 Rear lid . . . 56
2.1 Exploded view - rear lid . . . 56
2.2 Exploded view - rear lid power opening . . . 66
2.3 Removing and installing rear lid . . . 70
2.4 Adjusting rear lid . . . 74
2.5 Removing and installing handle trim . . . 84
2.6 Removing and installing hinges . . . 85
2.7 Removing and installing mounting for gas strut . . . 87
2.8 Removing and installing rear lid seal . . . 88
2.9 Removing and installing roof frame cover . . . 89
2.10 Removing and installing adjusting buffers . . . 93
2.11 Removing and installing stop for adjusting buffer . . . 94
2.12 Removing and installing gas strut . . . 95
2.13 Releasing gas from gas strut . . . 95
2.14 Removing and installing extension spring . . . 95
2.15 Removing and installing rear lid lock . . . 96
2.16 Removing and installing cable for rear lid lock . . . 97
2.17 Removing and installing lock cylinder . . . 98
2.18 Removing and installing striker . . . 98
2.19 Removing and installing power latching motor for rear lid V382 . . . 99
2.20 Removing and installing Bowden cable for power latching system . . . 99
2.21 Removing and installing motor for rear lid V444 / V445 . . . 100
2.22 Adapting motor for rear lid V444 / V445 . . . 102
2.23 Removing and installing rear lid control unit J605 . . . 103
2.24 Removing and installing rear lid power opening control unit J938 . . . 104
2.25 Removing and installing rear lid power opening senders G750 / G760 . . . 105
3 Tank flap unit . . . 107
3.1 Exploded view - tank flap unit . . . 107
3.2 Removing and installing tank flap unit . . . 107
3.3 Removing and installing trim panel for tank flap . . . 109
3.4 Removing and installing drain hose for tank flap unit . . . 109
3.5 Removing and installing manual release cable . . . 110
4 Convertible roof compartment lid . . . 111
4.1 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid . . . 111
4.2 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment lid . . . 114
4.3 Adjusting convertible roof compartment lid . . . 116
4.4 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment seal . . . 120
4.5 Removing and installing mounting for outer convertible roof compartment seal . . . 120
4.6 Removing and installing hinge for convertible roof compartment lid . . . 121
4.7 Removing and installing adjusting buffer . . . 121
4.8 Removing and installing stop buffer . . . 121
4.9 Removing and installing striker . . . 122
4.10 Removing and installing lock unit for convertible roof compartment lid . . . 122
4.11 Removing and installing trim for convertible roof compartment lid . . . 123
57 - Front doors, door components, central locking . . . 124
1 Door . . . 124
1.1 Exploded view - door . . . 124
1.2 Exploded view - door seals . . . 126

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Removing and installing door . . . 130
1.4 Adjusting door . . . 130
1.5 Removing and installing door arrester . . . 136
1.6 Removing and installing inner door seal . . . 137
1.7 Removing and installing retainer for inner door seal . . . 140
1.8 Removing and installing door seal for roof trim strip . . . 142
1.9 Removing and installing door seal at A-pillar . . . 143
1.10 Removing and installing outer door seal . . . 143
2 Door components . . . 149
2.1 Exploded view - window regulator . . . 149
2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock . . . 150
2.3 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips . . . 153
2.4 Removing and installing window regulator . . . 155
2.5 Removing and installing window regulator motor . . . 157
2.6 Removing and installing door handle . . . 158
2.7 Removing and installing door handle trim . . . 158
2.8 Removing and installing trim strip for door handle . . . 160
2.9 Removing and installing mounting bracket . . . 160
2.10 Removing and installing operating cable for exterior door handle . . . 161
2.11 Removing and installing lock cylinder . . . 162
2.12 Removing and installing housing . . . 162
2.13 Removing and installing door lock . . . 162
2.14 Removing and installing cover for door lock . . . 163
2.15 Removing and installing striker . . . 164
2.16 Removing and installing operating cable for interior door handle . . . 164
2.17 Removing and installing inner door cover . . . 165
2.18 Removing and installing window guide . . . 166
2.19 Removing and installing guide rail for door window . . . 167
2.20 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip . . . 167
2.21 Removing and installing outer window slot trim strip . . . 169
3 Central locking system . . . 172
3.1 Overview of fitting locations - central locking system . . . 172
3.2 Removing and installing driver door control unit J386 and front passenger door control unit J387 . . . 175
3.3 Removing and installing rear left door control unit J388 and rear right door control unit J389 . . . 175
3.4 Removing and installing convenience system central control unit J393 . . . 176
3.5 Removing and installing bonnet contact switch F266 . . . 177
3.6 Removing and installing tank filler flap locking motor V155 . . . 178

58 - Rear doors, door components . . . 179
1 Door . . . 179
1.1 Exploded view - door . . . 179
1.2 Exploded view - door seals . . . 183
1.3 Removing and installing door . . . 185
1.4 Adjusting door . . . 185
1.5 Removing and installing door arrester . . . 191
1.6 Removing and installing inner door seal . . . 192
1.7 Removing and installing retainer for inner door seal . . . 194
1.8 Removing and installing outer door seal . . . 195
2 Door components . . . 201
2.1 Exploded view - window regulator . . . 201
2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock . . . 205
2.3 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips . . . 208
2.4 Removing and installing window regulator . . . 210
2.5 Removing and installing mounting for side window . . . 214

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.6 Removing and installing window regulator motor . . . 215
2.7 Removing and installing door handle . . . 216
2.8 Removing and installing door handle trim . . . 217
2.9 Removing and installing trim strip for door handle . . . 218
2.10 Removing and installing mounting bracket . . . 218
2.11 Removing and installing operating cable for exterior door handle . . . 220
2.12 Removing and installing housing . . . 221
2.13 Removing and installing door lock . . . 221
2.14 Removing and installing striker . . . 222
2.15 Removing and installing operating cable for interior door handle . . . 222
2.16 Removing and installing inner door cover . . . 222
2.17 Removing and installing window guide . . . 224
2.18 Removing and installing guide rail for door window . . . 224
2.19 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip . . . 225
2.20 Removing and installing outer window slot trim strip . . . 228

60 - Sunroof . . . 231

1 Repair notes . . . 231
1.1 Minimum drying times for bonded sunroofs . . . 231
1.2 Tools and materials required for installation and removal . . . 231
1.3 Preparing new glass trim for installation . . . 233
1.4 Preparing a new sunroof frame for installation . . . 235
1.5 Preparing body flange for installation . . . 236
1.6 Cleaning off adhesive sealant . . . 237

2 Sliding sunroof . . . 238
2.1 Exploded view - sliding sunroof . . . 238
2.2 Exploded view - adhesive beads on sliding sunroof . . . 247
2.3 Exploded view - sunroof sun blind . . . 251
2.4 Exploded view - wind deflector . . . 255
2.5 Removing and installing sunroof frame . . . 258
2.6 Removing and installing drain pipe . . . 272
2.7 Removing and installing glass trim . . . 273
2.8 Removing and installing glass panel . . . 275
2.9 Adjusting glass panel . . . 277
2.10 Removing and installing sliding sunroof adjustment control unit J245 . . . 282
2.11 Adapting sliding sunroof adjustment control unit J245 . . . 284
2.12 Removing and installing sliding sunroof motor V1 . . . 284
2.13 Adapting sliding sunroof motor V1 . . . 285
2.14 Removing and installing bellows . . . 286
2.15 Removing and installing rubber strip . . . 286
2.16 Removing and installing side trim . . . 287
2.17 Removing and installing slide/tilt mechanism . . . 287
2.18 Removing and installing sunroof seals . . . 289
2.19 Removing and installing sunroof sun blind . . . 293
2.20 Removing and installing sunroof roller blind motor V260 . . . 301
2.21 Adapting sunroof roller blind motor V260 . . . 303
2.22 Removing and installing sun blind . . . 303
2.23 Removing and installing slide . . . 304
2.24 Removing and installing wind deflector . . . 305
2.25 Removing and installing mounting for wind deflector . . . 308
2.26 Removing and installing spring for wind deflector . . . 310
2.27 Opening manually . . . 310

3 Water drain hoses . . . 311
3.1 Overview - water drain hoses . . . 311
3.2 Cleaning water drain hoses . . . 314
3.3 Removing and installing water drain hoses . . . 315

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

61 - Convertible roof, hardtop, canopy 320
1 Convertible roof 320
1.1 Exploded view - convertible roof 320
1.2 Exploded view - convertible roof frame 321
1.3 Exploded view - main mounting for convertible roof 323
1.4 Exploded view - locking mechanism for convertible roof 324
1.5 Removing and installing convertible roof 325
1.6 Removing and installing retaining plate for convertible roof 327
1.7 Removing and installing convertible roof locking mechanism 327
1.8 Removing and installing convertible roof locking element 328
1.9 Removing and installing mounting with convertible roof lock motor V223 328
1.10 Service position of convertible roof and convertible roof compartment lid 329
1.11 Manual operation 330
2 Convertible roof cover 331
2.1 Exploded view - convertible roof cover and convertible roof headliner 331
2.2 Exploded view - tensioning cables and control cables for convertible roof cover 332
2.3 Exploded view - tensioning cables and control cables for convertible roof headliner 333
2.4 Exploded view - tensioning and control cable repair kit 334
2.5 Removing and installing convertible roof cover 337
2.6 Removing and installing convertible roof headliner 341
2.7 Removing and installing tensioning cable for convertible roof cover 344
2.8 Removing and installing tensioning cable for rear window operating lever 347
2.9 Procedure for repairing tensioning and control cables 348
3 Attachments 351
3.1 Exploded view - convertible roof seals 351
3.2 Exploded view - convertible roof trim 353
3.3 Exploded view - convertible roof frame attachments 354
3.4 Removing and installing convertible roof seals 354
3.5 Removing and installing convertible roof trim 357
3.6 Removing and installing connecting rod 358
3.7 Removing and installing damper 358
3.8 Removing and installing mounting for interior light (rear) 359
3.9 Removing and installing rear window operating lever 360
4 Hydraulic system 361
4.1 Overview of fitting locations - hydraulic system 361
4.2 Exploded view - hydraulic system 362
4.3 Exploded view - hydraulic pump 363
4.4 Removing and installing hydraulic pump 365
4.5 Removing and installing hydraulic pump with hydraulic cylinders 365
4.6 Removing and installing hydraulic pump motor 368
4.7 Removing and installing hydraulic cylinders 370
4.8 Removing and installing hydraulic line 371
4.9 Checking fluid level in hydraulic system 373
4.10 Filling and bleeding the hydraulic system 374
5 Electrical and electronic components 377
5.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components 377
5.2 Removing and installing convertible roof actuation control unit J256 381
5.3 Removing and installing convertible roof latch open switch F294 / convertible roof latch closed switch F295 382
5.4 Removing and installing convertible roof stowed switch F171 / convertible roof front switch F202 382
5.5 Removing and installing tensioning strut top switch F408 / tensioning strut stowed switch, left F419 383
5.6 Removing and installing tensioning strut intermediate position switch F518 / tensioning strut stowed switch, right F420 385

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.7 Removing and installing convertible roof box lid open switch F407 . . . 387
5.8 Removing and installing rear ultrasonic sensor for passenger compartment monitoring system G981 / G982 . . . 388

63 - Bumpers . . . 390

1 Bumper (front) . . . 391
1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover . . . 391
1.2 Exploded view - reflector . . . 400
1.3 Exploded view - covers and air ducts . . . 401
1.4 Exploded view - impact bar . . . 402
1.5 Removing and installing bumper cover . . . 403
1.6 Adjusting bumper cover . . . 405
1.7 Removing and installing bumper cover (side section) . . . 406
1.8 Removing and installing bumper cover mounting . . . 406
1.9 Removing and installing cover for headlight washer jet . . . 407
1.10 Removing and installing air intake grille (centre) . . . 407
1.11 Removing and installing air intake grille (side) . . . 410
1.12 Removing and installing trim for air intake grille (side) . . . 411
1.13 Removing and installing trim for air duct . . . 412
1.14 Removing and installing air intake grille (side, bottom) . . . 412
1.15 Removing and installing air duct . . . 412
1.16 Removing and installing front spoiler . . . 415
1.17 Removing and installing spoiler (bottom section) . . . 416
1.18 Removing and installing trim strip . . . 417
1.19 Removing and installing underbody guard . . . 418
1.20 Removing and installing closure plate for bumper cover . . . 419
1.21 Removing and installing reflector . . . 420
1.22 Removing and installing lock carrier cover . . . 421
1.23 Removing and installing impact bar . . . 422
1.24 Removing and installing moulded foam insert . . . 425
1.25 Removing and installing mounting for moulded foam insert . . . 426

2 Bumper (rear) . . . 428
2.1 Exploded view - bumper cover . . . 428
2.2 Exploded view - bumper cover mounting . . . 440
2.3 Exploded view - impact bar . . . 441
2.4 Removing and installing bumper cover . . . 444
2.5 Removing and installing bumper cover (top section) . . . 446
2.6 Removing and installing bumper cover (bottom section) . . . 446
2.7 Removing and installing base plate for bumper cover . . . 448
2.8 Removing and installing bumper cover mounting . . . 450
2.9 Removing and installing closure plate . . . 451
2.10 Removing and installing trim strip for bumper cover . . . 452
2.11 Removing and installing bumper cover trim . . . 456
2.12 Removing and installing tailpipe trim . . . 458
2.13 Removing and installing reflectors . . . 459
2.14 Removing and installing impact bar . . . 460

64 - Glazing . . . 463

1 Repair notes . . . 463
1.1 Minimum drying times for bonded windows . . . 463
1.2 Repairing windows . . . 463
1.3 Tools and materials required for installation and removal . . . 464
1.4 Preparing undamaged windows for installation . . . 467
1.5 Preparing new windows for installation . . . 468
1.6 Preparing body flange for installation . . . 469
1.7 Cleaning off adhesive sealant . . . 469

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Windscreen . . . 471
2.1 Exploded view - windscreen . . . 471
2.2 Removing and installing windscreen . . . 473
3 Rear window . . . 479
3.1 Exploded view - rear window . . . 479
3.2 Removing and installing rear window . . . 481
4 Side windows . . . 499
4.1 Exploded view - rear side window . . . 499
4.2 Removing and installing rear side window . . . 505
4.3 Adjusting rear side window . . . 515
5 Door windows . . . 522
5.1 Exploded view - front door window . . . 522
5.2 Exploded view - rear door window . . . 524
5.3 Removing and installing front door window . . . 526
5.4 Adjusting front door window . . . 528
5.5 Removing and installing rear door window . . . 540
5.6 Adjusting rear door window . . . 543

66 - Exterior equipment . . . 549

1 Radiator grille/front trim panel . . . 549
1.1 Exploded view - radiator grille . . . 549
1.2 Removing and installing radiator grille . . . 552
1.3 Preparing a new radiator grille for installation . . . 553
1.4 Removing and installing closure plate . . . 553
1.5 Removing and installing number plate holder . . . 554
1.6 Removing and installing mounting bracket for front parking aid sender . . . 554
2 Spoilers . . . 556
2.1 Exploded view - spoilers . . . 556
2.2 Removing and installing spoilers . . . 558
2.3 Removing and installing spoiler (side) . . . 566
3 Strips / trim panels / extensions . . . 569
3.1 Exploded view - trim strip and covers . . . 569
3.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim . . . 576
3.3 Exploded view - side member trim . . . 577
3.4 Exploded view - water deflector strip . . . 581
3.5 Exploded view - trim panel for A-pillar . . . 582
3.6 Exploded view - trim panel for B-pillar . . . 583
3.7 Exploded view - trim panel for C-pillar . . . 585
3.8 Exploded view - wheel arch covers . . . 586
3.9 Removing and installing trim strip . . . 587
3.10 Removing and installing wing trim panel . . . 595
3.11 Removing and installing side panel trim . . . 596
3.12 Removing and installing cover . . . 597
3.13 Adjustment dimensions for covers . . . 600
3.14 Removing and installing sill panel trim . . . 601
3.15 Removing and installing side member trim . . . 603
3.16 Removing and installing bracket for side member trim . . . 612
3.17 Removing and installing mounting . . . 612
3.18 Removing and installing fastening strip for side member trim . . . 612
3.19 Removing and installing trim strip for side member trim . . . 614
3.20 Removing and installing water deflector strip . . . 616
3.21 Removing and installing trim panel for A-pillar . . . 617
3.22 Removing and installing trim panel for B-pillar on door . . . 618
3.23 Removing and installing trim panel for B-pillar . . . 619
3.24 Removing and installing trim panel for C-pillar on door . . . 620

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.25 Removing and installing wheel arch covers . . . 621
4 Noise insulation . . . 627
4.1 Exploded view - noise insulation . . . 627
4.2 Removing and installing noise insulation . . . 630
5 Underbody trim . . . 632
5.1 Exploded view - underbody trim . . . 632
5.2 Exploded view - underbody struts . . . 634
5.3 Removing and installing underbody trim (front) . . . 638
5.4 Removing and installing underbody trim for tunnel . . . 638
5.5 Removing and installing underbody trim (centre) . . . 638
5.6 Removing and installing underbody trim (rear) . . . 639
5.7 Removing and installing underbody trim for spare wheel . . . 641
5.8 Removing and installing underbody trim (side) . . . 641
5.9 Removing and installing tunnel cross-piece . . . 642
5.10 Removing and installing diagonal struts . . . 642
5.11 Removing and installing underbody guard . . . 644
6 Roof strips / roof rails . . . 645
6.1 Exploded view - roof rail . . . 645
6.2 Removing and installing roof rail . . . 646
6.3 Removing and installing compensation element . . . 646
7 Exterior mirrors . . . 648
7.1 Exploded view - exterior mirror . . . 648
7.2 Removing and installing exterior mirror . . . 649
7.3 Removing and installing mirror glass . . . 650
7.4 Removing and installing mirror adjustment unit . . . 652
7.5 Removing and installing cover for mirror . . . 652
7.6 Removing and installing mirror trim . . . 652
8 Wheel housing liners . . . 654
8.1 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (front) . . . 654
8.2 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (rear) . . . 658
8.3 Removing and installing wheel housing liner (front) . . . 658
8.4 Removing and installing wheel spoiler (front) . . . 659
8.5 Removing and installing drive shaft cover . . . 660
8.6 Removing and installing wheel housing liner (rear) . . . 660
8.7 Removing and installing spoiler for spare wheel well . . . 661
9 Model badges and brand emblems . . . 662
9.1 Exploded view - model badges and brand emblems . . . 662
9.2 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on rear . . . 663
9.3 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on side . . . 667
9.4 General notes on renewing model badges and brand emblems . . . 669
9.5 Renewing model badges and brand emblems on side . . . 670
9.6 Removing and installing model badges and emblems for radiator grille . . . 672
10 Towing bracket . . . 675
10.1 Exploded view - towing bracket . . . 675
10.2 Removing and installing trailer detector control unit J345 . . . 676
10.3 Removing and installing trailer articulation angle sensor G820 . . . 676
11 Heat shields . . . 678
11.1 Overview of fitting locations - heat shields . . . 678
11.2 Exploded view - heat shields . . . 680
11.3 Removing and installing heat shield on bonnet . . . 684
11.4 Removing and installing heat shield (front) for longitudinal member . . . 685
11.5 Removing and installing heat shield (rear) for longitudinal member . . . 686
11.6 Removing and installing heat shield for plenum chamber partition panel . . . 686
11.7 Removing and installing heat shield (top front) for tunnel . . . 687

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

11.8 Removing and installing heat shield for tunnel (gearbox) 689
11.9 Removing and installing heat shield for propshaft 690
11.10 Removing and installing heat shield for exhaust system (centre) 690
11.11 Removing and installing heat shield for spare wheel well 692
11.12 Removing and installing heat shield for rear silencer 692

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

00 – Technical data

1 Safety precautions

(ARL006339; Edition 04.2019)

⇒ “1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system”, page 1

⇒ “1.2 Safety precautions when using testers and measuring instruments during a road test”, page 1

⇒ “1.3 Safety precautions when working on the convertible roof”, page 1

⇒ “1.4 Safety precautions when working on the cooling system”, page 2

⇒ “1.5 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with natural gas systems”, page 2

1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system

Risk of injury - engine may start unexpectedly

The engine can start unexpectedly if the vehicle's start/stop system is activated. A message in the instrument cluster indicates whether the start/stop system is activated.

– To deactivate the start/stop system, switch off the ignition.

1.2 Safety precautions when using testers and measuring instruments during a road test

Risk of injury if test equipment is not secured

If an accident occurs and the front passenger's airbag is triggered, test equipment which is not secured adequately may be catapulted through the vehicle with potentially serious consequences.

– Secure test equipment on the rear seat.

Or:

– Have a second mechanic operate test equipment on the rear seat.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Safety precautions when working on the convertible roof

Risk of accident if convertible roof opens suddenly

If the convertible roof is not locked in position properly, there is a risk of it being opened suddenly by the air stream while driving.

– Only drive the vehicle with the convertible roof fully open or fully closed.

1.4 Safety precautions when working on the cooling system

Risk of scalding as hot coolant can escape

The cooling system is under pressure when the power unit is hot.
Risk of scalding due to hot steam and hot coolant.

– Put on protective gloves.

– Put on safety goggles.

– Cover filler cap on expansion tank with a cloth and open carefully to release pressure.

1.5 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with natural gas systems

Risk of explosion due to uncontrolled gas escape in connection with ignition sources and electrostatic discharge - risk of death!

Danger of severe or fatal injuries due to explosion.

– Never drive a vehicle with a natural gas system into the workshop if you can clearly hear gas escaping. Instead, park the vehicle outside and set up a protected area ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Fuel tanks; Setting up and marking a protected area .

– Work on natural gas systems may only be performed by specially trained persons ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 00 ; Safety briefing/employee qualification .

– Gas tank must be closed manually on vehicles with natural gas systems if gas can be heard escaping and smelt ⇒ Fuel supply system - g-tron; Rep. gr. 20 ; Fuel tanks; Closing fuel tank shut-off valves mechanically .

Danger to life and risk of explosion due to ignition sources

Risk of explosion due to ignition sources near natural gas systems - risk of death! Escaping natural gas may ignite and cause an explosion. Danger of severe or fatal injuries due to explosion.

– Keep any ignition sources away from the vicinity of natural gas systems.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Risk of explosion due to flammable natural gas - risk of death!

Risk of explosion due to static discharge near natural gas systems - risk of death! Escaping natural gas may ignite and cause an explosion. Danger of severe or fatal injuries due to explosion.

– Wear protective clothing consisting of at least 35% cotton.

– Wear protective gloves consisting of at least 35% cotton.

– Wear safety shoes with ESD protection.

Risk of injury due to high pressure

Uncontrolled gas escape may occur under high pressure. Danger of frostbite to hands and other parts of the body.

– Dissipate high pressure in natural gas system before performing work on natural gas system ⇒ Fuel supply system - g-tron; Rep. gr. 20 ; Fuel tanks; Dissipating pressure in natural gas high-pressure pipe .
– Check for leaks after performing work on the natural gas system.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Repair notes

⇒ “2.1 Routing and attaching lines and wiring”, page 4

⇒ “2.2 Contact corrosion”, page 4

⇒ “2.3 Self-locking bolts”, page 4

⇒ “2.4 Rules for cleanliness”, page 4

⇒ “2.5 Identification plates”, page 5

2.1 Routing and attaching lines and wiring

Make sketches or take photographs when unfastening or removing and installing hydraulic and pneumatic lines or electrical wires. This ensures that you can re-install them at the original location.

This document is protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2 Contact corrosion

Contact corrosion can occur if unsuitable fasteners are used (e.g. bolts, nuts, washers, etc.).

For this reason, only fasteners with a special surface coating are fitted.

In addition, all rubber or plastic parts and all adhesives are made of non-conductive materials.

Always install new parts as listed in the Electronic parts catalogue if you are not sure whether used parts can be refitted.

Please note:

- We recommend using only genuine replacement parts: these have been fully tested and are compatible with aluminium.
- We recommend using Audi Genuine Accessories.
- Damage caused by contact corrosion is not covered by the warranty.

2.3 Self-locking bolts

If bolts secured with microencapsulation have been removed, they must be renewed, and the threaded holes must be cleaned with a suitable tap.

2.4 Rules for cleanliness

Even small quantities of dirt can lead to defects. Therefore it is important to observe the following rules for cleanliness when working on the hydraulic system:

- Hydraulic fluid damages the paintwork. For this reason it is important to immediately remove any hydraulic fluid from painted surfaces.
- To dissipate the residual pressure, wrap a clean cloth around the connection point and unfasten the connection carefully to prevent hydraulic fluid from coming into contact with painted surfaces.
- Clean connections and surrounding area thoroughly with engine cleaner or brake cleaner and dry cleaned area before loosening.
- Immediately seal open lines and connections with clean plugs, e.g. from engine bung set - VAS 6122- .
- After removal, place parts on a clean surface and cover them. Only use lint-free cloths.

- Carefully cover or seal open components if repairs cannot be carried out immediately.
- Only install clean components; replacement parts should only be unpacked immediately prior to installation. Never use parts which have not been stored in their packaging (e.g. which have been stored in tool boxes etc.).
- Do not work with compressed air when the system is open. If possible, do not move vehicle.
- Protect unplugged electrical connectors against dirt and moisture and make sure connections are dry when attaching.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5 Identification plates

When renewing vehicle components, the identification plates on the old parts that have a replacement part number (see ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue) must be attached to the new parts due to approval regulations.

50 – Body - front

1 Lock carrier

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - lock carrier”, page 6

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - actuator”, page 8

⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing lock carrier”, page 9

⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing bracket for bumper cover”, page 14

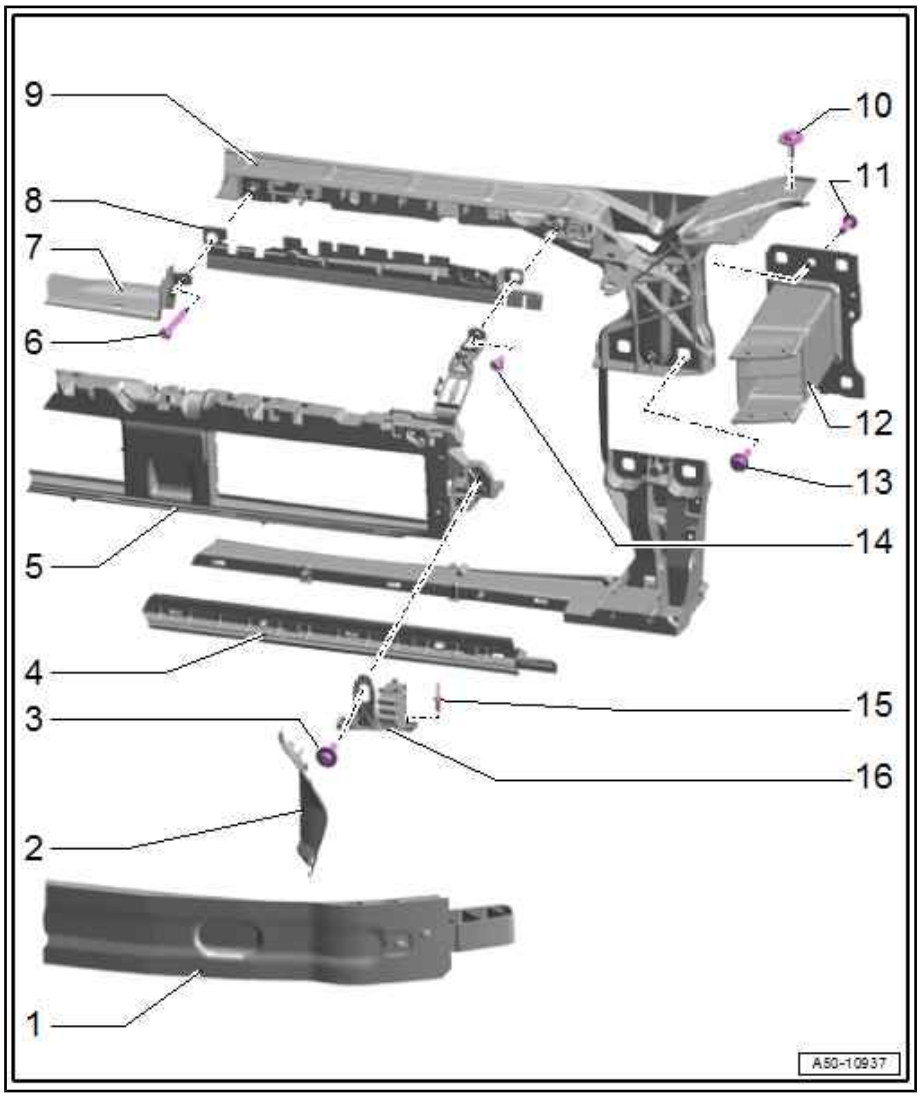
⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing spring element for bracket for bumper cover”, page 15

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing actuator”, page 16

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1 Exploded view - lock carrier

◆ Exploded view - actuator ⇒ page 8



1 - Impact bar
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 402

2 - Air duct
- ❑ Clipped into bracket for bumper cover

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 8 Nm

4 - Air duct (bottom)
- ❑ For radiator

5 - Bracket for bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 14

6 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 23 ; Air cleaner; Exploded view - air cleaner housing or ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 24 ; Air cleaner; Exploded view - air cleaner housing

7 - Air duct
- ❑ For air cleaner housing
- ❑ Remove any salt deposits or dirt

8 - Air duct (top)
- ❑ For radiator

9 - Lock carrier
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 9

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 10 Nm

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 14 Nm

12 - Mounting

- ❑ For impact bar

13 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 6 (page 402)

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 5 Nm

15 - Pop rivet

- ❑ 2x

16 - Spring element

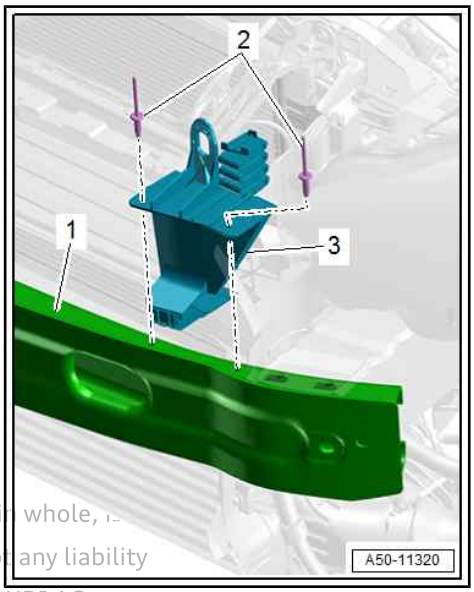
- ❑ For bracket for bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 15
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 46

Spring element for bracket for bumper cover - country-specific version

1 - Impact bar

2 - Pop rivet: 2x

3 - Support with spring element for bracket for bumper cover (removing and installing ⇒ page 15 ; adjusting ⇒ page 46)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

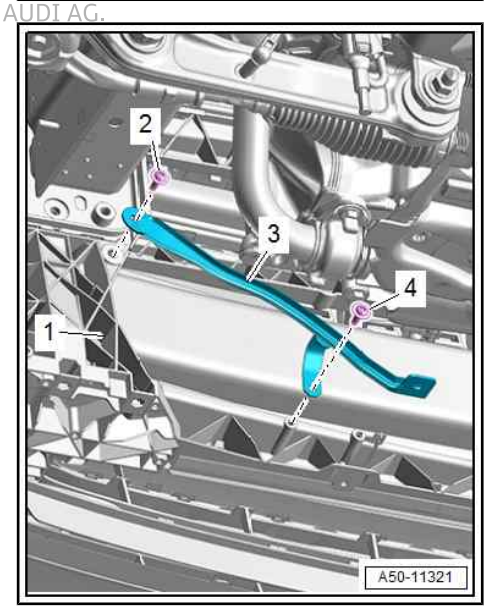
Retaining piece for noise insulation (front) - A5 Cabriolet

1 - Lock carrier

2 - Bolt: 8 Nm

3 - Retaining piece

4 - Bolt: 4.5 Nm



1.2 Exploded view - actuator

⇒ “1.2.1 Exploded view - actuator”, page 8

⇒ “1.2.2 Exploded view - actuator, country-specific version”, page 9

1.2.1 Exploded view - actuator

1 - Damper weight

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 16

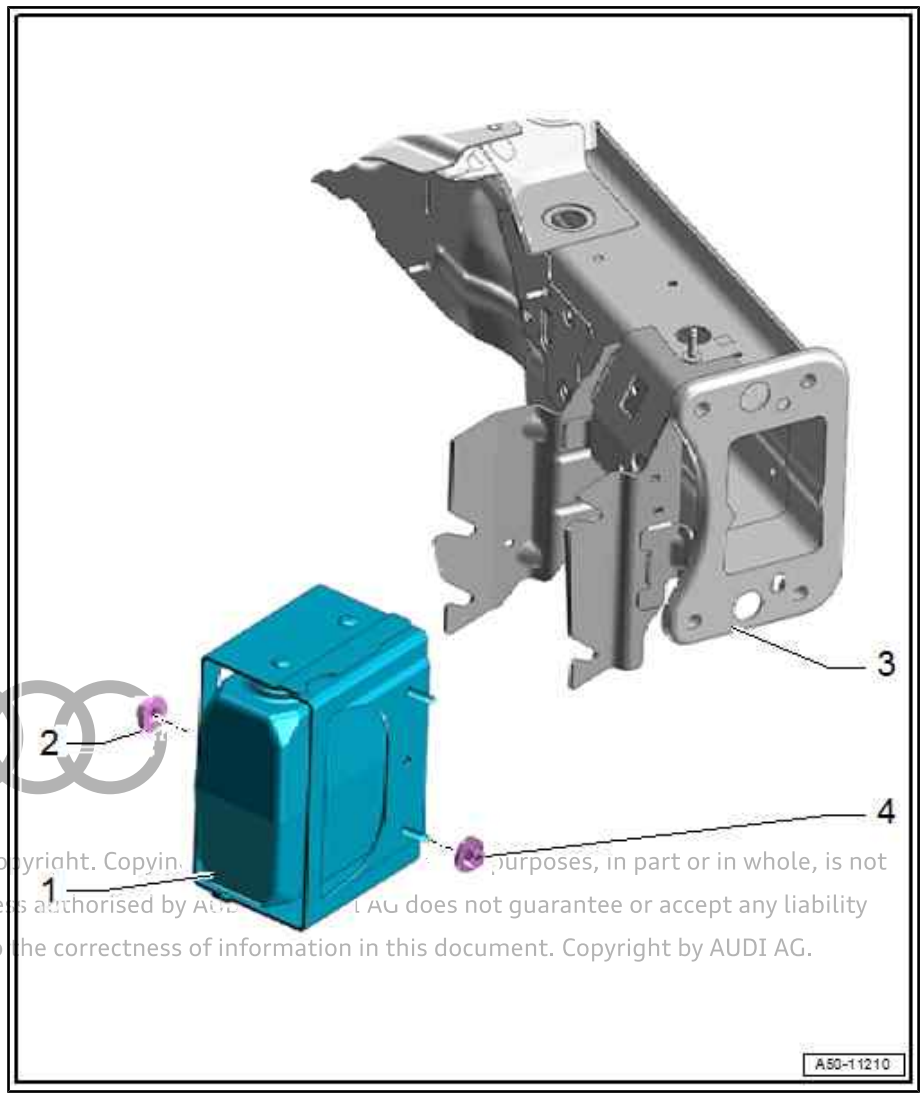
2 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 24 Nm

3 - Longitudinal member (left-side)

4 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 24 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copyin... ...urposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unles... ...t AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2.2 Exploded view - actuator, country-specific version

1 - Wheel actuator
- ❑ Right-side

2 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 20 Nm

3 - Wheel actuator
- ❑ Left-side

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 8 Nm

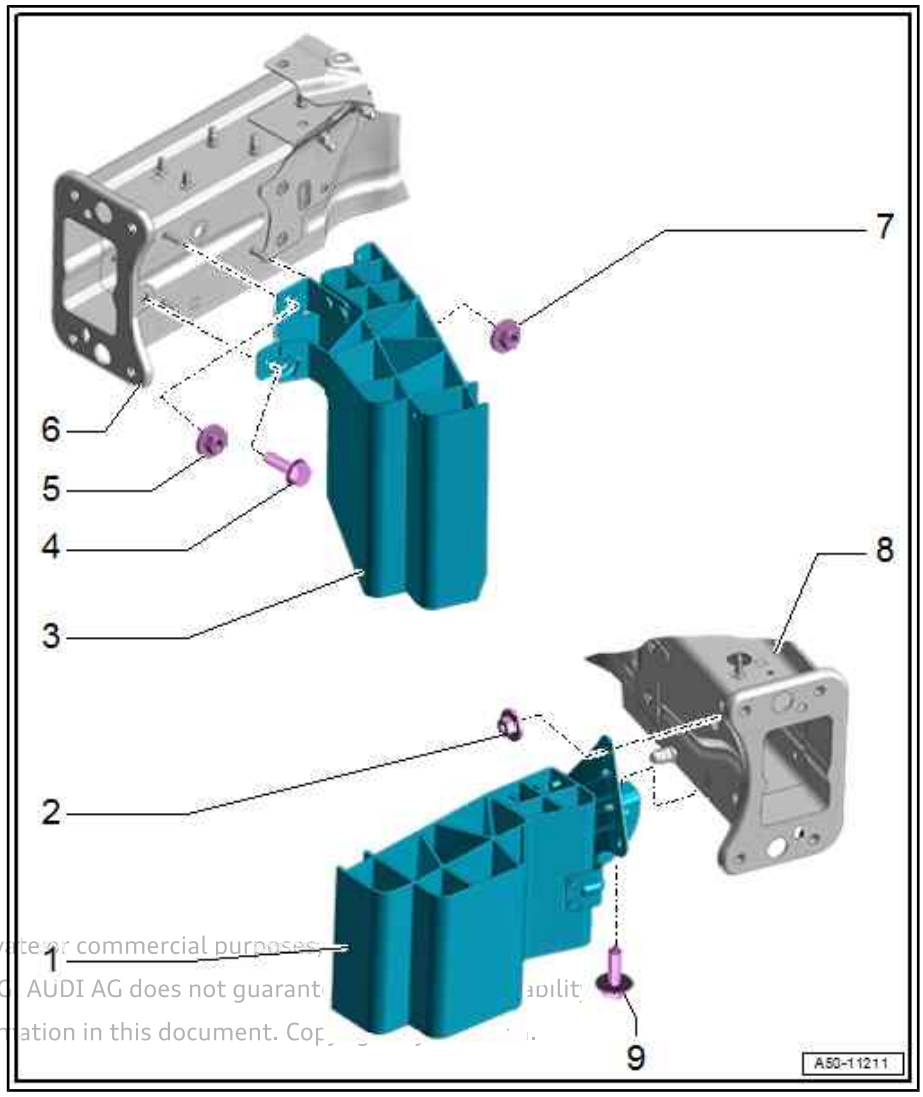
5 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

6 - Longitudinal member
- ❑ Left-side

7 - Nut
- ❑ 8 Nm

8 - Longitudinal member
- ❑ Right-side

9 - Bolt
- ❑ 20 Nm



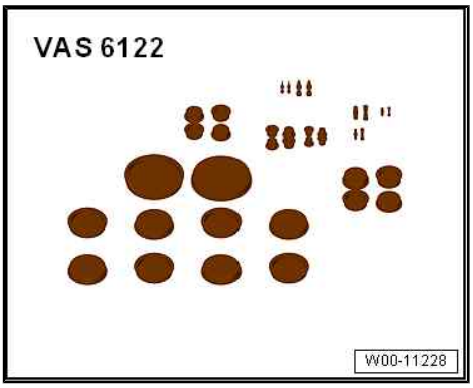
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, ... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarant... apilit... with respect to the correctness of inform...ation in this document. Cop...

1.3 Removing and installing lock carrier

- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 14).

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Engine bung set - VAS 6122-



Removing

– Remove noise insulation ⇒ page 630 .

– Remove bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 403 .

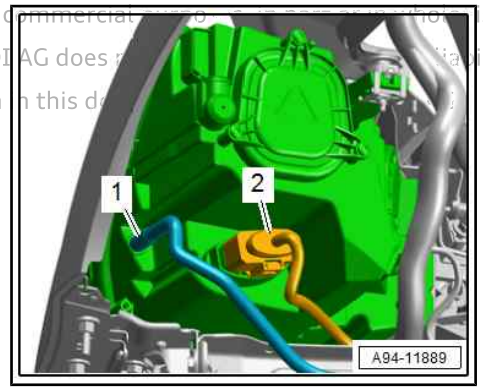
– RS 4, RS 5: Discharge refrigerant circuit ⇒ Air conditioner with refrigerant R134a; Rep. gr. 87 ; Refrigerant circuit / ⇒ Air conditioners with refrigerant R1234yf - General information; Rep. gr. 87 ; Working with the air conditioner service station; Discharging refrigerant circuit .

– Remove bumper cover mounting ⇒ page 406 .

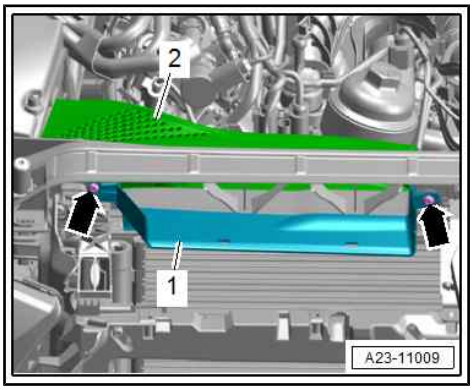
– Unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Disconnect breather hose -1-.

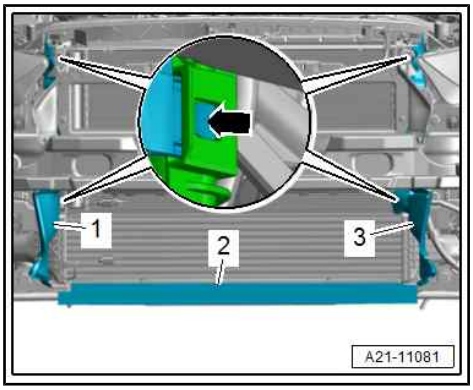
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach air ducts -1, 2-.



– A4, A5: On left side, release catches -arrow- and detach air duct -3-.

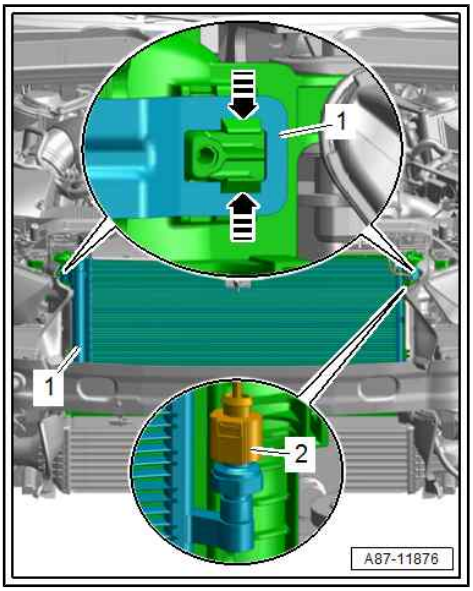


– Unplug electrical connector -2- for high-pressure sender - G65- .

NOTICE

Danger of irreparable damage to refrigerant lines if the inside film is torn.

– **Never bend refrigerant lines which have a radius smaller than r = 100 mm.**



– A4, A5: Release fasteners (left and right) -arrows-, disengage condenser -1- at radiator and tie up to one side.

– RS 4, RS 5: Detach refrigerant lines from condenser ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Refrigerant circuit; Removing and installing condenser .

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

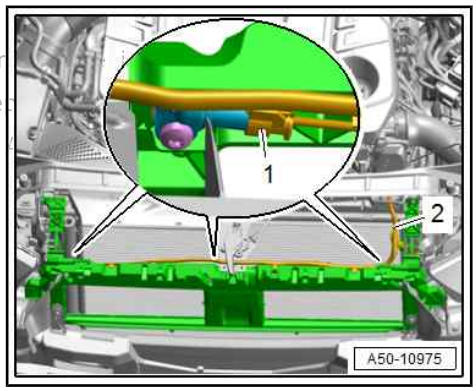
Risk of injury

– **Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or acce
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by

– Vehicles with pedestrian protection: Unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor for pedestrian protection and move electrical wiring harness -2- clear.

– If necessary, remove air cleaner housing: vehicles with TDI engine ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 23 ; Air cleaner; Removing and installing air cleaner housing ; vehicles with TFSI engine ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 24 ; Air cleaner; Removing and installing air cleaner housing .

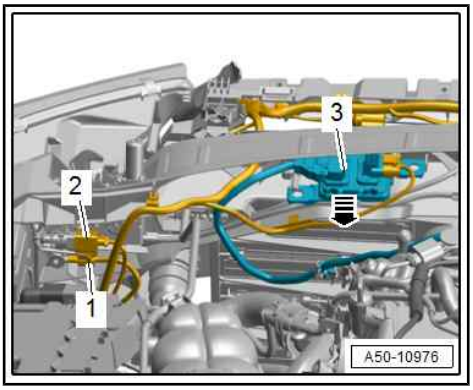


– If fitted, release fastener -arrow-, detach control unit for NOx sender - J583- -item 3- and move clear.

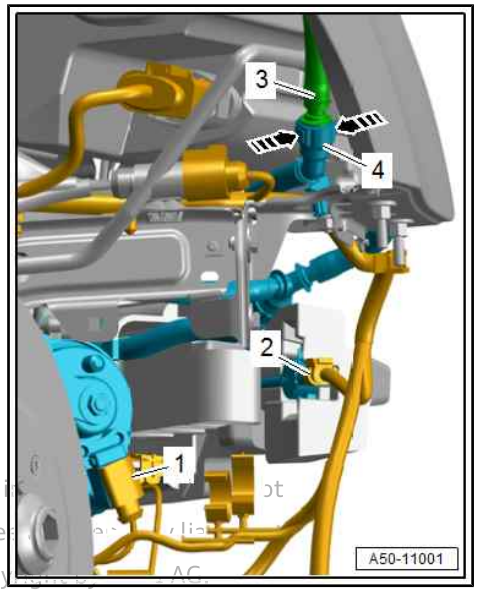
– Detach Bowden cable for bonnet lock at coupling unit and move clear at lock carrier ⇒ page 39 .

– Unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor for pedestrian protection and move electrical wiring harness clear.

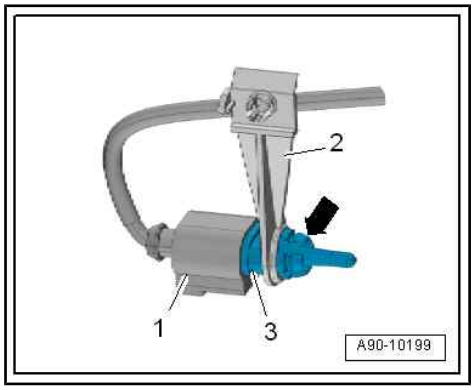


– Unplug electrical connector -1- and move wiring harness clear.
– If fitted, press release tabs -arrows- and disconnect washer fluid hose -3- (place a drip tray underneath connection point).
– Move fluid hose -4- clear.
– Unplug electrical connector -2- at crash sensor for pedestrian protection.
– If fitted, unscrew bolt at lock carrier (right-side) and press coolant distributor to one side.



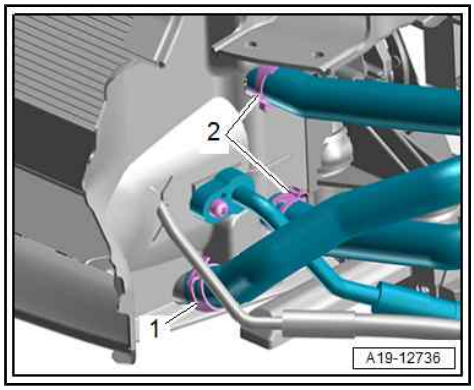
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug electrical connector -1- at ambient temperature sensor - G17- -item 3- and move wiring harness clear.
– Drain coolant ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 19 ; Cooling system/coolant; Draining and filling cooling system .
– Disconnect coolant hoses from radiator ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 19 ; Radiator/radiator fans; Removing and installing radiator .
– Equipment version with charge air cooler (with air cooling): Disconnect air pipe from charge air cooler ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 21 ; Charge air system; Removing and installing charge air cooler .
– Equipment version with water radiator for charge air cooling circuit: Disconnect coolant hoses from water radiator for charge air cooling circuit and move them clear ⇒ 4-cylinder direct injection engine (1.4 ltr. 4-valve TFSI, EA 211); Rep. gr. 19 ; Radiator/radiator fans; Removing and installing water radiator for charge air cooling circuit .

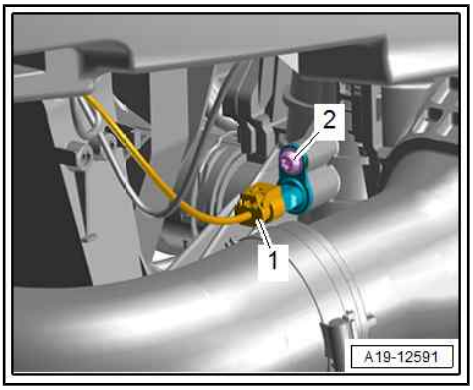


RS 4, RS 5:

– Place collector tank from coolant collecting system -VAS 5014- or drip tray for workshop hoist - VAS 6208- underneath.
– Release hose clip -1- on both sides and detach coolant hose.
– Release hose clips -2, 3- and disconnect coolant hoses.



Continued:



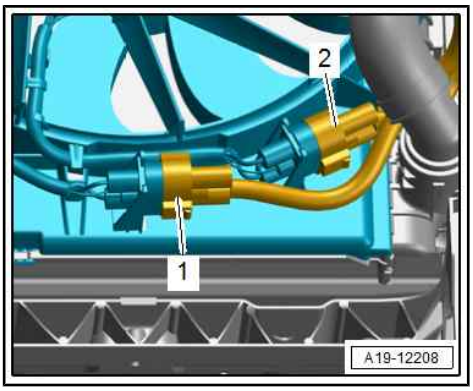
– If fitted, unplug electrical connector -1- for radiator outlet coolant temperature sender - G83- .

CAUTION

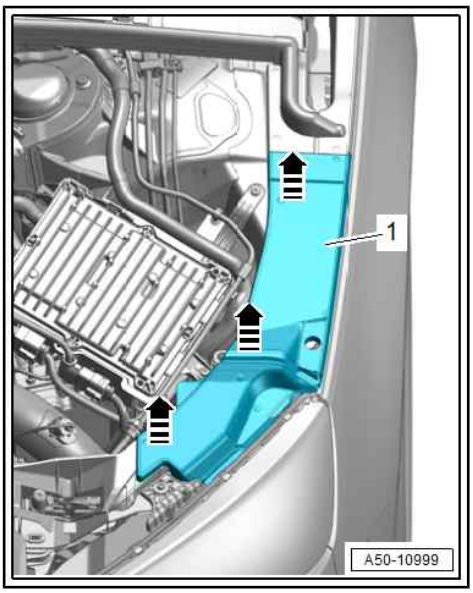
Risk of injury as the radiator fan(s) may start up automatically.

– Unplug electrical connectors.

– Unplug electrical connectors -1 and 2- for radiator fans.

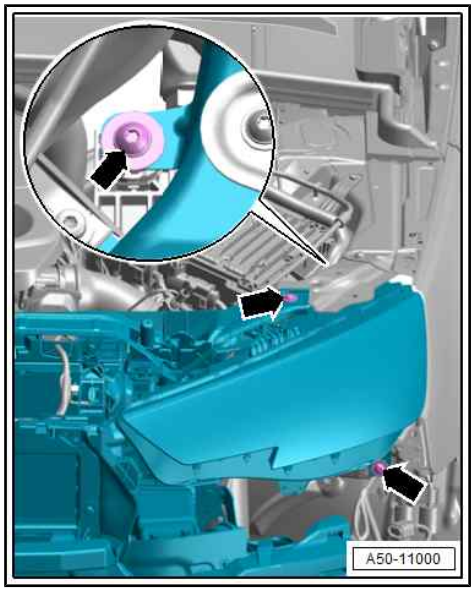


– If fitted, pry off cover -1- -arrows-.

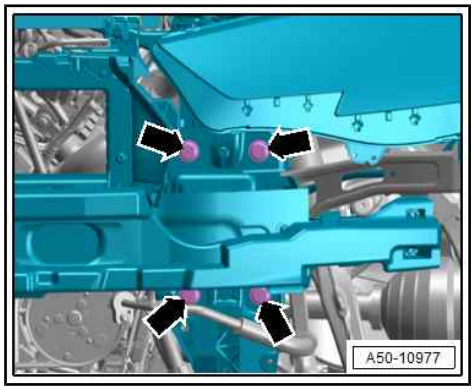


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolts -arrows-.



– Have a second mechanic hold lock carrier in position and unscrew bolts -arrows-.



– Detach lock carrier with the help of a second mechanic.
– If lock carrier is to be renewed, also remove the following components:

♦ Radiator ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 19 ; Radiator/radiator fans; Removing and installing radiator
♦ Charge air cooler (with air cooling) ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 21 ; Charge air system; Removing and installing charge air cooler
♦ Water radiator for charge air cooling circuit ⇒ 4-cylinder direct injection engine (1.4 ltr. 4-valve TFSI, EA 211); Rep. gr. 19 ; Radiator/radiator fans; Removing and installing water radiator for charge air cooling circuit .
♦ Headlights ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Headlights; Removing and installing headlights
♦ Impact bar ⇒ page 422
♦ Bonnet lock ⇒ page 53

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Fill up with coolant ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 19 ; Cooling system/coolant; Draining and filling cooling system .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - lock carrier”, page 6

1.4 Removing and installing bracket for bumper cover

Removing

– Remove impact bar ⇒ page 422 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

CAUTION

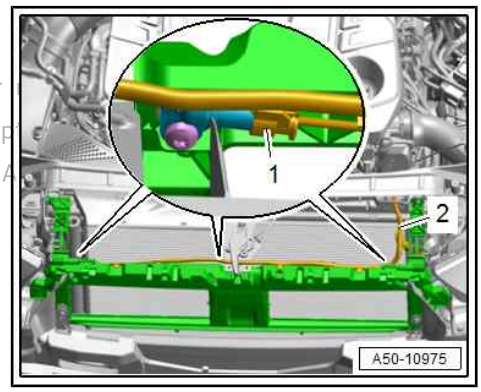
It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

- **Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.**

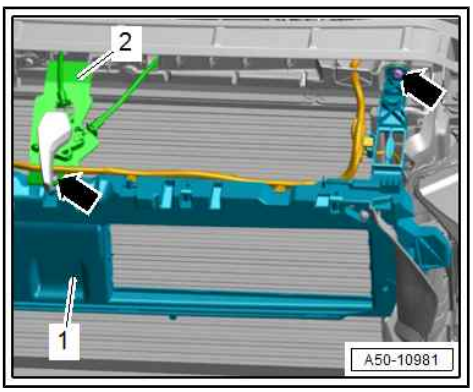
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accep
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by A

- Vehicles with pedestrian protection: Unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor for pedestrian protection and move electrical wiring harness -2- clear.



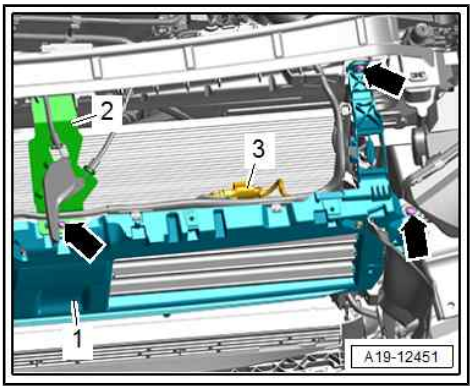
Vehicles without radiator blind:

- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Slide mounting bracket -2- with Bowden cable for operating lever for arrester towards lock carrier.
- Remove bracket for bumper cover -1- towards front.



Vehicles with radiator blind:

- Unplug electrical connector -3- and move it clear.
- Unscrew bolts -arrows- on left and right.
- Slide mounting bracket -2- with Bowden cable for operating lever for arrester towards lock carrier.
- Remove bracket for bumper cover -1- together with radiator blind towards front.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Press bracket downwards before tightening bolts.

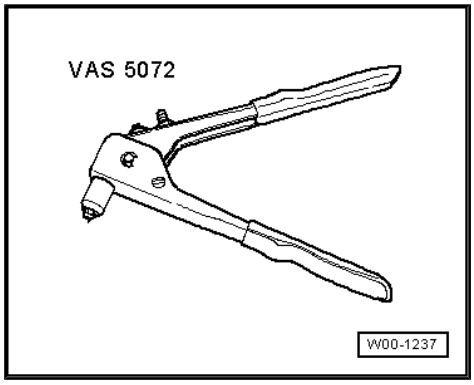
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - lock carrier”, page 6

1.5 Removing and installing spring element for bracket for bumper cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072A-



- Drill
- Pop rivet ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

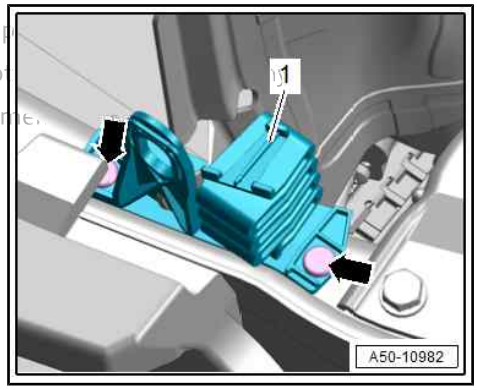
Removing

– Remove impact bar ⇒ page 422 .

CAUTION

Risk of injury caused by flying metal shavings.
Eyes and skin can suffer irritation or injuries.
– Put on safety goggles.
– Put on protective gloves.

– Drill off rivet heads -arrows-, drive out rivet stems and remove any remaining rivet pieces.



– Detach spring element -1- for bracket for bumper cover.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does no
with respect to the correctness of information in this docum

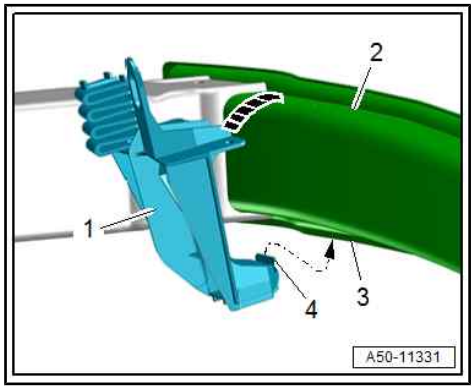
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Country-specific version:

– Engage support -1- with spring element at bottom of impact bar -2- and then swivel it upwards -arrow-.

• Tab -4- in support must engage at edge -3- of impact bar.



Continued:

– Secure spring element or support with spring element using rivets.

– Push spring element all the way down and tighten bolt.

– Adjust spring element ⇒ page 46 .

Tightening torques

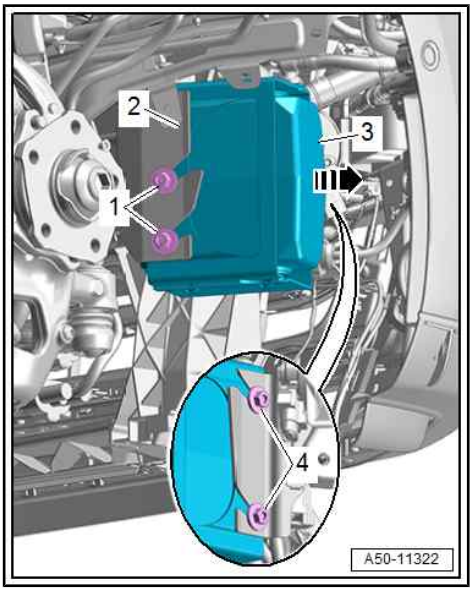
- ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - lock carrier”, page 6

1.6 Removing and installing actuator

Removing

– Remove wheel spoiler (front) ⇒ page 659 .

– Remove nuts -1, 4-.
– Guide damper weight -3- out of mounting -2- -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.2.1 Exploded view - actuator”, page 8

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Wing

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - wing”, page 18

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - wing covers”, page 20

⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - repair set for wing”, page 21

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing wing”, page 21

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing wing panel brace”, page 23

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing connecting piece and wing panel brace (outside)”, page 26

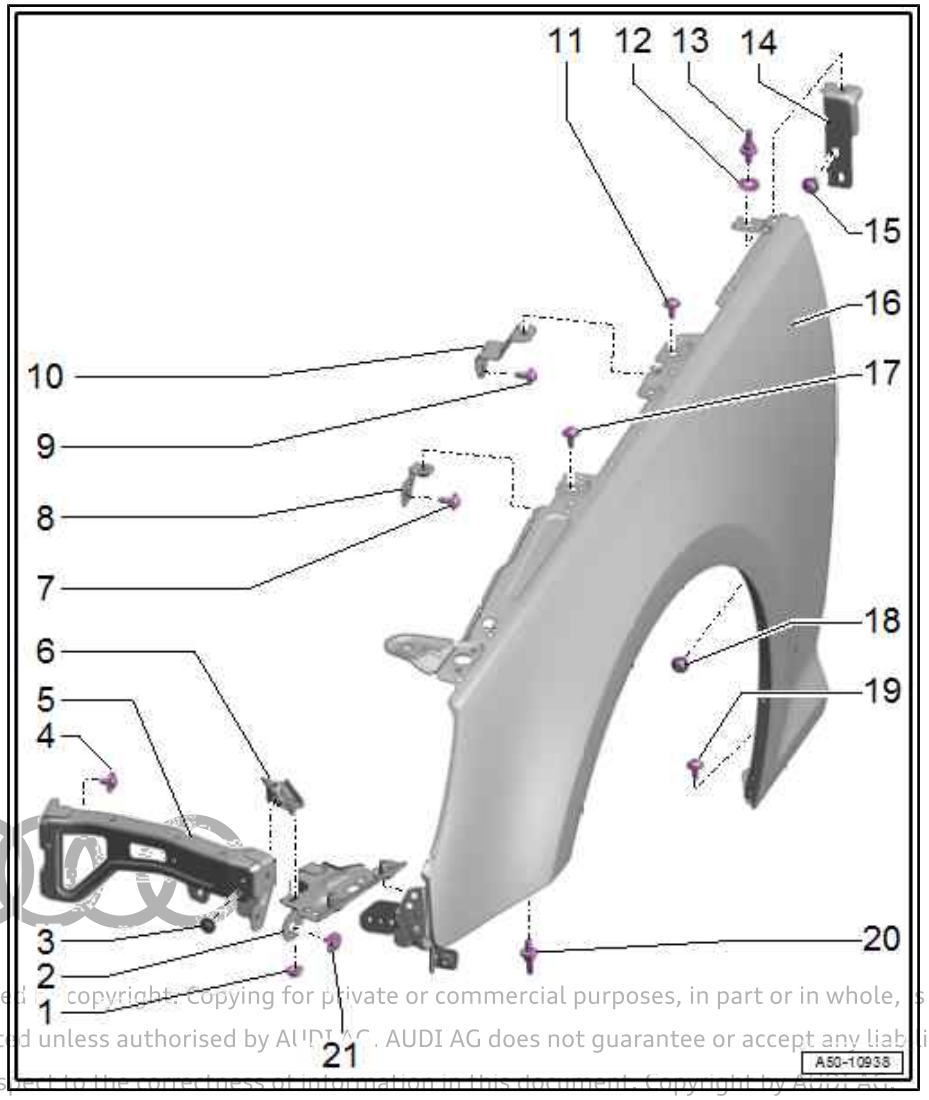
⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing cover (front) for wing”, page 29

⇒ “2.8 Removing and installing cover (rear) for wing”, page 30

⇒ “2.9 Removing and installing closure plate”, page 31

2.1 Exploded view - wing

- Exploded view - wing covers ⇒ page 20
- Exploded view - repair set for wing ⇒ page 21



1 - Nut
- ❑ Equipment version (not on RS 4, RS 5)
- ❑ 8 Nm

2 - Wing panel brace
- ❑ Outside
- ❑ Equipment version (not on RS 4, RS 5)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 26

3 - Bolt
- ❑ Equipment version (not on RS 4, RS 5)
- ❑ 8 Nm

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

5 - Wing panel brace
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 23

6 - Connecting piece
- ❑ For wing panel brace
- ❑ Equipment version (not on RS 4, RS 5)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 26

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 8 Nm

8 - Bracket
- ❑ Front

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm

10 - Bracket

- ❑ Centre

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm

12 - Washer

13 - Centre hex stud

- ❑ 8 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

14 - Bracket

- ❑ Rear

15 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm

16 - Wing

- ❑ Different versions
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 21

17 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm

18 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

19 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

20 - Centre hex stud

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

21 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Not on RS 4, RS 5
- ❑ 8 Nm

2.2 Exploded view - wing covers

1 - Wing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 21

2 - Cover
- ❑ Front
- ❑ Equipment version: small
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 29

3 - Cover
- ❑ Front
- ❑ Equipment version: large
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 30

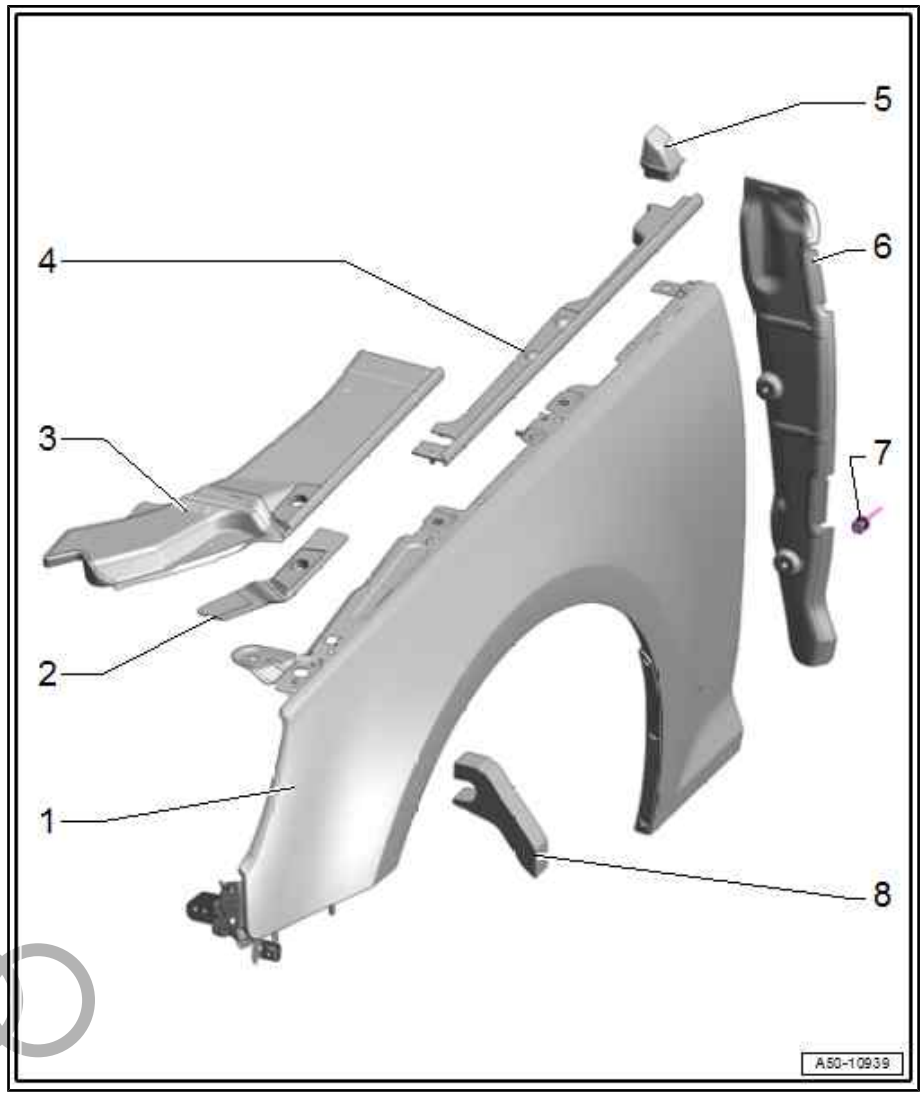
4 - Cover
- ❑ Rear
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 30

5 - Stop buffer
- ❑ For bonnet
- ❑ With cap nut (on some versions): tightening torque 6 Nm
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 30

6 - Closure plate
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 31

7 - Spreader rivet
- ❑ 2x

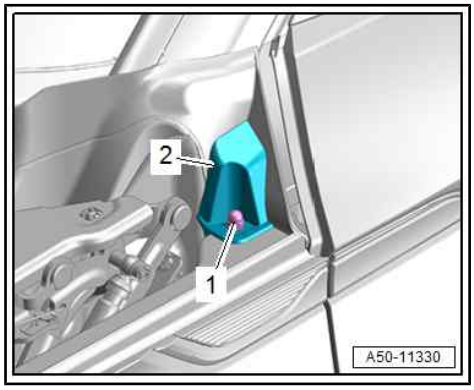
8 - Sealing piece
- ❑ On inside of wing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Stop buffer - tightening torque

– Tighten nut -1- for stop buffer -2- to 6 Nm.



2.3 Exploded view - repair set for wing

1 - Pop rivet

2 - Reinforcement

- ❑ For wing

3 - Pop rivet

- ❑ 2x

4 - Bracket

- ❑ Front
- ❑ Preparing for installation ⇒ page 22

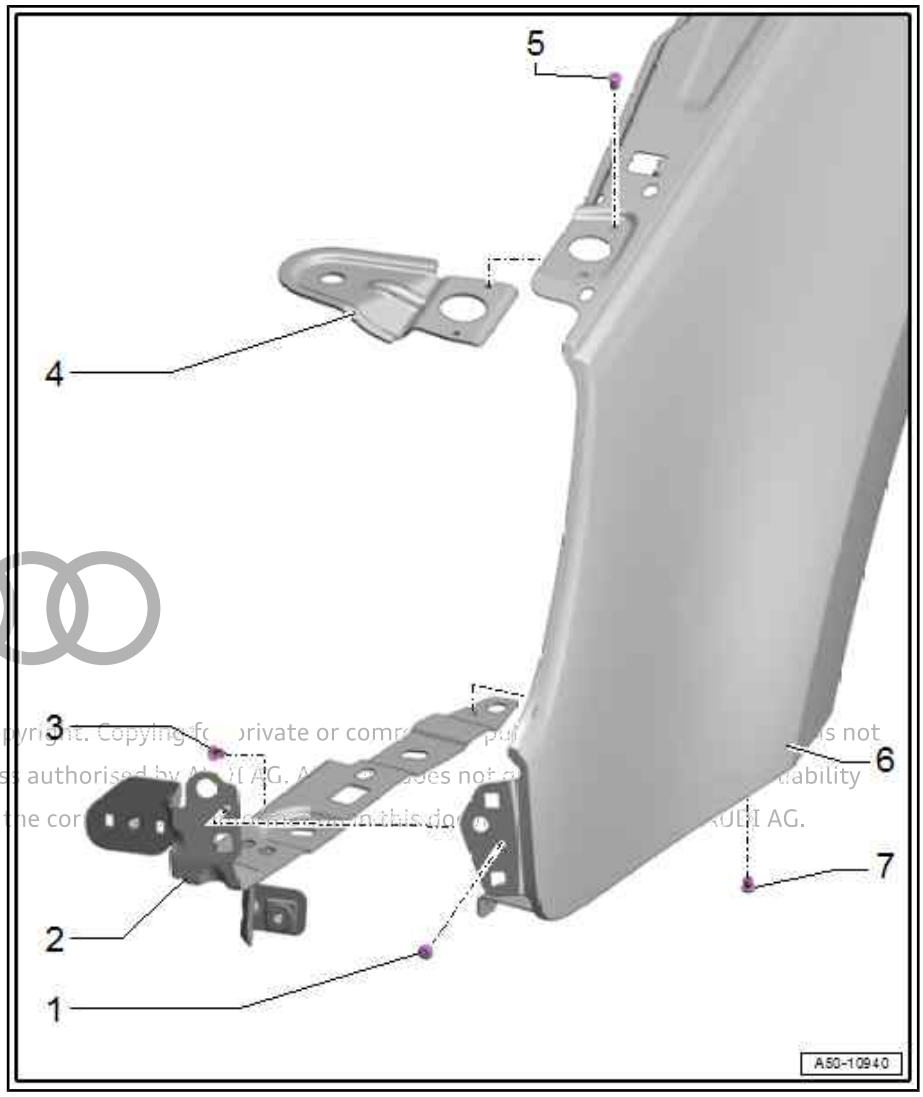
5 - Pop rivet

- ❑ 2x

6 - Wing

- ❑ Preparing for installation ⇒ page 22

7 - Pop rivet



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not ... liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. ©AUDI AG.

2.4 Removing and installing wing

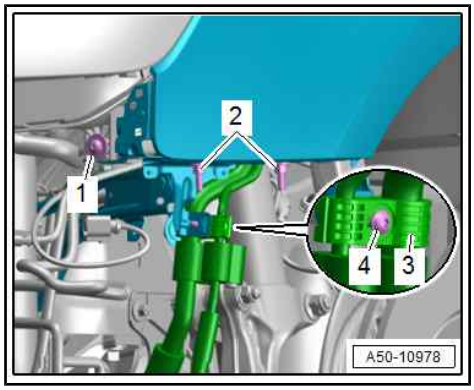
Removing

– Remove front wheel housing liner ⇒ page 658 .

– If necessary, remove washer fluid reservoir ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen washer system; Removing and installing washer fluid reservoir .

– Remove bumper cover mounting ⇒ page 406 .

– Remove bolts -1, 4- and centre hex studs -2-.
– Move bracket -3- for refrigerant lines clear.
– Remove cover (front) for wing ⇒ page 29 .
– Remove cover (rear) for wing ⇒ page 30 .

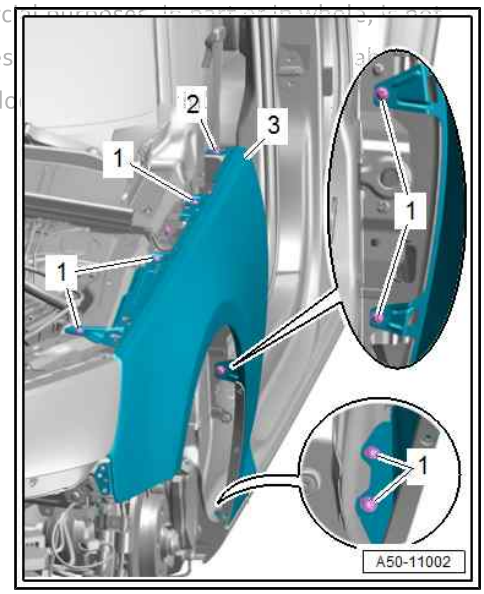


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this do

– Remove bolts -1- and centre hex stud -2-.

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury
– Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.



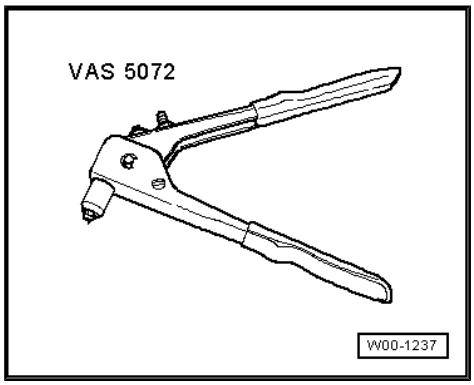
– Vehicles with pedestrian protection: Move electrical connector for trigger ⇒ Item 7 (page 38) for pedestrian protection clear.
– Detach wing panel -3-.

Preparing wing for installation

• The wing panel can only be ordered in individual parts and must be prepared for installation as follows.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

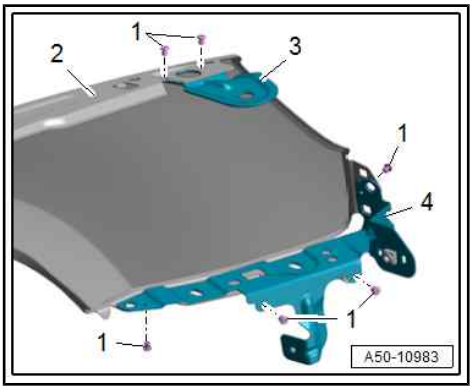
♦ Pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072A-



♦ Drill
♦ Pop rivet ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

– Rivet bracket -3- and reinforcement -4- to wing -2- with pop rivets -1-.

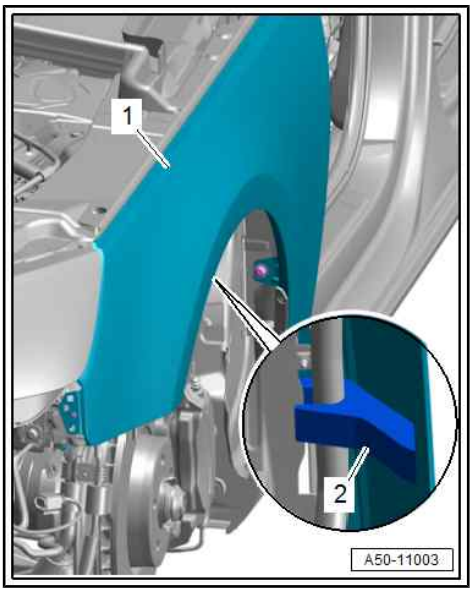
• The brackets must be positioned behind the edge of the wing.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– If fitted previously, fit sealing piece -2- in wing panel -1-.



Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - wing”, page 18

2.5 Removing and installing wing panel brace

⇒ “2.5.1 Removing and installing wing panel brace - A4”, page 23

⇒ “2.5.2 Removing and installing wing panel brace - A5”, page 24

⇒ “2.5.3 Removing and installing wing panel brace - RS 4, RS 5”, page 25

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5.1 Removing and installing wing panel brace - A4

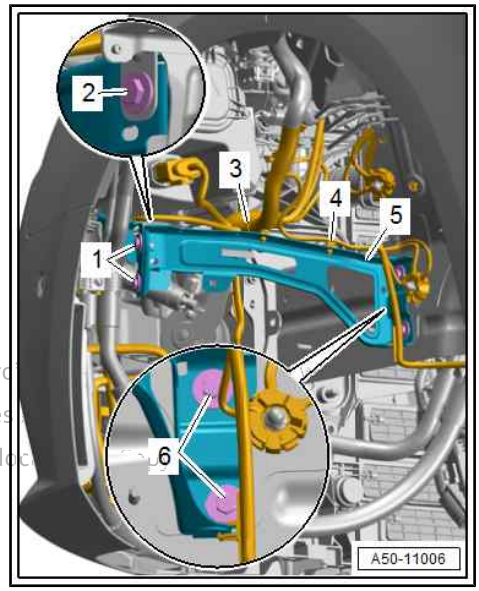
Removing

– Remove front wheel housing liner ⇒ page 658 .

– Remove wheel spoiler (front) ⇒ page 659 .

Left side:

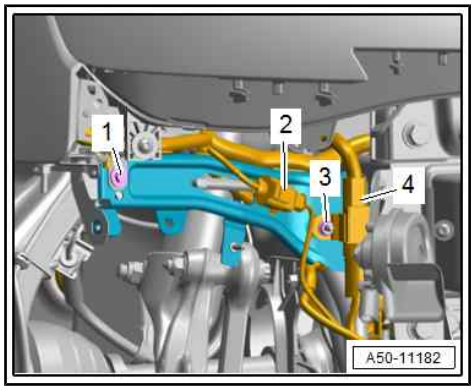
– Move wiring harnesses -3, 4- clear.
– Remove bolts -1, 2, 6-.
– Remove wing panel brace -5-.



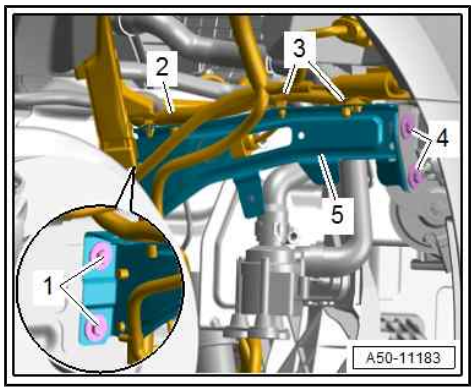
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerc
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this do

Right side:

– Move electrical connector -2- clear.
– Unscrew nut -3- and move electrical wiring harness -4- clear.
– Remove bolt -1-.



– Move electrical wiring harness -2, 3- clear.
– Remove bolts -1, 4-.
– Remove wing panel brace -5-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - wing”, page 18

2.5.2 Removing and installing wing panel brace - A5

Removing

– Remove front wheel housing liner ⇒ page 658 .
– Remove wheel spoiler (front) ⇒ page 659 .

Left side:

– Move breather hose -1- for headlight clear.

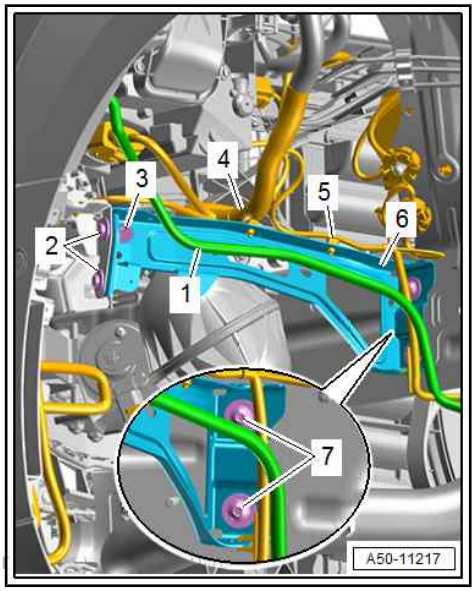
– Move electrical wiring harnesses -4, 5- clear.

– Remove bolts -2, 3, 7-.

– Remove wing panel brace -6-.

Right side:

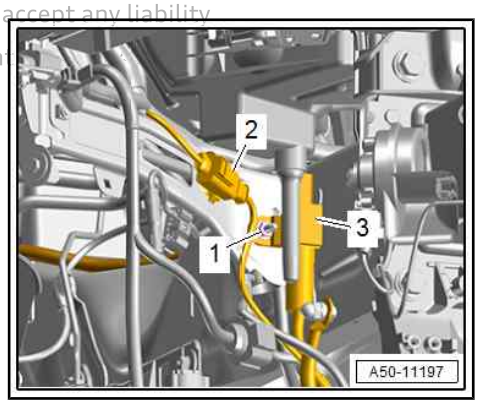
– If fitted, detach auxiliary heater from vehicle body ⇒ Auxiliary/supplementary heater; Rep. gr. 82 ; Auxiliary/supplementary heater; Removing and installing auxiliary/supplementary heater .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

– Move electrical connector -2- clear.

– Unscrew nut -1- and move electrical wiring harness -3- clear.



– Move breather hose -2- for headlight clear.

– Move electrical wiring harness clear at -positions 1, 3-.

– Remove bolts -4, 5, 7-.

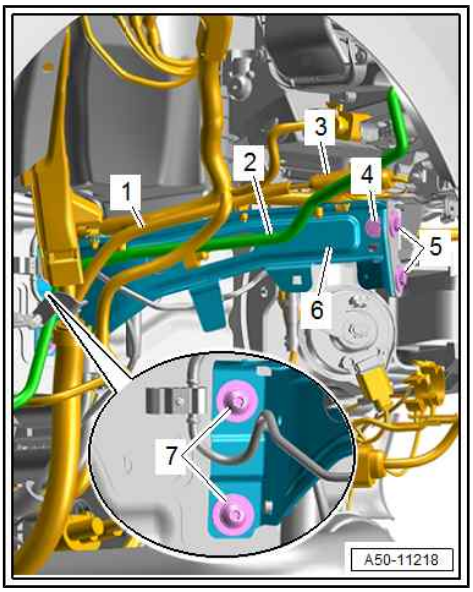
– Remove wing panel brace -6-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - wing”, page 18



2.5.3 Removing and installing wing panel brace - RS 4, RS 5

Removing

– Remove front wheel housing liner ⇒ page 658 .

– Remove wheel spoiler (front) ⇒ page 659 .

– Remove bumper cover mounting ⇒ page 406 .

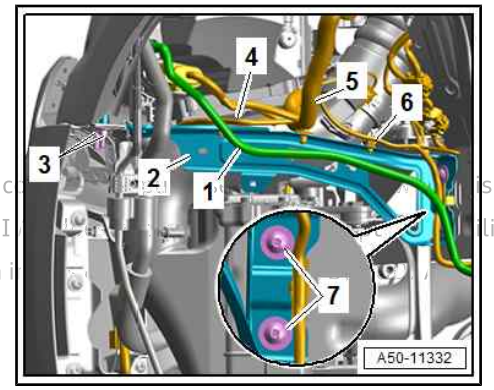
Left side:

– Move breather hose -1- for headlight clear.

– Move electrical wiring harnesses -4, 5, 6- clear.

– Remove bolts -7- and centre hex studs -3-.

– Remove wing panel brace -2-.

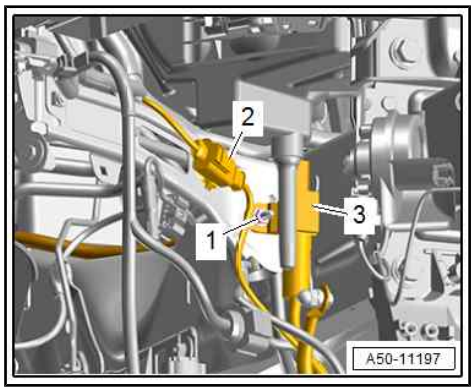


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or c... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI ... lity with respect to the correctness of information i...

Right side:

– Move electrical connector -2- clear.

– Unscrew nut -1- and move electrical wiring harness -3- clear.

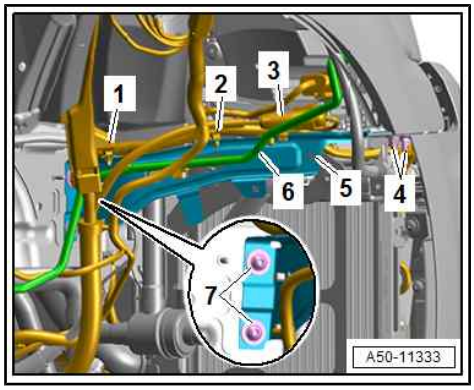


– Move breather hose -6- for headlight clear.

– Move electrical wiring harnesses -1, 2, 3- clear.

– Remove bolts -7- and centre hex studs -4-.

– Remove wing panel brace -5-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - wing”, page 18

2.6 Removing and installing connecting piece and wing panel brace (outside)

⇒ “2.6.1 Removing and installing connecting piece and wing panel brace (outside) - A4”, page 26

⇒ “2.6.2 Removing and installing connecting piece and wing panel brace (outside) - A5”, page 27

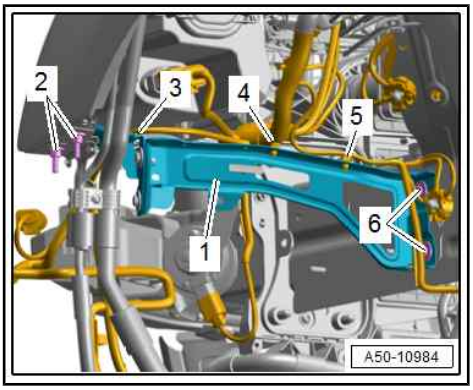
2.6.1 Removing and installing connecting piece and wing panel brace (outside) - A4

Removing

– Remove bumper cover mounting ⇒ page 406 .

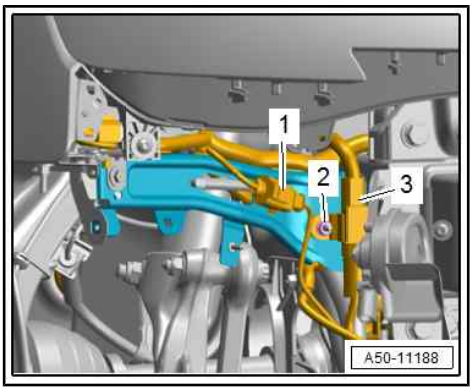
Left side:

– Move wiring harnesses -3, 4, 5- clear.
– Remove bolts -6- and centre hex studs -2-.
– Remove wing panel brace -1-.

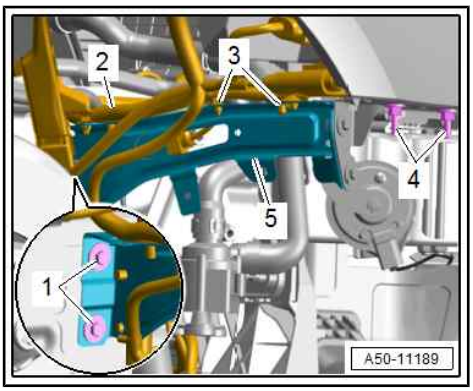


Right side:

– Move electrical connector -1- clear.
– Unscrew nut -2- and move electrical wiring harness -3- clear.



– Move electrical wiring harness -2, 3- clear.
– Remove bolts -1- and centre hex studs -4-.
– Remove wing panel brace -5-.



Continued:

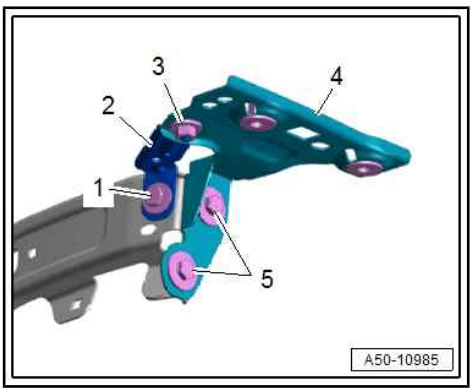
– Remove bolts -1, 5- and nut -3-.
– Detach connecting piece -2- and wing panel brace (outside) -4-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - wing”, page 18



2.6.2 Removing and installing connecting piece and wing panel brace (outside) - A5

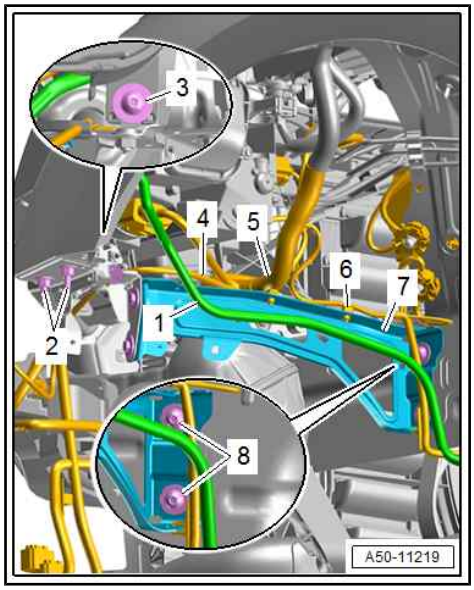
Removing

– Remove bumper cover mounting ⇒ page 406 -

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

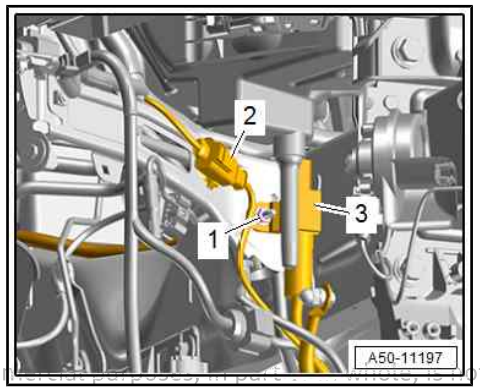
Left side:

- Move breather hose -1- for headlight clear.
- Move wiring harnesses -4, 5, 6- clear.
- Remove bolts -3, 8- and centre hex studs -2-.
- Remove wing panel brace -7-.



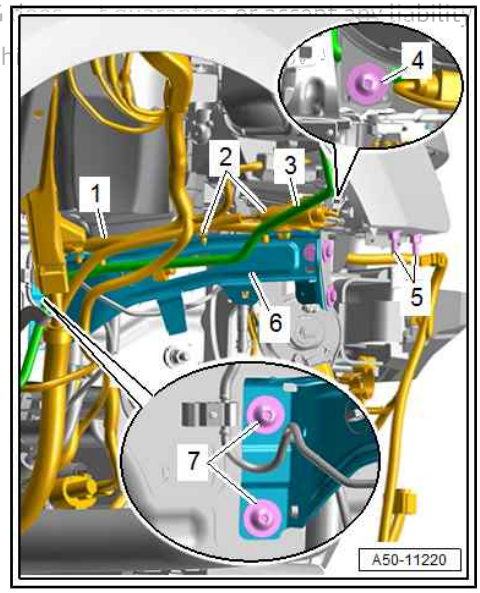
Right side:

- If fitted, detach auxiliary heater from vehicle body ⇒ Auxiliary/ supplementary heater; Rep. gr. 82 ; Auxiliary/supplementary heater; Removing and installing auxiliary/supplementary heater .
- Move electrical connector -2- clear.
- Unscrew nut -1- and move electrical wiring harness -3- clear.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this

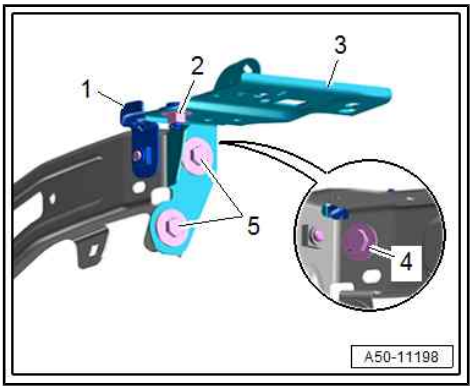
- Move breather hose -3- for headlight clear.
- Move electrical wiring harness clear at -positions 1, 2-.
- Remove bolts -4, 7- and centre hex studs -5-.
- Remove wing panel brace -6-.



Continued:

– Remove bolts -4, 5- and nut -2-.

– Detach connecting piece -1- and wing panel brace (outside) -3-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - wing”, page 18

2.7 Removing and installing cover (front) for wing

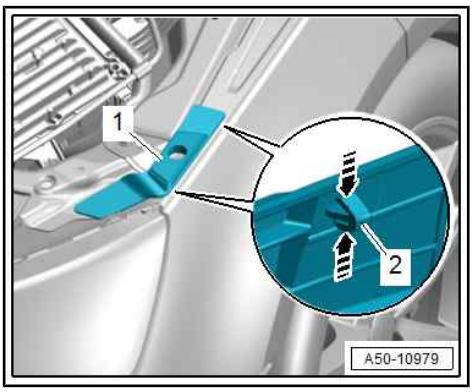
⇒ “2.7.1 Removing and installing cover (front) for wing small version”, page 29

⇒ “2.7.2 Removing and installing cover (front) for wing - large version”, page 30

2.7.1 Removing and installing cover (front) for wing small version

Removing

– Release fasteners -2- -arrows- and remove cover -1-.



Installing

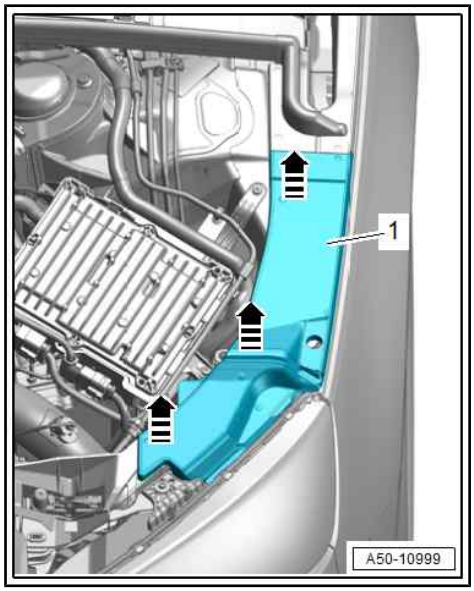
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.7.2 Removing and installing cover (front) for wing - large version

Removing

– Lever off cover -1- -arrows-.



Installing

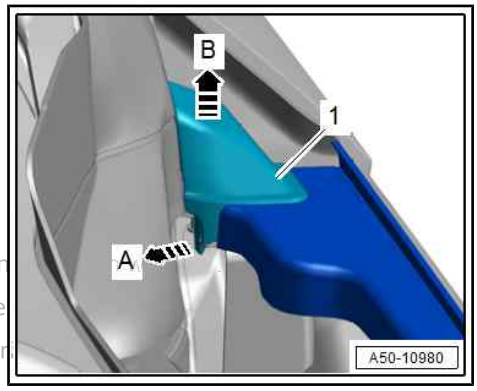
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

2.8 Removing and installing cover (rear) for wing

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 20 .

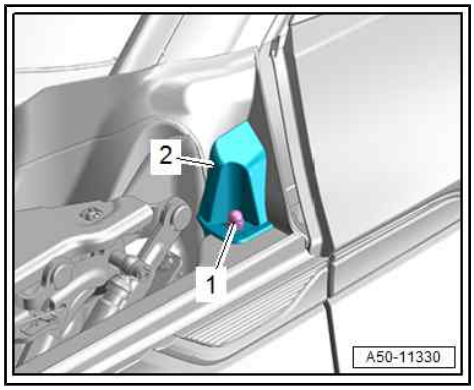
Removing

– Version 1: Release fastener -arrow A- and press stop buffer -1- off threaded pin -arrow B-.



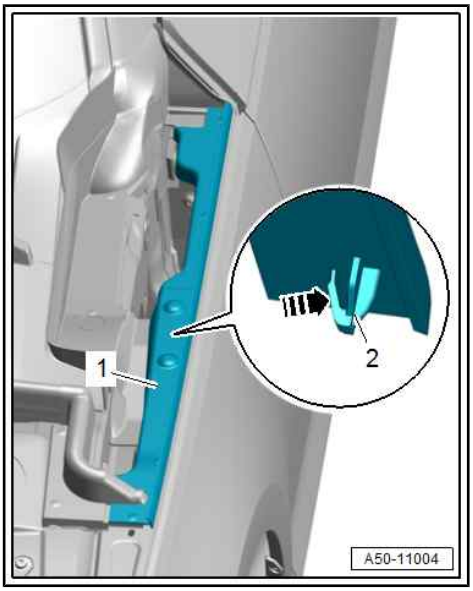
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyr

– Version 2: Unscrew nut -1- and detach stop buffer -2-.



– If fitted, remove large cover for wing ⇒ page 30 .

– Release fasteners -2- -arrow- and detach cover (rear) -1- upwards.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

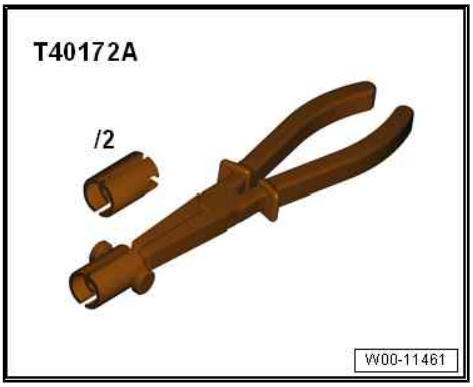
Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ Fig. ""Stop buffer - tightening torque"" , page 20

2.9 Removing and installing closure plate

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Pliers - T40172 A-

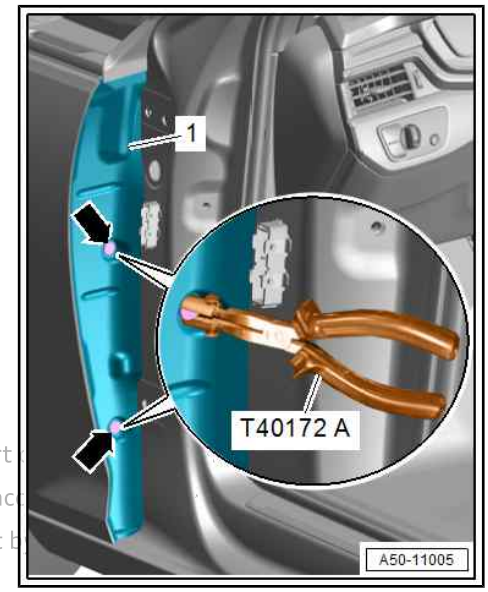


Removing

– Remove front door ⇒ page 130 .

– Remove spreader rivets -arrows- using pliers - T40172 A- with adapter - T40172/1- .

– Take out closure plate -1- towards rear.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ac
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright b

3 Bulkhead

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - plenum chamber partition panel”, page 32

⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - plenum chamber cover”, page 33

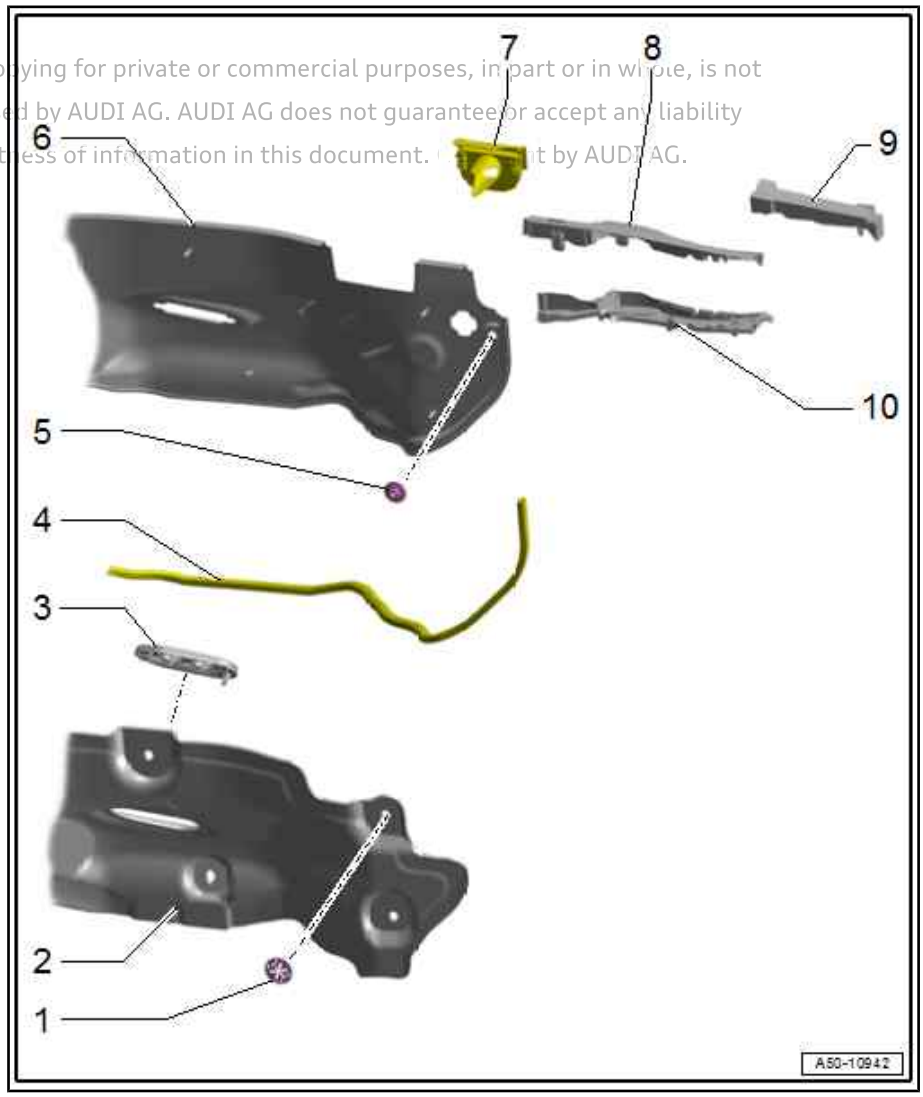
⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing plenum chamber partition panel”, page 33

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing plenum chamber cover”, page 35

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing cover (side) for plenum chamber cover”, page 35

3.1 Exploded view - plenum chamber partition panel

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Clamping washer/nut

- ❑ Nut: 2 Nm

2 - Heat shield

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 680

3 - Grommet

- ❑ For coolant lines
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Can only be renewed together with heat shield

4 - Seal

- ❑ For plenum chamber partition panel

5 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

6 - Plenum chamber partition panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 33

7 - Grommet

- ❑ For electrical wiring harness

8 - Cover

- ❑ For plenum chamber closure plate
- ❑ Top

9 - Moulded section

- ❑ For plenum chamber closure plate

10 - Cover

- ❑ For plenum chamber closure plate
- ❑ Bottom

3.2 Exploded view - plenum chamber cover

1 - Seal

2 - Clip

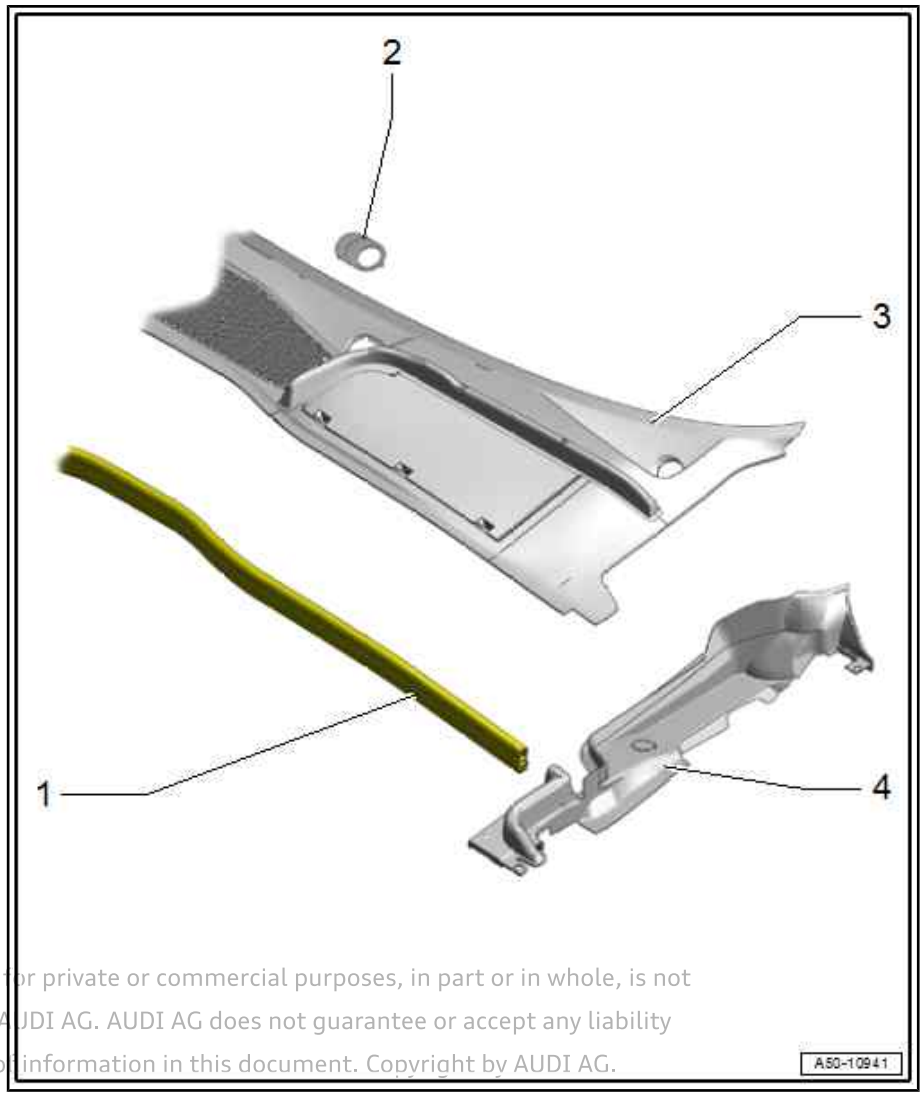
- ❑ For wiper shaft

3 - Plenum chamber cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 35

4 - Plenum chamber cover (side)

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 35



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.3 Removing and installing plenum chamber partition panel

Removing

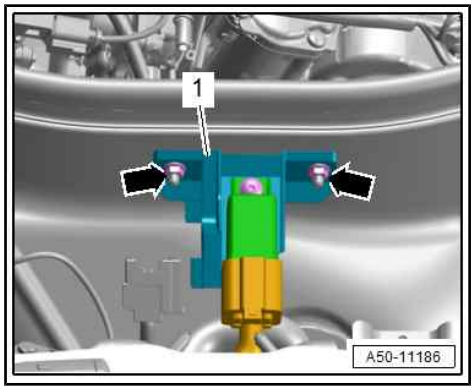
– Remove engine cover panel ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 10 ; Engine cover panel; Removing and installing engine cover panel .

– On vehicles with grommet for coolant lines through plenum chamber partition panel: Drain coolant ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 19 ; Cooling system/coolant; Draining and filling cooling system .

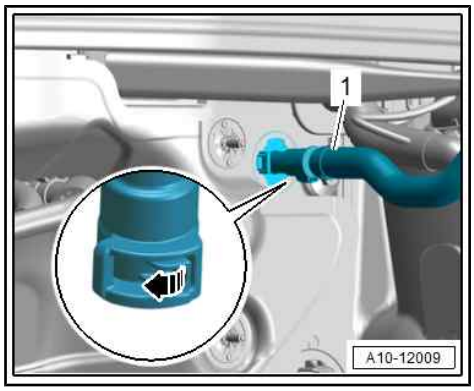
– Remove plenum chamber cover ⇒ page 35 .

– Remove body brace ⇒ Running gear, front-wheel drive and four-wheel drive; Rep. gr. 40 ; Suspension strut, upper links; Removing and installing body brace .

– Unscrew nuts -arrows- and detach bracket -1- with relay and fuse carrier 3 - SR3- .

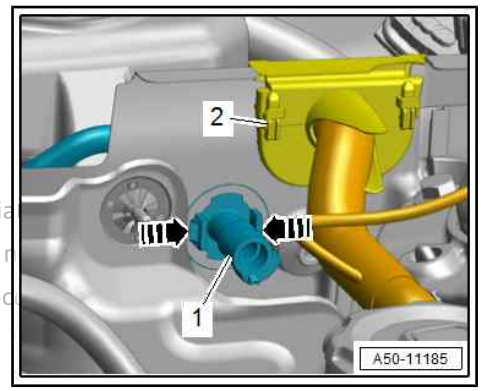


– Release catch -arrow- and disconnect vacuum hose -1-.

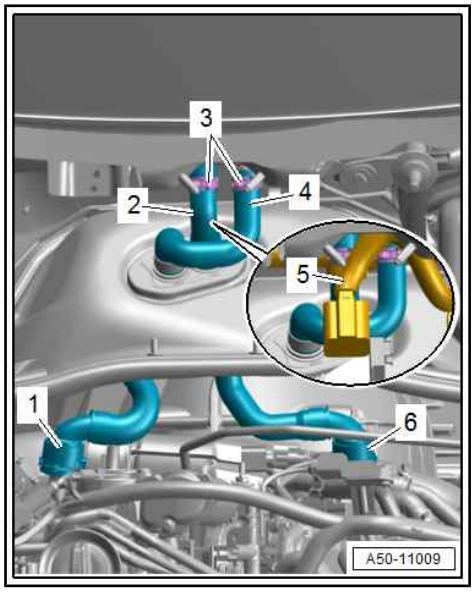


– Release catches -arrows- and push vacuum connection -1- into plenum chamber.
– Move wiring harness -2- clear.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercia
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does r
with respect to the correctness of information in this doc

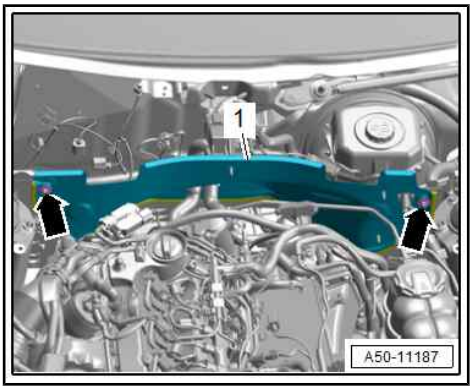


– Lift retaining clips -1, 6- and disconnect coolant hoses.
– If fitted, move wiring harness -5- clear.
– Unfasten hose clips -3-, detach coolant hoses -2, 4- and move hoses clear.



– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Lift off plenum chamber partition panel -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Fill up with coolant ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 19 ; Cooling system/ coolant; Draining and filling cooling system .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - plenum chamber partition panel”, page 32

3.4 Removing and installing plenum chamber cover

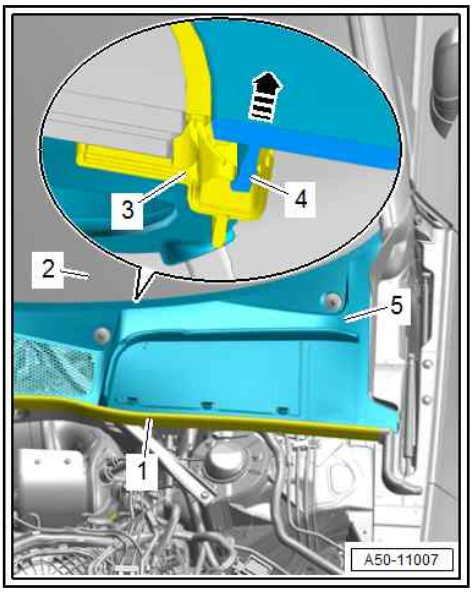
Removing

– Remove wiper arms ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen wiper system; Removing and installing wiper arms .

– Pull off seal -1-.

– Coat transition between windscreen -2- and plenum chamber cover -5- with a small amount of soap solution and, starting at edge of windscreen, carefully pull plenum chamber cover vertically upwards out of retainer at windscreen.

– Detach plenum chamber cover -5-; to do so, carefully pull retaining catch -4- for plenum chamber cover out of windscreen mounting -3- in direction of -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

• The retaining catch for the plenum chamber cover must be engaged completely in the windscreen frame.

Note:

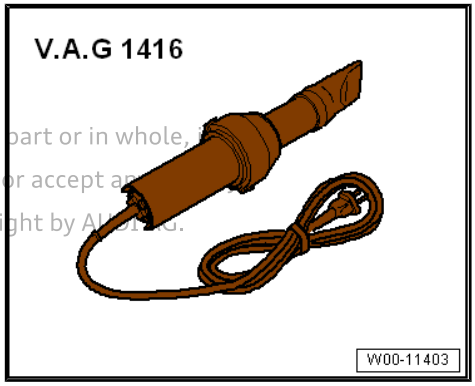
Water may flow into the fresh air intake duct if the plenum chamber cover is damaged or not fitted correctly. This may result in complaints about odour from the heater/air conditioner and/or moisture in the passenger compartment.

3.5 Removing and installing cover (side) for plenum chamber cover

• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 33 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

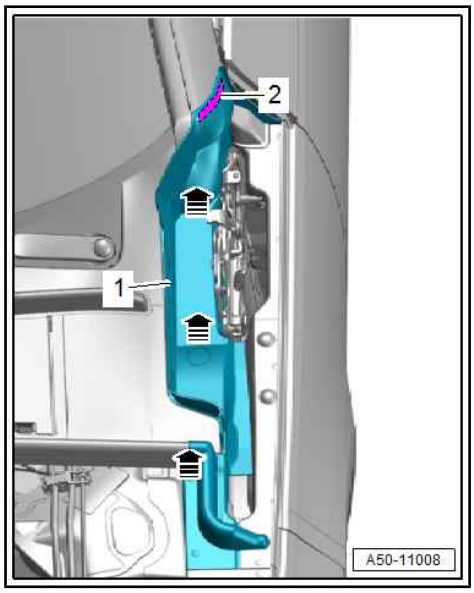
♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

Removing

– Remove cover (rear) for wing ⇒ page 30 .

– Carefully heat cover -1- in area of A-pillar using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .

– Lever off cover -arrows- and carefully detach it in area of adhesive bond -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

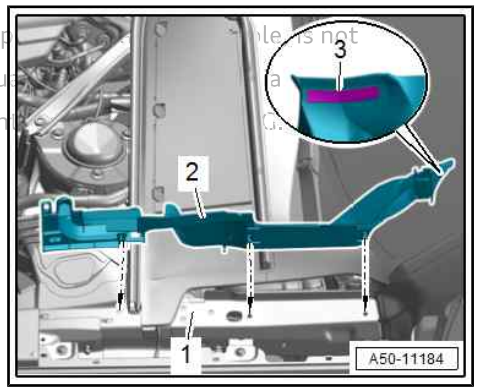
- The vehicle and the cover must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

– Position cover -2- on clip on body -1- -arrows- and press it on.

– Peel protective film -3- off adhesive tape and press cover onto A-pillar.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp... ...ble is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu... ...a with respect to the correctness of information in this document... ...ur...

55 – Bonnet, rear lid

1 Bonnet

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - bonnet”, page 37

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - insulation and impact guard on bonnet”, page 39

⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - Bowden cable”, page 39

⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing bonnet”, page 41

⇒ “1.5 Adjusting bonnet”, page 42

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing hinges”, page 47

⇒ “1.7 Resetting hinge”, page 48

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing striker”, page 48

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing gas strut”, page 49

⇒ “1.10 Releasing gas from gas strut”, page 49

⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing insulation”, page 50

⇒ “1.12 Removing and installing impact guard”, page 50

⇒ “1.13 Removing and installing Bowden cable”, page 51

⇒ “1.14 Removing and installing bonnet lock”, page 53

⇒ “1.15 Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet lock”, page 54

⇒ “1.16 Removing and installing operating lever for arrester”, page 54

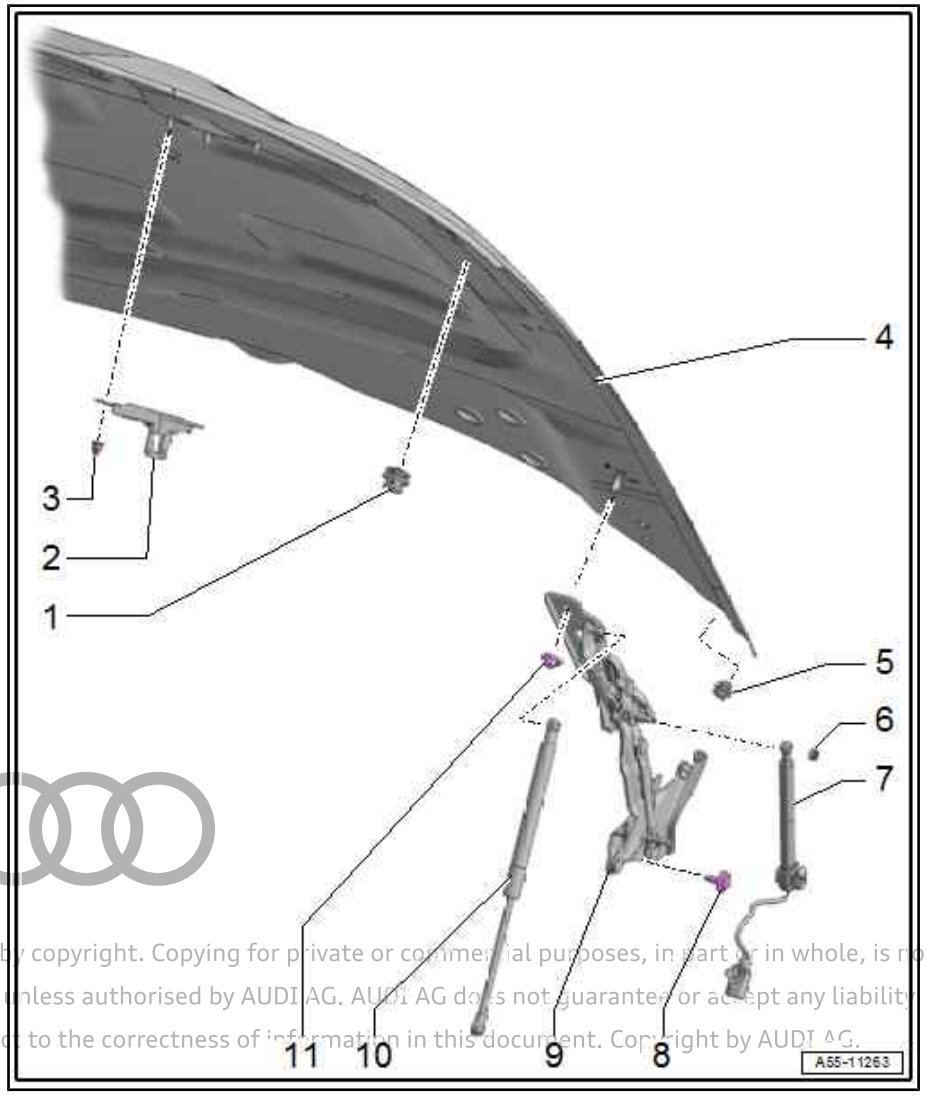
⇒ “1.17 Removing and installing mounting bracket for operating lever for bonnet lock”, page 55

⇒ “1.18 Removing and installing mounting bracket with Bowden cable for operating lever for arrester”, page 55

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1 Exploded view - bonnet

- Exploded view - insulation and impact guard on bonnet
  ⇒ page 39



1 - Adjusting buffer

- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 45

2 - Striker

- ❑ Different versions
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 48
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 44

3 - Nut

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 9 Nm

4 - Bonnet

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 41
- ❑ Resetting hinge after pedestrian protection system has been triggered ⇒ page 48
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 42

5 - Adjusting buffer

- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 45

6 - Clip

7 - Trigger for pedestrian protection

- ❑ Country-specific version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 69; Pedestrian protection; Overview - pedestrian protection

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

9 - Hinge

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 47

10 - Gas strut

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 49
- ❑ Releasing gas ⇒ page 49

11 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

1.2 Exploded view - insulation and impact guard on bonnet

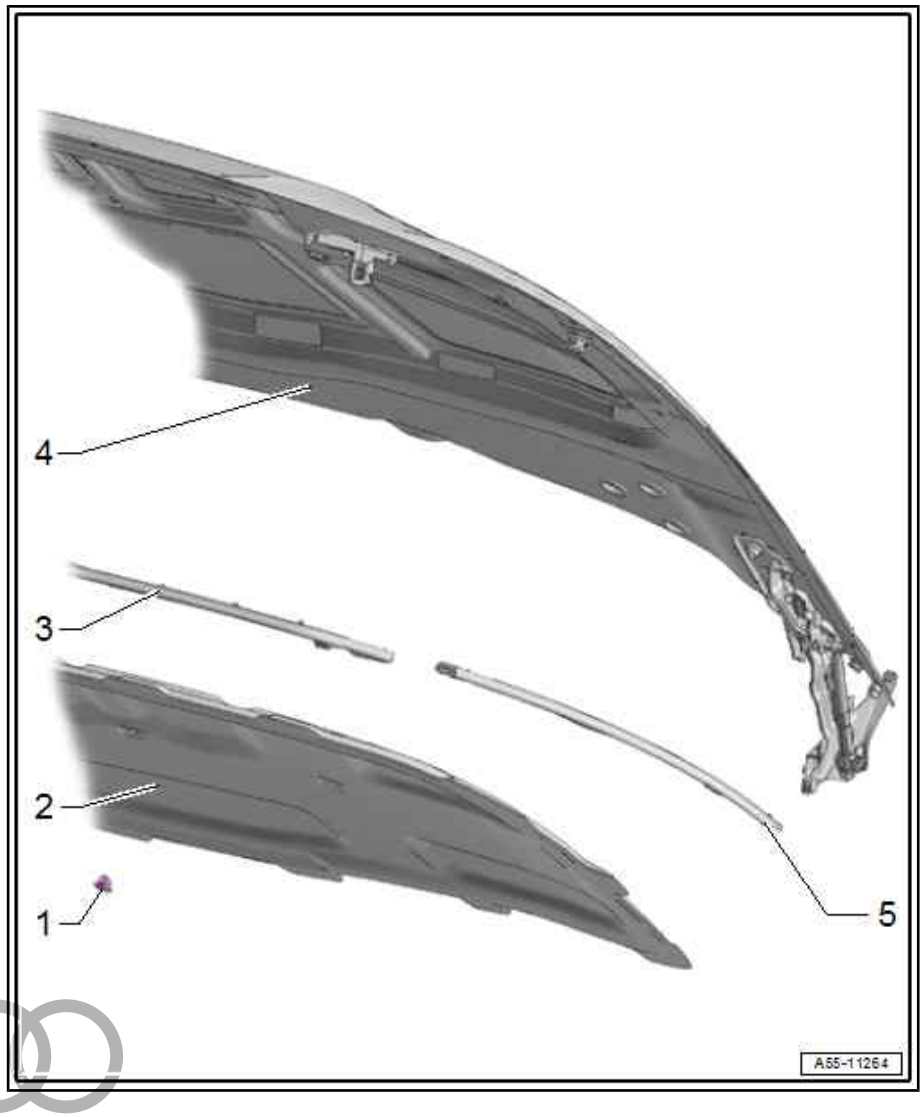
1 - Retaining clip
- ❑ For insulation

2 - Insulation
- ❑ Different versions
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 50

3 - Impact guard
- ❑ Centre
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 50

4 - Bonnet

5 - Impact guard
- ❑ Side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 50



1.3 Exploded view - Bowden cable

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ♦ Exploded view - release mechanism in passenger compartment ⇒ page 39
- ♦ Exploded view - release mechanism on bonnet lock ⇒ page 40

Exploded view - release mechanism in passenger compartment

1 - Operating lever

- ❑ For bonnet lock
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 54

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

3 - Mounting bracket

- ❑ For operating lever for bonnet lock
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 55

4 - Bowden cable

- ❑ For bonnet lock
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 51

5 - Grommet

- ❑ Make sure that it is correctly seated

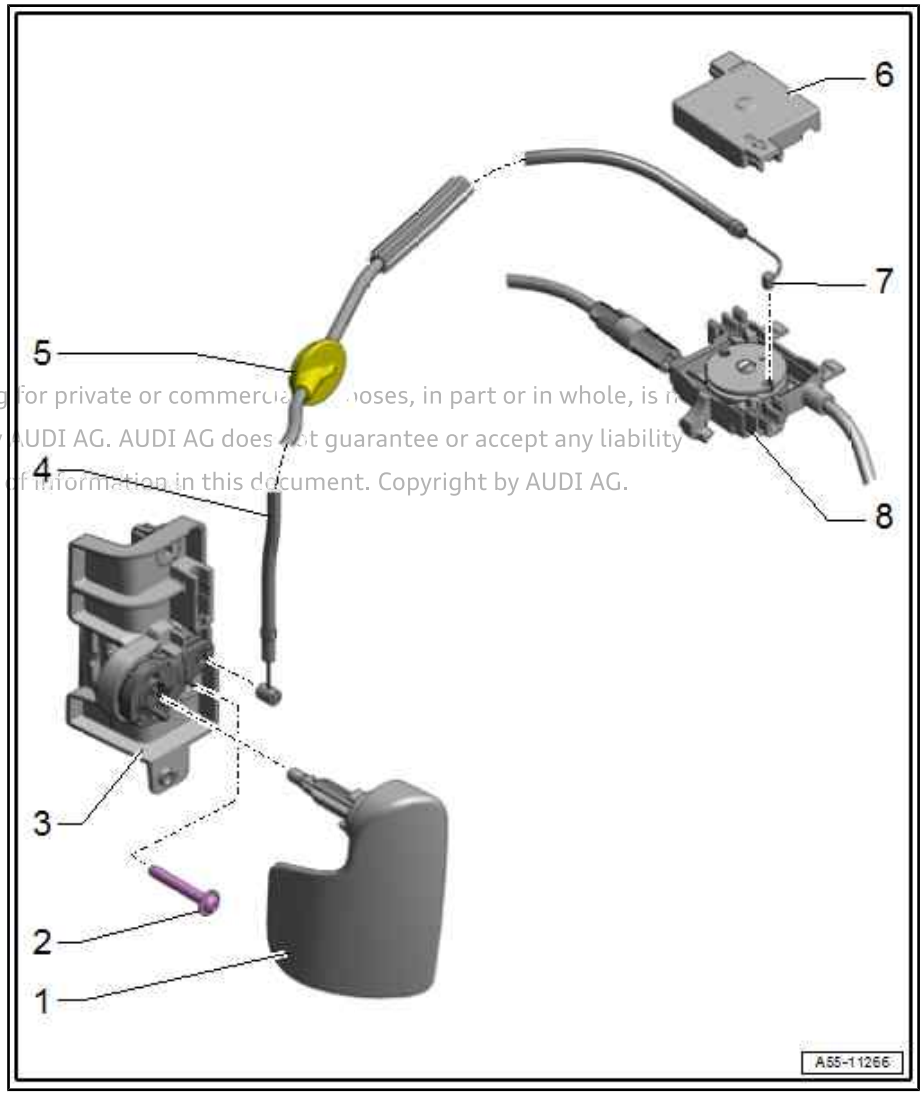
6 - Cover

7 - Nipple

- ❑ Inserted into guide element of coupling unit

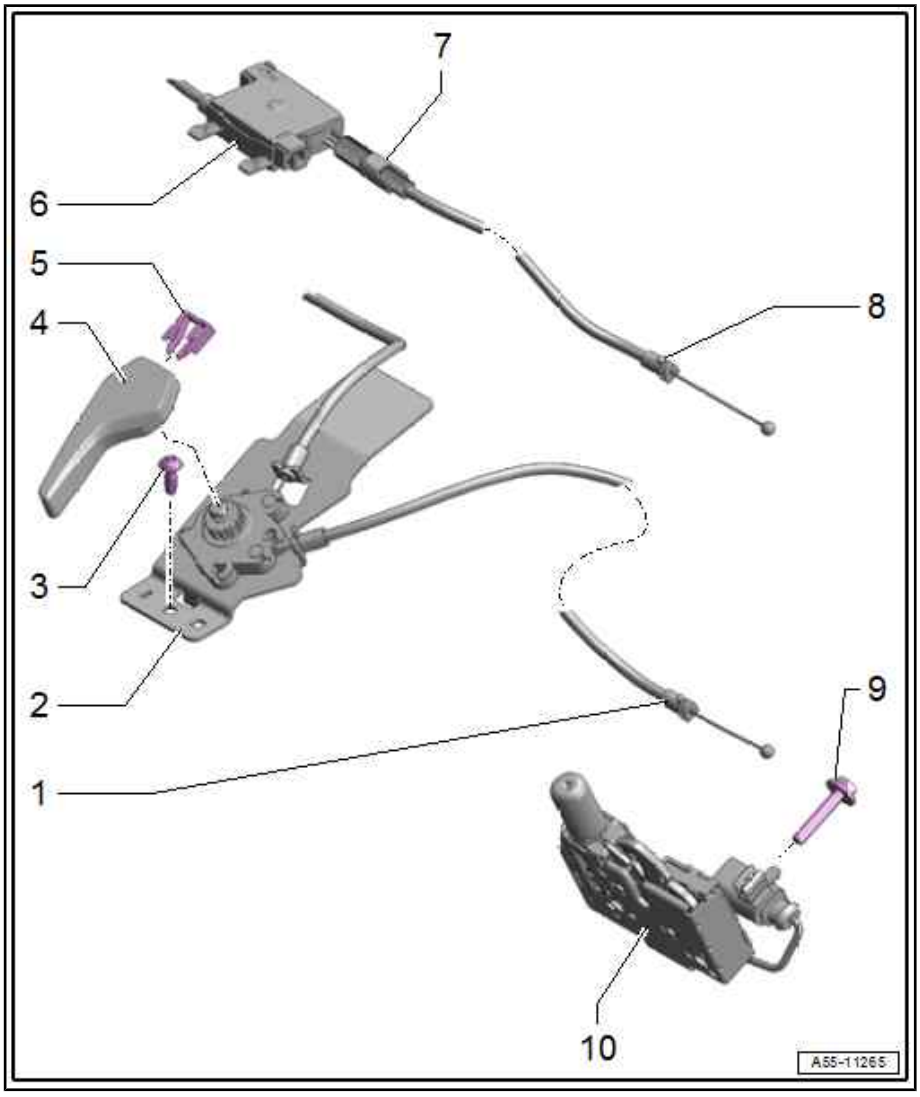
8 - Coupling unit with Bowden cables

- ❑ For bonnet locks
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 51



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Exploded view - release mechanism on bonnet lock



1 - Bowden cable

- ❑ For releasing bonnet locks
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 52

2 - Mounting bracket with Bowden cable

- ❑ For operating lever for arrester
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 55

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 4.5 Nm

4 - Operating lever for arrester

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 54

5 - Securing clip

- ❑ For operating lever

6 - Coupling unit with Bowden cables

- ❑ For bonnet locks
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 51

7 - Knurled adjuster wheel

- ❑ For Bowden cable
- ❑ For adjustment of trigger point for bonnet locks

8 - Bowden cable

- ❑ For releasing bonnet locks
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 52

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 12 Nm

10 - Bonnet lock

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 53

1.4 Removing and installing bonnet

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 42).

NOTICE

The bonnet can be damaged if it is opened while the pedestrian protection system is triggered.

– If the pedestrian protection system has been triggered, reset it before opening the bonnet.

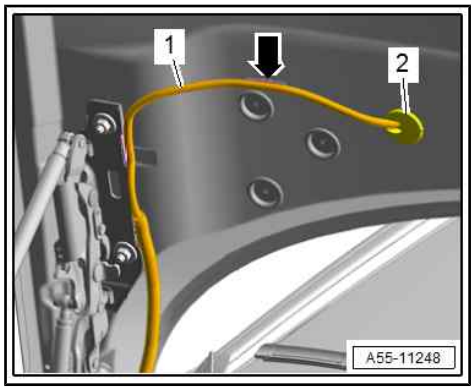
- Hinge reset (if pedestrian protection system has been triggered) ⇒ page 48

Removing

– Remove washer jets ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen washer system; Removing and installing washer jets .

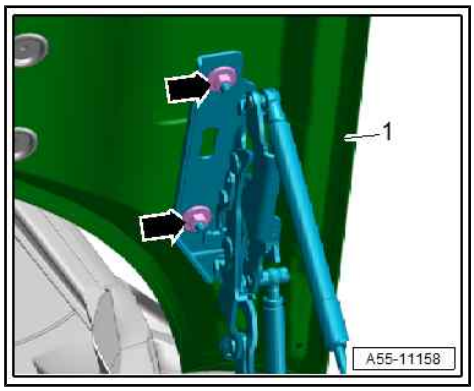
– Pull out grommet -2-.

– Guide wiring harness -1- out of bonnet and move clear -arrow-.



– Remove nuts -arrows- from hinge.

– Detach bonnet -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Adjust bonnet ⇒ page 42 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - bonnet”, page 37

1.5 Adjusting bonnet

⇒ “1.5.1 Adjustment dimensions”, page 42

⇒ “1.5.2 Lateral, longitudinal and height adjustment at hinge”, page 43

⇒ “1.5.3 Lateral and height adjustment at striker”, page 44

⇒ “1.5.4 Height adjustment using adjusting buffer”, page 45

⇒ “1.5.5 Height adjustment with spring element”, page 46

1.5.1 Adjustment dimensions

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

A - Bonnet to front door

- Gap width = 3.2 mm

B - Bonnet to wing

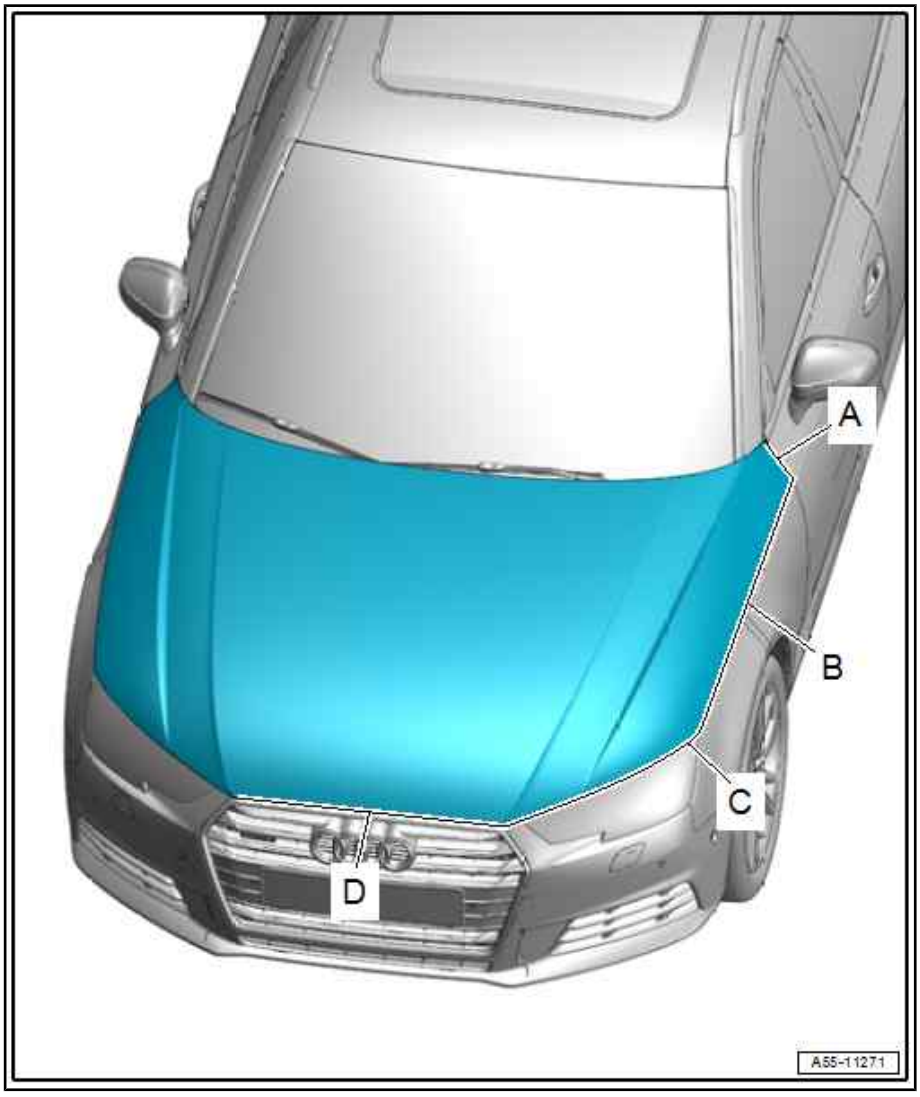
- A4: gap width = 3.0 mm
- A5: gap width = 3.5 mm

C - Bonnet to headlight

- A4: gap width = 3.5 mm
- A5: gap width = 4.4 mm

D - Bonnet to radiator grille

- A4: gap width = 4.5 mm
- A5: gap width = 4.4 mm



1.5.2 Lateral, longitudinal and height adjustment at hinge

- ♦ Lateral and longitudinal adjustment at hinge ⇒ page 44
- ♦ Height adjustment at hinge ⇒ page 44
- Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 42

Special tools and workshop equipment required

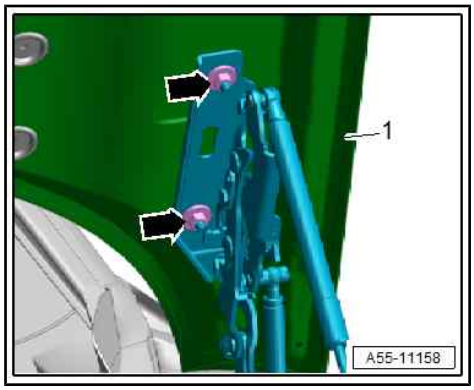
- ♦ Setting gauge - 3371-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Procedure

Lateral and longitudinal adjustment at hinge

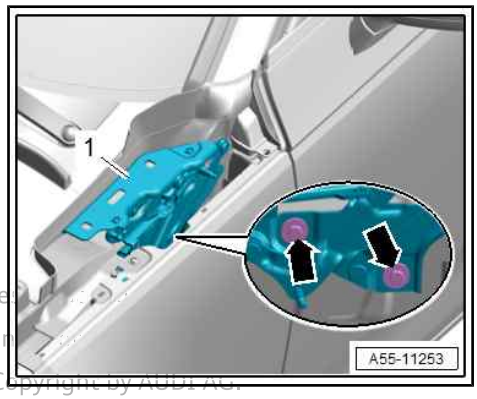


– Unscrew nuts -arrows-.
– Adjust bonnet -1- (lateral and longitudinal adjustment).
– Tighten nuts.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - bonnet”, page 37

Height adjustment at hinge



– Loosen bolts -arrows-.
– Adjust height of hinge -1-.
– Tighten bolts.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - bonnet”, page 37

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.5.3 Lateral and height adjustment at striker

♦ Lateral adjustment at striker ⇒ page 45
♦ Height adjustment at striker ⇒ page 45
• Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 42

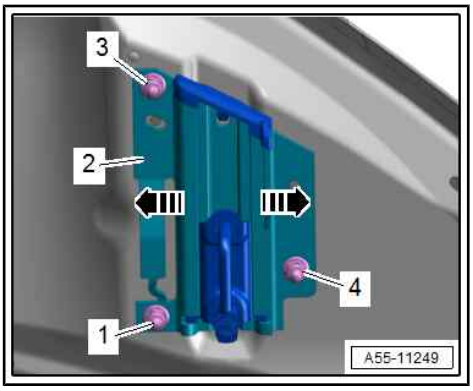
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Setting gauge - 3371-



Procedure

Lateral adjustment at striker

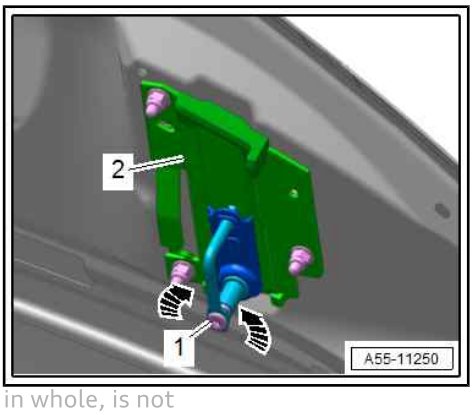


– Loosen nuts -1, 3, 4-.
– Move striker -2-.
• Closing check for bonnet: bonnet must fall into lock from neutral position and engage fully.
– Tighten nuts.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - bonnet”, page 37

Height adjustment at striker



– Screw in adjusting buffer completely ⇒ page 45 .
– Adjust striker -2- by turning adjuster screw -1- -arrows-.
• Closing check for bonnet: bonnet must fall into lock from neutral position and engage fully.
– If necessary, adjust height of striker.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.5.4 Height adjustment using adjusting buffer

♦ Height adjustment using adjusting buffer (front) ⇒ page 46
♦ Height adjustment using adjusting buffer (rear) ⇒ page 46
• Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 42

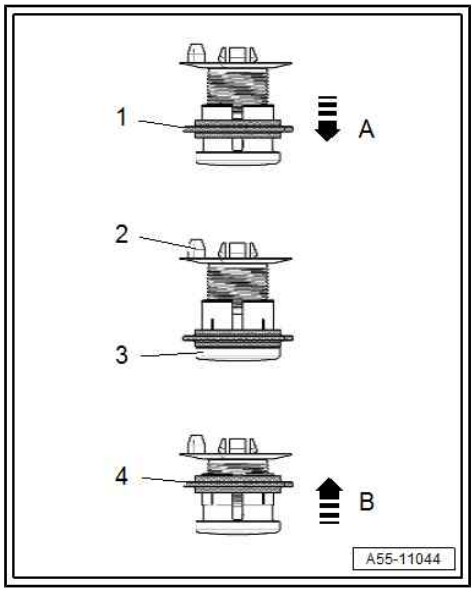
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Setting gauge - 3371-



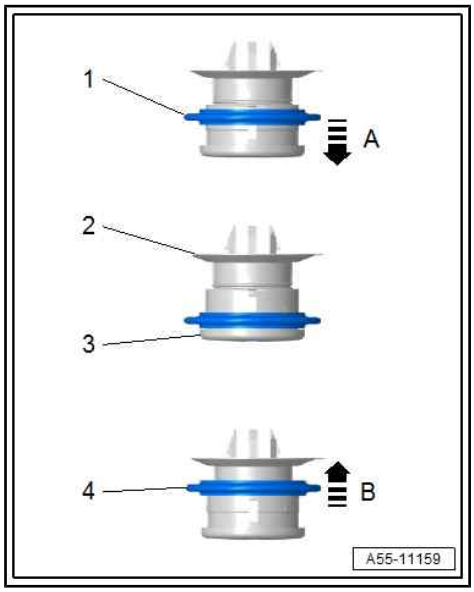
Procedure

Height adjustment using adjusting buffer (front)



– Open bonnet and release locking element -1- -arrow A-.
– Pull stop -3- completely out of buffer -2-.
– Lower bonnet slowly onto stop until correct gap width between bonnet and wing is reached.
– Open bonnet and lock locking element -4- -arrow B-.

Height adjustment using adjusting buffer (rear)



– Open bonnet and release locking element -1- -arrow A-.
– Pull stop -3- completely out of buffer -2-.
– Let bonnet fall into bonnet lock from neutral position.
• Adjusting buffer must make contact with stop buffer without any play.
– Open bonnet and lock locking element -4- -arrow B-.

1.5.5 Height adjustment with spring element

• Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 42

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Setting gauge - 3371-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Procedure

- Bumper (front) installed
- Spring element -5- must be tensioned.

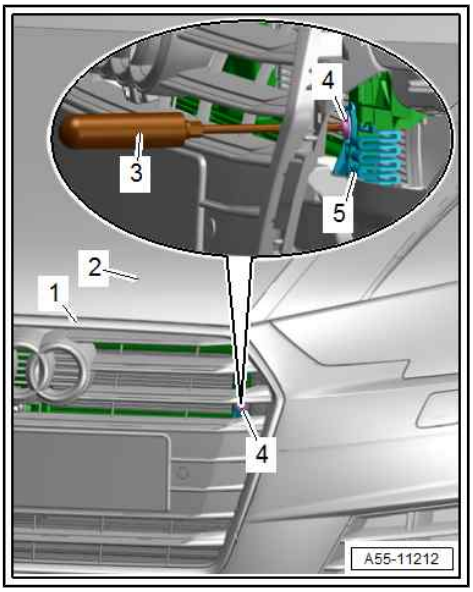
– Unscrew bolt -4- with a screwdriver -3-.

– Adjust distance between radiator grille -1- and bonnet -2-.

– Tighten bolt.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - lock carrier”, page 6



1.6 Removing and installing hinges

NOTICE

The bonnet can be damaged if it is opened while the pedestrian protection system is triggered.

– If the pedestrian protection system has been triggered, reset it before opening the bonnet.

- Hinge reset (if pedestrian protection system has been triggered) ⇒ page 48

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Vehicles with pedestrian protection: Disconnect battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .

– Remove bonnet ⇒ page 41 .

– If necessary, remove washer fluid reservoir ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen washer system; Removing and installing washer fluid reservoir .

– Vehicles with pedestrian protection: Remove trigger for pedestrian protection ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 69 ; Pedestrian protection; Overview - pedestrian protection .

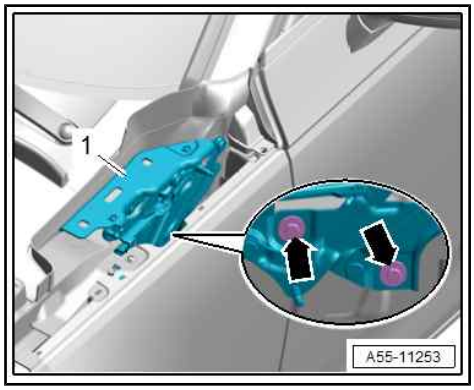
– Remove gas strut ⇒ page 49 .

– Move hinge to “closed” position.

– Mark installation position of hinge for re-installation.

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Detach hinge -1-.



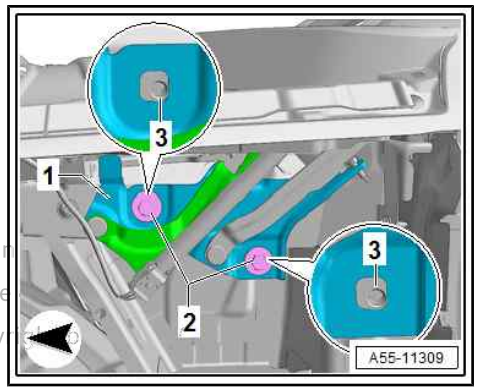
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert hinge according to markings made during removal.

– Adjust hinge ⇒ page 43 .

The following steps must be performed if the wing mounting flange has been renewed:



– Position hinge -1- as shown in illustration and screw in bolts -2-.

- The thread -3- is in the bottom rear corner. This corresponds to the maximum distance from the bonnet.

– Adjust hinge ⇒ page 43 .

- Ensure that there is sufficient clearance when the bonnet/front doors are opened and closed.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - bonnet”, page 37

1.7 Resetting hinge

- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 48).

- If pedestrian protection system has been triggered, triggers for pedestrian protection must be renewed ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 69 ; Pedestrian protection; Overview - pedestrian protection .

NOTICE

The bonnet can be damaged if it is opened while the pedestrian protection system is triggered.

– If the pedestrian protection system has been triggered, reset it before opening the bonnet.

– Protect edges at bonnet and wing from damage with adhesive tape at transition areas.

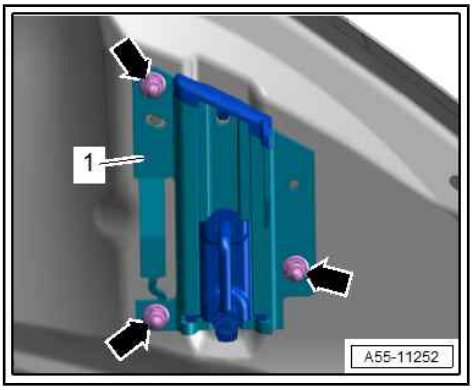
– With the help of a second mechanic, press bonnet hinges ⇒ Item 9 (page 38)
back into initial position simultaneously on both sides until they lock.

1.8 Removing and installing striker

Removing

– Mark installation position of striker for re-installation.

– Remove nuts -arrows-.
– Detach striker -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert striker according to markings made during removal.
– Adjust striker ⇒ page 44 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - bonnet”, page 37

1.9 Removing and installing gas strut

Removing

– Support bonnet or secure it in position.
– Lift retaining clip -1- slightly using a small screwdriver -arrow-, and pull gas strut -2- off ball stud.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Press gas strut onto ball-head pin until it engages audibly.

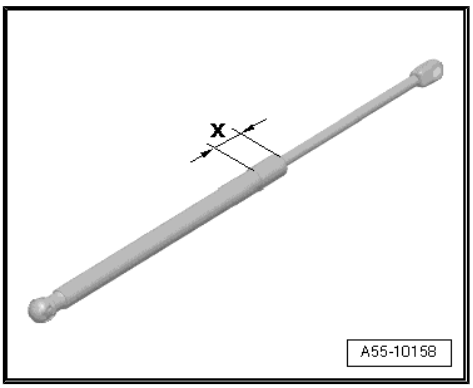
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.10 Releasing gas from gas strut

– Clamp section -x = 50 mm- of gas strut in a vice.

CAUTION

Risk of eye injuries due to metal swarf.
Eye irritation and injury possible.
– Put on safety goggles.

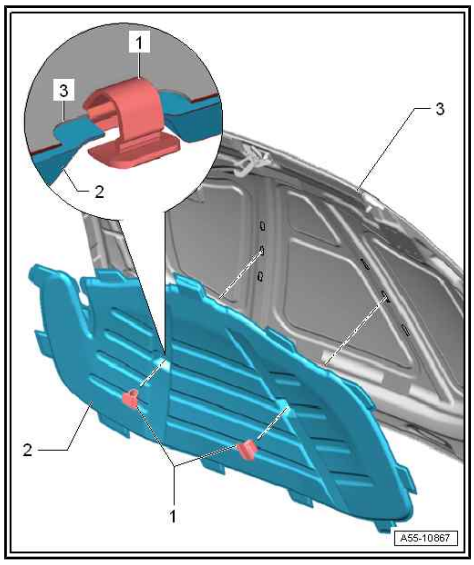


– Saw open cylinder of gas strut in first third of overall cylinder length, based on reference edge at piston-rod end. When doing so, cover area around saw cut with a cloth to catch any fluid which may escape.

1.11 Removing and installing insulation

Removing

– Release retaining clips -1- and detach insulation -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– A4, A5: First push lugs on rear edge of insulation into recesses provided on inner panel -3-.
– RS 4, RS 5: First push lugs on rear edge of insulation into recesses provided on inner panel -3- while at the same time sliding lugs on heat shield into recesses in insulation.
– Push in lugs on front edge and side.
– Retaining clips must engage audibly when pressing in.

1.12 Removing and installing impact guard

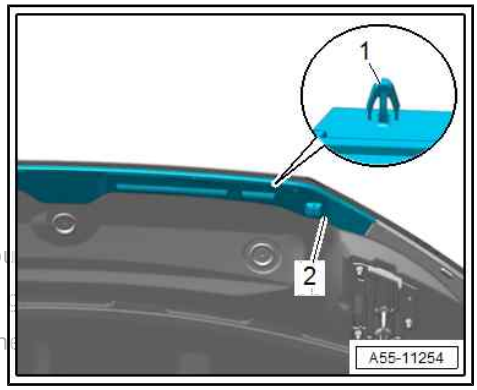
⇒ “1.12.1 Removing and installing impact guard (centre)”, page 50

⇒ “1.12.2 Removing and installing impact guard (side)”, page 50

1.12.1 Removing and installing impact guard (centre)

Removing

– Prise out impact guard (centre) -2-; this will release catches -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Press on fasteners until they engage audibly.

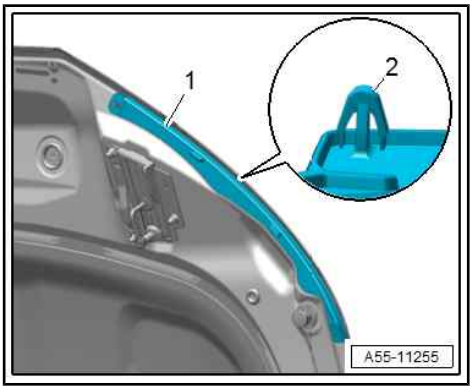
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not
with respect to the correctness of information in this docum

1.12.2 Removing and installing impact guard (side)

Removing

– Loosen impact guard (centre) on the corresponding side ⇒ page 50 .

– Prise out impact guard (side) -1-; this will release catches -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Press on fasteners until they engage audibly.

1.13 Removing and installing Bowden cable

⇒ "1.13.1 Removing and installing Bowden cable for bonnet lock", page 51

⇒ "1.13.2 Removing and installing Bowden cable for bonnet lock release", page 52

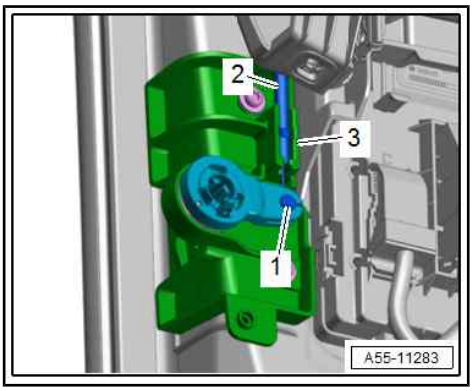
1.13.1 Removing and installing Bowden cable for bonnet lock

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove bracket for onboard supply control unit ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Overview of fitting locations - relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes .

– Release Bowden cable -2- from support bracket -3- and disengage Bowden cable nipple -1-.

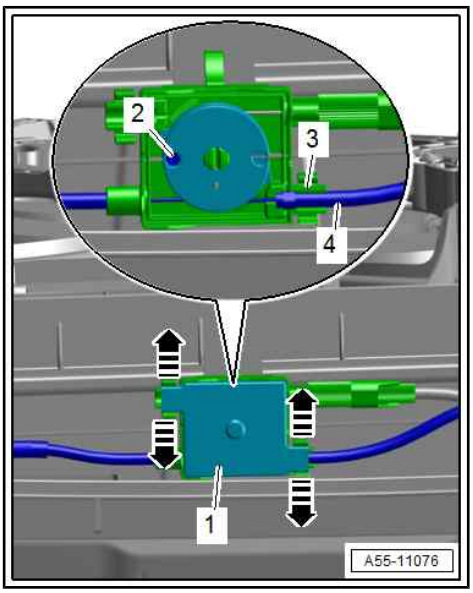


– Release fasteners -arrows- and detach housing cover -1-.

– Release Bowden cable -4- from support bracket -3- and disengage Bowden cable nipple -2-.

– Move Bowden cable clear at lock carrier and at body.

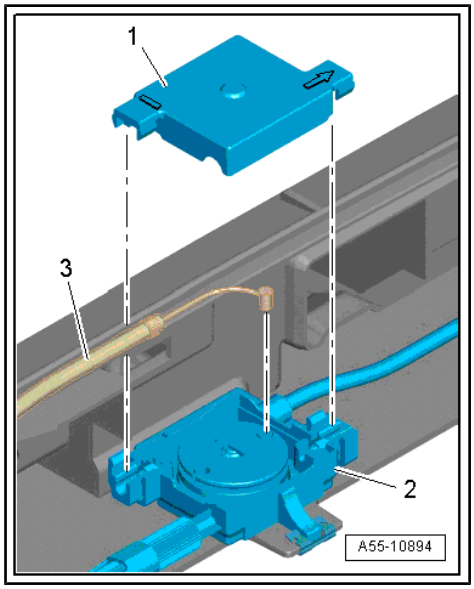
– Detach grommet and pull Bowden cable out towards outside.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

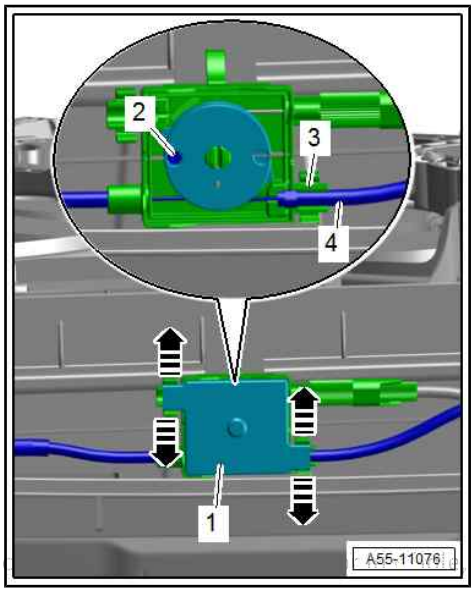
– Engage Bowden cable nipple -3- in roller of coupling unit -2- and press Bowden cable into support bracket.
– Press housing cover -1- on so that arrow points in direction of free connection on coupling unit.
– Adjust Bowden cable using knurled wheel so that bonnet locks are released simultaneously.



1.13.2 Removing and installing Bowden cable for bonnet lock release

Removing

– Remove bonnet lock ⇒ page 53 .
– Release fasteners -arrows- and detach housing cover -1-.
– Release Bowden cable -4- from support bracket -3- and disengage nipple -2- of Bowden cable.
– Release fasteners and detach coupling unit from lock carrier.
– Move Bowden cables clear and guide them out of lock carrier.

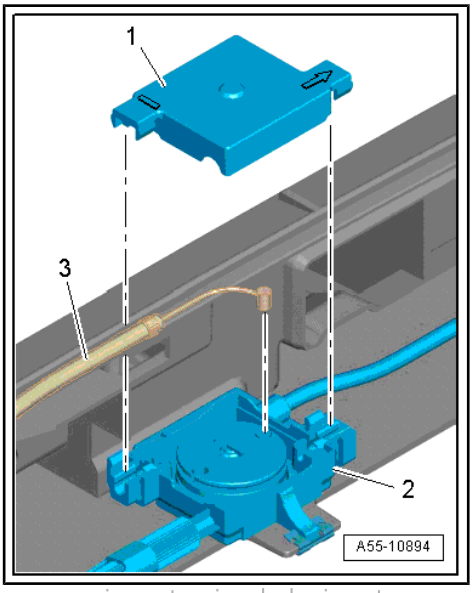


Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or [illegible] is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Engage Bowden cable nipple -3- in roller of coupling unit -2- and press Bowden cable into support bracket.
– Press housing cover -1- on so that arrow points in direction of free connection on coupling unit.
– Adjust Bowden cable using knurled adjuster so that bonnet locks are released simultaneously.

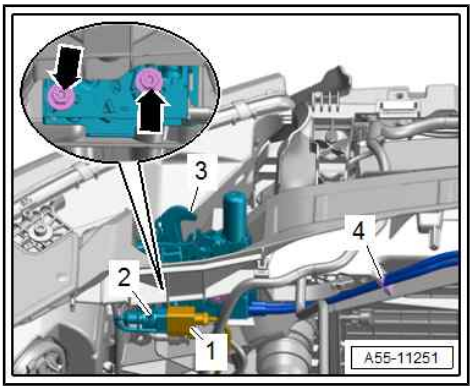


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

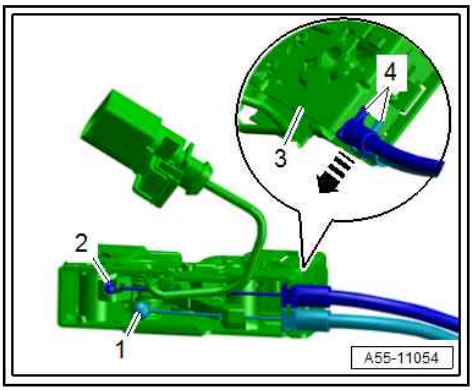
1.14 Removing and installing bonnet lock

Removing

– If necessary, remove air cleaner housing: vehicles with TDI engine ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 23 ; Air cleaner; Removing and installing air cleaner housing ; vehicles with TFSI engine ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 24 ; Air cleaner; Removing and installing air cleaner housing .
– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Move connector -2- clear.
– Prise off clip -4-.
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Move bonnet lock -3- downwards as far as possible.



– Release fasteners -4- and pull support bracket out of mounting -3- -arrow-.
– Pull Bowden cable nipples -1, 2- out of release levers on bonnet lock.
– Detach bonnet lock.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

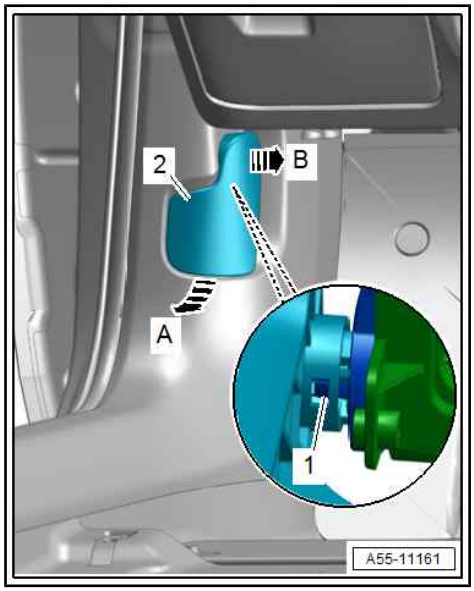
♦ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - bonnet”, page 37

1.15 Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet lock

Removing

– Pull operating lever -2- to rear -arrow A- (this releases bonnet) and hold in this position.

– Release catch -1- and detach operating lever from its mounting towards centre of vehicle, taking care to keep it absolutely horizontal -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

1.16 Removing and installing operating lever for arrester

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

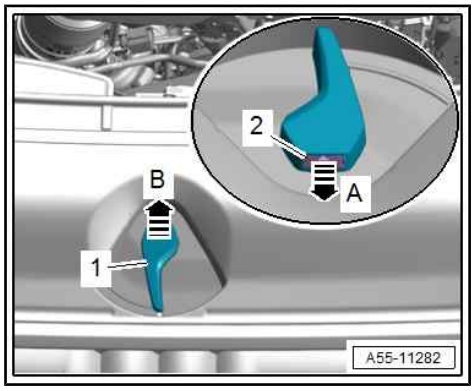
Version 1:

Note:

On version 1, there is a recess for applying the screwdriver.

– Use a small screwdriver to pull securing clip -2- slightly out of operating lever -1- -arrow A-.

– Detach operating lever upwards -arrow B-.

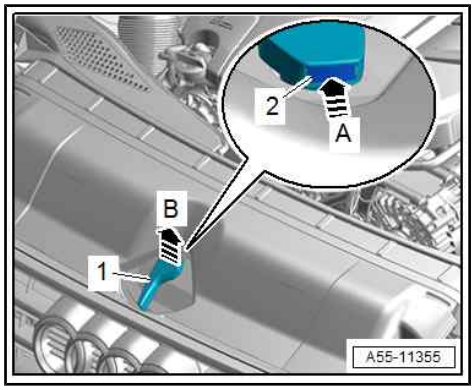


Version 2:

Note:

On version 2, there is no recess for applying the screwdriver.

– Press securing clip -2- inwards -arrow A- and at the same time detach operating lever -1- upwards -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Version 1: Fully insert clip into operating lever.

– Press operating lever on until it engages audibly.

1.17 Removing and installing mounting bracket for operating lever for bonnet lock

Removing

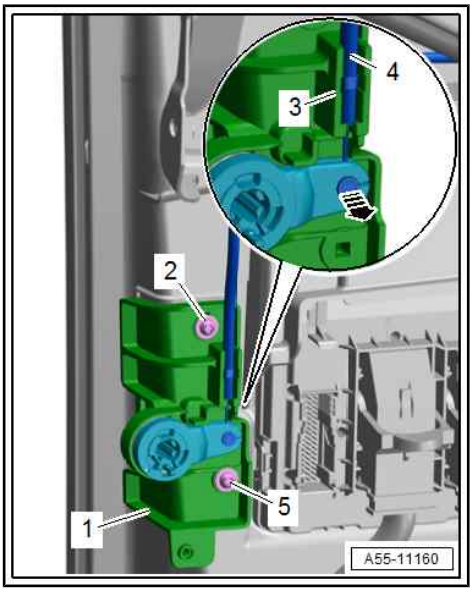
– Remove operating lever for bonnet lock ⇒ page 54 .

– Remove A-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing A-pillar trim .

– Release Bowden cable -4- from support bracket -3- and disengage Bowden cable nipple -arrow-.

– Remove bolts -2, 5-.

– Detach mounting bracket -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - Bowden cable”, page 39

1.18 Removing and installing mounting bracket with Bowden cable for operating lever for arrester

Removing

– Remove operating lever for arrester ⇒ page 54 .

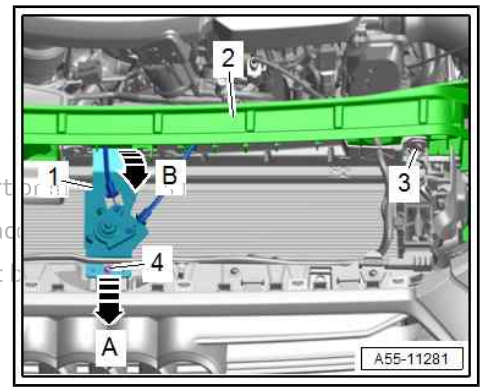
– Remove lock carrier cover ⇒ page 421 .

– Remove bonnet lock and disengage Bowden cable for mounting bracket ⇒ page 53 .

– Remove bolts -3, 4-.

– Pull mounting bracket -1- forwards out of lock carrier -2- -arrow A-, pivot it upwards -arrow B- and detach.

– Detach mounting bracket and move Bowden cables clear.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted. Audi AG does not guarantee or ac
with regard to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - Bowden cable”, page 39

2 Rear lid

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - rear lid”, page 56

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - rear lid power opening”, page 66

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing rear lid”, page 70

⇒ “2.4 Adjusting rear lid”, page 74

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing handle trim”, page 84

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing hinges”, page 85

⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing mounting for gas strut”, page 87

⇒ “2.8 Removing and installing rear lid seal”, page 88

⇒ “2.9 Removing and installing roof frame cover”, page 89

⇒ “2.10 Removing and installing adjusting buffers”, page 93

⇒ “2.11 Removing and installing stop for adjusting buffer”, page 94

⇒ “2.12 Removing and installing gas strut”, page 95

⇒ “2.13 Releasing gas from gas strut”, page 95

⇒ “2.14 Removing and installing extension spring”, page 95

⇒ “2.15 Removing and installing rear lid lock”, page 96

⇒ “2.16 Removing and installing cable for rear lid lock”, page 97

⇒ “2.17 Removing and installing lock cylinder”, page 98

⇒ “2.18 Removing and installing striker”, page 98

⇒ “2.19 Removing and installing power latching motor for rear lid V382 ”, page 99

⇒ “2.20 Removing and installing Bowden cable for power latching system”, page 99

⇒ “2.21 Removing and installing motor for rear lid V444 / V445 ”, page 100

⇒ “2.22 Adapting motor for rear lid V444 / V445 ”, page 102

⇒ “2.23 Removing and installing rear lid control unit J605 ”, page 103

⇒ “2.24 Removing and installing rear lid power opening control unit J938 ”, page 104

⇒ “2.25 Removing and installing rear lid power opening senders G750 / G760 ”, page 105

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1 Exploded view - rear lid

⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - rear lid, A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé”, page 56

⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - rear lid, A4 Avant”, page 59

⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - rear lid, A5 Sportback”, page 61

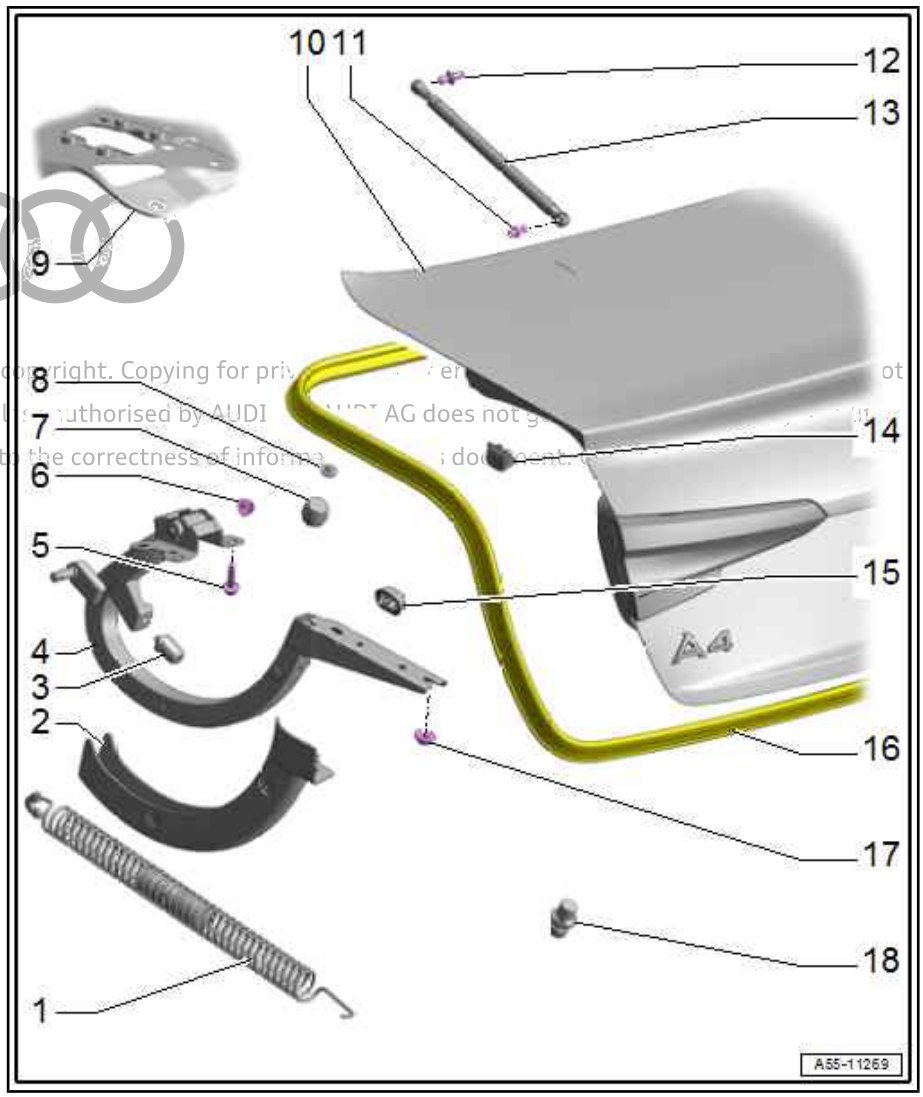
⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - rear lid, A5 Cabriolet”, page 64

2.1.1 Exploded view - rear lid, A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé

- Exploded view - rear lid ⇒ page 57

♦ Exploded view - rear lid locking mechanism ⇒ page 58

Exploded view - rear lid



1 - Extension spring
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 95

2 - Rear lid hinge trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom)

3 - Stop buffer
- ❑ For rear lid hinge

4 - Hinge
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 85

5 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 21 Nm

6 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

7 - Adjusting buffer
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 93
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 84

8 - Buffer

9 - Body

10 - Rear lid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 70
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 74

11 - Ball stud
- ❑ 21 Nm

12 - Ball stud
- ❑ 21 Nm

13 - Gas strut
- ❑ Only on right side of vehicle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 95

14 - Stop
- ❑ On rear lid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 94

15 - Stop
- ❑ At body end
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 94

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

16 - Rear lid seal

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 88

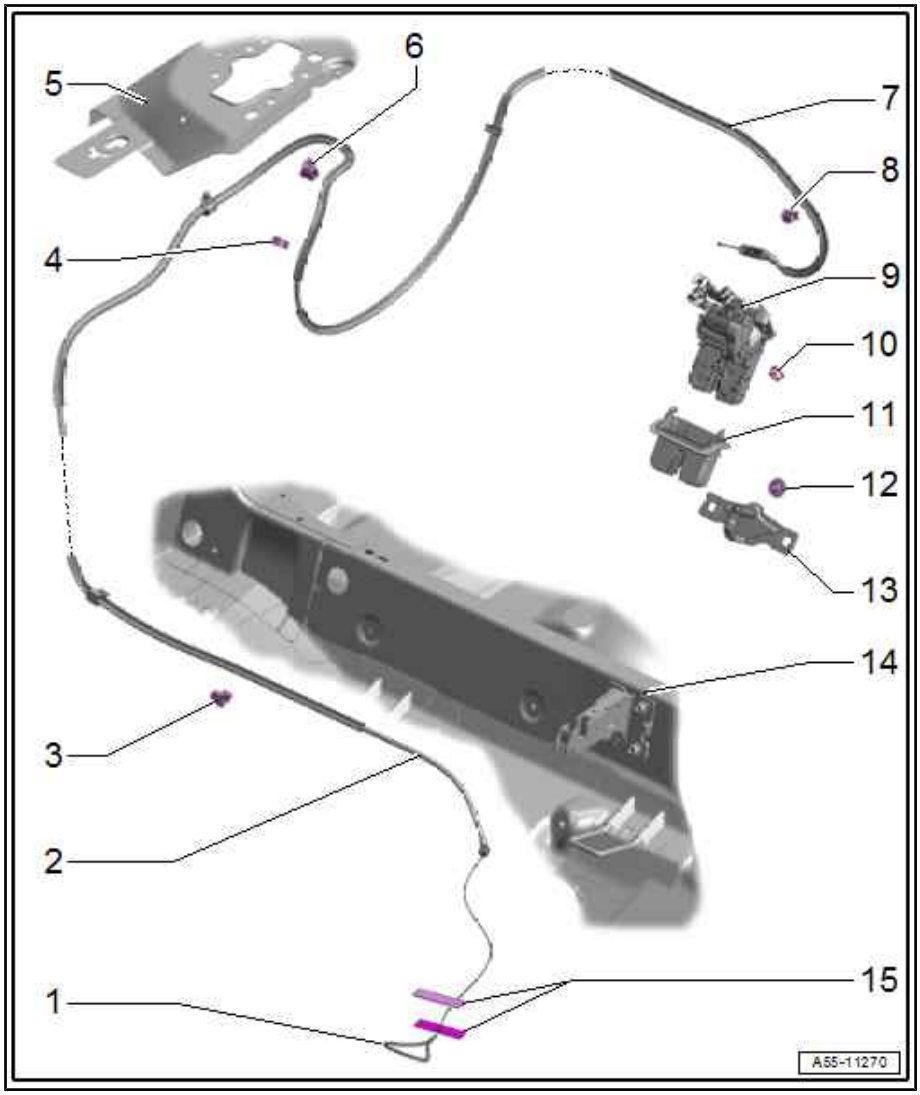
17 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

18 - Adjusting buffer

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 93
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 84

Exploded view - rear lid locking mechanism



1 - Pull ring for manual release cable

- ❑ On seat pan of rear seat bench

2 - Manual release cable

- ❑ Only for fixed backrest

3 - Bowden cable retainer

- ❑ With catch

4 - Bowden cable retainer

- ❑ Without catch

5 - Bracket

- ❑ For seat belt

6 - Bowden cable retainer

- ❑ With catch

7 - Bowden cable to rear lid lock

8 - Bowden cable retainer

- ❑ Without catch

9 - Rear lid lock

- ❑ Rear lid lock unit - VX25-
- ❑ With rear lid central locking motor - V53- , contact switch for locking pawl - F443- and, depending on equipment version, rear lid contact switch - F111-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96

10 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

11 - Trim for rear lid lock

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)

12 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

13 - Striker

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 98
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 83

14 - Floor panel

- ❑ Rear seat bench

15 - Velcro strip

- ❑ For securing pull ring for manual release cable

2.1.2 Exploded view - rear lid, A4 Avant

DANGER

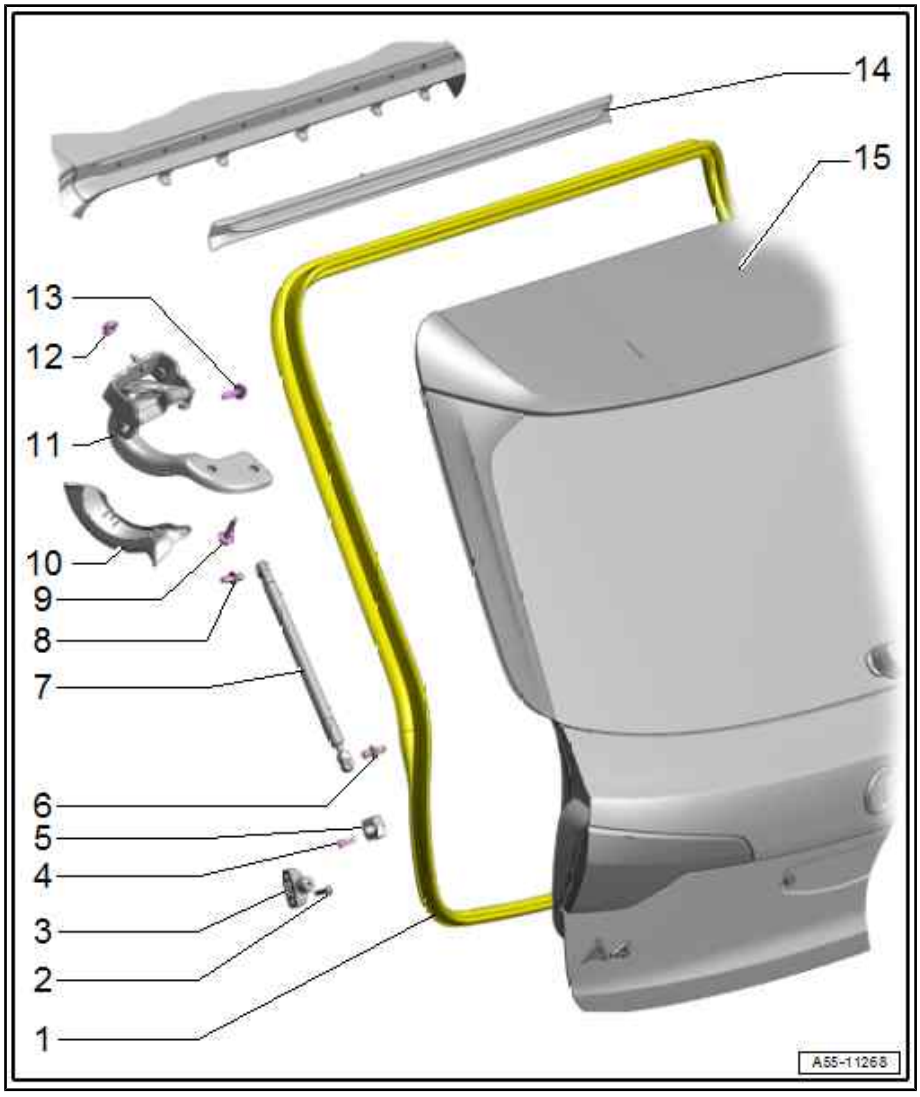
Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

- **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**
- **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**

- ♦ Exploded view - rear lid ⇒ page 59
- ♦ Exploded view - rear lid locking mechanism ⇒ page 60

Exploded view - rear lid

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Rear lid seal
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 88

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

3 - Adjusting buffer
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 94
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 84

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 8 Nm

5 - Stop
- ❑ For adjusting buffer
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 94

6 - Ball stud
- ❑ 21 Nm

7 - Gas strut
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 95
- ❑ Releasing gas ⇒ page 95

8 - Ball stud
- ❑ 21 Nm

9 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 30 Nm

10 - Rear lid hinge trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Exploded view - rear lid trim (bottom)

11 - Hinge
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 85

12 - Nut
- ❑ 21 Nm

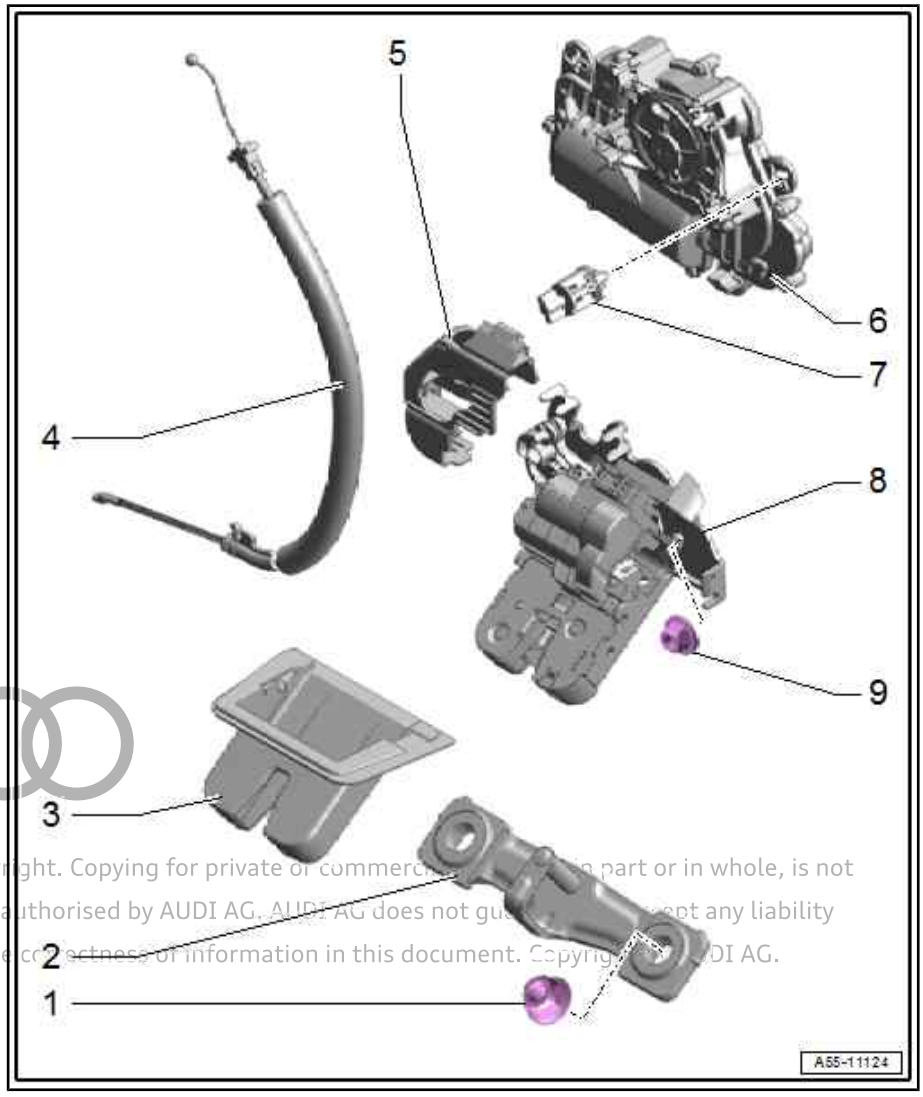
13 - Bolt
- ❑ 21 Nm

14 - Roof frame cover
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 89

15 - Rear lid
- ❑ Depending on equipment version: with damper weight ⇒ Item 20 (page 63)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 71
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 74

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Exploded view - rear lid locking mechanism



1 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

2 - Striker

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 98
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 83

3 - Trim for rear lid lock

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)

4 - Bowden cable for power latching system

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 99

5 - Anti-theft device

- ❑ For rear lid lock

6 - Power latching motor for rear lid - V382-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 99

7 - Fastener

- ❑ For power latching system

8 - Rear lid lock

- ❑ Rear lid lock unit - VX25-
- ❑ With rear lid central locking motor - V53- , contact switch for locking pawl - F443- and, depending on equipment version, rear lid contact switch - F111-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96

9 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

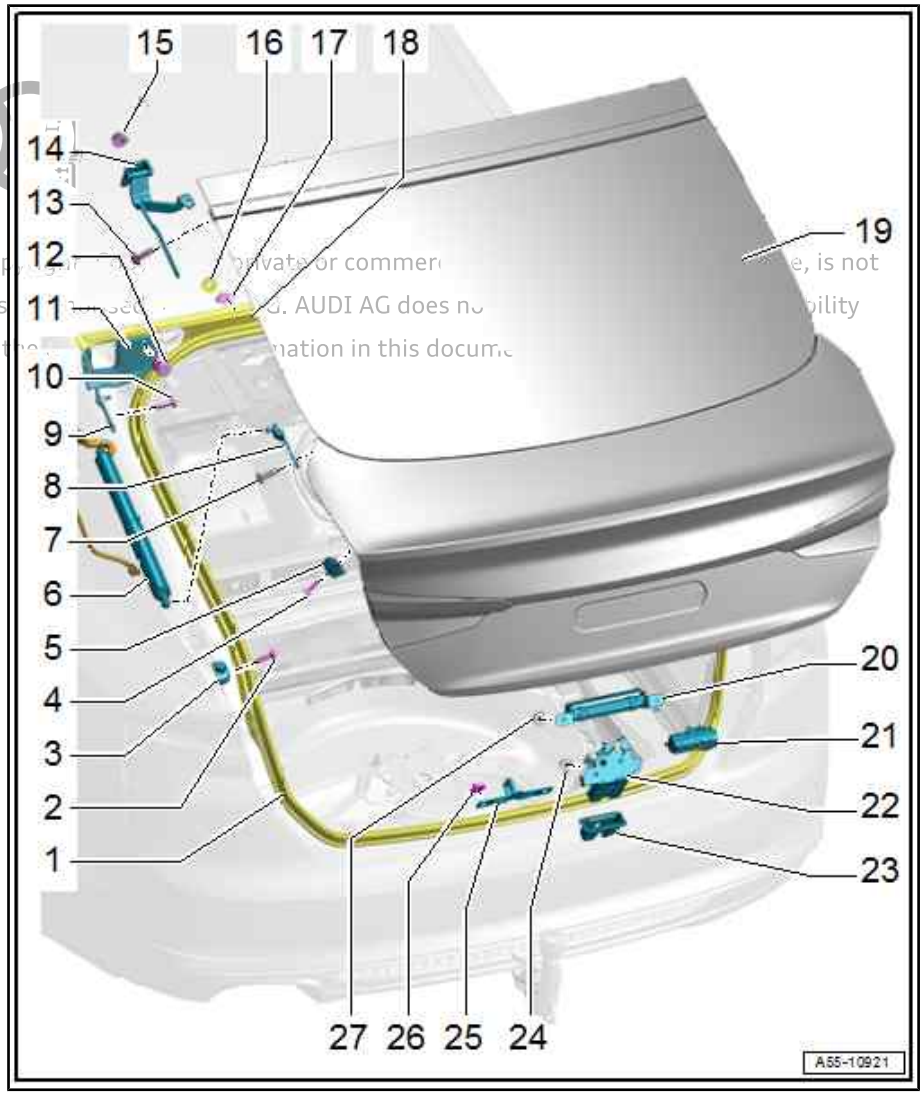
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.3 Exploded view - rear lid, A5 Sportback

DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

- **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**
- **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**



1 - Rear lid seal
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 88

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

3 - Adjusting buffer
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 94
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 84

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 8 Nm

5 - Stop
- ❑ For adjusting buffer
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 94

6 - Motor for rear lid
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 68

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 30 Nm

8 - Mounting
- ❑ With ball stud

9 - Mounting
- ❑ With ball stud

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 30 Nm

11 - Roof frame cover (side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 91

12 - Retaining clip
- ❑ 2x

13 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 21 Nm

14 - Hinge
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 86

15 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

16 - Foam seal
- ❑ 8x
- ❑ Renew if damaged

17 - Retaining clip
- ❑ 8x
- ❑ Renew after removing

Protected by copyright. Private or commercial use, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept liability with respect to the information in this document.

18 - Roof frame cover

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 91

19 - Rear lid

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 72
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 74

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

20 - Damper weight

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment

21 - Rear lid handle release button - E234-

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in luggage compartment

22 - Rear lid lock

- ❑ Rear lid lock unit - VX25-
- ❑ With rear lid central locking motor - V53- , contact switch for locking pawl - F443- and, depending on equipment version, rear lid contact switch - F111-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96

23 - Trim for rear lid lock

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom)

24 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

25 - Striker

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 98
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 83

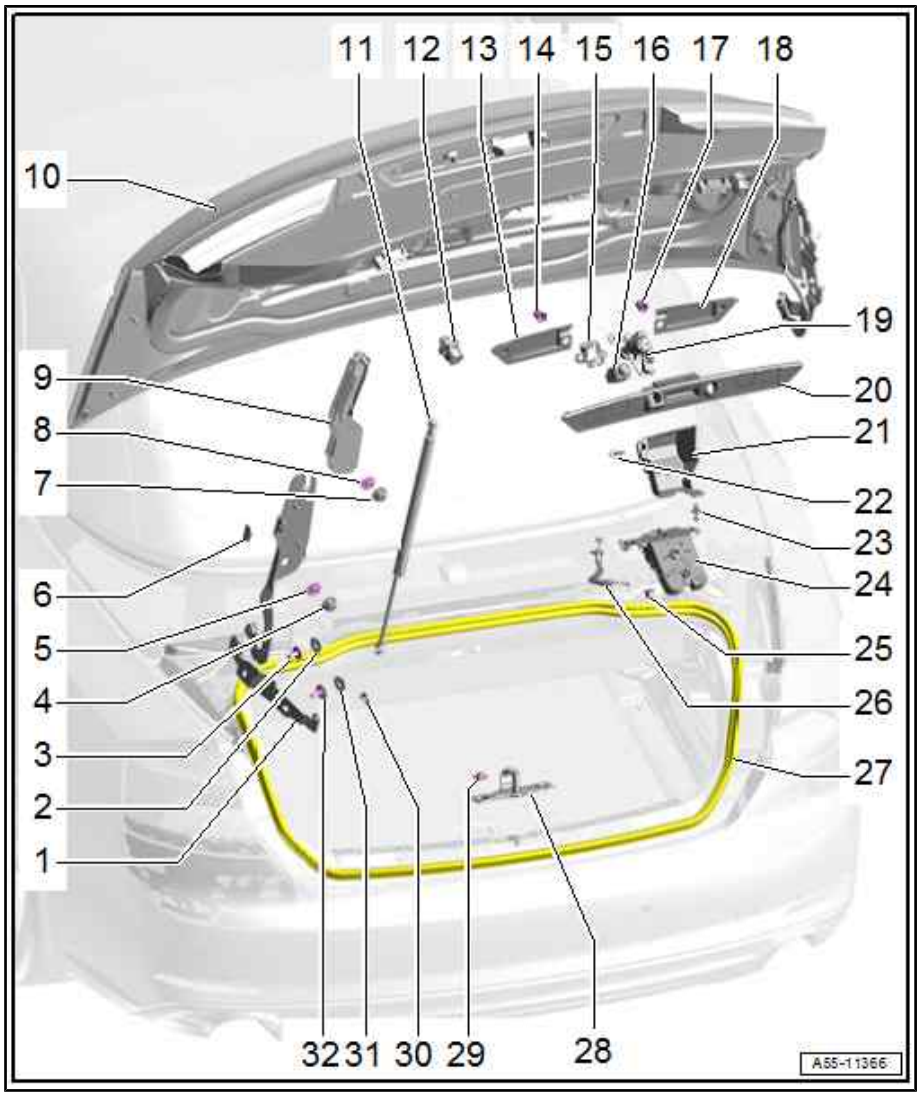
26 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

27 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

2.1.4 Exploded view - rear lid, A5 Cabriolet



1 - Hinge
- ❑ For rear lid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 86

2 - Cover
- ❑ For bolt

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 21 Nm

4 - Cover
- ❑ For nut

5 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

6 - Cap

7 - Cover
- ❑ For nut

8 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

9 - Mounting
- ❑ For gas strut
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 87

10 - Rear lid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 73
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 74

11 - Gas strut
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 95
- ❑ Releasing gas ⇒ page 95

12 - Adjusting buffer
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 93
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 84

13 - Anti-theft bracket (left-side) with nut
- ❑ 4 Nm
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 84

14 - Cap nut
- ❑ 4 Nm

15 - Retaining clip
- ❑ For reversing camera

16 - Reversing camera - R189-

17 - Cap nut
- ❑ 4 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

18 - Anti-theft bracket (right-side) with nut

- ❑ 4 Nm
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 84

19 - Lock cylinder

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 98

20 - Handle trim

- ❑ With rear lid handle release button - E234- , cannot be renewed separately
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 84

21 - Anti-theft bracket

- ❑ For lock cylinder
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 98

22 - Bolt

- ❑ 5 Nm

23 - Fastener with bolt

24 - Rear lid lock

- ❑ Rear lid lock unit - VX25-
- ❑ With rear lid central locking motor - V53- , contact switch for locking pawl - F443- and, depending on equipment version, rear lid contact switch - F111-
- ❑ With rear lid contact switch for anti-theft alarm - F123-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96

25 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

26 - Cable

- ❑ For rear lid lock
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 97

27 - Rear lid seal

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 88

28 - Striker

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 98
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 83

29 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

30 - Cap

31 - Cover

- ❑ For bolt

32 - Fitted bolt

- ❑ 21 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2 Exploded view - rear lid power opening

⇒ “2.2.1 Exploded view - rear lid power opening, A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé, A5 Cabriolet”, page 66

⇒ “2.2.2 Exploded view - rear lid power opening, A4 Avant”, page 66

⇒ “2.2.3 Exploded view - rear lid power opening, A5 Sportback”, page 68

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2.1 Exploded view - rear lid power opening, A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé, A5 Cabriolet

1 - Rear lid power opening sender - G750-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 105

2 - Rear lid power opening sender 2 - G760-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 105

3 - Rear lid power opening control unit - J938-

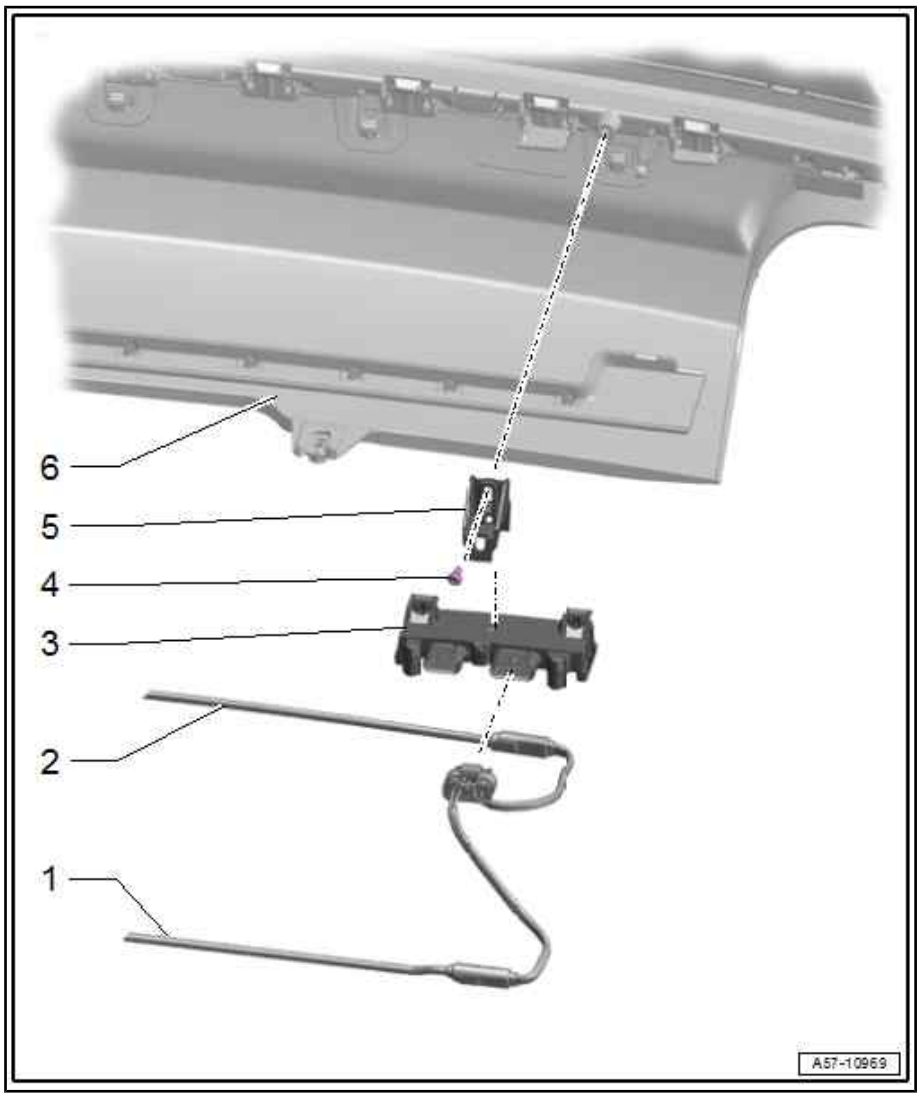
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 104

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

5 - Bracket

6 - Bumper cover (rear)

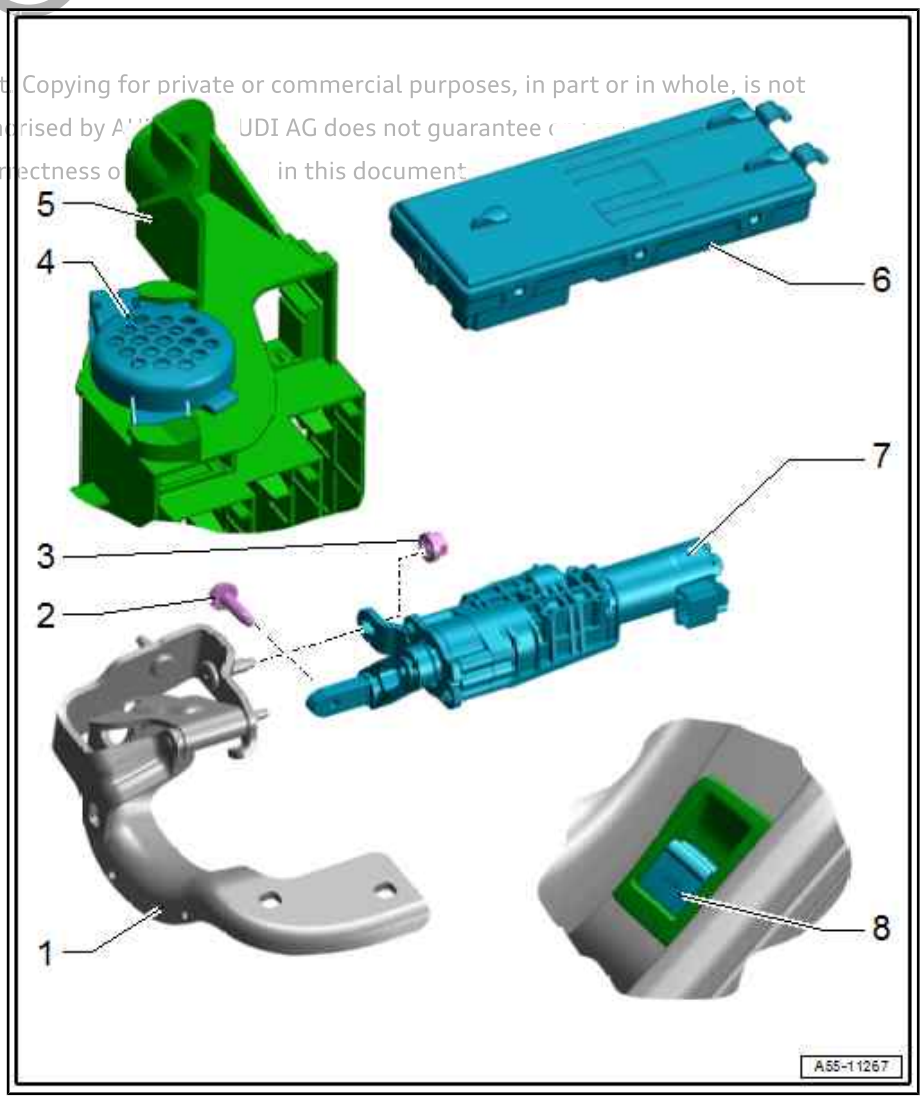


2.2.2 Exploded view - rear lid power opening, A4 Avant

- Exploded view - rear lid power opening ⇒ page 66
- Exploded view - sensor-operated rear lid opening ⇒ page 67

Exploded view - rear lid power opening

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document.



1 - Hinge

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 85

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 20 Nm + 90°

3 - Nut

- ❑ 30 Nm

4 - Rear lid warning buzzer - H32-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing rear lid warning buzzer - H32-

5 - Relay and fuse carrier 2 - SR2-

- ❑ In luggage compartment (left-side)

6 - Rear lid control unit - J605-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 103

7 - Motor for rear lid

- ❑ Left-side: motor 1 for rear lid - V444- , right-side: motor 2 for rear lid - V445-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 100

8 - Rear lid remote release button - E233-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing rear lid remote release button - E233-

Exploded view - sensor-operated rear lid opening

1 - Rear lid power opening sender - G750-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 105

2 - Rear lid power opening sender 2 - G760-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 105

3 - Rear lid power opening control unit - J938-

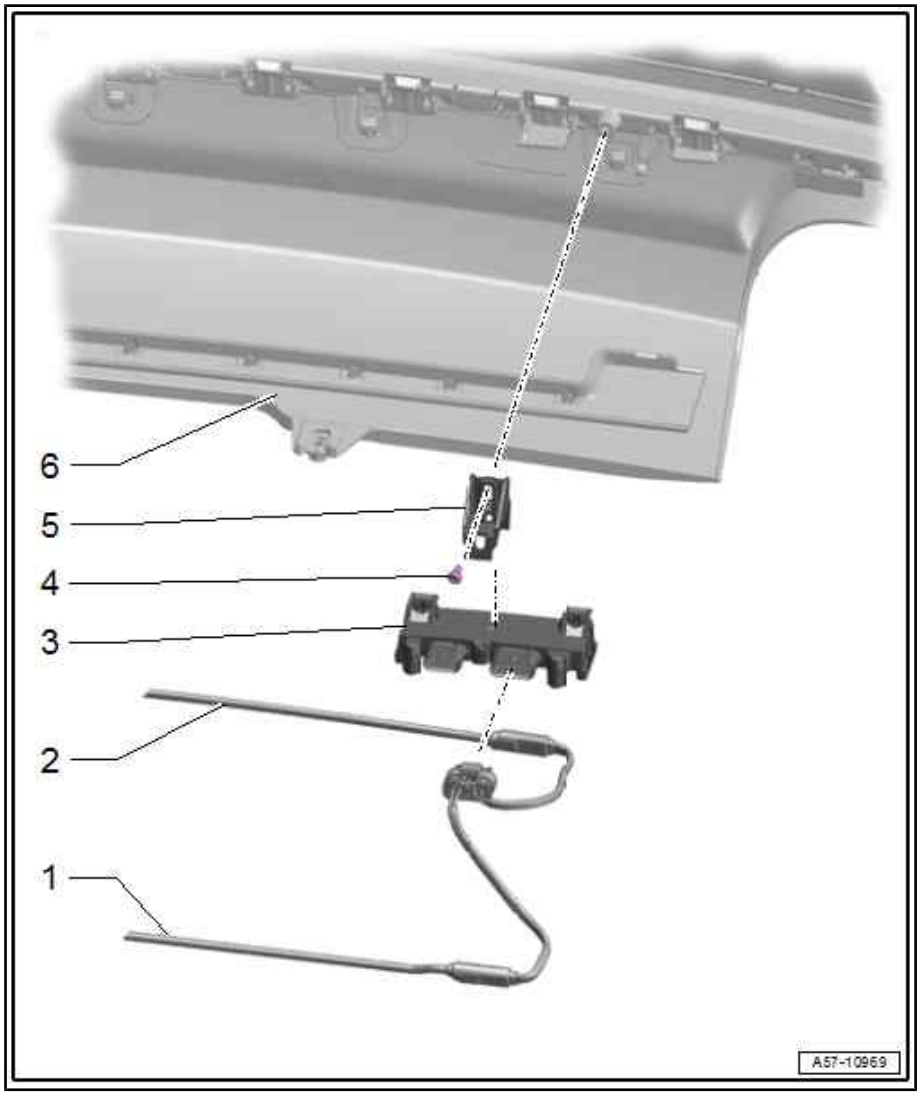
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 104

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

5 - Bracket

6 - Bumper cover (rear)

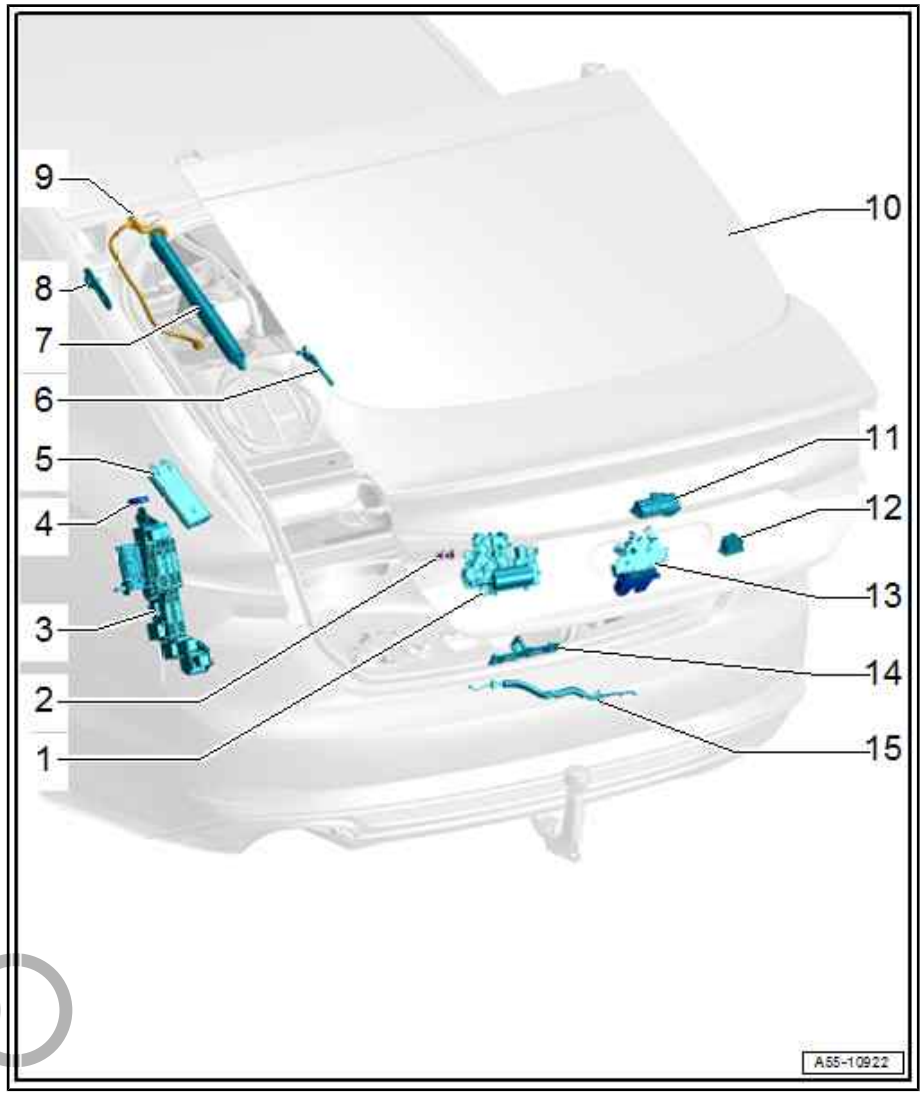


2.2.3 Exploded view - rear lid power opening, A5 Sportback

- ♦ Exploded view - rear lid power opening ⇒ page 68
- ♦ Exploded view - sensor-operated rear lid opening ⇒ page 69

Exploded view - rear lid power opening

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Power latching motor for rear lid - V382-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 99

2 - Fastener

- ❑ For power latching system

3 - Relay and fuse carrier 2 - SR2-

4 - Rear lid warning buzzer - H32-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing rear lid warning buzzer - H32-

5 - Rear lid control unit - J605-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 103

6 - Mounting

- ❑ With ball stud

7 - Motor for rear lid

- ♦ Left-side: motor 1 for rear lid - V444- with sensor in motor 1 for rear lid - G745- / right-side: motor 2 for rear lid - V445- with sensor in motor 2 for rear lid - G746-
  - ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 101

8 - Mounting

- ❑ With ball stud

9 - Grommet

10 - Rear lid

11 - Rear lid handle release button - E234-

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in luggage compartment

12 - Button to close rear lid in luggage compartment - E406-

- ❑ Version with locking button in rear lid - E806-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing button to close rear lid in luggage compartment - E406- .

13 - Rear lid lock

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96

14 - Striker

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 56

15 - Bowden cable for power latching system

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 99

Exploded view - sensor-operated rear lid opening

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Rear lid power opening sender - G750-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 105

2 - Rear lid power opening sender 2 - G760-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 105

3 - Rear lid power opening control unit - J938-

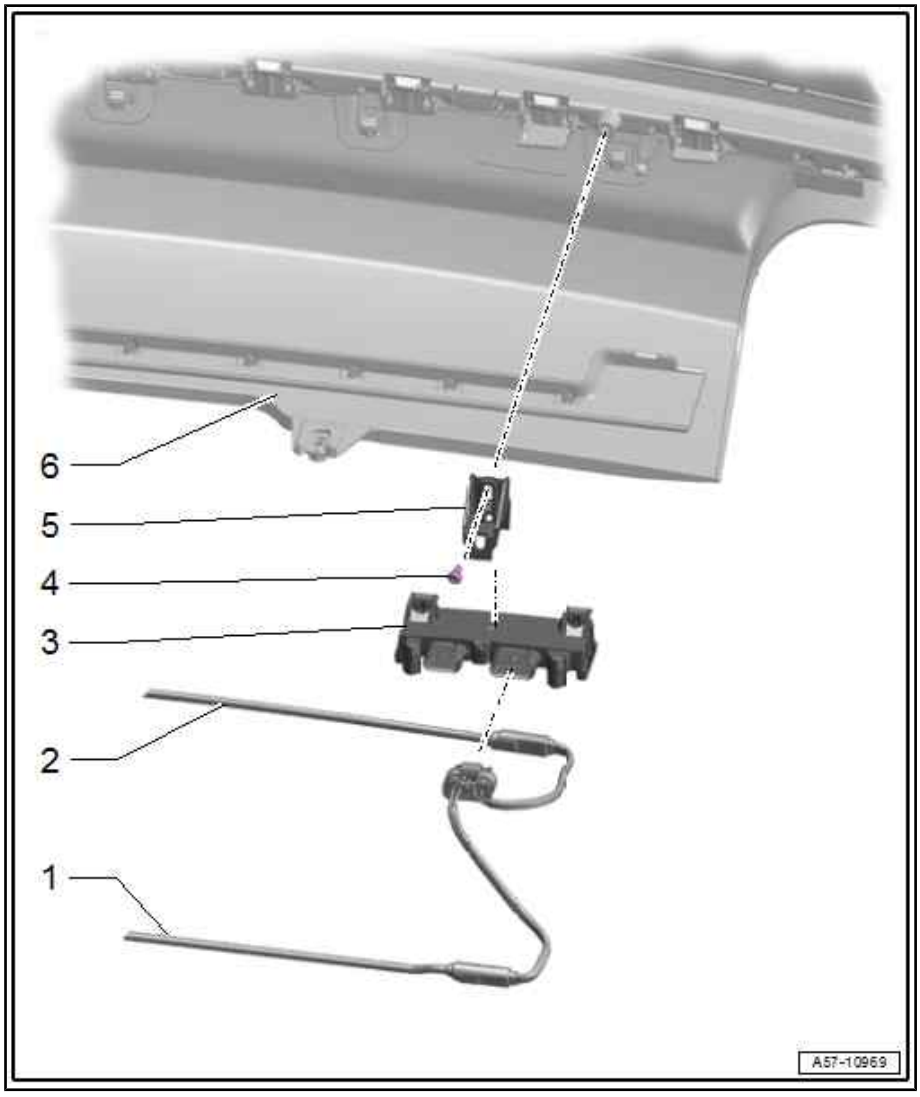
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 104

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

5 - Bracket

6 - Bumper cover (rear)



2.3 Removing and installing rear lid

⇒ "2.3.1 Removing and installing rear lid - A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé", page 70

⇒ "2.3.2 Removing and installing rear lid - A4 Avant", page 71

⇒ "2.3.3 Removing and installing rear lid - A5 Sportback", page 72

⇒ "2.3.4 Removing and installing rear lid - A5 Cabriolet", page 73

2.3.1 Removing and installing rear lid - A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé

- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 71).
- Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary ⇒ page 71 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

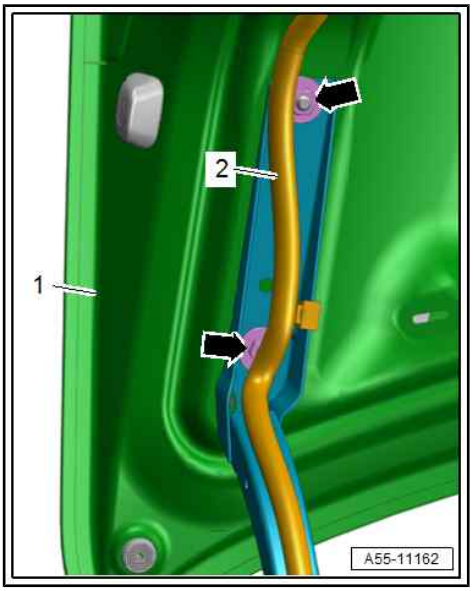
Removing

– Remove rear lid trim (bottom) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) .

– Unplug electrical connectors and move wiring harness -2- clear.

– Remove nuts -arrows-.

– Remove rear lid -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Adjust rear lid ⇒ page 74 .

Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary:

– Calibrate reversing camera - R189- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Reversing camera system .

• Note conditions under which it is necessary to calibrate reversing camera - R189- .

– Calibrate rear overhead view camera - R246- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Overhead view camera .

• Note conditions under which it is necessary to calibrate rear overhead view camera - R246- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ "2.1.1 Exploded view - rear lid, A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé", page 56

2.3.2 Removing and installing rear lid - A4 Avant

DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

– If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.

– Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .

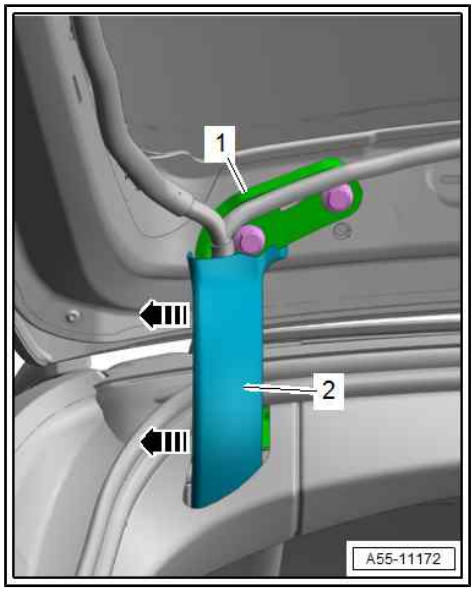
• A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 72).

• Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary ⇒ page 72 .

Removing

– Remove rear lid trim (top) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (top) .

– Release catches -arrows- and detach cover -2- from hinge -1-.
– Unplug electrical connectors and aerial wires, and move wiring harness clear.
– Remove gas strut ⇒ page 95 .



– Remove bolts -2, 3-.
– Remove rear lid -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Adjust rear lid ⇒ page 74 .

Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary:

– Calibrate reversing camera - R189- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Reversing camera system .
• Note conditions under which it is necessary to calibrate reversing camera - R189- .
– Calibrate rear overhead view camera - R246- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Overhead view camera .
• Note conditions under which it is necessary to calibrate rear overhead view camera - R246- .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - rear lid, A4 Avant”, page 59

2.3.3 Removing and installing rear lid - A5 Sportback

DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

– **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**
– **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**

• A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 73).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Unauthorized distribution and/or commercial exploitation of the document may result in legal prosecution. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary ⇒ page 73 .

Removing

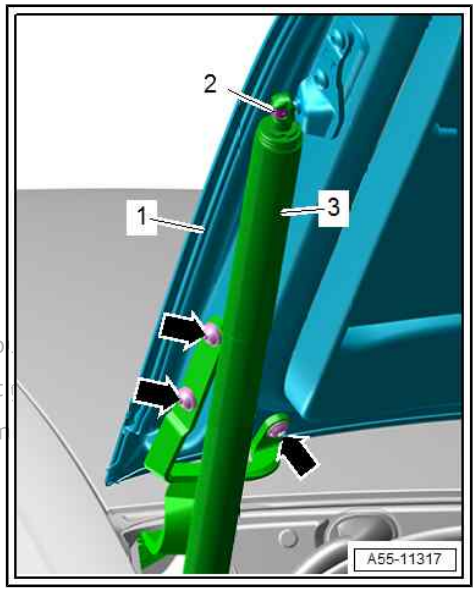
– Remove rear lid trim (top) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (top) .

– Unplug electrical connectors and aerial wires, and move wiring harness clear.

– Lift retaining clip -2- slightly using a small screwdriver, and pull spindle motor -3- off ball stud.

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Remove rear lid -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Adjust rear lid ⇒ page 74 .

Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p
with respect to the correctness of information in this docum

– Calibrate reversing camera - R189- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Reversing camera system .

- Note conditions under which it is necessary to calibrate reversing camera - R189- .

– Calibrate rear overhead view camera - R246- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Overhead view camera .

- Note conditions under which it is necessary to calibrate rear overhead view camera - R246- .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - rear lid, A5 Sportback”, page 61

2.3.4 Removing and installing rear lid - A5 Cabriolet

- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 74).
- Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary ⇒ page 74 .

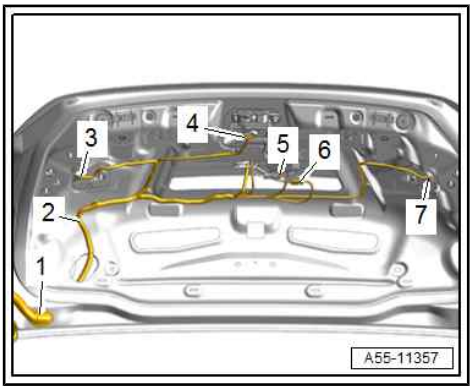
Removing

– Remove rear lid trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) .

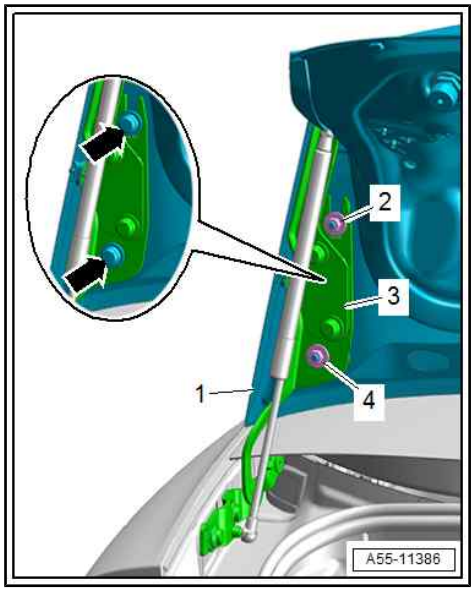
– Unplug electrical connectors -3 ... 7-.

– Move electrical wiring harness -2- clear at rear lid.

– Pull grommet -1- out of opening in rear lid and guide out electrical wiring harness.



– Pry off covers -arrows-.
– Loosen nut -2-.
– Unscrew nut -4-.
– With the assistance of a second mechanic, detach rear lid -1- from hinge -3- and set it down on a soft surface.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- When inserting grommet in rear lid, make sure it is seated correctly.

– Adjust rear lid ⇒ page 74 .

Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary :

– Calibrate reversing camera - R189- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Reversing camera system .

- Note conditions under which it is necessary to calibrate reversing camera - R189- .

– Calibrate rear overhead view camera - R246- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Overhead view camera .

- Note conditions under which it is necessary to calibrate rear overhead view camera - R246- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - rear lid, A5 Cabriolet”, page 64

2.4 Adjusting rear lid

⇒ “2.4.1 Adjustment dimensions - A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé”, page 74

⇒ “2.4.2 Adjustment dimensions - A4 Avant ”, page 76

⇒ “2.4.3 Adjustment dimensions - A5 Sportback ”, page 77

⇒ “2.4.4 Adjustment dimensions - A5 Cabriolet ”, page 78

⇒ “2.4.5 Lateral, longitudinal and height adjustment at hinge - A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé”, page 78

⇒ “2.4.6 Longitudinal and height adjustment at hinge - A4 Avant”, page 80

⇒ “2.4.7 Longitudinal and height adjustment at hinge - A5 Sportback ”, page 81

⇒ “2.4.8 Longitudinal and height adjustment at hinge - A5 Cabriolet”, page 82

⇒ “2.4.9 Height adjustment at striker”, page 83

⇒ “2.4.10 Height adjustment using adjusting buffer”, page 84

2.4.1 Adjustment dimensions - A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé

A - Rear lid to side panel (top)

- A4: gap width = 3.5 mm
- A5: gap width = 3.2 mm

B - Rear lid to side panel

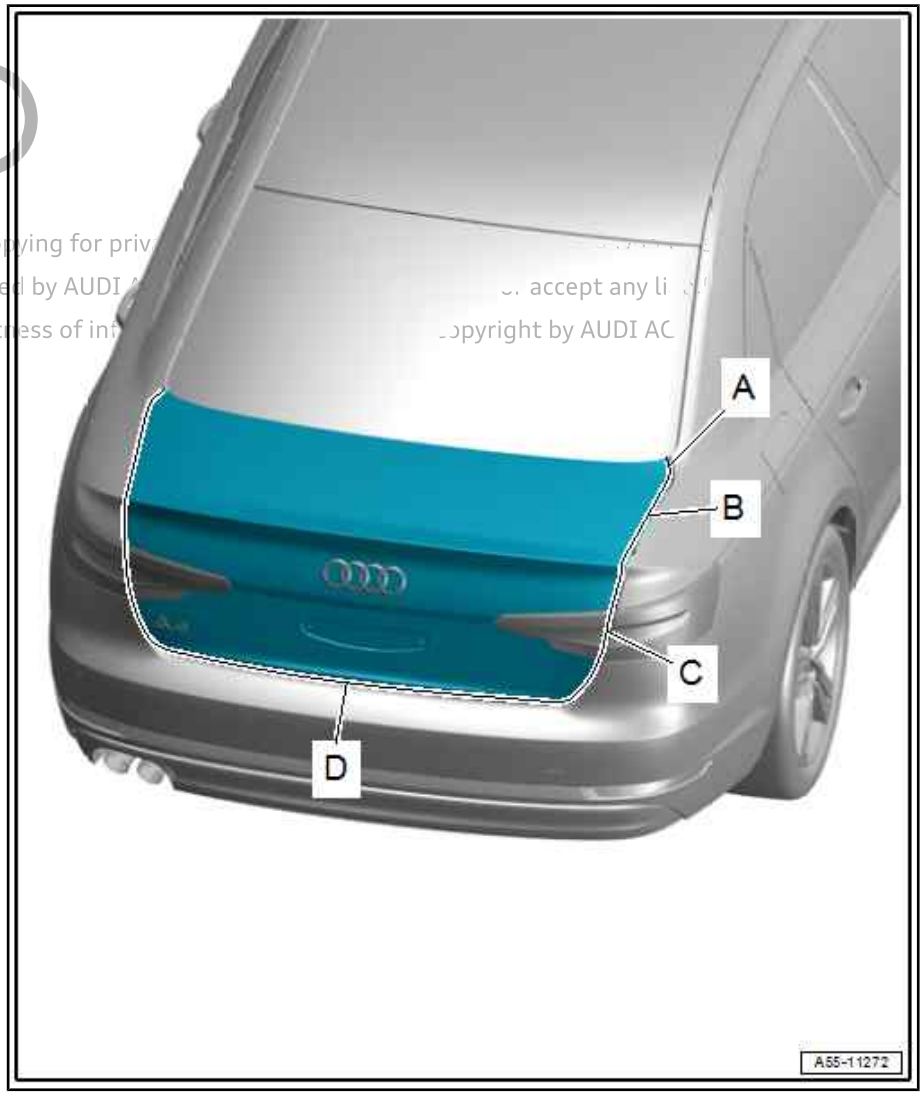
- A4: gap width = 3.5 mm
- A5: gap width = 3.2 mm

C - Rear lid to side panel

- A4: gap width = 3.5 mm
- A5: gap width = 3.6 mm

D - Rear lid to rear cross panel

- Gap width = 5.0 mm



Protected by copyright. Copying for priv... accept any li... with respect to the correctness of inf... opyright by AUDI AC...

2.4.2 Adjustment dimensions - A4 Avant

A - Rear lid to roof

- Gap width = 4.0 mm

B - Rear lid to side panel (top)

- Gap width = 4.0 mm

C - Rear lid to side panel (bottom)

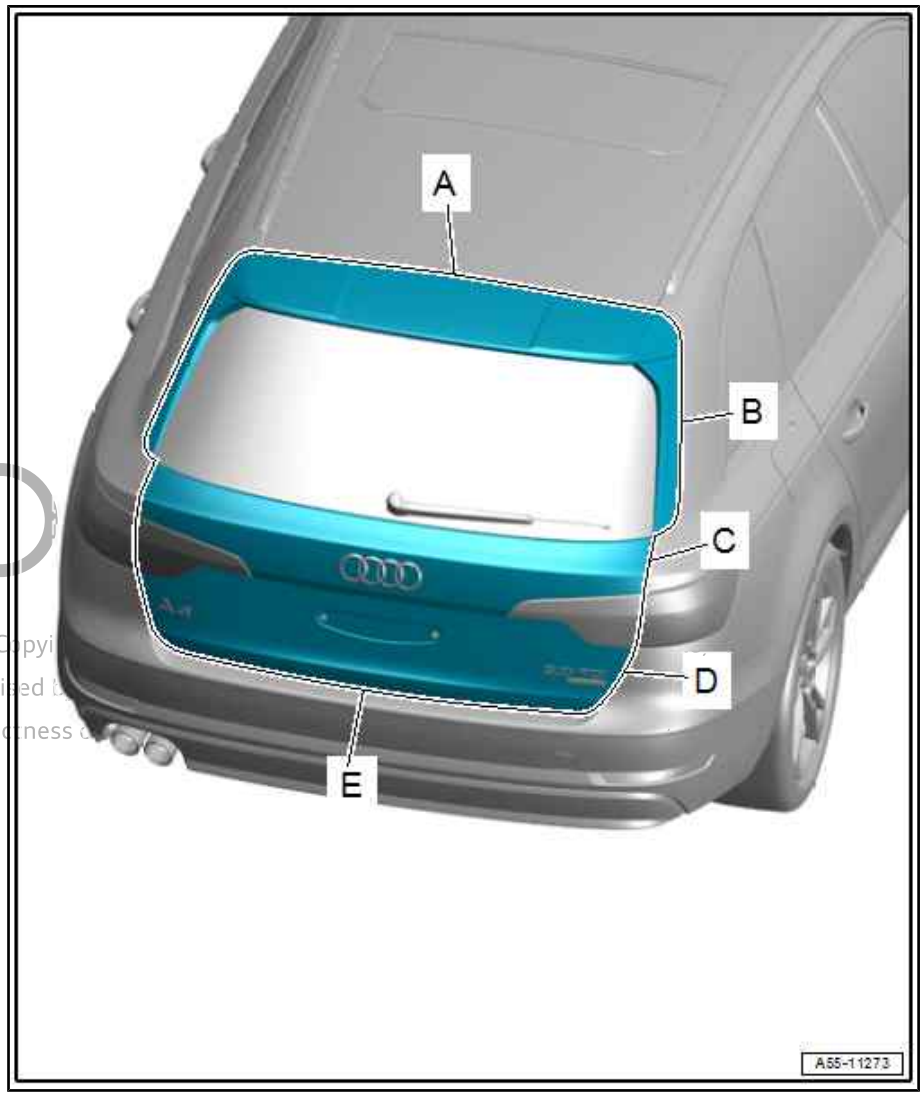
- Gap width = 3.5 mm

D - Rear lid to side panel (bottom)

- Gap width = 3.5 mm

E - Rear lid to rear cross panel

- Gap width = 5.0 mm



Protected by copyright. Copyi
permitted unless authorised
with respect to the correctness

2.4.3 Adjustment dimensions - A5 Sportback

A - Rear lid to roof

- Gap width = 5.0 mm

B - Rear lid to side panel (top)

- Gap width = 3.5 mm

C - Rear window to side panel

- Gap width = 3.2 mm

D - Rear lid to side panel

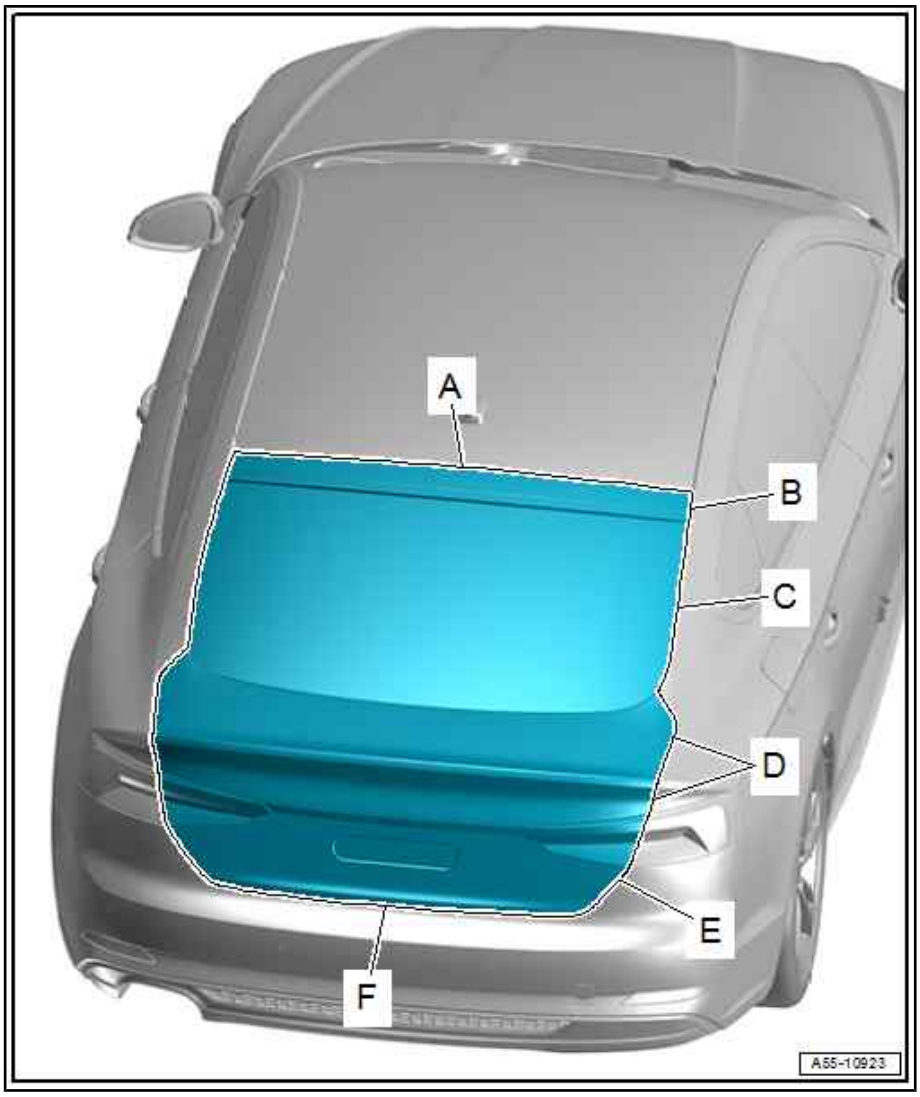
- Gap width = 3.2 mm

E - Rear lid to bumper

- Gap width = 3.5 mm

F - Rear lid to bumper

- Gap width = 3.7 mm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4.4 Adjustment dimensions - A5 Cabriolet

A - Rear lid to convertible roof compartment lid

- Gap width = 4.0 mm

B - Rear lid to side panel

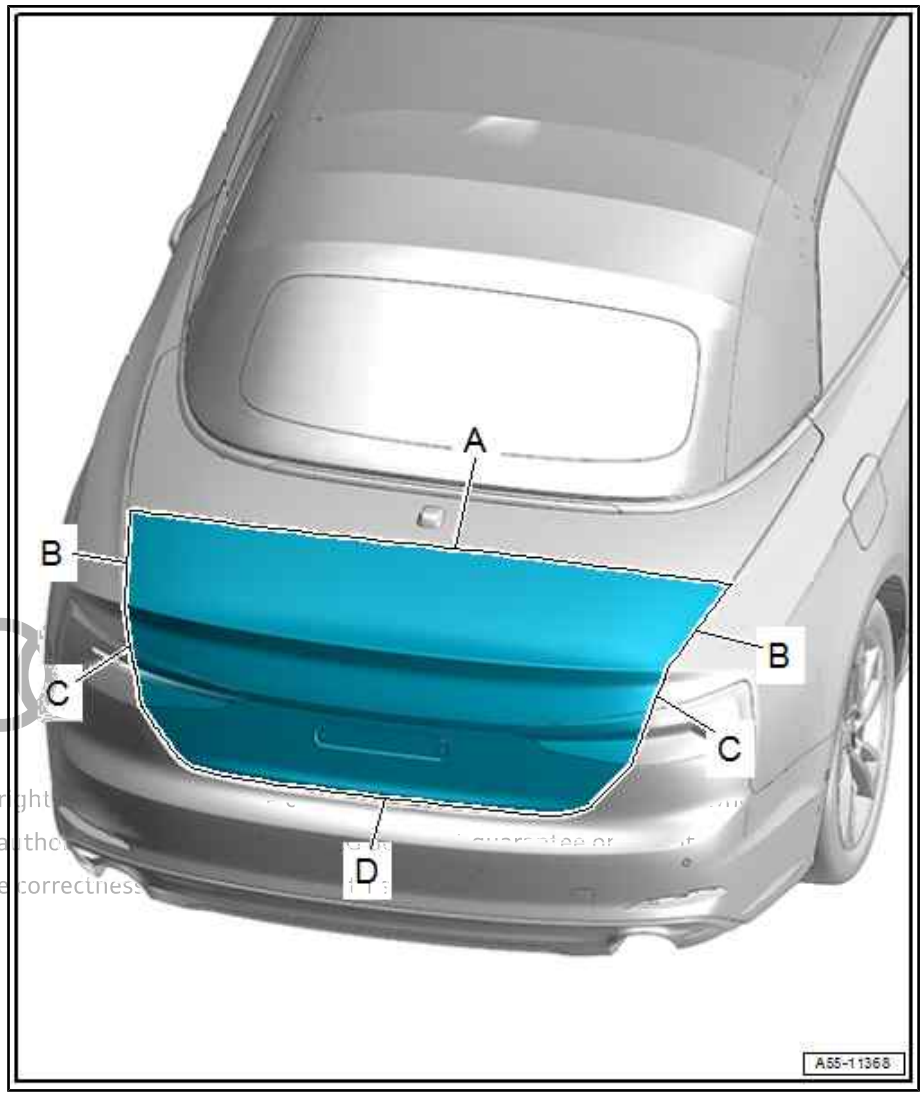
- Gap width = 3.5 mm

C - Rear lid to side panel

- Gap width = 3.5 mm

D - Rear lid to bumper

- Gap width = 5.0 mm



Protected by copyright
permitted unless
with respect to the

2.4.5 Lateral, longitudinal and height adjustment at hinge - A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé

- ♦ Lateral adjustment at hinge - A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé ⇒ page 79
- ♦ Longitudinal adjustment at hinge - A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé ⇒ page 79
- ♦ Height adjustment at hinge - A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé ⇒ page 79
- Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 74

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Setting gauge - 3371-



Procedure

Lateral adjustment at hinge - A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé:

– Loosen bolts -arrows-.

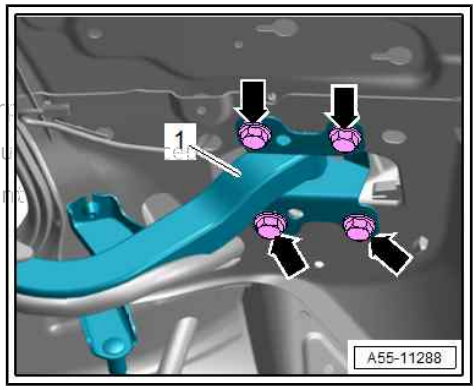
– Adjust lateral position of rear lid at hinge -1-.

– Tighten bolts.

Copyright AUDI AG. For private or commercial purposes permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - rear lid, A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé”, page 56



Longitudinal adjustment at hinge - A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé:

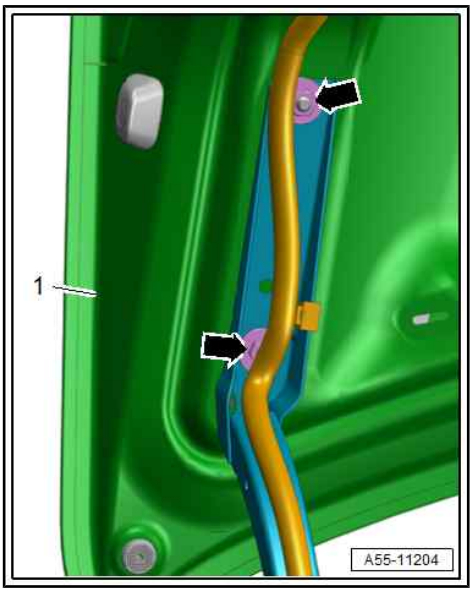
– Unscrew nuts -arrows-.

– Adjust rear lid -1- lengthwise.

– Tighten nuts.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - rear lid, A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé”, page 56



Height adjustment at hinge - A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé:

– Loosen nut -1-.

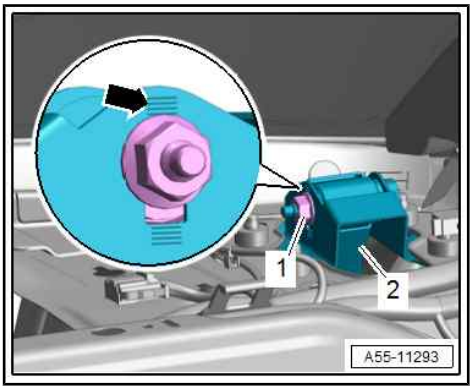
– Adjust height of rear lid at hinge -2-.

• Use markings on mounting bracket -arrow- when adjusting height.

– Tighten nut.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - rear lid, A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé”, page 56



2.4.6 Longitudinal and height adjustment at hinge - A4 Avant

- Height adjustment at hinge - A4 Avant ⇒ page 80
- Longitudinal adjustment at hinge - A4 Avant ⇒ page 80
- Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 76

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Setting gauge - 3371-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, ... not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

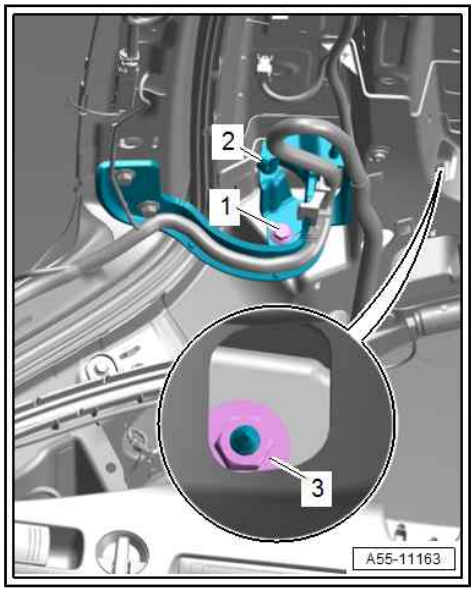
Procedure

Height adjustment at hinge - A4 Avant:

– Loosen bolt -1- and nut -3-.
– Adjust height of rear lid at hinge -2-.
– Tighten bolt and nut.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - rear lid, A4 Avant”, page 59

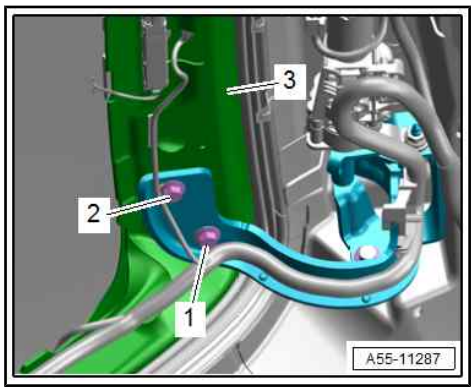


Longitudinal adjustment at hinge - A4 Avant:

– Loosen bolts -1, 2-.
– Adjust rear lid -3- lengthwise.
– Tighten bolts.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - rear lid, A4 Avant”, page 59



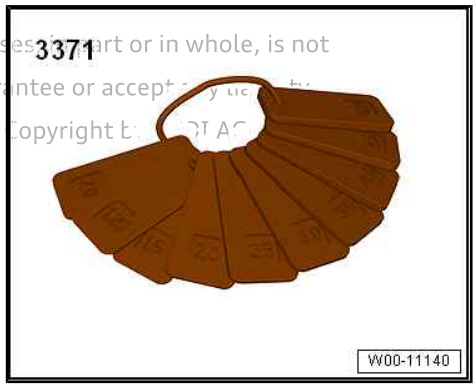
2.4.7 Longitudinal and height adjustment at hinge - A5 Sportback

- Height adjustment at hinge - A5 Sportback ⇒ page 81
- Longitudinal adjustment at hinge - A5 Sportback ⇒ page 82
- Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 77

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Setting gauge - 3371-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



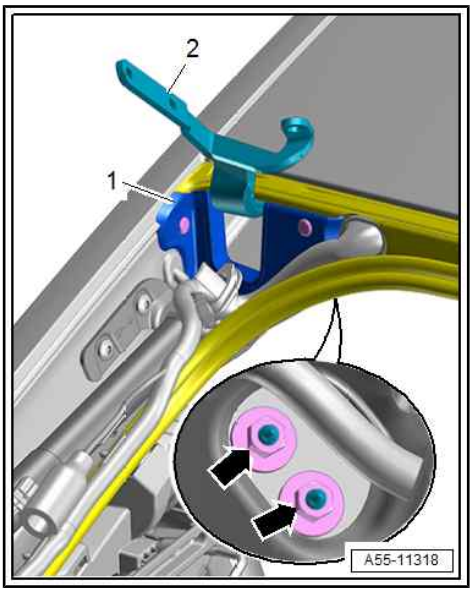
Procedure

Height adjustment at hinge - A5 Sportback:

– Unscrew nuts -arrows-.
– Adjust height of rear lid at hinge -2-.
– Tighten nuts.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - rear lid, A5 Sportback”, page 61

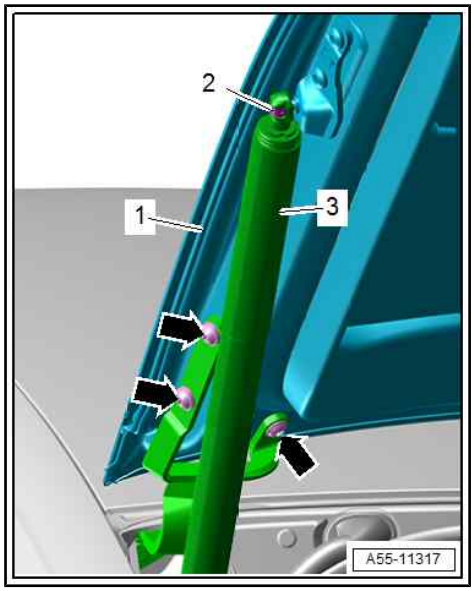


Longitudinal adjustment at hinge - A5 Sportback:

– Loosen bolts -arrows-.
– Adjust rear lid -1- lengthwise.
– Tighten bolts.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - rear lid, A5 Sportback”, page 61



2.4.8 Longitudinal and height adjustment at hinge - A5 Cabriolet

♦ Longitudinal adjustment at hinge - A5 Cabriolet ⇒ page 83
♦ Height adjustment at hinge - A5 Cabriolet ⇒ page 83
• Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 78

Special tools and workshop equipment required

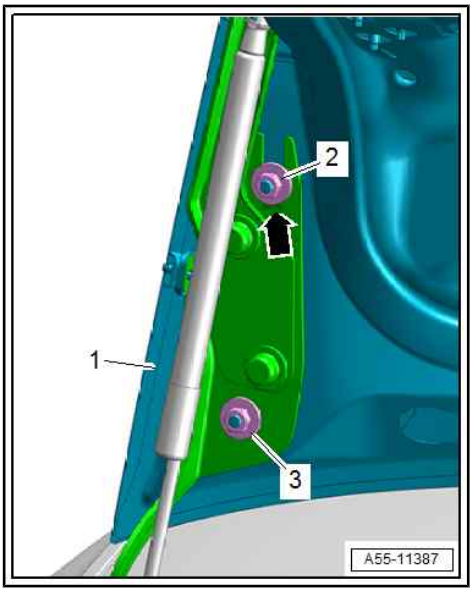
♦ Setting gauge - 3371-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Procedure

Longitudinal adjustment at hinge - A5 Cabriolet:

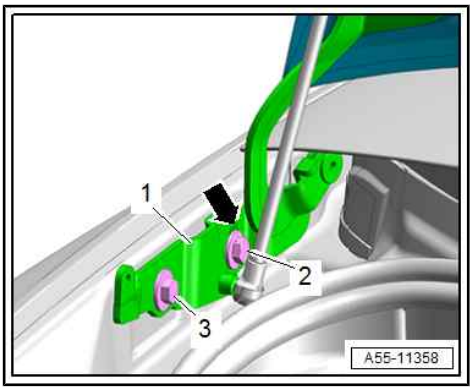


– Loosen nuts -2, 3-.
– Adjust rear lid -1- lengthwise.
• Use markings on hinge -arrow- when performing longitudinal adjustment.
– Tighten nuts.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - rear lid, A5 Cabriolet”, page 64

Height adjustment at hinge - A5 Cabriolet:



– Loosen bolts -2, 3-.
– Adjust height of rear lid at hinge -1-.
• Use markings on mounting bracket -arrow- when adjusting height.
– Tighten bolts.

Tightening torques

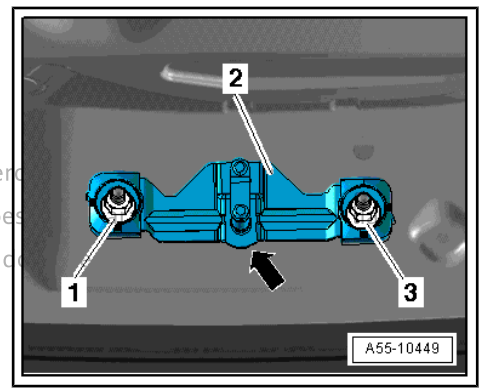
◆ ⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - rear lid, A5 Cabriolet”, page 64

2.4.9 Height adjustment at striker

• Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 74

Procedure

– Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing lock carrier trim .
– Prior to adjustment, completely screw in adjusting buffer on rear lid ⇒ page 84 .
– Loosen nuts -1 and 3- until striker -2- can be moved.
– Close rear lid and check alignment with body contour.
– If necessary, align according to body contour via adjusting buffer (top).
– Rear lid lock must be engaged in main catch (2nd stop).
– Open rear lid and tighten nuts.
– Set adjusting buffers ⇒ page 84 .



Tightening torques

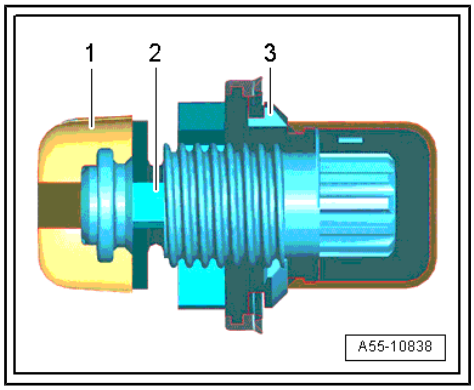
◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - rear lid”, page 56

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commer
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG doe
with respect to the correctness of information in this d

2.4.10 Height adjustment using adjusting buffer

- Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 74

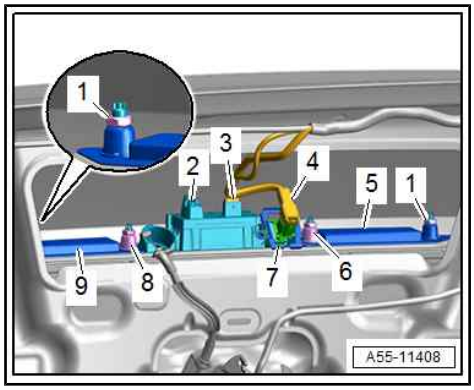
Procedure



– Before adjusting rear lid, screw adjuster screw -2- with protective cap -1- completely into adjusting buffer -3-.
– Unscrew adjuster screw -2- until protective cap -1- is slightly compressed on coming into contact with adjusting buffer with rear lid closed.
– Check that rear lid has no play and closes in line with body contour by pressing or pulling side edges of rear lid.
– Repeat adjustment if necessary.

2.5 Removing and installing handle trim

Removing



– Remove lock cylinder ⇒ page 98 .
– Unplug electrical connector -3-.
– Unscrew cap nuts -6, 8-.
– Vehicles with reversing camera: Detach retaining clip -7- together with reversing camera -4-.
– Unscrew cap nuts -1- and remove together with anti-theft brackets -5, 9-.
– Remove handle trim downwards from body opening.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– On vehicles with reversing camera, reversing camera - R189- must be re-calibrated ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Reversing camera system; Calibrating reversing camera system .

- Note conditions under which it is necessary to calibrate reversing camera - R189- .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - rear lid, A5 Cabriolet”, page 64

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.6 Removing and installing hinges

⇒ “2.6.1 Removing and installing hinges - A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé”, page 85

⇒ “2.6.2 Removing and installing hinges - A4 Avant”, page 85

⇒ “2.6.3 Removing and installing hinges - A5 Sportback”, page 86

⇒ “2.6.4 Removing and installing hinges - A5 Cabriolet”, page 86

2.6.1 Removing and installing hinges - A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé

Removing

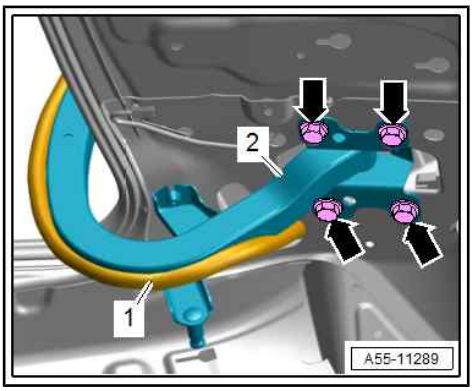
– Remove rear lid ⇒ page 70 .

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim .

– Move electrical wiring harness -1- clear.

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Detach hinge -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– After installing hinge, adjust rear lid ⇒ page 74 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - rear lid, A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé”, page 56

2.6.2 Removing and installing hinges - A4 Avant

Removing

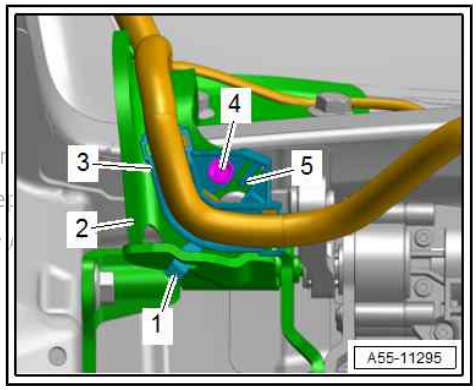
– Remove rear lid trim (top) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (top) .

– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim panels; Removing and installing moulded headliner .

– If fitted, remove motor for rear lid ⇒ page 100 .

– Push spreader pin -4- through to other side.

– Release catches -1, 5- and pull bracket -3- for wiring harness out of mounting on hinge -2-.



– Move electrical wiring harness clear.

– Remove gas strut (left and right) ⇒ page 95 .

– Close rear lid.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accep
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by

– Remove bolts -1, 2- and nut -4-.
– Detach hinge -3-.

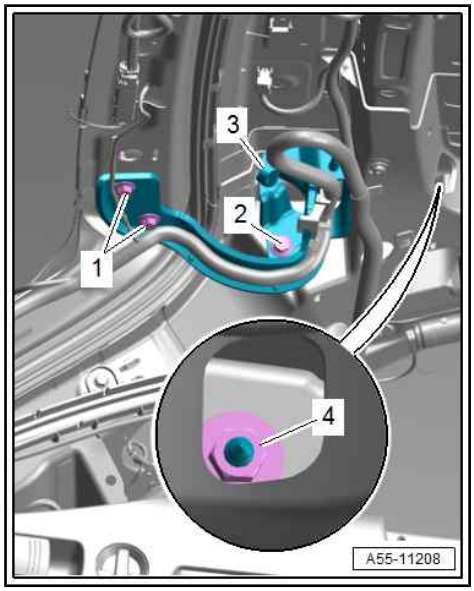
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– After installing hinge, adjust rear lid ⇒ page 74 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - rear lid, A4 Avant”, page 59



2.6.3 Removing and installing hinges - A5 Sportback

Removing

– Remove rear lid ⇒ page 72 .
– Remove moulded headliner and place it in vehicle interior ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim panels; Removing and installing moulded headliner .
– Remove roof frame cover (side) -1- ⇒ page 91 .
– Remove nuts -arrows-.
– Detach hinge -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI

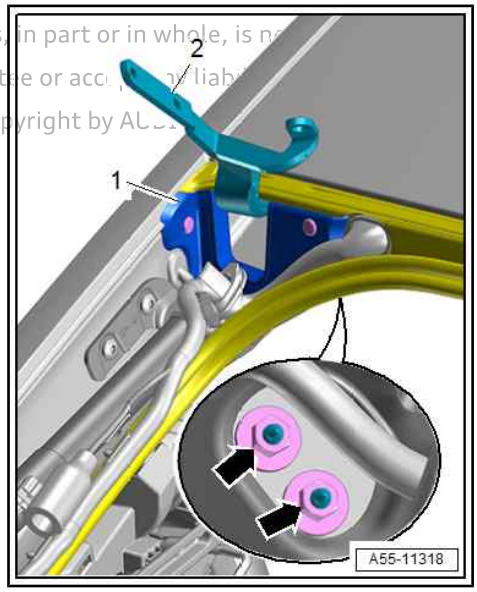
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– After installing hinge, adjust rear lid ⇒ page 74 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - rear lid, A5 Sportback”, page 61

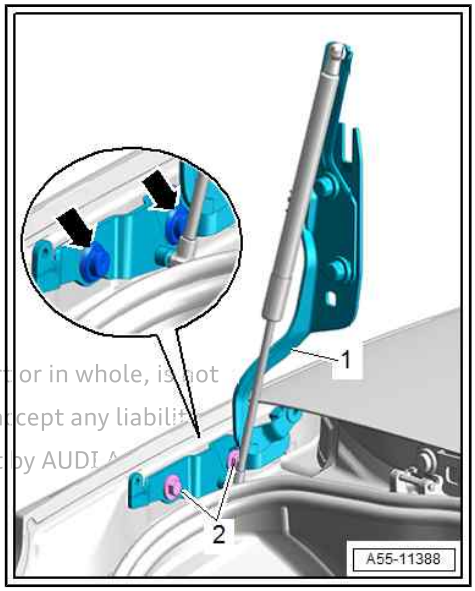


2.6.4 Removing and installing hinges - A5 Cabriolet

Removing

– Remove rear lid ⇒ page 73 .

– Pry off covers -arrows-.
– Remove bolts -2-.
– Detach hinge -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Adjust rear lid ⇒ page 74 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - rear lid, A5 Cabriolet”, page 64

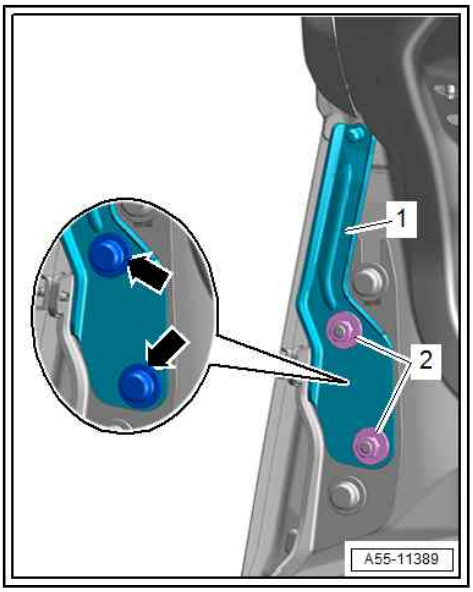
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI A

2.7 Removing and installing mounting for gas strut

• A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 87).

Removing

– Detach gas strut from ball stud at mounting ⇒ page 95 .
– Pry off covers -arrows-.
– Remove nuts -2-.
– Detach mounting -1- for gas strut.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - rear lid, A5 Cabriolet”, page 64

2.8 Removing and installing rear lid seal

⇒ “2.8.1 Removing and installing rear lid seal - A4 Saloon”, page 88

⇒ “2.8.2 Removing and installing rear lid seal - A4 Avant”, page 88

⇒ “2.8.3 Removing and installing rear lid seal - A5”, page 89

2.8.1 Removing and installing rear lid seal - A4 Saloon

Removing

– Pull rear lid seal off body flange.

Installing

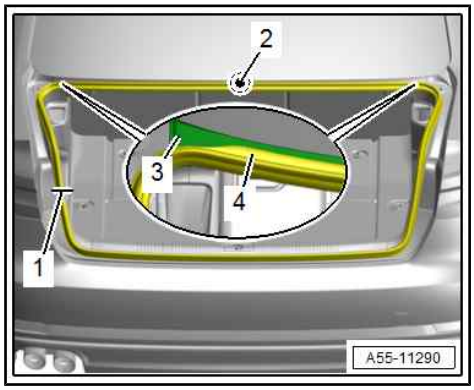
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Position rear lid seal on body flange.

• Butt joint -1- of rear lid seal must be aligned with centre of left tail light.

• Protective lip -4- must be aligned at top with centre -2- of window cross member -3-.

– Press rear lid seal on over entire length.



2.8.2 Removing and installing rear lid seal - A4 Avant

Removing

– Insert screwdriver -3- into opening and release bottom fastener -arrow A-.

– Reach between cover -2- and tail light cluster -1- and release remaining fasteners.

– Detach cover from tail light cluster -arrow B-.

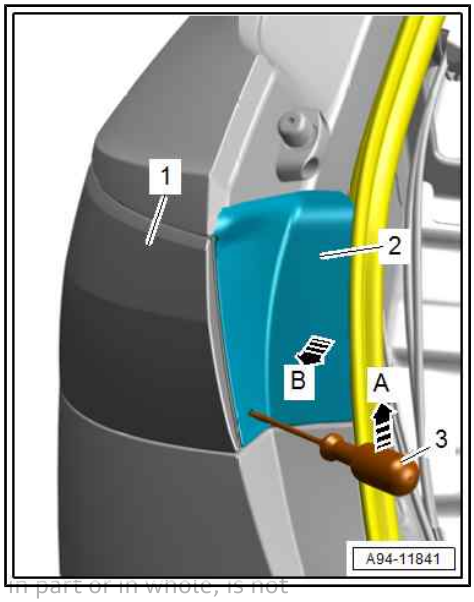
Note:

Take particular care when detaching cover to ensure that guide and retaining hooks are not damaged.

– Pull rear lid seal off body flange.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



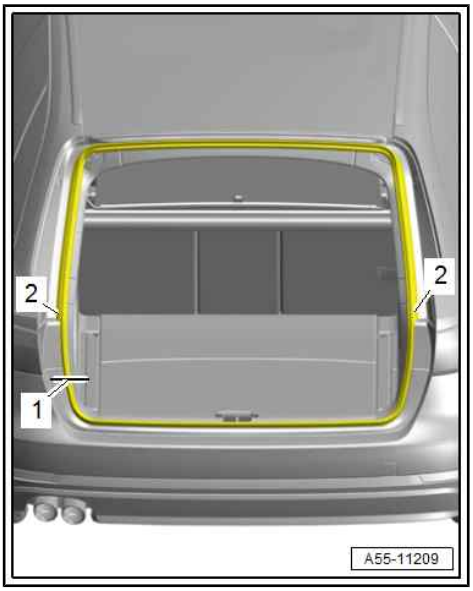
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Position rear lid seal on body flange.

• Butt joint -1- of rear lid seal must face bumper cover on left side.

• Protective lips -2- must be aligned evenly with tail light clusters.

– Press rear lid seal on over entire length.



2.8.3 Removing and installing rear lid seal - A5

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Pull rear lid seal off body flange.

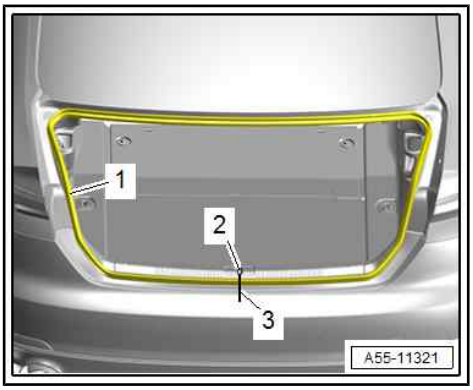
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Position rear lid seal -1- on body flange.

• Butt joint -3- of rear lid seal must face centre of striker -2-.

– Press rear lid seal on over entire length.



2.9 Removing and installing roof frame cover

⇒ “2.9.1 Removing and installing roof frame cover - A4 Avant”, page 89

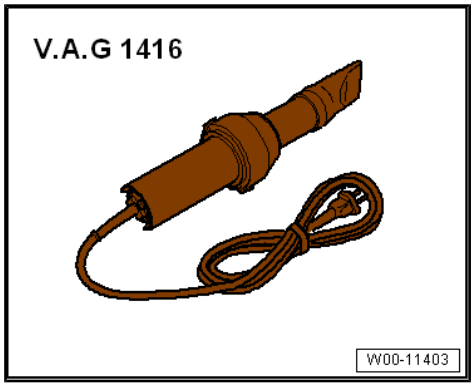
⇒ “2.9.2 Removing and installing roof frame cover - A5 Sportback”, page 91

2.9.1 Removing and installing roof frame cover - A4 Avant

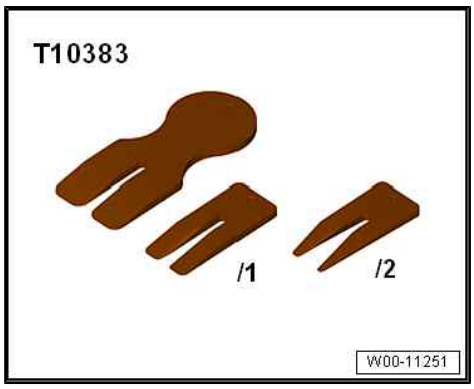
• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 59 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-



♦ Wedges - T10383-



♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

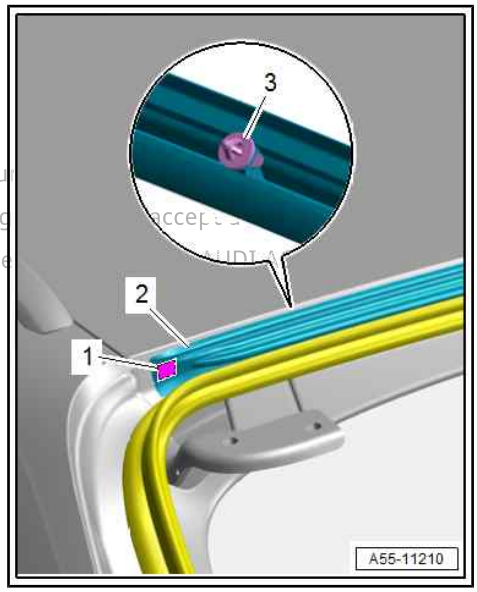
Removing

– Open rear lid.

– Carefully heat roof frame cover -2- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .

– Separate adhesive bond -1- and remove roof frame cover from body; to do so, release fasteners -3-.

– Remove roof frame cover.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g
with respect to the correctness of information in this docume

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

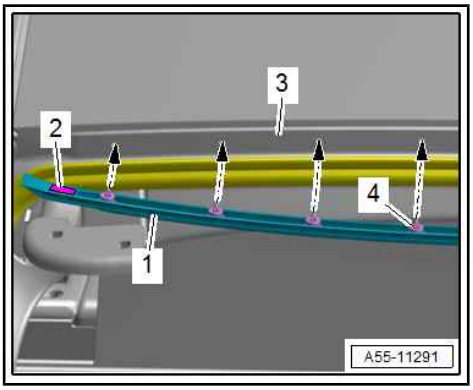
- The vehicle and roof frame cover must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

– Align roof frame cover -1- on body -3- using centring pin -4-.
– Peel protective film off adhesive strip -2-.
– Press roof frame cover on until it engages audibly.
– Press on roof frame cover in area of bonding surface.

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.



2.9.2 Removing and installing roof frame cover - A5 Sportback

• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 61.

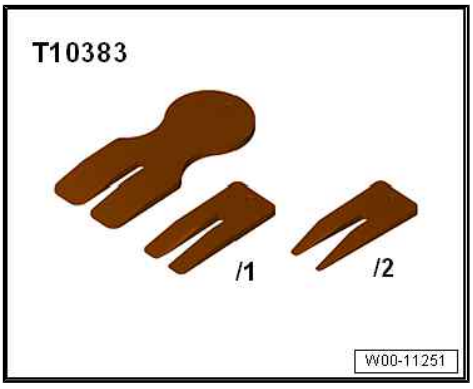
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



♦ Wedges - T10383-

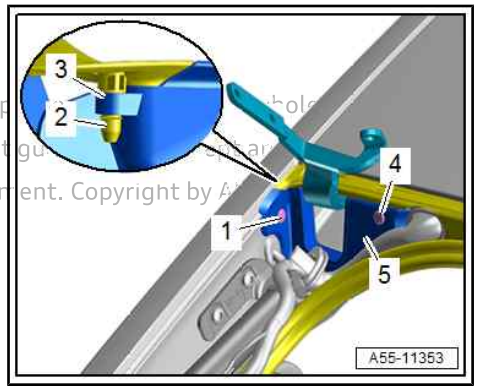


♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

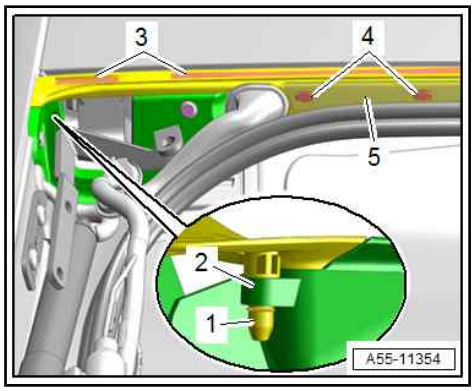
Removing

Roof frame cover (side):



- Open rear lid.
- Remove clips -1, 4-.
- Release retaining pin -2- for roof frame cover from mounting -3-.
- Remove roof frame cover (side) -5-.

Roof frame cover:



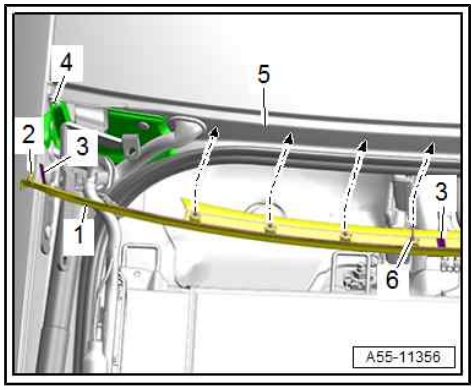
- Open rear lid.
- Carefully heat roof frame cover -5- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .
- Separate adhesive bonds -3-.
- Release retaining pin -1- for roof frame cover from mounting -2-.
- Prise off fasteners -4- and detach roof frame cover from vehicle body.
- Remove roof frame cover.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- The vehicle and roof frame cover must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

- Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.
- Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.



- Fold over ends of protective film or attach a removal aid -3- to protective film.
- Align roof frame cover -1- on body -5- using centring pin -6-.
- Slide retaining pin -2- for roof frame cover as far as possible into mounting -4-.
- Peel protective film off adhesive strip using removal aids.
- Press roof frame cover on until it engages audibly.
- Working outwards, press on roof frame cover in area of bonding surface.
- Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.

2.10 Removing and installing adjusting buffers

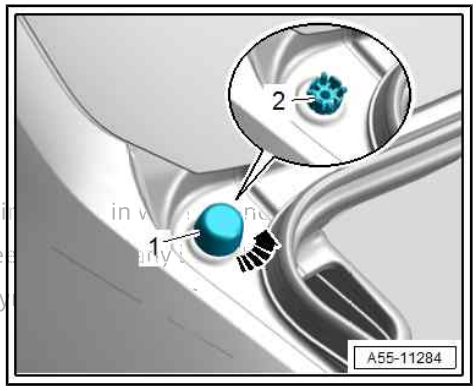
⇒ "2.10.1 Removing and installing adjusting buffers - A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé, A5 Cabriolet", page 93

⇒ "2.10.2 Removing and installing adjusting buffer - A4 Avant, A5 Sportback", page 94

2.10.1 Removing and installing adjusting buffers - A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé, A5 Cabriolet

- Adjusting buffers on body ⇒ page 93
- Adjusting buffers on rear lid ⇒ page 93

Adjusting buffers on body



Removing

– Turn adjusting buffer -1- anti-clockwise -arrow-.

– Pull locking piece -2- for adjusting buffer off threaded pin.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

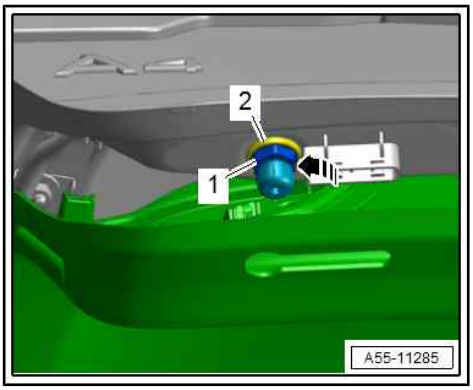
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note:

Fit pop rivet bolt - WHT 005 180- using pop rivet nut pliers - V.A.G 1765C- and supplement V.A.G 1765C/2 to secure adjusting buffer. For more details, refer to ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 53 . You can, for example, search for the pop rivet bolt - WHT 005 180- in the corresponding chapter with the »Search reference media« function.

– Set adjusting buffers ⇒ page 84 .

Adjusting buffers on rear lid



Removing

– Unfasten rear lid trim (bottom) in area of adjusting buffer ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) .

– Turn adjusting buffer -1- anti-clockwise -arrow- and remove it.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Check seal -2- between adjusting buffer and rear lid for damage.

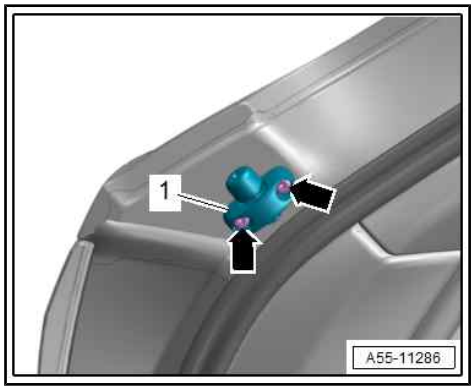
– Set adjusting buffers ⇒ page 84 .

2.10.2 Removing and installing adjusting buffer - A4 Avant, A5 Sportback

Removing

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Detach adjusting buffer -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Set adjusting buffer ⇒ page 84 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - rear lid, A4 Avant”, page 59

2.11 Removing and installing stop for adjusting buffer

⇒ “2.11.1 Removing and installing stop for adjusting buffer - A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé”, page 94

⇒ “2.11.2 Removing and installing stop for adjusting buffer - A4 Avant, A5 Sportback”, page 94

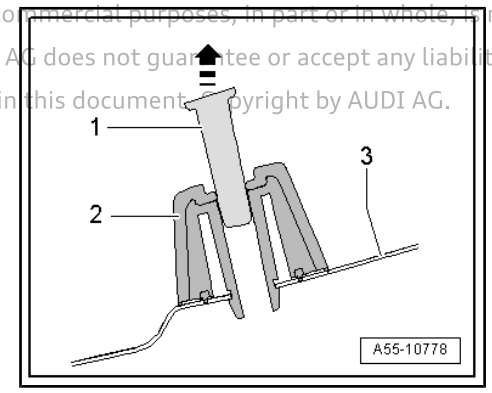
2.11.1 Removing and installing stop for adjusting buffer - A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé

Removing

– Pull slide -1- out of stop -2- -arrow-.

– Pull stop out of side panel/rear lid -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



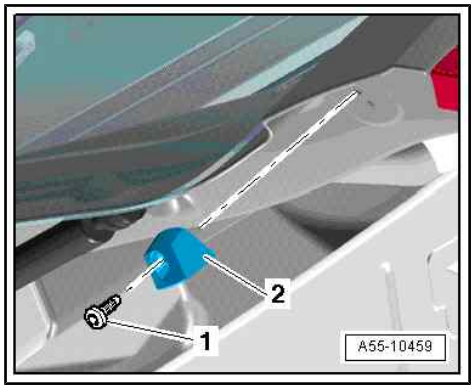
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

2.11.2 Removing and installing stop for adjusting buffer - A4 Avant, A5 Sportback

Removing

– Unscrew bolt -1- and detach stop -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - rear lid, A4 Avant”, page 59

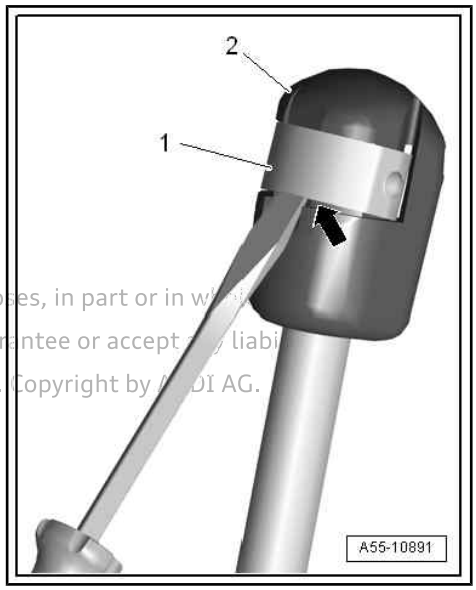
2.12 Removing and installing gas strut

Removing

– Support rear lid or secure it in position.

– A4 Saloon: Remove luggage compartment side trim (right-side) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim .

– Lift retaining clip -1- slightly using a small screwdriver, and pull gas strut -2- off ball stud (top).



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

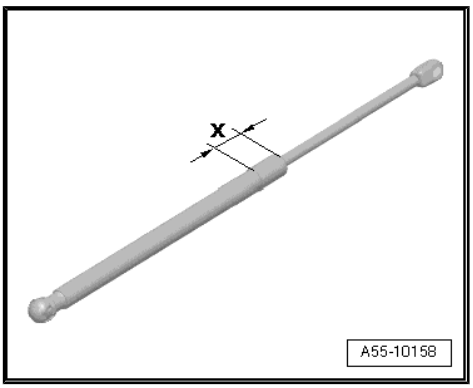
– Press gas strut onto ball-head pin until it engages audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.13 Releasing gas from gas strut

Procedure

– Clamp section -x = 50 mm- of gas strut in a vice.



CAUTION

Risk of eye injuries due to metal swarf.
Eye irritation and injury possible.
– Put on safety goggles.

– Saw open cylinder of gas strut in first third of overall cylinder length, based on reference edge at piston-rod end. When doing so, cover area around saw cut with a cloth to catch any fluid which may escape.

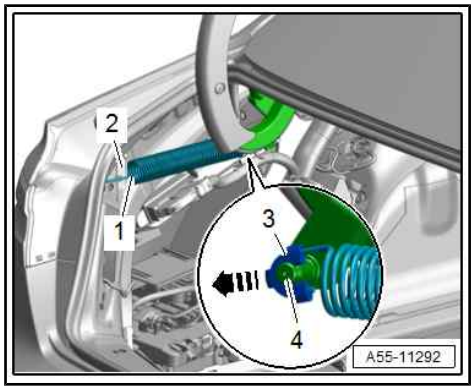
– Saw open cylinder of gas strut in first third of overall cylinder length, based on reference edge at piston-rod end.

2.14 Removing and installing extension spring

Removing

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim .

– With rear lid open, first unhook extension spring -1- from bracket -2-, then detach cable eye -3- from mounting pin -4- at hinge -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

2.15 Removing and installing rear lid lock

⇒ “2.15.1 Removing and installing rear lid lock”, page 96

⇒ “2.15.2 Removing and installing rear lid lock - A5 Cabriolet”, page 96

2.15.1 Removing and installing rear lid lock

Rear lid lock unit - VX25-

With rear lid central locking motor - V53- , contact switch for locking pawl - F443- and, depending on equipment version, rear lid contact switch - F111-

Removing

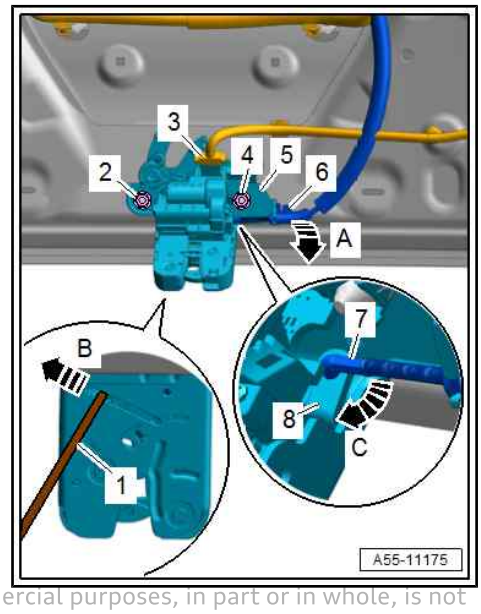
– Remove rear lid trim (bottom) and rear lid lock cover ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) .

A4 Avant:

– Turn operating cable on lever -6- 90° in direction of -arrow A- and take it out of support bracket for rear lid lock -5-.

– Secure operating lever -8- on reverse side using a screwdriver -1- -arrow B-.

– Disengage Bowden cable nipple -7- from operating lever -arrow C- and move Bowden cable clear.



Continued:

– Unplug electrical connector -3-.

– Remove nuts -2, 4-.

– Detach rear lid lock.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - rear lid”, page 56

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.15.2 Removing and installing rear lid lock - A5 Cabriolet

Rear lid lock unit - VX25-

With rear lid central locking motor - V53- , contact switch for locking pawl - F443- and, depending on equipment version, rear lid contact switch - F111-

With rear lid contact switch for anti-theft alarm - F123-

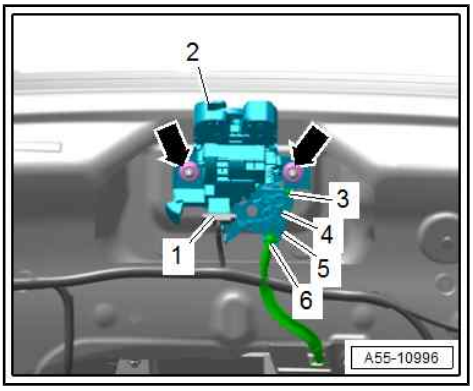
Removing

– Remove rear lid trim (bottom) and rear lid lock cover ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) .

– Unplug electrical connector -1-, unscrew nuts -arrows- and detach rear lid lock.

– Pull support bracket -6- for cable off mounting -5- for rear lid lock.

– Disengage cable -3- at operating lever -4-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - rear lid, A5 Cabriolet”, page 64

2.16 Removing and installing cable for rear lid lock

Removing

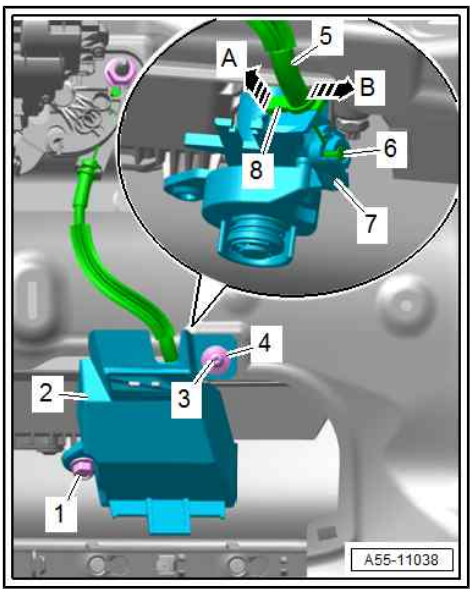
– Remove rear lid trim (bottom) and rear lid lock cover ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) .

– Unscrew bolts -1 and 3- and detach fastener -4-.

– Detach anti-theft protection -2- for lock cylinder.

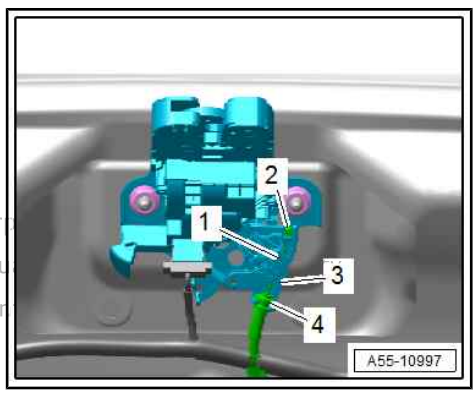
– Release locking lever -8- -arrow A- and pull support bracket -5- for cable off mounting bracket -arrow B-.

– Disengage cable -6- at operating lever -7-.



– Pull support bracket -4- for cable off mounting -3- for rear lid lock.

– Disengage cable -2- at operating lever -1- and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - rear lid, A5 Cabriolet”, page 64

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

2.17 Removing and installing lock cylinder

Removing

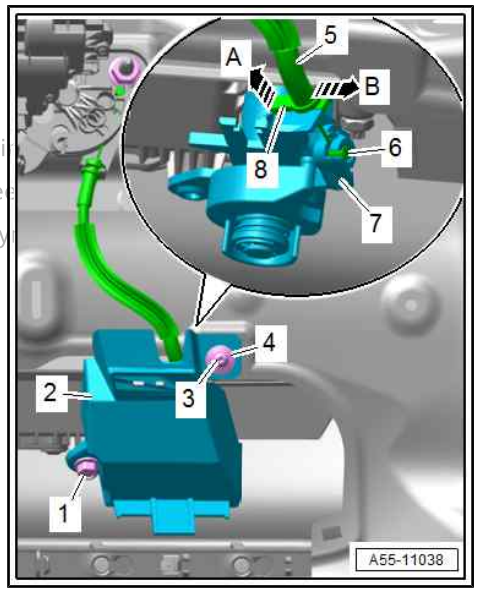
– Remove rear lid trim (bottom) and rear lid lock cover ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) .

– Unscrew bolts -1 and 3- and detach fastener -4-.

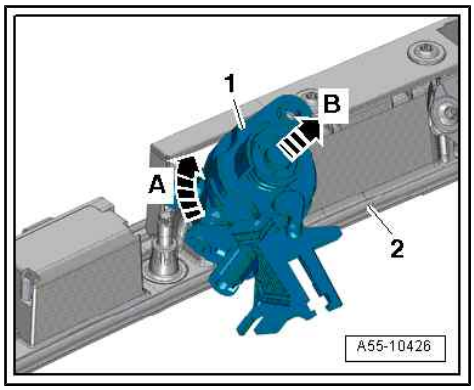
– Detach anti-theft protection -2- for lock cylinder.

– Release locking lever -8- -arrow A- and pull support bracket -5- for cable off mounting bracket -arrow B-.

– Disengage cable -6- at operating lever -7-.



– Turn lock cylinder -1- in clockwise direction -arrow A- and pull it out of handle trim -2- -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

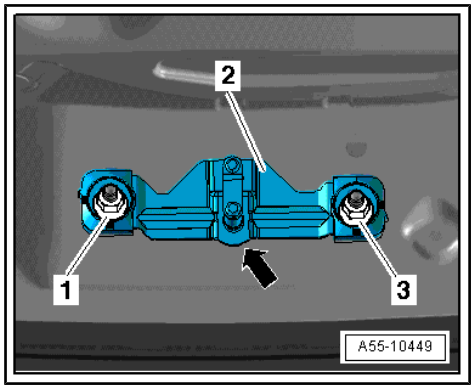
◆ ⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - rear lid, A5 Cabriolet”, page 64

2.18 Removing and installing striker

Removing

– Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing lock carrier trim .

– Unscrew nuts -1 and 3- and detach striker -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert striker, making sure it is positioned correctly.

• The round side -arrow- of the striker must face upwards.

– Adjust striker ⇒ page 83 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - rear lid”, page 56

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

2.19 Removing and installing power latching motor for rear lid - V382-

Removing

– Remove rear lid trim (bottom) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) .

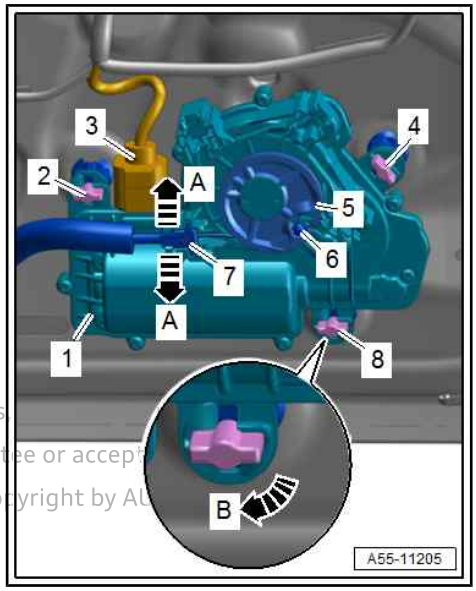
– Release fasteners -arrows A- and disengage support bracket -7-.

– Disengage nipple -6- of Bowden cable from operating lever -5-.

– Unplug electrical connector -3-.

– Release fasteners -2, 4, 8- 90° in clockwise direction -arrow B-.

– Remove power latching motor for rear lid - V382- -item 1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.20 Removing and installing Bowden cable for power latching system

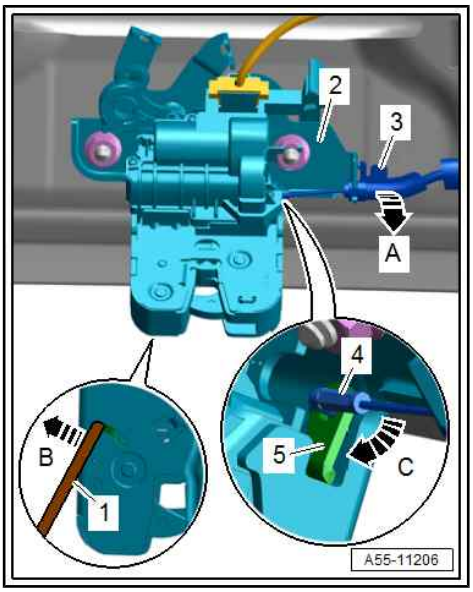
Removing

– Remove rear lid trim (bottom) and rear lid lock cover ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (bottom) .

– Turn operating cable on lever -3- 90° in direction of -arrow A- and take it out of support bracket for rear lid lock -2-.

– Secure operating lever -5- on reverse side using a screwdriver -1- -arrow B-.

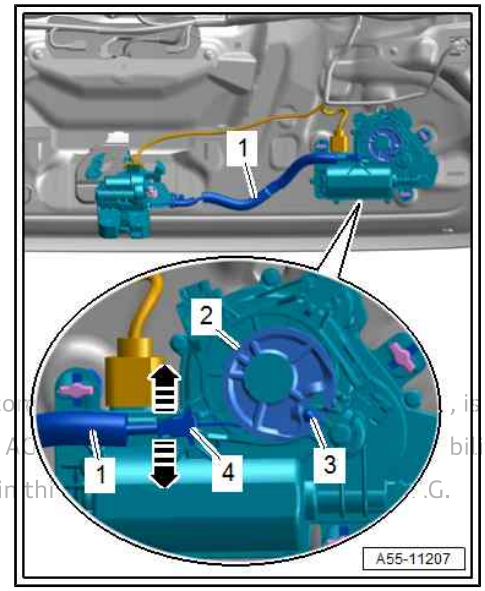
– Disengage Bowden cable nipple -4- from operating lever -arrow C- and move Bowden cable clear.



– Release fasteners -arrows- and disengage support bracket -4- on power latching motor for rear lid - V382- .
– Disengage nipple -3- of Bowden cable from actuator -2-.
– Remove Bowden cable -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co , is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A bility with respect to the correctness of information in thi .G.

2.21 Removing and installing motor for rear lid -V444- / -V445-

⇒ “2.21.1 Removing and installing motor for rear lid V444 / V445 - A4 Avant”, page 100

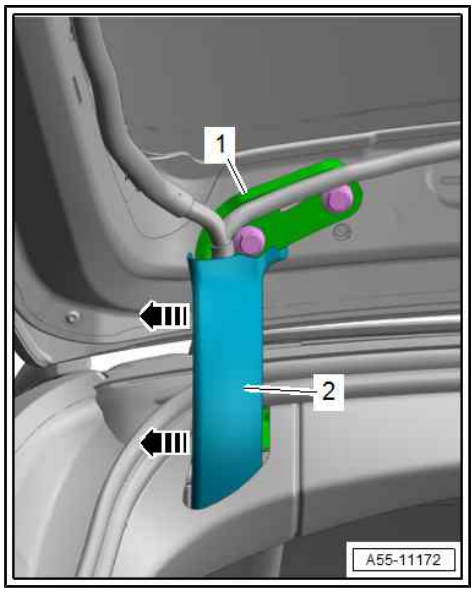
⇒ “2.21.2 Removing and installing motor for rear lid V444 / V445 - A5 Sportback”, page 101

2.21.1 Removing and installing motor for rear lid -V444- / -V445- - A4 Avant

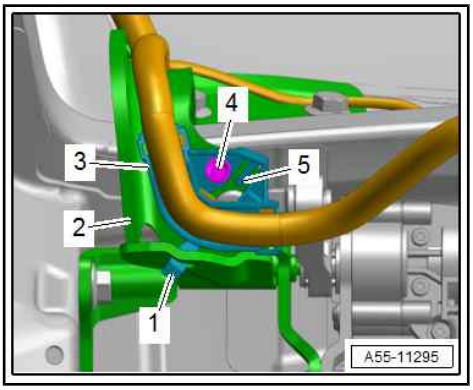
• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 66 .

Removing

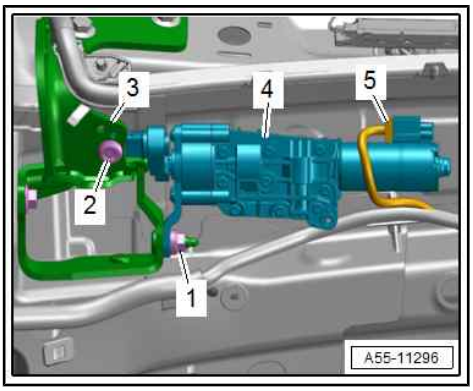
– Remove D-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing D-pillar trim .
– Release catches -arrows- and detach cover -2- from hinge -1-.



– Push spreader pin -4- through to other side.
– Release catches -1, 5- and pull bracket -3- for wiring harness out of mounting on hinge -2-.



– Unplug electrical connector -5-.
– Remove bolt -2- and nut -1-.
– Pull motor -4- for rear lid out of mounting on hinge -3-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 102 .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.2.2 Exploded view - rear lid power opening, A4 Avant”, page 66

2.21.2 Removing and installing motor for rear lid -V444- / -V445- - A5 Sportback

• A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 102).

Removing

– With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
– Remove C-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing C-pillar trim .
– Remove roof grab handle (rear) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Equipment; Removing and installing roof grab handle .
– Remove bracket for D-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing D-pillar trim .

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

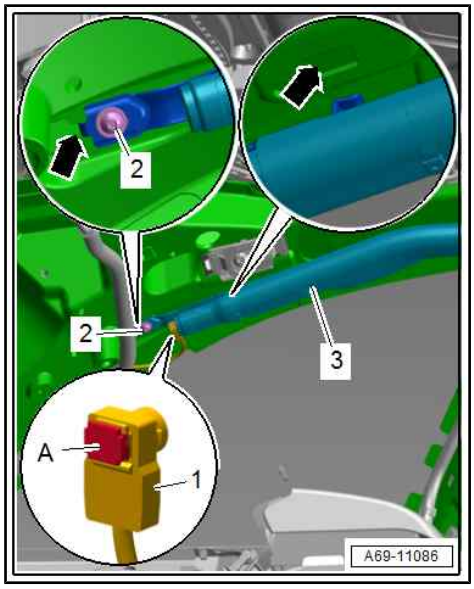
Risk of injury

– **Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolt -2-.

– Slide curtain airbag -3- out of mountings on body towards rear -arrows- and remove.



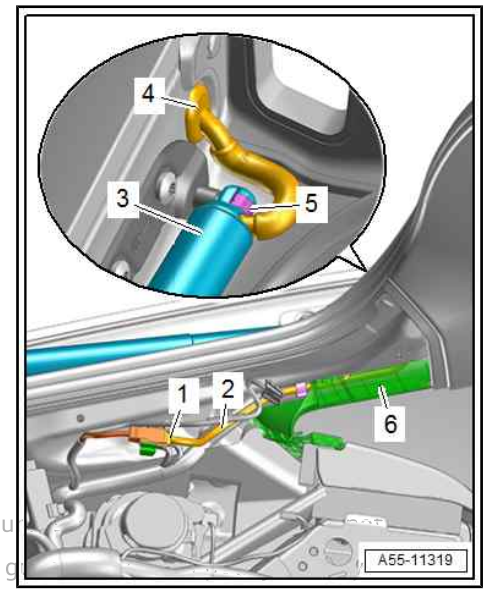
– Unplug electrical connector -1- and move wiring harness -2- clear.

– To prevent injuries and damage to the rear lid and/or body, prop up the rear lid.

– Lift retaining clip -5- slightly using a small screwdriver and detach spindle motor -3- from ball stud at vehicle body and at rear lid.

– Pull grommet -4- off vehicle body.

– Guide out wiring harness behind mounting -6- and through opening in vehicle body.



Installing

Install in reverse order; note the following:

- Do not hold the drive by its cable during installation.
- The rear lid must be guided by hand during installation as the drive can be damaged irreparably if the rear lid is not heavy enough.
- Do not knock the ball sockets on the drive onto the ball studs; instead they must be positioned on the ball studs at an angle and then pressed on by being turned.

– Install curtain airbag with igniter ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 69 ; Curtain airbags; Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter .

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 102 .

2.22 Adapting motor for rear lid -V444- / -V445-

– Connect vehicle diagnostic tester .

– Switch on ignition.

– Select and start `Diagnosis` mode.

– Select `Test plan` tab.

– Choose `Select own test` and select following options one after the other:

♦ Body

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ♦ General body repairs
- ♦ 01 - Self-diagnosis compatible systems
- ♦ 6D - Tailgate electronics J605
- ♦ 6D - Tailgate control unit, functions
- ♦ 6D - Basic setting, tailgate control unit

– Start selected program and follow instructions on display of vehicle diagnostic tester.

2.23 Removing and installing rear lid control unit - J605-

⇒ “2.23.1 Removing and installing rear lid control unit J605 - A4 Avant”, page 103

⇒ “2.23.2 Removing and installing rear lid control unit J605 - A5 Sportback”, page 103

2.23.1 Removing and installing rear lid control unit - J605- - A4 Avant

Removing

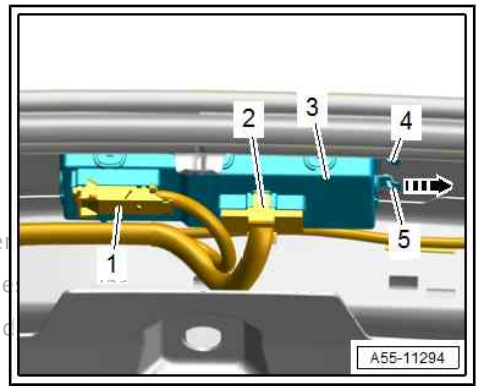
– Remove roof end trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim panels; Removing and installing roof end trim .

– Unplug electrical connectors -1 and 2-.

– Release fasteners -4, 5- and at the same time slide control unit -3- towards right -arrow-.

• This disengages brackets from guides.

– Remove rear lid control unit - J605- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commer
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG doe
with respect to the correctness of information in this d

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert control unit and slide it towards left until fasteners engage audibly.

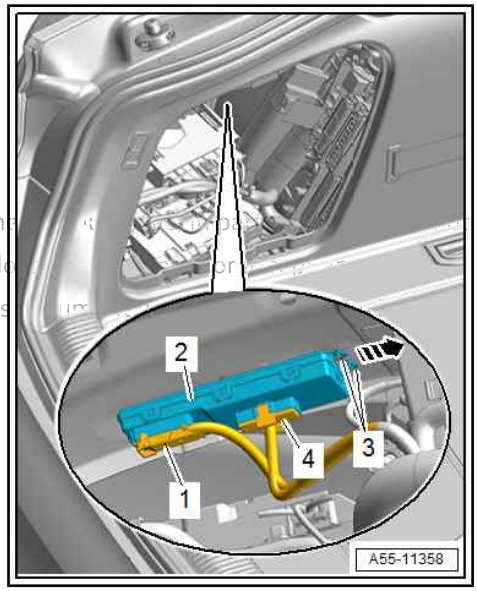
• If renewing the rear lid control unit - J605- , select the function “Replace control unit” for the corresponding control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester, Diagnosis.

2.23.2 Removing and installing rear lid control unit - J605- - A5 Sportback

Removing

– Open cover for luggage compartment side trim (left-side).

– Unplug electrical connectors -1 and 4-.
– Release fasteners -3- and at the same time slide control unit -2- forwards -arrow-.
• This disengages brackets from guides.
– Remove rear lid control unit - J605- .



Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG do
with respect to the correctness of information in this

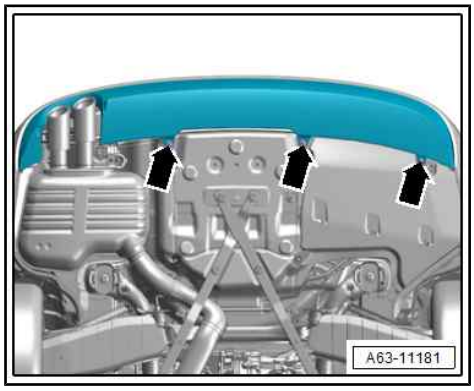
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert control unit and slide it towards rear until fasteners engage audibly.
• If renewing the rear lid control unit - J605- , select the function “Replace control unit” for the corresponding control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester, Diagnosis.

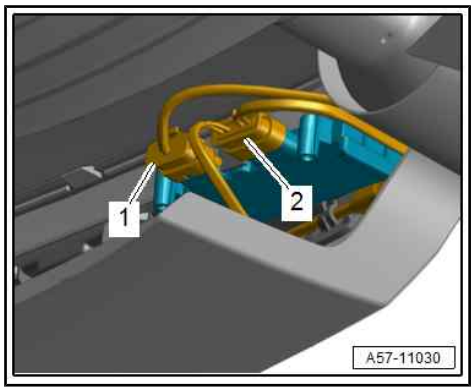
2.24 Removing and installing rear lid power opening control unit - J938-

Removing

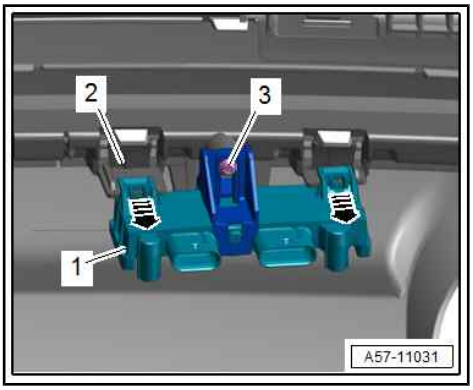
– Remove nuts/bolt -arrows- from base plate for bumper cover.



– Unplug electrical connectors -1 and 2-.



– Remove bolt -3-.
– Press control unit -1- off brackets on bumper cover -2- -arrows-.



– If control unit is being renewed, release retaining tab -3- -arrow- and disengage bracket -2- on control unit -1-.

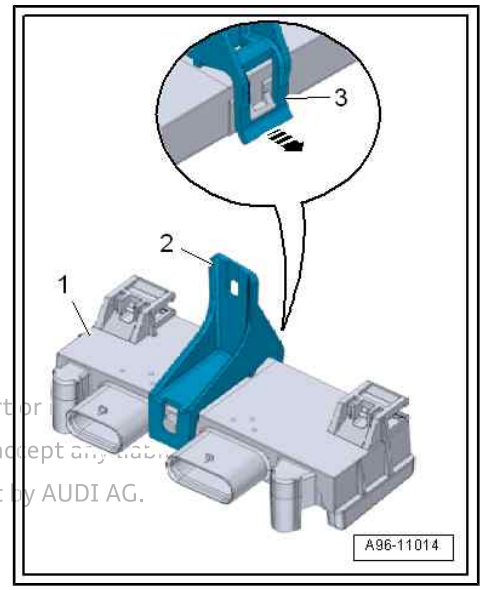
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- If renewing the rear lid power opening control unit - J938- , select the function “Replace control unit” for the corresponding control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester, Diagnosis.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - rear lid power opening”, page 66
- ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 428

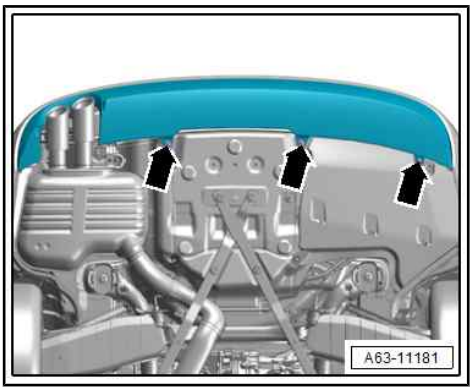


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

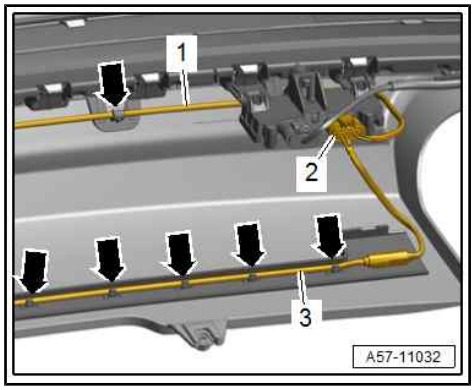
2.25 Removing and installing rear lid power opening senders -G750- / -G760-

Removing

– Remove nuts/bolt -arrows- from base plate for bumper cover.



– Unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Move senders -1, 2- clear at retainers -arrows-.
– Detach sender.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Rear lid power opening sender 2 - G760- must be secured at bumper cover (top). Identification: pins 4 and 5 on connector

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 428

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Tank flap unit

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - tank flap unit”, page 107

⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing tank flap unit”, page 107

⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing trim panel for tank flap”, page 109

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing drain hose for tank flap unit”, page 109

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing manual release cable”, page 110

3.1 Exploded view - tank flap unit

1 - Drain hose

- ❑ From tank flap unit
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 109

2 - Manual release cable

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 110

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

4 - Tank filler flap locking motor - V155-

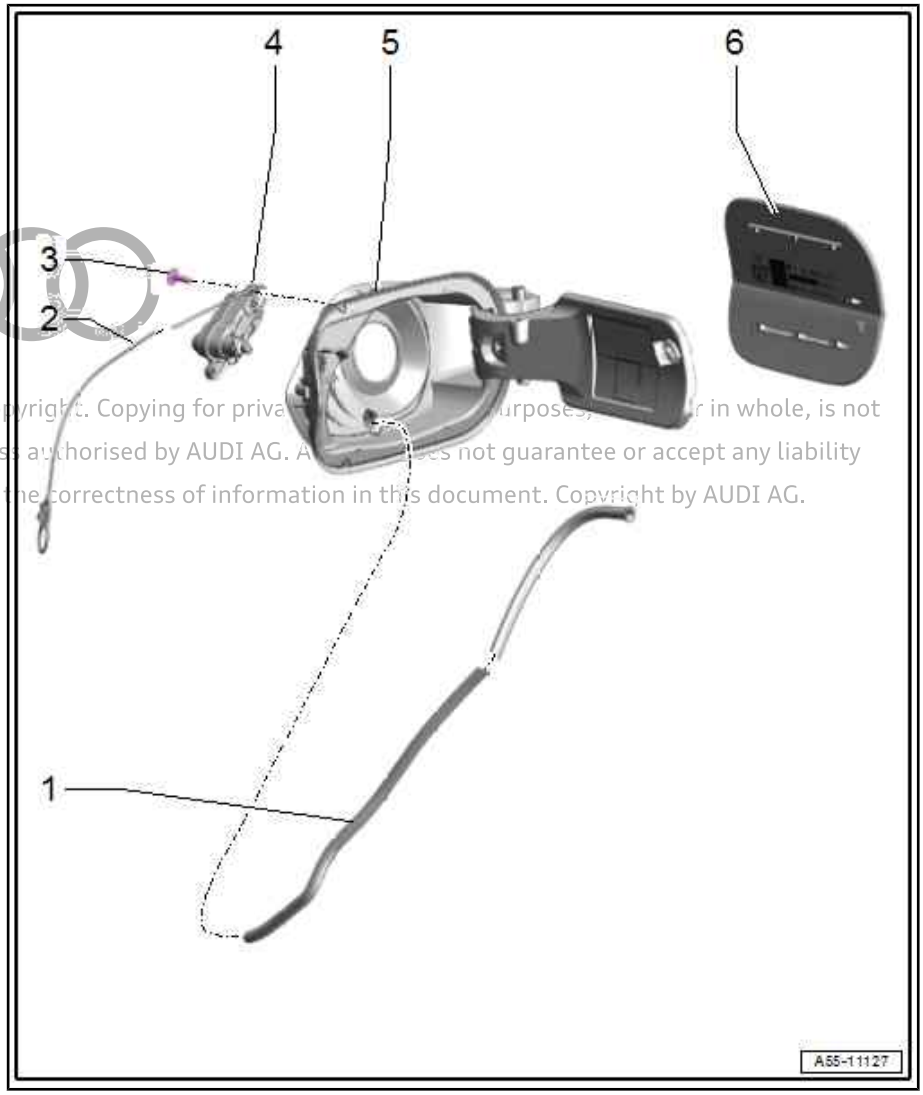
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 178

5 - Tank flap unit

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 107

6 - Trim panel for tank flap

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 109



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

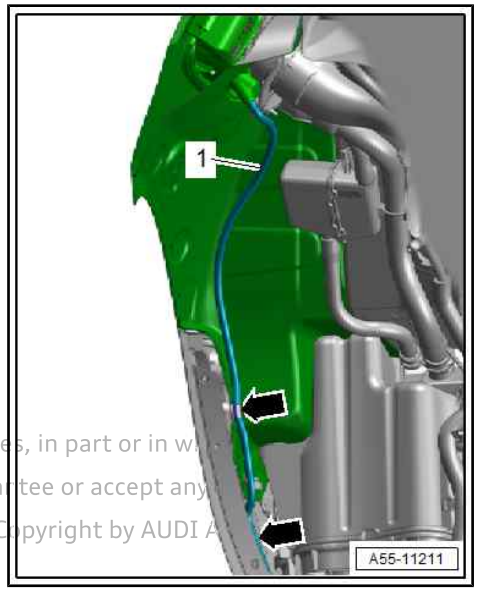
3.2 Removing and installing tank flap unit

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 107 .

Removing

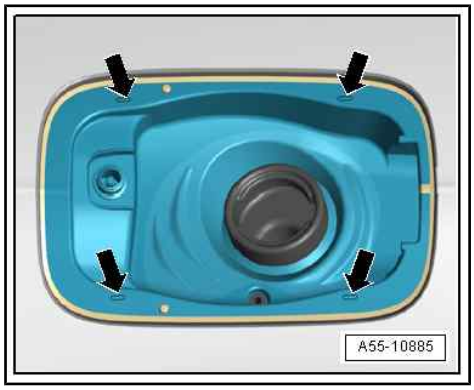
– Open cover for luggage compartment side trim and move manual release cable clear.

– Unfasten wheel housing liner (right-side) at rear and push to side ⇒ page 660 .
– Move drain hose -1- clear -arrows-.
– Remove trim panel for tank flap ⇒ page 109 .

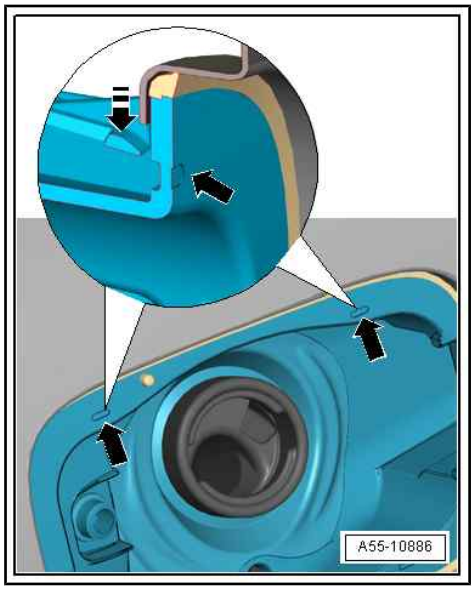


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in w... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara...tee or accept any... with respect to the correctness of information in this document. C...pyright by AUDI A...

– Release tank flap unit by pushing a small screwdriver through marked locations -arrows-.



– At top of tank flap unit, push a small screwdriver through marked locations -arrows- into tank flap from below at an angle and over catches.
– Pull screwdriver upwards slightly to release catches behind.
– Insert screwdriver on underside of tank flap unit from above at an angle and push it in through marked locations.
– Press screwdriver down slightly to release catches behind.
– Pull tank flap unit with drain hose out of opening (one catch at a time).
– Unplug electrical connector.
– Detach tank flap unit and at the same time guide out manual release cable.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– First insert tank flap unit in opening for tank flap on hinge side and then press it in until it engages audibly.

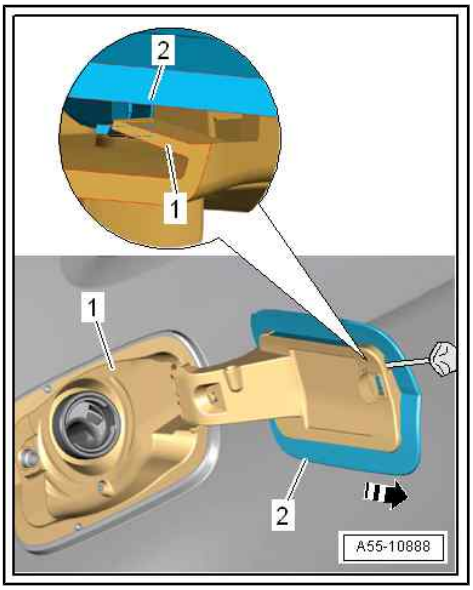
3.3 Removing and installing trim panel for tank flap

Removing

– Open tank flap.

– Using a screwdriver, release retaining clip in recess between trim panel -2- and tank flap unit -1-.

– Pull trim panel slightly off tank flap unit towards rear -arrow- and detach.

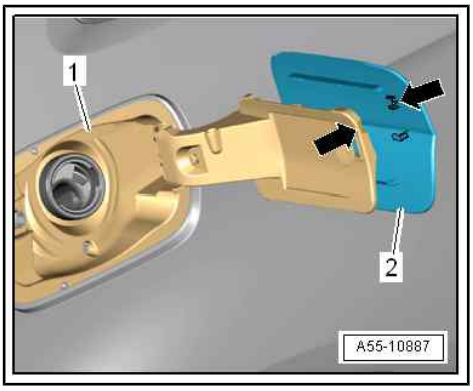


Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– When fitting trim panel -2- onto tank flap unit -1-, guides on trim panel must be applied behind mounting points -arrows-.

– Slide trim panel forwards until retaining clip engages audibly.



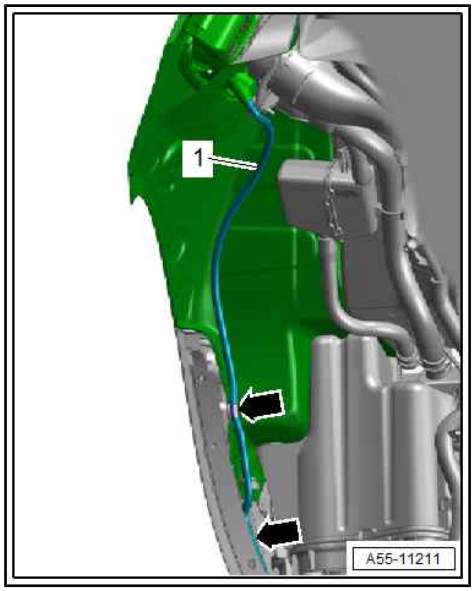
3.4 Removing and installing drain hose for tank flap unit

Removing

– Unfasten wheel housing liner (right-side) at rear and push to side ⇒ page 660 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

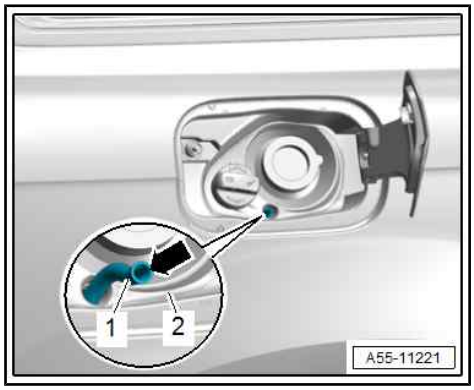
– Move drain hose -1- clear -arrows-.
– Pull drain hose upwards and out of tank flap unit.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

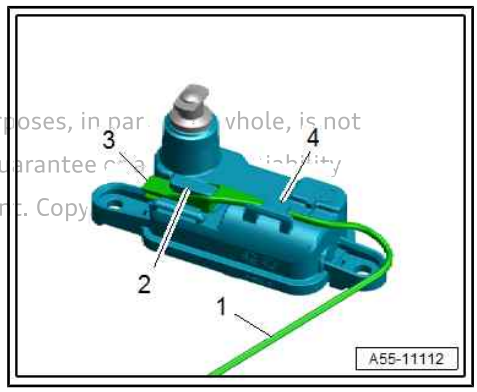
– Slide drain hose -1- into tank flap cup -2- from above.
• Collar -arrow- of drain hose must be at the top.
– Insert drain hose into mounting.



3.5 Removing and installing manual release cable

Removing

– Remove tank flap unit ⇒ page 107 .
– Remove tank filler flap locking motor ⇒ page 178 .
– Thread Bowden cable -1- out of guide -4-.
– Disengage lug -3- at mounting -2- for manual release mechanism and pull it out of support bracket.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in par whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee o liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

4 Convertible roof compartment lid

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid”, page 111

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment lid”, page 114

⇒ “4.3 Adjusting convertible roof compartment lid”, page 116

⇒ “4.4 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment seal”, page 120

⇒ “4.5 Removing and installing mounting for outer convertible roof compartment seal”, page 120

⇒ “4.6 Removing and installing hinge for convertible roof compartment lid”, page 121

⇒ “4.7 Removing and installing adjusting buffer”, page 121

⇒ “4.8 Removing and installing stop buffer”, page 121

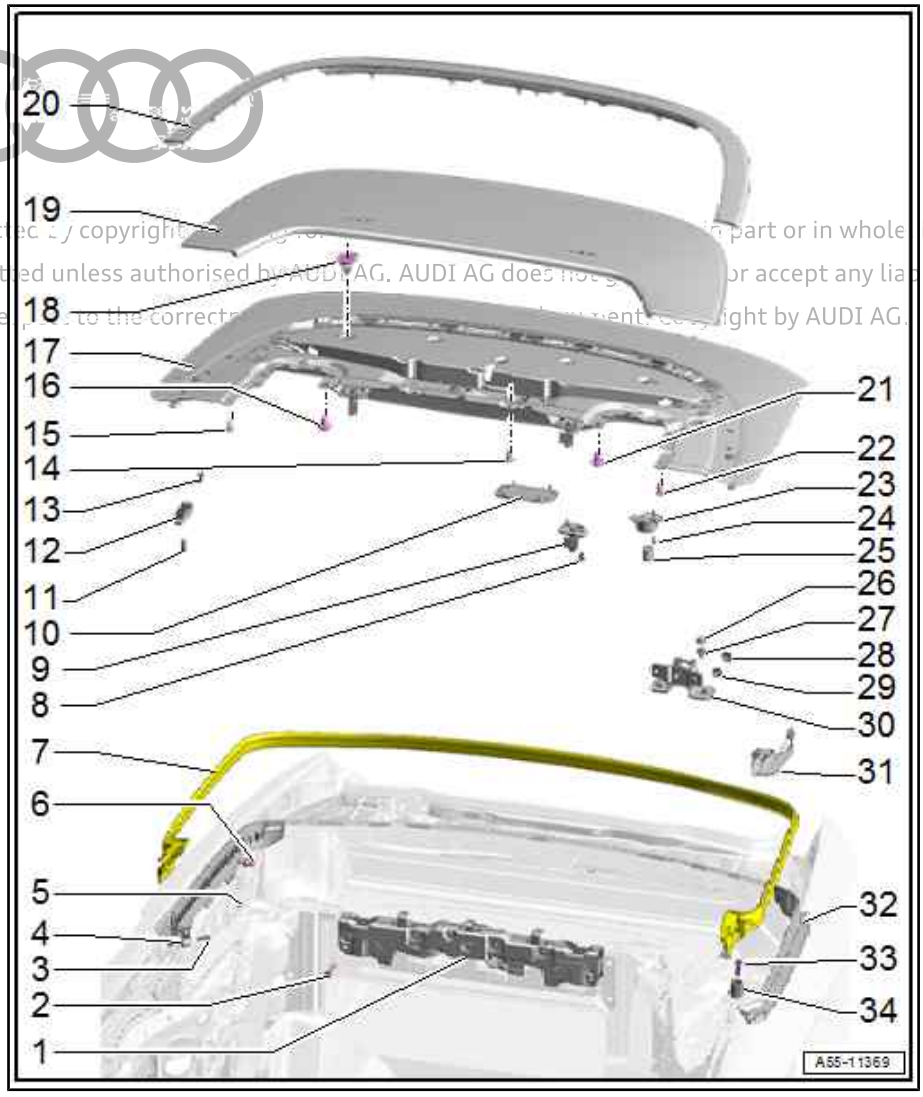
⇒ “4.9 Removing and installing striker ”, page 122

⇒ “4.10 Removing and installing lock unit for convertible roof compartment lid”, page 122

⇒ “4.11 Removing and installing trim for convertible roof compartment lid”, page 123

4.1 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Lock unit for convertible roof compartment lid

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 122

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 5x
- ❑ Tightening torque and tightening sequence ⇒ page 114

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

4 - Adjusting buffer

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 121
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 116

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 2 Nm

6 - Ball stud

- ❑ For hydraulic cylinder
- ❑ Must be painted when it is inserted
- ❑ 21 Nm

7 - Convertible roof compartment seal

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 120

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

9 - Striker

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 122
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 118

10 - Service cover

11 - Spreader pin

12 - Stop buffer

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 121

13 - Ball stud

- ❑ For hydraulic cylinder
- ❑ Can be inserted unpainted
- ❑ 21 Nm

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

15 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

16 - Bolt

- ❑ 6x

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ 5 Nm

17 - Convertible roof compartment lid

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 114

18 - Retaining clip

- ❑ 4x

19 - Trim

- ❑ For convertible roof compartment lid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 123

20 - Trim strip

- ❑ For convertible roof compartment lid
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 572

21 - Bolt

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 5 Nm

22 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

23 - Bracket

- ❑ For convertible roof

24 - Spreader pin

25 - Adjuster element

- ❑ For bracket for convertible roof

26 - Cover

- ❑ For bolt
- ❑ 2x

27 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

28 - Cover

- ❑ For bolt
- ❑ 2x

29 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 21 Nm

30 - Hinge (rear)

- ❑ For convertible roof compartment lid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 121

31 - Wiring guide

- ❑ For hydraulic line and electrical wiring harness

32 - Mounting

- ❑ For convertible roof compartment seal
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 120

33 - Bolt

- ❑ 15 Nm

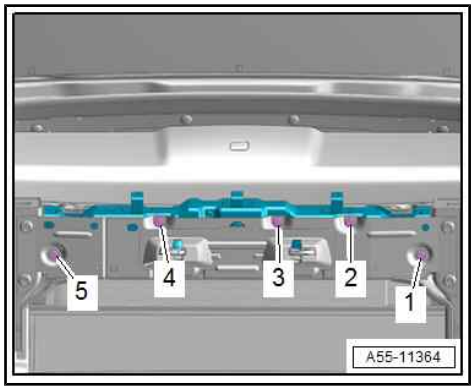
34 - Stop

- ❑ For tensioner when stowed

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Lock unit for convertible roof compartment lid - tightening torque and sequence

– Tighten bolts to 21 Nm in sequence -1 … 5-.



4.2 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment lid

- Two further mechanics are required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 115).

Removing

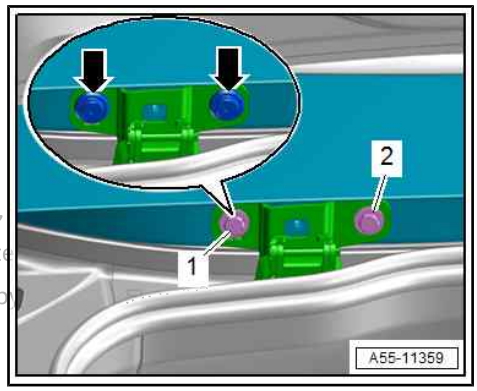
– Open rear lid and remove caps -arrows-.

– Mark bolts -1, 2- for re-installation.

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 330 .

– Remove side trim for convertible roof compartment ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Convertible roof compartment; Exploded view - convertible roof compartment.

Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction for commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

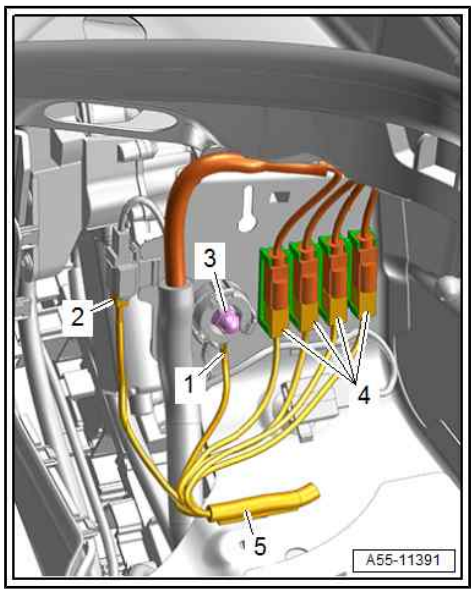


– Left side: Unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Move aerial wires -4- clear and disconnect wires.

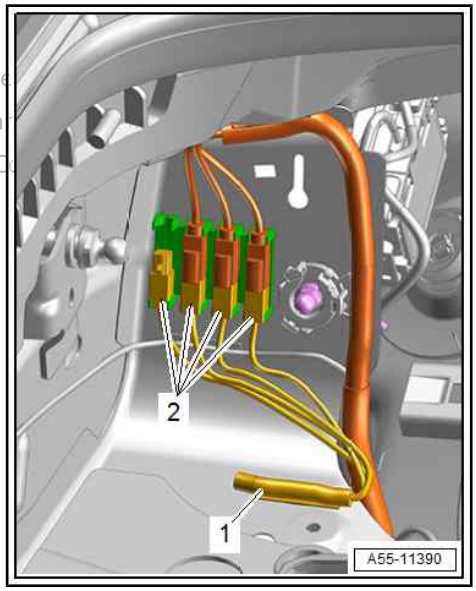
– Remove nut -3- and move earth wire -1- clear.

– Move wiring harness -5- clear.

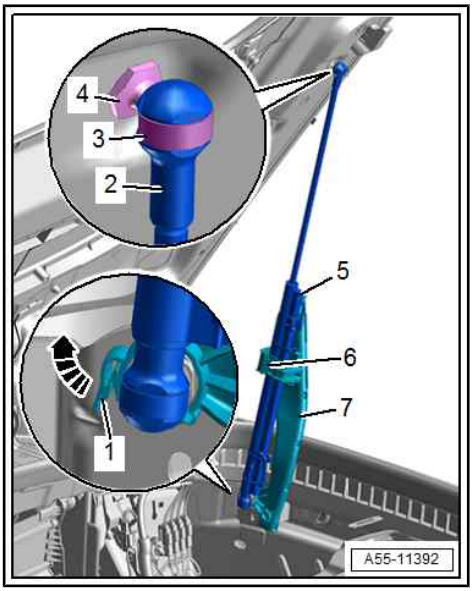


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. C

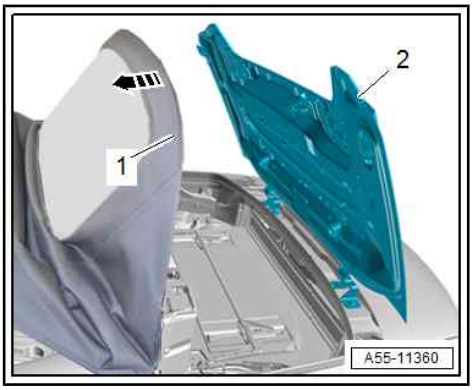
– Right side: Move aerial wires -2- clear and disconnect wires.
– Move wiring harness -1- clear.



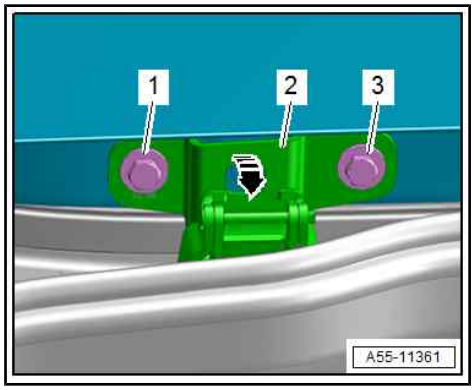
– Release securing tab -1- -arrow-, open retainer downwards and detach cable retainer -7- from ball stud (bottom).
– Release fastener -6- and detach cable retainer with wiring harness from hydraulic cylinder -5-.
– Lift retaining clip -3- slightly, detach hydraulic cylinder -2- from ball stud -4- and move it forwards into convertible roof compartment.



– Press convertible roof tensioner -1- forwards -arrow- and hold in this position.
– Close convertible roof compartment lid -2- (but do not let it engage).
– To avoid damaging the components during removal and installation, mask rear lid with adhesive tape in area of open convertible roof compartment lid.
– Open rear lid using vehicle key, guiding rear lid by hand.



– Unscrew bolts -1, 3- and fold hinge -2- towards rear -arrow-.
– Close rear lid.
– With the assistance of a second mechanic, detach convertible roof compartment lid and set it down on a soft surface.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Adjust convertible roof compartment lid ⇒ page 116 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid”, page 111

◆ ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations

4.3 Adjusting convertible roof compartment lid

⇒ “4.3.1 Adjustment dimensions”, page 116

⇒ “4.3.2 Lateral, longitudinal and height adjustment at hinge”, page 117

⇒ “4.3.3 Lateral and height adjustment at striker”, page 118

⇒ “4.3.4 Height adjustment using adjusting buffer”, page 119

4.3.1 Adjustment dimensions

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

A - Convertible roof compartment lid to side trim

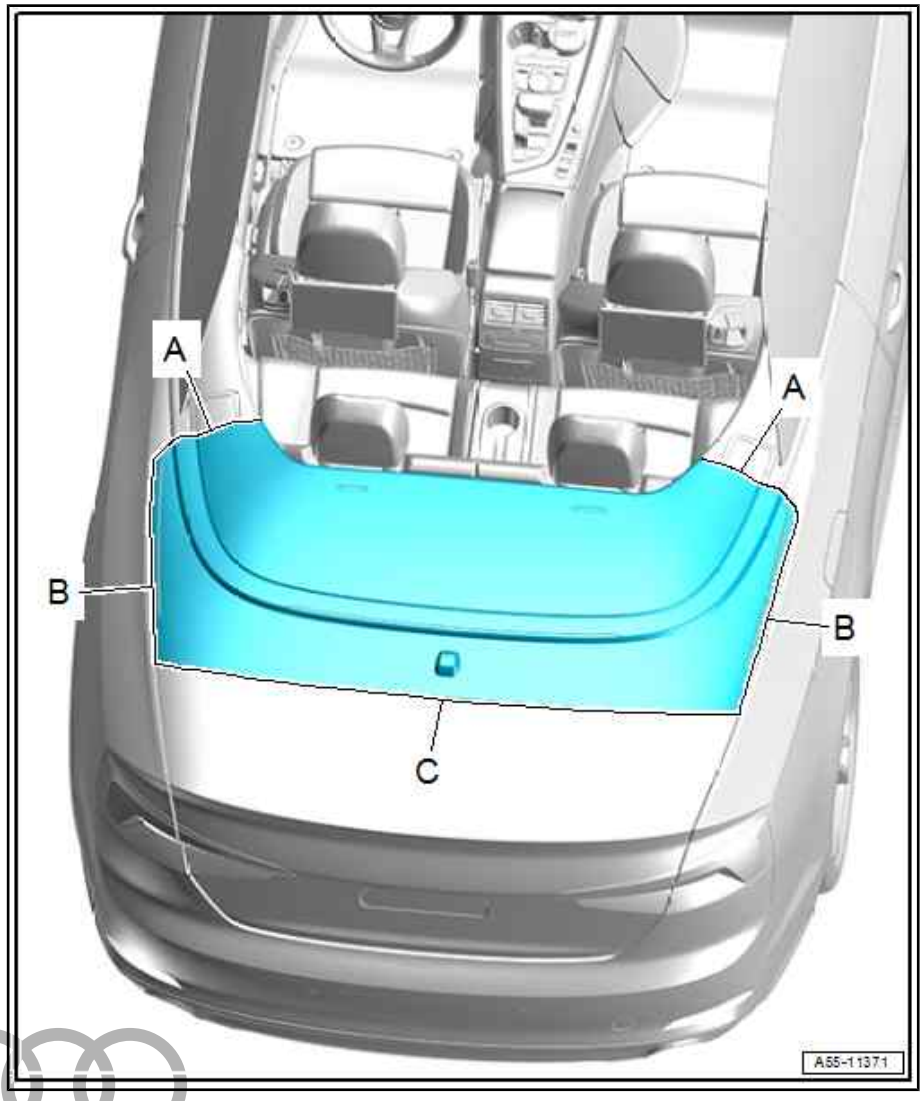
- Gap width = 3.5 mm

B - Convertible roof compartment lid to side panel

- Gap width = 3.5 mm

C - Convertible roof compartment lid to rear lid

- Gap width = 4.0 mm



4.3.2 Lateral, longitudinal and height adjustment at hinge

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ♦ Lateral and longitudinal adjustment at hinge ⇒ page 118
- ♦ Height adjustment at hinge ⇒ page 118
- Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 116

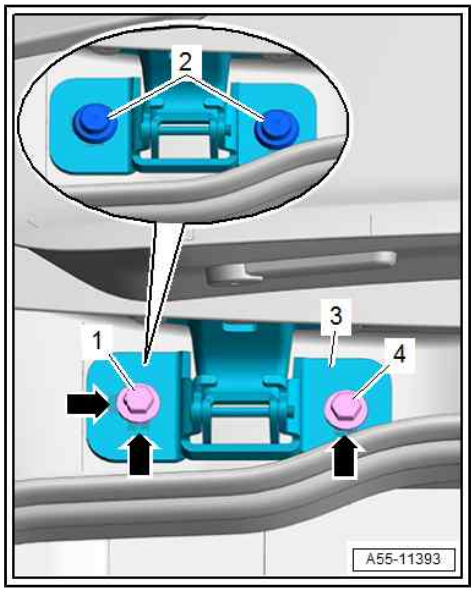
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Setting gauge - 3371-



Procedure

Lateral and longitudinal adjustment at hinge:

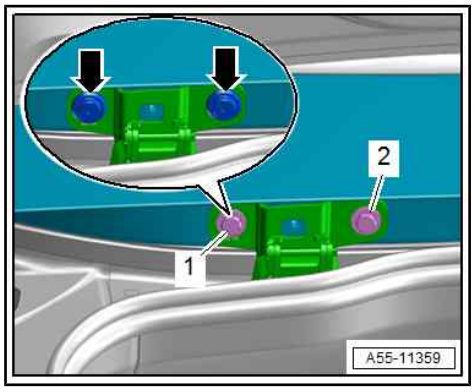


– Open rear lid, guiding it by hand.
– Remove caps -2-.
– Loosen bolts -1 and 4- on hinge -3-.
– Close rear lid.
– Adjust convertible roof compartment lid (lateral and longitudinal adjustment).
• Use markings -arrows- on hinge when performing lateral and longitudinal adjustment.
– Open rear lid, guiding it by hand.
– Tighten bolts.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid”, page 111

Height adjustment at hinge:



– Open rear lid, guiding it by hand.
– Remove caps -arrows-.
– Loosen bolts -1 and 2- on hinge.
– Adjust height of convertible roof compartment lid.
• Use markings on hinge when performing height adjustment.
– Tighten bolts.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid”, page 111

4.3.3 Lateral and height adjustment at striker

♦ Lateral adjustment at striker ⇒ page 119
♦ Height adjustment at striker ⇒ page 119
• Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 116

Special tools and workshop equipment required

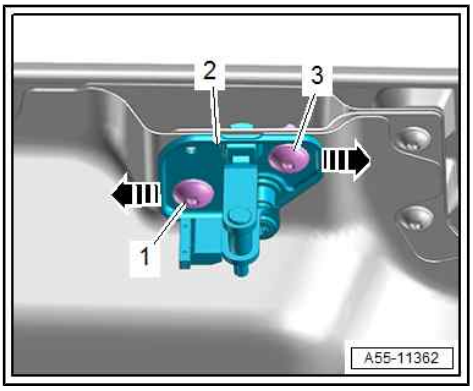
♦ Setting gauge - 3371-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Procedure

Lateral adjustment at striker

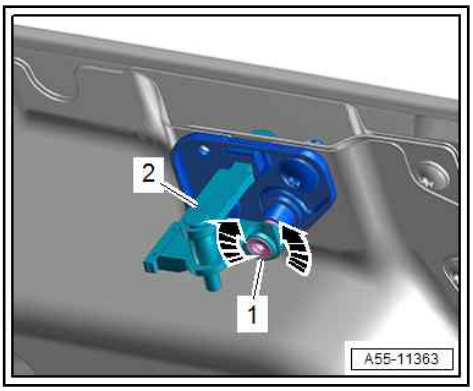


– Loosen bolts -1, 3-.
– Move striker -2- -arrows-.
• Closing check: Convertible roof compartment lid must fall into lock and engage fully.
– Tighten bolts.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid”, page 111

Height adjustment at striker



– Adjust striker -2- by turning adjuster screw -1- -arrows-.
• Closing check: Convertible roof compartment lid must fall into lock and engage fully.
– If necessary, adjust height of striker.

4.3.4 Height adjustment using adjusting buffer

• Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 116

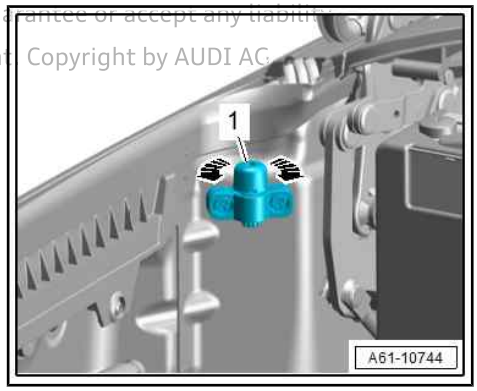
Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Setting gauge - 3371-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Turn adjusting buffer -1- -arrows- until convertible roof compartment lid makes contact when closed.
• The convertible roof compartment lid must rest lightly on the rear lid stop.
• Check that convertible roof compartment lid makes full contact and closes completely by pressing or pulling side edges of convertible roof compartment lid.
– Repeat adjustment if necessary.



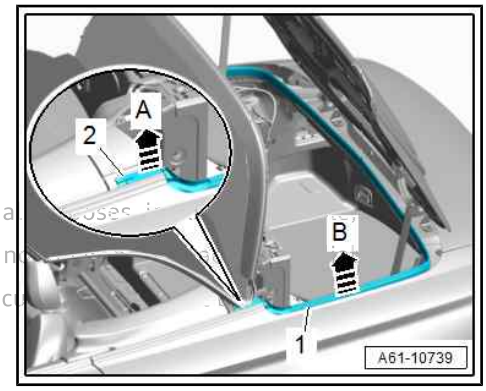
4.4 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment seal

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 330 .

– Pull convertible roof compartment seal -2- off body seam in vicinity of window slot trim strip -arrow A-.

– Pull convertible roof compartment seal -1- off convertible roof compartment -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

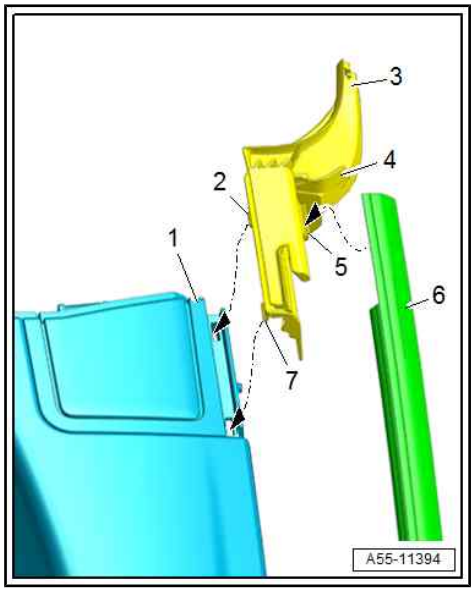
– Position convertible roof compartment seal -3- on body seam and press it on evenly.

• Retaining tabs -2, 7- must engage in recesses in side trim -1-.

• Retaining strip -5- must engage under window slot trim strip -6-.

– Convertible roof compartment seal must be flush with side trim.

– Sealing lip -4- must make contact behind body seam.



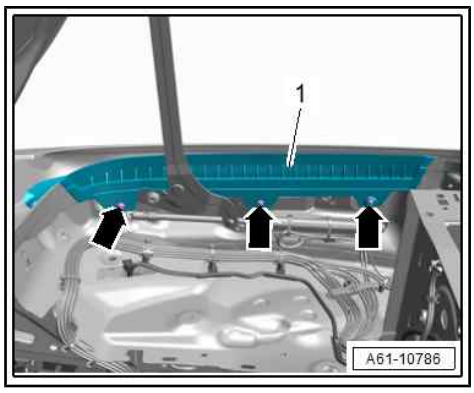
4.5 Removing and installing mounting for outer convertible roof compartment seal

Removing

– Unfasten seal for convertible roof compartment ⇒ page 120 .

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Pull mounting -1- off upwards.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Fit mounting on body flange as far as stop.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid”, page 111

4.6 Removing and installing hinge for convertible roof compartment lid

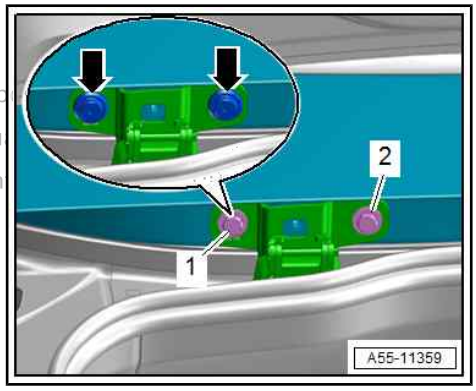
Removing

– Open rear lid and remove caps -arrows-.

– Mark bolts for re-installation.

– Remove bolts -1, 2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
with respect to the correctness of information in this documen

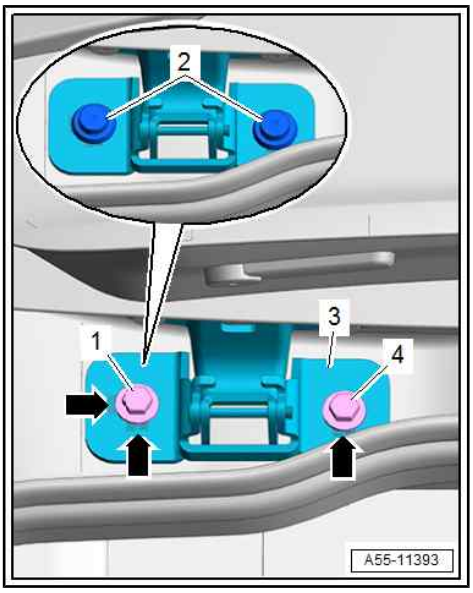


– Remove caps -2-.

– Mark bolts for re-installation.

– Remove bolts -1, 4-.

– Detach hinge -3-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Adjust convertible roof compartment lid ⇒ page 116 .

Tightening torques

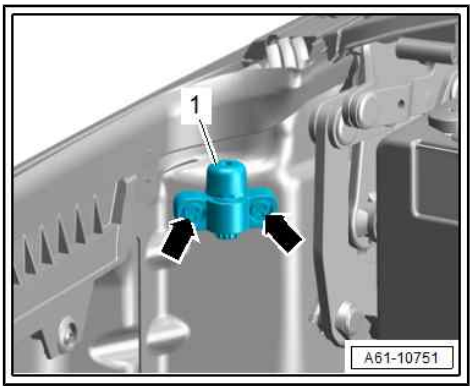
◆ ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid”, page 111

4.7 Removing and installing adjusting buffer

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 330 .

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach adjusting buffer -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Set adjusting buffer ⇒ page 116 .

Tightening torques

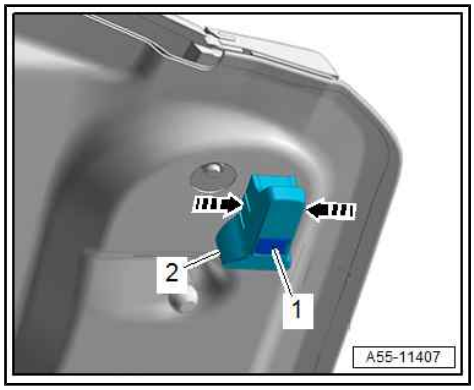
◆ ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid”, page 111

4.8 Removing and installing stop buffer

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 330 .

– Pull out spreader pin -1-.
– Compress retainers -arrows- and disengage and swivel out stop buffer -2-.



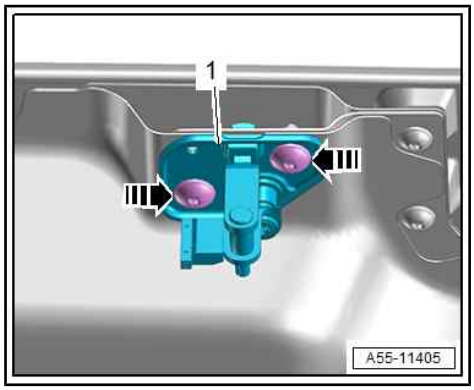
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

4.9 Removing and installing striker

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 330 .
– Mark installation position of striker for re-installation.
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach striker -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert striker according to markings made during removal.
– Adjust striker ⇒ page 116 .

Tightening torques

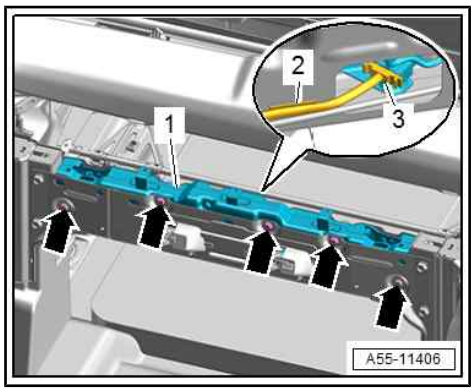
◆ ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid”, page 111

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.10 Removing and installing lock unit for convertible roof compartment lid

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 330 .
– Remove back panel trim (front and rear) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels .
– Move electrical wiring harness -2- clear.
– Unplug electrical connector -3-.
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Starting on right side, prise out lock unit for convertible roof compartment lid -1- upwards and remove.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ Fig. ““Lock unit for convertible roof compartment lid - tightening torque and sequence”“ , page 114

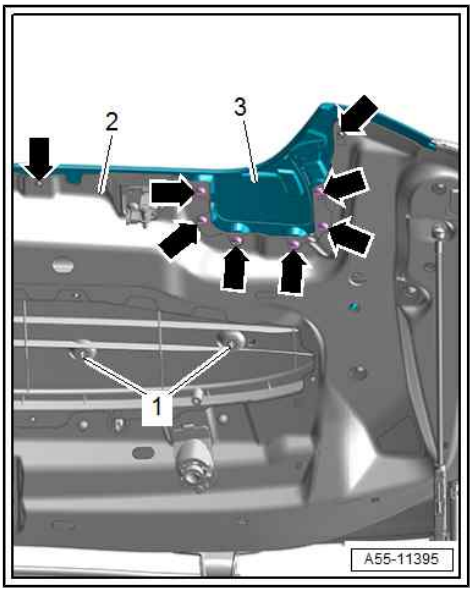
4.11 Removing and installing trim for convertible roof compartment lid

Removing

– Remove trim strip ⇒ page 595 .

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Detach trim -3- for convertible roof compartment lid from convertible roof compartment lid -2-; catches -1- will be released automatically.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Press trim for convertible roof compartment lid on until it engages audibly.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - convertible roof compartment lid”, page 111

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

57 – Front doors, door components, central locking

1 Door

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door”, page 124

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - door seals”, page 126

⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing door”, page 130

⇒ “1.4 Adjusting door”, page 130

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing door arrester”, page 136

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing inner door seal”, page 137

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing retainer for inner door seal”, page 140

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing door seal for roof trim strip”, page 142

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing door seal at A-pillar”, page 143

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing outer door seal”, page 143

1.1 Exploded view - door

1 - Door
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 130

2 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 33 Nm

4 - Cap
- ❑ For door arrester
- ❑ Installation position ⇒ page 125

5 - Door arrester
- ❑ Installation position ⇒ page 125
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 136

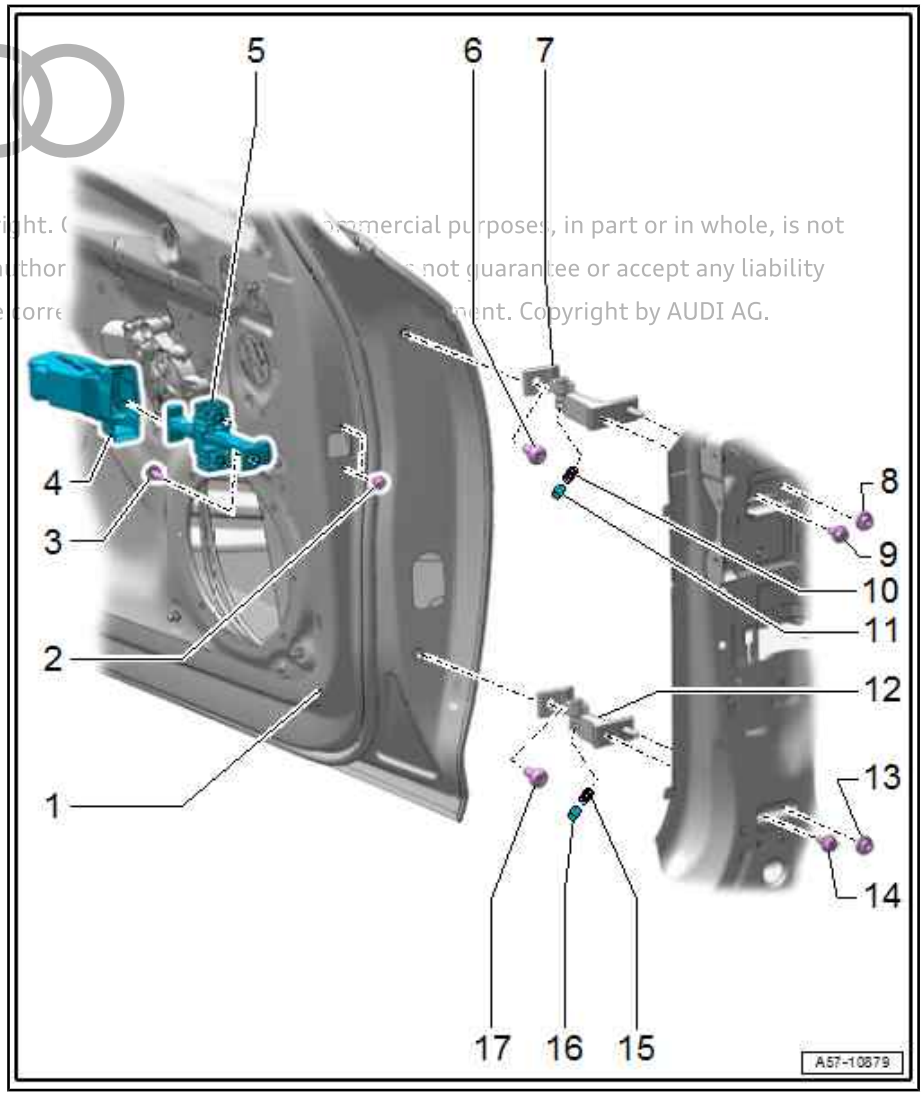
6 - Bolt
- ❑ 45 Nm

7 - Door hinge (top)

8 - Nut
- ❑ 32 Nm

9 - Bolt
- ❑ 32 Nm

10 - Grub screw
- ❑ 23 Nm



Protected by copyright. Commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless author not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correct. Copyright by AUDI AG.

11 - Cap

12 - Door hinge (bottom)

13 - Nut

- ❑ 32 Nm

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 32 Nm

15 - Grub screw

- ❑ 23 Nm

16 - Cap

17 - Bolt

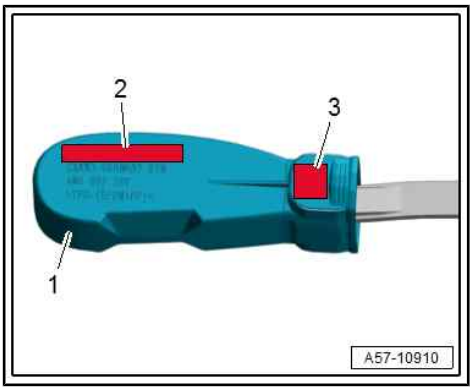
- ❑ 45 Nm

Installation position for cap

The cap -1- must be installed with the corresponding lettering facing upwards:

2 - VORN OBEN LINKS (= front top left) on the left / VORN OBEN RECHTS (= front top right) on the right

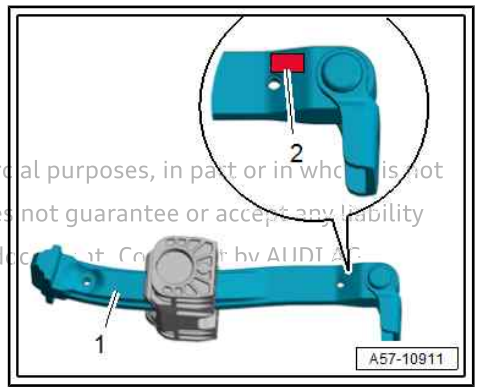
3 - VL (front left) on the left / VR (front right) on the right



Installation position for door arrester

The door arrester -1- must be installed with the corresponding lettering facing upwards:

2 - VL (front left) on the left / VR (front right) on the right



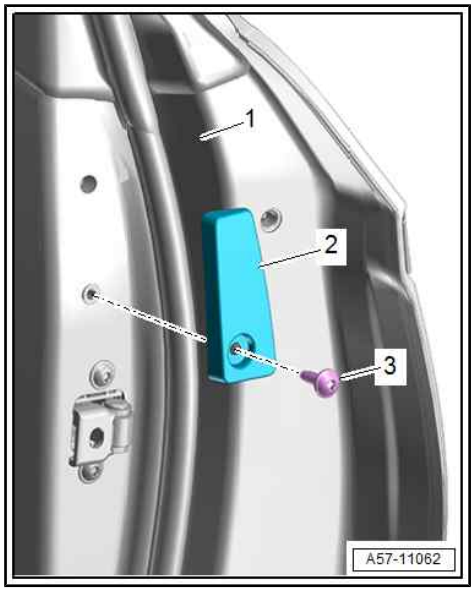
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Support plate for door - country-specific version

1 - Door

2 - Support plate

3 - Bolt: 10 Nm



1.2 Exploded view - door seals

⇒ “1.2.1 Exploded view - door seals, A4”, page 126

⇒ “1.2.2 Exploded view - door seals, A5 Coupé, A5 Sportback”, page 128

⇒ “1.2.3 Exploded view - door seals, A5 Cabriolet”, page 129

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2.1 Exploded view - door seals, A4

1 - Outer door seal

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 144

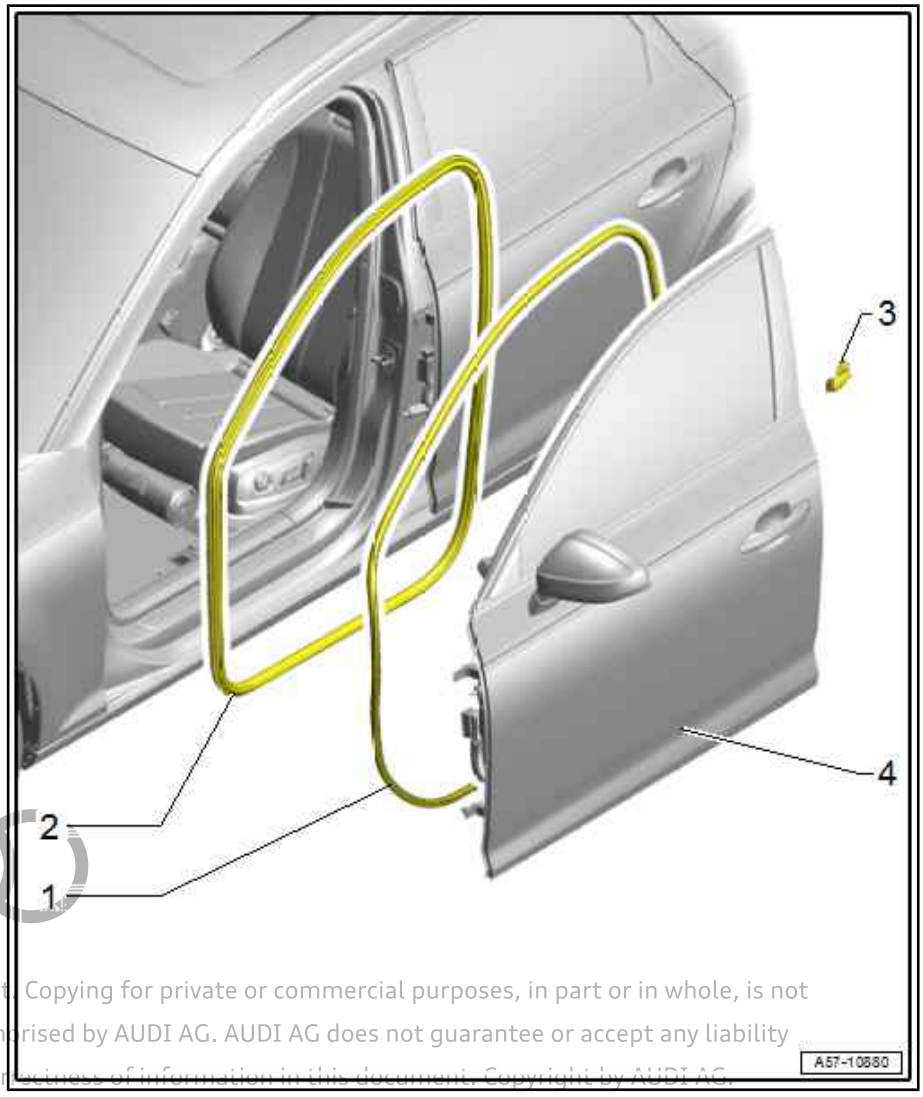
2 - Inner door seal

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 137

3 - B-pillar seal

4 - Door

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 130



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2.2 Exploded view - door seals, A5 Coupé, A5 Sportback

1 - Outer door seal

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 146

2 - Inner door seal

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 137

3 - Door seal on roof trim strip

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 142

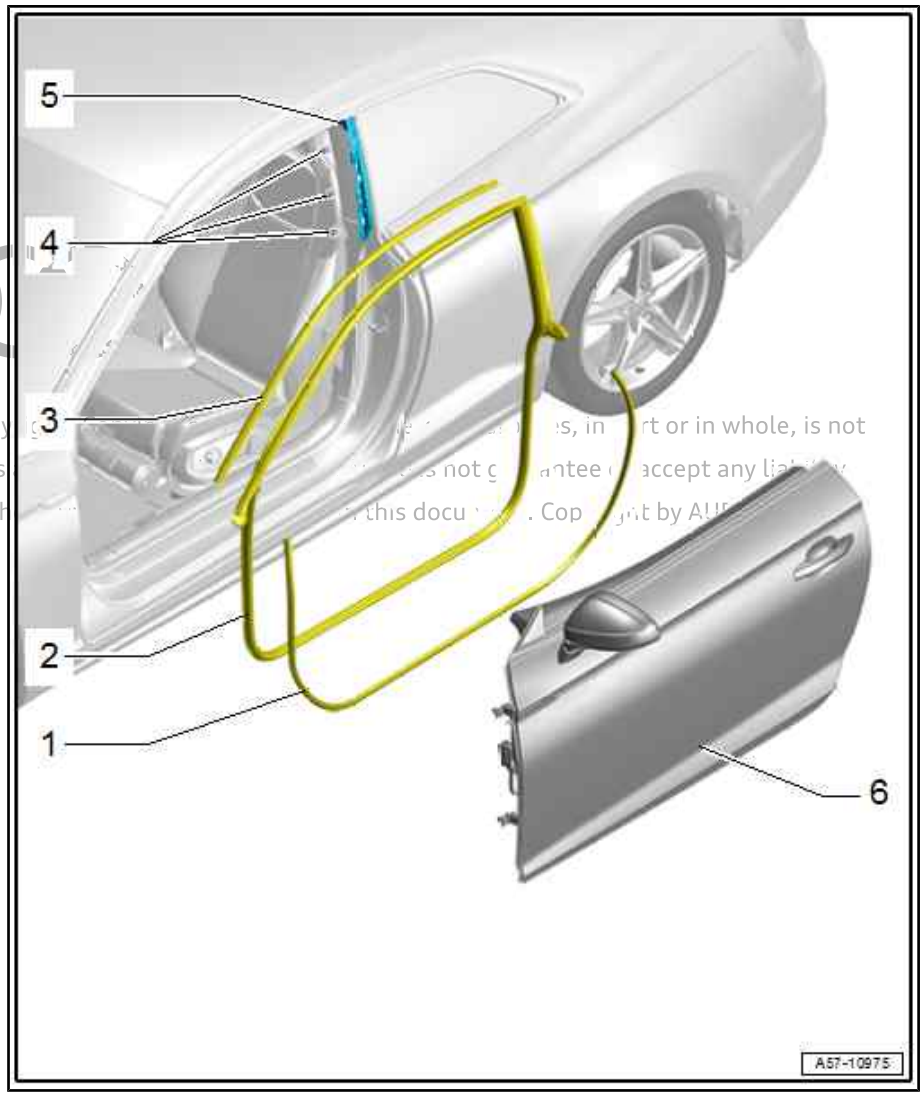
4 - Retaining clips

5 - Retainer for inner door seal

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 140

6 - Door

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 130



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to this documentation. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2.3 Exploded view - door seals, A5 Cabriolet

1 - Outer door seal
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 146

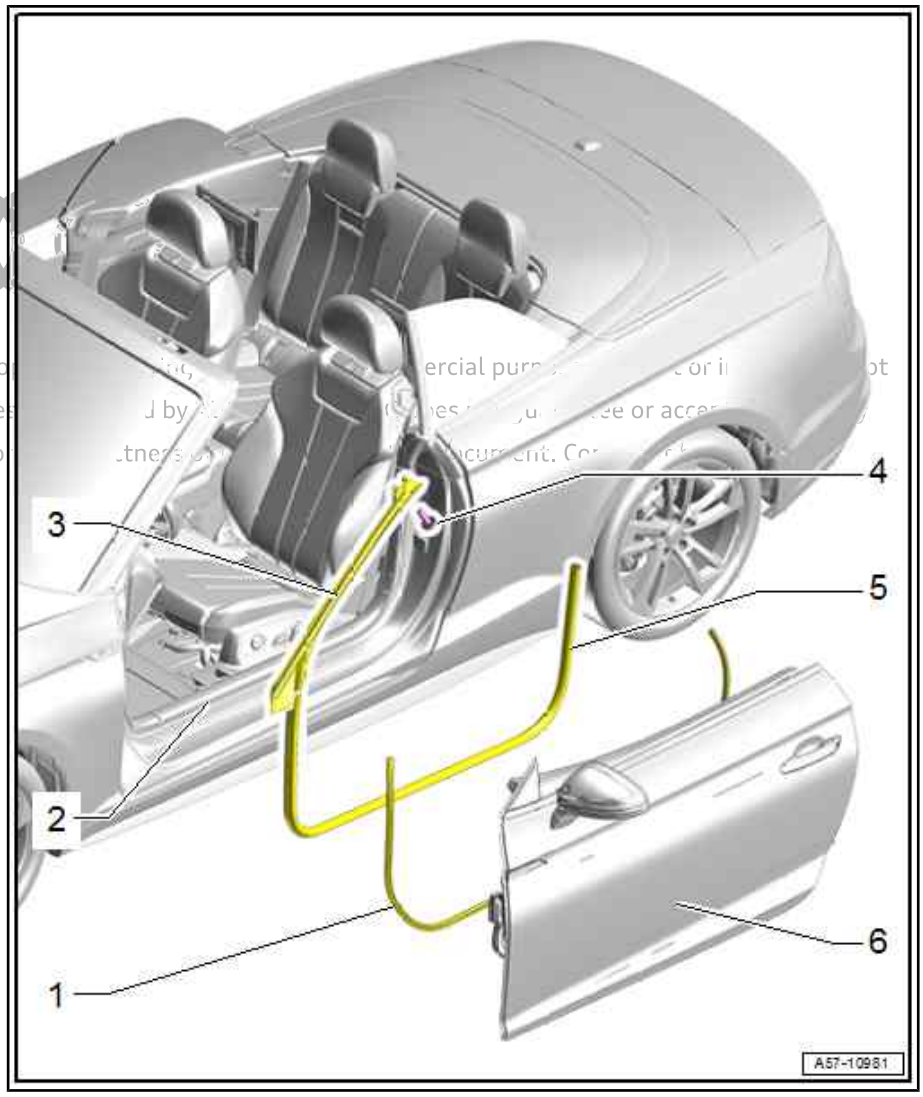
2 - Body

3 - Door seal at A-pillar
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 143

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

5 - Inner door seal
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 140

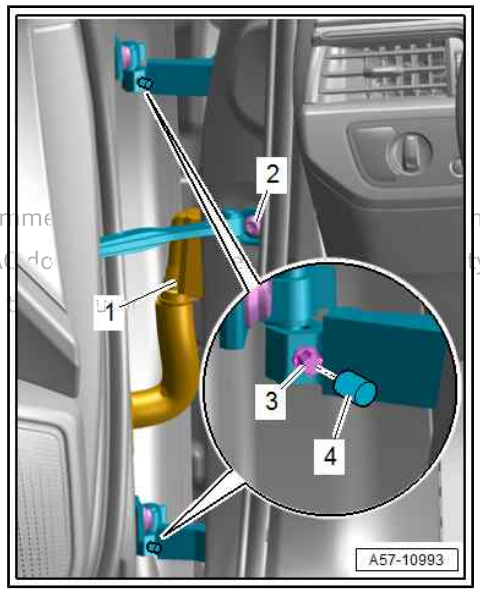
6 - Door



Protected by co ercial purp or i ot
permitted unle J by ge or acce
with respect to tnes cent. Co

1.3 Removing and installing door

Removing



– Unplug door disconnector -1- at A-pillar ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Connectors .
– Mask A-pillar in vicinity of door arrester with adhesive tape to avoid damaging paintwork.
– Unscrew bolt -2- for door arrester.
– Pull off cap -4- (top and bottom).
– Unscrew grub screw -3- from door hinge (top and bottom).
– Carefully lift door off hinges.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com... not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG do... liability with respect to the correctness of information in ...

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- No adjustment has to be performed after the front door has been installed.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door”, page 124

1.4 Adjusting door

⇒ “1.4.1 Adjustment dimensions - A4 ”, page 130

⇒ “1.4.2 Adjustment dimensions - A5”, page 132

⇒ “1.4.3 Checking door adjustment - A4”, page 132

⇒ “1.4.4 Lateral and longitudinal adjustment at hinge”, page 134

⇒ “1.4.5 Lateral adjustment at striker”, page 135

1.4.1 Adjustment dimensions - A4

A - Front door to body

- Gap width -a- = 4.0 ... 6.0 mm

B - Front door to wing

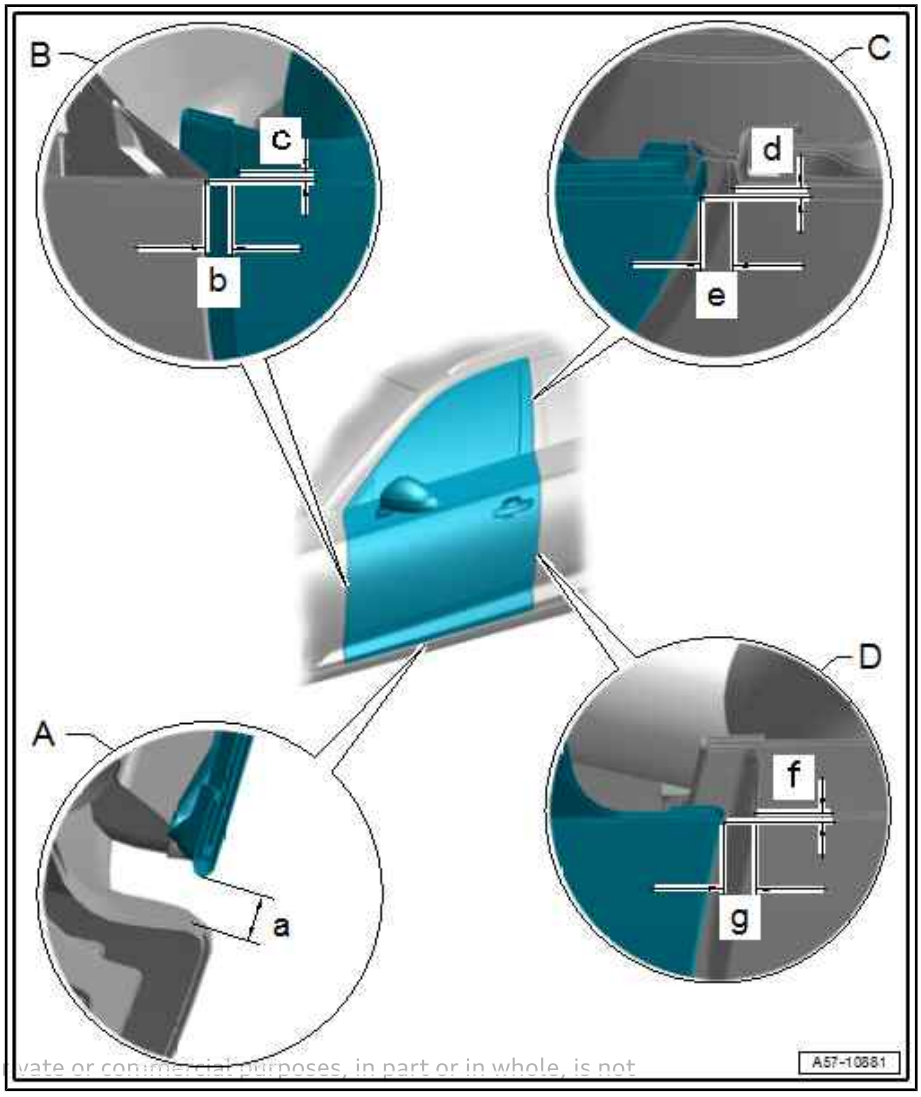
- Gap width -b- = 2.9 ... 4.2 mm
- Flush alignment -c- = 0/-1.0 mm
- Parallel adjustment = 0.5 mm

C - Front door to rear door

- Gap width -e- = 2.8 ... 4.8 mm
- Flush alignment -d- = ± 0.7 mm
- Parallel adjustment = 0.9 mm

D - Front door to rear door

- Gap width -g- = 3.5 ... 4.5 mm
- Flush alignment -f- = 0/-1.0 mm
- Parallel adjustment = 0.5 mm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4.2 Adjustment dimensions - A5

A - Front door to wing

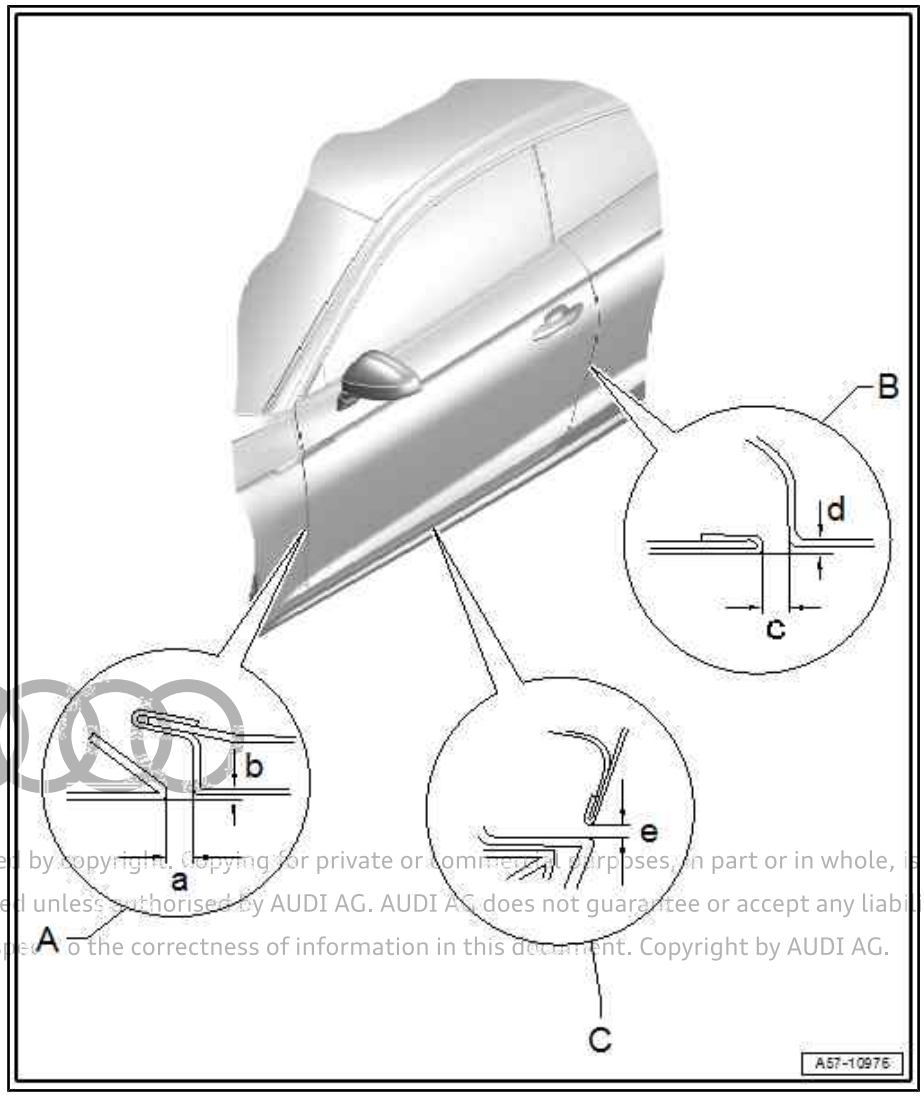
- Gap width -a- = 3.2 mm
- Flush alignment -b- = 0/–1.0 mm
- Parallel adjustment = 0.5 mm

B - Front door to side panel/ rear door

- Gap width -c- = 3.0 mm (A5 Coupé)
- Gap width -c- = 3.8 mm (A5 Sportback)
- Flush alignment -d- = 0/–1.0 mm
- Parallel adjustment = 0.5 mm

C - Front door to body

- Gap width -e- = 4.5 ± 1.0 mm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4.3 Checking door adjustment - A4

- ♦ Measuring points for checking door adjustment with template - T40038/20- ⇒ page 133
- ♦ Checking lateral adjustment with template - T40038/20- ⇒ page 133
- ♦ Checking height adjustment with template - T40038/20- ⇒ page 134
- Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 130

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Setting gauge - 3371-

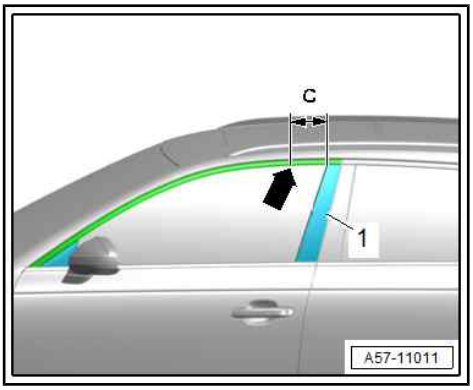


♦ Template - T40038/20-

Measuring points for checking door adjustment with template - T40038/20- :

– Check door frame adjustment using template - T40038/20- at measuring point -arrow- with distance -a- to B-pillar trim -1-.

• Dimension -c- = 100 mm



Checking lateral adjustment with template - T40038/20- :

Checking lateral tolerance (minimum):

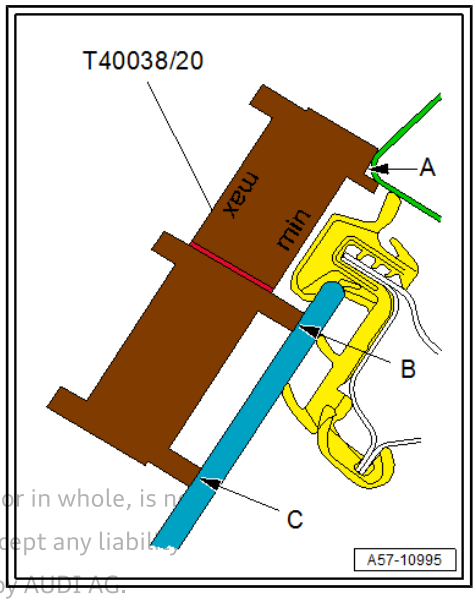
– Place template at measuring point on body ⇒ page 133 .

• The “min” marking on the template should face the vehicle.

– The points -B, C- on the template should make contact with the door window.

• Point -A- should make contact with the edge of the roof; a small gap is permissible.

– If there is a gap between point -A- and edge of roof, check maximum tolerance.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Checking lateral tolerance (maximum):

– Place template at measuring point on body ⇒ page 133 .

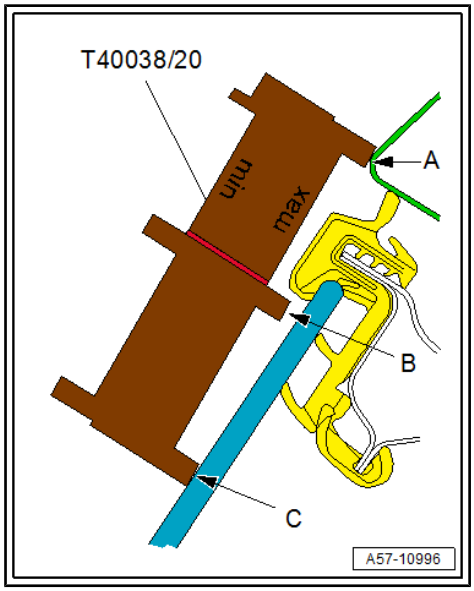
• The “max” marking on the template should face the vehicle.

– Points -A, C- on template should make contact with door window and edge of roof.

– Point -B- may make contact with door window, or there may be a gap in between.

• In this case, the adjustment is OK.

– If not, door is positioned too far to outside and must be adjusted.



Checking height adjustment with template - T40038/20- :

– Place template at measuring point on body ⇒ page 133 .

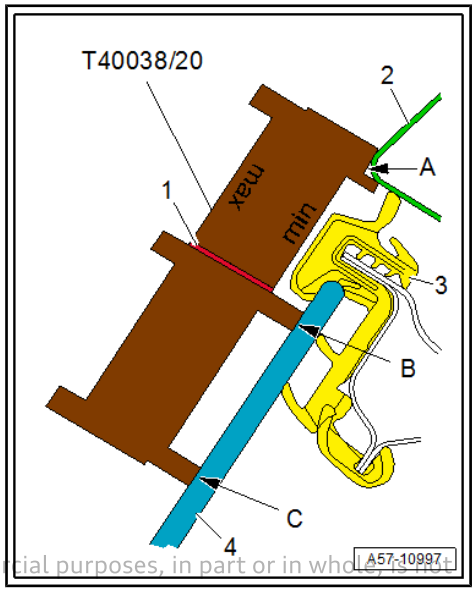
• The “min” marking on the template should face the vehicle.

– Point -A- should make contact with edge of roof from side and from below.

– Points -B, C- should make contact with the door window -4-.

– Height adjustment is correct if bottom edge of window guide -3- is positioned in area of marking -1- on template.

– If not, door must be adjusted.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4.4 Lateral and longitudinal adjustment at hinge

♦ Preparatory work for lateral and longitudinal adjustment at hinge ⇒ page 134

♦ Lateral adjustment at hinge ⇒ page 135

♦ Longitudinal adjustment at hinge ⇒ page 135

• Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 130

Procedure

Preparatory work for lateral and longitudinal adjustment at hinge:

Driver side:

– Unbolt relay and fuse carrier 1 - SR1- , move it clear and press it to one side ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Overview of fitting locations - relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes .

– Remove mounting for onboard supply control unit - J519- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Control units; Removing and installing onboard supply control unit - J519- .

– Move electrical wiring harness clear.

Passenger side:

– Remove glove box ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Storage compartments/covers/trim panels; Removing and installing glove box .

– If fitted, remove relay and fuse carrier 4 - SR4- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Overview of fitting locations - relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes .

Lateral adjustment at hinge:

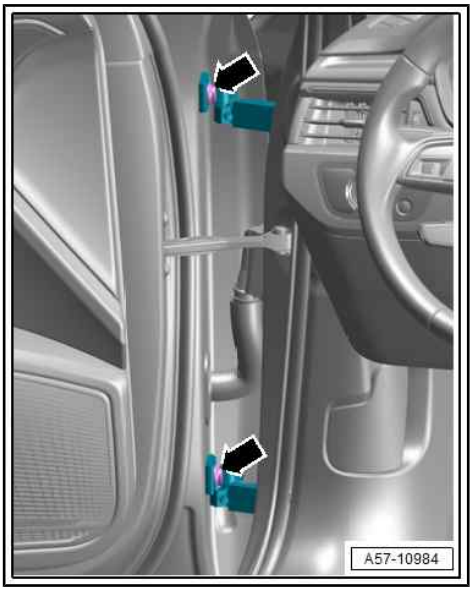
– Loosen bolts (top and bottom) -arrows- at hinge.

– Adjust door towards centre of vehicle.

– Tighten bolts.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door”, page 124



Longitudinal adjustment at hinge:

– Perform preparatory work for longitudinal adjustment ⇒ page 134 .

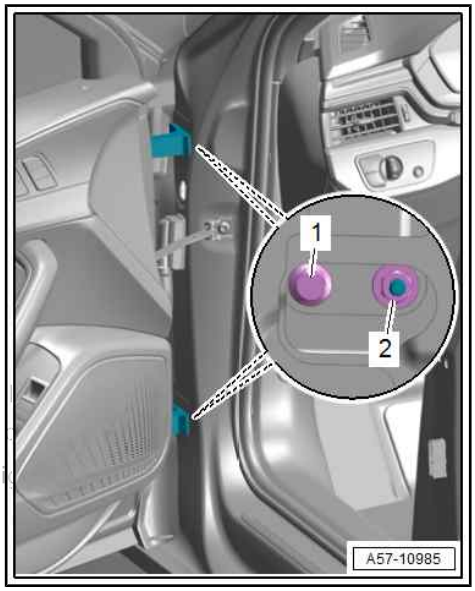
– Remove bolts -1- and nuts -2- from A-pillar.

– Adjust door lengthwise.

– Tighten bolts and nuts.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door”, page 124



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyri

1.4.5 Lateral adjustment at striker

• Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 130

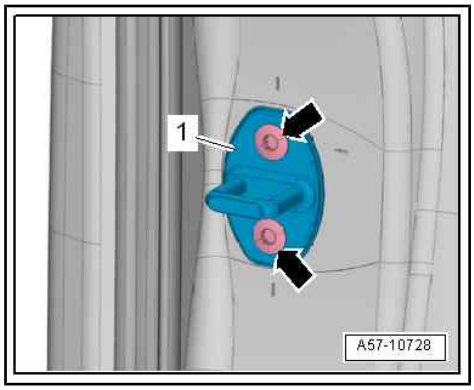
Procedure

– Loosen bolts -arrows-.

– Move striker -1- until door is flush with body contour.

- The striker is only to be used for adjustment towards the centre of the vehicle.
- Do not adjust the height of the door via the striker; otherwise the door lock will be damaged.
- If adjustment is correct, striker should engage centrally in door lock.

– Tighten bolts.



Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 150

1.5 Removing and installing door arrester

Removing

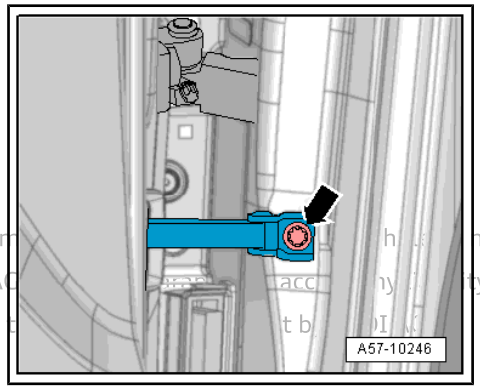
– Move door window to “closed” position.

– Remove door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (front); Removing and installing door trim (front) .

– Remove loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .

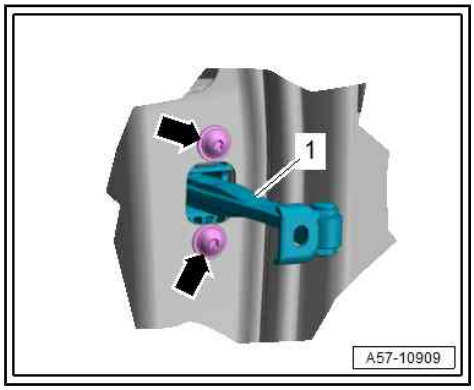
– Mask A-pillar in vicinity of door arrester with adhesive tape to avoid damaging paintwork.

– Unscrew bolt -arrow- for door arrester.

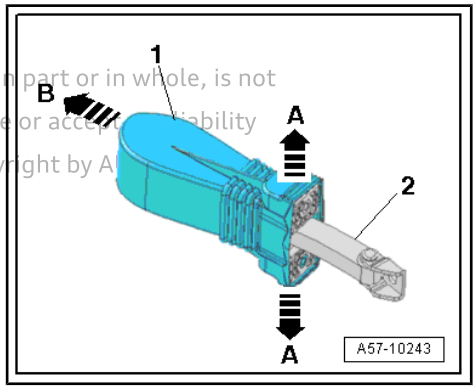


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com... h ... not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A... acc... ty with respect to the correctness of information in ... t b... I...

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and take out door arrester -1- inwards.



– Pull cap -1- slightly to one side -arrows A- and detach from door arrester -2- -arrow B-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Installation position for door arrester ⇒ page 125
- Installation position for cap ⇒ page 125

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door”, page 124

1.6 Removing and installing inner door seal

⇒ “1.6.1 Removing and installing inner door seal - A4”, page 137

⇒ “1.6.2 Removing and installing inner door seal - A5 Coupé”, page 138

⇒ “1.6.3 Removing and installing inner door seal - A5 Sportback”, page 139

⇒ “1.6.4 Removing and installing inner door seal - A5 Cabriolet”, page 140

1.6.1 Removing and installing inner door seal - A4

Removing

– Remove A-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing A-pillar trim .

– Remove sill panel trim (front) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing sill panel trim .

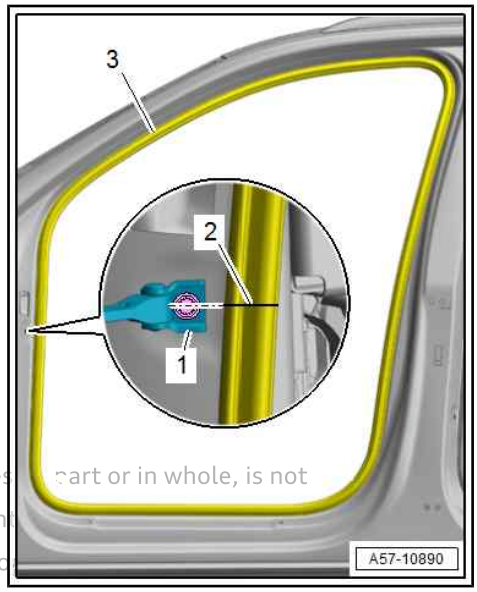
– Remove B-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing B-pillar trim .

– Pull inner door seal off body flange.

Installing

– Position inner door seal -3- on body flange so that vulcanised point -2- is aligned centrally with door arrester -1-, and press on all around.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guaran with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

1.6.2 Removing and installing inner door seal - A5 Coupé

Removing

– Remove A-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing A-pillar trim .

– Remove sill panel trim (front) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing sill panel trim .

– Remove B-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing B-pillar trim .

– Remove trim panel for B-pillar ⇒ page 619 .

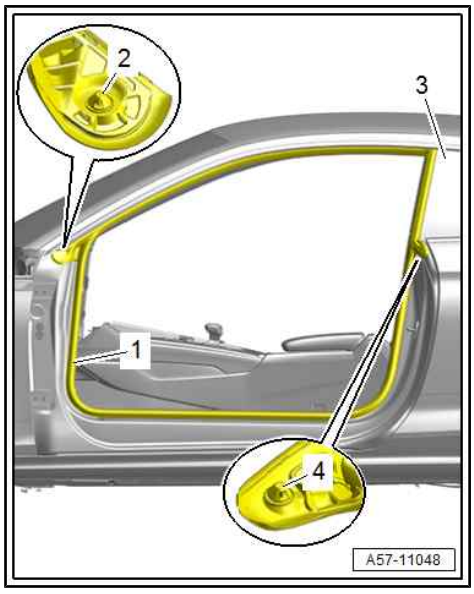
– Remove roof grab handle ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Equipment; Removing and installing roof grab handle .

– Pull off retaining lugs -2, 4-.

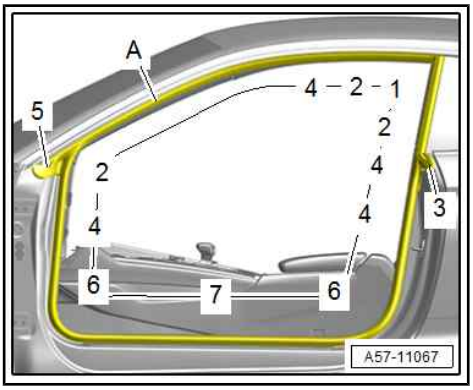
– Pull inner door seal -1- off body flange and out of guide for side window -3-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



Install inner door seal -A- on body flange in the sequence -1 … 7-.

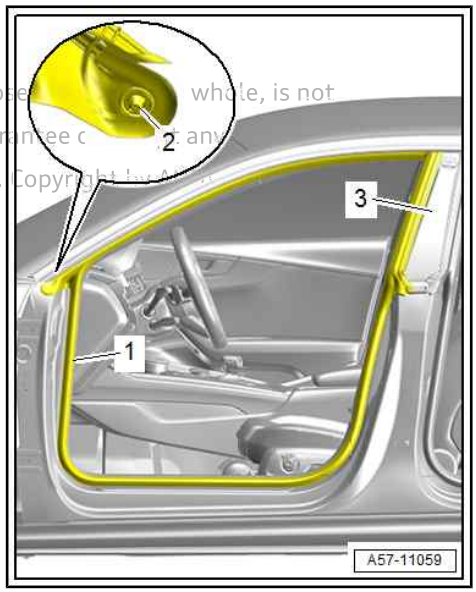


1. Press inner door seal onto top corner of B-pillar and onto retainer.
2. Fit inner door seal in area of A-pillar and B-pillar as far as the width of one hand.
3. Fit inner door seal onto retainer and press retaining lugs on fully.
4. Fit inner door seal at centre.
5. Press retaining lugs onto A-pillar.
6. Fit inner door seal on side member.
7. Press inner door seal onto roof trim strip, A-pillar/B-pillar and side member over entire length.

1.6.3 Removing and installing inner door seal - A5 Sportback

Removing

– Remove A-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing A-pillar trim .
– Remove sill panel trim (front) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing sill panel trim .
– Remove B-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing B-pillar trim .
– Remove trim panel for B-pillar ⇒ page 619 .
– Remove roof grab handle ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Equipment; Removing and installing roof grab handle .
– Pull off retaining lugs -2-.
– Pull inner door seal -1- off body flange and out of retainer for door seal for B-pillar -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

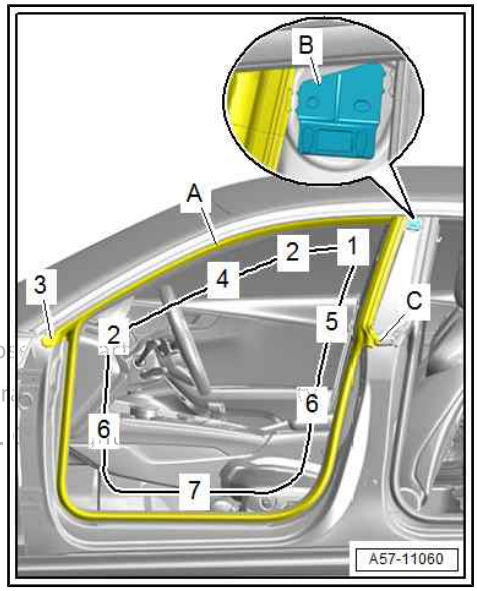
Install inner door seal -A- on body flange in the sequence -1 … 7-.

1. Align inner door seal with top corner of B-pillar and with retainer -B- for B-pillar trim, and press it on.

• The marks must align.

2. Fit inner door seal in area of A-pillar and B-pillar as far as the width of one hand.
3. Press retaining lugs onto A-pillar.
4. Fit inner door seal at centre.
5. Fit inner door seal onto its retainer and guide tab -C- over rivet nut.
6. Fit inner door seal at centre.
7. Fit inner door seal on side member.

– Press on all sections of inner door seal.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

1.6.4 Removing and installing inner door seal - A5 Cabriolet

Removing

– Remove side trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing side trim .

– Remove A-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing A-pillar trim .

– Pull inner door seal off body flange.

Installing

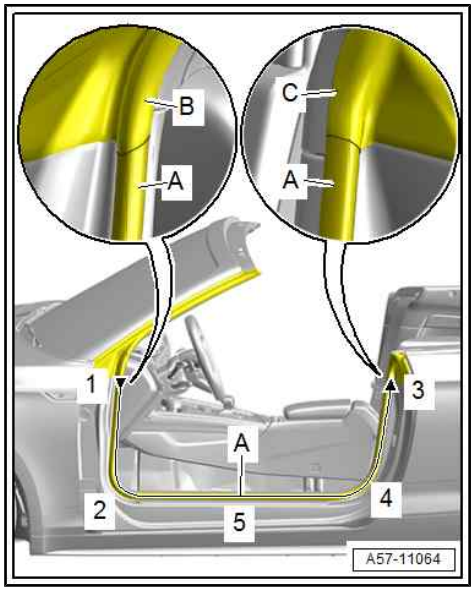
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Install inner door seal -A- on body flange in the sequence -1 … 5-.

• Seal at A-pillar and window slot trim strip (rear) must be installed.

Sequence for further installation:

1. Position door seal at A-pillar (top) so it is flush with seal at A-pillar -B-.
2. Apply door seal on body flange in area of A-pillar and side member.
3. Position door seal at B-pillar (top) flush against inner window slot trim strip -C-.
4. Apply door seal on body flange in area of B-pillar and side member.
5. Position door seal on body flange in area of side member.
6. Press on all sections of door seal.

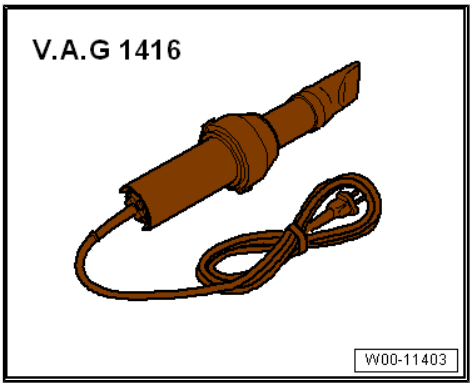


1.7 Removing and installing retainer for inner door seal

• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 128 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-



- Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

Removing

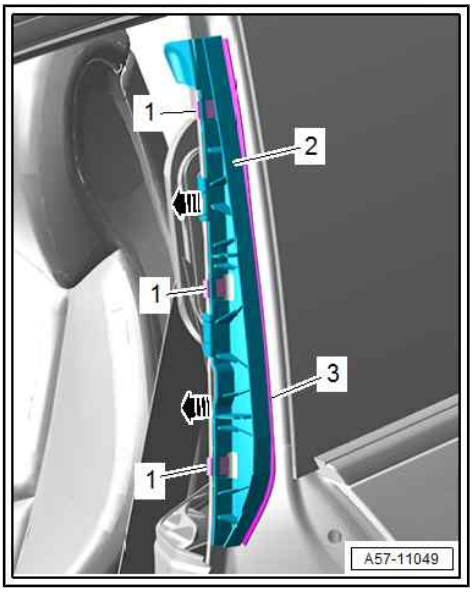
– Remove B-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing B-pillar trim .

– Remove trim panel for B-pillar ⇒ page 619 .

– Detach inner door seal in area of retainer.

– Heat bonded area -3- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .

– Detach retainer -2- for inner door seal from retaining clips -1- -arrows- and remove.



Installing

- The vehicle and the retainer must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

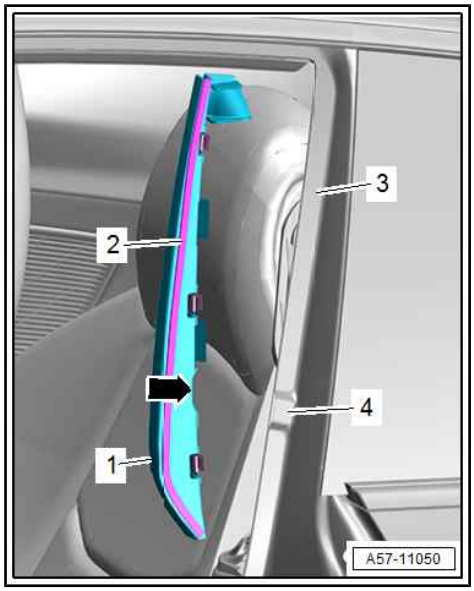
– Align retainer -1- for inner door seal -3- with body seam.

• Projection -4- on body seam must be opposite opening -arrow- on retainer.

– Peel protective film off adhesive strip -2-.

– Press on retainer over entire length.

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.

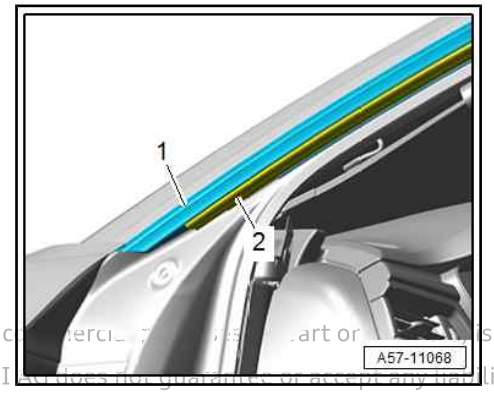


1.8 Removing and installing door seal for roof trim strip

Removing

– Detach inner door seal from body flange in area of roof trim strip: front door ⇒ page 137 ; rear door ⇒ page 193 .

– Pull door seal -2- out of roof trim strip -1-.



Installing

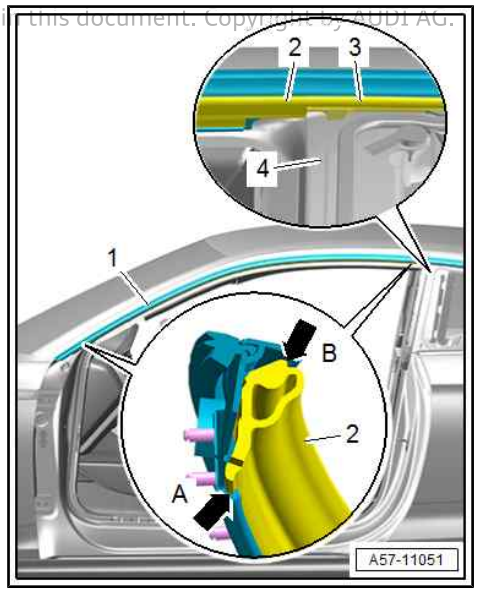
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or c[illegible]art or [illegible]s not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability whatsoever with respect to the contents and information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– A5 Coupé: Position door seal -2- at edge of side window -4- so that it is flush with side window seal -3- and fit in direction of A-pillar as far as the width of one hand.

• Insert door seal at rear side -arrow A- in mounting for roof trim strip -1- and lock in place at front side -arrow B-.

– Press door seal onto roof trim strip over entire length.

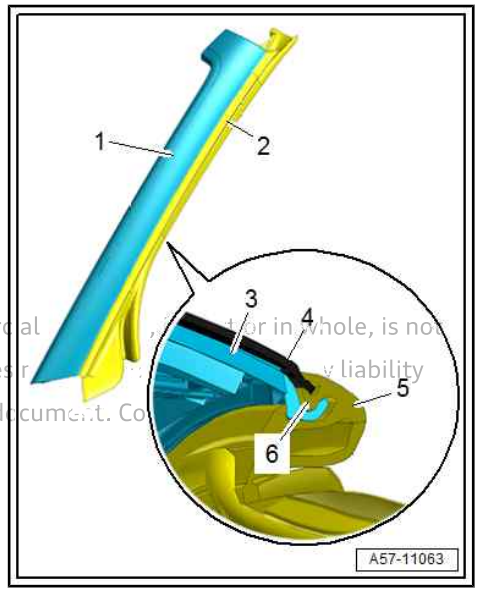


1.9 Removing and installing door seal at A-pillar

Removing

– Remove trim for windscreen frame (side) ⇒ page 587 .

– Detach door seal -2- from trim -1- for windscreen frame.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Starting at top, install door seal -5- in trim -4- for windscreen frame.

• You should feel the retaining wedge -6- of the seal engage in the guide -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

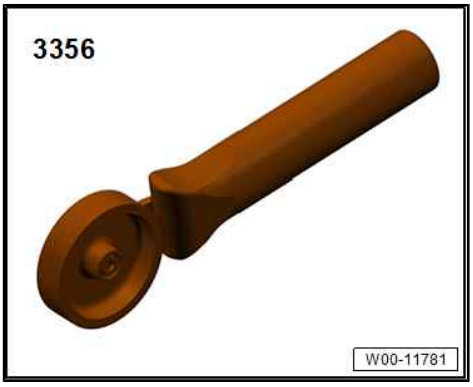
1.10 Removing and installing outer door seal

⇒ “1.10.1 Removing and installing outer door seal - A4”, page 144

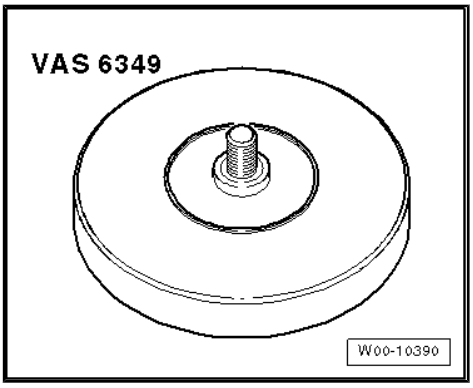
⇒ “1.10.2 Removing and installing outer door seal - A5”, page 146

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Roller - 3356-



♦ Adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349-



- Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-
- Primer - D 355 205 A2-
- Applicator - D 009 500 25-

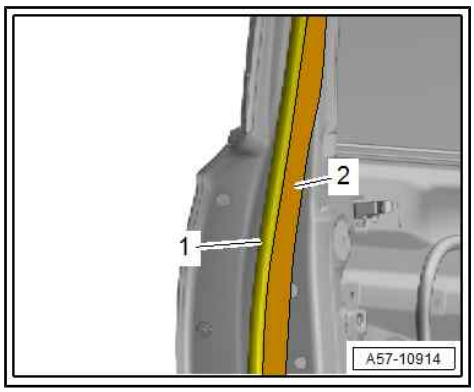
1.10.1 Removing and installing outer door seal - A4

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 126 .

Removing

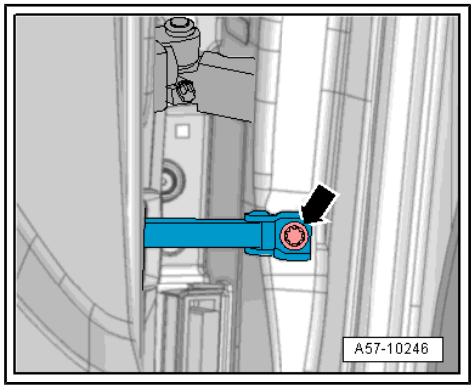
– Remove window frame trim (front) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (front); Removing and installing trim for window frame .

– Mark position of outer door seal -1- all around with adhesive tape -2-.



– Mask A-pillar in vicinity of door arrester with adhesive tape to avoid damaging paintwork.

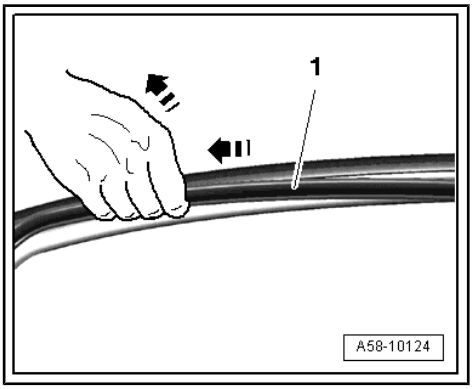
– Unscrew bolt -arrow- for door arrester.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Pull outer door seal -1- slightly off top of door frame and cut through with scissors (commercially available).

– Gradually stretch outer door seal lengthwise -bottom arrow- and detach -top arrow-.



Note:

By stretching the outer door seal lengthwise, the adhesive is separated from the door and the seal can be detached from the door without leaving any adhesive tape.

– Detach outer door seal completely.

Installing

- The vehicle and the seal must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.
- When installing, do not stretch seal.
- To prevent the outer door seal from becoming detached or misaligned, it is important that the door is not closed for at least 30 minutes.
- If the door has been renewed, use the routing of the outer door seal on the opposite side as a guide when positioning the outer door seal.

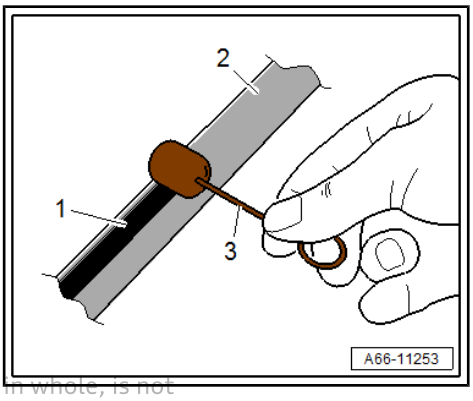
– Remove any remaining adhesive tape from vehicle body with adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349- .

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

– Apply primer - D 355 205 A2- -item 1- to bonding area -2- on painted surface using applicator - D 009 500 25- -item 3- and allow to flash off for 10 minutes.

- If the primer - D 355 205 A2- has been allowed to flash off for more than 2 hours, primer must be re-applied.

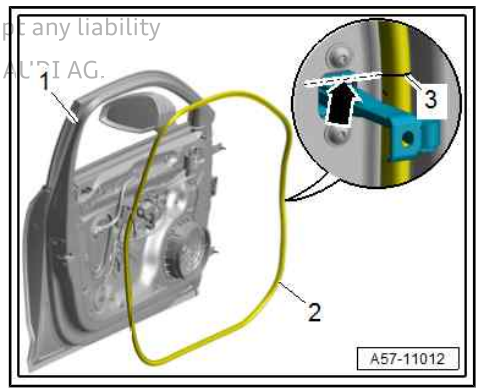
– Peel protective film off adhesive tape.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Unless authorized by AUDI AG, AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness, completeness and currentness of the copied information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Position outer door seal -2- on door shell -1- so that vulcanised point -3- is aligned centrally with opening -arrow- for door arrester according to marking made during removal and bond on all around.

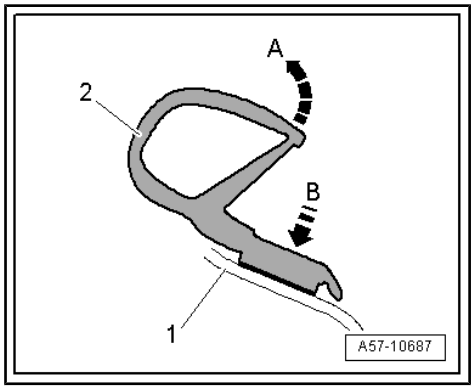
- When positioned correctly, the drain holes in the outer door seal are located at the bottom on the underside of the seal.



– Press seal -2- onto door shell -1- using roller - 3356- -arrow B-. To do so, swivel seal to one side -arrow A-.

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes with doors open.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.



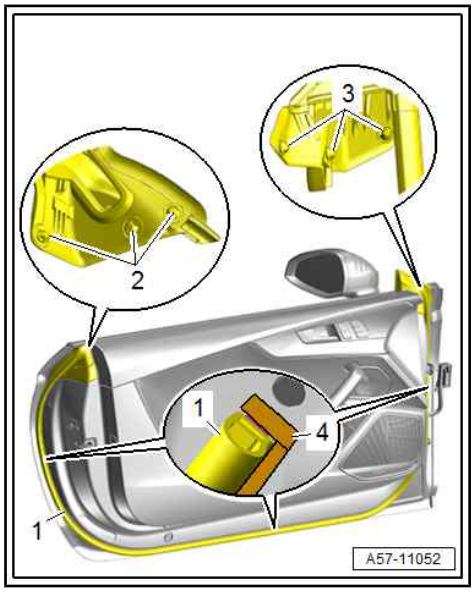
1.10.2 Removing and installing outer door seal - A5

• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 128 .

Removing

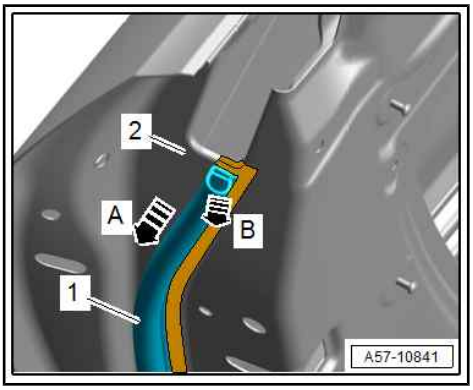
– Pull off retaining lugs -2, 3- and press window slot trim strip to side in area of outer door seal.

– Mark position of outer door seal -1- all around with adhesive tape -4-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Gradually stretch outer door seal -1- lengthwise -arrow A- and detach from door -2- -arrow B-.



Note:

By stretching the outer door seal lengthwise, the adhesive is separated from the door and the seal can be detached from the door without leaving any adhesive tape.

– Detach outer door seal completely.

Installing

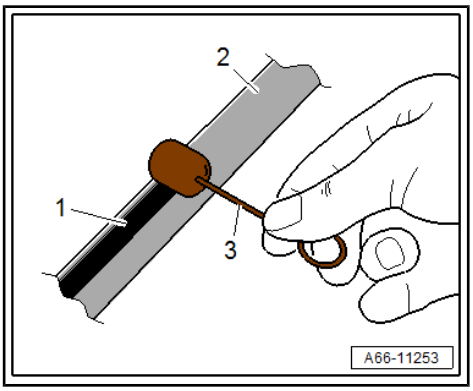
- The vehicle and the seal must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.
- When installing, do not stretch seal.
- To prevent the outer door seal from becoming detached or misaligned, it is important that the door is not closed for at least 30 minutes.
- If the door has been renewed, use the routing of the outer door seal on the opposite side as a guide when positioning the outer door seal.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape from vehicle body with adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349- .

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

– Apply primer - D 355 205 A2- -item 1- to bonding area -2- on painted surface using applicator - D 009 500 25- -item 3- and allow to flash off for 10 minutes.

- If the primer - D 355 205 A2- has been allowed to flash off for more than 2 hours, primer must be re-applied.

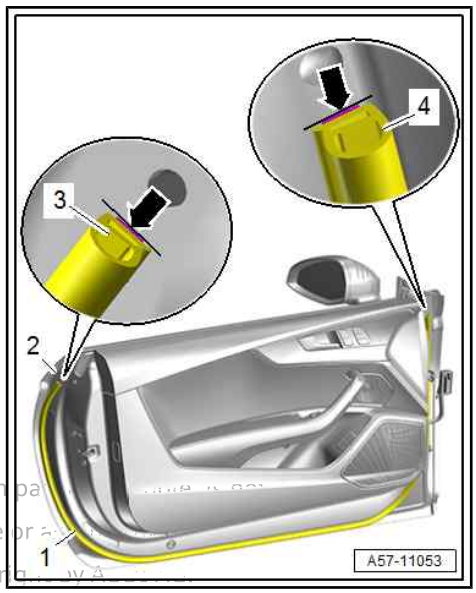


A5 Coupé, A5 Cabriolet:

– End -4- of door seal -1- must be applied at marking -right arrow- on hinge side.

– Bond seal onto door -2- along marking made previously as far as marking -3- on lock side -left arrow-.

- When positioned correctly, the drain holes in the outer door seal are located at the bottom on the underside of the seal.



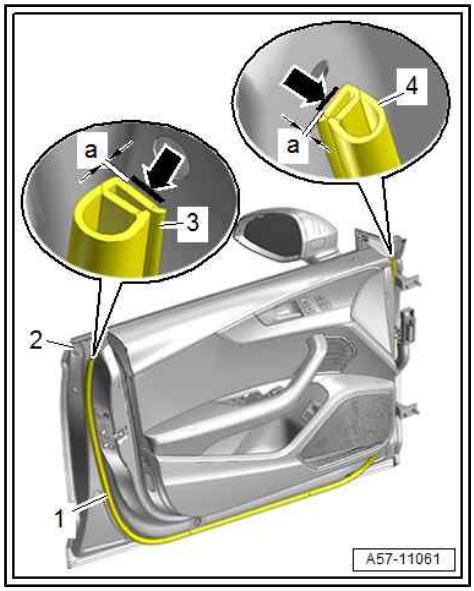
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyr

A5 Sportback:

– End -4- of door seal -1- must be applied at distance -a- from marking -right arrow- on hinge side.

– Bond seal onto door -2- along marking made previously as far as marking -3- on lock side -left arrow-.

• Dimension -a- = 1 mm



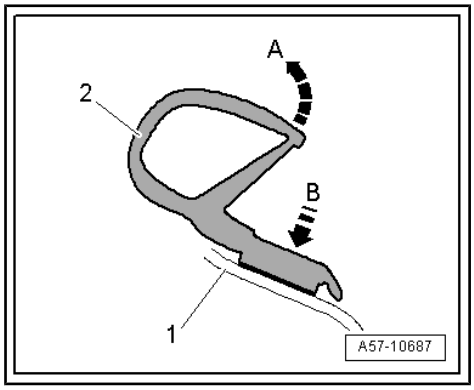
Continued:

– Peel protective film off adhesive tape.

– Bond seal onto door according to marking.

– Press seal -2- onto door shell -1- using roller - 3356- -arrow B-. To do so, swivel seal to one side -arrow A-.

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes with doors open.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Door components

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - window regulator”, page 149

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 150

⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips”, page 153

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing window regulator”, page 155

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing window regulator motor”, page 157

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing door handle”, page 158

⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing door handle trim”, page 158

⇒ “2.8 Removing and installing trim strip for door handle”, page 160

⇒ “2.9 Removing and installing mounting bracket”, page 160

⇒ “2.10 Removing and installing operating cable for exterior door handle”, page 161

⇒ “2.11 Removing and installing lock cylinder”, page 162

⇒ “2.12 Removing and installing housing”, page 162

⇒ “2.13 Removing and installing door lock”, page 162

⇒ “2.14 Removing and installing cover for door lock”, page 163

⇒ “2.15 Removing and installing striker”, page 164

⇒ “2.16 Removing and installing operating cable for interior door handle”, page 164

⇒ “2.17 Removing and installing inner door cover”, page 165

⇒ “2.18 Removing and installing window guide”, page 166

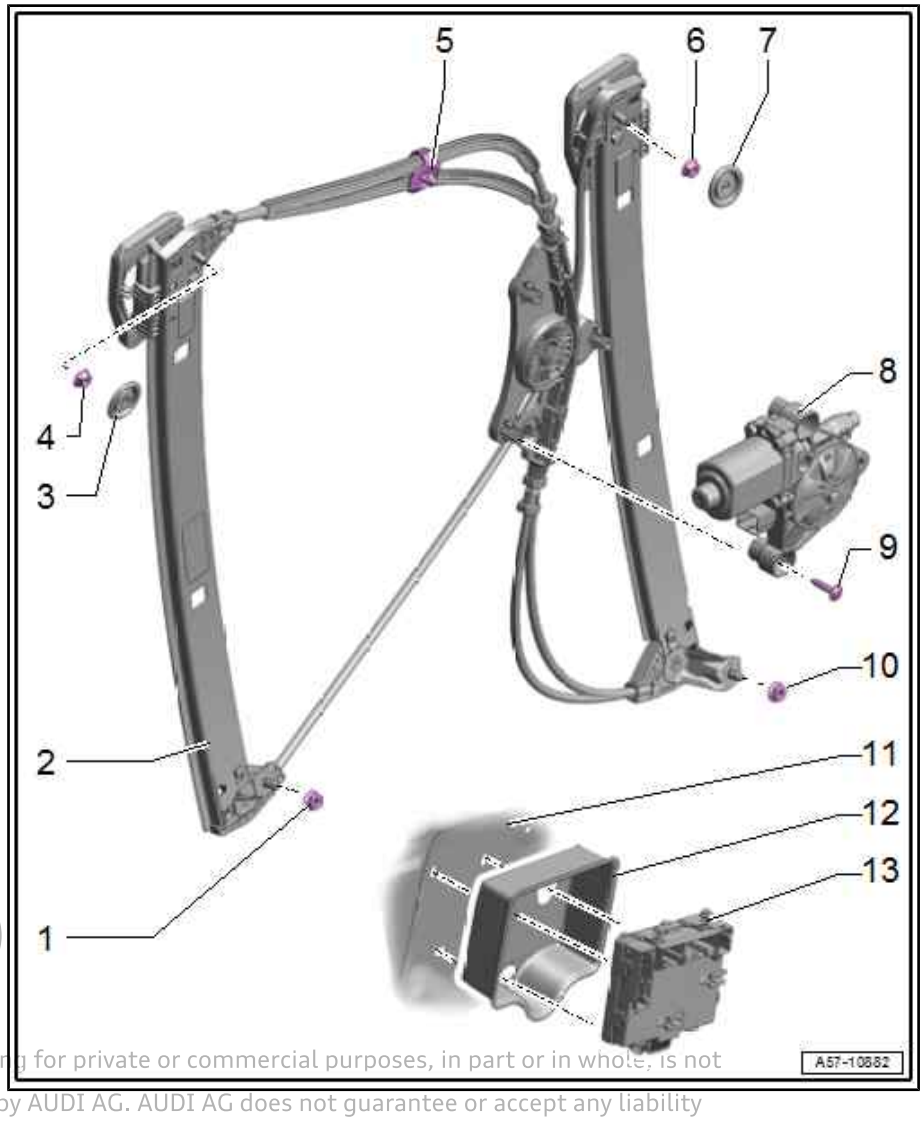
⇒ “2.19 Removing and installing guide rail for door window”, page 167

⇒ “2.20 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip”, page 167

⇒ “2.21 Removing and installing outer window slot trim strip”, page 169

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1 Exploded view - window regulator



1 - Nut
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

2 - Window regulator
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 155

3 - Cap

4 - Nut
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

5 - Retaining clip
- ❑ For cable for window regulator

6 - Nut
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

7 - Cap

8 - Window regulator motor
- ❑ Driver side window regulator motor - V147- , front passenger side window regulator motor - V148-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 157

9 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in by hand
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

10 - Nut
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

11 - Door

12 - Rubber sleeve
- ❑ For door control unit

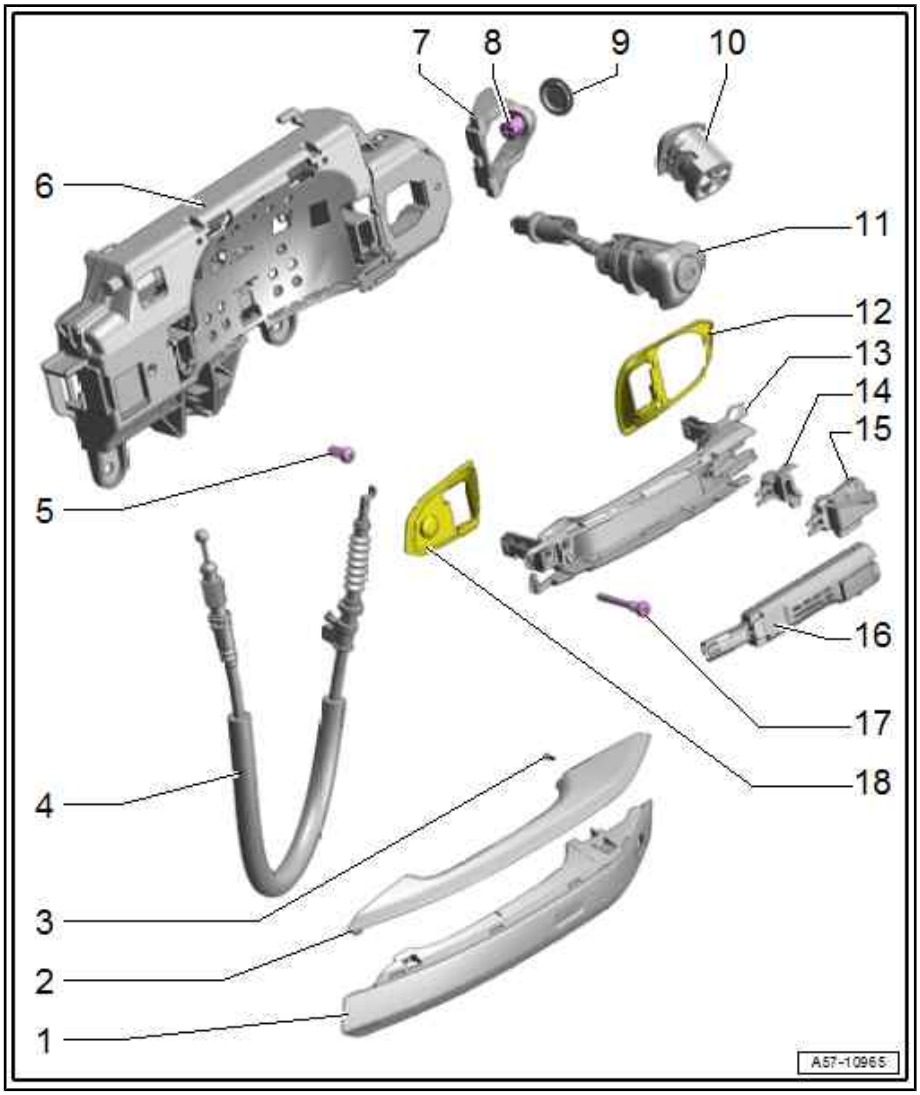
13 - Door control unit
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ page 172

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock

- ◆ Exploded view - door handle and mounting bracket ⇒ page 150
- ◆ Exploded view - door lock and striker ⇒ page 152

Exploded view - door handle and mounting bracket



1 - Door handle trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 158

2 - Trim strip

- ❑ For door handle trim
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 160

3 - Bolt

- ❑ For equipment version with trim strip
- ❑ 1 Nm

4 - Operating cable

- ❑ For exterior door handle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 161

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

6 - Mounting bracket

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 160

7 - Retaining bracket

8 - Clamping bolt

- ❑ For lock cylinder/housing
- ❑ 3 Nm

9 - Plug

10 - Housing

- ❑ For front passenger's door
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 162

11 - Lock cylinder

- ❑ For driver's door
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 162

12 - Backing plate (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 160

13 - Door handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 158

14 - Housing

- ❑ For vehicles without exterior door handle illumination bulb

15 - Exterior door handle illumination bulb

- ❑ Front left door exterior handle illumination bulb - L162- , front right door exterior handle illumination bulb - L163-
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Lights in exterior door handle; Exploded view - lights in exterior door handle

16 - Contact sensor for exterior door handle

- ❑ Driver exterior door handle contact sensor - G415- , front passenger exterior door handle contact sensor - G416-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation; Overview of fitting locations - keyless entry system

17 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

18 - Backing plate (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 160

Exploded view - door lock and striker

1 - Inner door cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 165

2 - Operating cable

- ❑ For interior door handle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 164

3 - Door lock

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 162

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 19 Nm

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 25 Nm

7 - Support

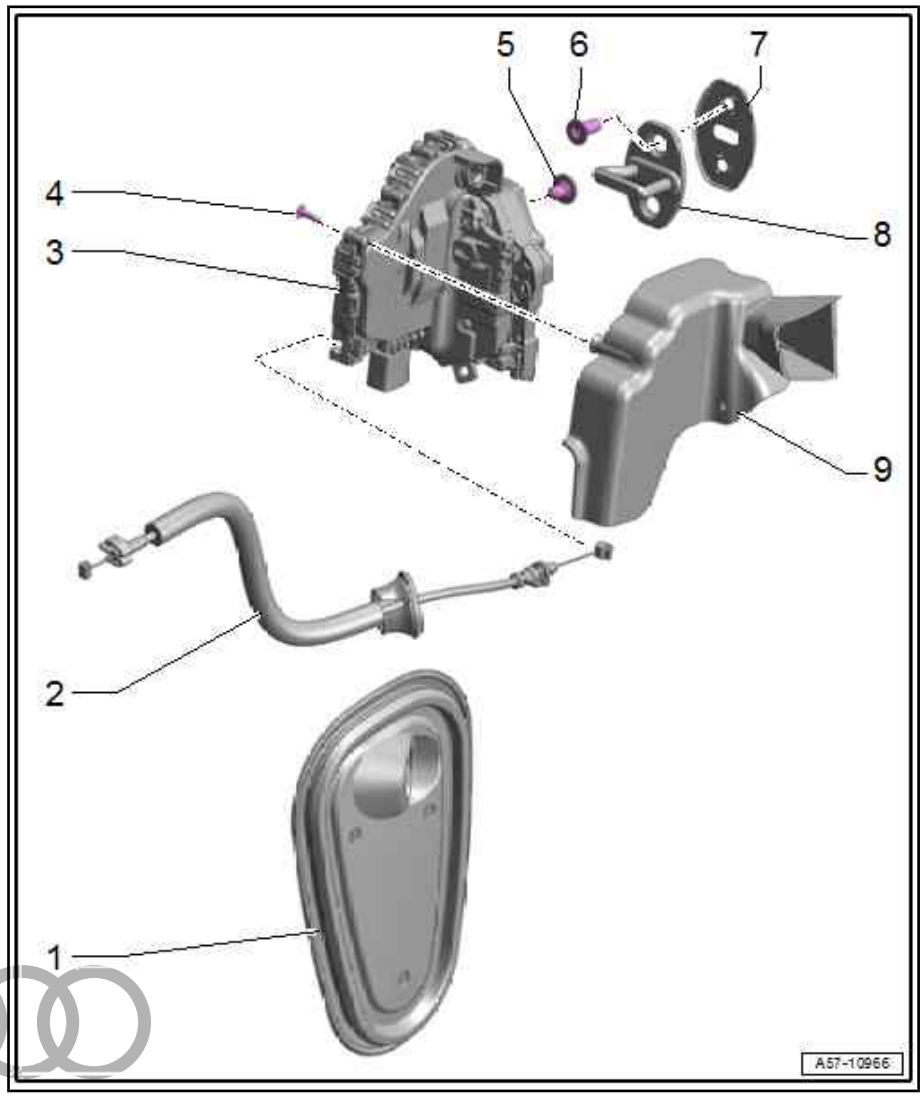
- ❑ Combined as one part with -item 8-

8 - Striker

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 164
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 135

9 - Cover

- ❑ For door lock
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 163



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips

⇒ “2.3.1 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips, A4”, page 153

⇒ “2.3.2 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips, A5”, page 154

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

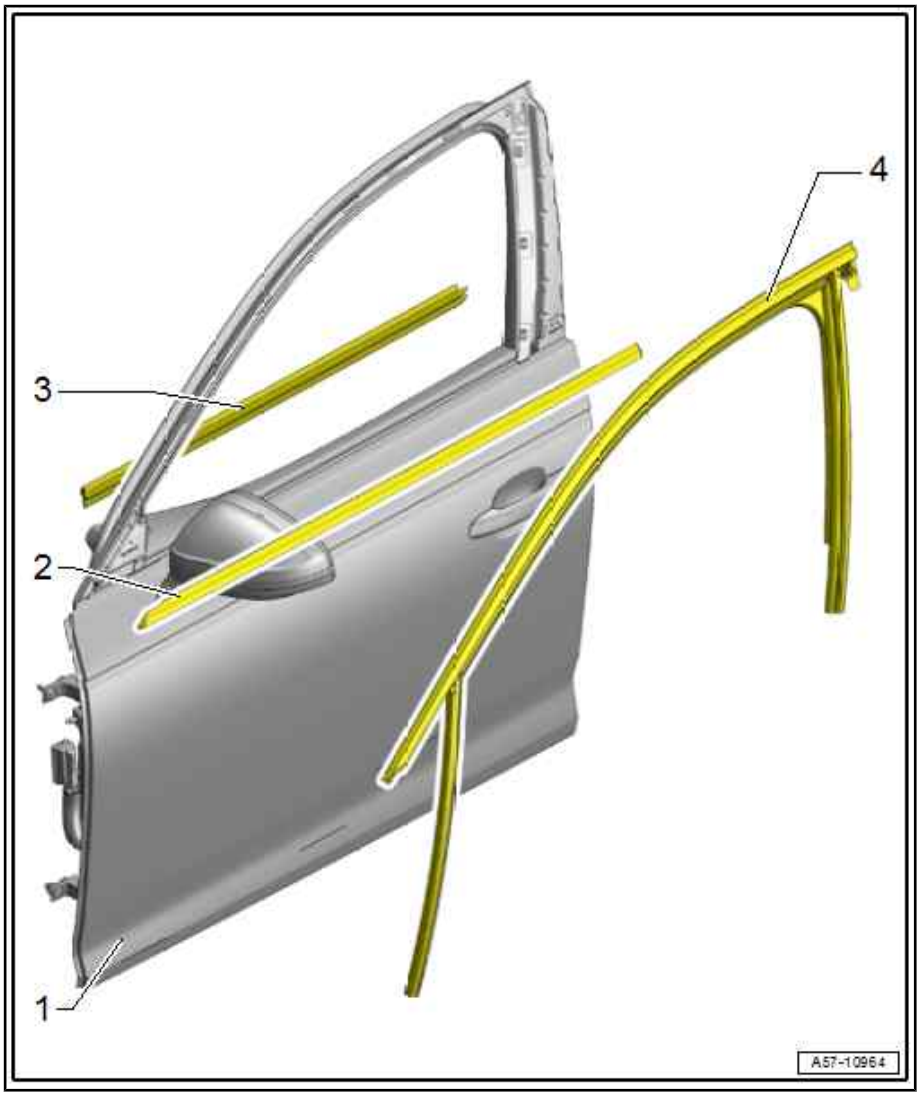
2.3.1 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips, A4

1 - Door

2 - Outer window slot trim strip
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 169

3 - Inner window slot trim strip
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 167

4 - Window guide
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 166



2.3.2 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips, A5

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Bolt

- ❑ A5 Coupé, A5 Cabriolet only
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 154

2 - Guide rail

- ❑ For door window
- ❑ A5 Coupé, A5 Cabriolet only
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 167

3 - Bolt

- ❑ A5 Coupé, A5 Cabriolet only
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 154

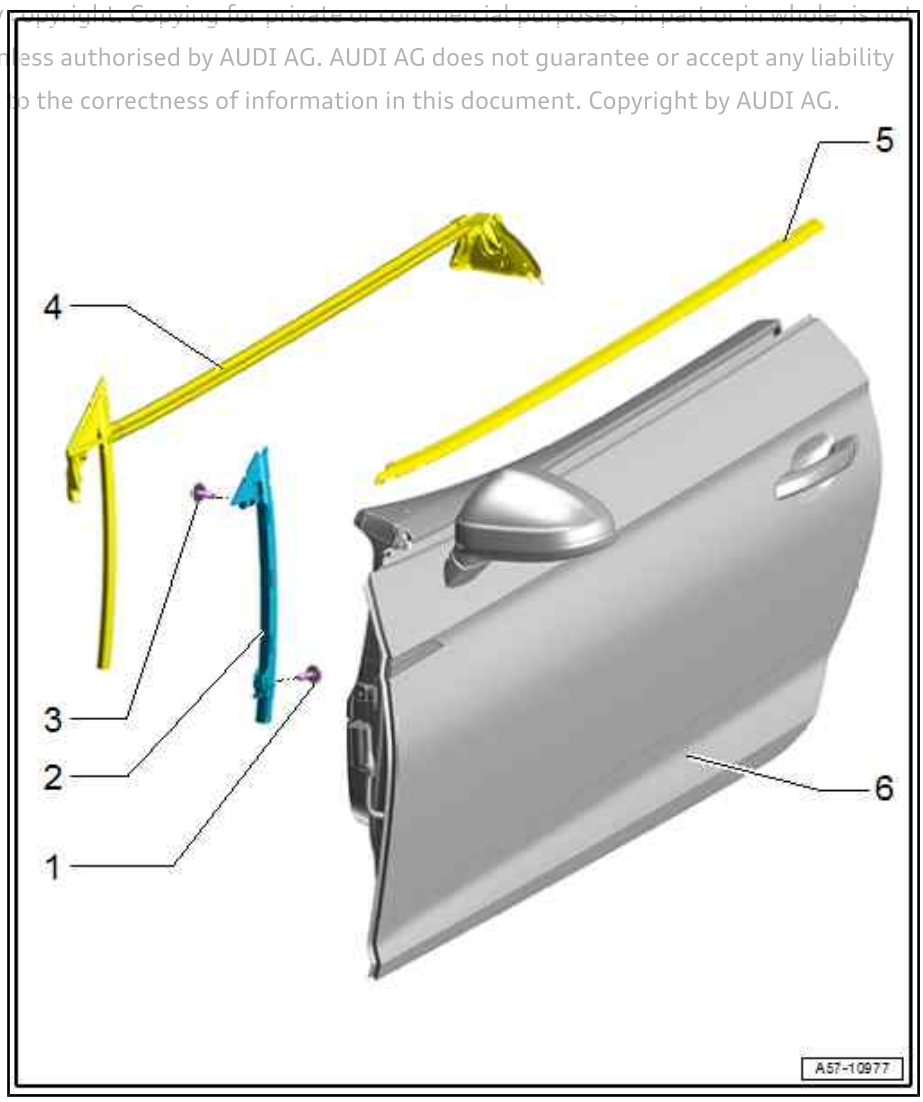
4 - Inner window slot trim strip

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 168

5 - Outer window slot trim strip

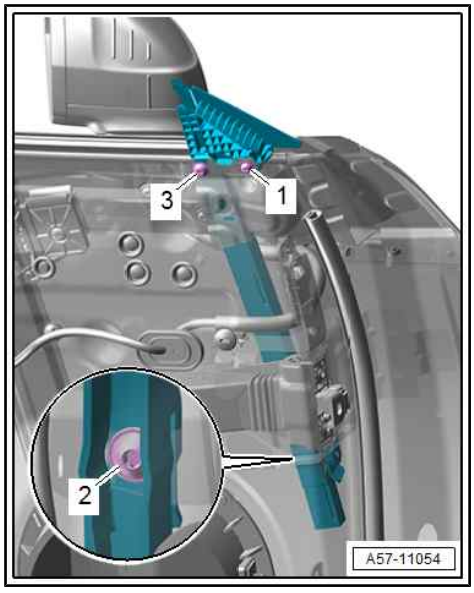
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 169

6 - Door



Door window guide (A5 Coupé, A5 Cabriolet) - tightening torque and sequence

– Tighten bolts to 8 Nm in sequence -1 … 3-.



2.4 Removing and installing window regulator

⇒ “2.4.1 Removing and installing window regulator - A4”, page 155

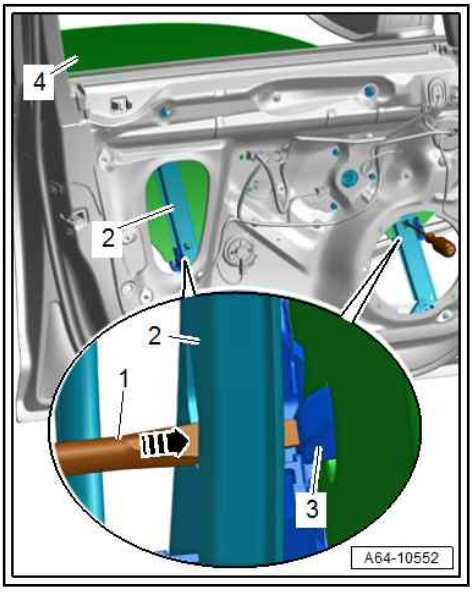
⇒ “2.4.2 Removing and installing window regulator - A5”, page 156

2.4.1 Removing and installing window regulator - A4

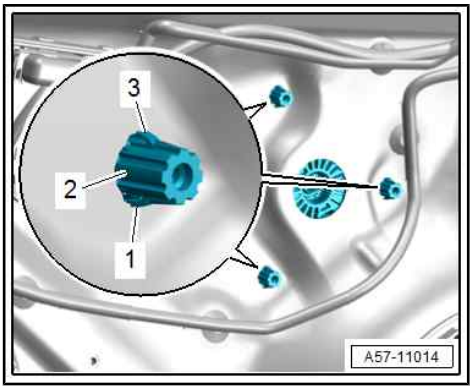
Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

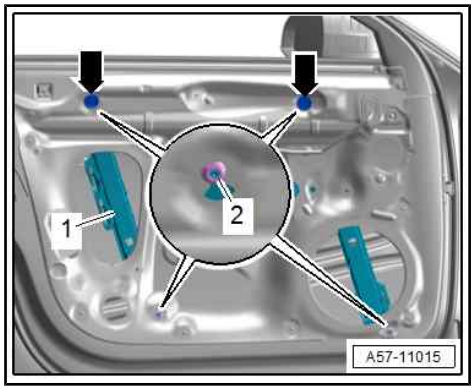
– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 165 .
– Remove bass loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .
– Remove window regulator motor ⇒ page 157 .
– Lower door window -4- until fastener -3- on actuator is flush with recess in window regulator -2-.
– Release fastener using a screwdriver -1- or similar tool through recess and through hole in door window -arrow- and at the same time detach door window upwards from actuator.
– Pull door window upwards and secure it with adhesive tape to prevent it from dropping.



– Use an 11 mm socket to release retaining clips -1 and 3- of threaded pins -2- for window regulator (slide socket over threaded pins).
– Unclip guide for window regulator cable from retaining clip.



– Pull out plugs -arrows-.
– Loosen nuts -2- at top by three turns only and remove nuts at bottom.
– Take window regulator -1- out of opening for loudspeaker towards front.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Remove adhesive tape and slide door window downwards.
– Press door window downwards into actuators.
• Actuators then engage in door window.
• The door window does not have to be adjusted.
• Retaining clips of threaded pins for window regulator must engage audibly in inner door panel.
• Guide for window regulator cable must be clipped into retaining clip.

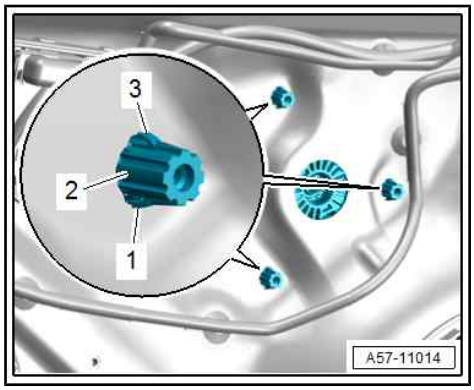
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - window regulator”, page 149

2.4.2 Removing and installing window regulator - A5

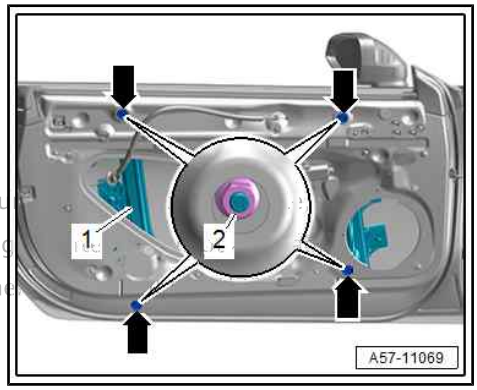
Removing

– Remove door window ⇒ page 526 .
– Use an 11 mm socket to release retaining clips -1 and 3- of threaded pins -2- for window regulator (slide socket over threaded pins).



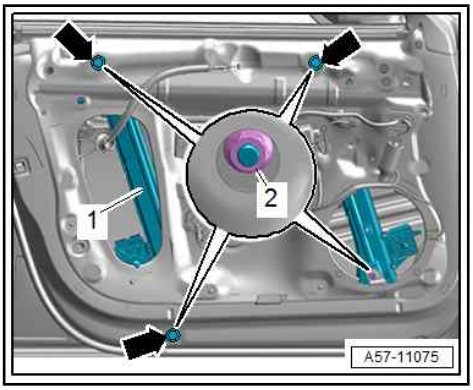
A5 Coupé, A5 Cabriolet:

– Pull out plugs -arrows-.
– Loosen nuts -2- at bottom by three turns only and remove nuts at top.
– Take out window regulator -1- towards rear.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g
with respect to the correctness of information in this docume

A5 Sportback:



– Pull out plugs -arrows-.
– Remove nuts -2-.
– Take out window regulator -1- towards rear.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Retaining clips of threaded pins for window regulator must engage audibly in inner door panel.
- Guide for window regulator cable must be clipped into retaining clip.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - window regulator”, page 149

2.5 Removing and installing window regulator motor

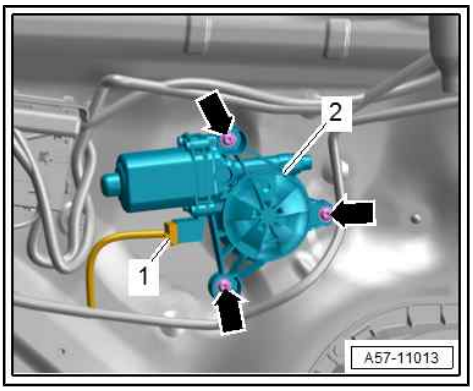
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

Note:

The window regulator motor can be removed or installed with the motor or door window in any position.

– Remove door trim (front) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (front); Removing and installing door trim (front) .



– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach window regulator motor -2- from window regulator.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

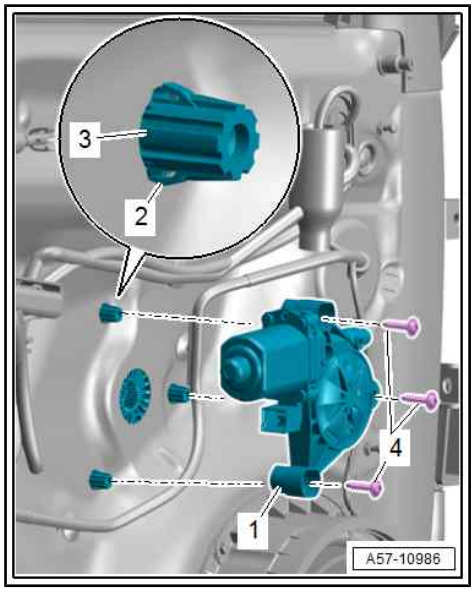
- Retaining clips -2- of threaded pins -3- for window regulator must be engaged in inner door panel.

– Slide window regulator motor -1- onto threaded pins and tighten bolts -4-.

– Activate automatic open/close function of electric window regulators ⇒ Owner's Manual .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - window regulator”, page 149



2.6 Removing and installing door handle

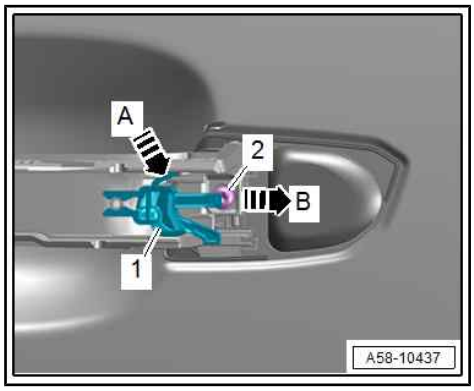
Removing

– Remove door handle trim ⇒ page 158 .

– If adapter -1- covers bolt -2-, release fastener -arrow A- and take adapter out to one side -arrow B-.

– On relevant equipment versions: Remove exterior door handle illumination bulb ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Lights in exterior door handle; Removing and installing exterior door handle illumination bulb .

– If fitted, remove front exterior door handle switch ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation; Removing and installing front exterior door handle switches .



– Remove bolts -1, 3-.

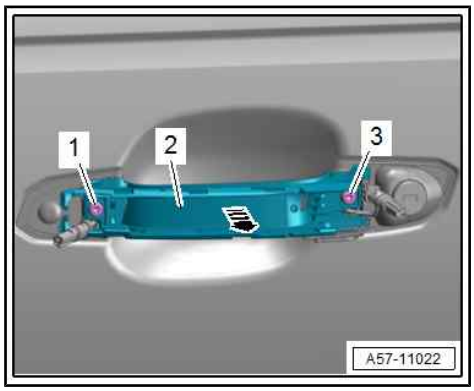
– Detach door handle -2- from mounting bracket -arrow-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 150

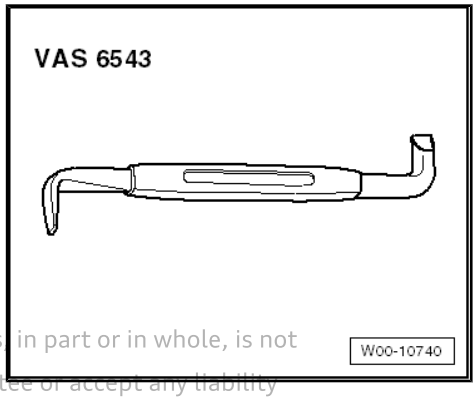


2.7 Removing and installing door handle trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Angled screwdriver - VAS 6543-



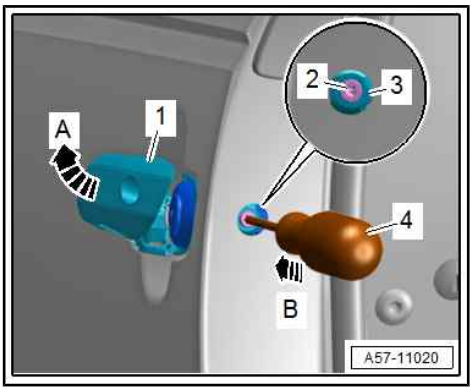
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Pull off cap -arrow-.



– Pull door handle -1- as far as stop -arrow A- and hold in this position.
– Unscrew clamping bolt -2- as far as possible using a screwdriver -4-.
– Push retainer -3- for lock cylinder inwards -arrow B- until it engages.
• Door handle is now locked in “open” position.



– Using angled screwdriver -VAS 6543- , release catches -1- -arrow A-, and at the same time, press trim -2- in direction of -arrow B-.
– Detach door handle trim.

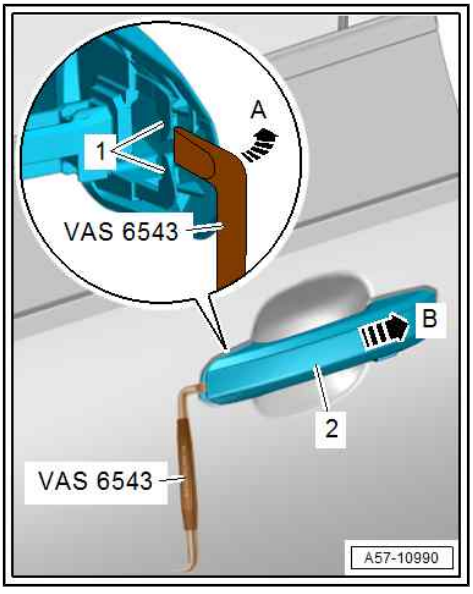
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Position trim on door handle and press it towards front (as seen in direction of travel) until you hear it engage.

Tightening torques

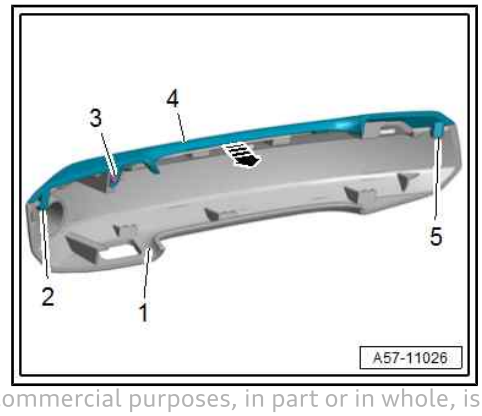
♦ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 150



2.8 Removing and installing trim strip for door handle

Removing

– Remove door handle trim ⇒ page 158 .
– Remove bolt -3-.
– Release fasteners -2, 5-.
– Detach trim strip -4- from door handle trim -1- -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 150

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.9 Removing and installing mounting bracket

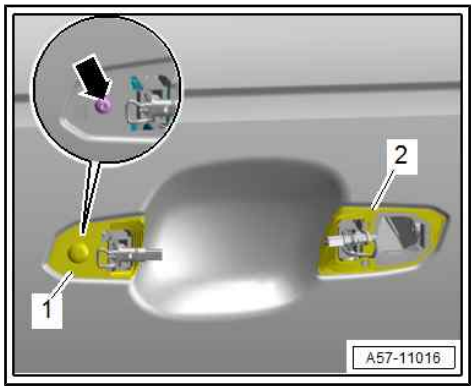
Removing

– Move door window to “closed” position.
– Remove door handle ⇒ page 158 .
– Driver side: Remove lock cylinder ⇒ page 162 .
– Passenger side: Remove housing ⇒ page 162 .
– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 165 .
– Remove door lock ⇒ page 162 .
– Detach backing plate -1, 2-.
– Remove bolt -arrow-.

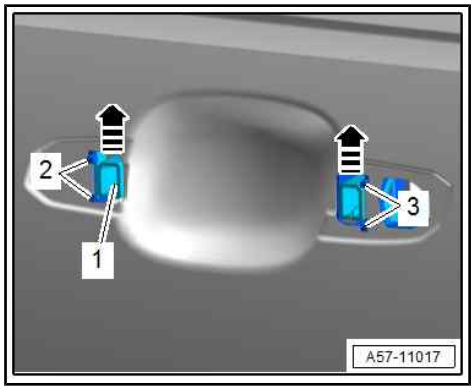
NOTICE

Risk of damage to operating cable if it is bent.

– Operating cable must never be bent or kinked excessively.



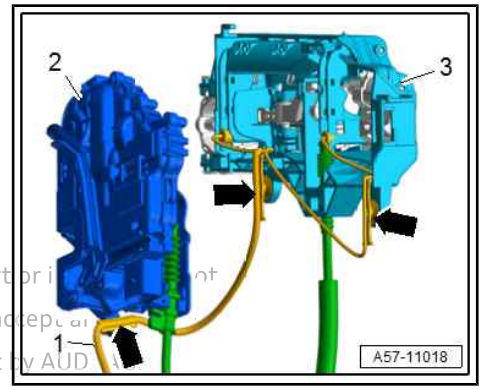
– Lift mounting bracket -1- until retaining catches -2, 3- are released -arrows-.
– Move electrical wiring harness clear.
– Detach mounting bracket to inside and take it out of door.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Depending on equipment version: Install wiring harness -1- for contact sensor for exterior door handle/sensor for exterior door handle illumination at mounting bracket -3- and door lock -2- (ensure that wiring is routed correctly -arrows-).



Note:

If the wiring harness is not routed correctly, this could cause noise when opening and closing the door window as the window would come into contact with the wiring harness.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ "2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock", page 150

2.10 Removing and installing operating cable for exterior door handle

Removing

– Move door window to "closed" position.

– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 165 .

NOTICE

Risk of damage to operating cable if it is bent.

– Operating cable must never be bent or kinked excessively.

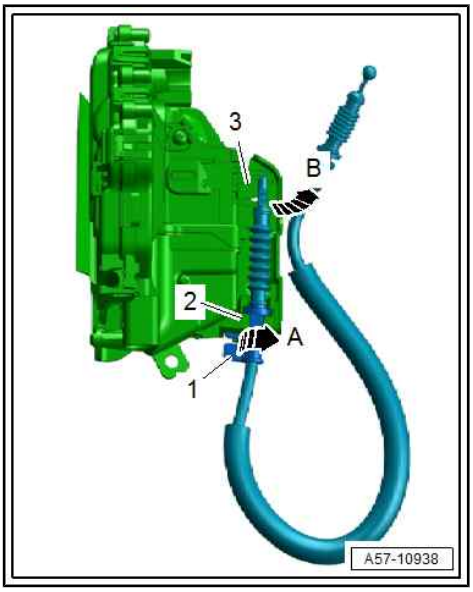
– Turn operating cable on lever -1- 90° in direction of -arrow A- and take it out of cable support bracket -2-.

– Turn operating cable on operating lever -3- for door lock in direction of -arrow B-.

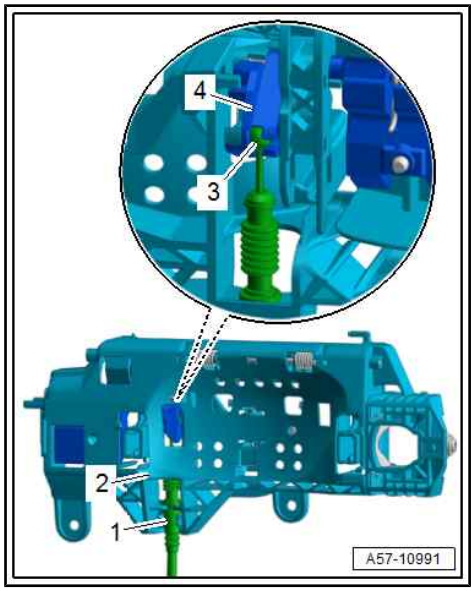
• The operating cable must be aligned with the opening on the operating lever.

– Disengage operating cable from operating lever.

– Remove mounting bracket ⇒ page 160 .



– Release operating cable -1- from support bracket -2- and disengage Bowden cable nipple -3- at operating lever -4-.



Installing

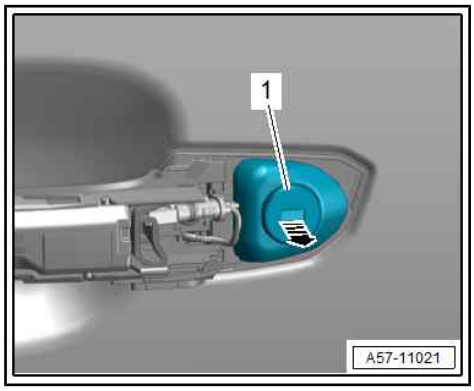
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

2.11 Removing and installing lock cylinder

Removing

– Remove door handle trim ⇒ page 158 .

– Pull lock cylinder -1- out of mounting bracket -arrow-.



Note:

If the lock cylinder cannot be pulled out, insert the ignition key in the lock cylinder and pull out the lock cylinder with the key turned slightly.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Push lock cylinder into mounting bracket and then check whether the closing and opening positions for the door lock are actuated.

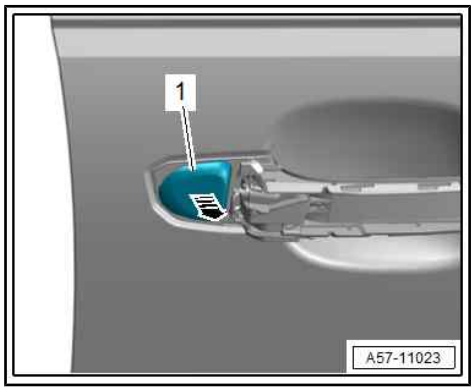
2.12 Removing and installing housing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove door handle trim ⇒ page 158 .

– Pull housing -1- out of mounting bracket -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

2.13 Removing and installing door lock

Removing

– Move door window to “closed” position.

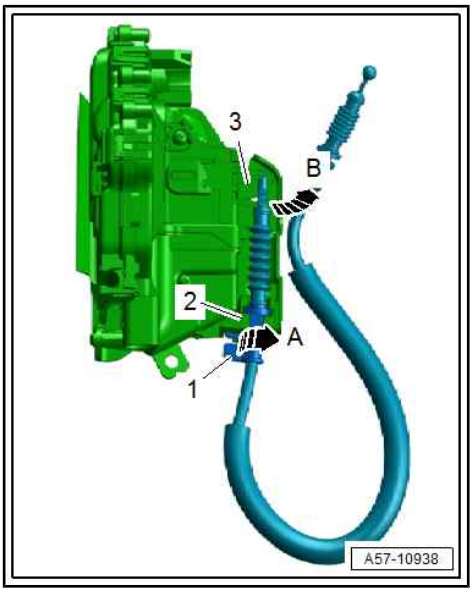
– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 165 .
– Driver side: Remove lock cylinder ⇒ page 162 .

NOTICE

Risk of damage to operating cable if it is bent.

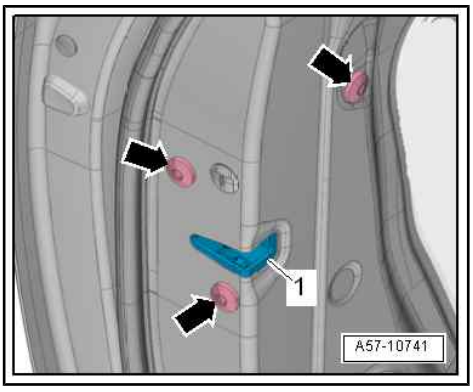
– Operating cable must never be bent or kinked excessively.

– Turn operating cable on lever -1- 90° in direction of -arrow A- and take it out of cable support bracket -2-.
– Turn operating cable on operating lever -3- for door lock in direction of -arrow B-.
• The operating cable must be aligned with the opening on the operating lever.
– Disengage operating cable from operating lever.



– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Unplug electrical connector and move wiring harness clear.
– Press door lock -1- downwards and take it out of door.
– If door lock is to be renewed, also remove the following components:

◆ Cover for door lock ⇒ page 163



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 150

2.14 Removing and installing cover for door lock

Removing

– Remove door lock ⇒ page 162 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

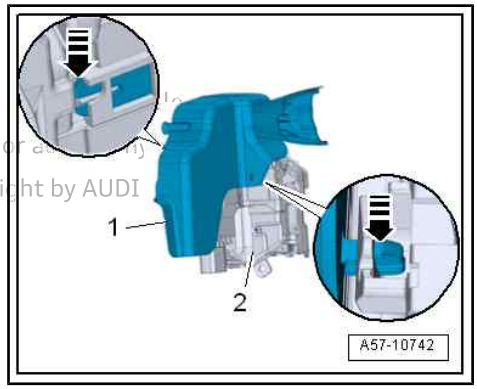
– Release fasteners -arrows-.

– Detach guide -1- for lock cylinder at door lock -2-.

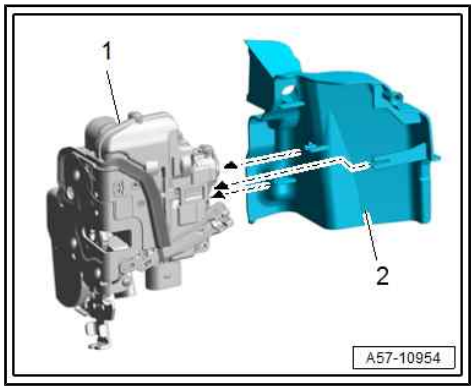
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in ... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ... with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI ...

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



– Press cover for door lock -2- onto door lock -1- until it engages audibly -arrows-.



2.15 Removing and installing striker

Removing

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach striker -1-.

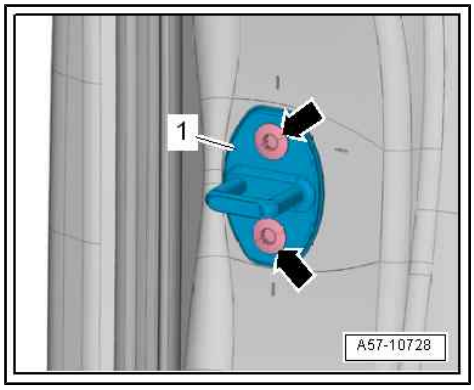
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Adjust striker ⇒ page 135 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 150



2.16 Removing and installing operating cable for interior door handle

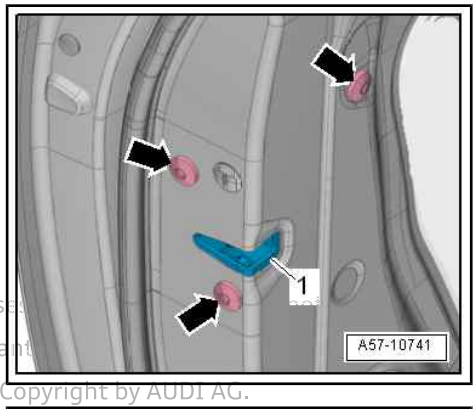
Removing

– Move door window to “closed” position.

– Driver side: Remove lock cylinder ⇒ page 162 .

– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 165 .

– Remove bolts -arrows-.



NOTICE

Risk of damage to operating cable if it is bent.

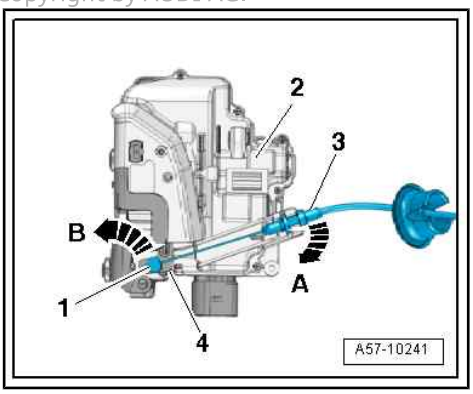
– Operating cable must never be bent or kinked excessively.

– Press door lock -1- to one side and unplug electrical connector.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Disengage Bowden cable -3- from door lock support bracket -2- -arrow A-.

– Turn nipple -1- 90° in direction of -arrow B- and take it out of door opener release lever -4-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

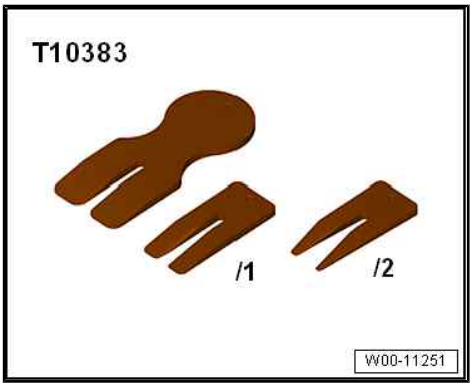
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 150

2.17 Removing and installing inner door cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Wedges - T10383-

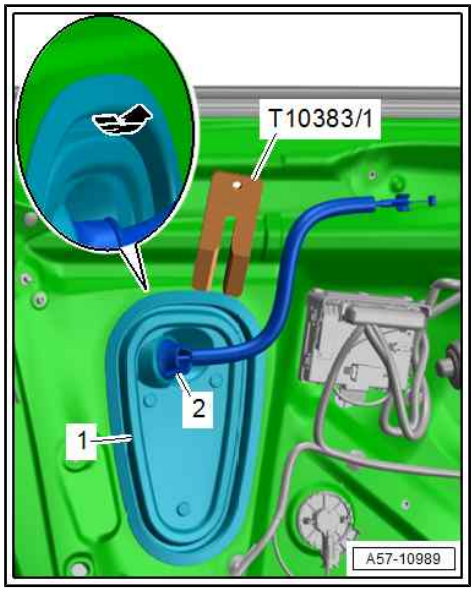


Removing

– Remove door trim (front) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (front); Removing and installing door trim (front) .

– Prise inner door cover -1- off inner door panel with wedge - T10383/1- -arrow-.

– Disengage grommet -2- for operating cable for door opener.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Press on inner door cover until it engages audibly.

• Inner door cover must be flush.

2.18 Removing and installing window guide

Removing

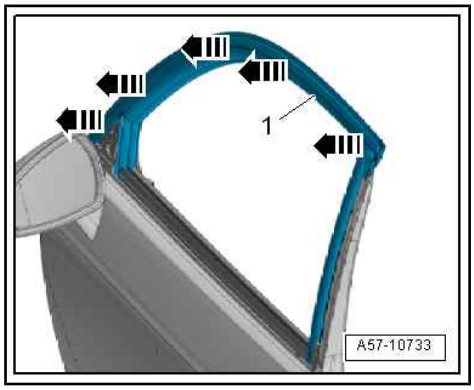
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove door window ⇒ page 526 .

– Remove trim panel for B-pillar ⇒ page 618 .

– Remove trim panel for A-pillar ⇒ page 617 .

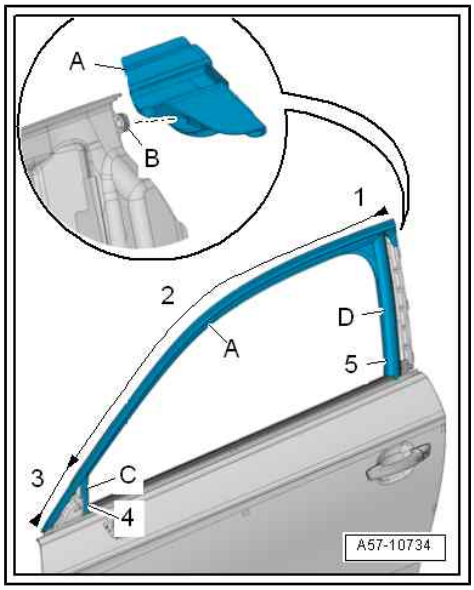
– Pull window guide -1- outwards off door frame -arrows-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Fit sections of window guide -A- on door flange in the sequence -1 ... 5-.



Step		
1.	–	Apply corner of window guide on top of door flange at B-pillar and slide on towards front (as seen in direction of travel).
	•	Guide pin -B- must engage in mounting on window guide.
2.	–	Insert window guide in door flange.
3.	–	Align window guide with guide rail at A-pillar.
4.	–	Insert seal -C- in guide rail.
5.	–	Fit trim panel for B-pillar ⇒ page 618 and insert seal -D- in guide rail.

2.19 Removing and installing guide rail for door window

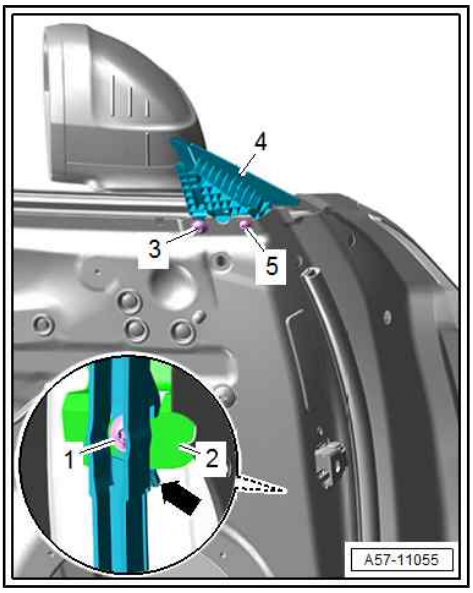
Removing

– Remove door window ⇒ page 527 .

– Remove inner window slot trim strip ⇒ page 168 .

– Loosen bolts -1, 3- and remove bolt -5-.

– Take window guide -4- out upwards.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– When it is inserted, guide rail must engage in mounting -2- -arrow-.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ Fig. ""Door window guide (A5 Coupé, A5 Cabriolet) - tightening torque and sequence"" , page 154

2.20 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip

⇒ "2.20.1 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip - A4", page 167

⇒ "2.20.2 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip - A5", page 168

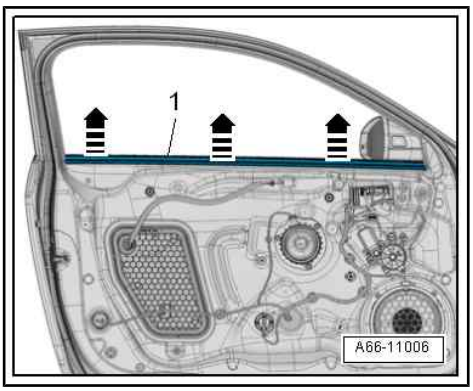
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.20.1 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip - A4

Removing

– Remove window frame trim (front) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (front) .

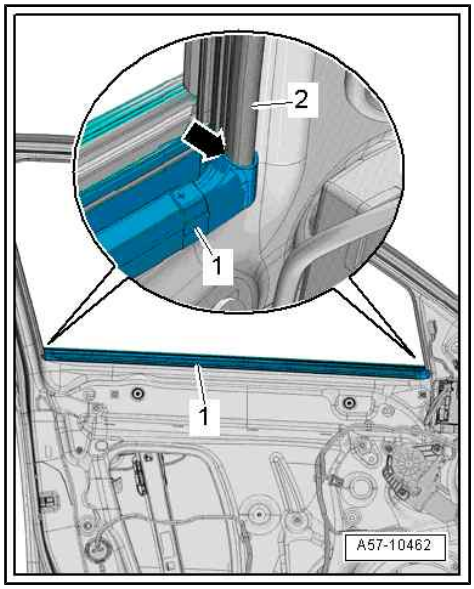
– Lift off window slot trim strip -1- -arrows-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Position window slot trim strip -1- so it is flush with window guide -2- at both ends -arrow- and press onto door seam, working towards centre.



2.20.2 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip - A5

Removing

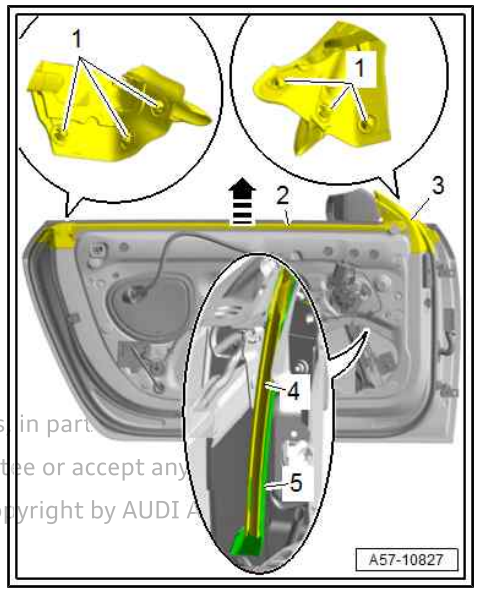
– Remove front door window ⇒ page 527 .

– Remove trim panel for A-pillar ⇒ page 617 .

– Detach retaining lugs -1- on sealing elements of inner window slot trim strip from inner door panel.

– Lift off inner window slot trim strip -2- -arrow-.

– Detach sealing piece -3- for A-pillar upwards off door shell; window guide strip -4- will automatically be pulled out of guide rail -5- for door window.



Installing

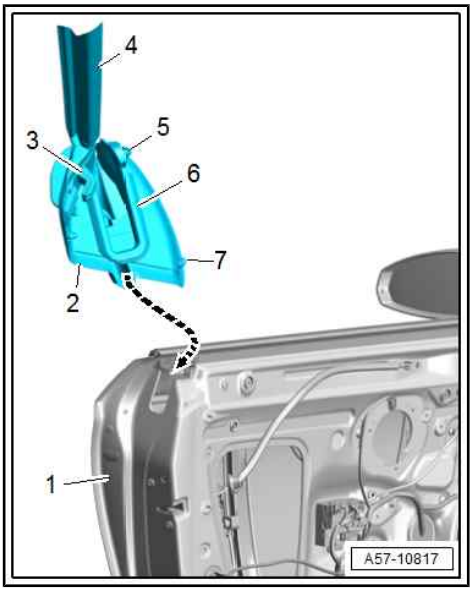
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Slide sealing piece for A-pillar onto front of door shell, making sure tip is positioned correctly.

– Press retaining lugs fully into place.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI A

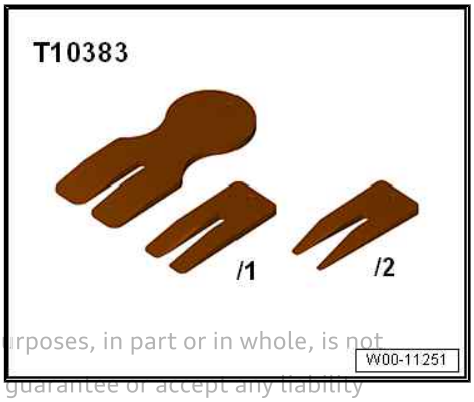
– Fit sealing piece -2- on door -1-; to do so, engage guides -3 and 6- into mounting on door shell -arrow- and press retaining lugs -5 and 7- on completely.
– Press on window slot trim strip -4-.
– Slide window guide strip into guide rail for door window.



2.21 Removing and installing outer window slot trim strip

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



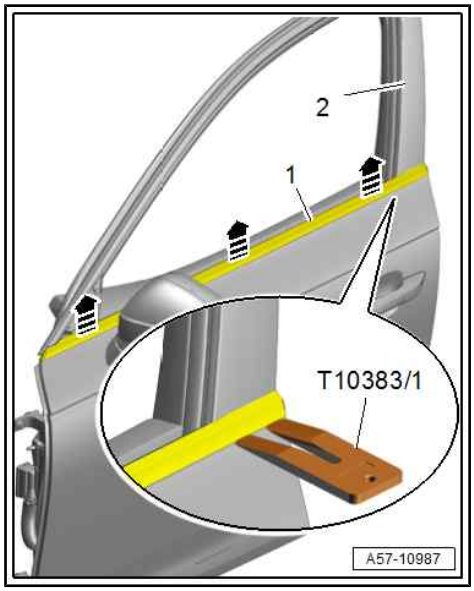
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Move door window to “open” position.
– Remove trim panel for A-pillar ⇒ page 617 .

A4:

– Using wedge - T10383/1- , carefully press window slot trim strip -1- upwards off door flange at trim panel for B-pillar -2- -arrows-.



A5:

– Using wedge - T10383/1- , carefully press window slot trim strip -1- upwards off door flange at B-pillar -arrows-.

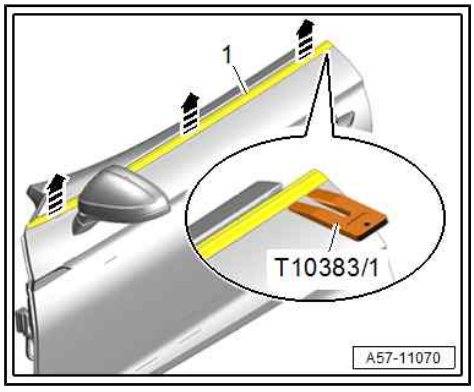
Continued:

– Detach window slot trim strip.

Installing

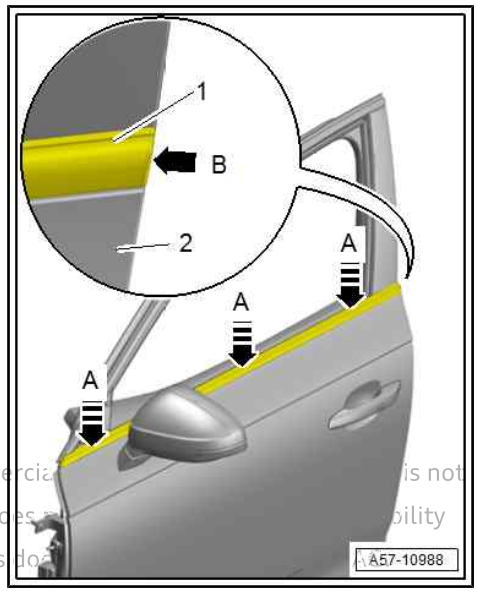
Note:

For installing, you can coat the bottom edge of the window slot trim strip with tyre assembly paste.



A4:

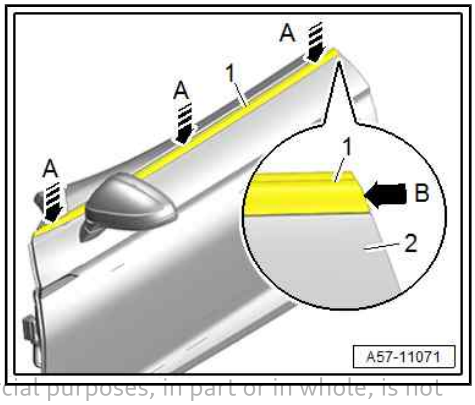
– Align window slot trim strip -1- with door shell -2- so it is flush -arrow B- and attach fully to door flange (working towards A-pillar) -arrows A-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

A5:

– Align window slot trim strip -1- with door shell -2- so it is flush -arrow B- and attach fully to door flange (working towards A-pillar) -arrows A-.



Continued:

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Central locking system

⇒ “3.1 Overview of fitting locations - central locking system”, page 172

⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing driver door control unit J386 and front passenger door control unit J387 ”, page 175

⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing rear left door control unit J388 and rear right door control unit J389 ”, page 175

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing convenience system central control unit J393 ”, page 176

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing bonnet contact switch F266 ”, page 177

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing tank filler flap locking motor V155 ”, page 178

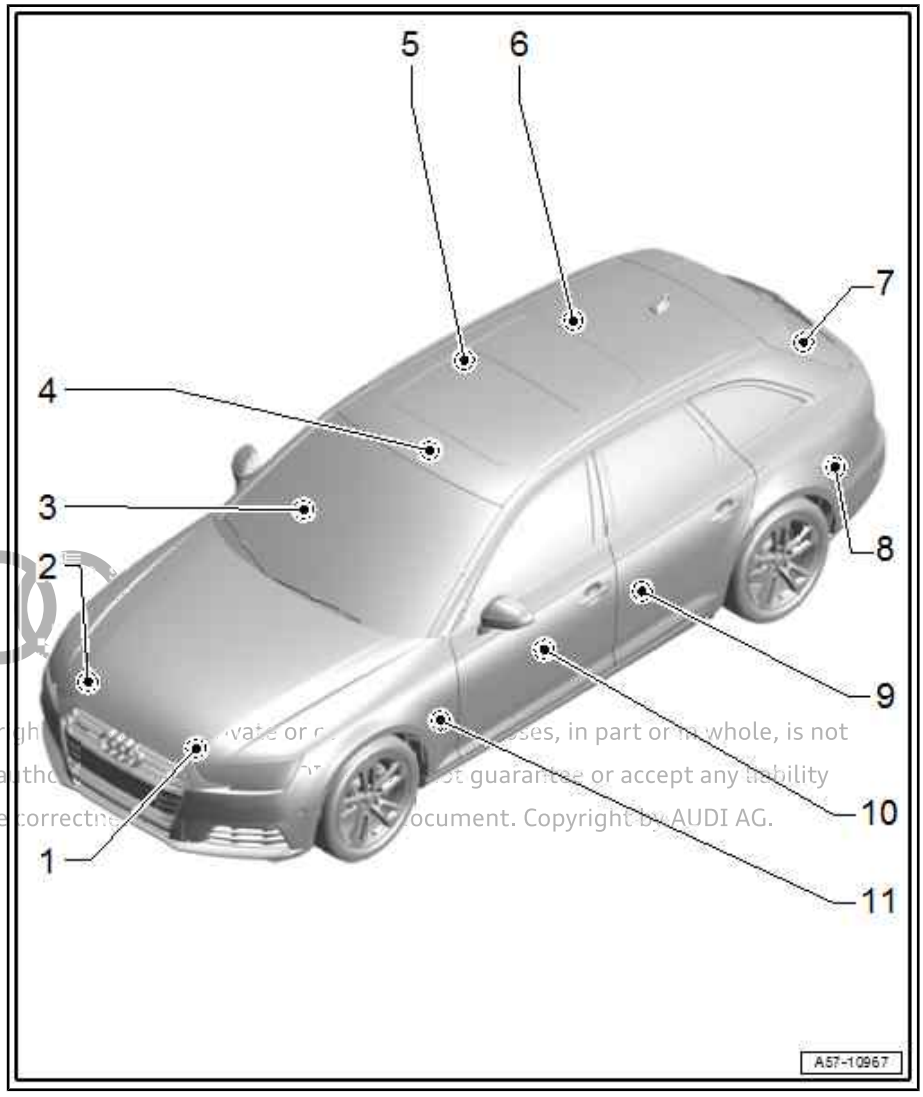
3.1 Overview of fitting locations - central locking system

⇒ “3.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - central locking system, A4, A5 Sportback”, page 172

⇒ “3.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - central locking system, A5 Coupé, A5 Cabriolet”, page 174

3.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - central locking system, A4, A5 Sportback

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Bonnet contact switch - F266-

- ❑ In bonnet lock
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 177

2 - Bonnet contact switch 2 - F329-

- ❑ In bonnet lock
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 177

3 - Front passenger door control unit - J387-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 175

4 - Anti-theft alarm sensor - G578-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Anti-theft alarm system; Overview - interior monitoring

5 - Rear passenger side door control unit - J927-

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 175

6 - Tank filler flap locking motor - V155-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 178

7 - Rear lid lock

- ❑ With rear lid central locking motor - V53- / rear lid contact switch for anti-theft alarm - F123- ; cannot be renewed separately
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 56

8 - Convenience system central control unit - J393-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 176

9 - Rear driver side door control unit - J926-

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 175

10 - Driver door control unit - J386-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 175

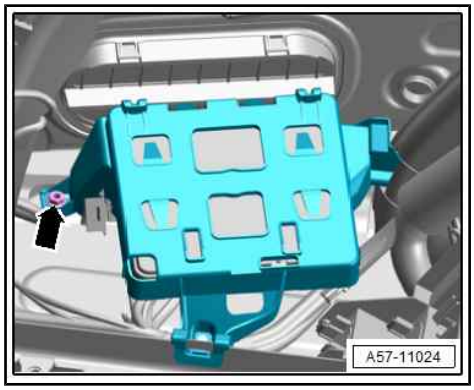
11 - Onboard supply control unit - J519-

- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Control units; Overview of fitting locations - control units

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torques for mounting for convenience system central control unit - J393-

– Tighten nut -arrow- to 3 Nm.



3.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - central locking system, A5 Coupé, A5 Cabriolet

1 - Bonnet contact switch - F266-

- ❑ For bonnet contact switch - F266- , bonnet contact switch 2 - F329-
- ❑ In bonnet lock
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 177

2 - Anti-theft alarm sensor - G578-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Anti-theft alarm system; Overview - interior monitoring

3 - Front passenger door control unit - J387-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 175

4 - Tank filler flap locking motor - V155-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 178

5 - Rear lid lock

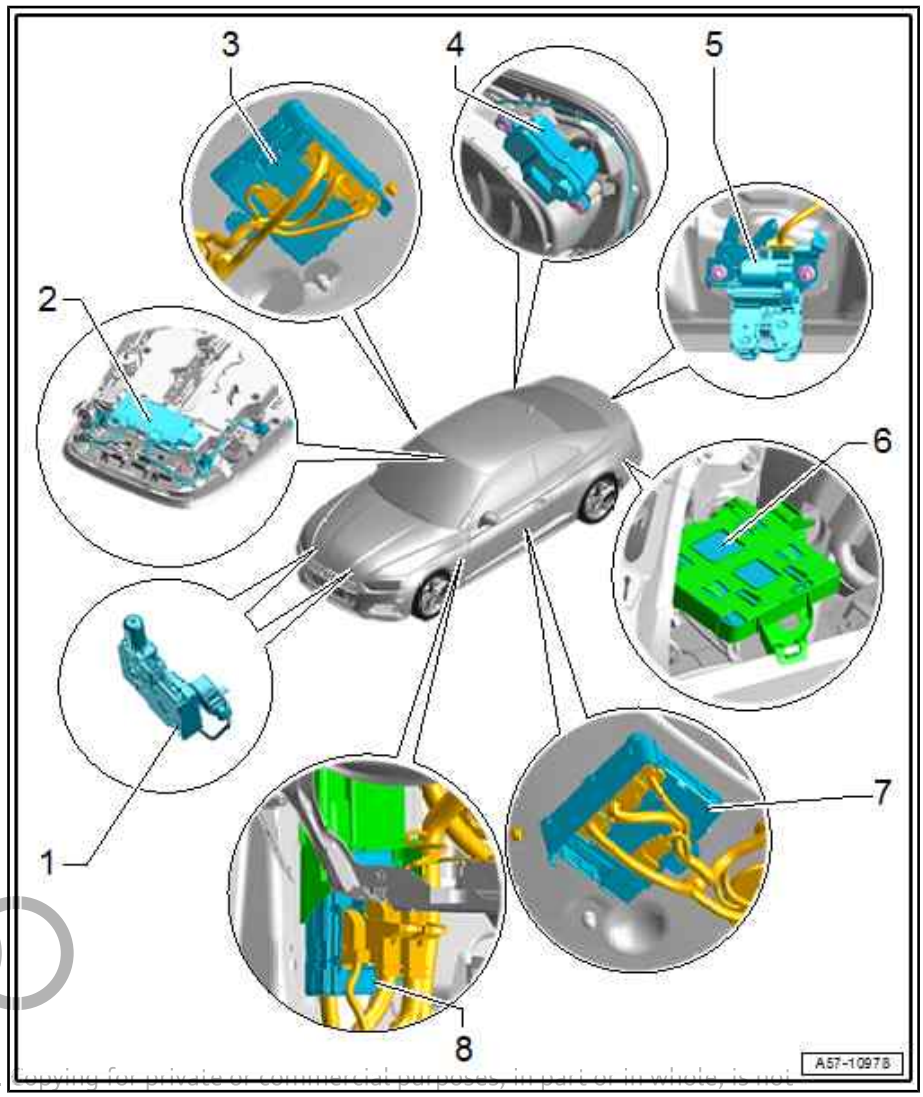
- ❑ With rear lid central locking motor - V53- / rear lid contact switch for anti-theft alarm - F123- ; cannot be renewed separately
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 56

6 - Convenience system central control unit - J393-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 176

7 - Driver door control unit - J386-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 175



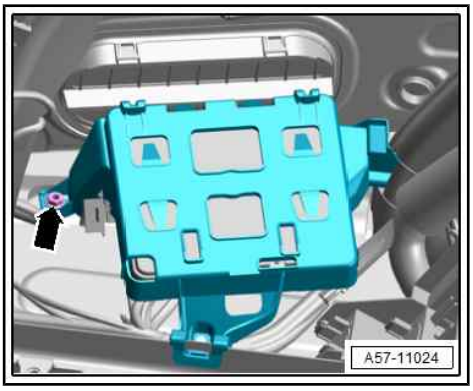
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 - Onboard supply control unit - J519-

❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Control units; Overview of fitting locations - control units

Tightening torques for mounting for convenience system central control unit - J393-

– Tighten nut -arrow- to 3 Nm.



3.2 Removing and installing driver door control unit - J386- and front passenger door control unit - J387-

Removing

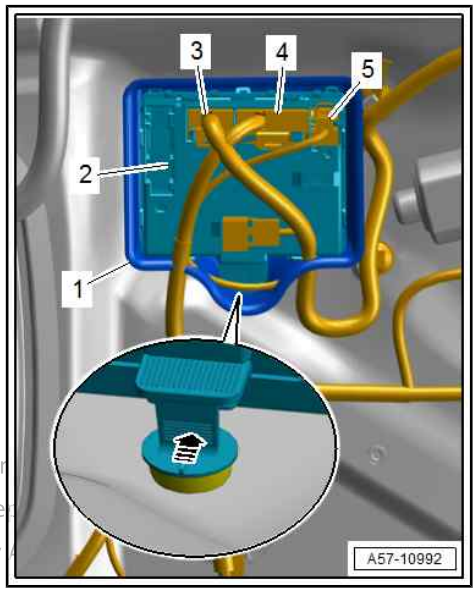
– Remove door trim (front) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (front); Removing and installing door trim (front) .

– Unplug electrical connectors -3 and 4-; to do so, pull locking element and press release mechanism downwards.

– Unplug electrical connector -5-.

– Press retainer in direction of -arrow- and disengage door control unit -2- from door shell.

– Detach rubber sleeve -1- from door control unit.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- If renewing the driver door control unit - J386- or front passenger door control unit - J387- , select the function “Replace control unit” for the corresponding control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester, Diagnosis.

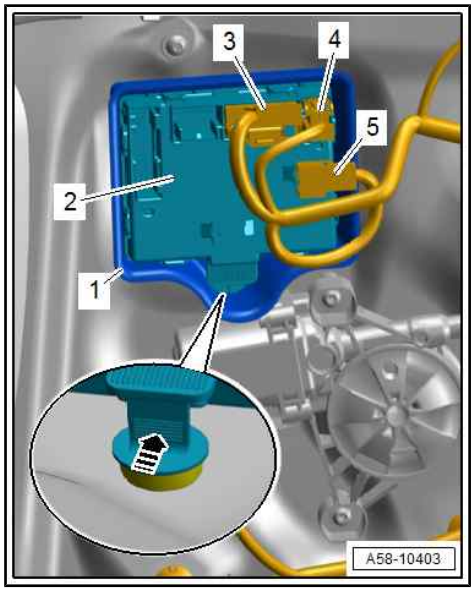
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or acce
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by

3.3 Removing and installing rear left door control unit - J388- and rear right door control unit - J389-

Removing

– Remove door trim (rear) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (rear); Removing and installing door trim (rear) .

– Unplug electrical connector -3-; to do so, pull locking element and press release mechanism downwards.
– Unplug electrical connector -4-.
– Move electrical connector -5- clear at door control unit.
– Press retainer in direction of -arrow- and disengage door control unit -2- from door shell.
– Detach rubber sleeve -1- from door control unit.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- If renewing the rear left door control unit - J388- or rear right door control unit - J389- , select the function “Replace control unit” for the corresponding control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester, Diagnosis.

3.4 Removing and installing convenience system central control unit - J393-

Removing

A4, A5 Coupé, A5 Sportback:

– Unfasten luggage compartment side trim (left-side) at bottom:

♦ A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé, A5 Sportback: Remove fastening rings ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing fastening ring .

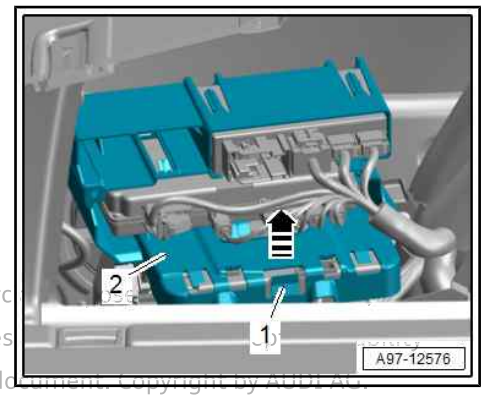
♦ A4 Avant: Remove support for luggage compartment floor ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim .

A5 Cabriolet:

– Remove relay and fuse carrier 2 ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Overview of fitting locations - relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes .

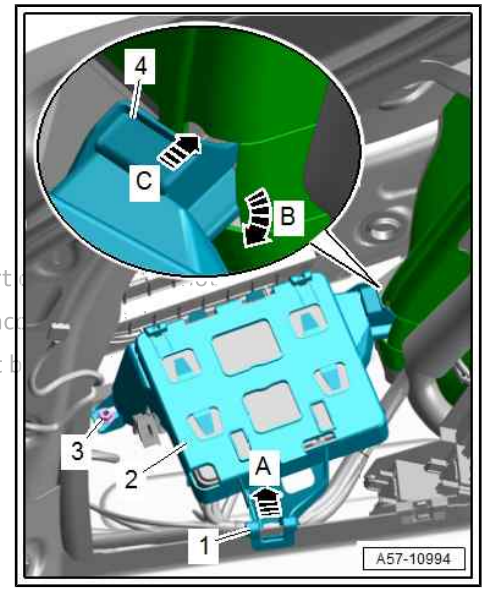
Continued:

– Open cover for luggage compartment side trim (left-side).
– Release catch -1-.
– Lift off bracket -2- for control units -arrow-.



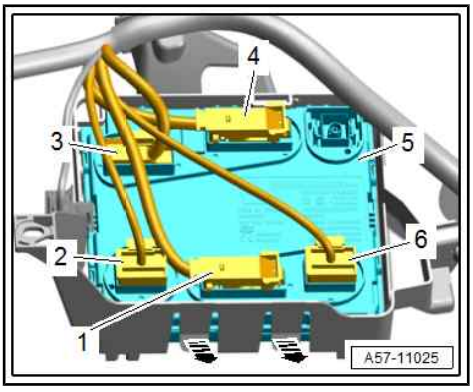
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerc
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this do

– Unscrew nut -3-.
– Release fastener -arrow A-.
– Pull mounting -1- off upwards.
– Release fastener -arrow B- and take guide -4- out of body -arrow C-.
– Detach bracket -2- for central control unit.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ac
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright b

– Unplug electrical connectors -1, 2, 3, 4, 6-.
– Release fasteners -arrows- and guide central control unit -5- out of mounting.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- If renewing the convenience system central control unit -J393- , select the function “Replace control unit” for the corresponding control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester, Diagnosis.

Tightening torques

- A4/A5 Sportback
  ⇒ Fig. ““Tightening torques for mounting for convenience system central control unit -J393- ”“ , page 174
- A5 Coupé, A5 Cabriolet
  ⇒ Fig. ““Tightening torques for mounting for convenience system central control unit -J393- ”“ , page 175

3.5 Removing and installing bonnet contact switch - F266-

Removing

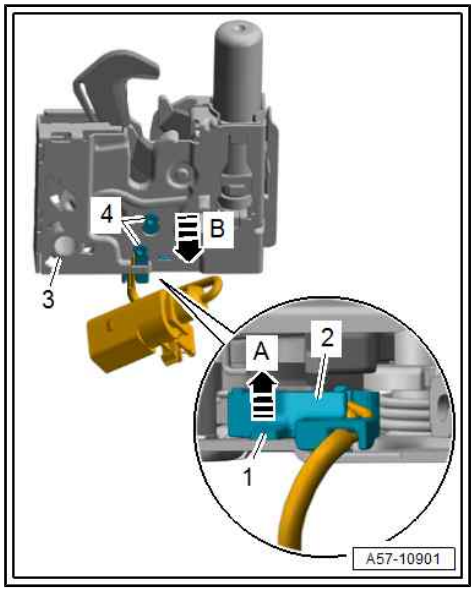
– Remove bonnet lock ⇒ page 53 .

– Lift retaining tab -1- -arrow A-.
– Disengage contact switch -2- at bonnet lock -3- -arrow B- and detach contact switch.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Guide pins -4- on contact switch must be inserted correctly in bonnet lock.



3.6 Removing and installing tank filler flap locking motor - V155-

Removing

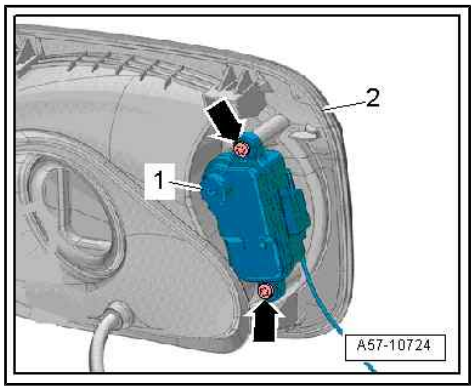
– Remove tank flap unit ⇒ page 107 .
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach tank filler flap locking motor -1- with manual release cable from tank flap unit -2-.
– If tank filler flap locking motor is to be renewed, remove manual release cable for locking tank flap ⇒ page 110 .

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - tank flap unit”, page 107



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

58 – Rear doors, door components

1 Door

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door”, page 179

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - door seals”, page 183

⇒ “1.3 Removing and installing door”, page 185

⇒ “1.4 Adjusting door”, page 185

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing door arrester”, page 191

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing inner door seal”, page 192

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing retainer for inner door seal”, page 194

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing outer door seal”, page 195

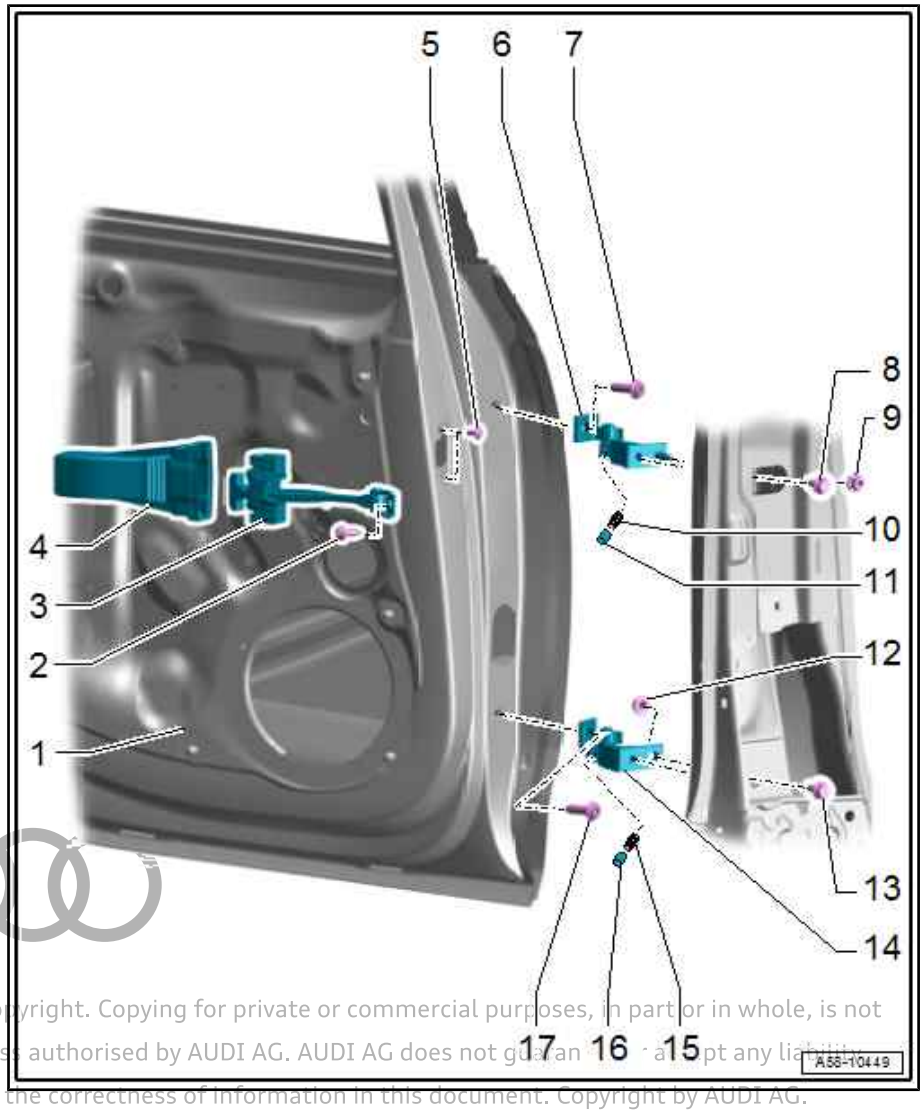
1.1 Exploded view - door

⇒ “1.1.1 Exploded view - door, A4”, page 179

⇒ “1.1.2 Exploded view - door, A5”, page 181

1.1.1 Exploded view - door, A4

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Door
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 185

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 33 Nm

3 - Door arrester
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 191
- ❑ Installation position ⇒ page 181

4 - Cap
- ❑ For door arrester
- ❑ Installation position ⇒ page 181

5 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

6 - Door hinge (top)

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 45 Nm

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 32 Nm

9 - Nut
- ❑ 32 Nm

10 - Grub screw
- ❑ 23 Nm

11 - Cap

12 - Nut
- ❑ 32 Nm

13 - Bolt
- ❑ 32 Nm

14 - Door hinge (bottom)

15 - Grub screw
- ❑ 23 Nm

16 - Cap

17 - Bolt
- ❑ 45 Nm

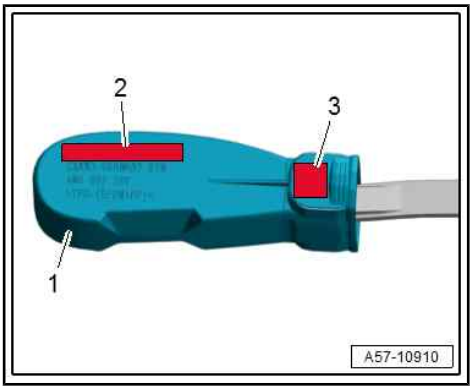
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation position for cap

The cap -1- must be installed with the corresponding lettering facing upwards:

2 - HINTEN OBEN LINKS (= rear top left) on the left / HINTEN OBEN RECHTS (= rear top right) on the right

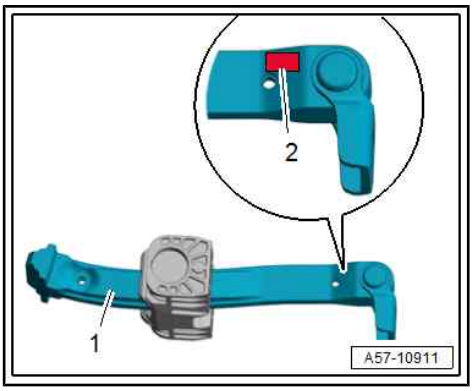
3 - HL (rear left) on the left / HR (rear right) on the right



Installation position for door arrester

The door arrester -1- must be installed with the corresponding lettering facing upwards:

2 - HL (rear left) on the left / HR (rear right) on the right



1.1.2 Exploded view - door, A5

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Door
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 185

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 33 Nm

3 - Door arrester
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 191
- ❑ Installation position ⇒ page 181

4 - Cap
- ❑ For door arrester
- ❑ Installation position ⇒ page 181

5 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

6 - Door hinge (top)

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 45 Nm

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 32 Nm

9 - Nut
- ❑ 32 Nm

10 - Grub screw
- ❑ 23 Nm

11 - Cap

12 - Bolt
- ❑ 45 Nm

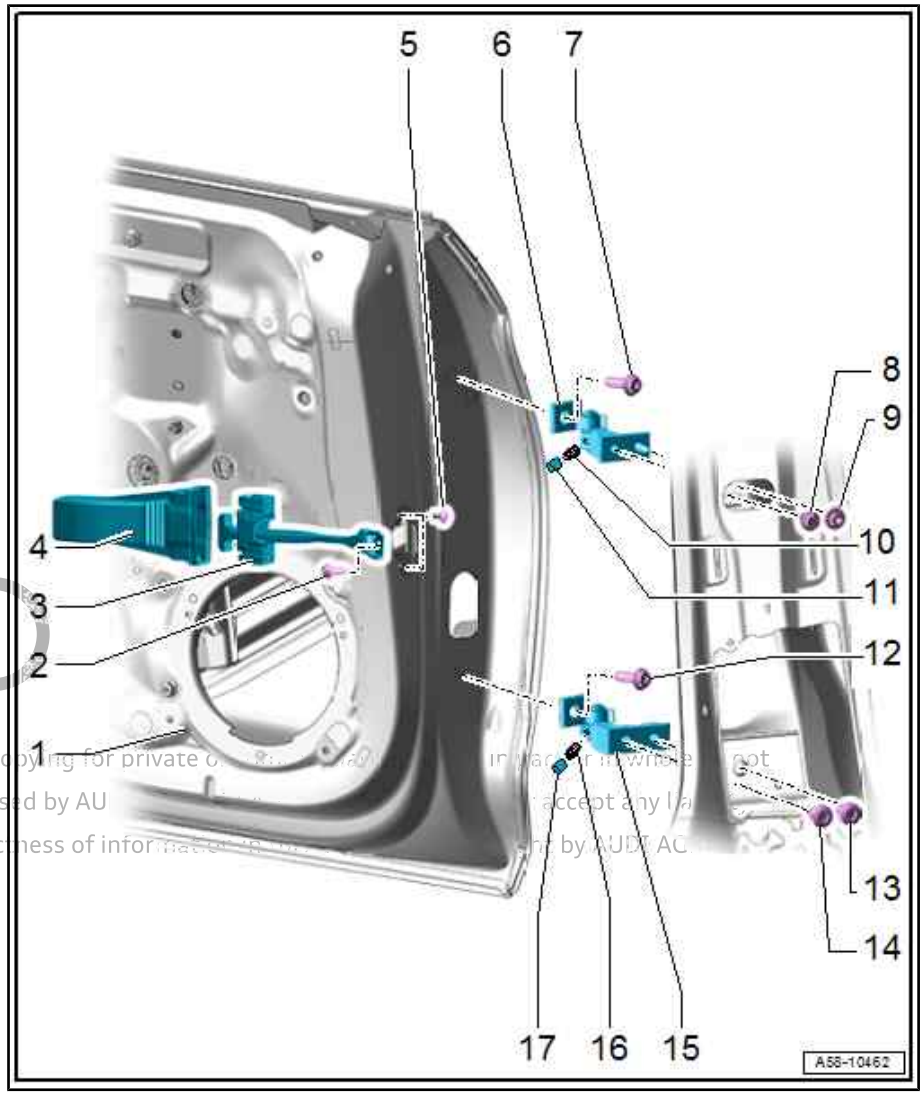
13 - Bolt
- ❑ 40 Nm

14 - Bolt
- ❑ 40 Nm

15 - Door hinge (bottom)

16 - Grub screw
- ❑ 23 Nm

17 - Cap



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in any form or by any means, is not permitted unless authorised by AU... accept any liability with respect to the correctness of infor... by AUDI AG.

1.2 Exploded view - door seals

⇒ “1.2.1 Exploded view - door seals, A4”, page 183

⇒ “1.2.2 Exploded view - door seals, A5”, page 184

1.2.1 Exploded view - door seals, A4

1 - B-pillar seal

2 - Inner door seal

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 192

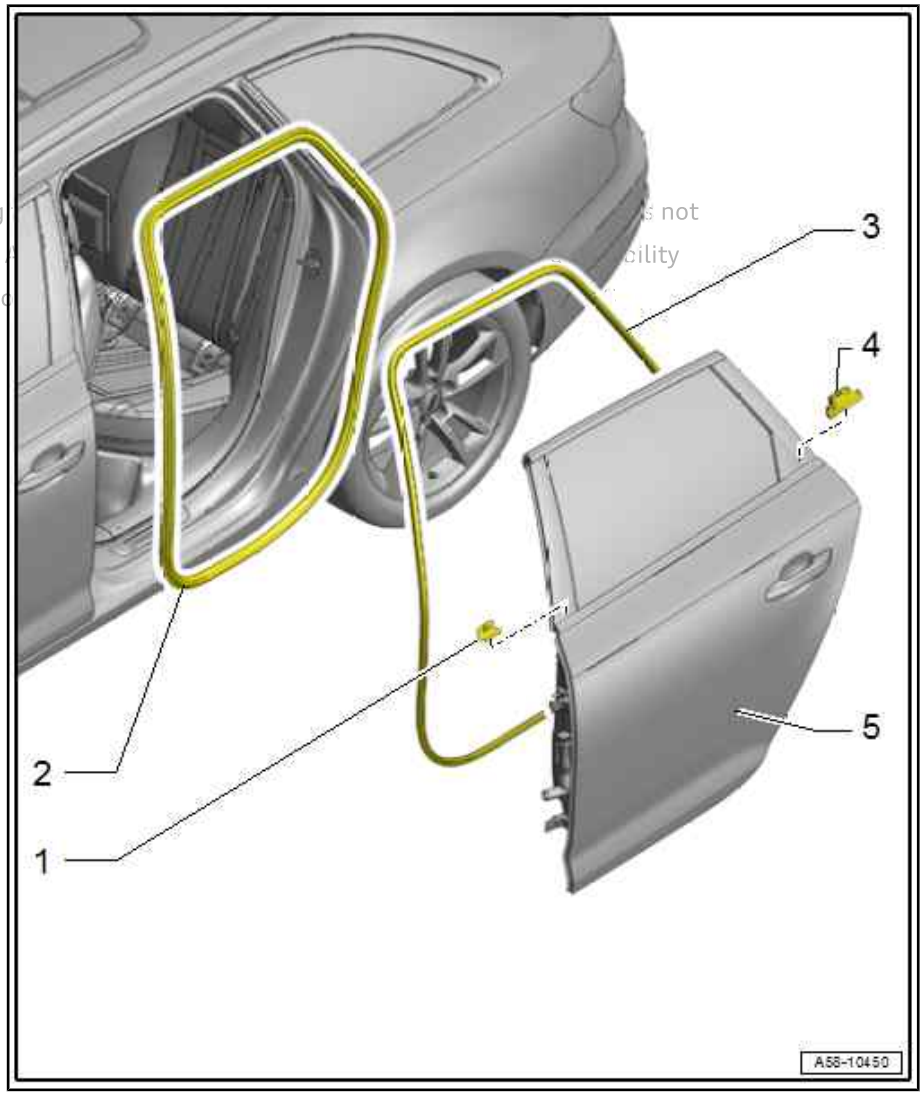
3 - Outer door seal

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 195

4 - C-pillar seal

5 - Door

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1.2.2 Exploded view - door seals, A5

1 - Outer door seal

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 198

2 - B-pillar seal

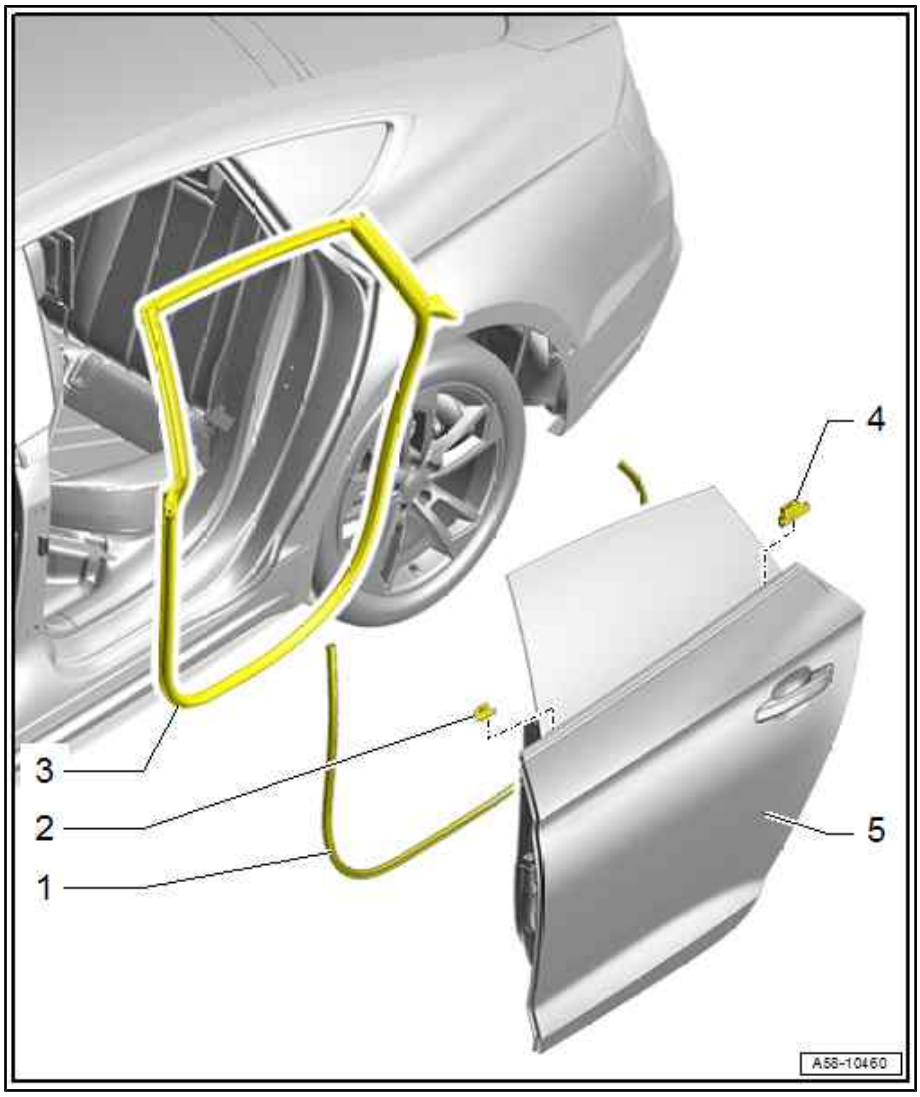
3 - Inner door seal

- ❑ Retainer for inner door seal: removing and installing ⇒ page 194 ; renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 193

4 - C-pillar seal

5 - Door

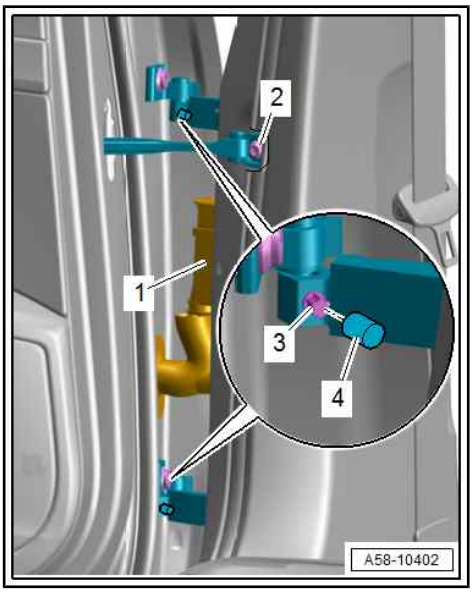
6 -



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Removing and installing door

Removing



– Unplug door disconnector -1- at B-pillar ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Connectors .
– Mask B-pillar in vicinity of door arrester with adhesive tape to avoid damaging paintwork.
– Unscrew bolt -2- for door arrester.
– Pull off cap -4- (top and bottom).
– Unscrew grub screw -3- from door hinge (top and bottom).
– Carefully lift door off hinges.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- The door does not have to be adjusted after it has been installed.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door”, page 179

1.4 Adjusting door

⇒ “1.4.1 Adjustment dimensions - A4”, page 185

⇒ “1.4.2 Adjustment dimensions - A5”, page 187

⇒ “1.4.3 Checking door adjustment”, page 187

⇒ “1.4.4 Lateral and longitudinal adjustment at hinge”, page 189

⇒ “1.4.5 Lateral adjustment at striker”, page 191

1.4.1 Adjustment dimensions - A4

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

A - Rear door to front door (bottom)

- Gap width -a- = 2.8 ... 4.8 mm
- Flush alignment -b- = ± 0.7 mm
- Parallel adjustment = 0.9 mm

B - Rear door to front door (top)

- Gap width -c- = 3.5 …4.5 mm
- Flush alignment -d- = 0/–1.0 mm
- Parallel adjustment = 0.5 mm

C - Rear door to side window

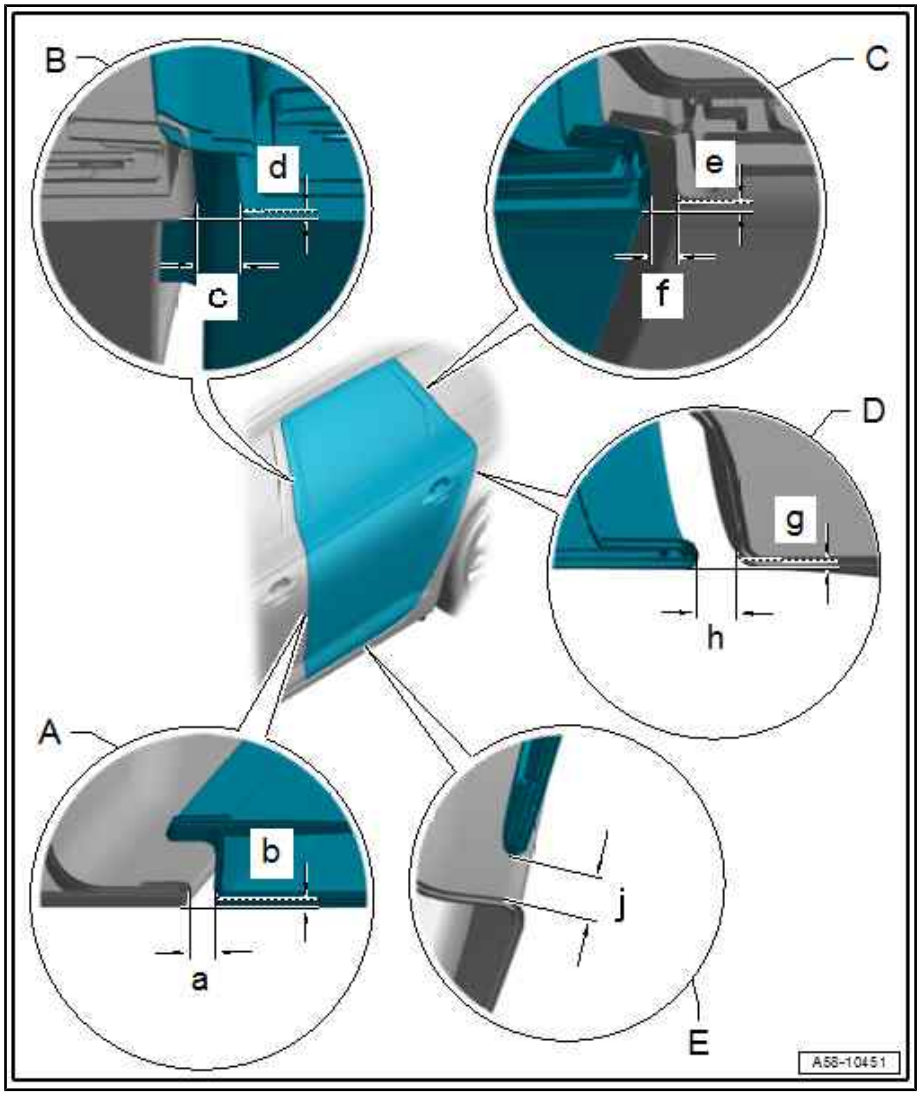
- Gap width -f- = 2.8 ... 4.8 mm
- Flush alignment -e- = 0/–1.0 mm
- Parallel adjustment = 0.5 mm

D - Rear door to side panel

- Gap width -h- = 2.9 ... 3.9 mm
- Flush alignment -g- = 0/-1.0 mm
- Parallel adjustment = 0.5 mm

E - Rear door to body

- Gap width -j- = 4.0 ... 6.0 mm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4.2 Adjustment dimensions - A5

A - Rear door to front door

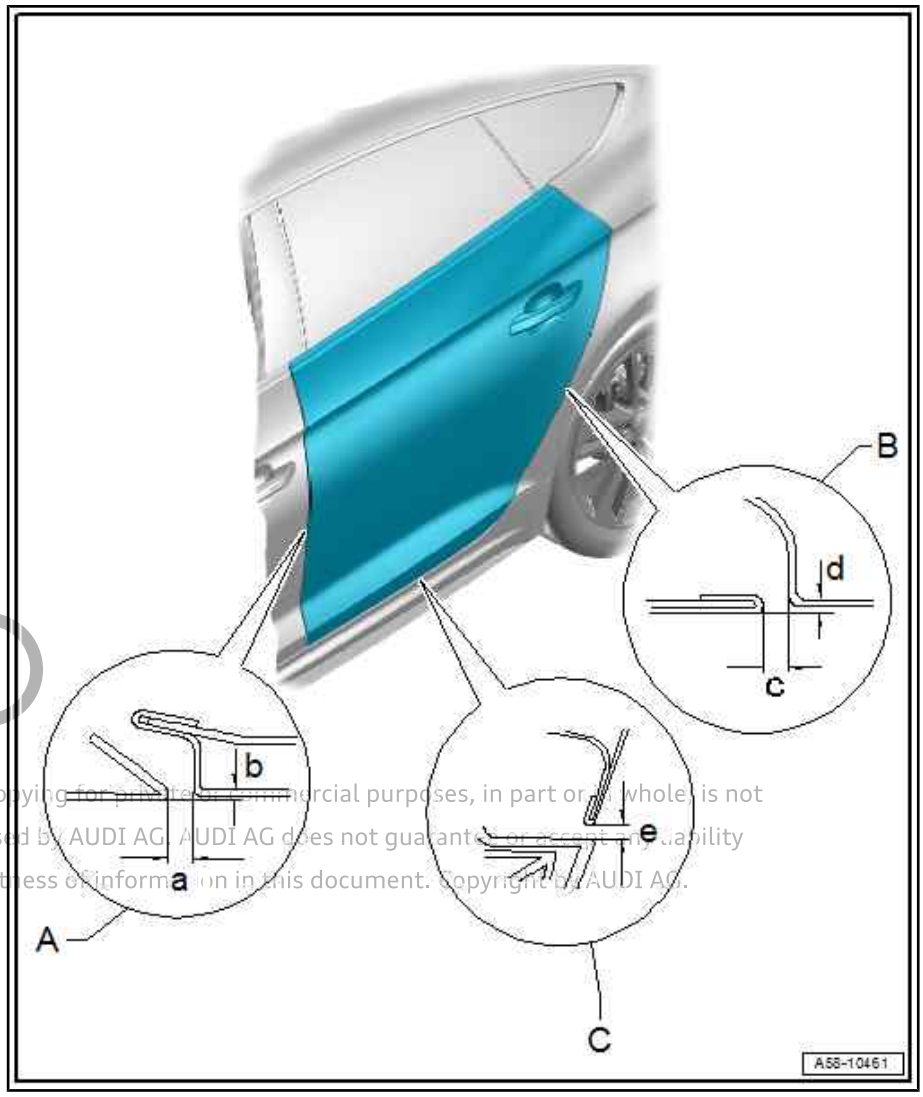
- Gap width -a- = 3.8 mm
- Flush alignment -b- = 0 - 1.0 mm
- Parallel adjustment = 0.5 mm

B - Rear door to side panel

- Gap width -c- = 3.2 mm
- Flush alignment -d- = 0 - 1.0 mm
- Parallel adjustment = 0.5 mm

C - Rear door to body

- Gap width -e- = 4.5 ± 1.0 mm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4.3 Checking door adjustment

- ♦ Measuring points for checking door adjustment with template - T40038/20- ⇒ page 188
- ♦ Checking lateral adjustment with template - T40038/20- ⇒ page 188
- ♦ Checking height adjustment with template - T40038 /20- ⇒ page 189
- Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 185

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Setting gauge - 3371-



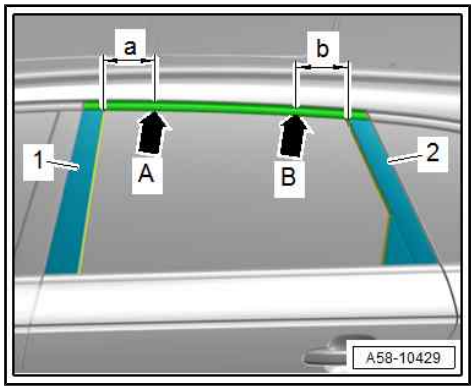
♦ Template - T40038/20-

Measuring points for checking door adjustment with template - T40038/20- :

– Use template - T40038/20- to check door frame alignment at two measuring points.

• Measuring point -arrow A- with dimension -a- = 100 mm from B-pillar trim -1-

• Measuring point -arrow B- with dimension -b- = 100 mm from C-pillar trim -2-



Checking lateral adjustment with template - T40038/20- :

Checking lateral tolerance (minimum):

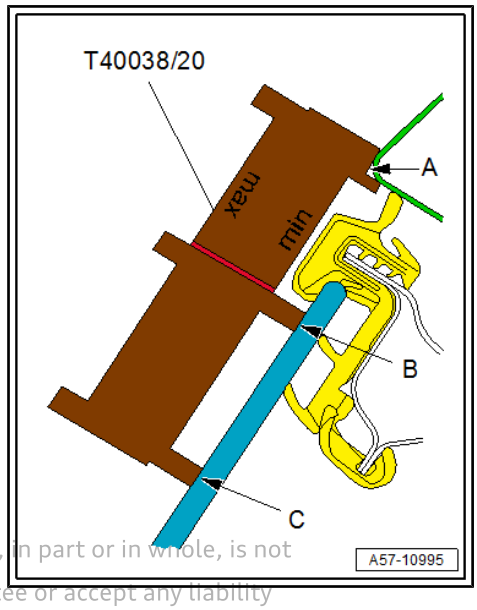
– Place template at measuring points on body ⇒ page 188 .

• The “min” marking on the template should face the vehicle.

– The points -B, C- on the template should make contact with the door window.

• Point -A- should make contact with the edge of the roof; a small gap is permissible.

– If there is a gap between point -A- and edge of roof, check maximum tolerance.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Checking lateral tolerance (maximum):

– Place template at measuring points on body ⇒ page 188 .

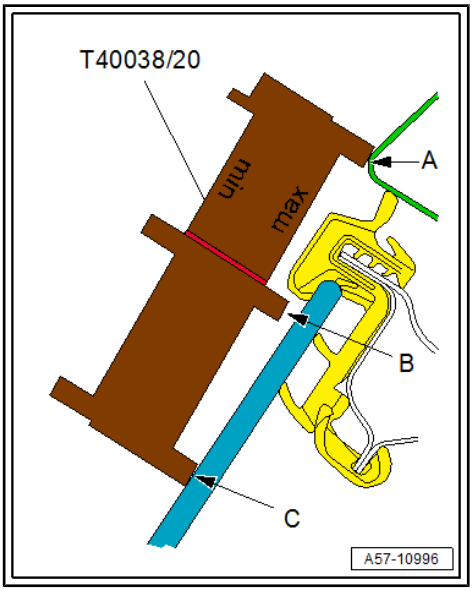
• The “max” marking on the template should face the vehicle.

– Points -A, C- on template should make contact with door window and edge of roof.

– Point -B- may make contact with door window, or there may be a gap in between.

• In this case, the adjustment is OK.

– If not, door is positioned too far to outside and must be adjusted.



Checking height adjustment with template - T40038 /20- :

– Place template at measuring points on body ⇒ page 188 .

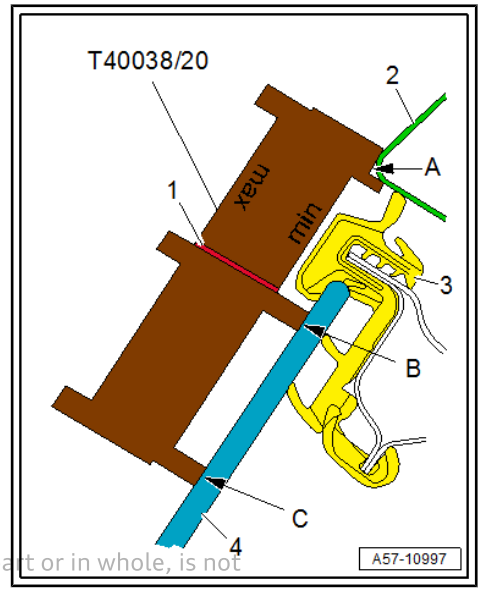
• The “min” marking on the template should face the vehicle.

– Point -A- should make contact with edge of roof from side and from below.

– Points -B, C- should make contact with the door window -4-.

– Height adjustment is correct if bottom edge of window guide -3- is positioned in area of marking -1- on template.

– If not, door must be adjusted.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4.4 Lateral and longitudinal adjustment at hinge

◆ Lateral adjustment at hinge ⇒ page 190

◆ Longitudinal adjustment at hinge, A4 ⇒ page 190

◆ Longitudinal adjustment at hinge, A5 ⇒ page 190

• Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 185

Procedure

Lateral adjustment at hinge:

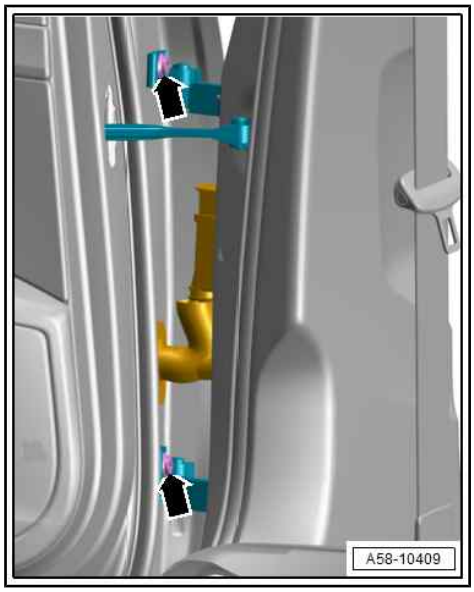
– Loosen bolts (top and bottom) -arrows- at hinge.

– Adjust door towards centre of vehicle.

– Tighten bolts.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door”, page 179



Longitudinal adjustment at hinge, A4:

– Remove three-point seat belt (front) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 69 ; Seat belts; Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) .

– Slide foam piece to one side at hinge (top).

– Take out foam piece at hinge (bottom).

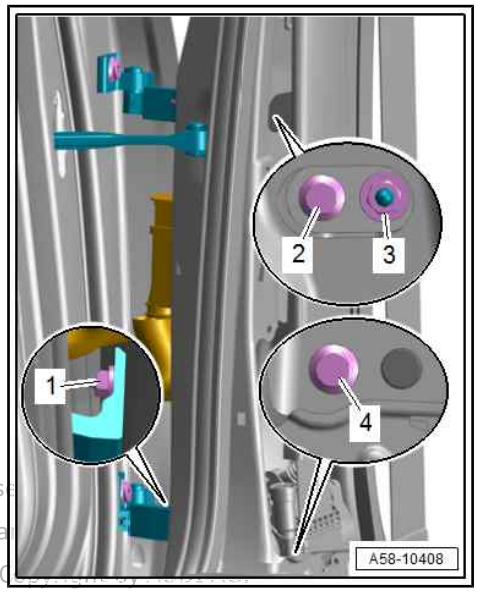
– Loosen bolts -2, 4- and nuts -1, 3- at hinge and B-pillar.

– Adjust door lengthwise.

– Tighten bolts and nuts.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door”, page 179



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpos
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara
with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Longitudinal adjustment at hinge, A5:

– Remove three-point seat belt (front) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 69 ; Seat belts; Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) .

– Slide foam piece to one side at hinge (top).

– Take out foam piece at hinge (bottom).

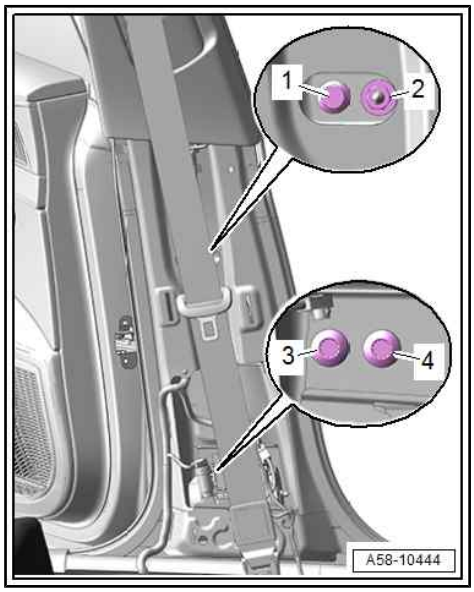
– Loosen bolts -1, 3, 4- and nut -2- at B-pillar.

– Adjust door lengthwise.

– Tighten bolts and nuts.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door”, page 179



1.4.5 Lateral adjustment at striker

- Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 185

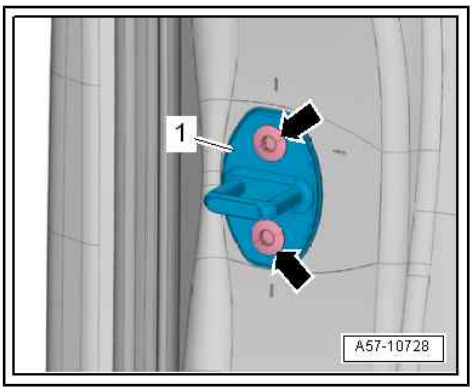
Procedure

– Loosen bolts -arrows-.

– Move striker -1- until door is flush with body contour.

- The striker is only to be used for adjustment towards the centre of the vehicle.
- Do not adjust the height of the door via the striker; otherwise the door lock will be damaged.
- If adjustment is correct, striker should engage centrally in door lock.

– Tighten bolts.



Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 205

1.5 Removing and installing door arrester

Removing

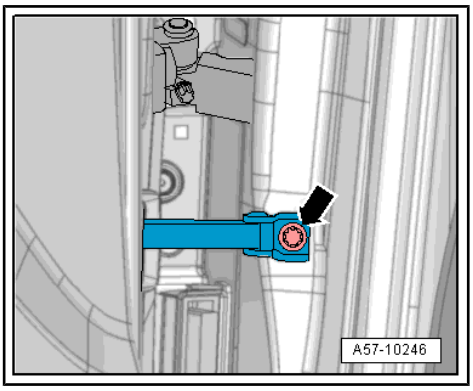
– Mask B-pillar in vicinity of door arrester with adhesive tape to avoid damaging paintwork.

– Move door window to “closed” position.

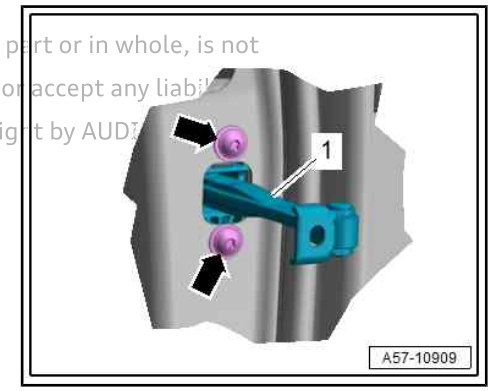
– Remove door trim (rear) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (rear); Removing and installing door trim (rear) .

– Remove loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .

– Unscrew bolt -arrow- for door arrester.

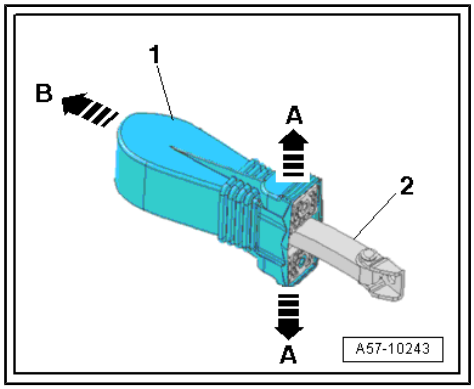


– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and take out door arrester -1- inwards.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Pull cap -1- slightly to one side -arrows A- and detach from door arrester -2- -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Installation position for door arrester ⇒ page 181
- Installation position for cap ⇒ page 181

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - door”, page 179

1.6 Removing and installing inner door seal

⇒ “1.6.1 Removing and installing inner door seal - A4”, page 192

⇒ “1.6.2 Removing and installing inner door seal - A5”, page 193

1.6.1 Removing and installing inner door seal - A4

Removing

– Remove sill panel trim (rear) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels .

– Remove B-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels .

– Remove C-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels .

– Remove roof grab handle ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Equipment; Removing and installing roof grab handle .

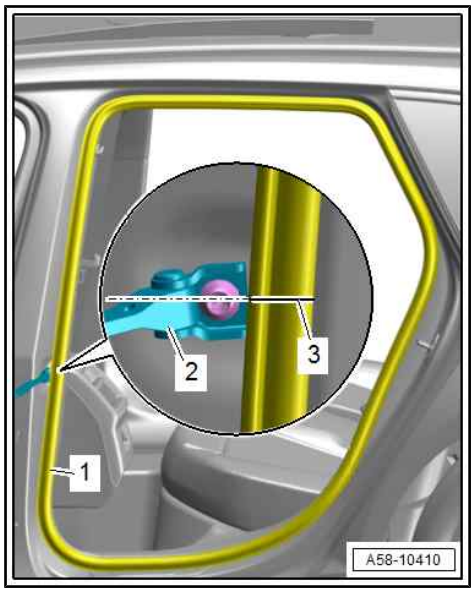
– Pull inner door seal off body flange.

Reproduction or copying of this document in any form, also for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Position inner door seal -1- on body flange so that vulcanised point -3- is aligned centrally with door arrester -2-, and press on all around.



1.6.2 Removing and installing inner door seal - A5

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove sill panel trim (rear) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels .

– Remove B-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels .

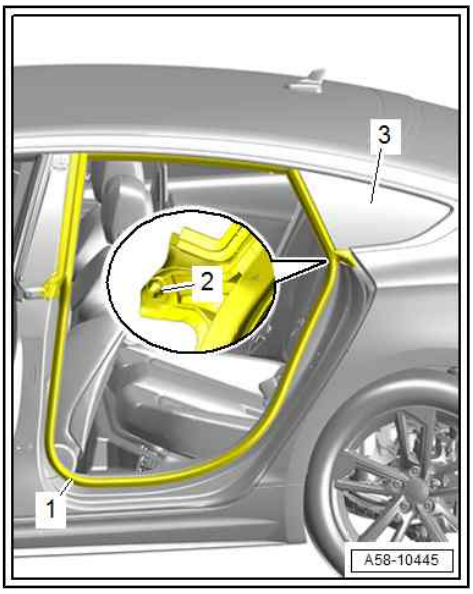
– Remove C-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels .

– Remove trim panel for B-pillar ⇒ page 619 .

– Remove roof grab handle ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Equipment; Removing and installing roof grab handle .

– Pull off retaining lugs -2-.

– Pull inner door seal -1- off body flange, off retainer for door seal at B-pillar and out of guide for door window -3-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

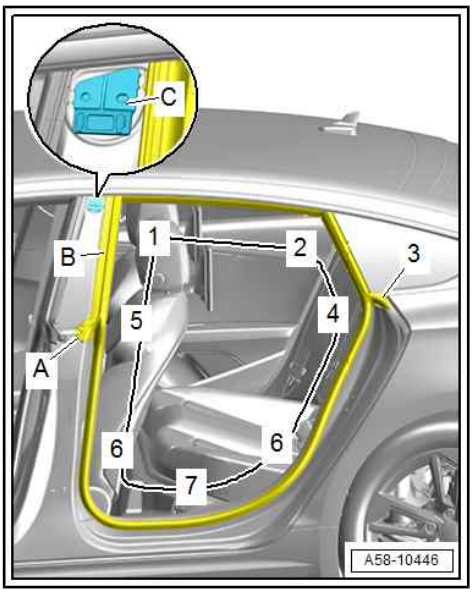
– Install inner door seal -B- on body flange in the sequence -1 … 7-.

1. Align inner door seal with top corner of B-pillar and with retainer -C- for B-pillar trim, and press it on.

• The marks must align.

2. Press inner door seal on from B-pillar to C-pillar.
3. Press retaining lugs fully into place.
4. Press inner door seal onto side window.
5. Fit inner door seal onto its retainer and guide tab -A- over rivet nut.
6. Fit inner door seal at centre.
7. Fit inner door seal on side member.

– Press on all sections of inner door seal.

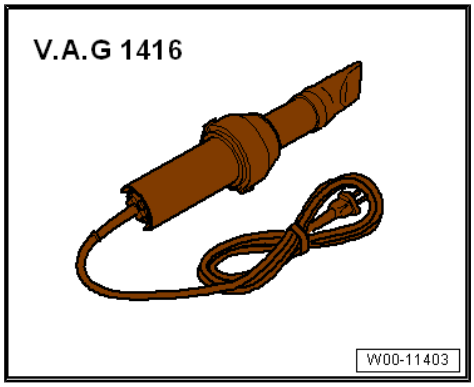


1.7 Removing and installing retainer for inner door seal

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 184 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-



♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

Removing

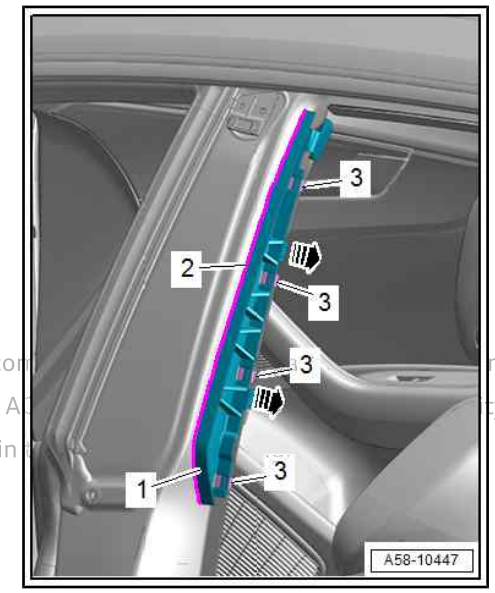
– Remove B-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing B-pillar trim .

– Remove roof grab handle ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Equipment; Removing and installing roof grab handle .

– Detach inner door seal in area of retainer.

– Heat bonded area -2- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .

– Detach retainer -1- for inner door seal from retaining clips -3- -arrows- and remove.



Installing

- The vehicle and the retainer must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A ty
with respect to the correctness of information in

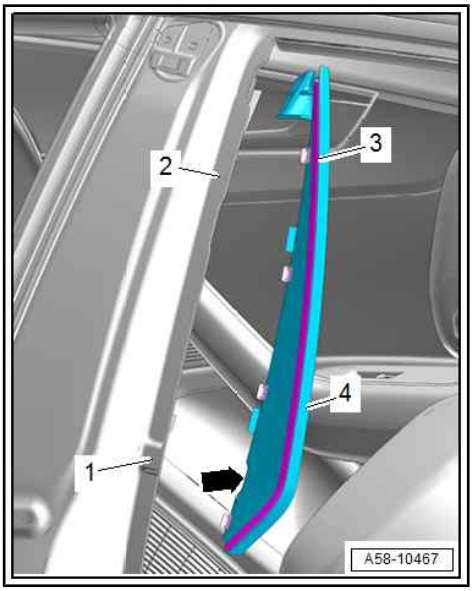
– Align retainer -4- for inner door seal -2- with body seam.

• Projection -1- on body seam must be opposite opening -arrow- on retainer.

– Peel protective film off adhesive strip -3-.

– Press on retainer over entire length.

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.



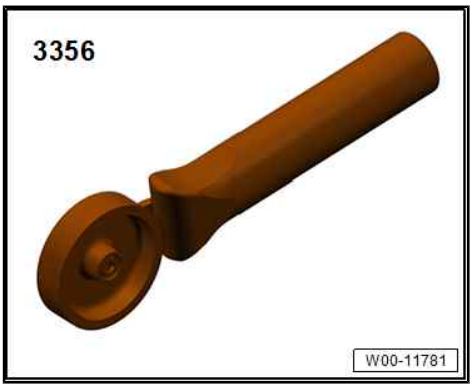
1.8 Removing and installing outer door seal

⇒ “1.8.1 Removing and installing outer door seal - A4”, page 196

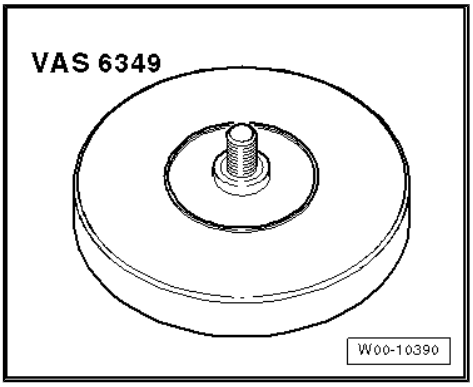
⇒ “1.8.2 Removing and installing outer door seal - A5”, page 198

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Roller - 3356-



♦ Adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349-



♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

♦ Primer - D 355 205 A2-

♦ Applicator - D 009 500 25-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

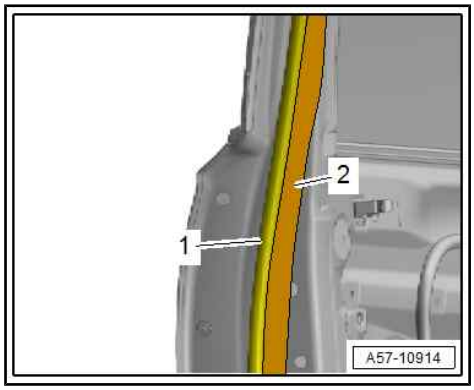
1.8.1 Removing and installing outer door seal - A4

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 183 .

Removing

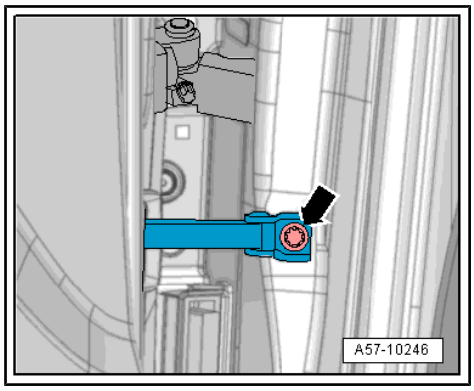
– Remove window frame trim (rear) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (rear) .

– Mark position of outer door seal -1- all around with adhesive tape -2-.



– Mask B-pillar in vicinity of door arrester with adhesive tape to avoid damaging paintwork.

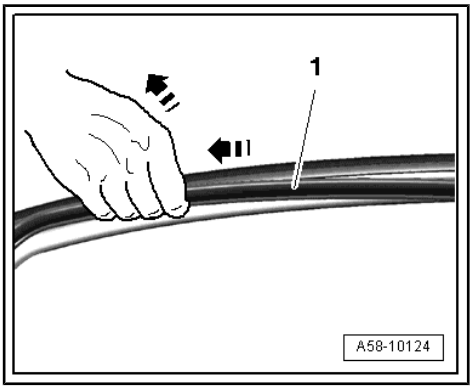
– Unscrew bolt -arrow- for door arrester.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Pull outer door seal -1- slightly off top of door frame and cut through with scissors (commercially available).

– Gradually stretch outer door seal lengthwise -bottom arrow- and detach -top arrow-.



Note:

By stretching the outer door seal lengthwise, the adhesive is separated from the door and the seal can be detached from the door without leaving any adhesive tape.

– Detach outer door seal completely.

Installing

- The vehicle and the seal must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.
- When installing, do not stretch seal.
- To prevent the outer door seal from becoming detached or misaligned, it is important that the door is not closed for at least 30 minutes.
- If the door has been renewed, use the routing of the outer door seal on the opposite side as a guide when positioning the outer door seal.

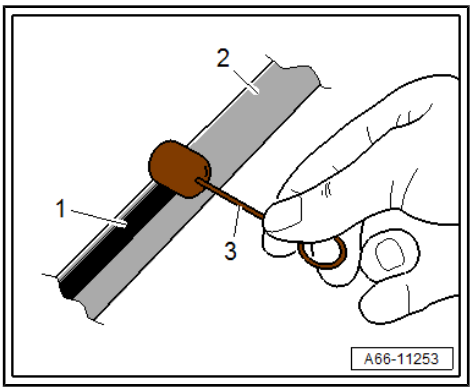
– Remove any remaining adhesive tape from vehicle body with adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349- .

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

– Apply primer - D 355 205 A2- -item 1- to bonding area -2- on painted surface using applicator - D 009 500 25- -item 3- and allow to flash off for 10 minutes.

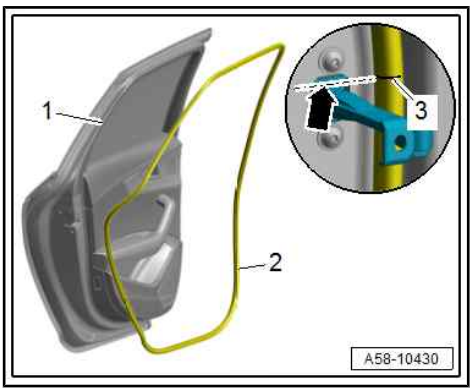
- If the primer - D 355 205 A2- has been allowed to flash off for more than 2 hours, primer must be re-applied.

– Peel protective film off adhesive tape.



– Position outer door seal -2- on door shell -1- so that vulcanised point -3- is aligned centrally with opening -arrow- for door arrester according to marking made during removal and bond on all all around.

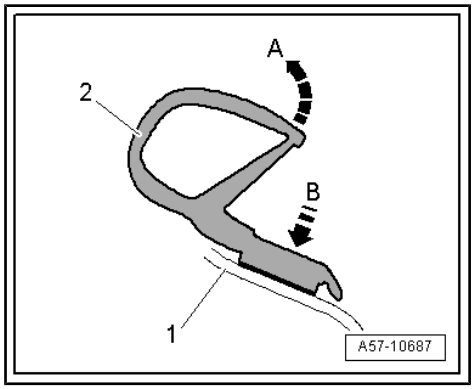
- When positioned correctly, the drain holes in the outer door seal are located at the bottom on the underside of the seal.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Press seal -2- onto door shell -1- using roller - 3356- -arrow B-. To do so, swivel seal to one side -arrow A-.

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes with doors open.



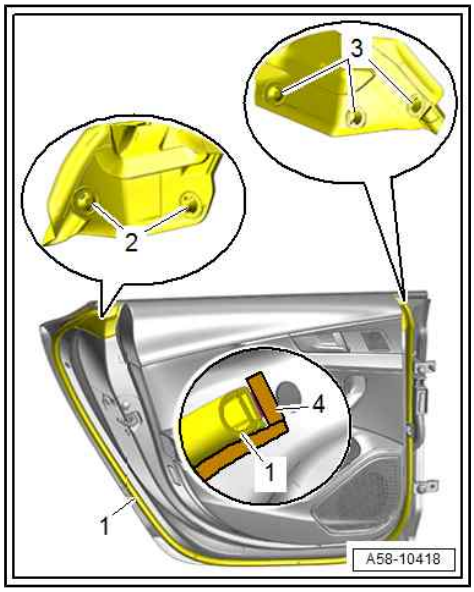
1.8.2 Removing and installing outer door seal - A5

• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 184 .

Removing

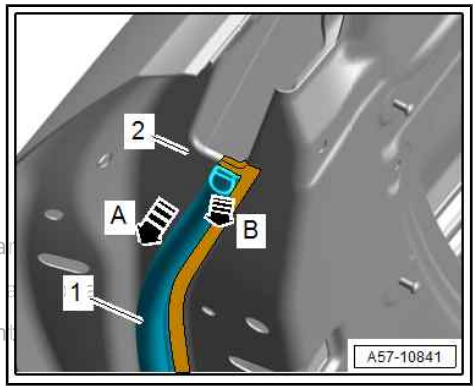
– Pull off retaining lugs -2, 3- and press window slot trim strip to side in area of outer door seal.

– Mark position of outer door seal -1- all around with adhesive tape -4-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Gradually stretch outer door seal -1- lengthwise -arrow A- and detach from door -2- -arrow B-.



Note:

By stretching the outer door seal lengthwise, the adhesive is separated from the door and the seal can be detached from the door without leaving any adhesive tape.

– Detach outer door seal completely.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrigh

Installing

• The vehicle and the seal must be at room temperature.

• The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

• When installing, do not stretch seal.

• To prevent the outer door seal from becoming detached or misaligned, it is important that the door is not closed for at least 30 minutes.

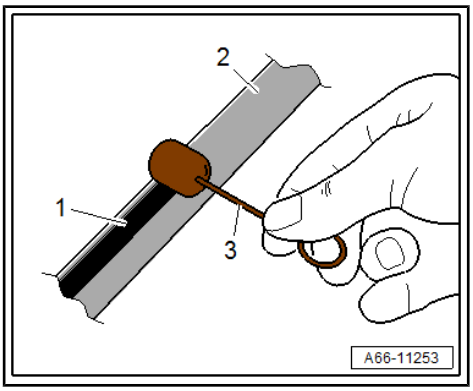
• If the door has been renewed, use the routing of the outer door seal on the opposite side as a guide when positioning the outer door seal.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape from vehicle body with adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349- .

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

– Apply primer - D 355 205 A2- -item 1- to bonding area -2- on painted surface using applicator - D 009 500 25- -item 3- and allow to flash off for 10 minutes.

• If the primer - D 355 205 A2- has been allowed to flash off for more than 2 hours, primer must be re-applied.



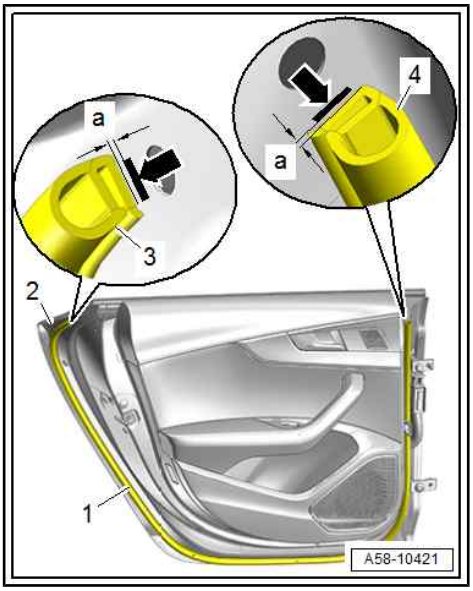
– End -4- of door seal -1- must be applied at distance -a- from marking -right arrow- on hinge side.

– Bond seal onto door -2- along marking made previously as far as marking -3- on lock side -left arrow-.

• Dimension -a- = 1 mm

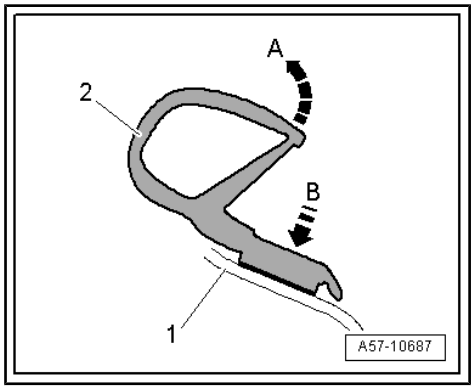
– Peel protective film off adhesive tape.

– Bond seal onto door according to marking.



– Press seal -2- onto door shell -1- using roller - 3356- -arrow B-. To do so, swivel seal to one side -arrow A-.

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes with doors open.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Door components

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - window regulator”, page 201

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 205

⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips”, page 208

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing window regulator”, page 210

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing mounting for side window”, page 214

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing window regulator motor”, page 215

⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing door handle”, page 216

⇒ “2.8 Removing and installing door handle trim”, page 217

⇒ “2.9 Removing and installing trim strip for door handle”, page 218

⇒ “2.10 Removing and installing mounting bracket”, page 218

⇒ “2.11 Removing and installing operating cable for exterior door handle”, page 220

⇒ “2.12 Removing and installing housing”, page 221

⇒ “2.13 Removing and installing door lock”, page 221

⇒ “2.14 Removing and installing striker”, page 222

⇒ “2.15 Removing and installing operating cable for interior door handle”, page 222

⇒ “2.16 Removing and installing inner door cover”, page 222

⇒ “2.17 Removing and installing window guide”, page 224

⇒ “2.18 Removing and installing guide rail for door window”, page 224

⇒ “2.19 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip”, page 225

⇒ “2.20 Removing and installing outer window slot trim strip”, page 228

2.1 Exploded view - window regulator

⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - window regulator, A4”, page 201

⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - window regulator, A4, country-specific version ”, page 203

⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - window regulator, A5 Sportback”, page 204

⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - window regulator, A5 Cabriolet”, page 205

2.1.1 Exploded view - window regulator, A4

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Nut

- ❑ 7.5 Nm

2 - Window regulator

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 210

3 - Nut

- ❑ 7.5 Nm

4 - Cap

5 - Door

6 - Rubber sleeve

- ❑ For door control unit

7 - Rear door control unit

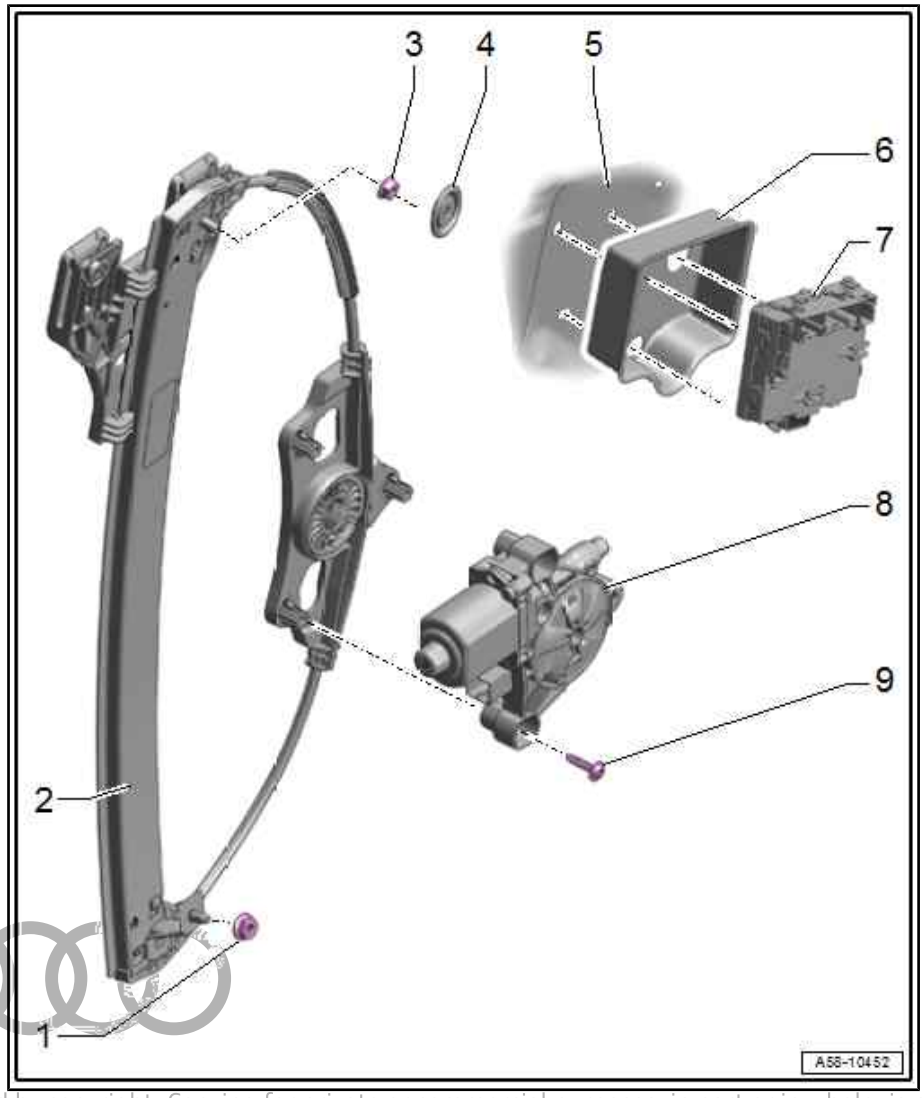
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ page 172

8 - Rear window regulator motor

- ❑ Rear driver side window regulator motor - V471- , rear passenger side window regulator motor - V472-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 215

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in by hand
- ❑ 3.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.2 Exploded view - window regulator, A4, country-specific version

1 - Nut
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

2 - Window regulator
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 212

3 - Cap

4 - Nut
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

5 - Retaining clip

6 - Nut
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

7 - Cap

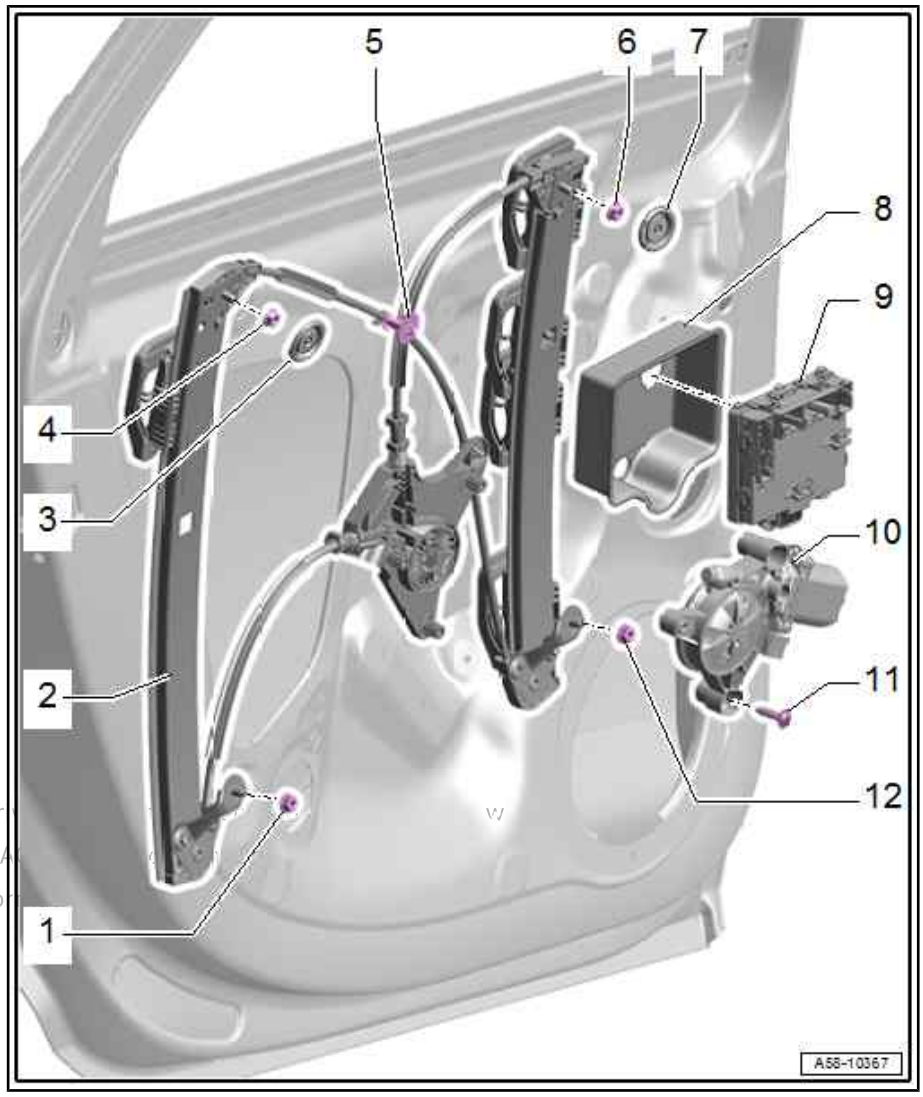
8 - Rubber sleeve
- ❑ For door control unit

9 - Rear door control unit
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ page 172

10 - Rear window regulator motor
- ❑ Rear driver side window regulator motor - V471- , rear passenger side window regulator motor - V472-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 215

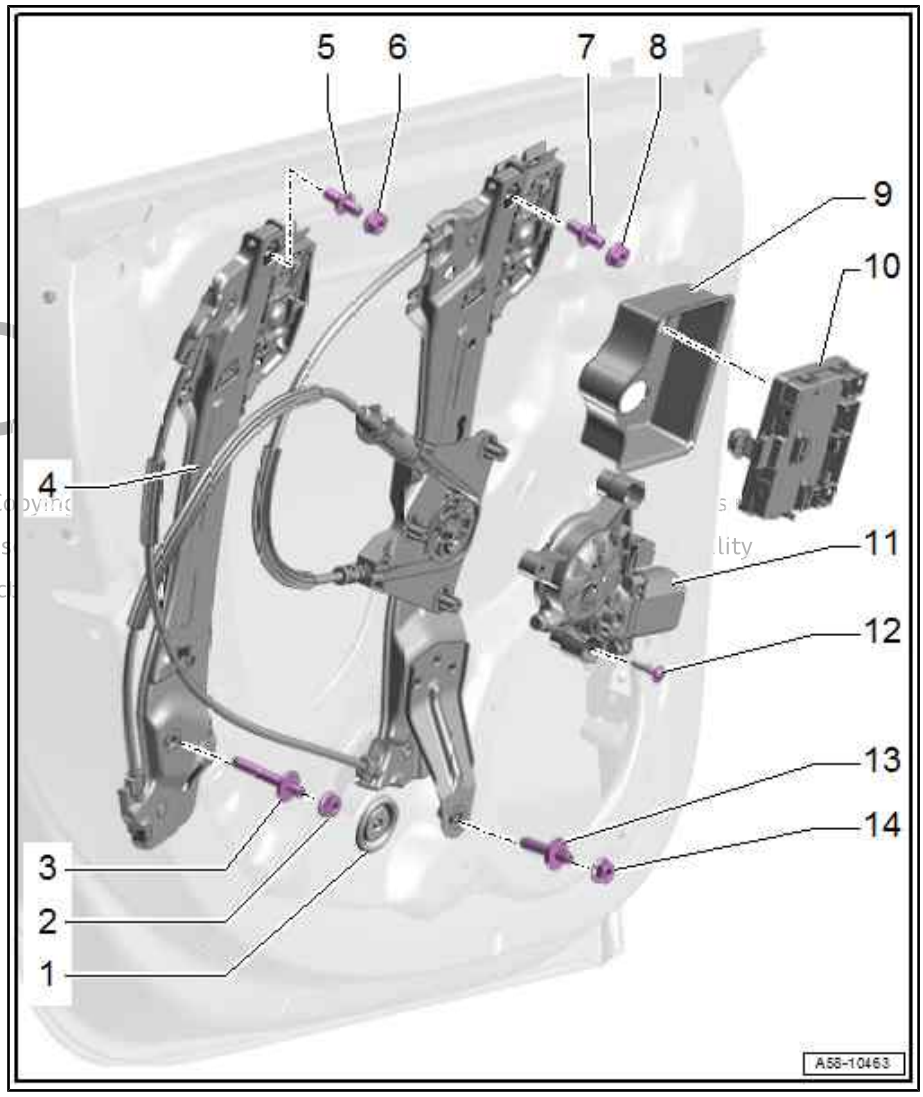
11 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in by hand
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

12 - Nut
- ❑ 7.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for pr
permitted unless authorised by Audi A
with respect to the correctness of info

2.1.3 Exploded view - window regulator, A5 Sportback



1 - Cap

2 - Nut
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

3 - Adjuster element (bottom)
- ❑ For lateral adjustment

4 - Window regulator
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 213

5 - Adjuster element (top)
- ❑ For lateral adjustment

6 - Nut
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

7 - Adjuster element (top)
- ❑ For lateral adjustment

8 - Nut
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

9 - Rubber sleeve
- ❑ For door control unit

10 - Rear door control unit
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ page 172

11 - Rear window regulator motor
- ❑ Rear driver side window regulator motor - V471- , rear passenger side window regulator motor - V472-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 215

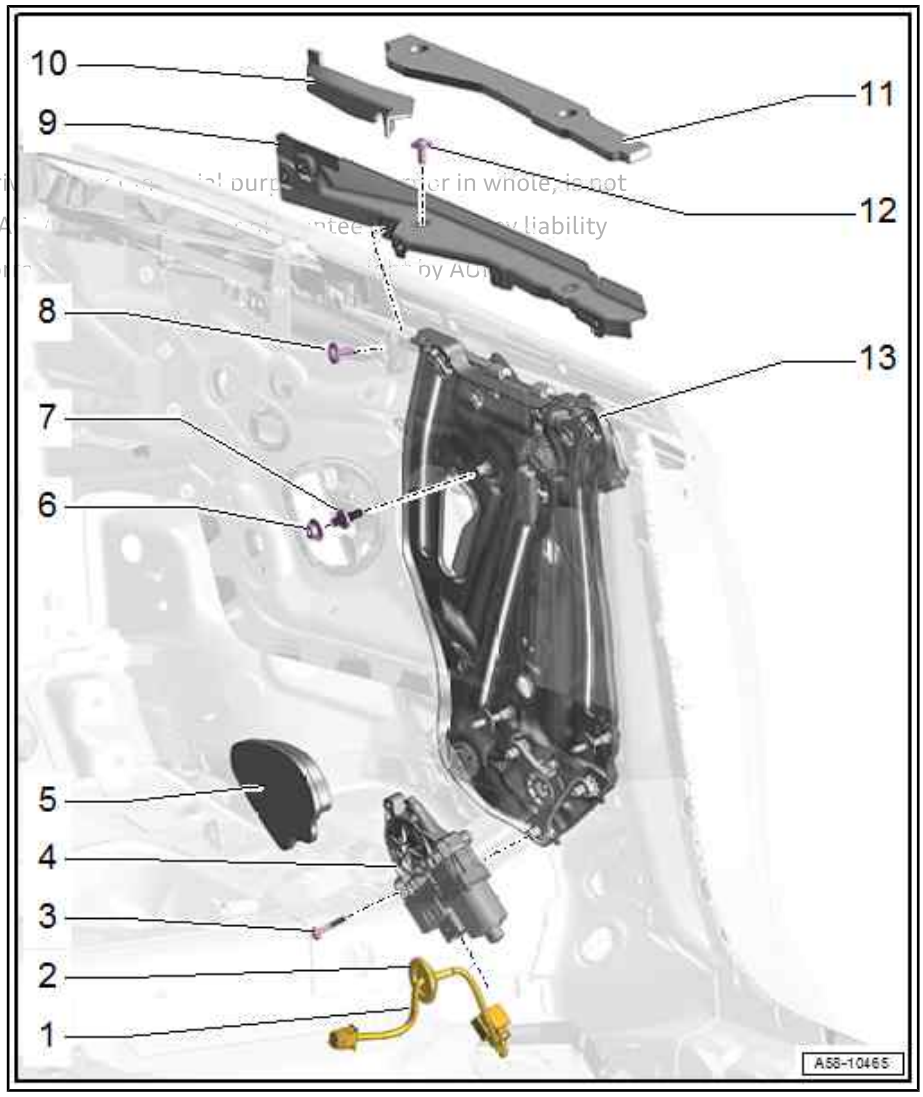
12 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in by hand
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

13 - Adjuster element (bottom)
- ❑ For lateral adjustment

14 - Nut
- ❑ 7.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.4 Exploded view - window regulator, A5 Cabriolet



1 - Adapter cable

2 - Grommet

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 3 Nm

4 - Rear window regulator motor

- ❑ Rear driver side window regulator motor - V471- , rear passenger side window regulator motor - V472-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 216

5 - Cover

- ❑ Depending on version

6 - Nut

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 20 Nm

7 - Centre hex stud

- ❑ For adjustment of window regulator
- ❑ 3x

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 8 Nm

9 - Mounting

- ❑ For side window
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 214

10 - Felt strip

11 - Foam strip

12 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

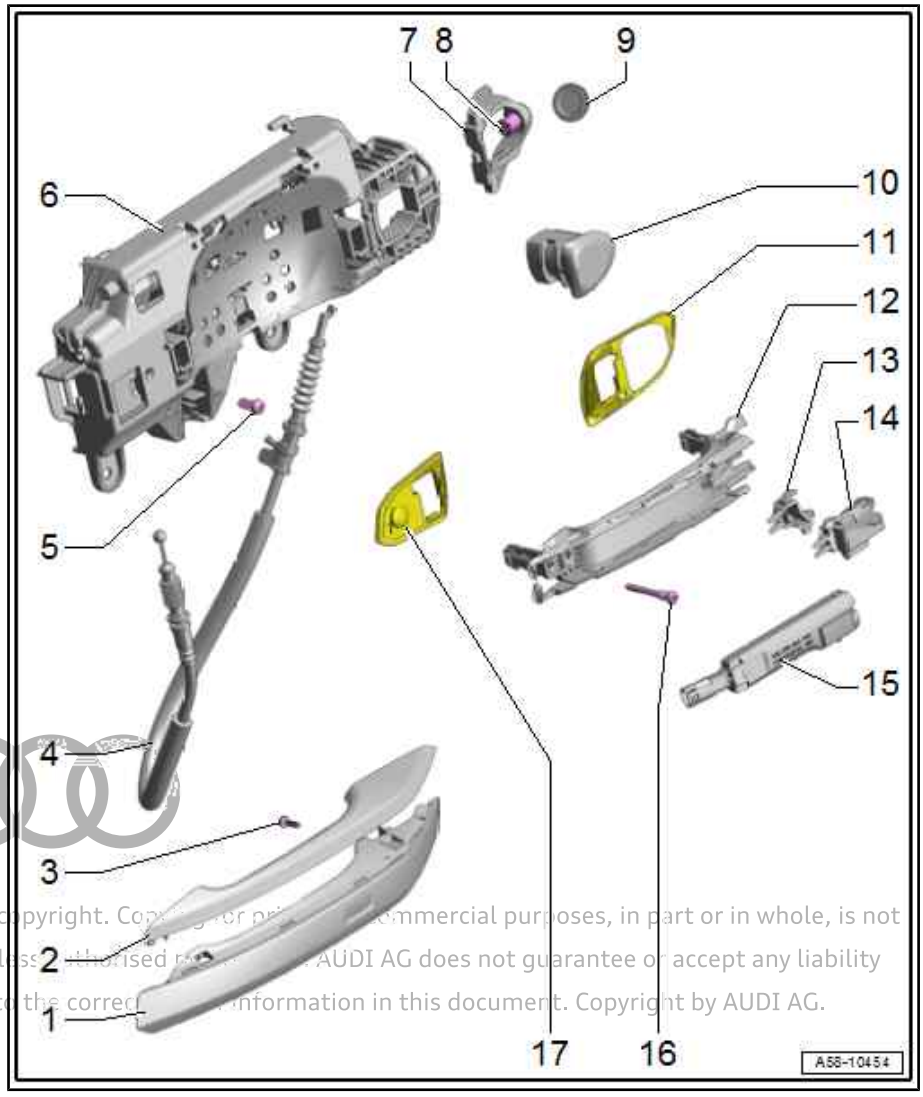
13 - Window regulator

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 213

2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock

- ♦ Exploded view - door handle and mounting bracket ⇒ page 205
- ♦ Exploded view - door lock and striker ⇒ page 207

Exploded view - door handle and mounting bracket



1 - Door handle trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 217

2 - Trim strip

- ❑ For door handle trim
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 218

3 - Bolt

- ❑ For equipment version with trim strip
- ❑ 1 Nm

4 - Operating cable

- ❑ For exterior door handle
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 220

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

6 - Mounting bracket

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 218

7 - Retaining bracket

8 - Clamping bolt

- ❑ For housing
- ❑ 3 Nm

9 - Plug

10 - Housing

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 221

11 - Backing plate (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 216

12 - Door handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 216

13 - Housing

- ❑ For vehicles without exterior door handle illumination bulb

14 - Exterior door handle illumination bulb

- ❑ Front left door exterior handle illumination bulb - L162- , front right door exterior handle illumination bulb - L163-
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Lights in exterior door handle; Exploded view - lights in exterior door handle

15 - Contact sensor for exterior door handle

- ❑ Driver exterior door handle contact sensor - G415- , front passenger exterior door handle contact sensor - G416-
- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation; Overview of fitting locations - keyless entry system

16 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ 3 Nm

17 - Backing plate (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 216

Exploded view - door lock and striker

1 - Inner door cover

- ❑ If seal is sprayed on, check for damage
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 222

2 - Operating cable

- ❑ For interior door handle
- ❑ With grommet
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 222

3 - Door lock

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 221

4 - Plug

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 25 Nm

6 - Support

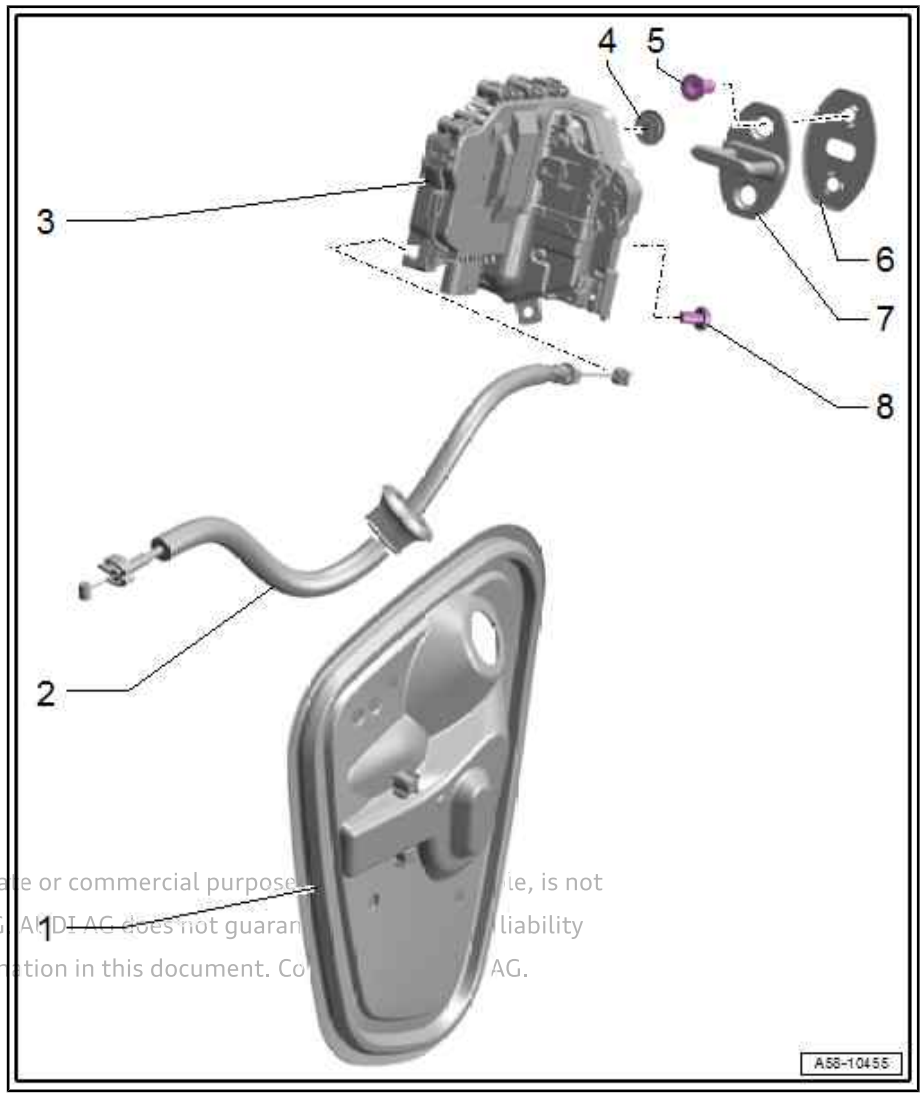
- ❑ Combined as one part with -item 7-

7 - Striker

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 222
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 191

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 19 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose... ...le, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guaran... ...liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co... ...AG.

2.3 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips

⇒ “2.3.1 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips, A4”, page 208

⇒ “2.3.2 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips, A5 Sportback”, page 209

⇒ “2.3.3 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips, A5 Cabriolet”, page 210

2.3.1 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips, A4

1 - Door

2 - Window guide

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 224

3 - Outer window slot trim strip

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 228

4 - Inner window slot trim strip

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 225

5 - Bolt

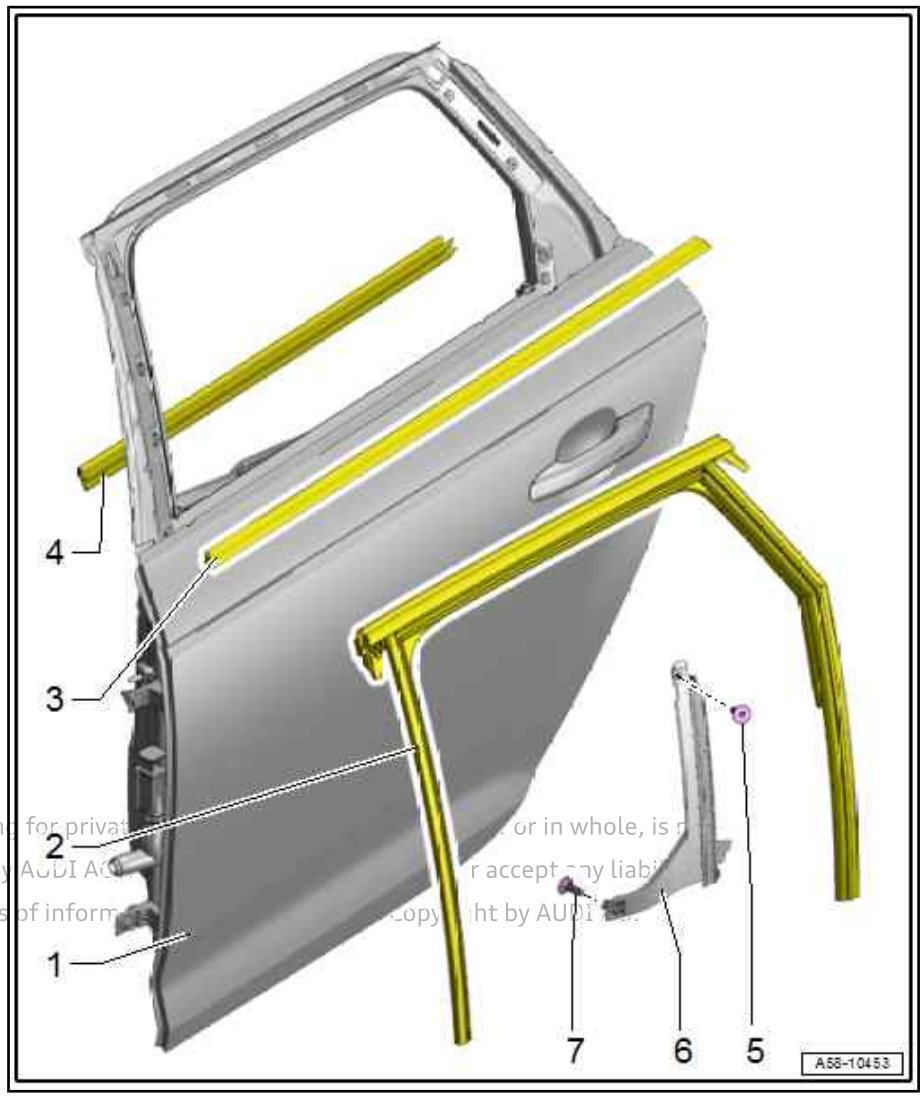
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

6 - Guide rail

- ❑ For door window
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 224

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 3.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copyin for privat or in whole, is n
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG r accept any liabi
with respect to the correctness of inform opyright by AUDI

2.3.2 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips, A5 Sportback

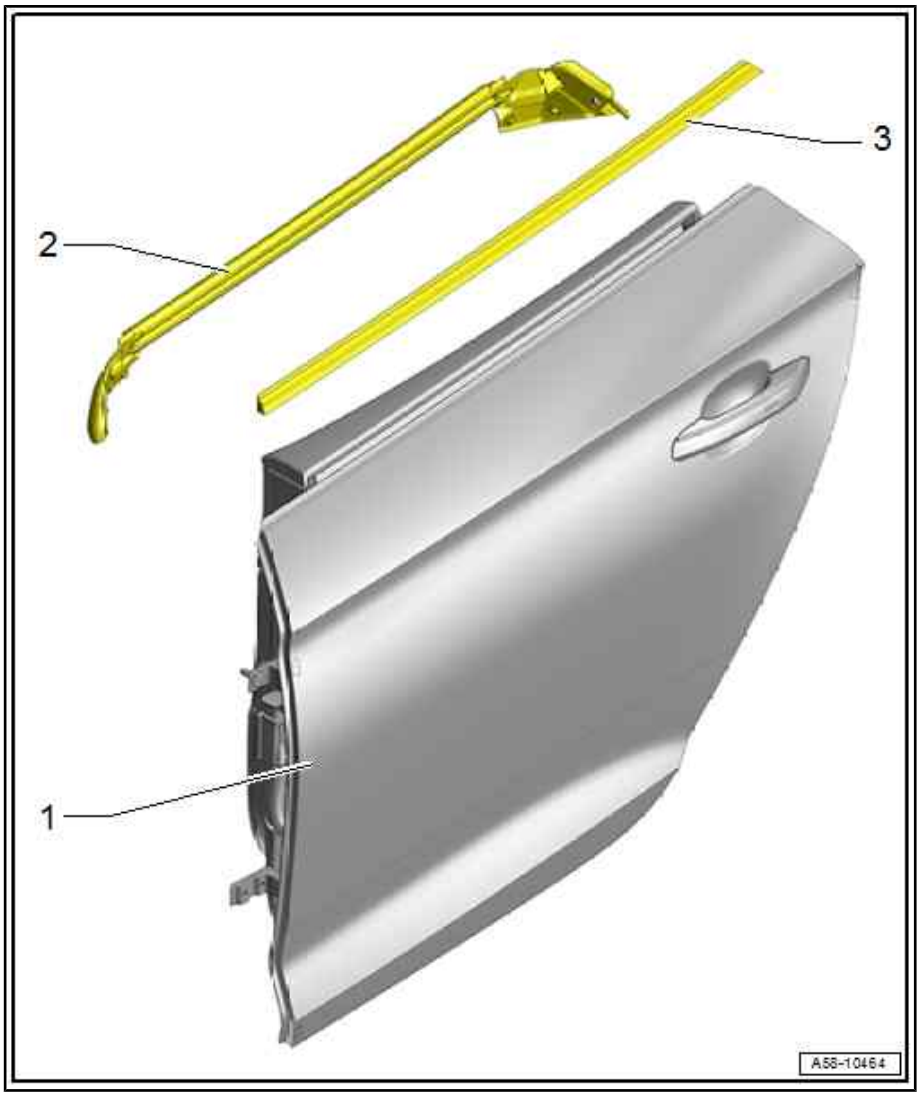
1 - Door

2 - Inner window slot trim strip

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 226

3 - Outer window slot trim strip

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 228



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

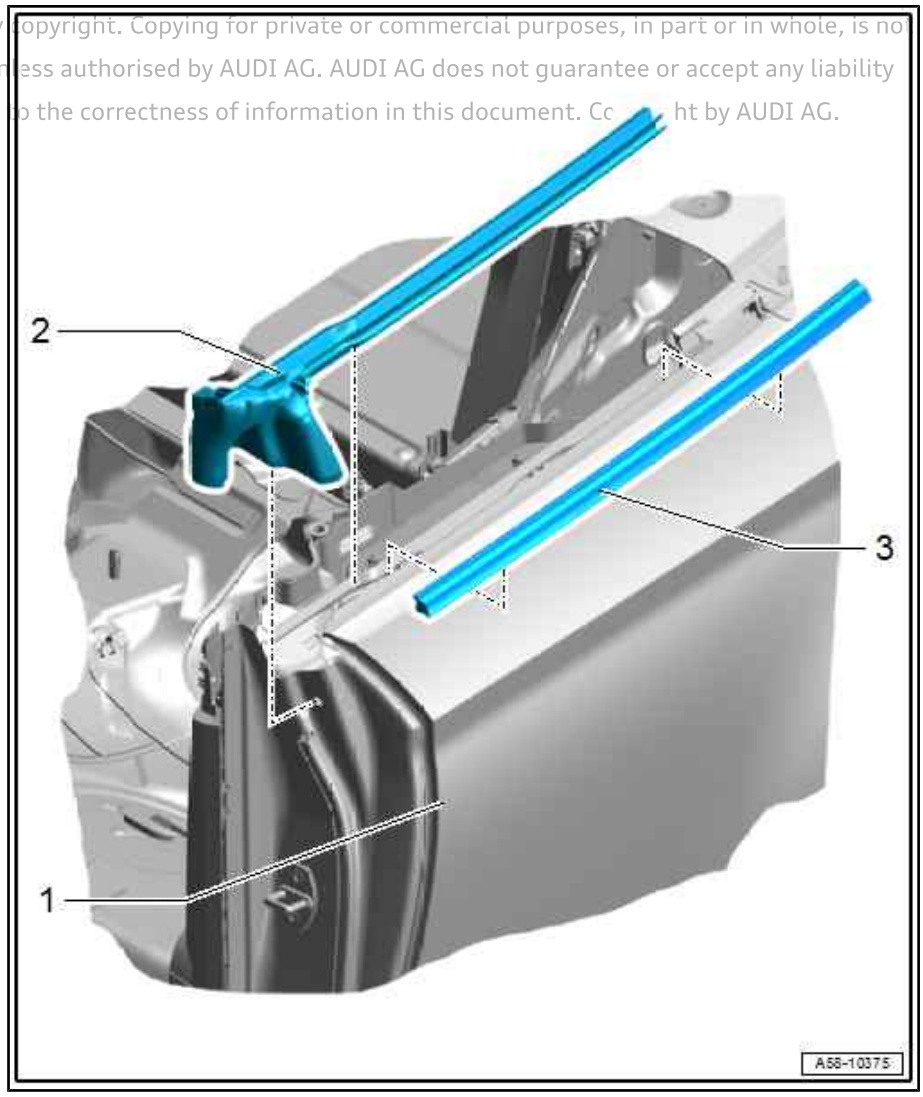
2.3.3 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips, A5 Cabriolet

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Side panel

2 - Inner window slot trim strip
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 227

3 - Outer window slot trim strip
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 229



2.4 Removing and installing window regulator

⇒ “2.4.1 Removing and installing window regulator - A4”, page 210

⇒ “2.4.2 Removing and installing window regulator - A4, country-specific version”, page 212

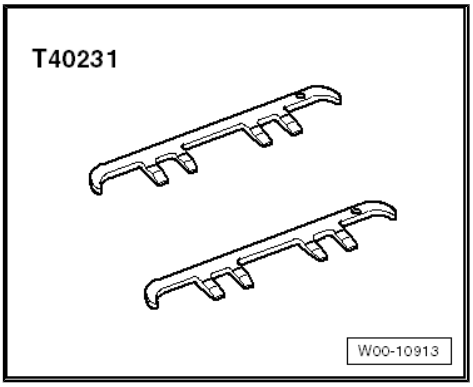
⇒ “2.4.3 Removing and installing window regulator - A5 Sportback”, page 213

⇒ “2.4.4 Removing and installing window regulator - A5 Cabriolet”, page 213

2.4.1 Removing and installing window regulator - A4

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Use removal tool - T40231- for standard glass.



Removing

– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 222 .

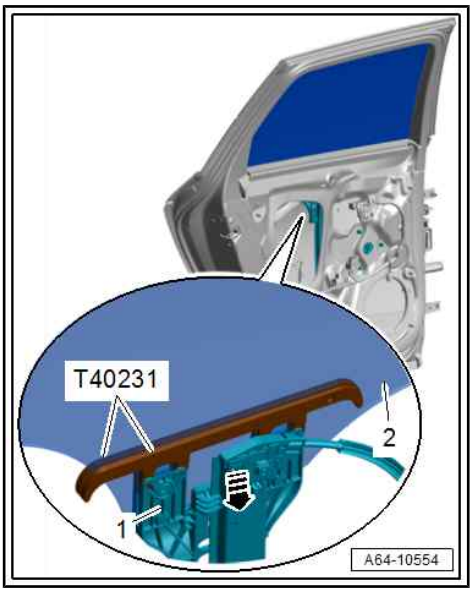
– Remove loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .

– Remove window regulator motor ⇒ page 215 .

– Insert removal tool - T40231- on both sides of door window -2- and press downwards at mounting for window regulator -1- -arrow-.

• This will bend open mounting at window regulator so that door window with retaining pins can be lifted out.

– Pull door window -2- upwards out of mounting and secure it with adhesive tape to prevent it from dropping.

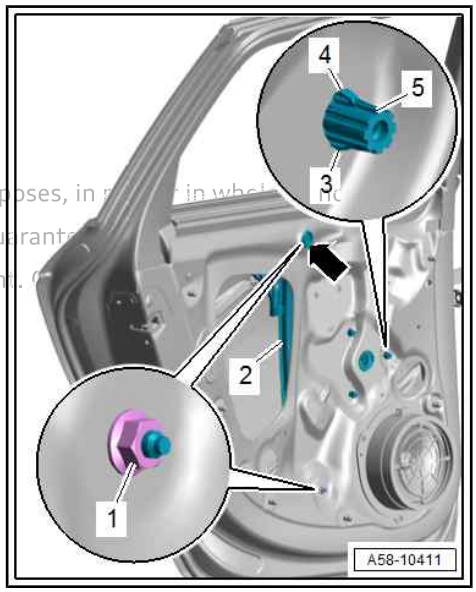


– Use an 11 mm socket to release retaining clips -3 and 4- of threaded pins -5- for window regulator (slide socket over threaded pins).

– Take out plugs -arrow-.

– Loosen nuts -1- at top by three turns and remove nuts at bottom.

– Take window regulator -2- out of opening in inner door cover towards rear.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

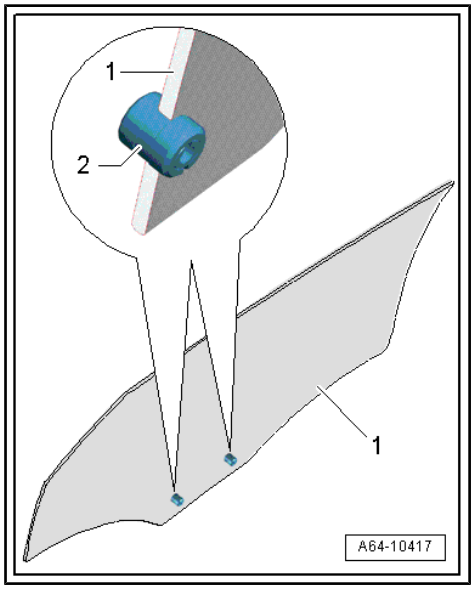
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert retaining pins -2- centrally in door window -1- and press locking pin in until it is flush.
– Remove adhesive tape and slide door window downwards.
– Press door window downwards into actuators.
• Actuators then engage in door window.
• The door window does not have to be adjusted.
• Retaining clips of threaded pins for window regulator must be engaged in inner door panel.

Tightening torques

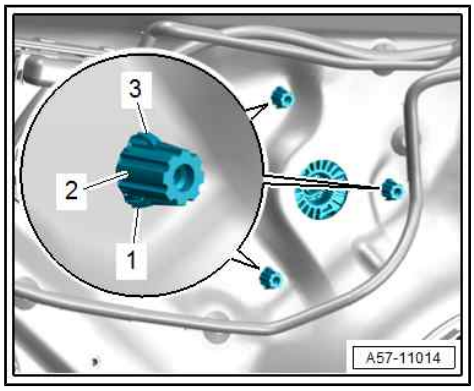
◆ ⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - window regulator, A4”, page 201



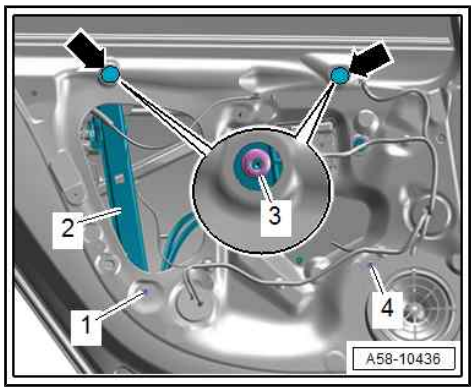
2.4.2 Removing and installing window regulator - A4, country-specific version

Removing

– Remove rear door window ⇒ page 540 .
– Use an 11 mm socket to release retaining clips -1 and 3- of threaded pins -2- for window regulator (slide socket over threaded pins).
– Unclip guide for window regulator cable from retaining clip.



– Remove caps -arrows-.
– Loosen nuts (top) -3- by three turns and remove nuts (bottom) -1, 4-.
– Take window regulator -2- out of opening in inner door cover towards rear.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

• Retaining clips of threaded pins for window regulator must be engaged in inner door panel.
• Guide for window regulator cable must be clipped into retaining clip.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - window regulator, A4, country-specific version ”, page 203

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

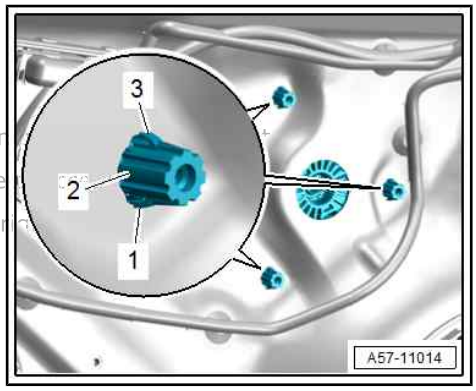
2.4.3 Removing and installing window regulator - A5 Sportback

Removing

– Remove rear door window ⇒ page 540 .

– Use an 11 mm socket to release retaining clips -1 and 3- of threaded pins -2- for window regulator (slide socket over threaded pins).

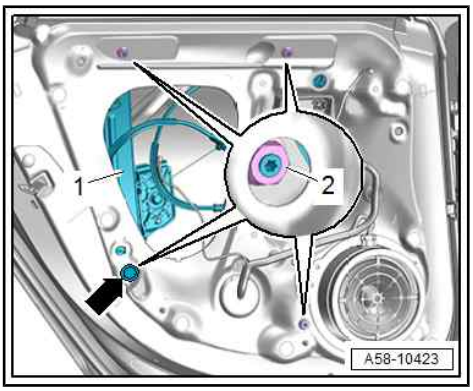
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyr



– Remove cap -arrow-.

– Remove nuts -2-.

– Take window regulator -1- out of opening in inner door cover towards rear.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Retaining clips of threaded pins for window regulator must be engaged in inner door panel.
- Guide for window regulator cable must be clipped into retaining clip.

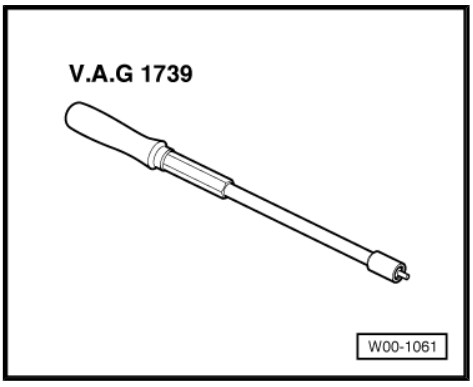
Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - window regulator, A5 Sportback”, page 204

2.4.4 Removing and installing window regulator - A5 Cabriolet

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Rear window adjusting tool - V.A.G 1739-



♦ Tubular socket wrench, commercially available

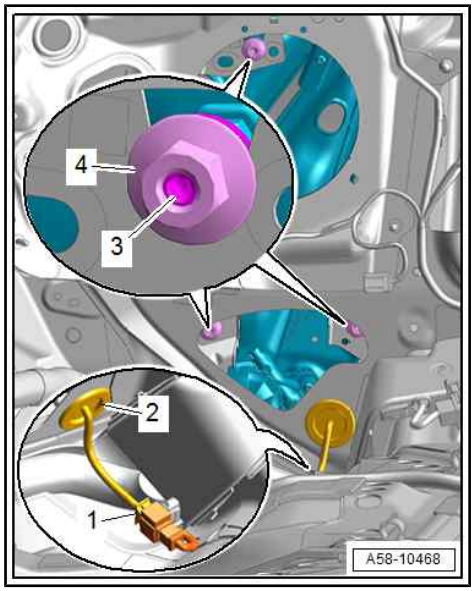
Removing

– Remove mounting for side window ⇒ page 214 .

– Move side window to “semi-closed” position.

– Remove loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .
– Loosen nuts -4- several turns using tubular socket wrench; counterhold adjuster screws -3- with tool insert while doing so.
– Unplug electrical connector -1- and press grommet -2- through towards outside.
– Lift window regulator out of mountings together with side window and window regulator motor, and remove it upwards.
– If renewing window regulator, also remove the following components:

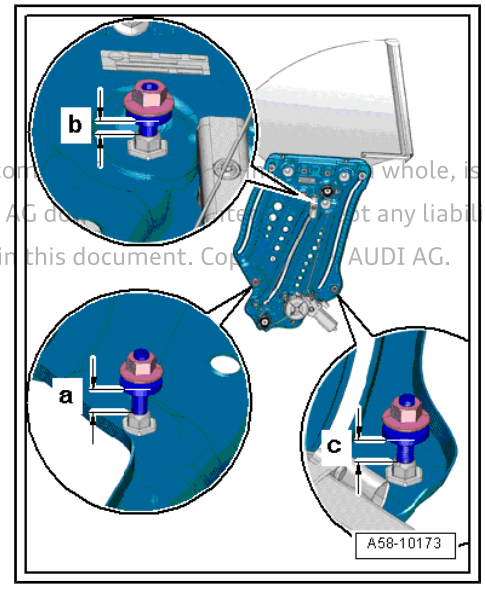
♦ Window regulator motor ⇒ page 216
♦ Side window ⇒ page 513



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– When installing a new window regulator, it is important to set the adjuster screws according to dimensions -a, b and c- of the adjuster screws on the old window regulator.



Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - window regulator”, page 201

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co... whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG do... ...t any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co... AUDI AG.

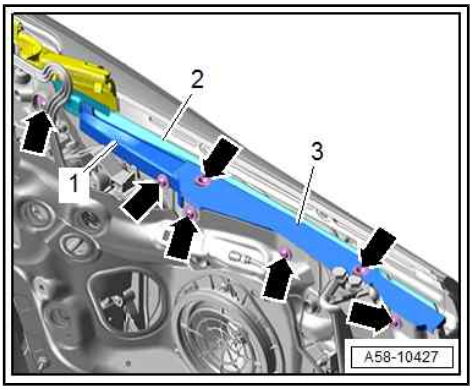
2.5 Removing and installing mounting for side window

Removing

– Move rear side window to “half open” position.
– Remove inner window slot trim strip ⇒ page 227 .

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Remove mounting -2- for side window by pulling upwards.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Before installing, check that felt strip -1- and foam strip -3- are positioned correctly on mounting for side window.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - window regulator, A5 Cabriolet”, page 205

2.6 Removing and installing window regulator motor

⇒ “2.6.1 Removing and installing window regulator motor - A4, A5 Sportback”, page 215

⇒ “2.6.2 Removing and installing window regulator motor - A5 Cabriolet”, page 216

2.6.1 Removing and installing window regulator motor - A4, A5 Sportback

Removing

Note:

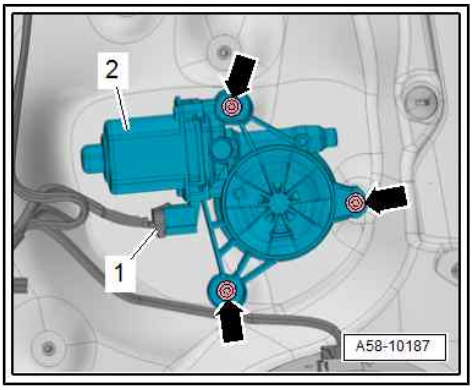
The window regulator motor can be removed or installed with the motor or door window in any position.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove door trim (rear) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (rear); Removing and installing door trim (rear) .

– Unplug electrical connector -1-.

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach window regulator motor -2- from window regulator.



Installing

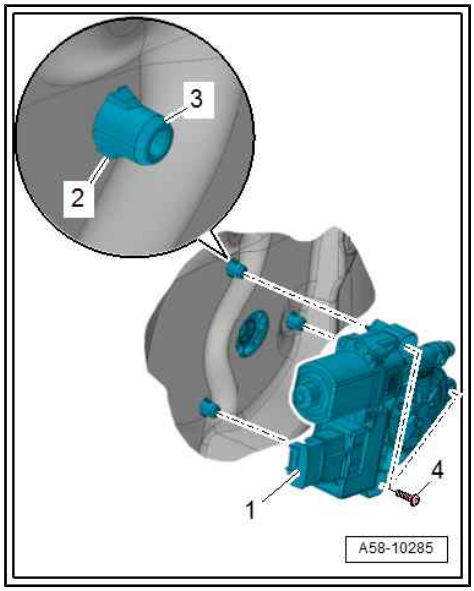
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Retaining clips -2- of threaded pins -3- for window regulator must be engaged in inner door panel.

– Slide window regulator motor -1- onto threaded pins and tighten bolts -4-.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - window regulator”, page 201



2.6.2 Removing and installing window regulator motor - A5 Cabriolet

Removing

Note:

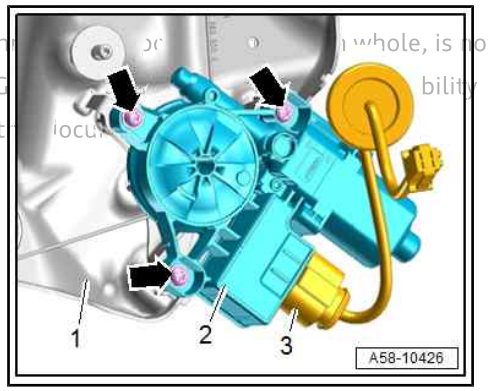
The window regulator motor can be removed or installed with the motor or door window in any position.

– Remove window regulator ⇒ page 213 .

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach control unit with window regulator motor -2- from window regulator -1-.

– Unplug electrical connector -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com... whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG ... bility with respect to the correctness of information in t... locu...



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - window regulator, A5 Cabriolet”, page 205 .

2.7 Removing and installing door handle

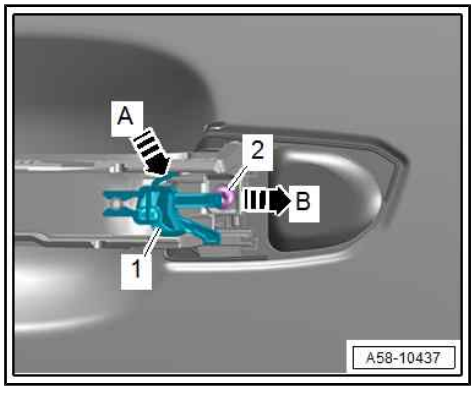
Removing

– Remove door handle trim ⇒ page 217 .

– If adapter -1- covers bolt -2-, release fastener -arrow A- and take adapter out to one side -arrow B-.

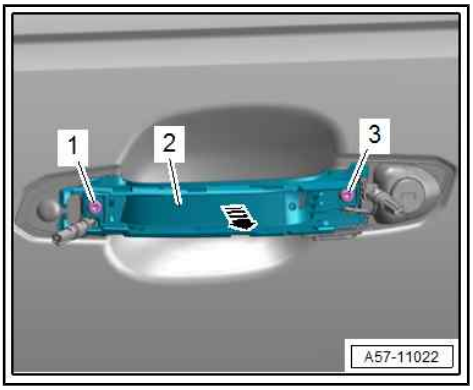
– If fitted: Remove exterior door handle illumination bulb ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Lights in exterior door handle; Removing and installing exterior door handle illumination bulb .

– If fitted, remove rear exterior door handle switch ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Entry and start authorisation; Removing and installing rear exterior door handle switches .



– Remove bolts -1, 3-.

– Detach door handle -2- from mounting bracket -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

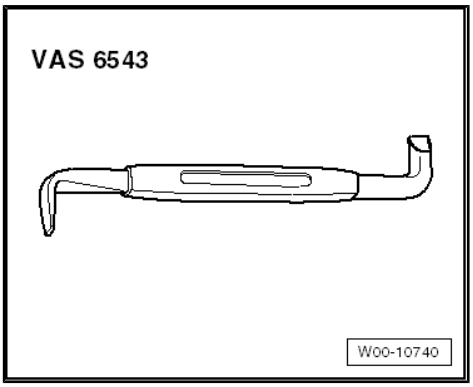
Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 205

2.8 Removing and installing door handle trim

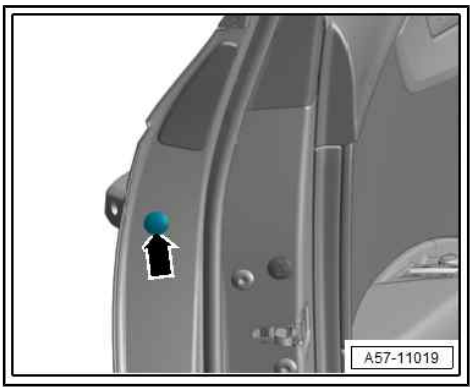
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Angled screwdriver - VAS 6543-



Removing

– Pull off cap -arrow-.

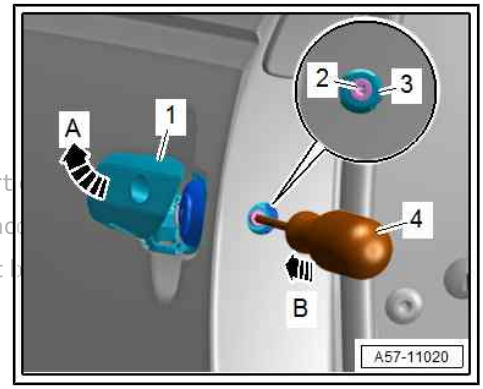


– Pull door handle -1- as far as stop -arrow A- and hold in this position.

– Unscrew clamping bolt -2- as far as possible using a screwdriver -4-.

– Push retainer -3- for housing inwards -arrow B- until it engages.

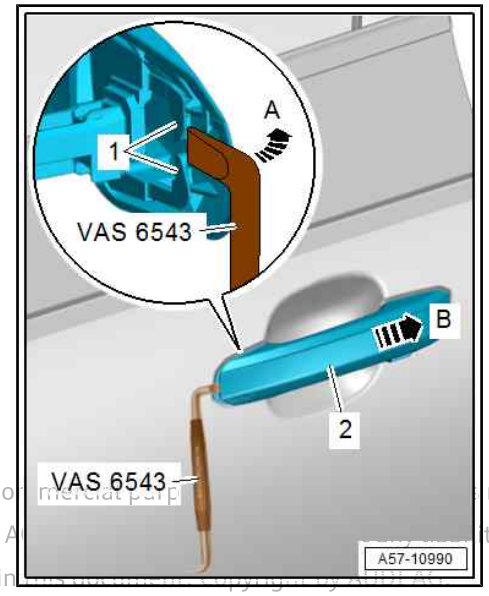
• Door handle is now locked in “open” position.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ac
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

– Using angled screwdriver -VAS 6543- , release catches -1- -arrow A-, and at the same time, press trim -2- in direction of -arrow B-.

– Detach door handle trim.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Position trim on door handle and press it towards front (as seen in direction of travel) until you hear it engage.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 205

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co mercial purp not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A ty with respect to the correctness of information in

2.9 Removing and installing trim strip for door handle

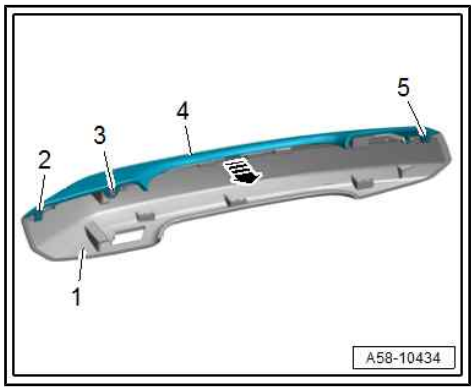
Removing

– Remove door handle trim ⇒ page 217 .

– Remove bolt -3-.

– Release fasteners -2, 5-.

– Detach trim strip -4- from door handle trim -1- -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 205

2.10 Removing and installing mounting bracket

Removing

– Move door window to “closed” position.

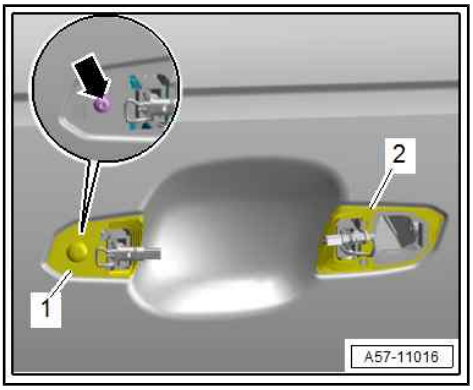
– Remove door handle ⇒ page 216 .

– Remove housing ⇒ page 221 .

– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 222 .

– Unfasten door lock and disengage operating cable ⇒ page 221 .

– Detach backing plate -1, 2-.
– Remove bolt -arrow-.

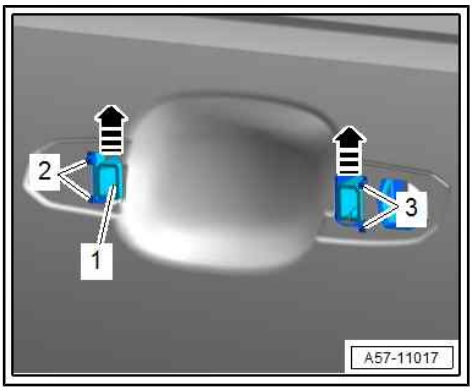


NOTICE

Risk of damage to operating cable if it is bent.

– Operating cable must never be bent or kinked excessively.

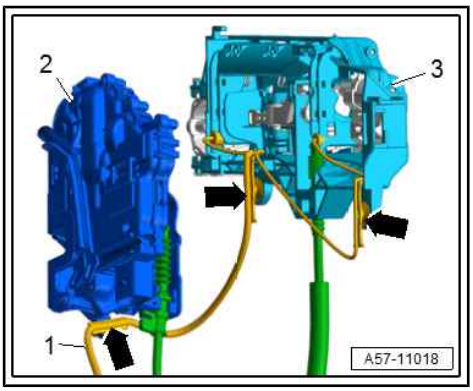
– Lift mounting bracket -1- until retaining catches -2, 3- are released -arrows-.
– Move electrical wiring harness clear.
– Detach mounting bracket inwards.
– Take mounting bracket out of door.



Installing

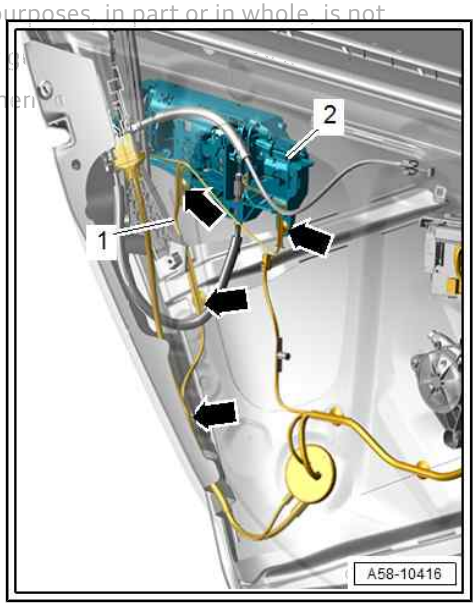
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Wiring harness -1- for contact sensor for exterior door handle/ sensor for exterior door handle illumination must be routed as shown -arrows- at mounting bracket -3- and door lock -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– A4 (country-specific version), A5: Wiring harness -1- for contact sensor for exterior door handle/sensor for exterior door handle illumination must be routed as shown -arrows- at mounting bracket -2- and door shell.



Note:

If the wiring harness is not routed correctly, this could cause noise when opening and closing the door window as the window would come into contact with the wiring harness.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 205

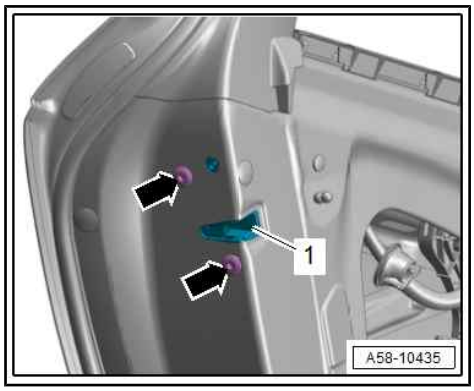
2.11 Removing and installing operating cable for exterior door handle

Removing

– A4: Remove guide rail for door window ⇒ page 224 .

– A5: Remove door lock ⇒ page 221 .

– Remove bolts -arrows-.



NOTICE

Risk of damage to operating cable if it is bent.

– Operating cable must never be bent or kinked excessively.

– Press door lock -1- downwards.

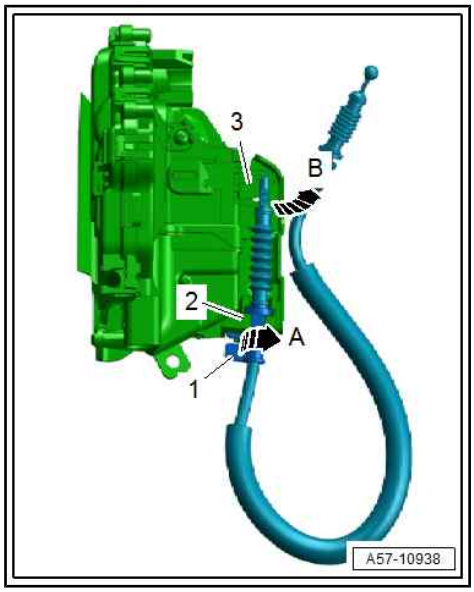
– Turn operating cable on lever -1- 90° in direction of -arrow A- and take it out of cable support bracket -2-.

– Turn operating cable on operating lever -3- for door lock in direction of -arrow B-.

• The operating cable must be aligned with the opening on the operating lever.

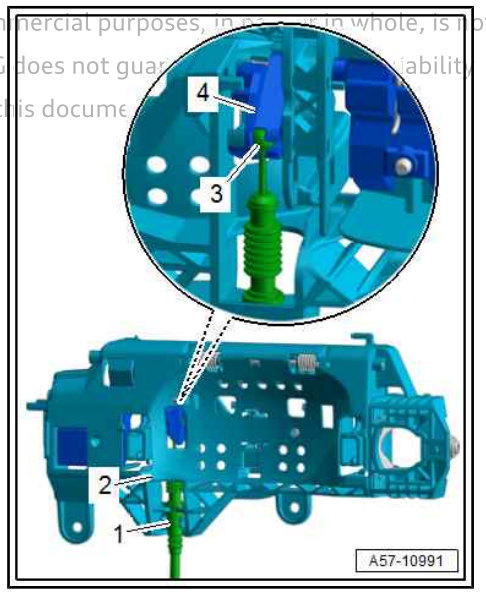
– Disengage operating cable from operating lever.

– Remove mounting bracket ⇒ page 218 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Release operating cable -1- from support bracket -2- and disengage Bowden cable nipple -3- at operating lever -4-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

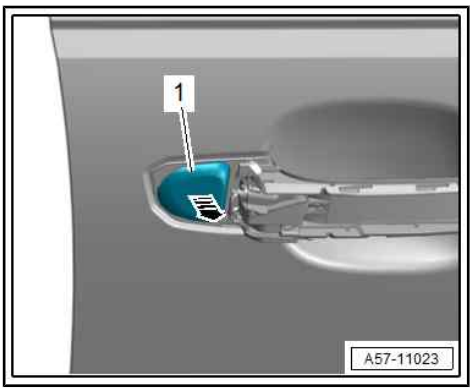
◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 205

2.12 Removing and installing housing

Removing

– Remove door handle trim ⇒ page 217 .

– Pull housing -1- out of mounting bracket -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

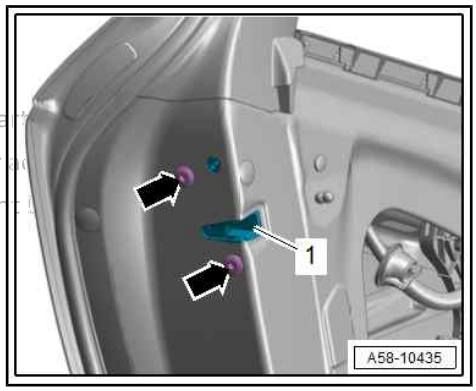
2.13 Removing and installing door lock

Removing

– A4: Remove guide rail for door window ⇒ page 224 .

– A5: Remove mounting bracket ⇒ page 218 .

– Remove bolts -arrows-.



NOTICE

Risk of damage to operating cable if it is bent.

– Operating cable must never be bent or kinked excessively.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © AUDI AG.

– Press door lock -1- downwards.

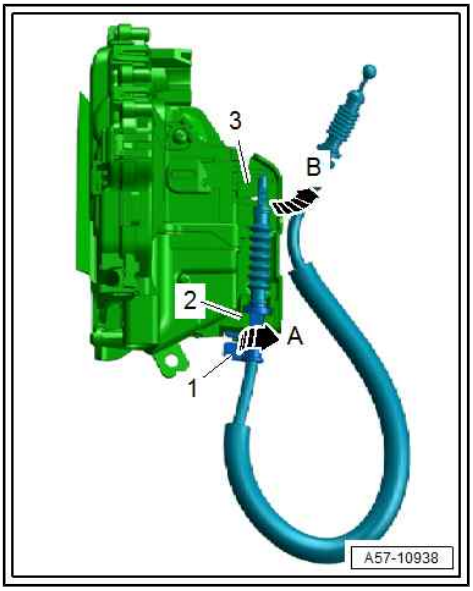
– Unplug electrical connector.

A5:

– Remove operating cable for door opener ⇒ page 222 .

– Remove door lock.

Continued:



– Turn operating cable on lever -1- 90° in direction of -arrow A- and take it out of cable support bracket -2-.

– Turn operating cable on operating lever -3- for door lock in direction of -arrow B-.

• The operating cable must be aligned with the opening on the operating lever.

– Disengage operating cable from operating lever.

– A4: Take door lock out of door.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

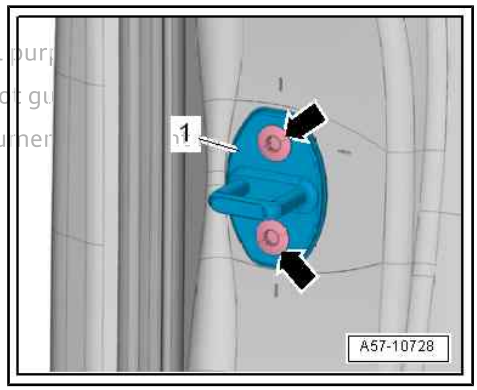
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 205

2.14 Removing and installing striker

Removing

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach striker -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
with respect to the correctness of information in this docume

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Adjust striker ⇒ page 191 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 205

2.15 Removing and installing operating cable for interior door handle

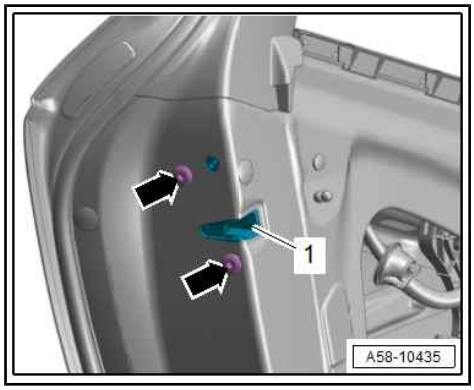
Removing

– A4: Remove guide rail for door window ⇒ page 224 .

– A5: Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 222 .

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– A5: Unplug electrical connector.



NOTICE

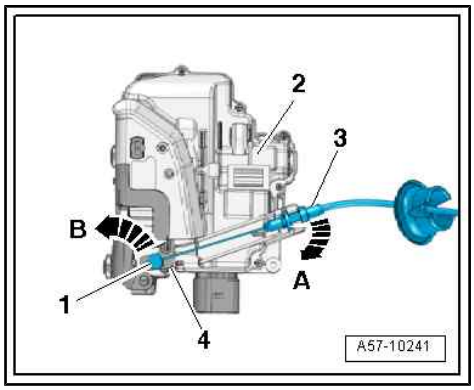
Risk of damage to operating cable if it is bent.

– Operating cable must never be bent or kinked excessively.

– Press door lock -1- downwards.

– Disengage Bowden cable -3- from door lock support bracket -2- -arrow A-.

– Turn nipple -1- 90° in direction of -arrow B- and take it out of door opener release lever -4-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

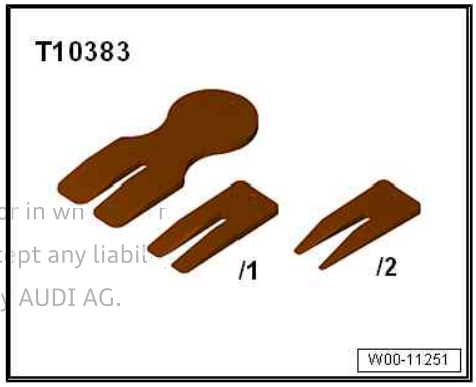
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - door handle and door lock”, page 205

2.16 Removing and installing inner door cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

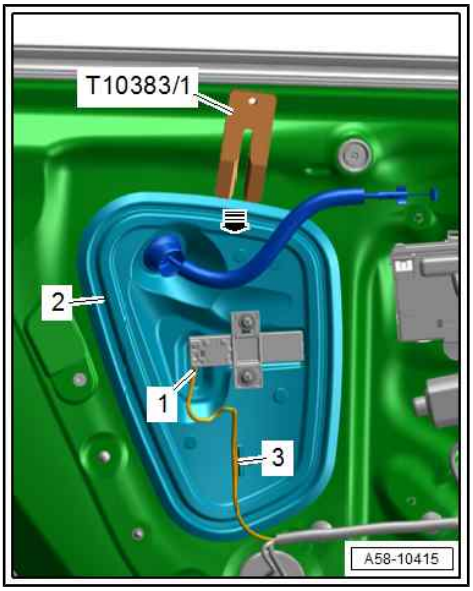
♦ Wedges - T10383-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove door trim (rear) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (rear); Removing and installing door trim (rear) .
– If fitted, unplug electrical connector -1- and move wiring harness -3- clear.
– Prise inner door cover -2- off inner door panel with wedge - T10383/1- -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– If seal -arrow- is sprayed on, check for damage.
– Press on inner door cover until it engages audibly.
• Inner door cover must be flush.



2.17 Removing and installing window guide

Removing

– Remove window frame trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (rear); Removing and installing window frame trim .

– Remove trim panel for B-pillar ⇒ page 618 .

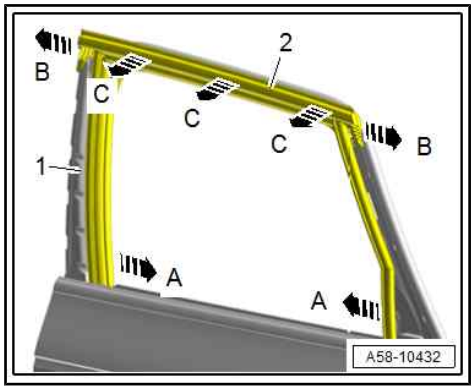
– Remove trim panel for C-pillar ⇒ page 620 .

– Remove rear door window ⇒ page 540 .

– Pull window guide -2- out of guide rails -arrows A-.

– Detach corners of window guide -arrows B-.

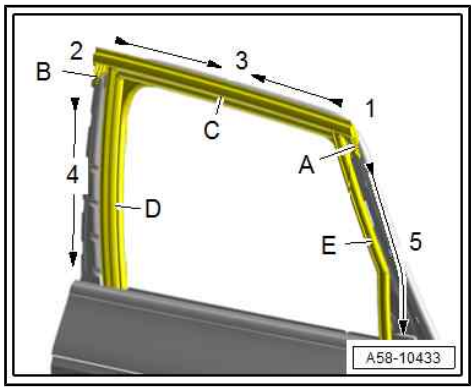
– Starting at front, pull window guide outwards off door flange -1- and out of guide -arrows C-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Fit sections of window guide on door flange in the sequence -1 ... 5-.



Step

1. – Position corner -A- of window guide at top of door flange at C-pillar and align with trim panel for C-pillar; to do so, fit trim panel for C-pillar without bolts ⇒ page 620 .
2. – Position corner -B- of window guide at top of door flange at B-pillar and align with trim panel for B-pillar; to do so, fit trim panel for B-pillar without bolts ⇒ page 618 .
3. – Press window guide -C- on at top (from outside to inside).
4. – Align window guide -D- with guide rail at B-pillar and insert in guide rail.
5. – Align window guide -E- with guide rail at C-pillar and insert in guide rail.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.18 Removing and installing guide rail for door window

Removing

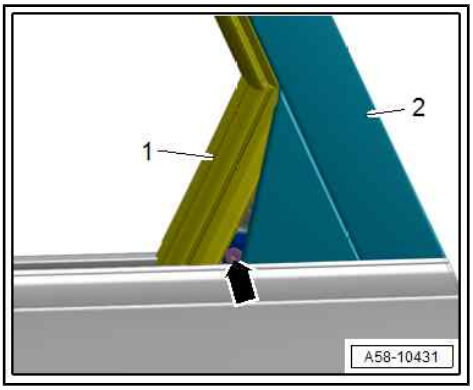
– Move door window to “open” position.

– Remove window frame trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (rear); Removing and installing window frame trim .

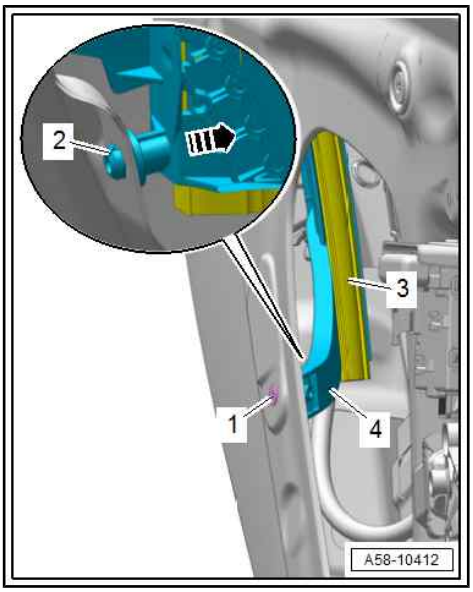
– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 222 .

– Remove window regulator motor ⇒ page 215 .

– Detach window guide -1- slightly from C-pillar trim -2-.
– Remove bolt -arrow- for guide rail and press window guide into guide on C-pillar trim.
– Move door window to “closed” position.



– Pull window guide -3- off guide rail -4-.
– Remove bolt -1-.
– Detach guide rail towards front -arrow-; this will release fastener -2-.
– Take out guide rail.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.3.1 Exploded view - window guides and window slot trim strips, A4”, page 208

2.19 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip

⇒ “2.19.1 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip - A4”, page 225

⇒ “2.19.2 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip - A5 Sportback”, page 226

⇒ “2.19.3 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip - A5 Cabriolet”, page 227

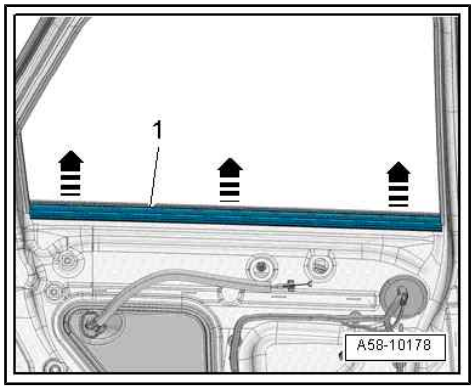
2.19.1 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip - A4

Removing

– Remove window frame trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (rear); Removing and installing window frame trim .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

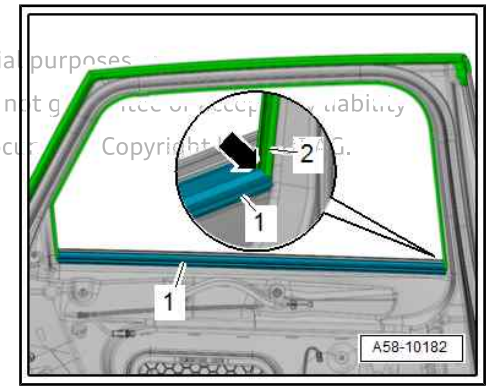
– Lift off window slot trim strip -1- -arrows-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Position window slot trim strip -1- so it is flush with window guide -2- at both ends -arrow- and press onto door seam, working towards centre.



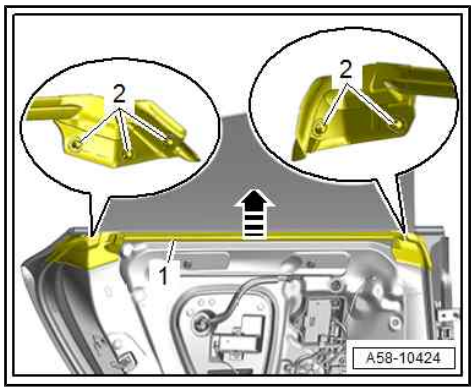
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not give any guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.19.2 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip - A5 Sportback

Removing

– Detach retaining lugs -2- on sealing elements of inner window slot trim strip from inner door panel.

– Lift off inner window slot trim strip -1- -arrow-.

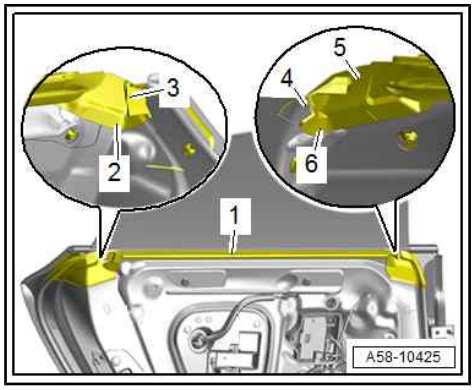


Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Fit sealing pieces -3 and 5- on door -4-; to do so, engage guides -2 and 6- in mounting on door shell and press retaining lugs on completely.

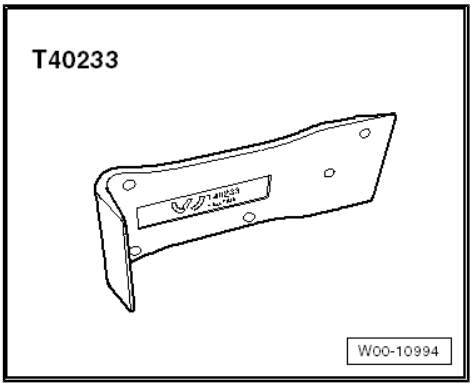
– Press on window slot trim strip -1-.



2.19.3 Removing and installing inner window slot trim strip - A5 Cabriolet

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge - T40233-



Removing

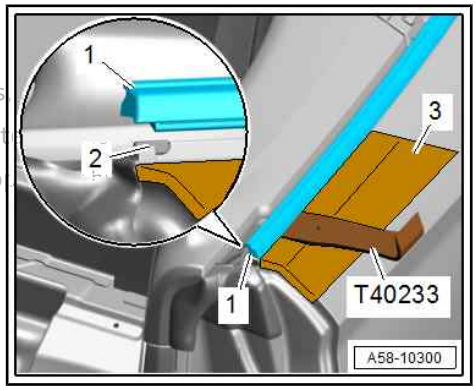
– Move rear side window to “open” position.

– Remove side trim (rear) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing side trim .

– Mask body -3- in area of B-pillar/window slot trim strip.

– Using removal wedge - T40233- , press outer window slot trim strip -1- slightly off body seam -2- in vicinity of B-pillar.

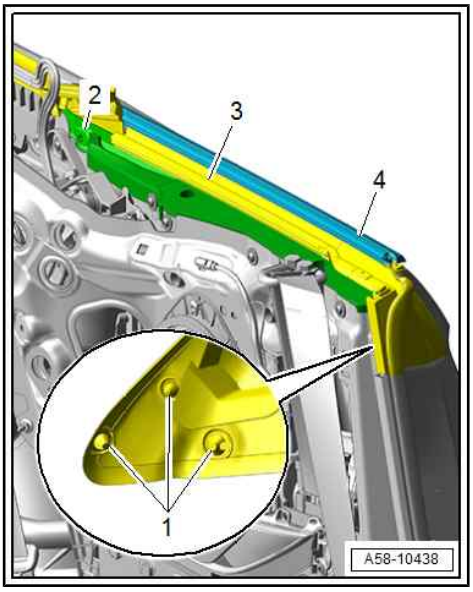
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co



– Pull inner window slot trim strip -3- off mounting -2- for side window.

– Disengage retaining lugs -1- on inner window slot trim strip from outside of B-pillar and detach outer window slot trim strip -4- from body seam.

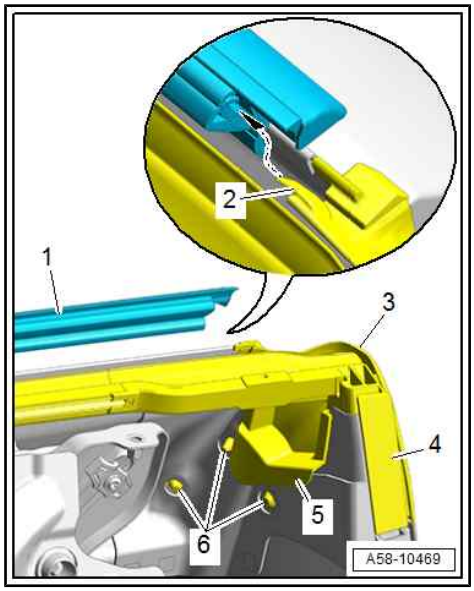
– Detach inner window slot trim strip.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Position inner window slot trim strip -3- on B-pillar so that sealing lug -5- engages in B-pillar and sealing lug -4- makes contact with body seam.
– Position inner window slot trim strip flush against door seal.
– Fasten retaining lugs -6- of inner window slot trim strip to outside of B-pillar.
– Insert end -2- of inner window slot trim strip into mounting of outer window slot trim strip -1-.



2.20 Removing and installing outer window slot trim strip

⇒ “2.20.1 Removing and installing outer window slot trim strip - A4, A5 Sportback”, page 228

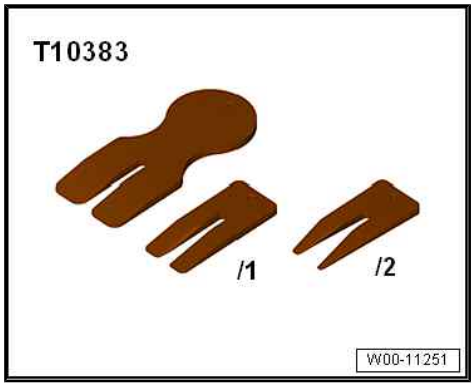
⇒ “2.20.2 Removing and installing outer window slot trim strip - A5 Cabriolet”, page 229

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.20.1 Removing and installing outer window slot trim strip - A4, A5 Sportback

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-

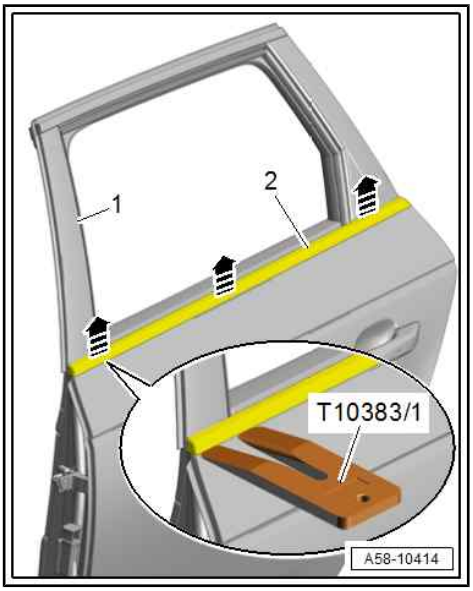


Removing

– Move door window to “open” position.

– Using wedge - T10383/1- , carefully press window slot trim strip -2- upwards off door flange at trim panel for B-pillar -1- -arrows-.

– Detach window slot trim strip.



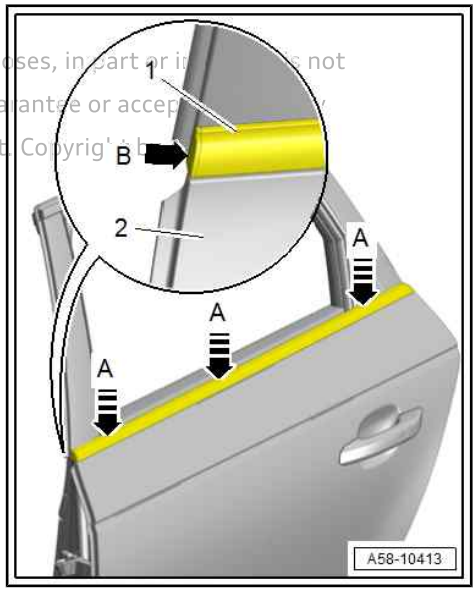
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note:

For installing, you can coat the bottom edge of the window slot trim strip with tyre assembly paste.

– Align window slot trim strip -1- with door shell -2- so it is flush -arrow B- and attach fully to door flange (working towards A-pillar) -arrows A-.

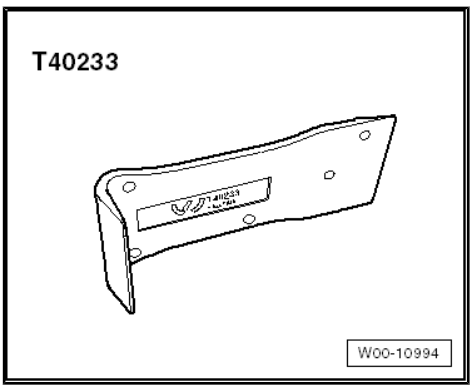


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.20.2 Removing and installing outer window slot trim strip - A5 Cabriolet

Special tools and workshop equipment required

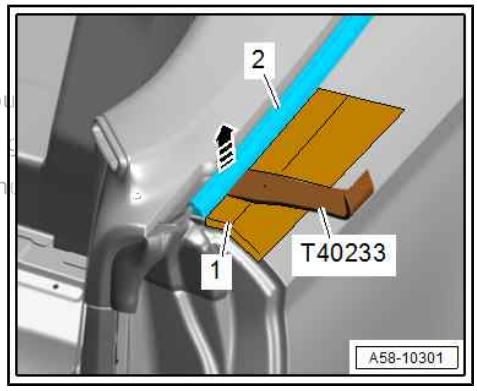
♦ Removal wedge - T40233-



Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 330 .

– Move rear side window to “open” position.
– Mask body -1- in area of window slot trim strip.
– Using removal wedge - T40233- , press outer window slot trim strip -2- off body seam, starting in area of B-pillar.
– Detach window slot trim strip.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not
with respect to the correctness of information in this docum

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Note:

For installing, you can coat the bottom edge of the window slot trim strip with tyre assembly paste.

– Position window slot trim strip on body seam at B-pillar and press on evenly by hand.

60 – Sunroof

1 Repair notes

⇒ “1.1 Minimum drying times for bonded sunroofs”, page 231

⇒ “1.2 Tools and materials required for installation and removal”, page 231

⇒ “1.3 Preparing new glass trim for installation”, page 233

⇒ “1.4 Preparing a new sunroof frame for installation”, page 235

⇒ “1.5 Preparing body flange for installation”, page 236

⇒ “1.6 Cleaning off adhesive sealant”, page 237

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1 Minimum drying times for bonded sunroofs

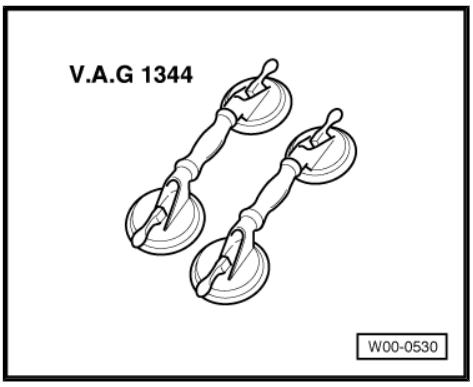
- For safety reasons, use only non-conductive 2-component adhesive with the designations listed below when installing the sunroof.
- You must NOT drive the vehicle until the minimum drying time has elapsed, as the vehicle is otherwise not safe to drive.
- During the minimum drying time the vehicle must be left standing on a level surface at room temperature (at least 15 °C).

Component	Adhesive	Minimum drying time (in hours)
Sunroof frame, glass trim	2-component window adhesive set - D 004 660 M2-	2

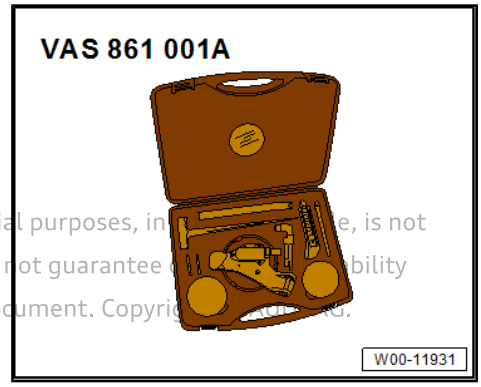
1.2 Tools and materials required for installation and removal

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Suction lifter - V.A.G 1344-

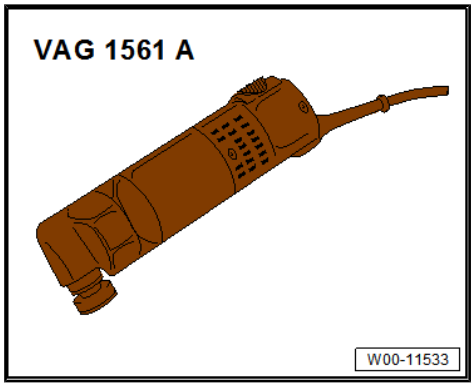


- Window removal set - VAS 861 001A-

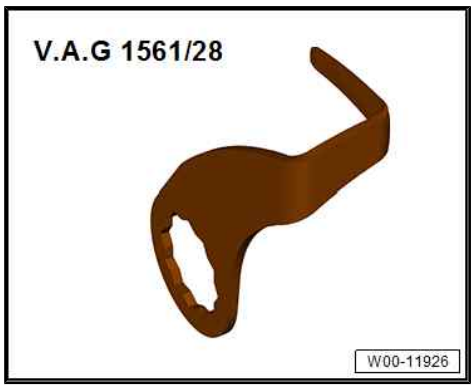


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in [illegible]e, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee [illegible]bility with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyri[illegible]G.

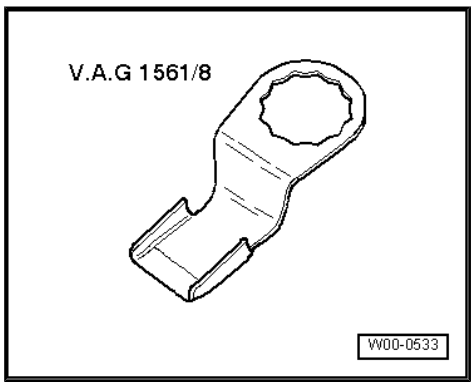
- Cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A-
- Electric cutter - V.A.G 1561A-



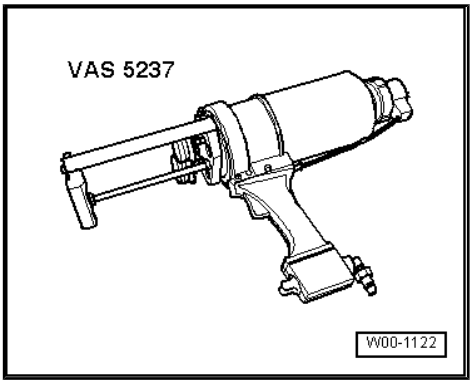
- Blade (19 mm) - V.A.G 1561/28-



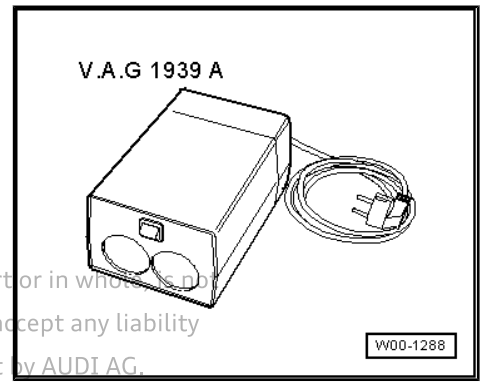
- Blade (25 mm) - V.A.G 1561/29-
- Blade (38 mm) - V.A.G 1561/30-
- Scraper (15 + 25 mm) - V.A.G 1561/7+8-



- Double cartridge gun - VAS 5237-

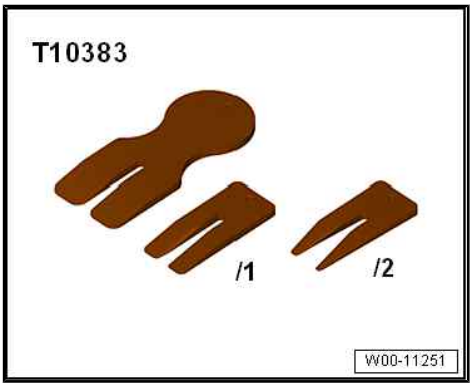


- Cartridge heater - V.A.G 1939A-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Wedges - T10383-



Materials

- 2-component window adhesive set - D 004 660 M2- [1)]
- Primer - D 009 200 02-
- Applicator - D 009 500 25-
- Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-
- Adhesive remover - D 002 000 A2-
- Fabric-reinforced adhesive tape

1) Note minimum drying time ⇒ page 231 .

2) To process this material use double cartridge gun - VAS 5237- .

1.3 Preparing new glass trim for installation

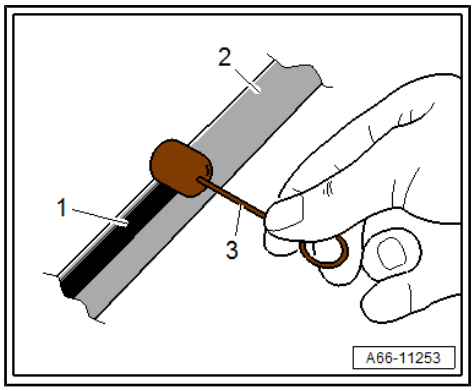
Procedure

– Clean bonding surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

• The vehicle and the glass trim must be at room temperature.

- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.
- The glass must always be primed before applying adhesive.
- The glass trim must be fitted within 15 minutes after applying the adhesive.

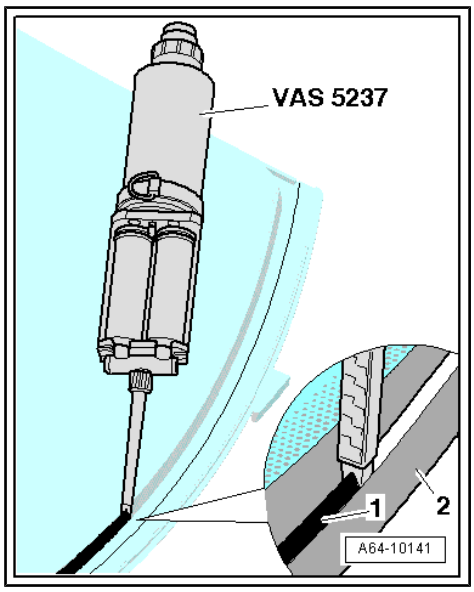
Applying primer:



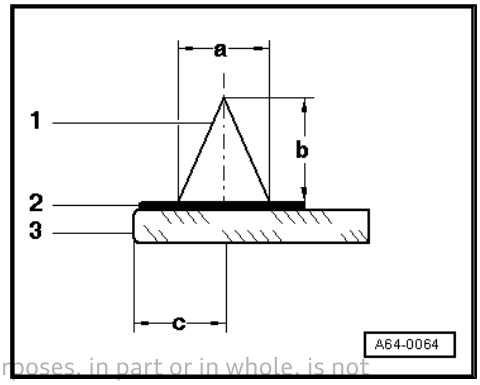
– Apply primer - D 009 200 02- -1- evenly and in one movement onto glass trim -2- using applicator -3- and allow to flash off for 10 minutes.

- Note different distances from edge of glass trim ⇒ page 234 .
- Start application with fully soaked felt.
- Primer width: 20 mm
- Apply primer centrally in relation to adhesive bead.
- Flash-off time: 10 minutes

Applying adhesive:



– Apply adhesive -1- all around glass trim -2-, as shown.



Dimensions for applying adhesive:

1 - Adhesive bead

2 - Primer

3 - Glass trim

- Dimension -a- = 8 mm
- Dimension -b- = 13.5 mm
- Dimension -c-: note different distances from glass trim ⇒ page 247

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note:

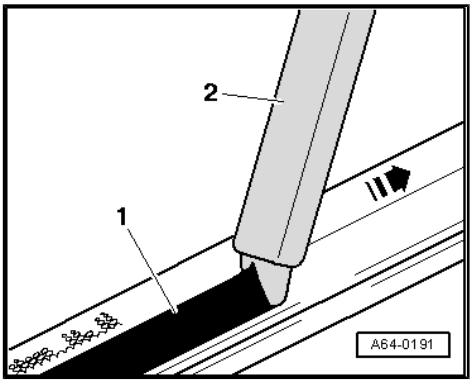
The cross-section of the adhesive bead is determined by the size of the applicator nozzle opening and the rate of application.

– Apply full surface of nozzle -2- to glass trim.

• Direction of application -arrow- for adhesive bead -1-.

– Fit glass trim in roof opening.

• The glass trim must be fitted within 15 minutes; otherwise the adhesive properties of the adhesive will be impaired.



1.4 Preparing a new sunroof frame for installation

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

Procedure

– Turn adjuster elements on sunroof frame anti-clockwise -arrows- as far as they will go.

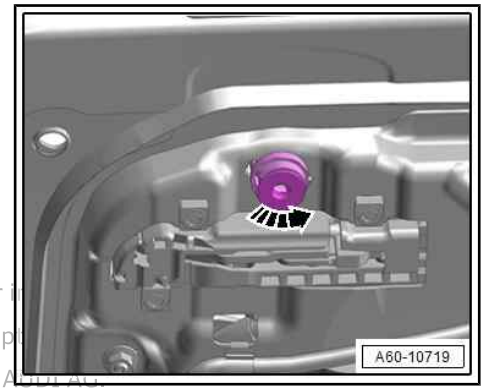
– Clean bonding surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

• The vehicle and the sunroof frame must be at room temperature.

• The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

• The glass must always be primed before applying adhesive.

• The sunroof frame must be fitted within 15 minutes after applying the adhesive.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accep
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

Applying primer:

– Use applicator -3- to apply primer - D 009 200 02- -1- evenly and in one movement onto sunroof frame -2- and allow to flash off for 10 minutes.

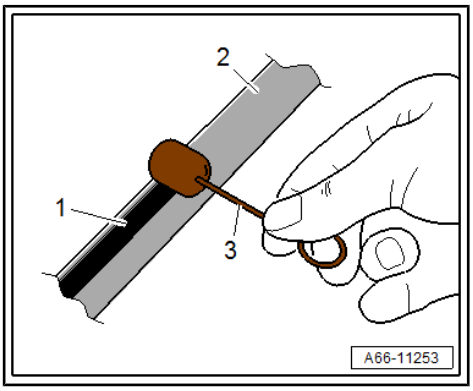
• Note different distances from edge of sunroof frame ⇒ page 236 .

• Start application with fully soaked felt.

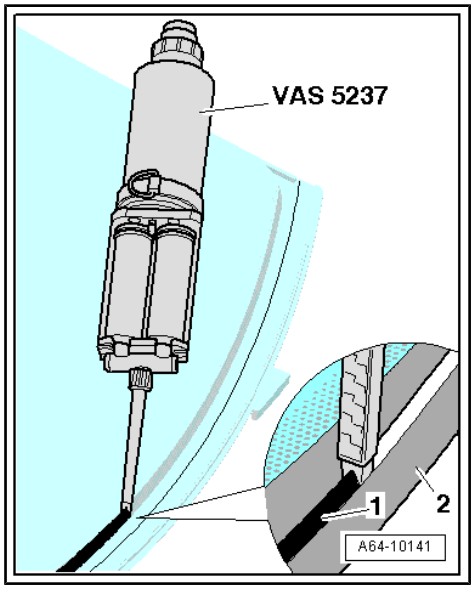
• Primer width: 20 mm

• Apply primer centrally in relation to adhesive bead.

• Flash-off time: 10 minutes



Applying adhesive:



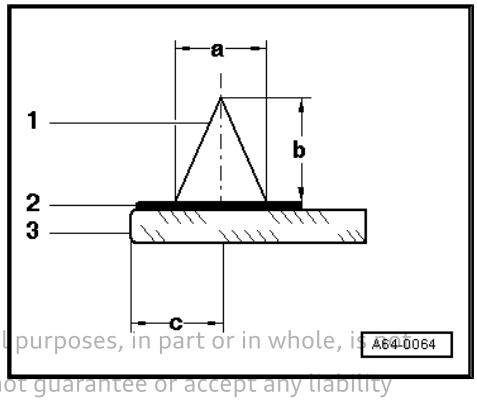
– Apply adhesive -1- all around sunroof frame -2-, as shown.

Dimensions for applying adhesive:

1 - Adhesive bead

2 - Primer

3 - Sunroof frame



- Dimension -a- = 8 mm
- Dimension -b- = 13.5 mm
- Dimension -c- note different distances from edge of sunroof frame ⇒ page 247

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note:

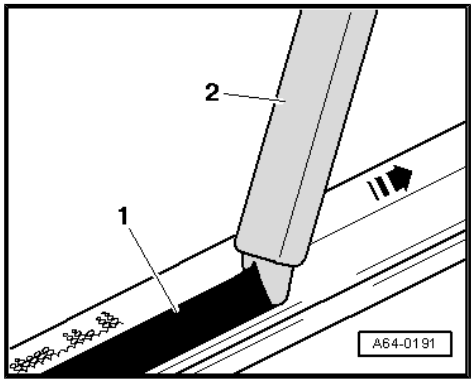
The cross-section of the adhesive bead is determined by the size of the applicator nozzle opening and the rate of application.

– Apply full surface of nozzle -2- to sunroof frame.

- Direction of application -arrow- for adhesive bead -1-.

– Fit sunroof frame in roof opening.

- The sunroof frame must be fitted within 15 minutes; otherwise the adhesive properties of the adhesive will be impaired.



1.5 Preparing body flange for installation

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Electric cutter - V.A.G 1561 A-
- ♦ Scraper (25 mm) - V.A.G 1561/8-
- ♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

- The vehicle must be at room temperature.
- The adhesive bead must be free of dirt and grease.

- Just before installation, cut back adhesive bead for an even surface but do NOT remove it completely.
- Do not apply primer to adhesive bead and do not use cleaning solution.

– Shortly before installing, use scraper (25 mm) - V.A.G 1561/8- to cut back remaining adhesive on flange for an even surface, but do NOT remove completely.

Note:

The remaining sealant is required as a base for better adhesion of the new adhesive.

- If the window is not bonded on immediately after the adhesive on the flange is cut back, the remaining material must be activated using activator for pre-coated windows - D 181 802 M1- . Flash-off time: 10 minutes
- If body flange has been damaged, repaired or renewed, paintwork structure must be repaired and, if necessary, anti-corrosion measures must be taken ⇒ Audi Paintwork Guide . Clean treated area with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- , let it dry, and then apply primer - D 009 200 02- . Flash-off time: 10 minutes

1.6 Cleaning off adhesive sealant

We recommend using adhesive remover - D 002 000 10- for cleaning. Observe safety precautions when handling.

- When cleaning from inside the vehicle passenger compartment, make sure you do not exert outward pressure on the sunroof frame you have just fitted.

Cleaning painted surfaces

– First clean painted surface with a dry cloth. Then clean off remaining adhesive sealant with adhesive remover - D 002 000 10- .

Cleaning plastic trim panels

– Allow adhesive to dry (approx. 1 hour) and then pull off.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Sliding sunroof

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - sliding sunroof”, page 238

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - adhesive beads on sliding sunroof”, page 247

⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - sunroof sun blind”, page 251

⇒ “2.4 Exploded view - wind deflector”, page 255

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing sunroof frame”, page 258

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing drain pipe”, page 272

⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing glass trim”, page 273

⇒ “2.8 Removing and installing glass panel”, page 275

⇒ “2.9 Adjusting glass panel”, page 277

⇒ “2.10 Removing and installing sliding sunroof adjustment control unit J245 ”, page 282

⇒ “2.11 Adapting sliding sunroof adjustment control unit J245 ”, page 284

⇒ “2.12 Removing and installing sliding sunroof motor V1 ”, page 284

⇒ “2.13 Adapting sliding sunroof motor V1 ”, page 285

⇒ “2.14 Removing and installing bellows”, page 286

⇒ “2.15 Removing and installing rubber strip”, page 286

⇒ “2.16 Removing and installing side trim”, page 287

⇒ “2.17 Removing and installing slide/tilt mechanism”, page 287

⇒ “2.18 Removing and installing sunroof seals”, page 289

⇒ “2.19 Removing and installing sunroof sun blind”, page 293

⇒ “2.20 Removing and installing sunroof roller blind motor V260 ”, page 301

⇒ “2.21 Adapting sunroof roller blind motor V260 ”, page 303

⇒ “2.22 Removing and installing sun blind”, page 303

⇒ “2.23 Removing and installing slide”, page 304

⇒ “2.24 Removing and installing wind deflector”, page 305

⇒ “2.25 Removing and installing mounting for wind deflector”, page 308

⇒ “2.26 Removing and installing spring for wind deflector”, page 310

⇒ “2.27 Opening manually”, page 310

2.1 Exploded view - sliding sunroof

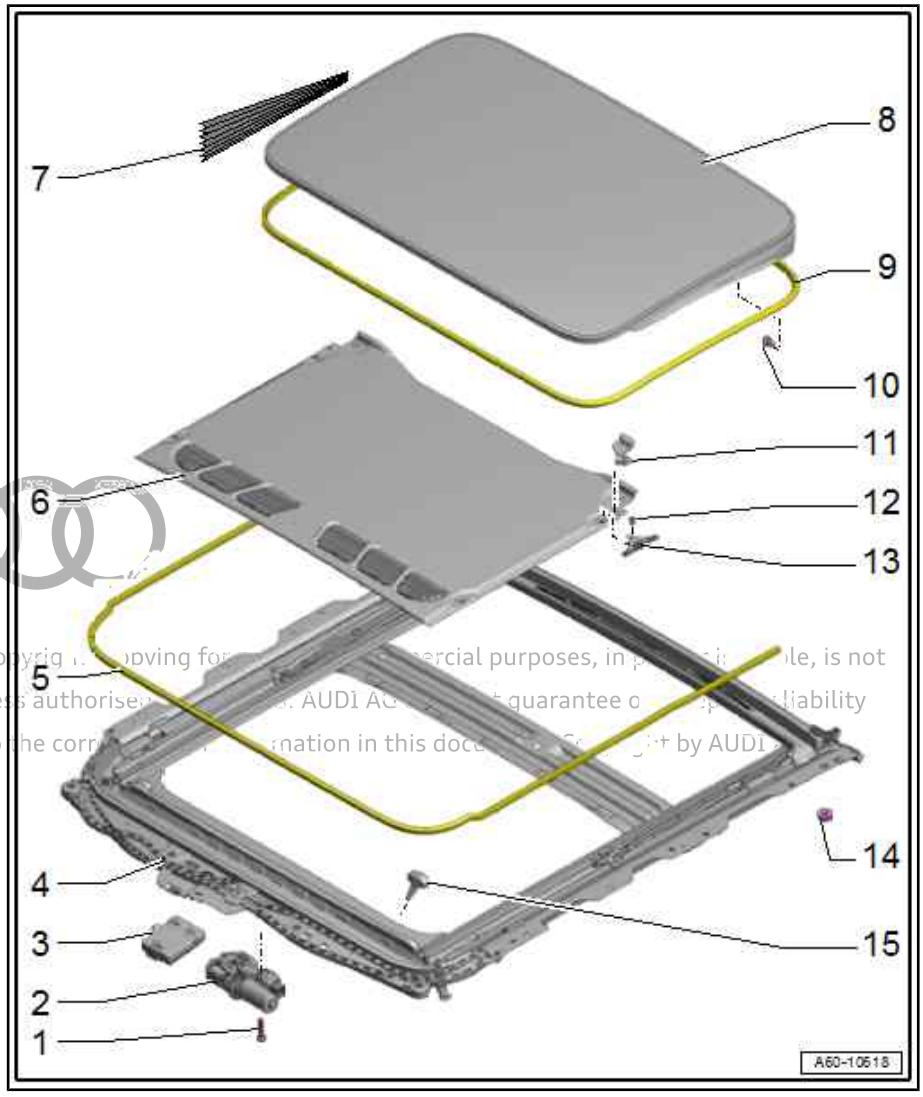
⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A4 Saloon”, page 238

⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A4 Avant”, page 240

⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A4, country-specific version”, page 242

⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A5”, page 243

2.1.1 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A4 Saloon



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

2 - Sliding sunroof motor - V1-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 284
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

3 - Sliding sunroof adjustment control unit - J245-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 282

4 - Sunroof frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 258
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

5 - Foam seal

- ❑ Bonded onto sunroof frame
- ❑ Renew after removing

6 - Sun blind

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 303
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

7 - Bellows

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 286

8 - Glass panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 275
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 277
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285
- ❑ Opening manually ⇒ page 310

9 - Sunroof seal

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 289
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

10 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 3 Nm

11 - Rubber buffer

- ❑ Attached to sun blind

12 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

13 - Slide

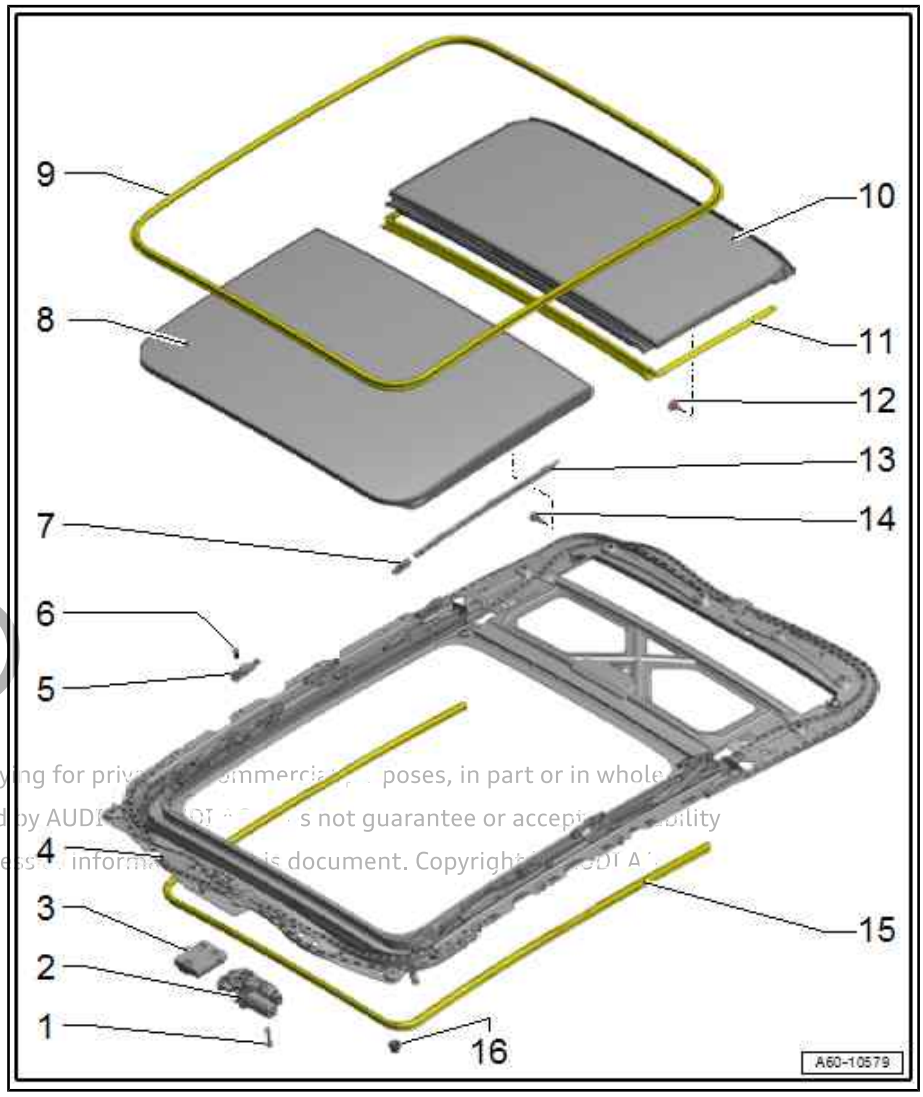
- ❑ For sun blind
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 303
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

14 - Nut

- ❑ 12x
- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 259
- ❑ 8 Nm

15 - Rubber buffer

2.1.2 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A4 Avant



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

2 - Sliding sunroof motor - V1-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 284
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

3 - Sliding sunroof adjustment control unit - J245-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 282

4 - Sunroof frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 259
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

5 - Guide

- ❑ For glass panel (front)
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in by hand
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1 Nm

7 - Slide

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 304
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

8 - Glass panel

- ❑ Front
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 276
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 277
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285
- ❑ Opening manually ⇒ page 310

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 - Seal for roof opening

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 290
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

10 - Glass panel

- ❑ Rear
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 276
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 277
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

11 - Seal

- ❑ For glass panel (rear)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 291
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

12 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 7 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

13 - Rubber strip

- ❑ On glass panel (front)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 286

14 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ 8x
- ❑ 7 Nm

15 - Seal

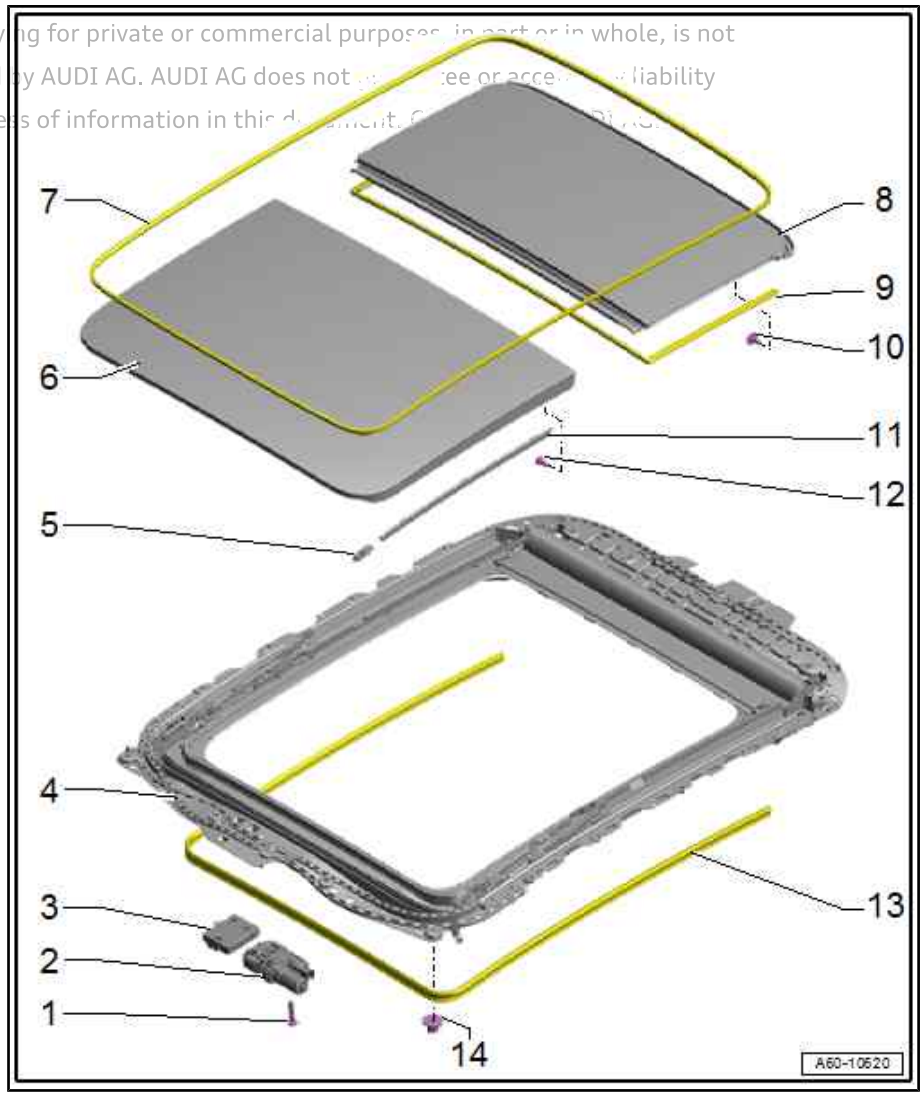
- ❑ Inside
- ❑ Pressed onto sunroof frame from inside

16 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 260
- ❑ 18x
- ❑ 8 Nm

2.1.3 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A4, country-specific version

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

2 - Sliding sunroof motor - V1-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 284
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

3 - Sliding sunroof adjustment control unit - J245-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 282

4 - Sunroof frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 260
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

5 - Slide
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 304
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

6 - Glass panel
- ❑ Front
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 276
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 279
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285
- ❑ Opening manually ⇒ page 310

7 - Seal for roof opening
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 290
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

8 - Glass panel
- ❑ Rear
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 276
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 279
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

9 - Seal
- ❑ For glass panel (rear)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 291
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

10 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ 4x

- ❑ 7 Nm

11 - Rubber strip

- ❑ On glass panel (front)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 286

12 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ 8x
- ❑ 7 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

13 - Seal

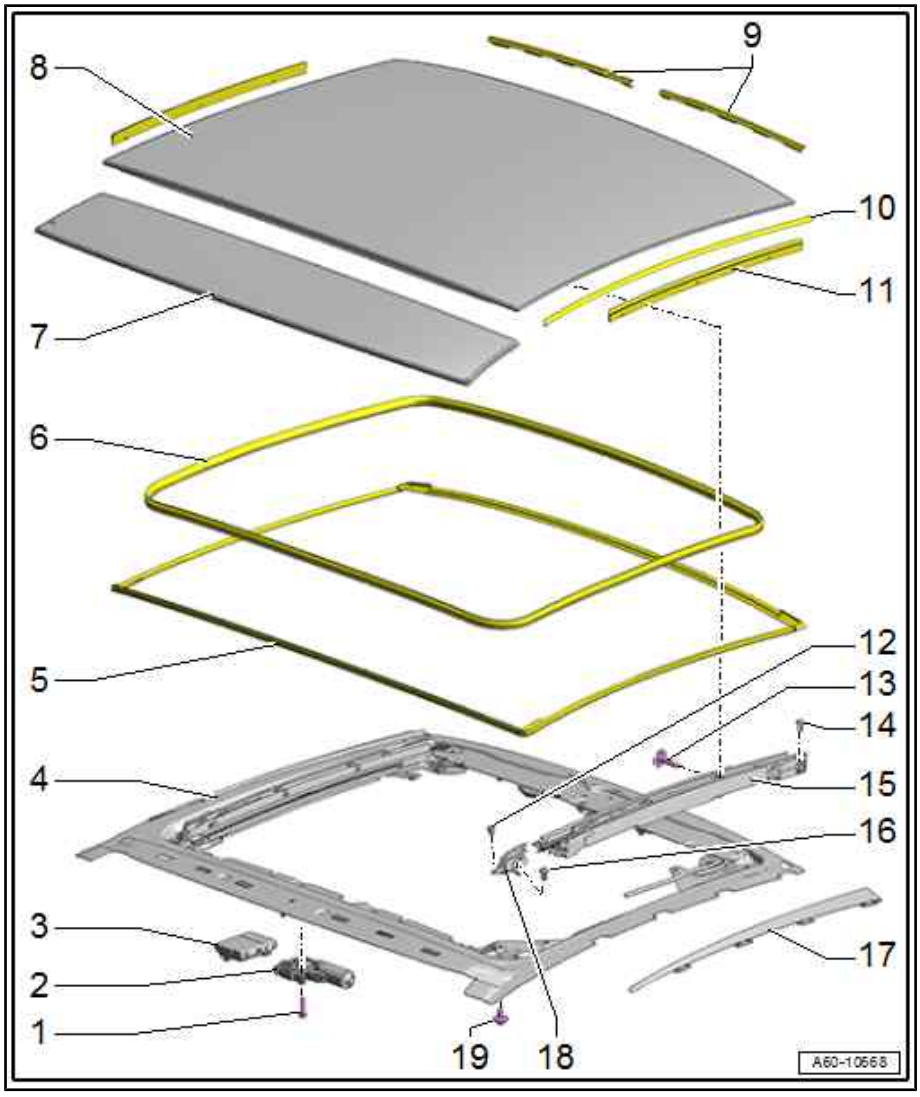
- ❑ Inside
- ❑ Pressed onto sunroof frame from inside

14 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 261
- ❑ 18x
- ❑ 8 Nm

2.1.4 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A5

- ♦ Exploded view - adhesive beads on sliding sunroof ⇒ page 247
- ♦ Exploded view - slide/tilt mechanism ⇒ page 245



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 4 Nm

2 - Sliding sunroof motor - V1-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 285
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

3 - Sliding sunroof adjustment control unit - J245-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 283

4 - Sunroof frame

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing drain pipe ⇒ page 272
- ❑ Removing and instal-ling:

- ♦ Coupé ⇒ page 261
- ♦ Sportback ⇒ page 266

- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

5 - Seal

- ❑ Outside
- ❑ Bonded onto sunroof frame
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 292
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

6 - Seal

- ❑ Inside
- ❑ Bonded onto sunroof frame
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 293
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

7 - Glass trim

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 273
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

8 - Glass panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 277
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 280
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285
- ❑ Opening manually ⇒ page 310

9 - Seal

- ❑ For glass panel (rear)
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 293

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

10 - Seal

- ❑ For glass panel (side)
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 293

11 - Rubber strip

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 286

12 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm

13 - Bolt

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 5.5 Nm

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

15 - Slide/tilt mechanism

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 287
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

16 - Bolt

- ❑ 4.5 Nm

17 - Side trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 287

18 - Guide

- ❑ For slide/tilt mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 289

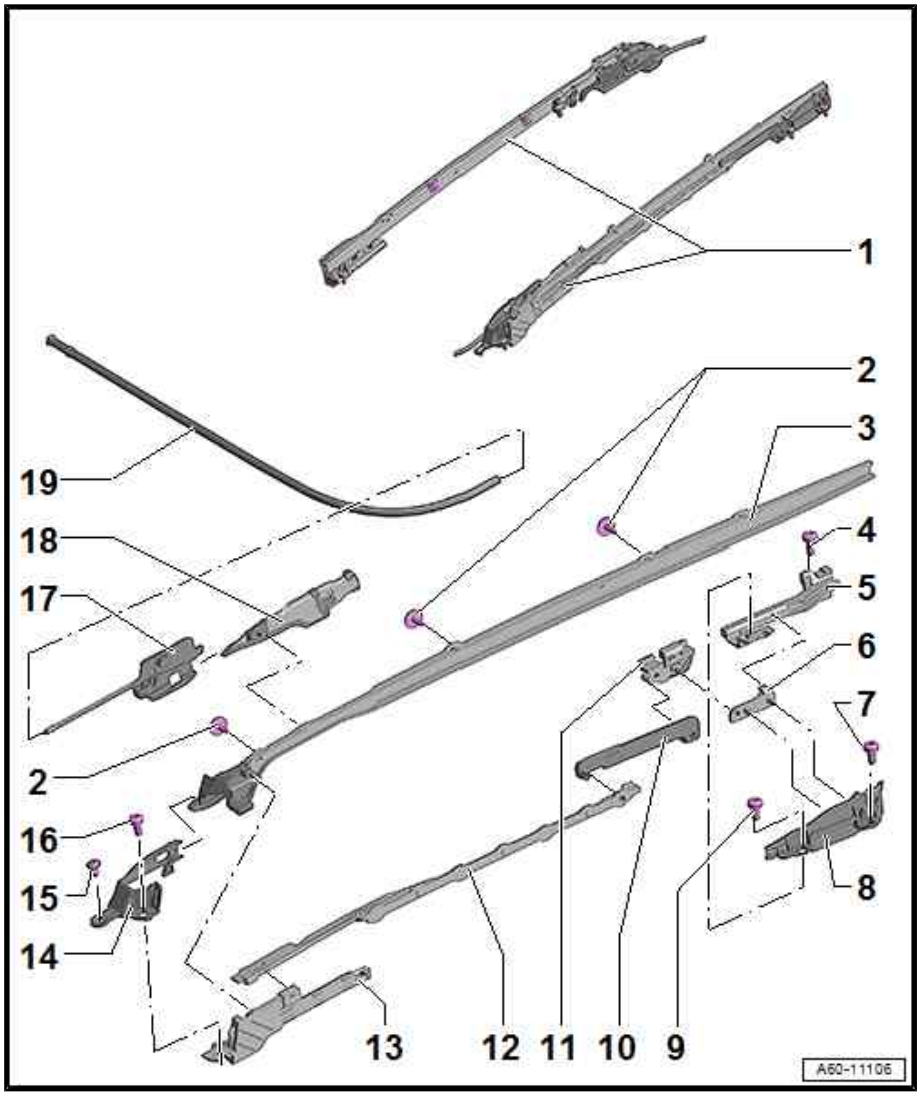
19 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 8 Nm
- ❑ Tightening sequence:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ♦ Coupé ⇒ page 266
- ♦ Sportback ⇒ page 272

Exploded view - slide/tilt mechanism



1 - Slide/tilt mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 287

2 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 13 (page 245)

3 - Roof guide

4 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 14 (page 245)

5 - Lifting guide
- ❑ Rear, inside

6 - Lever

7 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 14 (page 245)

8 - Lifting guide
- ❑ Rear, outside

9 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 14 (page 245)

10 - Connecting rod

11 - Slide

12 - Operating rod

13 - Lifting guide
- ❑ Front, outside

14 - Lifting guide
- ❑ Front, inside

15 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 12 (page 245)

16 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 16 (page 245)

17 - Plate

18 - Lever

19 - Cable

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2 Exploded view - adhesive beads on sliding sunroof

⇒ "2.2.1 Exploded view - adhesive beads on sliding sunroof, A5 Coupé", page 247

⇒ "2.2.2 Exploded view - adhesive beads on sliding sunroof, A5 Sportback", page 248

2.2.1 Exploded view - adhesive beads on sliding sunroof, A5 Coupé

The following dimensions refer to distances between distinctive points. Mechanics must also pay attention to the routing of the original adhesive bead on the removed component.

Distribution by any kind of means for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Exploded view - adhesive beads on sunroof frame and glass trim, A5 Coupé ⇒ page 247
- Exploded view - adhesive beads on glass trim, A5 Coupé ⇒ page 247

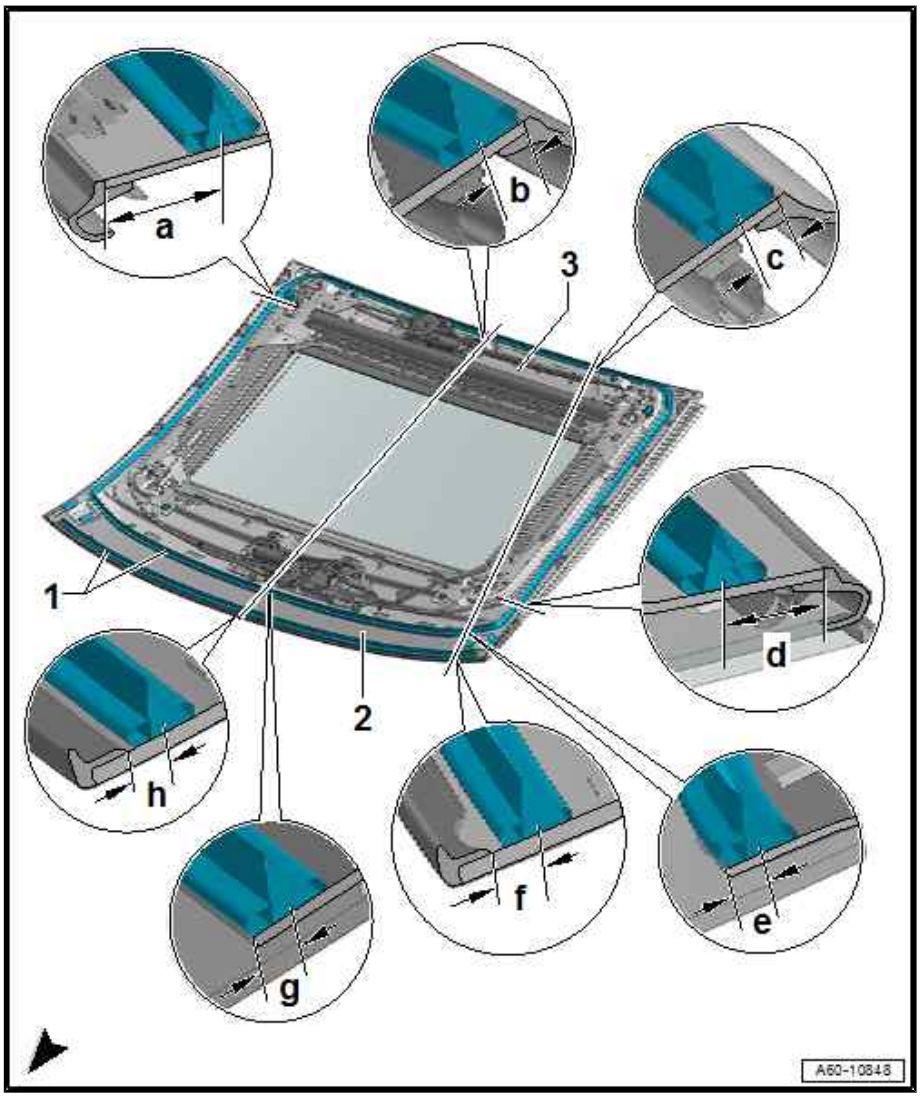
Exploded view - adhesive beads on sunroof frame and glass trim, A5 Coupé

1 - Adhesive bead

- Dimension -a- = 25.6 mm
- Dimension -b- = 8.4 mm
- Dimension -c- = 8.4 mm
- Dimension -d- = 18.9 mm
- Dimension -e- = 8 mm
- Dimension -f- = 9.8 mm
- Dimension -g- = 8.2 mm
- Dimension -h- = 9.4 mm

2 - Glass trim

3 - Sunroof frame



Exploded view - adhesive beads on glass trim, A5 Coupé

1 - Opening

- Dimension -A- = 115.9 mm
- Dimension -B- = 10.8 mm

2 - Opening

- Dimension -C- = 90.1 mm
- Dimension -D- = 49.5 mm
- Dimension -E- = 10.8 mm

3 - Opening

- Dimension -F- = 104.8 mm
- Dimension -G- = 38.2 mm
- Dimension -H- = 10.8 mm

4 - Opening

- Dimension -I- = 117.5 mm

5 - Opening

- Dimension -J- = 40.3 mm
- Dimension -K- = 58.4 mm

6 - Opening

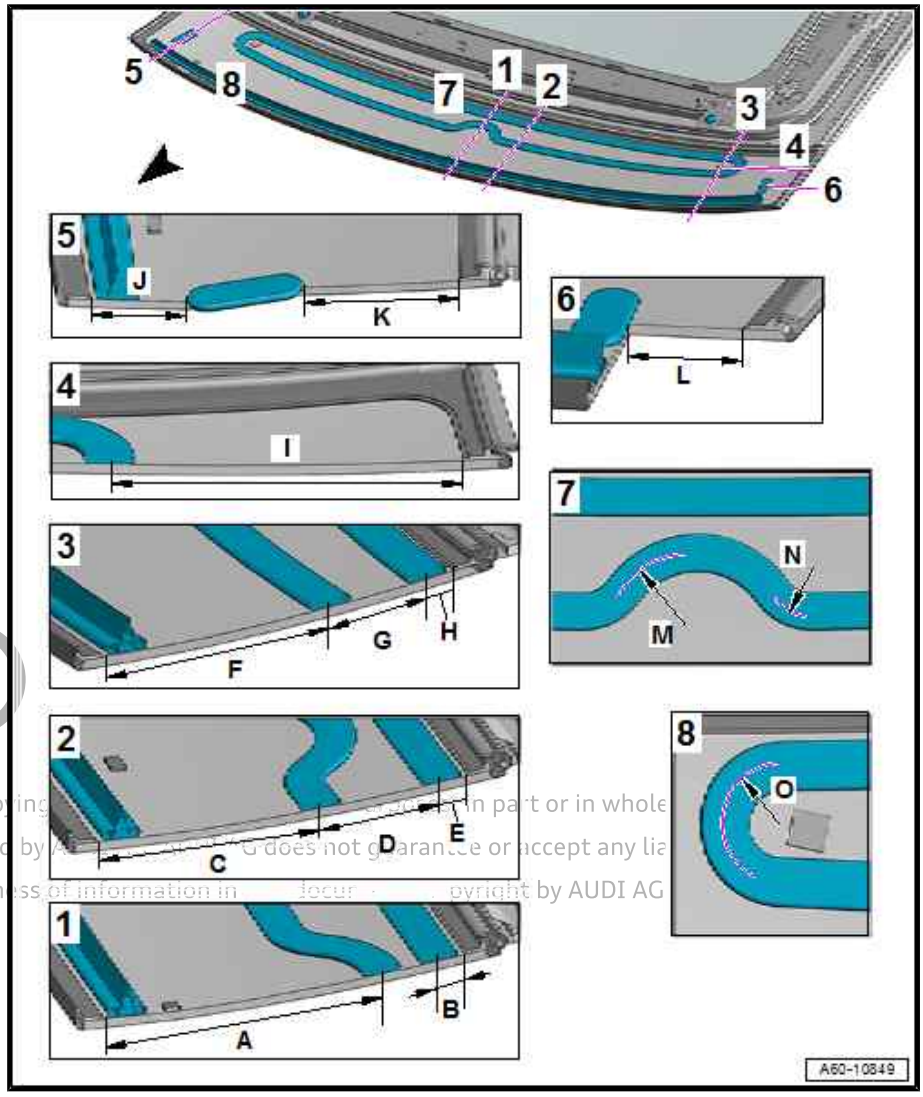
- Dimension -L- = 43.8 mm

7 - Opening

- Dimension -M- = 37 mm
- Dimension -N- = 20 mm

8 - Opening

- Dimension -O- = 57.8 mm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

Note:

For dimensions of adhesive bead at front of glass trim, refer to ⇒ page 247 .

2.2.2 Exploded view - adhesive beads on sliding sunroof, A5 Sportback

The following dimensions refer to distances between distinctive points. Mechanics must also pay attention to the routing of the original adhesive bead on the removed component.

- Exploded view - adhesive beads on sunroof frame and glass trim, A5 Sportback ⇒ page 248
- Exploded view - adhesive beads on glass trim, A5 Sportback ⇒ page 249

Exploded view - adhesive beads on sunroof frame and glass trim, A5 Sportback

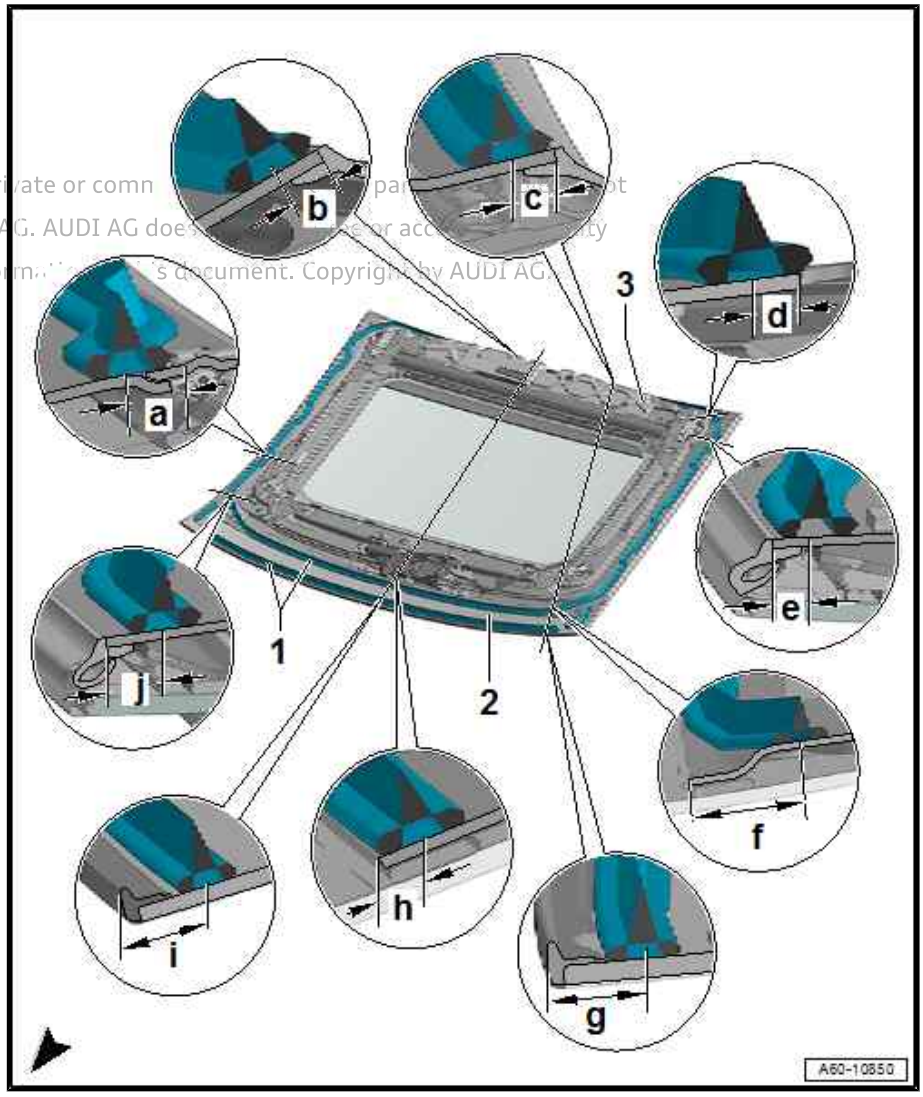
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm... part... not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG doe... or acc... with respect to the correctness of inform... ...s document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Adhesive bead

- Dimension -a- = 9.9 mm
- Dimension -b- = 7.9 mm
- Dimension -c- = 7.9 mm
- Dimension -d- = 6 mm
- Dimension -e- = 8 mm
- Dimension -f- = 29.4 mm
- Dimension -g- = 20.3 mm
- Dimension -h- = 7.8 mm
- Dimension -i- = 21.9 mm
- Dimension -j- = 13.1 mm

2 - Glass trim

3 - Sunroof frame



Exploded view - adhesive beads on glass trim, A5 Sportback

1 - Opening

- Dimension -A- = 124.4 mm
- Dimension -B- = 9.7 mm

2 - Opening

- Dimension -C- = 87.9 mm
- Dimension -D- = 53.8 mm
- Dimension -E- = 9.7 mm

3 - Opening

- Dimension -F- = 102.5 mm
- Dimension -G- = 42.9 mm
- Dimension -H- = 9.7 mm

4 - Opening

- Dimension -I- = 31 mm
- Dimension -J- = 14 mm
- Dimension -K- = 65.5 mm

5 - Opening

- Dimension -L- = 42.5 mm
- Dimension -M- = 21.7 mm

6 - Opening

- Dimension -N- = 22.9 mm
- Dimension -O- = 64.8 mm
- Dimension -P- = 46 mm

7 - Opening

- Dimension -Q- = 88.2 mm
- Dimension -R- = 47.9 mm

8 - Opening

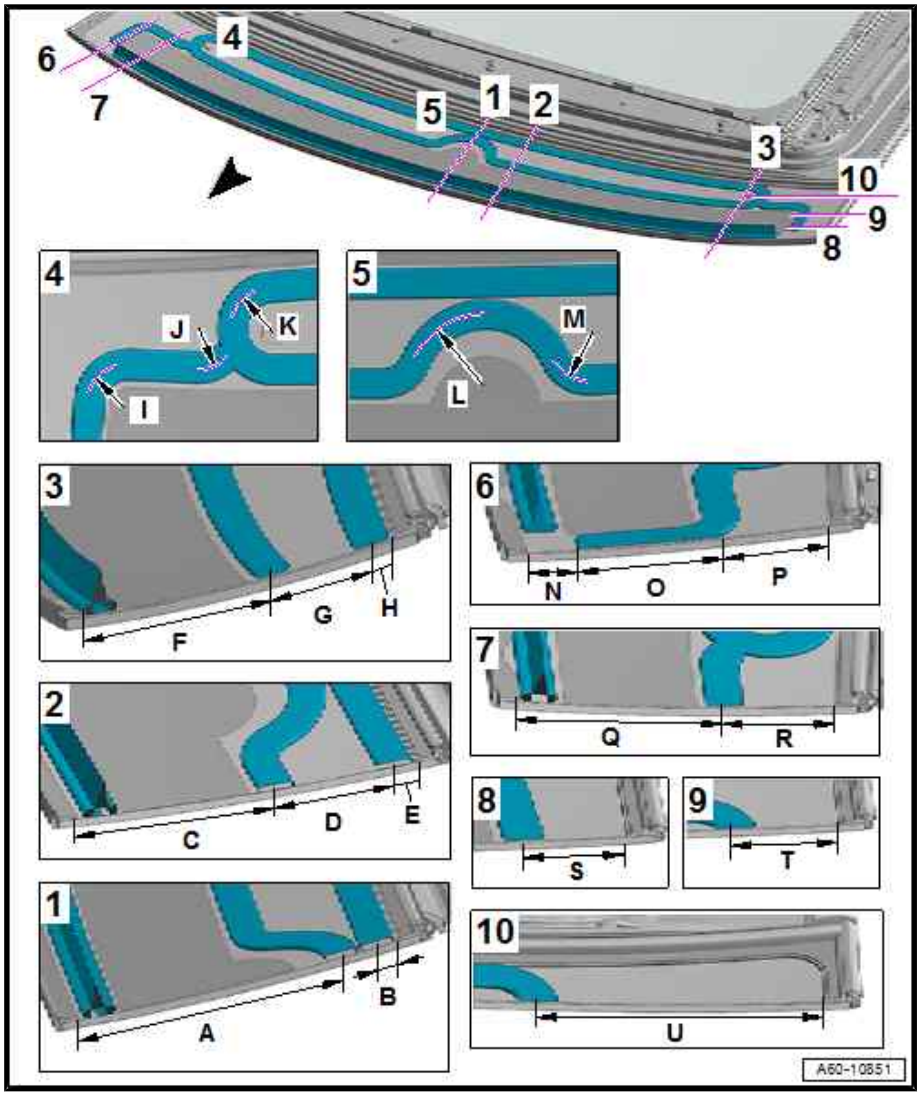
- Dimension -S- = 39.8 mm

9 - Opening

- Dimension -T- = 43.2 mm

10 - Opening

- Dimension -U- = 119.9 mm



Note:

For dimensions of adhesive bead at front of glass trim, refer to
⇒ page 248 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Exploded view - sunroof sun blind

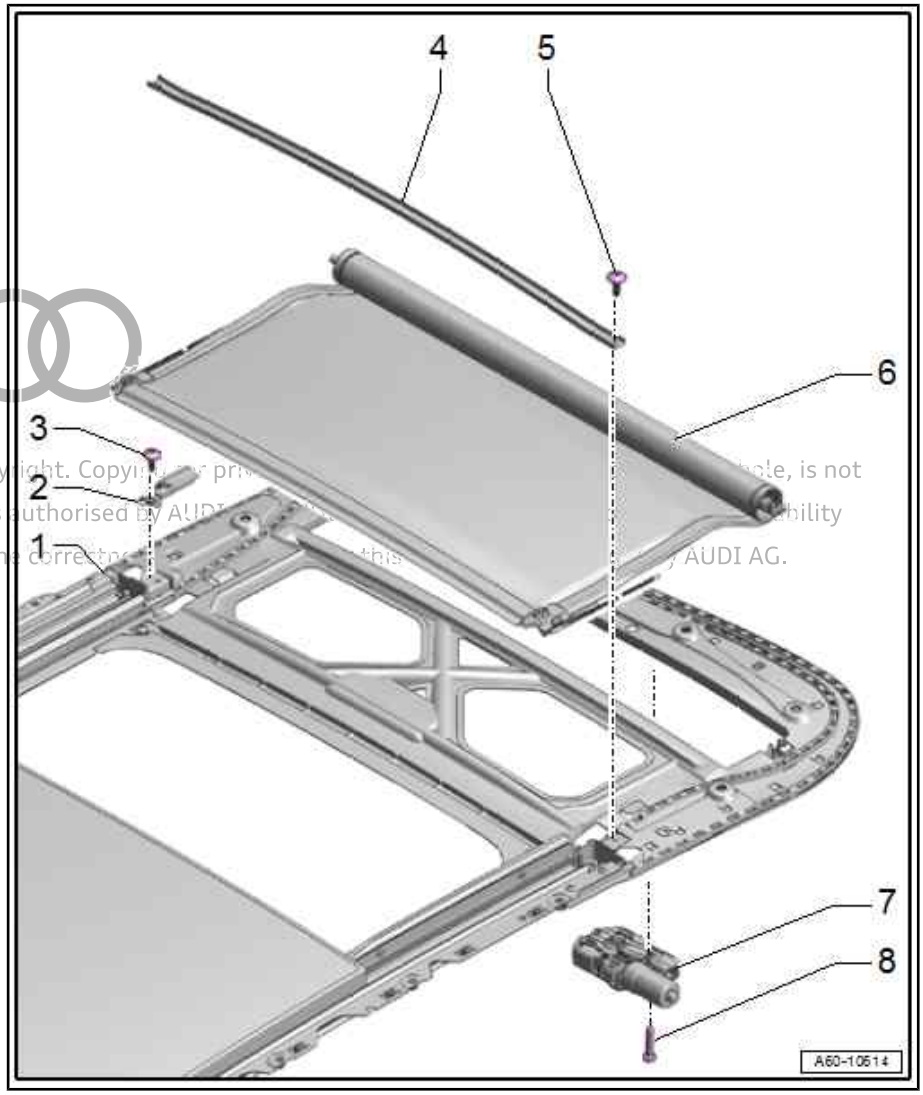
⇒ “2.3.1 Exploded view - sunroof sun blind, A4 Avant”, page 251

⇒ “2.3.2 Exploded view - sunroof sun blind, A4, country-specific version ”, page 252

⇒ “2.3.3 Exploded view - sunroof sun blind, A5 Coupé”, page 253

⇒ “2.3.4 Exploded view - sunroof sun blind, A5 Sportback”, page 254

2.3.1 Exploded view - sunroof sun blind, A4 Avant



1 - Sunroof frame

2 - Guide

- ❑ For sunroof sun blind
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 293
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in by hand
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

4 - Cross-piece

- ❑ Note distance between cross-piece and sunroof sun blind ⇒ page 297

5 - Bolt

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in by hand
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

6 - Sunroof sun blind

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 293
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 303

7 - Sunroof roller blind motor - V260-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 301
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 303

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3.2 Exploded view - sunroof sun blind, A4, country-specific version

1 - Sunroof frame

2 - Bolt

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in by hand
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

3 - Sunroof sun blind

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 298
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 303

4 - Bolt

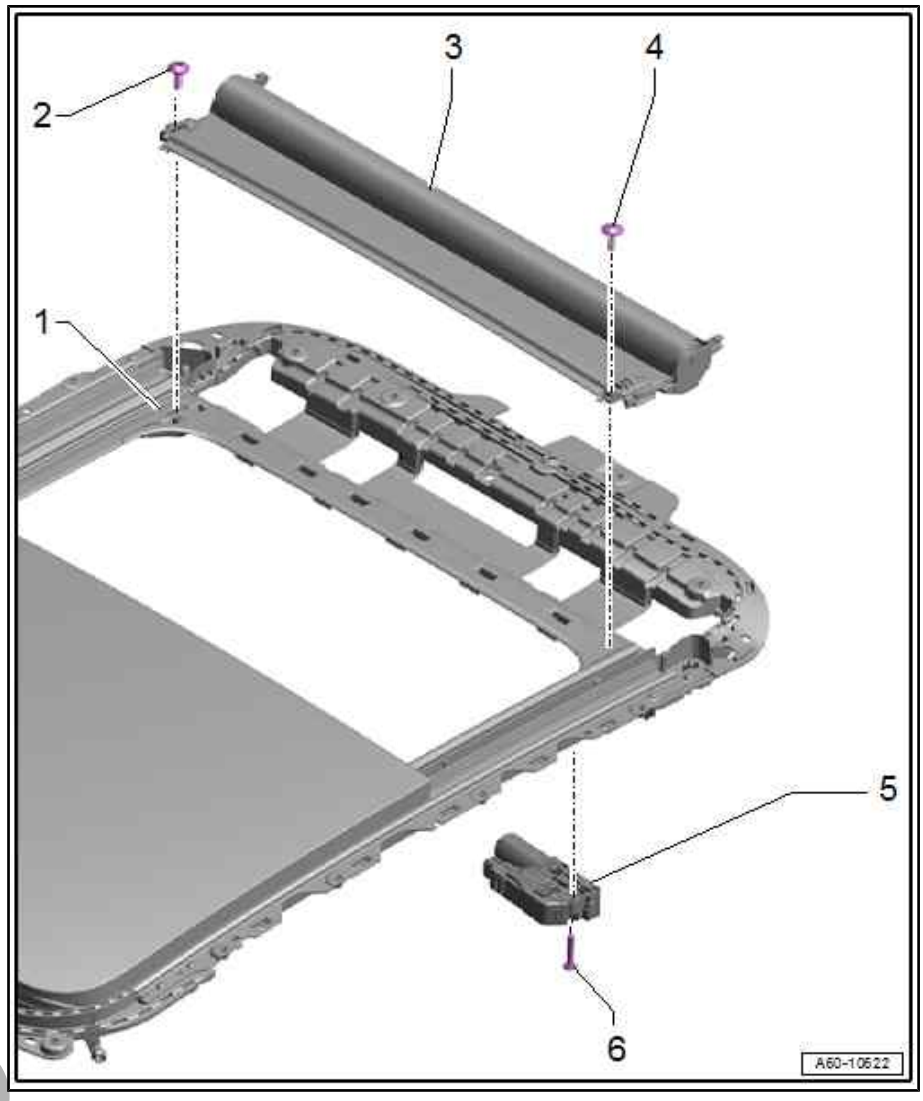
- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in by hand
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

5 - Sunroof roller blind motor - V260-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 302
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 303

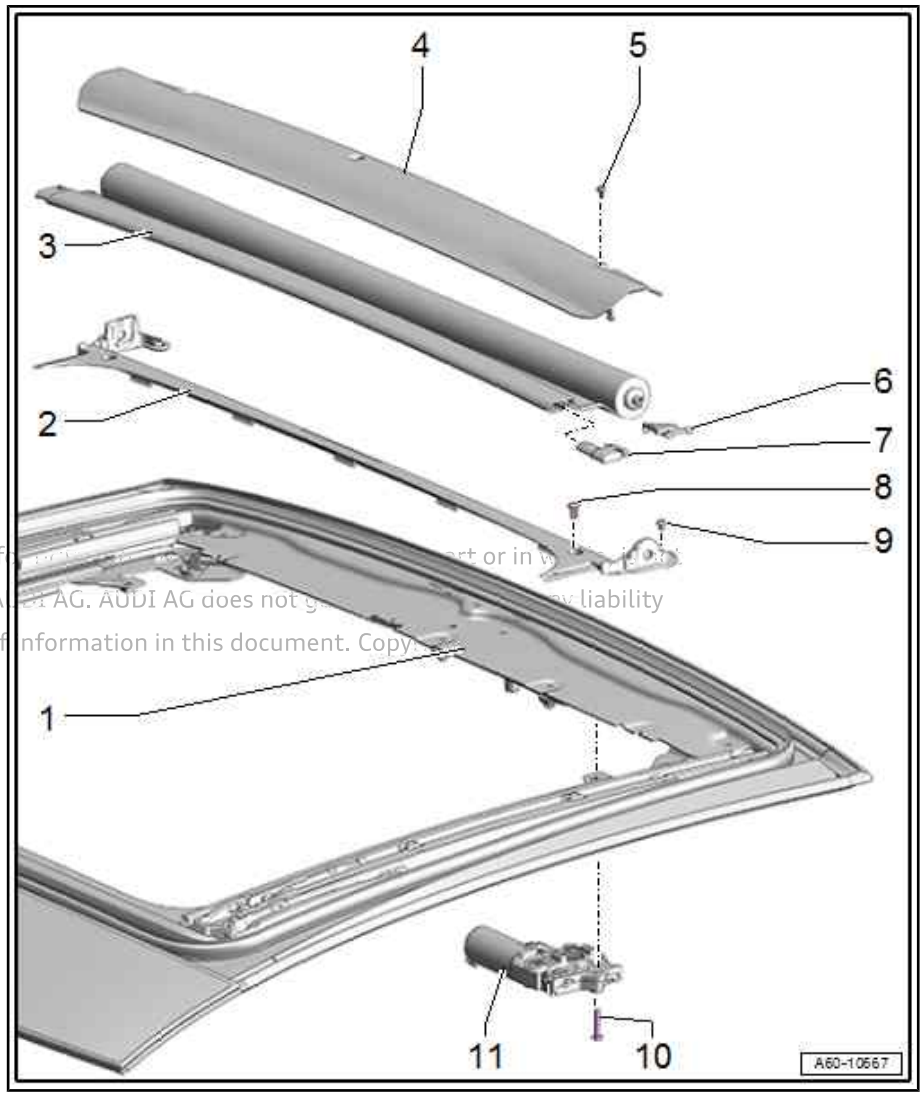
6 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3.3 Exploded view - sunroof sun blind, A5 Coupé



1 - Sunroof frame

2 - Bracket

- ❑ For sunroof sun blind

3 - Sunroof sun blind

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 299
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 303

4 - Cover

- ❑ For sunroof sun blind
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 299

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in by hand
- ❑ 3 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 - Guide

- ❑ For sunroof sun blind

7 - Slide

- ❑ For sunroof sun blind

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

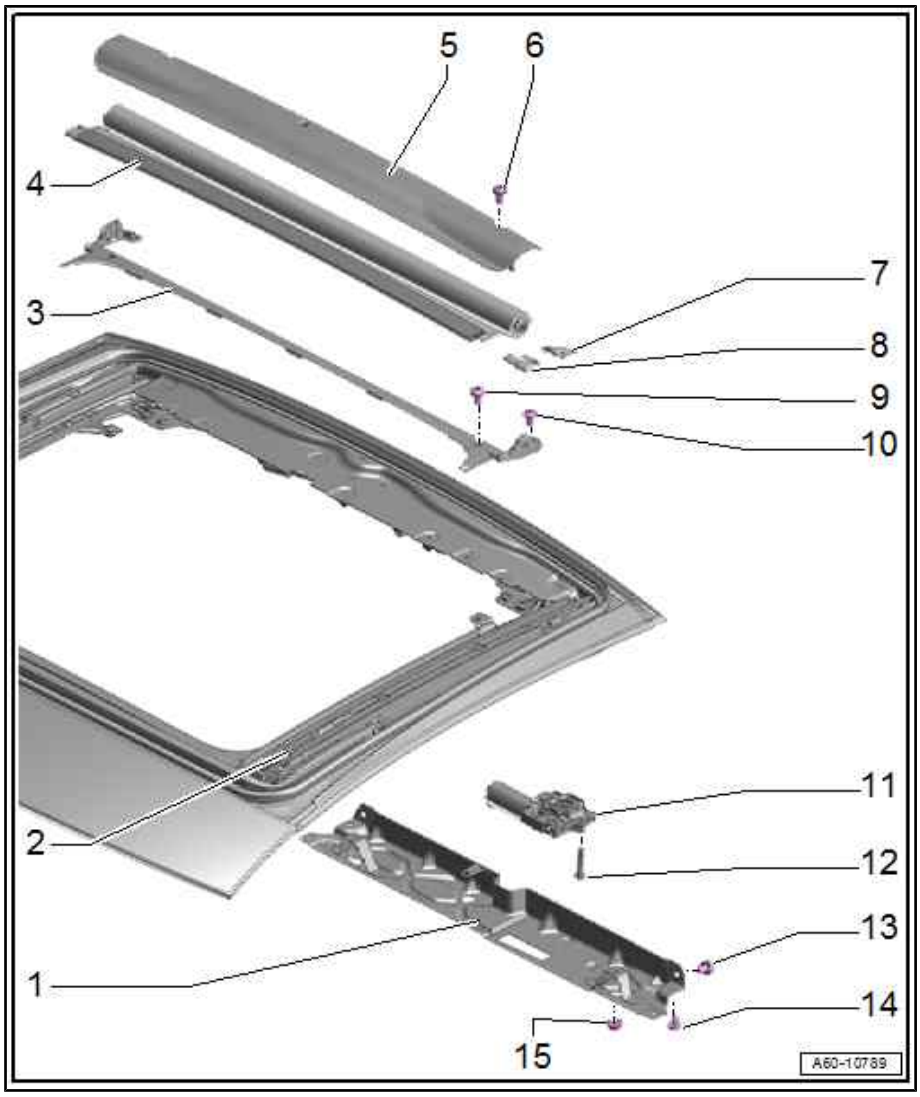
10 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 3 Nm

11 - Sunroof roller blind motor - V260-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 302
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 303

2.3.4 Exploded view - sunroof sun blind, A5 Sportback



1 - Cover

2 - Sunroof frame

3 - Bracket

- For sunroof sun blind

4 - Sunroof sun blind

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 299
- Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 303

5 - Cover

- For sunroof sun blind
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 299

6 - Bolt

- 3x
- Thread-forming
- Fit and screw in by hand
- 3 Nm

7 - Guide

- For sunroof sun blind

8 - Slide

- For sunroof sun blind

9 - Bolt

- 2x
- 3 Nm

10 - Bolt

- 2x
- 3 Nm

11 - Sunroof roller blind motor - V260-

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 302
- Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 303

12 - Bolt

- 3x
- 3 Nm

13 - Bolt

- 4.5 Nm

14 - Bolt

- 2x
- 4.5 Nm

15 - Nut

- 3x
- 3 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4 Exploded view - wind deflector

⇒ “2.4.1 Exploded view - wind deflector, A4 Saloon”, page 255

⇒ “2.4.2 Exploded view - wind deflector, A4 Avant”, page 256

⇒ “2.4.3 Exploded view - wind deflector, A4, country-specific version ”, page 257

⇒ “2.4.4 Exploded view - wind deflector, A5”, page 258

2.4.1 Exploded view - wind deflector, A4 Saloon

1 - Sunroof frame

2 - Sealing lip

3 - Stop buffer

4 - Wind deflector

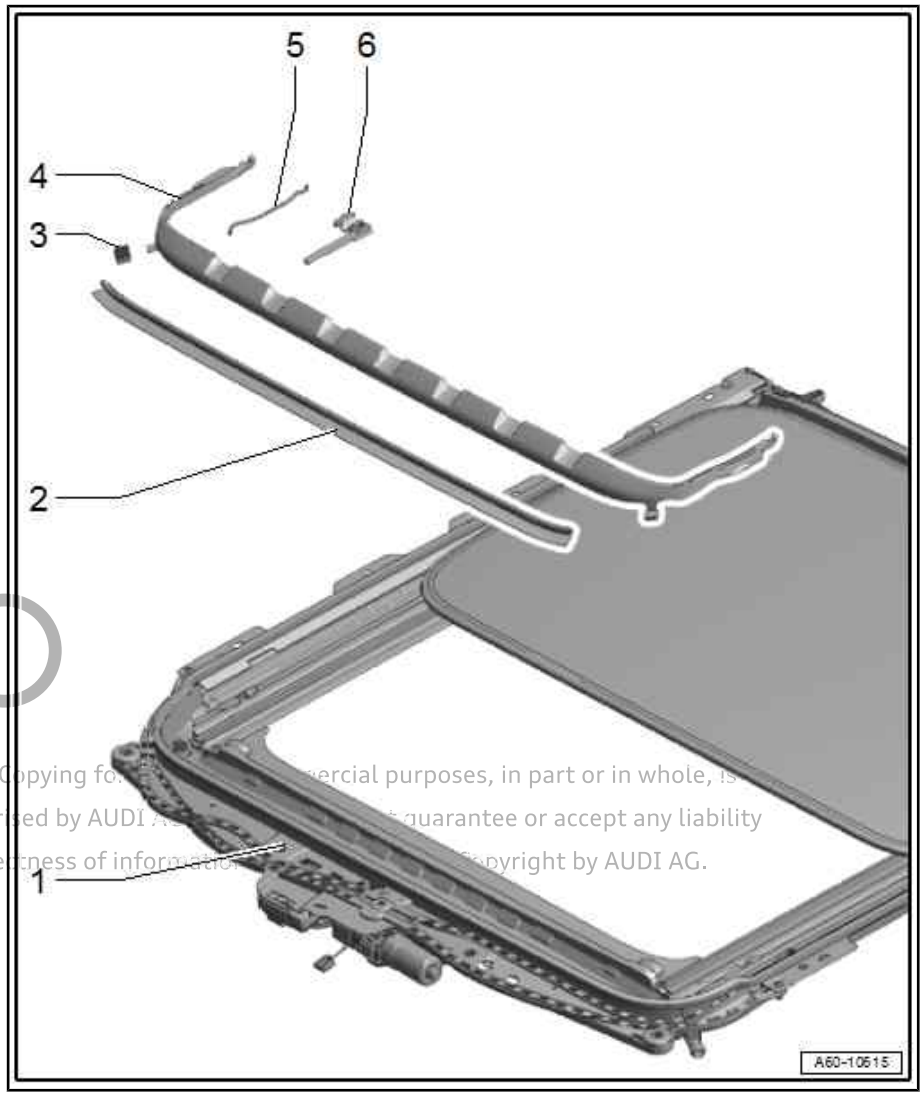
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 305
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

5 - Spring

- ❑ For wind deflector
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 310

6 - Mounting

- ❑ For wind deflector
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 308



Protected by copyright. Copying for ercial purposes, in part or in whole, is permitted unless author ed by AUDI A guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the corre ness of infor pyright by AUDI AG.

2.4.2 Exploded view - wind deflector, A4 Avant

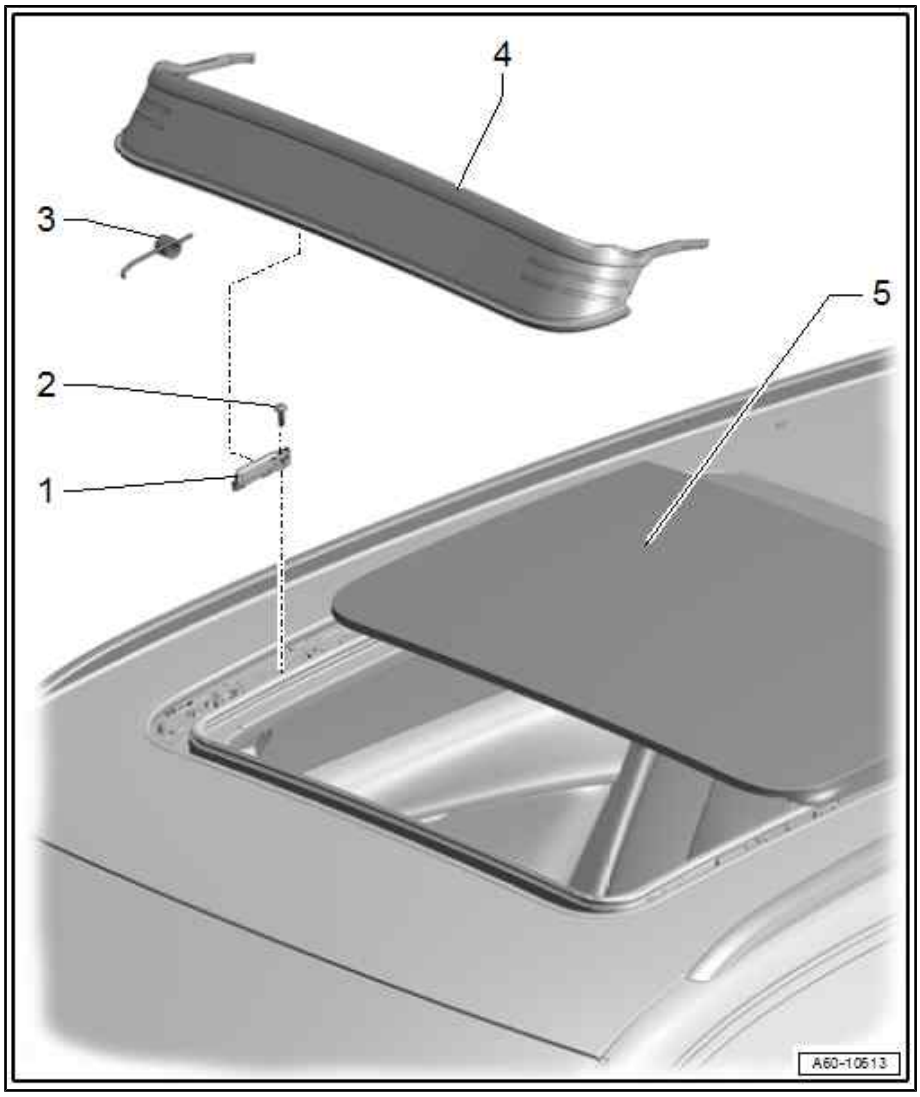
1 - Mounting
- ❑ For wind deflector
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 309

2 - Bolt
- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Fit and screw in by hand
- ❑ 1 Nm

3 - Spring
- ❑ For wind deflector
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 310

4 - Wind deflector
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 305
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

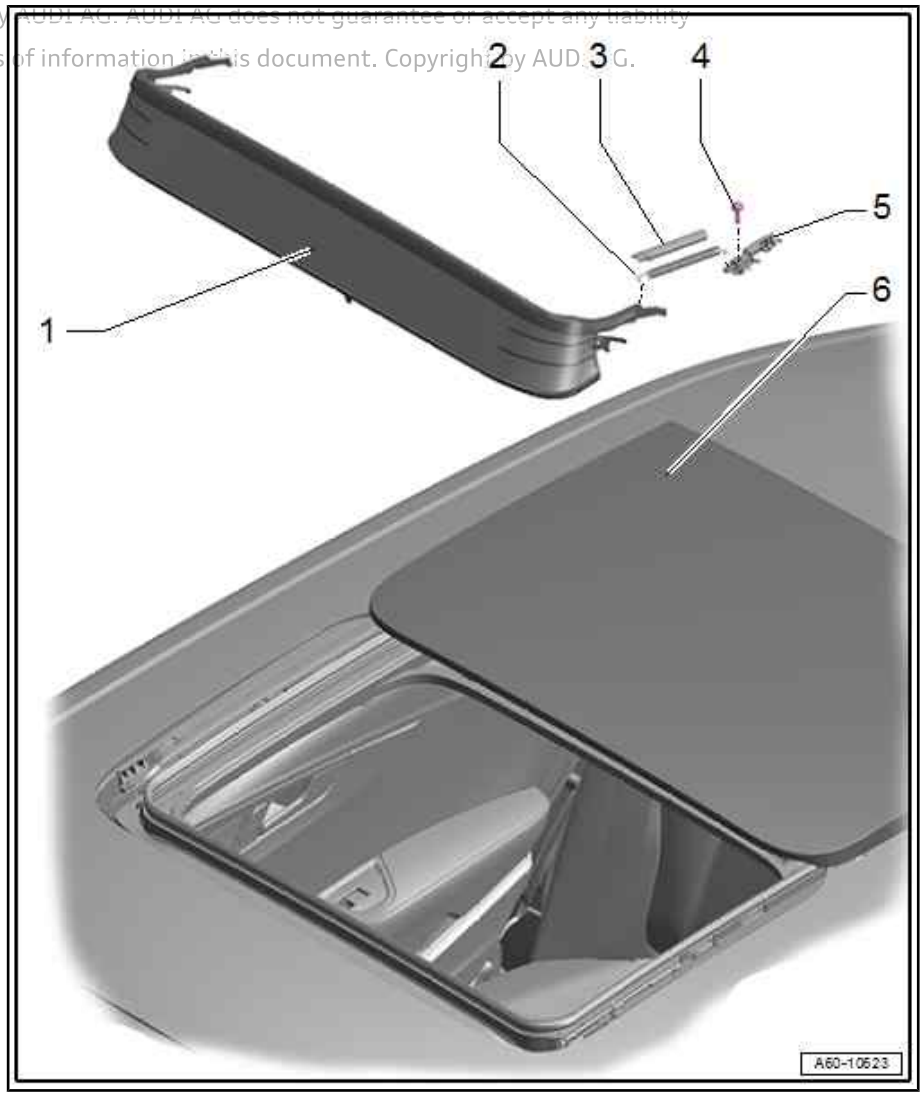
5 - Glass panel (front)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4.3 Exploded view - wind deflector, A4, country-specific version

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Wind deflector

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 307
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

2 - Spring

- ❑ For wind deflector
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 310

3 - Protective sleeve

- ❑ For spring

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Fit and screw in by hand
- ❑ 1 Nm

5 - Mounting

- ❑ For wind deflector
- ❑ With guide for glass panel (front)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 309

6 - Glass panel (front)

2.4.4 Exploded view - wind deflector, A5

1 - Deflector

- ❑ Clipped into wind deflector

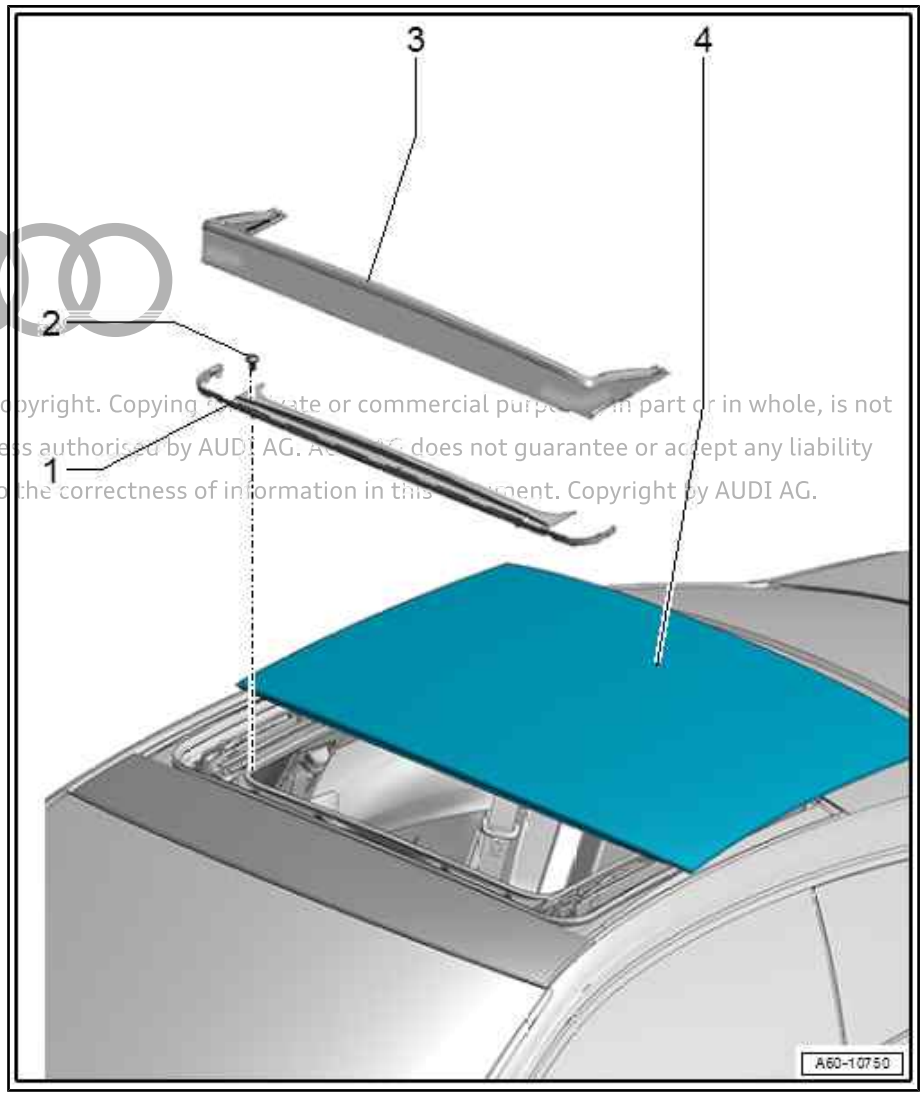
2 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Thread-forming
- ❑ Fit and screw in by hand
- ❑ 3 Nm

3 - Wind deflector

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 308
- ❑ Perform adaption after installing ⇒ page 285

4 - Glass panel



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.5 Removing and installing sunroof frame

⇒ “2.5.1 Removing and installing sunroof frame - A4 Saloon”, page 258

⇒ “2.5.2 Removing and installing sunroof frame - A4 Avant”, page 259

⇒ “2.5.3 Removing and installing sunroof frame - A4, country-specific version ”, page 260

⇒ “2.5.4 Removing and installing sunroof frame - A5 Coupé”, page 261

⇒ “2.5.5 Removing and installing sunroof frame - A5 Sportback”, page 266

2.5.1 Removing and installing sunroof frame - A4 Saloon

- Two further mechanics are required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 259).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this docum

Removing

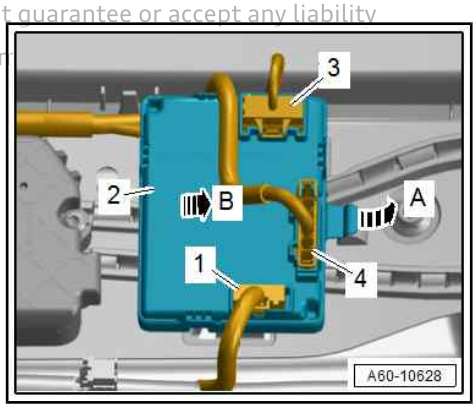
– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim panels; Removing and installing moulded headliner .

– Unplug electrical connector -1- at sliding sunroof adjustment control unit - J245- .

– Detach water drain hoses (front and rear) from sunroof frame ⇒ page 315 .

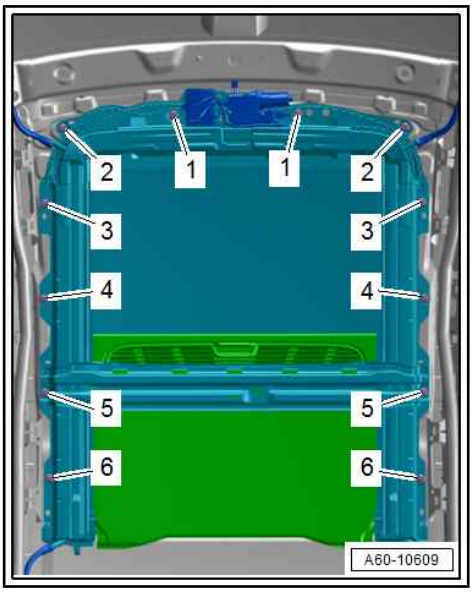
– Mark installation position of sunroof frame in relation to roof for re-installation.

• Before nuts are removed, have two mechanics hold sunroof frame at front and rear.



– Remove nuts -1, 2, 4, 6-.

– Finally, unscrew nuts -3, 5- and remove sunroof frame through rear lid opening.



Installing

– When fitting sunroof frame, pay attention to sunroof frame seal in roof opening.

– Have two mechanics move sunroof frame into installation position and start by screwing in nuts -3, 5- until they make contact.

– Align sunroof frame according to markings made during removal.

– Tighten nuts in sequence -1 ... 6-.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A4 Saloon”, page 238

2.5.2 Removing and installing sunroof frame - A4 Avant

• Two further mechanics are required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 260).

Removing

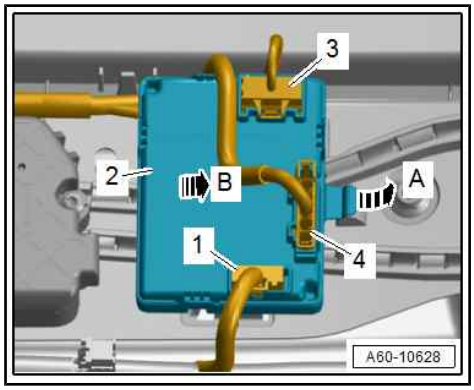
– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim panels; Removing and installing moulded headliner .

– Unplug electrical connector -1- at sliding sunroof adjustment control unit - J245- .

– Detach water drain hoses (front and rear) from sunroof frame ⇒ page 315 .

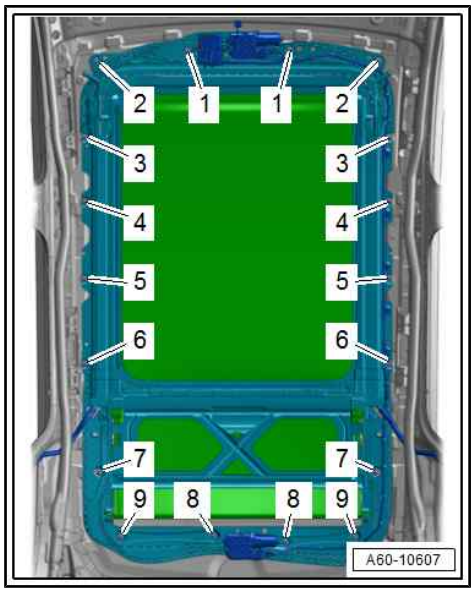
– Mark installation position of sunroof frame in relation to roof for re-installation.

• Before nuts are removed, have two mechanics hold sunroof frame at front and rear.



– Remove nuts -1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 8, 9-.

– Finally, unscrew nuts -3, 7- and remove sunroof frame through rear lid opening.



Installing

– When fitting sunroof frame, pay attention to sunroof frame seal in roof opening.

– Have two mechanics move sunroof frame into installation position and start by screwing in nuts -3, 7- until they make contact.

– Align sunroof frame according to markings made during removal.

– Tighten nuts in sequence -1 ... 9-.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A4 Avant”, page 240

2.5.3 Removing and installing sunroof frame - A4, country-specific version

• Two further mechanics are required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 261).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Seat protector - VAS 871 009/1-

Removing

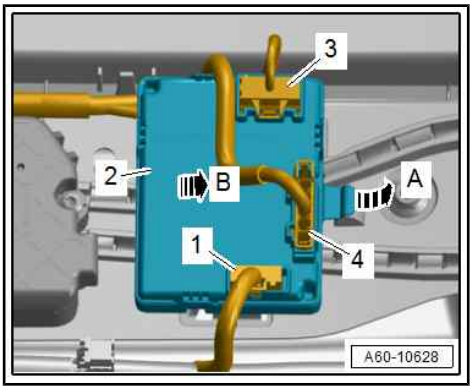
– Remove moulded headliner ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim panels; Removing and installing moulded headliner .

– Unplug electrical connector -1- at sliding sunroof adjustment control unit - J245- .

– Detach water drain hoses (front and rear) from sunroof frame ⇒ page 315 .

– Mark installation position of sunroof frame in relation to roof for re-installation.

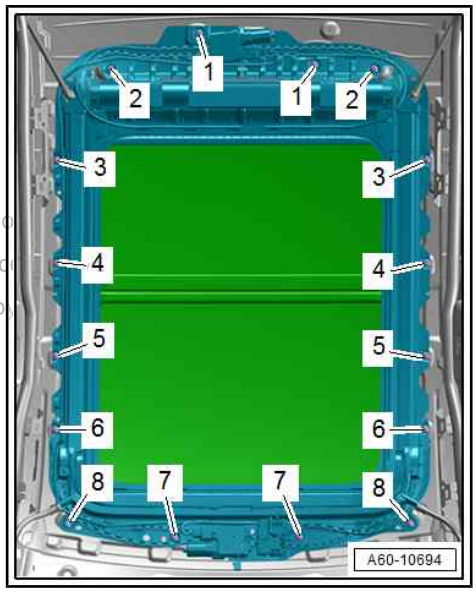
• Before nuts are removed, have two mechanics hold sunroof frame at front and rear.



– Remove nuts -1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 8-.

– Move front passenger seat backrest all the way back and cover it with seat protector - VAS 871 009/1- .

– Finally, unscrew nuts -3, 7- and remove sunroof frame through rear door.



Installing

– When fitting sunroof frame, pay attention to sunroof frame seal in roof opening.

– Have two mechanics move sunroof frame into installation position and start by screwing in nuts -3, 7- until they make contact.

– Align sunroof frame according to markings made during removal.

– Tighten nuts in sequence -1 ... 8-.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A4, country-specific version”, page 242

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by

2.5.4 Removing and installing sunroof frame - A5 Coupé

Note:

Usually it is not necessary to remove the sunroof frame to eliminate problems (note available replacement parts ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue).

• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 243 .

• A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 265).

• Observe repair instructions ⇒ page 231 .

• Tools and materials required for installation and removal ⇒ page 231 .

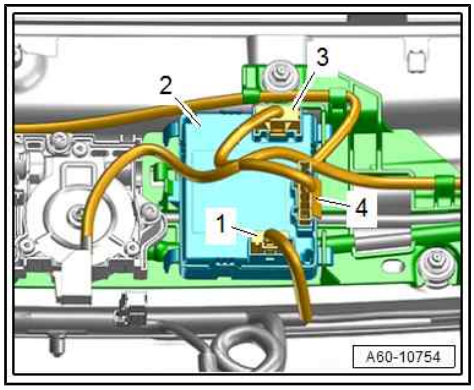
• The vehicle and the sunroof frame must be at room temperature.

Removing

– Remove glass trim ⇒ page 273 .

– Detach moulded headliner and place on seats ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim panels; Removing and installing moulded headliner .

– Unplug electrical connector -1- from sliding sunroof adjustment control unit -2-.



– Remove bolts -1, 2, 3-.

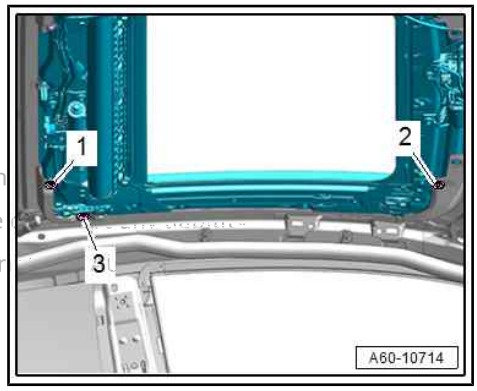
CAUTION

Risk of eye injuries due to metal swarf.

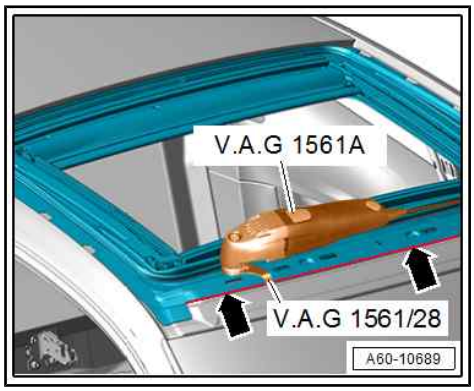
Eye irritation and injury possible.

– Put on safety goggles.

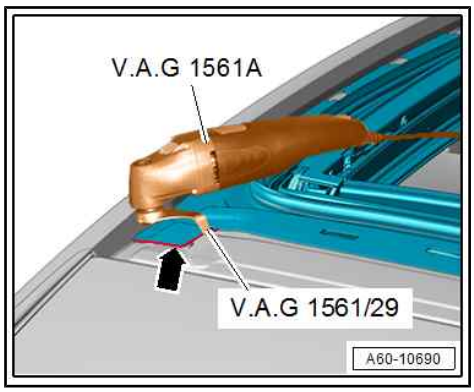
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyr



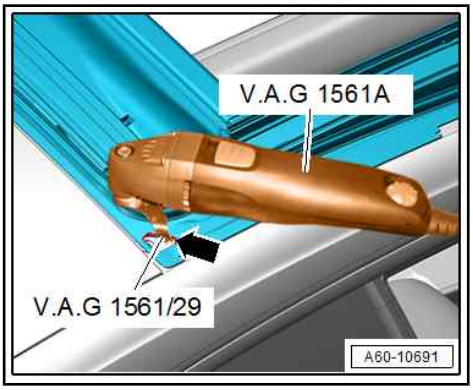
– Cut front edge of sunroof frame -arrows- clear with electric cutter - V.A.G 1561A- and blade -V.A.G 1561/28- , taking care not to damage paintwork.



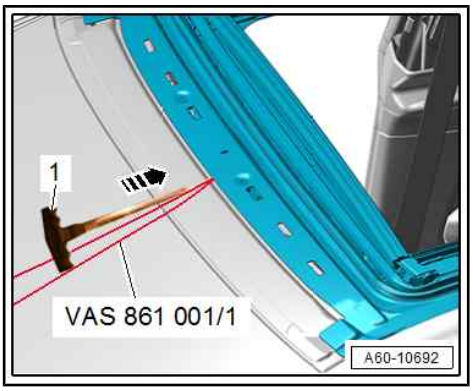
– Cut protruding section of sunroof frame -arrow- clear at front and on inside on both sides with electric cutter - V.A.G 1561A- and blade -V.A.G 1561/29- .



– Guide electric cutter - V.A.G 1561A- and blade -V.A.G 1561/29- into rear opening in sunroof frame and cut edges of sunroof frame -arrow- clear towards inside on left and right.



– Guide cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- through gap between roof cross strut and sunroof frame at front -arrow- using awl -1-.

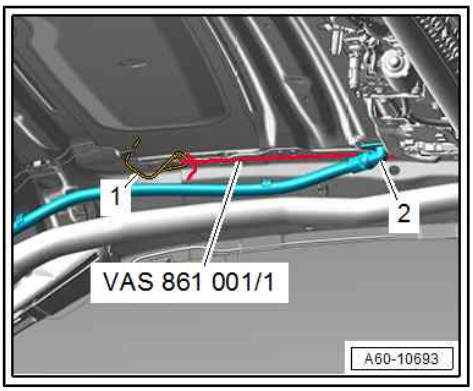


– On inside of roof, attach cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- to roof frame at hole (rear left) using cord hook -1- from window removal set - VAS 861 001A- .

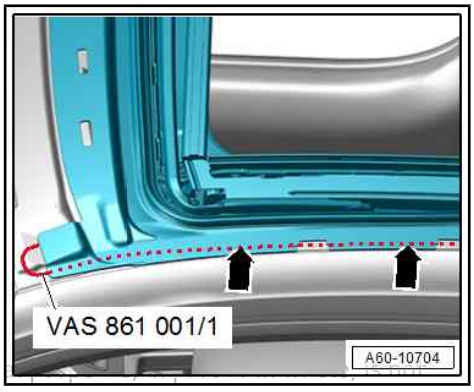
– At the same time, guide cutting cord over water drain hose -2-.

Note:

If it is difficult to cut through adhesive beads, heat sliding sunroof frame in this area using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- . When doing so, protect adjacent components against high temperatures and observe their maximum permissible temperatures.

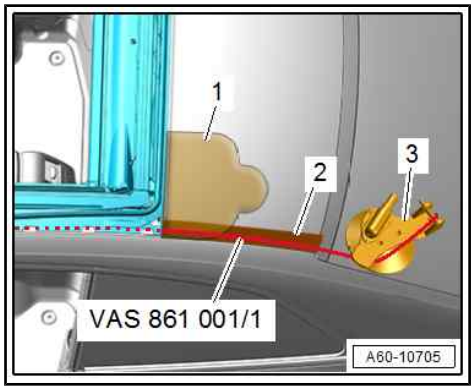


– Guide cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- forwards out of gap between sunroof frame and roof cross strut, and position it at side in gap between roof side member (left-side) and sunroof frame -arrows-.

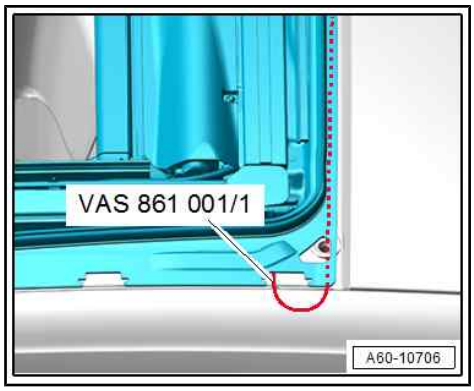


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerci
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

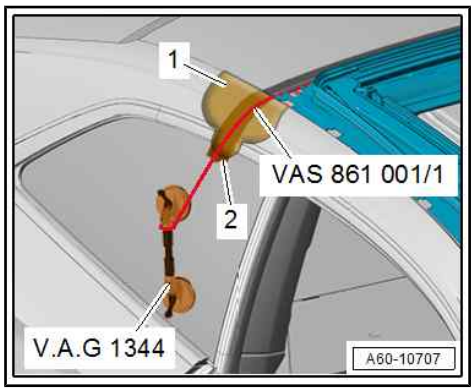
– Secure removal device with reel -3- in top left corner of rear window.
– Apply fabric-reinforced adhesive tape -2- to edge of roof between sunroof opening and rear window.
– Insert cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- into reel -3-.
– Tension cutting cord with reel -3-.
– Place removal protection -1- from window removal set - VAS 861 001A- underneath to ensure that paintwork on edge of roof is protected.
– Cut left side of sunroof frame clear.



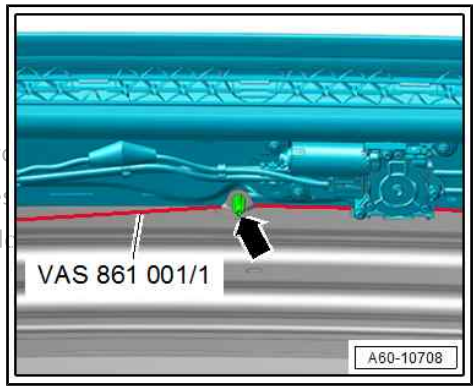
– To cut rear edge of sunroof frame clear, position cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- around rear left corner of sunroof frame and guide it towards right side of vehicle.



– Secure suction lifter - V.A.G 1344- to rear right side window.
– Tie cutting cord to suction lifter - V.A.G 1344- .
– Apply fabric-reinforced adhesive tape -2- between sunroof and side window to ensure that paintwork is protected.
– Place removal protection -1- from window removal set - VAS 861 001A- underneath to ensure that paintwork is protected.

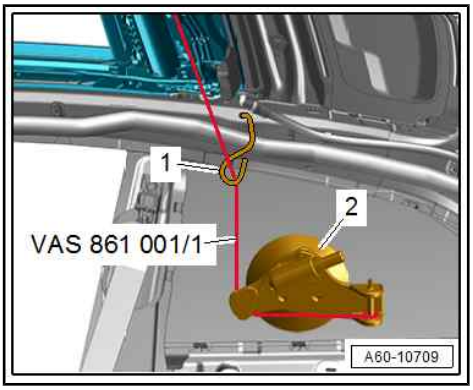


– On inside of roof, guide cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- from left to right side of vehicle.
– Make sure to guide cutting cord behind centring pin -arrow-.

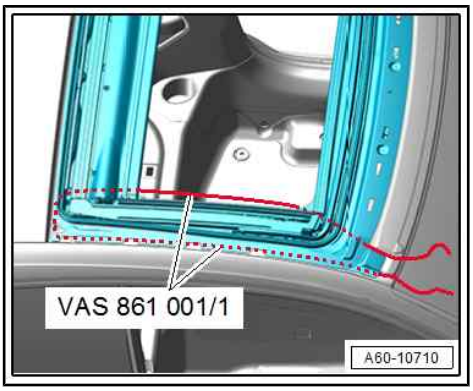


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerc
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG doe
with respect to the correctness of information in this d

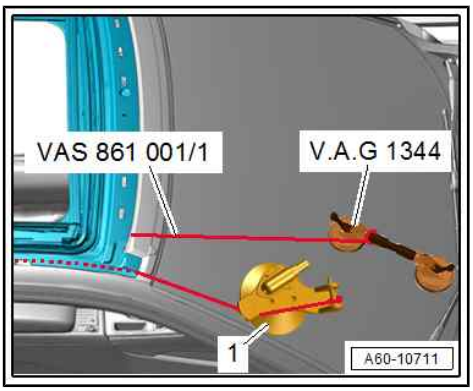
– Secure removal device -2- to inside of rear right side window.
– Guide cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- through cord hook -1- and insert it into reel on removal device -2-.
– Tension cutting cord with reel.
– Cut rear side of sunroof frame clear.



– To cut right side of sunroof frame clear, position cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- at side in gap between roof side member (right-side) and sunroof frame, and guide it towards front.
– On inside of roof, also guide cutting cord towards front and guide it out between roof cross strut and sunroof frame.



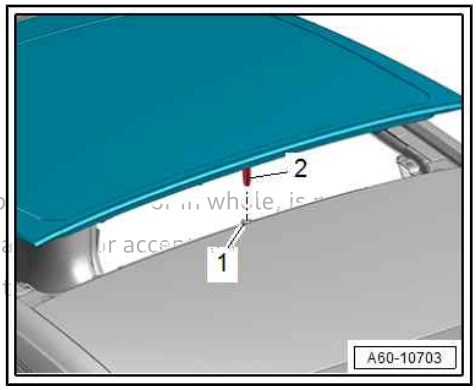
– Attach suction lifter - V.A.G 1344- to windscreen.
– Tie cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- (coming from inside of roof) to suction lifter.
– Secure removal device -1- to windscreen.
– Guide cutting cord (coming from outside of roof) into removal device -1-.
– Cut right side of sunroof frame clear.
– Lift out sunroof frame.



Installing

– Prepare new sunroof frame for installation ⇒ page 235 .
– Prepare body flange for installation ⇒ page 236 .
– Apply adhesive all around next to moulding.
– Insert new sunroof frame into roof opening; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp... ...or in whole, is ...
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gua... ...r acce...
with respect to the correctness of information in this document...

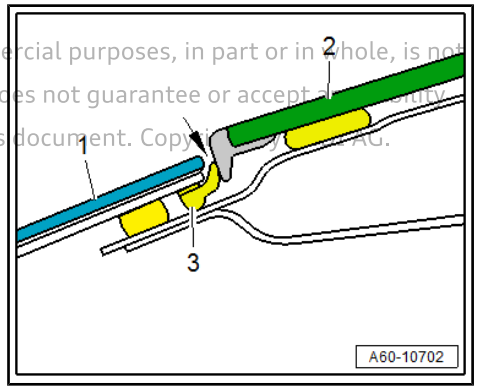


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Centring pin -2- must be inserted in hole -1- on body flange.
- Sealing lip on trim section -3- of windscreen -1- must make contact with glass trim -2- and must face upwards -arrow- (secure sealing lip to windscreen with adhesive tape).

– Align sunroof frame at front.

- Glass trim must be positioned centrally between roof side members.



– Tighten bolts (both sides) in the sequence -1, 2, 3-.

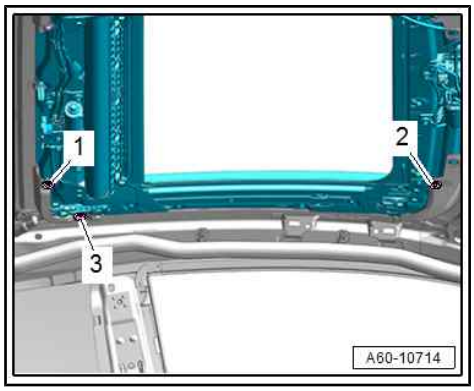
Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

- Note minimum drying times ⇒ page 231 .

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A5”, page 243



2.5.5 Removing and installing sunroof frame - A5 Sportback

Note:

Usually it is not necessary to remove the sunroof frame to eliminate problems (note available replacement parts ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue).

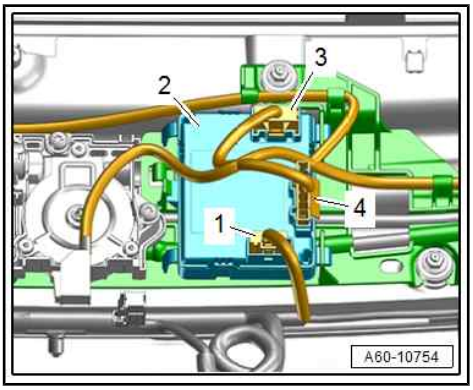
- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 243 .
- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 271).
- Observe repair instructions ⇒ page 231 .
- Tools and materials required for installation and removal ⇒ page 231 .
- The vehicle and the sunroof frame must be at room temperature.

Removing

– Remove glass trim ⇒ page 273 .

– Detach moulded headliner and place on seats ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim panels; Removing and installing moulded headliner .

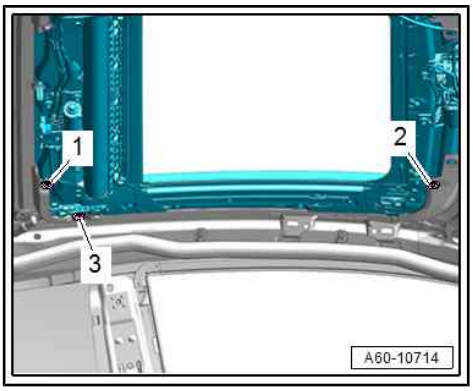
– Unplug electrical connector -1- from sliding sunroof adjustment control unit -2-.



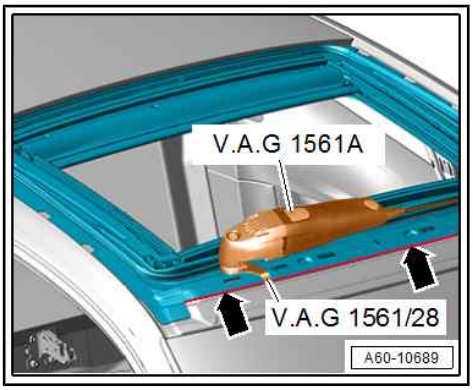
– Remove bolts -2-.
– Loosen bolts -1, 3- several turns.

CAUTION

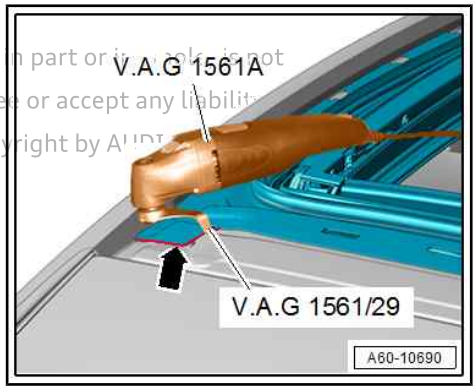
Risk of eye injuries due to metal swarf.
Eye irritation and injury possible.
– Put on safety goggles.



– Cut front edge of sunroof frame -arrows- clear with electric cutter - V.A.G 1561A- and blade -V.A.G 1561/28- , taking care not to damage paintwork.

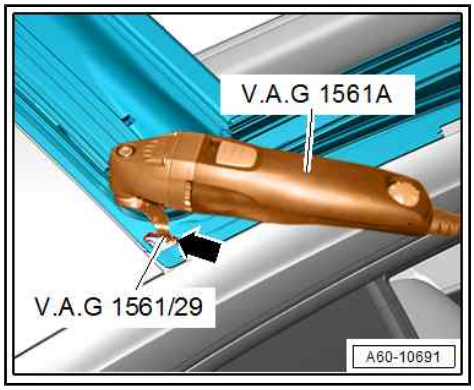


– Cut protruding section of sunroof frame -arrow- clear at front and on inside on both sides with electric cutter - V.A.G 1561A- and blade -V.A.G 1561/29- .



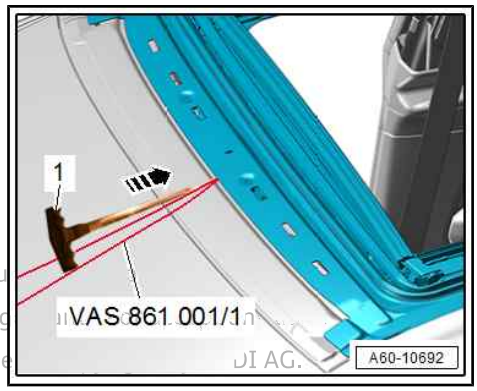
Printed by: ivy.cmw@vw.com | Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI

– Guide electric cutter - V.A.G 1561A- and blade -V.A.G 1561/29- into rear opening in sunroof frame and cut edges of sunroof frame -arrow- clear towards inside on left and right.



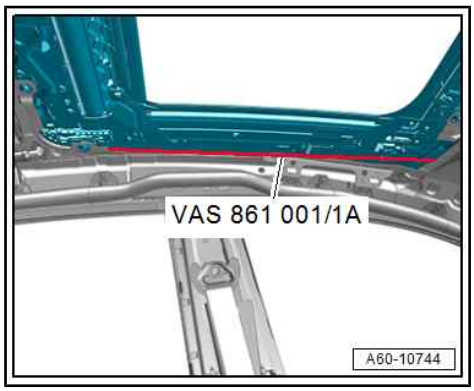
– Guide cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- through gap between roof cross strut and sunroof frame at front -arrow- using awl -1-.

– Pull cutting cord all the way to the left in gap between roof cross strut and sunroof frame.

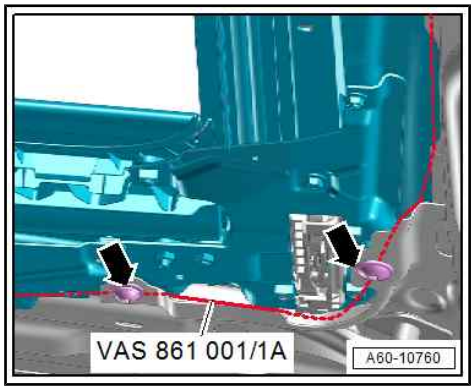


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g
with respect to the correctness of information in this docume
DI AG.

– On inside of roof, guide cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- along roof side member towards rear.



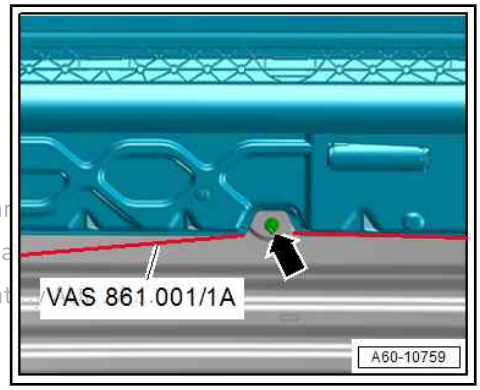
– On inside of roof (rear left), guide cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- past behind the two bolts -arrows- for sunroof frame.



– On inside of roof (rear), guide cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- from right to left side of vehicle.

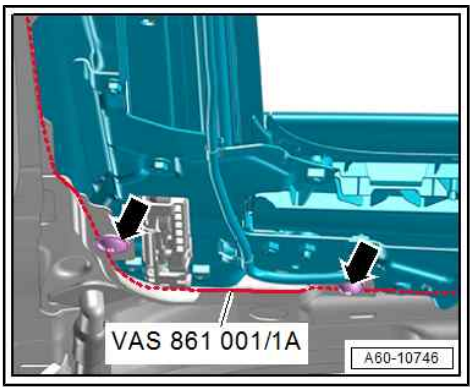
• Make sure to guide cutting cord behind centring pin -arrow-.

– Route cutting cord along roof side member (right-side) towards front in the same way as on left side.

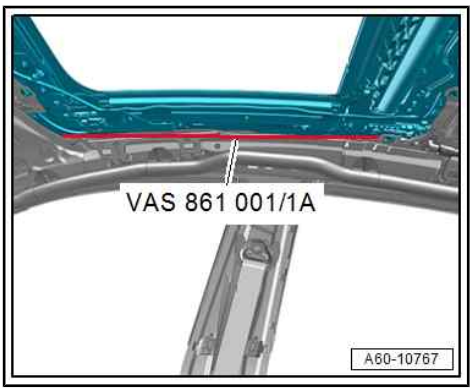


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in par
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

– On inside of roof (rear right), guide cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- past behind the two bolts -arrows- for sunroof frame.

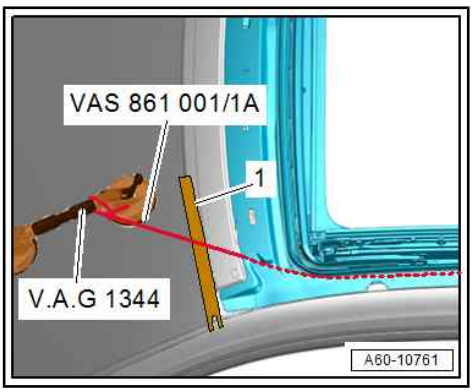


– On inside of roof, guide cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- along roof side member towards front.

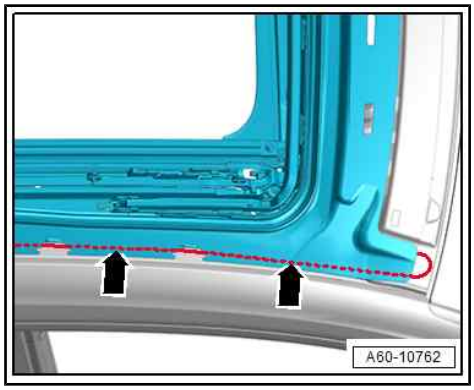


– Attach suction lifter - V.A.G 1344- to left side of windscreen.

– Guide left end of cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- over trim wedge -1- from window removal set - VAS 861 001A- and secure it to suction lifter - V.A.G 1344- .



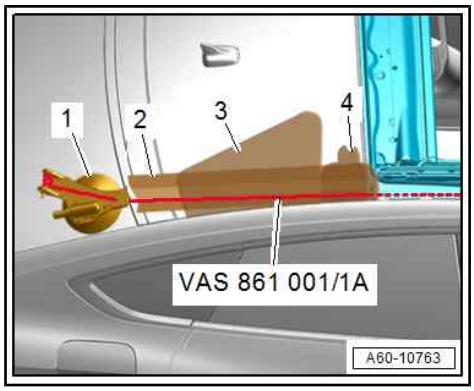
– Guide cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- out on right side above windscreen between roof cross strut and sunroof frame.
– Route right end of cutting cord around sunroof frame (right-side) and into gap between roof side member (right-side) and sunroof frame -arrows-.



– Secure removal device with reel -3- in top right corner of rear window.
– Apply fabric-reinforced adhesive tape -2- to edge of roof between sunroof opening and rear window.
– Insert cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- into reel -1-.
– Tension cutting cord with reel -1-.

Note:

If it is difficult to cut through adhesive beads, heat sliding sunroof frame in this area using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- . When doing so, protect adjacent components against high temperatures and observe their maximum permissible temperatures.

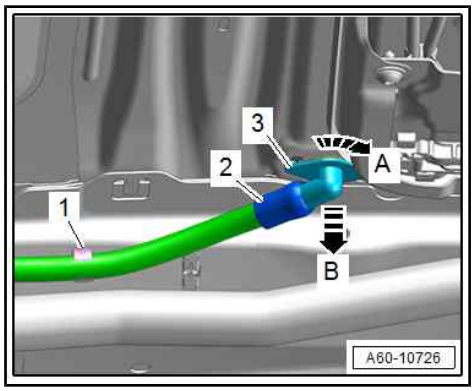


– Place removal protection -3, 4- from window removal set - VAS 861 001A- underneath to ensure that paintwork on surface and edge of roof is protected.
– Cut right side of sunroof frame clear.

Note:

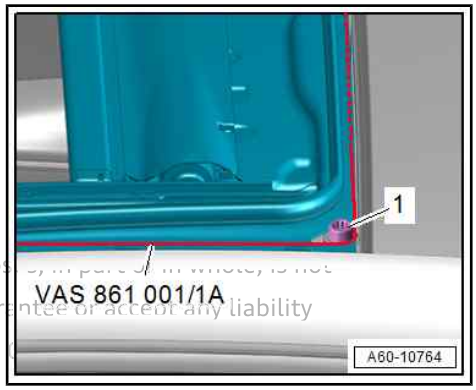
While you are cutting the sunroof clear, a second mechanic must guide the cutting cord at the inside of the roof to prevent it from getting caught.

– Left side: Turn mounting -3- clockwise -arrow A- and detach it with water drain hose -2- still connected -arrow B-.
– Move water drain hose clear at retaining clip -1-.



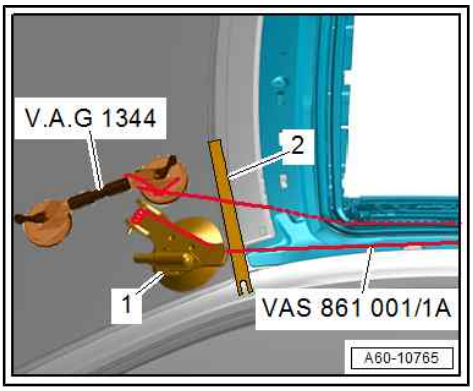
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Insert M10 bolt -1- in water drain hole as deviation point for cutting cord, fit washer from underneath and secure it with nut (4 turns).
– Guide cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- towards front left via deviation point.

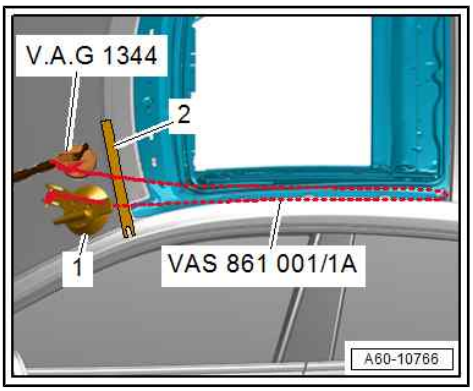


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Attach removal device with reel -1- to left side of windscreen.
– Insert cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- into reel of removal device -1-.
– To make it easier to guide cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- , it must be routed via trim wedge -1- from window removal set - VAS 861 001A- .
– Tension cutting cord with reel.
– Cut rear side of sunroof frame clear.
– Remove M10 bolt.

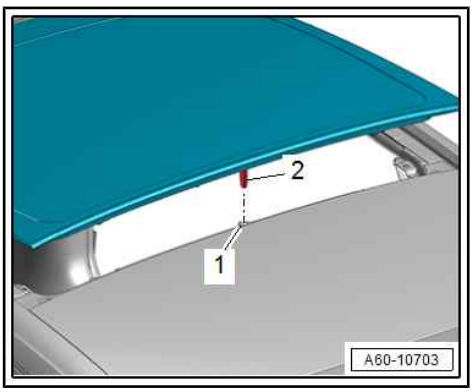


– To cut left side of sunroof frame clear, position cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- at side in gap between roof side member (left-side) and sunroof frame, and guide it towards front.
– Cut left side of sunroof frame clear.
– Lift out sunroof frame.



Installing

– Prepare new sunroof frame for installation ⇒ page 235 .
– Prepare body flange for installation ⇒ page 236 .
– Apply adhesive all around next to moulding.
– Insert new sunroof frame into roof opening; note the following:

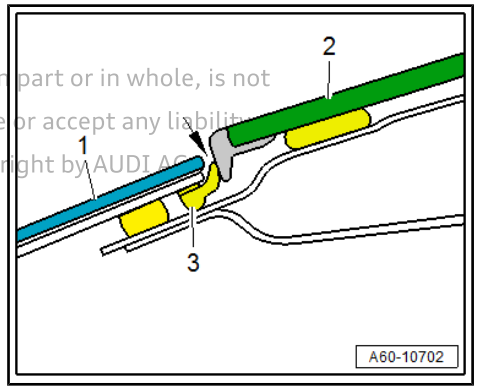


Powered by Volkswagen. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

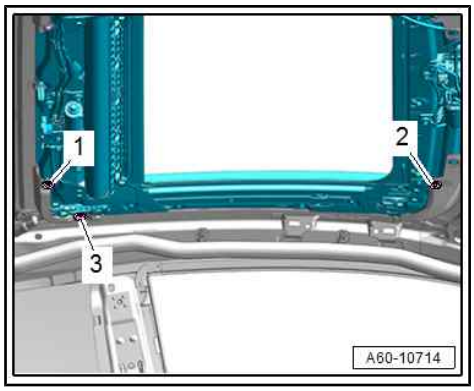
- Centring pin -2- must be inserted in hole -1- on body flange.
- Sealing lip on trim section -3- of windscreen -1- must make contact with glass trim -2- and must face upwards -arrow- (secure sealing lip to windscreen with adhesive tape).

– Align sunroof frame at front.

- Glass trim must be positioned centrally between roof side members.



– Tighten bolts (both sides) in the sequence -1, 2, 3-.



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

- Note minimum drying times ⇒ page 231 .

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A5”, page 243

2.6 Removing and installing drain pipe

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Drill bit, ∅ 13 mm

Removing

– Open glass panel (and leave it open).

– Lower moulded headliner ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim panels; Removing and installing moulded headliner .

– Remove sunroof motor ⇒ page 285 .

– Right side: Remove sliding sunroof adjustment control unit -J245- ⇒ page 283 .

– Mark routing of drain and tilt pipes -1, 2- and of wiring harnesses -3-.

– Insert drill bit (13 mm diameter) -4- between drain pipe -1- and sunroof frame -arrow B-.

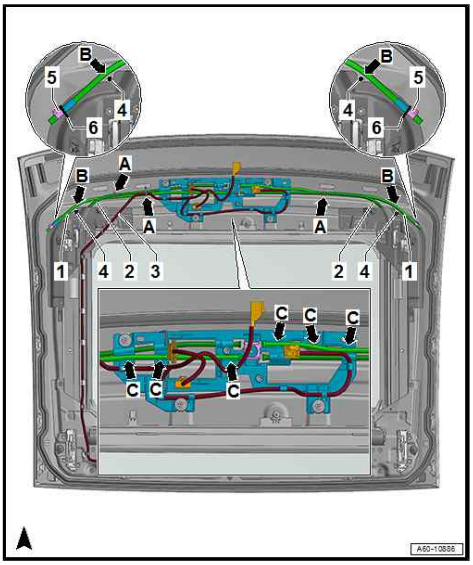
– Attach marking -6- to position where clip -5- for drain pipe -1- starts.

– Check that drain pipe -1- is routed at least as far as end of clip -5-.

– Mark position of cable ties -arrow A- and unfasten them.

– Unfasten drain pipe -1- from clip -5- and release it from fasteners -arrows C-.

– Detach drain pipe -1- outwards.



Installing

- When renewing drain pipe, new part must be cut to appropriate length.
- If removed drain pipe does not reach end of clip ⇒ page 273 , new drain pipe must be cut to greater length (at least 10 mm starting from marking ⇒ page 273). The drain pipe must protrude no further than 12 mm beyond the end of the clip.

– New part: Cut drain pipe to appropriate length and attach marking (use removed drain pipe as guide).

– Attach non-woven adhesive tape -7- to marking -6- on drain pipe -1-.

– Slide drain pipe -1- onto adjustment cable -9-.

- Adjustment cable -9- must be located underneath guide -8-.

– Press drain pipe -1- into fasteners -arrows C- and into clip -5- so that they engage audibly.

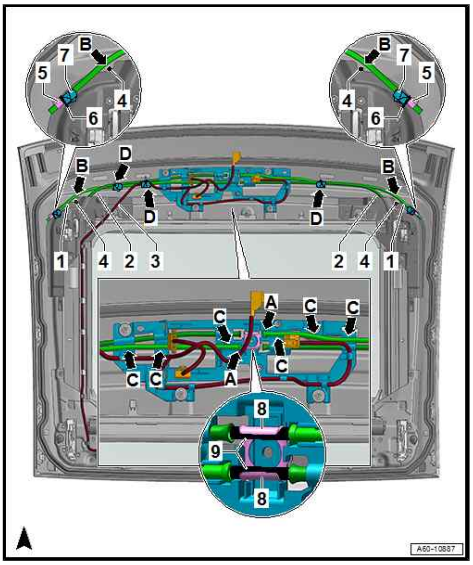
- Counterhold from rear when pressing in fasteners -arrows C-.
- End of drain pipe must be located in corresponding recess -arrow A-.
- When installed, drain pipe -1- must be routed above tilt pipe -2-, as shown in illustration.

– Insert drill bit (13 mm diameter) -4- between drain pipe -1- and sunroof frame -arrow B-.

- Non-woven adhesive tape -7- makes contact with clip -5-.

– Wrap non-woven adhesive tape once around drain pipe -1- and tilt pipe -2- at points where cable ties -arrow D- were originally located.

– For assembly, secure drain pipe -1- and tilt pipe -2- to sunroof frame with non-woven adhesive tape.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted without prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

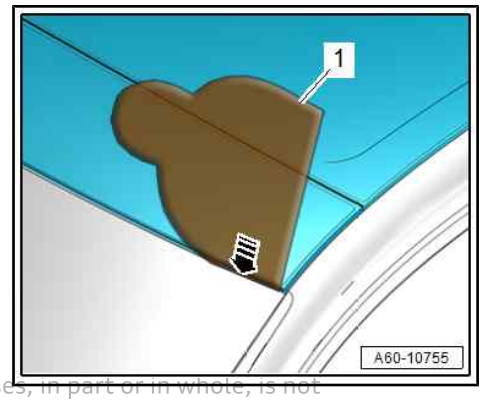
2.7 Removing and installing glass trim

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 243 .
- Observe repair instructions ⇒ page 231 .
- Tools and materials required for installation and removal ⇒ page 231 .
- The vehicle and the glass trim must be at room temperature.

Removing

– Open glass panel.

– Using removal protection -1- from window removal set - VAS 861 001A- , press sealing lip on trim section of windscreen downwards as far as possible -arrow-.

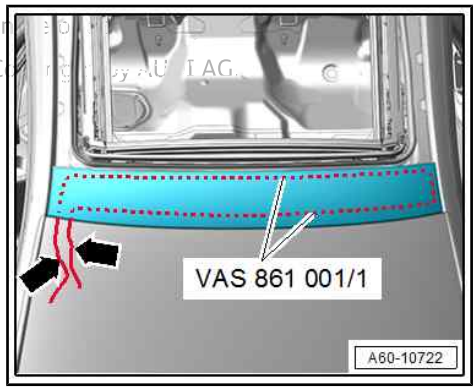


CAUTION

Risk of injury to hands and eyes due to glass splinters.
Danger of cutting yourself.
– Put on safety goggles.
– Put on protective gloves.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Guide cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- all the way around glass trim, ensuring that both ends -arrows- emerge on bottom right of glass trim.

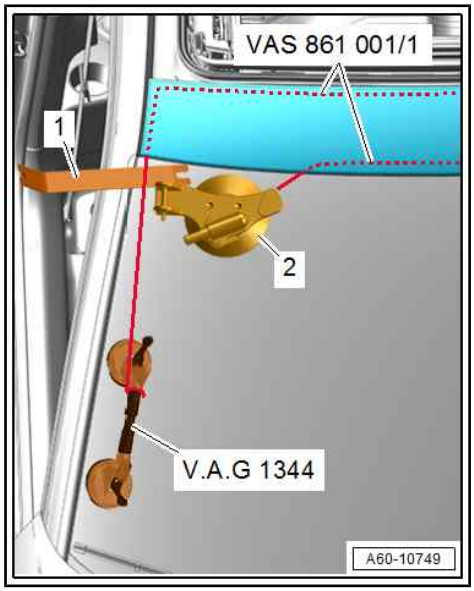


– Secure removal device with reel -2- and suction lifter - V.A.G 1344- to windscreen.

– Secure outer end of cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- to suction lifter - V.A.G 1344- and secure inner end to removal device.

– To make it easier to guide the cord, place trim wedge -1- from window removal set - VAS 861 001A- underneath.

– Cut glass trim clear as far as possible.



Note:

If it is difficult to cut through adhesive beads, heat glass trim in this area using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- . When doing so, protect adjacent components against high temperatures and observe their maximum permissible temperatures.

– Move tools further towards centre of windscreen and cut remaining section clear.

– Detach glass trim.

Installing

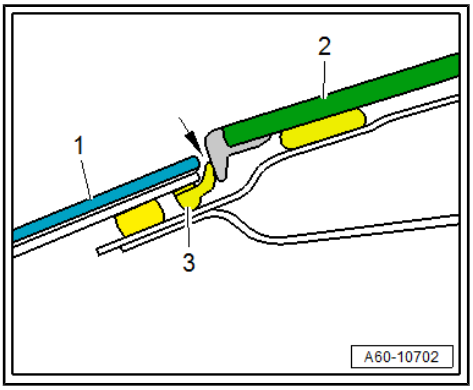
– Prepare new glass trim for installation ⇒ page 233 .

– Prepare body flange for installation ⇒ page 236 .

– Apply adhesive all around.

– Insert and align new glass trim; observe the following:

- Glass panel must be closed.
- Sealing lip on trim section -3- of windscreen -1- must make contact with glass trim -2- and must face upwards -arrow- (secure sealing lip to windscreen with adhesive tape).
- Observe correct installation position ⇒ page 280 .



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

- Note minimum drying times ⇒ page 231 .

– Open glass panel.

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .

2.8 Removing and installing glass panel

⇒ "2.8.1 Removing and installing glass panel - A4 Saloon", page 275

⇒ "2.8.2 Removing and installing glass panel (front) - A4 Avant and country-specific version", page 276

⇒ "2.8.3 Removing and installing glass panel (rear) - A4 Avant and country-specific version", page 276

⇒ "2.8.4 Removing and installing glass panel - A5", page 277

2.8.1 Removing and installing glass panel - A4 Saloon

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 238 .

Removing

NOTICE

Risk of damage to sunroof components if slotted guide is moved.

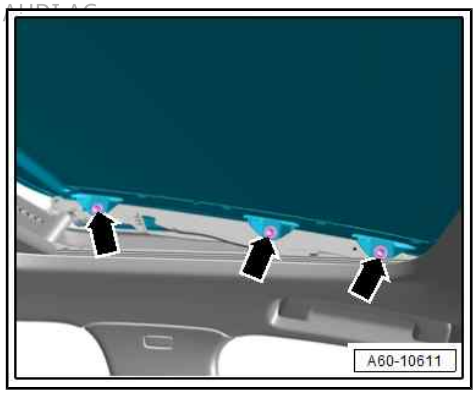
– Only move slotted guide if glass panel is installed.

– Move sunroof blind as far back as possible.

– Tilt open glass panel.

– Remove bellows on left and right ⇒ page 286 .

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- on left and right.



– Lift out glass panel.

Installing

– Remove any remaining locking fluid from threaded hole with suitable thread tap.

– Fit bolts for glass panel, but do not tighten yet.

– Adjust glass panel ⇒ page 277 and then tighten bolts.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ "2.1.1 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A4 Saloon", page 238

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.8.2 Removing and installing glass panel (front) - A4 Avant and country-specific version

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 240 / country-specific version ⇒ page 242 .

Removing

NOTICE

Risk of damage to sunroof components if slotted guide is moved.

– Only move slotted guide if glass panel is installed.

– Open glass panel until it is raised at front and rear.

– Working through openings in rubber strip on side of glass panel, unscrew bolts -arrows- on left and right.

– Remove glass panel (front) -1-.



Installing

– Remove any remaining locking fluid from threaded hole with suitable thread tap.

– Fit bolts for glass panel (front), but do not tighten yet.

– Adjust glass panel (front) ⇒ page 277 and then tighten bolts.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A4, country-specific version”, page 242
- ⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A4 Avant”, page 240

2.8.3 Removing and installing glass panel (rear) - A4 Avant and country-specific version

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 240 .

Removing

NOTICE

Risk of damage to sunroof components if slotted guide is moved.

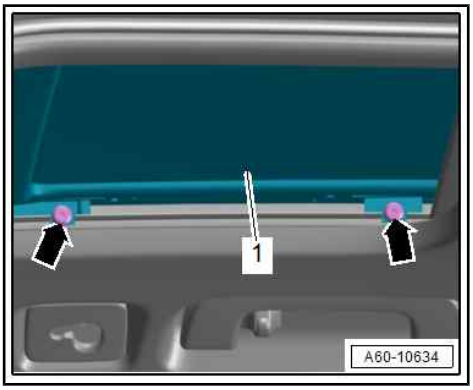
– Only move slotted guide if glass panel is installed.

– Tilt glass panel (front).

– Detach rear section of inner seal towards inside from roof frame.

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- on left and right.

– Lift out glass panel -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Remove any remaining locking fluid from threaded hole with suitable thread tap.

– Fit bolts for glass panel (rear), but do not tighten yet.

– Adjust glass panel (rear) ⇒ page 277 and then tighten bolts.

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A4, country-specific version”, page 242

◆ ⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A4 Avant”, page 240

2.8.4 Removing and installing glass panel - A5

• A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 277).

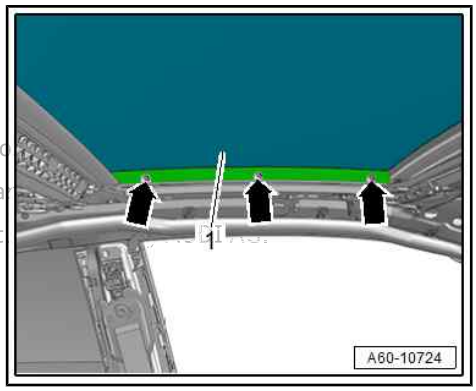
• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 243 .

Removing

– Open glass panel -1- until it is raised at front and rear.

– Working through openings in rubber strip on side of glass panel -1-, unscrew bolts -arrows- on left and right.

– Remove glass panel -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gua
with respect to the correctness of information in this document

Installing

– Remove any remaining locking fluid from threaded hole with suitable thread tap.

– Fit bolts for glass panel, but do not tighten yet.

– Adjust glass panel ⇒ page 280 and then tighten bolts.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A5”, page 243

2.9 Adjusting glass panel

⇒ “2.9.1 Adjusting glass panel - A4 Saloon”, page 277

⇒ “2.9.2 Adjusting glass panel - A4 Avant and country-specific version”, page 279

⇒ “2.9.3 Adjusting glass panel - A5”, page 280

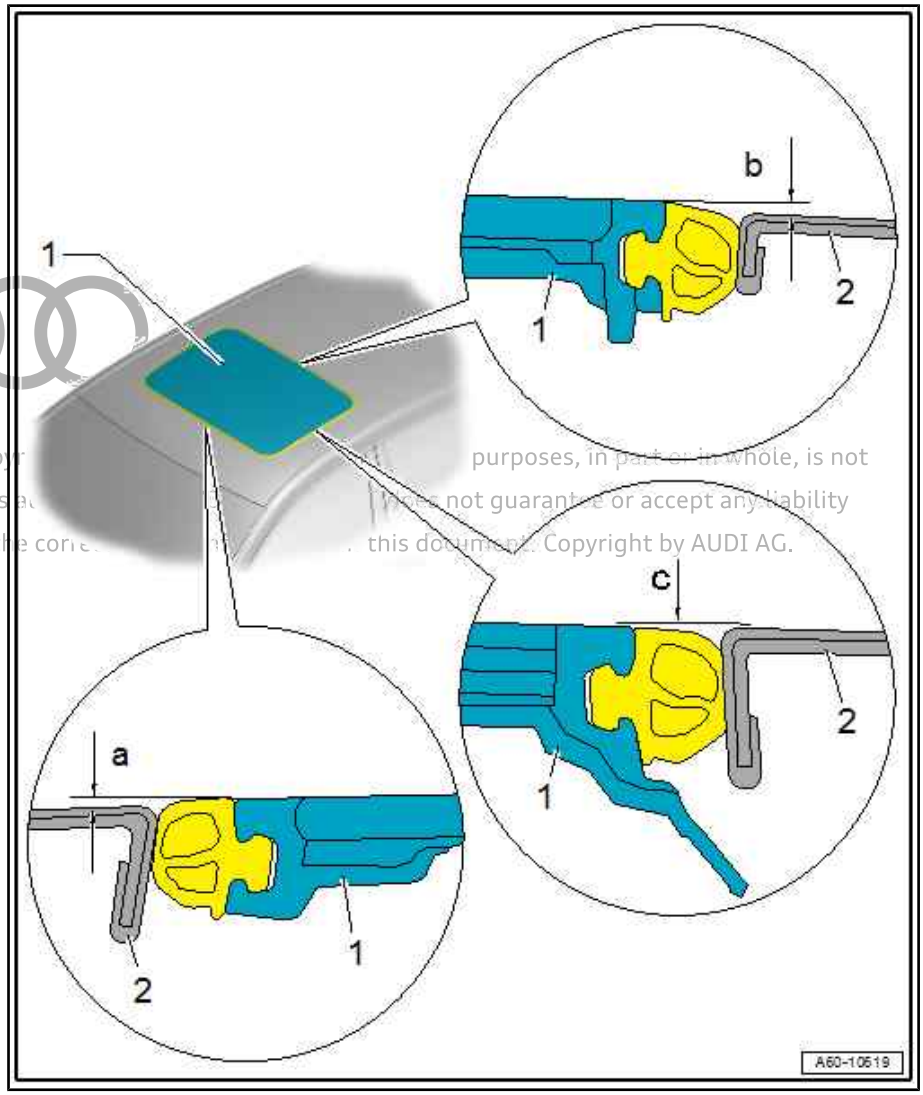
2.9.1 Adjusting glass panel - A4 Saloon

Adjustment dimensions

1 - Glass panel (front)

- Dimension -a- = 0 – 1 mm
- Distance -b- = 0 + 1 mm
- Dimension -c- = 0 mm (flush)

2 - Roof



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

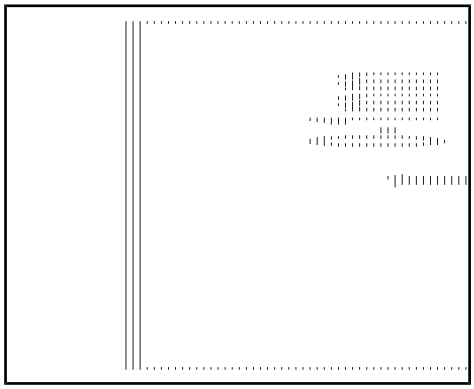
Height adjustment

- Left and right-hand settings should be as symmetrical as possible in order to achieve optimum optical effect.

– Check adjustment of glass panel with a depth gauge or similar.

– For height adjustment, close sunroof from open (non-tilted) position.

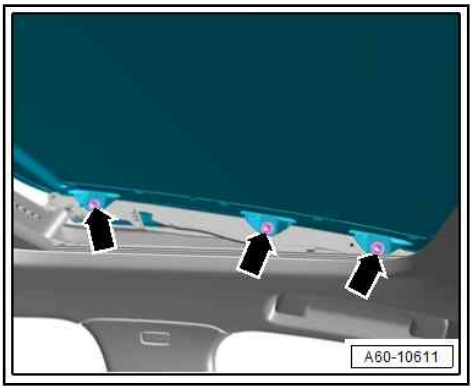
– Detach bellows on left and right ⇒ page 286 .



– Unscrew bolts -arrows- on left and right.
– Adjust glass panel at front and tighten front bolts.
– Adjust glass panel at rear and tighten rear bolts.
– Tighten centre bolts last.
– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ "2.1.1 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A4 Saloon", page 238



2.9.2 Adjusting glass panel - A4 Avant and country-specific version

Adjustment dimensions

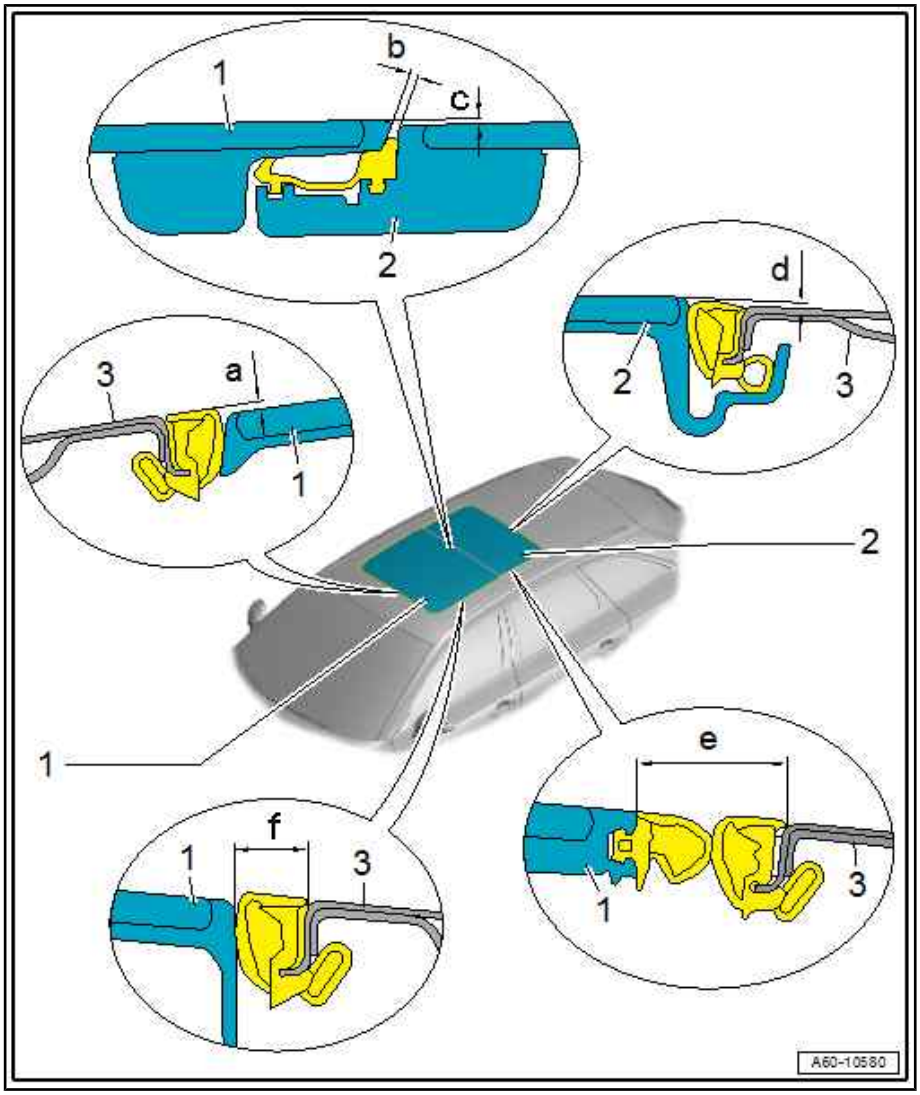
1 - Glass panel (front)

◆ Dimension -a- = 1.9 ± 1.1 mm
◆ Dimension -b- = 1.2 ± 0.5 mm
◆ Dimension -c- = 1.0 ± 0.5 mm
◆ Dimension -f- = 10 ± 1.2 mm

2 - Glass panel (rear)

◆ Dimension -d- = 0.3 $^{+0.7}_{-0.3}$ mm
◆ Dimension -e- = 21.9 ± 1.2 mm

3 - Roof

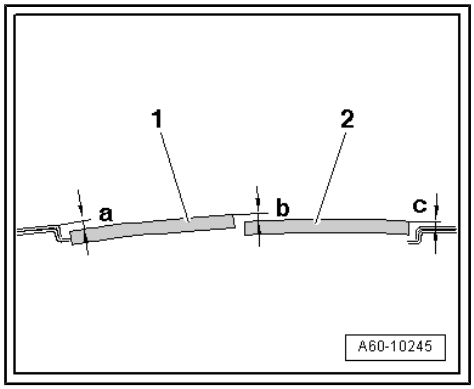


Height adjustment

- Only adjust front glass panel at front edge and rear glass panel at rear edge.
- Left and right-hand settings should be as symmetrical as possible in order to achieve optimum optical effect.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Check adjustment of glass panel (front) -1- and glass panel (rear) -2- e.g. with depth gauge.



- ♦ Dimension -a- = 1.9 ± 1.1 mm
- ♦ Dimension -b- = 1.0 ± 0.5 mm
- ♦ Dimension -c- = 0.3 $^{+0.7}$ $_{-0.3}$ mm

– Detach inner seal at side on left and right.

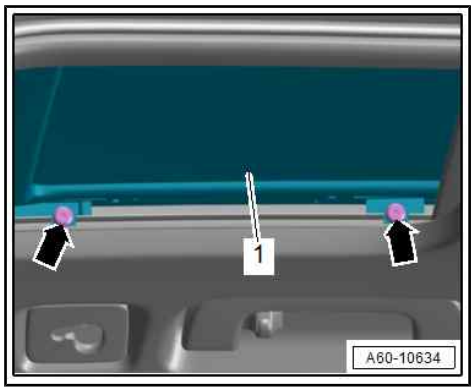
– To adjust glass panel (front) -1-, reach through opening in rubber strip on side of glass panel and unscrew both front bolts -left arrows-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
with respect to the correctness of information in this documen

– Adjust glass panel and tighten bolts.

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- to adjust glass panel (rear) -1-.



– Adjust glass panel and tighten bolts.

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .

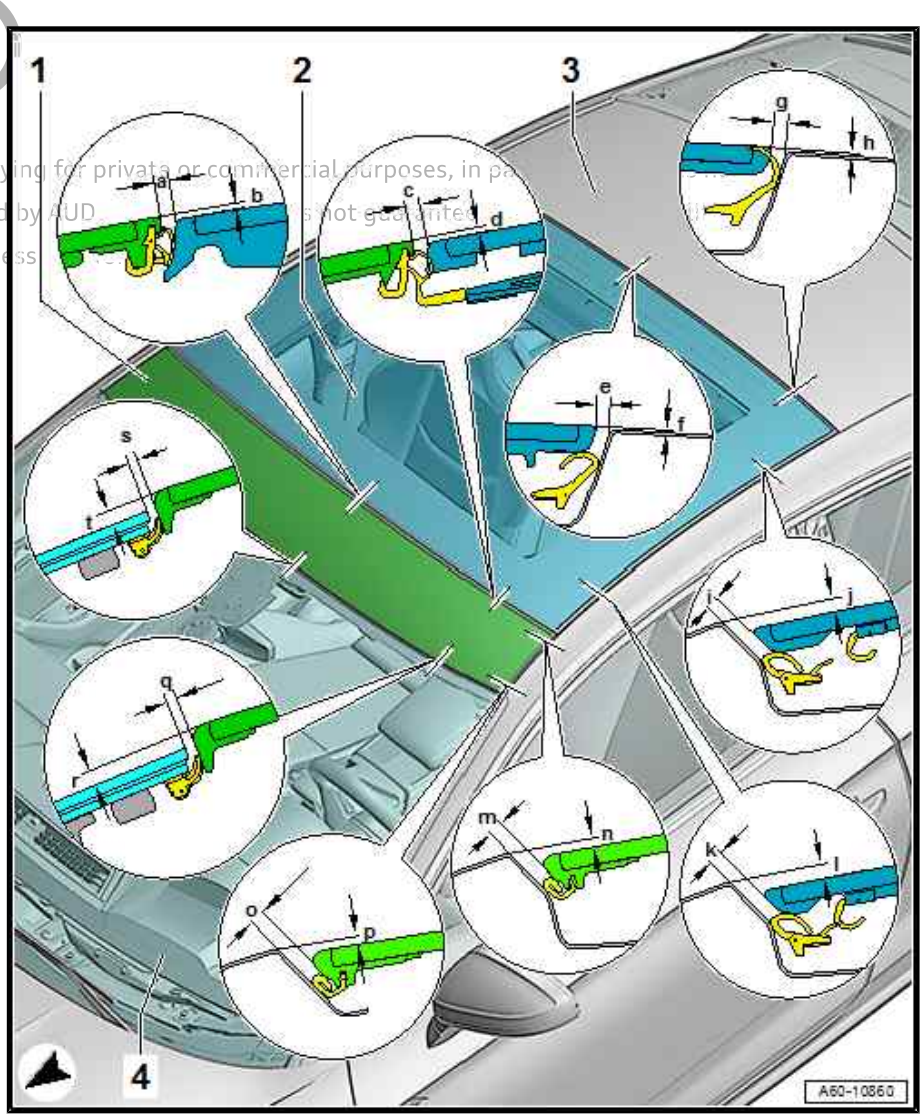
Tightening torques

- ♦ ⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A4, country-specific version”, page 242
- ♦ ⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A4 Avant”, page 240

2.9.3 Adjusting glass panel - A5

Adjustment dimensions

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



1 - Glass trim

- A5 Coupé:

Dimension -a- = 3 mm
Dimension -b- = 1.2 mm
Dimension -c- = 3 mm
Dimension -d- = 1 mm
Dimension -m- = 3.2 mm
Dimension -n- = 2.1 mm
Dimension -o- = 3.1 mm
Dimension -p- = 1.9 mm
Dimension -q- = 2 mm
Dimension -r- = 3.4 mm
Dimension -s- = 2 mm
Dimension -t- = 3.5 mm

- A5 Sportback:

Dimension -a- = 3 mm

Dimension -b- = 1.2 mm

Dimension -c- = 3 mm

Dimension -d- = 1.2 mm

Dimension -m- = 3.2 mm

Dimension -n- = 1.9 mm

Dimension -o- = 3.2 mm

Dimension -p- = 1.7 mm

Dimension -q- = 2 mm

Dimension -r- = 3 mm

Dimension -s- = 2 mm

Dimension -t- = 3.1 mm

2 - Glass panel

- A5 Coupé:

Dimension -a- = ⇒ page 281
Dimension -b- = ⇒ page 281
Dimension -c- = ⇒ page 281
Dimension -d- = ⇒ page 281
Dimension -e- = 3.2 mm
Dimension -f- = 0.6 mm
Dimension -g- = 3.2 mm
Dimension -h- = 0.6 mm
Dimension -i- = 3.1 mm
Dimension -j- = 2.7 mm
Dimension -k- = 3.1 mm
Dimension -l- = 3.4 mm

- A5 Sportback:

Dimension -a- = ⇒ page 281

Dimension -b- = ⇒ page 281

Dimension -c- = ⇒ page 281

Dimension -d- = ⇒ page 281

Dimension -e- = 3.1 mm

Dimension -f- = 0.6 mm

Dimension -g- = 3.1 mm

Dimension -h- = 0.5 mm

Dimension -i- = 3.1 mm

Dimension -j- = 2.9 mm

Dimension -k- = 3.1 mm

Dimension -l- = 3.1 mm

3 - Body

4 - Windscreen

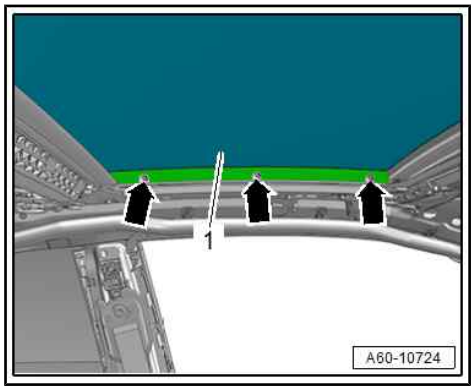
Height adjustment

- Left and right-hand settings should be as symmetrical as possible in order to achieve optimum optical effect.

– Check adjustment of glass panel with a depth gauge or similar ⇒ page 280 .

– Close sunroof.

– To adjust glass panel -1-, reach through openings in rubber strip on side of glass panel and unscrew bolts -arrows-.



– Adjust glass panel -1- at front and tighten front bolts.

– Adjust glass panel -1- at rear and tighten rear bolts.

– Tighten centre bolts last.

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A5”, page 243

2.10 Removing and installing sliding sunroof adjustment control unit - J245-

⇒ “2.10.1 Removing and installing sliding sunroof adjustment control unit J245 - A4”, page 282

⇒ “2.10.2 Removing and installing sliding sunroof adjustment control unit J245 - A5”, page 283

2.10.1 Removing and installing sliding sunroof adjustment control unit - J245- - A4

Removing

– Switch off ignition.

– Remove sun visor (left and right) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Equipment; Removing and installing sun visor .

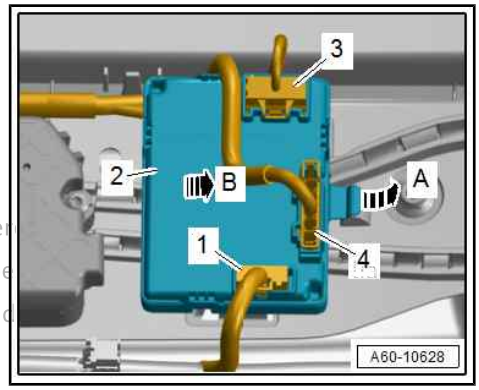
– Remove centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Equipment; Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor .

– Remove interior light/reading light (front) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/reading light (front) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug electrical connectors -1, 2, 4-.

– Release retaining tab -arrow A- and slide sliding sunroof adjustment control unit - J245- -item 2- out of bracket towards right side of vehicle -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- If renewing the sliding sunroof adjustment control unit - J245- , select the function "Replace control unit" for the corresponding control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester, Diagnosis, or refer to ⇒ page 284 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commer
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG doe
with respect to the correctness of information in this d

2.10.2 Removing and installing sliding sunroof adjustment control unit - J245- - A5

Removing

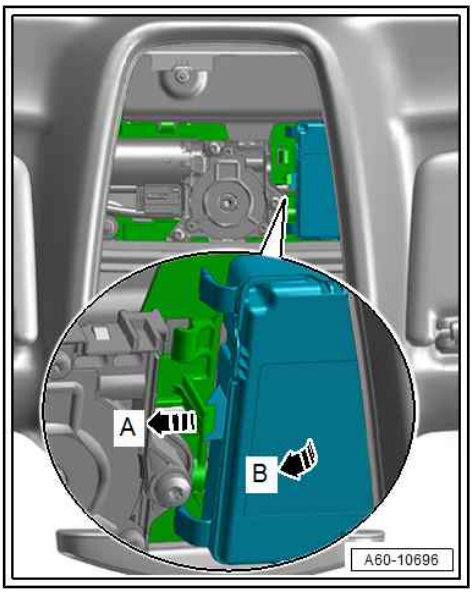
– Switch off ignition.

– Remove sun visor (left and right) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Equipment; Removing and installing sun visor .

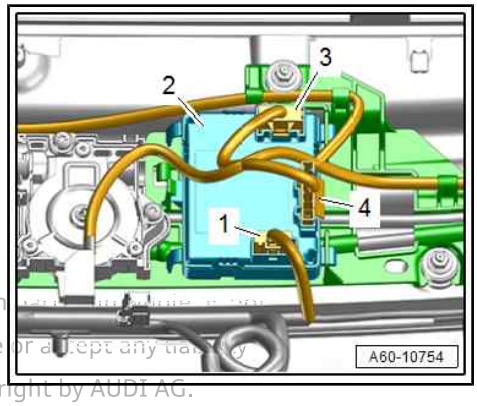
– Remove centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Equipment; Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor .

– Remove interior light/reading light (front) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/reading light (front) .

– Release retaining tab -arrow A- and take sliding sunroof adjustment control unit - J245- out of bracket towards left side of vehicle -arrow B-.



– Unplug electrical connectors -1, 3, 4- on sliding sunroof adjustment control unit - J245- -item 2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- If renewing the sliding sunroof adjustment control unit - J245- , select the function “Replace control unit” for the corresponding control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester, `Diagnosis`, or refer to ⇒ page 284 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in [illegible] permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.11 Adapting sliding sunroof adjustment control unit - J245-

If sliding sunroof adjustment control unit - J245- has been renewed, it must be activated after installation.

– Connect vehicle diagnostic tester .

– Switch on ignition.

– Select and start `Diagnosis` mode.

– Select `Test plan` tab.

– Choose `Select own test` and select following options one after the other:

- Body
- General body repairs
- 01 - Self-diagnosis compatible systems
- CA - Sun roof control unit J245
- CA - Sun roof control unit, functions J245
- CA - Replace control unit

– Start selected program and follow instructions on display of vehicle diagnostic tester.

2.12 Removing and installing sliding sunroof motor - V1-

⇒ “2.12.1 Removing and installing sliding sunroof motor V1 - A4”, page 284

⇒ “2.12.2 Removing and installing sliding sunroof motor V1 - A5”, page 285

2.12.1 Removing and installing sliding sunroof motor - V1- - A4

Removing

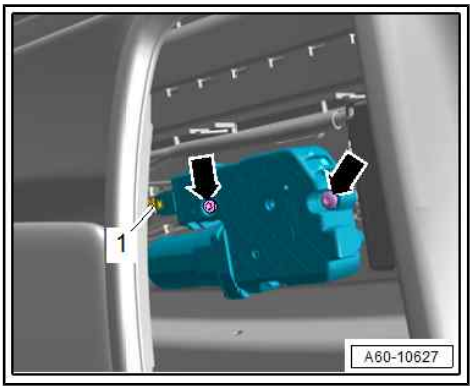
- Glass panel (front) for sunroof closed.

– Switch off ignition.

– Remove interior light/reading light (front) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/ reading light (front) .

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and remove sliding sunroof motor - V1- .

– Unplug electrical connector -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - sliding sunroof”, page 238

2.12.2 Removing and installing sliding sunroof motor - V1- - A5

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

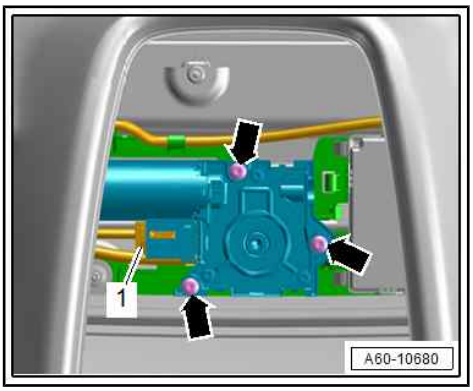
• Glass panel for sunroof closed.

– Switch off ignition.

– Remove interior light/reading light (front) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/ reading light (front) .

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and remove sliding sunroof motor - V1- .

– Unplug electrical connector -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A5”, page 243

2.13 Adapting sliding sunroof motor - V1-

– Connect vehicle diagnostic tester .

– Switch on ignition.

– Select and start `Diagnosis` mode.

– Select `Test plan` tab.

– Choose `Select own test` and select following options one after the other:

♦ Body

♦ General body repairs

♦ 01 - Self-diagnosis compatible systems

♦ CA - Sun roof control unit J245

♦ CA - Sun roof control unit, functions J245

♦ CA - Basic setting

♦ CA - J245 - Sun roof no basic setting

– Start selected program and follow instructions on display of vehicle diagnostic tester.

2.14 Removing and installing bellows

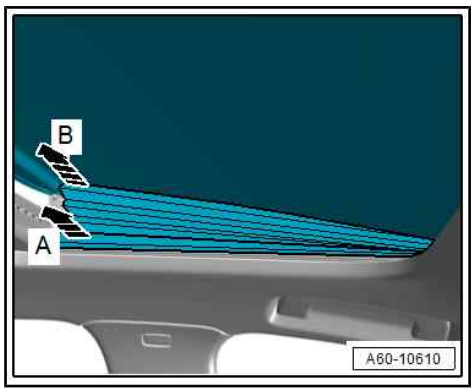
Removing

– Tilt glass panel open.

– Move sunroof blind as far back as possible.

– First take hold of bellows at bottom rear and detach towards centre of vehicle -arrow A-.

– Then detach bellows from glass panel at top -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

2.15 Removing and installing rubber strip

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ “2.15.1 Removing and installing rubber strip - A4 Avant and country-specific version”, page 286

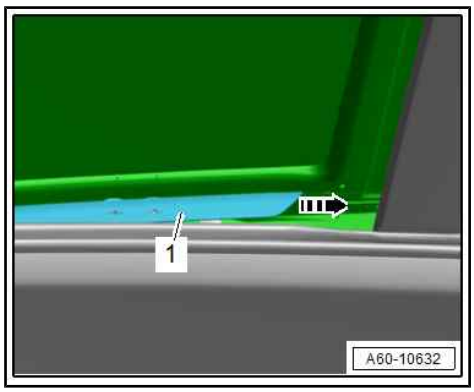
⇒ “2.15.2 Removing and installing rubber strip - A5”, page 286

2.15.1 Removing and installing rubber strip - A4 Avant and country-specific version

Removing

– Open glass panel until it is raised at front and rear.

– Pull rubber strip -1- towards rear -arrow- and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

2.15.2 Removing and installing rubber strip - A5

Removing

– Open glass panel until it is raised at front and rear.

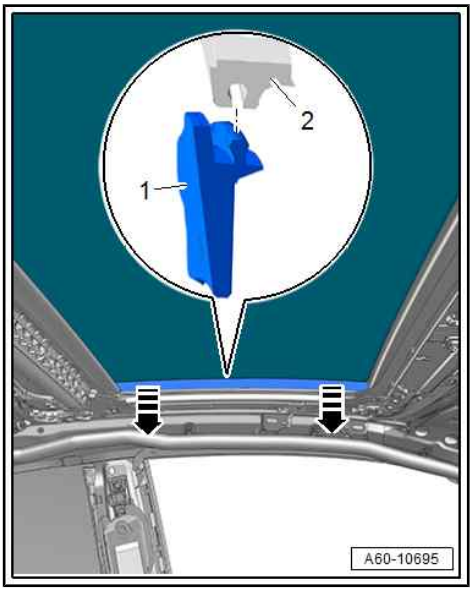
– Pull rubber strip -1- off downwards -arrows- and remove.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert rubber strip -1- in guide -2- on glass panel and press it on over entire length.

• Retaining strip for rubber strip must engage in guide.



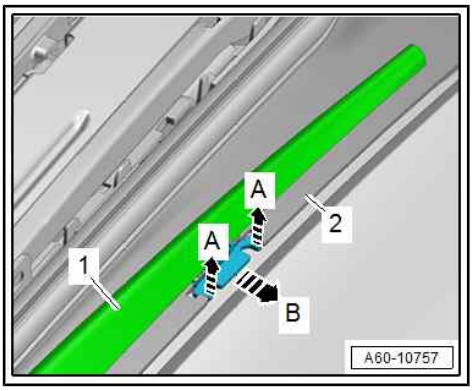
2.16 Removing and installing side trim

Removing

– Remove sunroof seal ⇒ page 292 .

– Detach side trim -1- from sunroof frame; to do so, carefully release hinges upwards -arrow A- and detach outwards -arrow B-.

– Carefully release hinges for trim towards side and detach outwards from sunroof frame.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

2.17 Removing and installing slide/tilt mechanism

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ "2.17.1 Removing and installing slide/tilt mechanism", page 287

⇒ "2.17.2 Removing and installing guide for slide/tilt mechanism", page 289

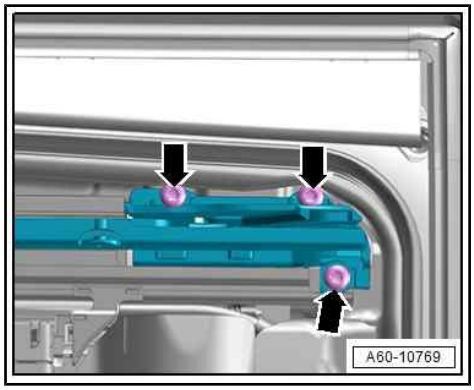
2.17.1 Removing and installing slide/tilt mechanism

Removing

– Remove glass panel ⇒ page 277 .

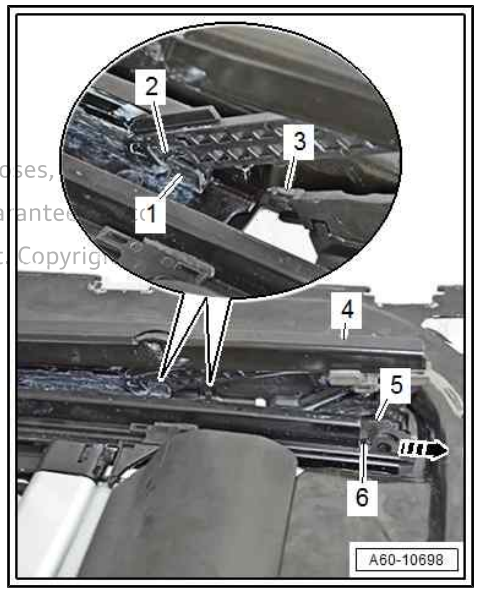
– Remove sunroof motor ⇒ page 285 .

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

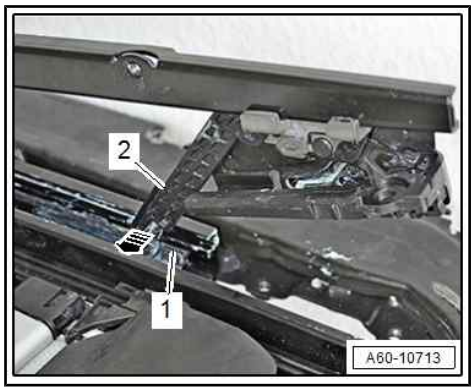


– Slide actuator -4- for glass panel towards rear into position shown.
– Pull mounting -5- out of sunroof frame -arrow- until retaining lug -6- can be accessed.
– Pivot tilt mechanism upwards until mounting -3- on sunroof frame and pivot arm -2- on actuator -1- can be accessed.

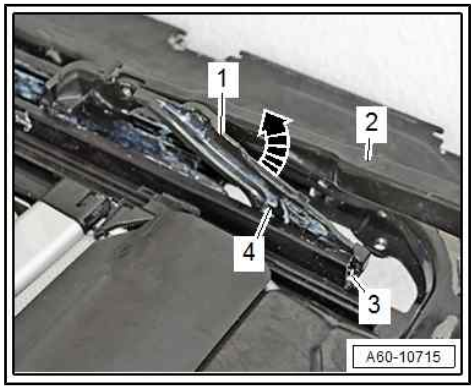
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or assume liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright



– Pull pivot arm -2- out of guide -1- on sunroof frame and pivot it upwards.



– Pull actuator -2- for glass panel towards rear until guide -3- can be accessed.
– Swivel pivot arm -1- for slide mechanism upwards out of actuator -4- for slide mechanism -arrow-.
– Guide actuator for glass panel out of guides on sunroof frame.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A5”, page 243

2.17.2 Removing and installing guide for slide/ tilt mechanism

Removing

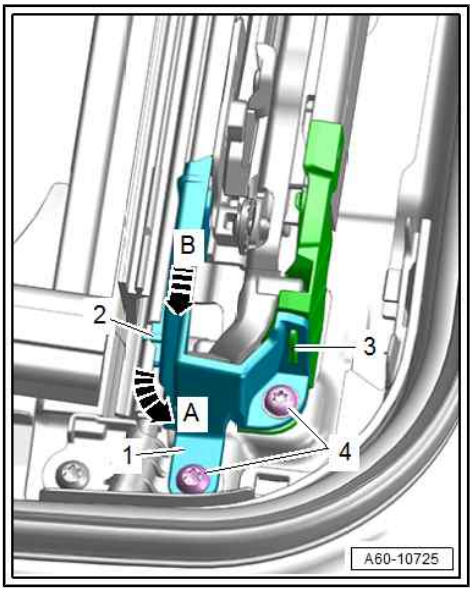
– Remove wind deflector ⇒ page 308 .

– Loosen bolts for slide/tilt mechanism so that it can be lifted in order to remove guide ⇒ page 287 . Mark installation position for re-installation.

– Remove bolts -4-.

– Release fastener -3- and pivot guide -1- outwards -arrow A- until catch -2- can be accessed.

– Detach guide towards front -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A5”, page 243

2.18 Removing and installing sunroof seals

⇒ “2.18.1 Removing and installing sunroof seals - A4 Saloon”, page 289

⇒ “2.18.2 Removing and installing sunroof seals - A4 Avant and country-specific version”, page 290

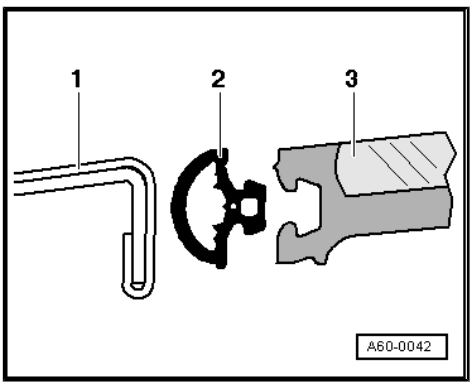
⇒ “2.18.3 Removing and installing sunroof seals - A5”, page 291

2.18.1 Removing and installing sunroof seals - A4 Saloon

Removing

– Remove glass panel ⇒ page 275 .

– Pull seal -2- out of glass panel -3-.



1 - Roof

Installing

– Starting in centre, press new seal into groove on glass panel at rear edge of panel.

Note:

To make it easier to install seal, coat edge of panel with soap solution.

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 303 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.18.2 Removing and installing sunroof seals - A4 Avant and country-specific version

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 240 / ⇒ page 242 .

♦ Removing seal for roof opening ⇒ page 290

♦ Removing seal for glass panel (rear) ⇒ page 291

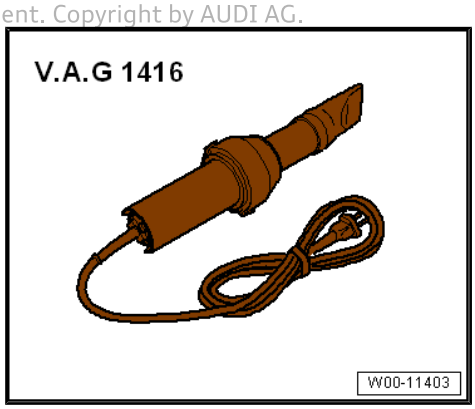
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Roller - T10563-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-



♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

♦ Primer - D 355 205 A2-

♦ Applicator - D 009 500 25-

Removing and installing seal for roof opening:

Removing

– Remove glass panels (front and rear) ⇒ page 275 .

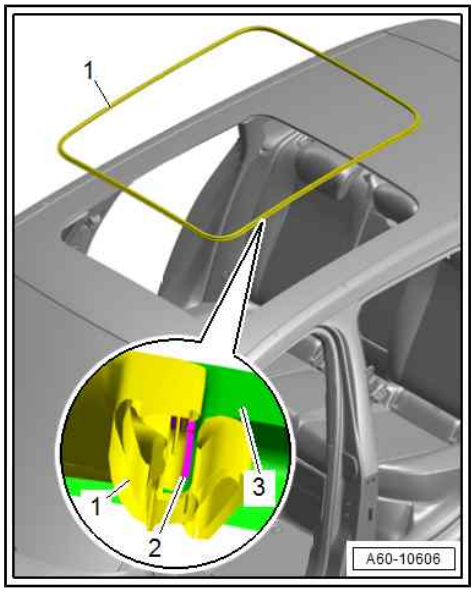
– Detach seal -1- for roof opening (heat additionally with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- if necessary).

Installing

- The vehicle and the seal must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.
- When installing, do not stretch seal.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.



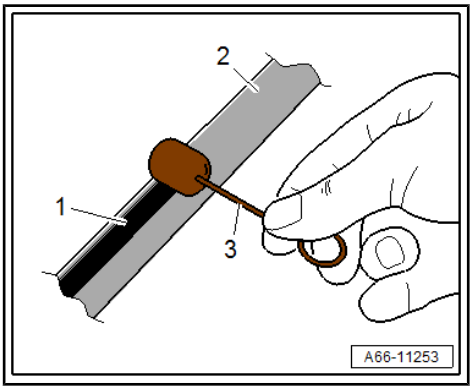
– Apply primer - D 355 205 A2- -item 1- to bonding area -2- on painted surface using applicator - D 009 500 25- -item 3- and allow to flash off for 10 minutes.

• If the primer - D 355 205 A2- has been allowed to flash off for more than 2 hours, primer must be re-applied.

– Starting at rear centre of roof, press seal onto body seam; at the same time, pull protective film off adhesive strip.

• The butt joint of the seal must be positioned at the rear, aligned with the centre of the roof.

– Press seal onto edge of roof in area of adhesive strip in two stages using roller - T10563- .



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.

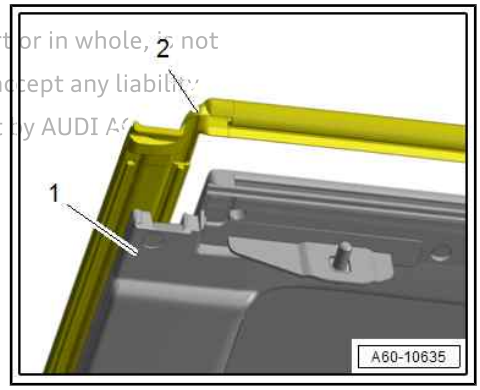
Removing and installing seal for glass panel (rear):

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

– Remove glass panel (rear) ⇒ page 276 .

– Pull seal -2- out of glass panel -1-.



Installing

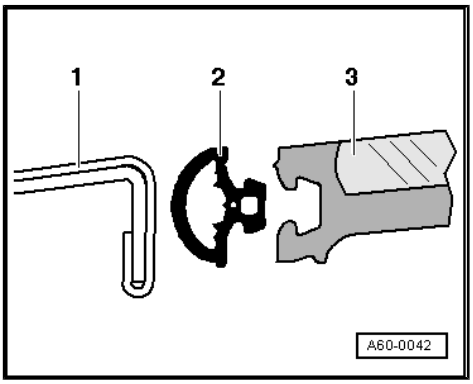
– Starting at ends, press seal -2- carefully and evenly into groove on glass panel -3-.

1 - Roof

Note:

To make it easier to install seal, coat edge of panel with soap solution.

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .



2.18.3 Removing and installing sunroof seals - A5

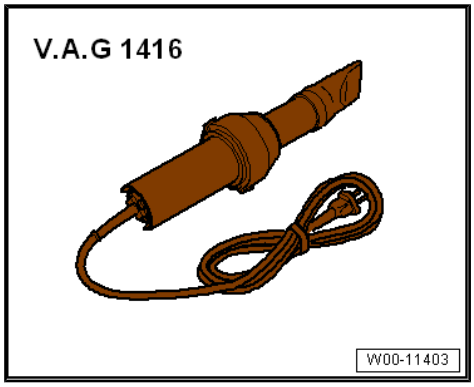
• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 243 .

♦ Removing and installing outer sunroof seal ⇒ page 292

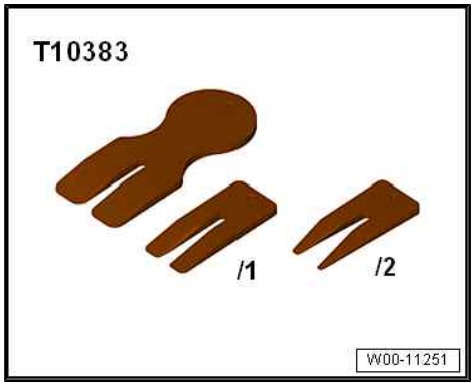
♦ Removing and installing self-adhesive sunroof seals ⇒ page 293

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-



- Wedges - T10383-



- Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

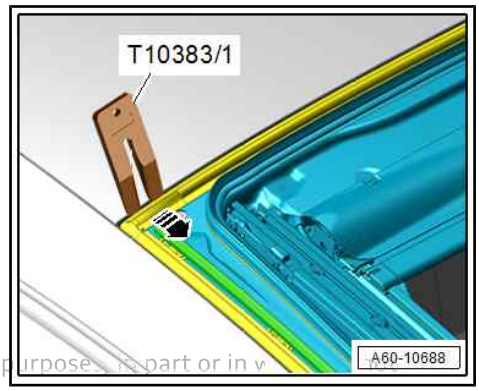
Removing and installing outer sunroof seal:

Removing

– Remove glass panel ⇒ page 277 .

– Loosen outer sunroof seal using wedge -T10383/1- and pull it off -arrow-.

– If necessary, heat outer sunroof seal additionally using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .



Installing

- The vehicle and the seal must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.
- When installing, do not stretch seal.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

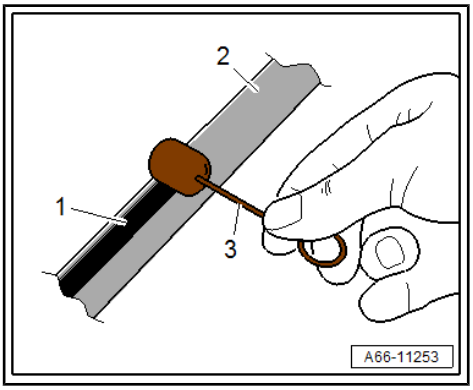
– Apply primer - D 355 205 A2- -item 1- to bonding area -2- on painted surface using applicator - D 009 500 25- -item 3- and allow to flash off for 10 minutes.

• If the primer - D 355 205 A2- has been allowed to flash off for more than 2 hours, primer must be re-applied.

– Peel protective film off adhesive tape.

– Position seal at sunroof frame and at glass panel and press on over entire length.

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.



Removing and installing self-adhesive sunroof seals:

Removing

– Open glass panel until it is raised at front and rear.

– Detach seal (if necessary, heat it additionally using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-).

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

• The vehicle and the seal must be at room temperature.

• The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

• When installing, do not stretch seal.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Clean bonding surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

– Peel protective film off adhesive tape.

– Position seal and press on over entire length.

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.19 Removing and installing sunroof sun blind

⇒ “2.19.1 Removing and installing sunroof sun blind - A4 Avant”, page 293

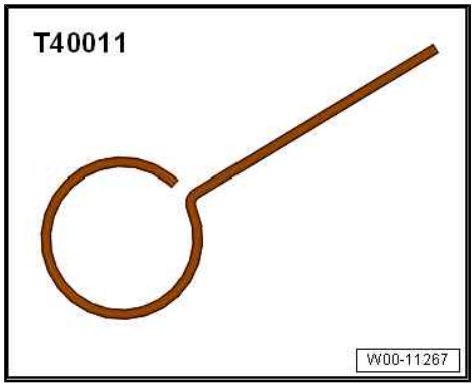
⇒ “2.19.2 Removing and installing sunroof sun blind - A4, country-specific version ”, page 298

⇒ “2.19.3 Removing and installing sunroof sun blind - A5”, page 299

2.19.1 Removing and installing sunroof sun blind - A4 Avant

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Locking pin - T40011-



♦ Setting gauge - 3371-



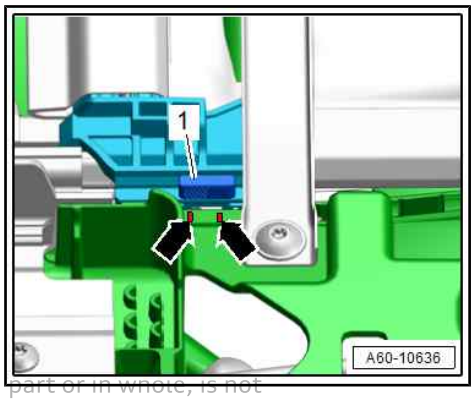
Removing

– Move sunroof sun blind all the way back.

– Remove sunroof frame ⇒ page 259 .

– Remove glass panel (rear) ⇒ page 276 .

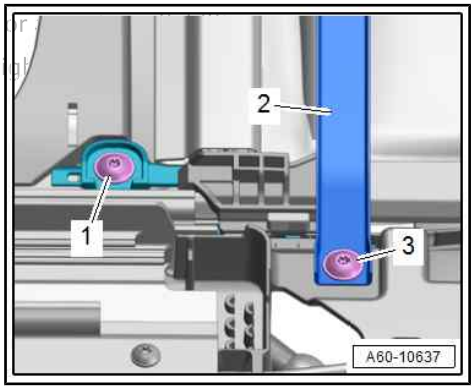
– Using sun blind manual release, position sun blind guide so that slide -1- is centred at the two markings -arrows- on sunroof frame.



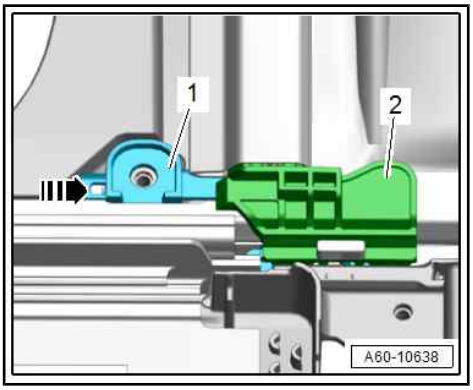
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Audi AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolts -1, 3- on both sides.

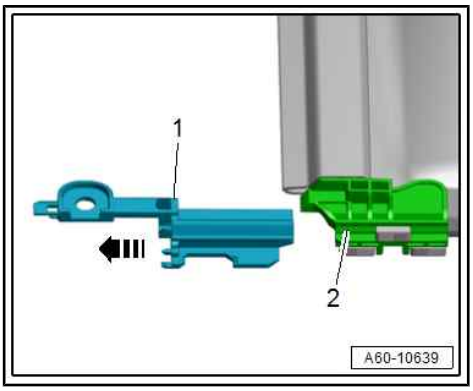
– Detach cross-piece -2-.



– Push guide -1- towards rear -arrow- on left and right and detach rail -2- of sunroof sun blind.

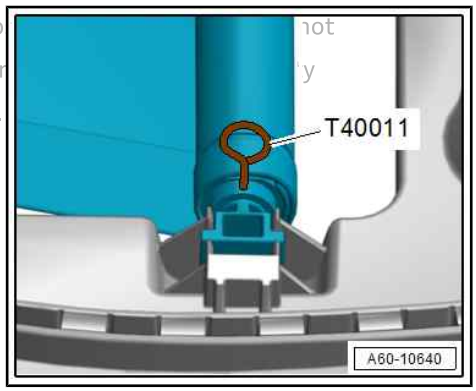


– Pull guide -1- out of rail -2- of sunroof sun blind -arrow-.

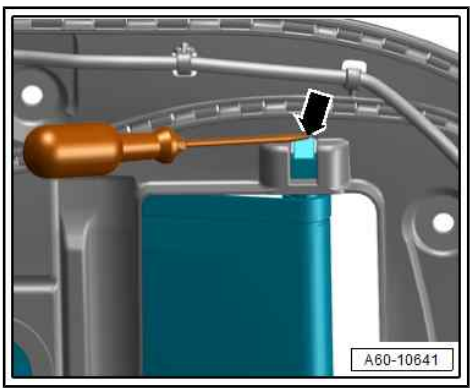


– Insert locking pin - T40011- into locating hole on left side of sunroof sun blind; if necessary, turn sun blind back and forth slightly to do so.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guar y
with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



– Use a screwdriver to release retaining tab -arrow- and detach sun blind.

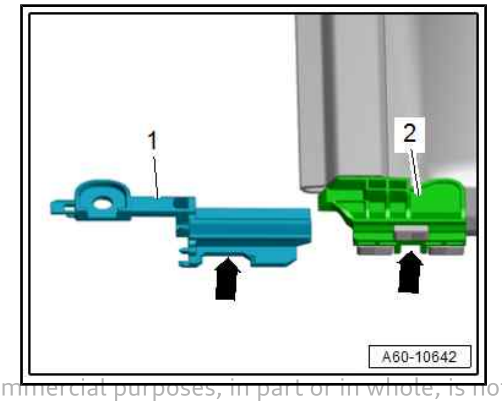


Installing

- The sun blind must be rolled up.

– Insert guide -1- into end piece of rail -2- of sunroof sun blind.

• The recesses -arrows- on both components must be in line.



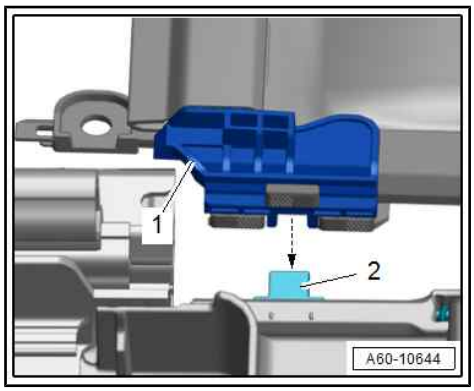
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document by AUDI AG.

– Check that actuator -1- of cable for sunroof sun blind is positioned between markings -arrows- on sunroof frame.

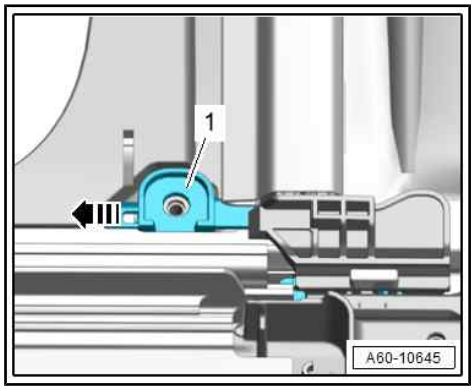


– Insert sunroof sun blind with guide into sunroof frame.

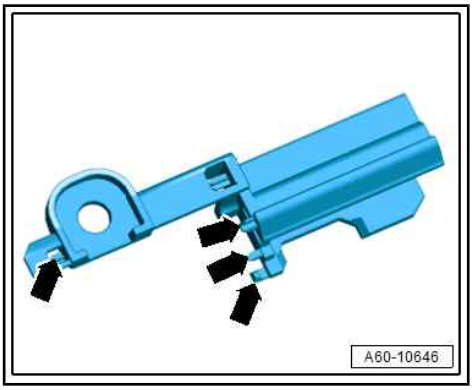
• Actuator -2- on cable of sunroof sun blind must engage -arrow- in recess on end piece -1- of rail.



– Push guide -1- towards front -arrow-.



– Check that all guide tabs -arrows- engage in the respective mating pieces on sunroof frame.



– Position cross-piece -4- on sunroof frame.

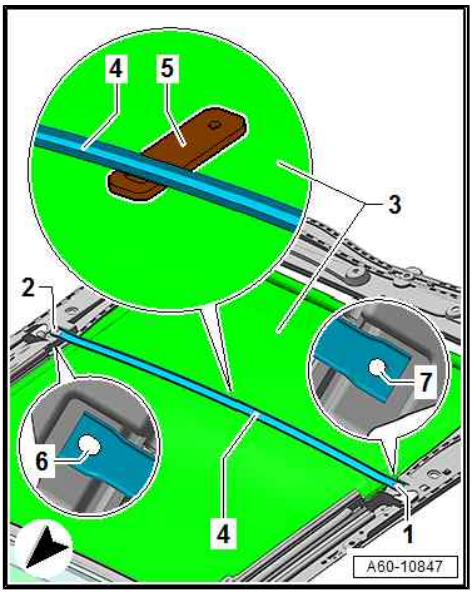
• End with elongated hole -6- must be located on right side.

– Tighten bolt -1- on left side of cross-piece -4-.

– Insert setting gauge - 3371- -5- centrally between cross-piece -4- and sunroof sun blind -3-.

• Distance between cross-piece -4- and sunroof sun blind -3- must be 3.5 mm before bolt -2- on right side is tightened.

– Tighten bolt -2- on right side of cross-piece -4-.

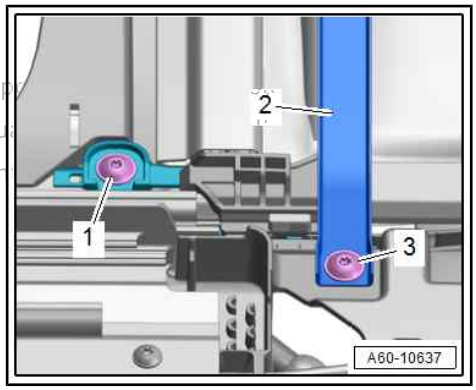


– Tighten bolt -1-.

If the shaft in the sunroof sun blind roller has unwound, the pre-tension can be re-established as follows.

– Turn shaft of unwound sunroof sun blind until slight resistance is noticeable.

– Then turn shaft at end piece 12 turns while holding roller in place and secure with locking pin - T40011- to prevent it from unwinding.

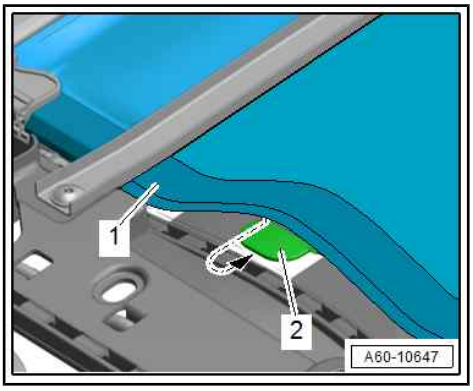


Continued:

– Insert shaft of sunroof sun blind into guide on sunroof frame.

– Remove locking pin - T40011- from sun blind roller only after it has been inserted in sunroof frame.

– Make sure that reinforcement -1- at side of sunroof sun blind engages in guide lug -2- on frame -arrow-.



Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 303 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.3.1 Exploded view - sunroof sun blind, A4 Avant”, page 251

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
with respect to the correctness of information in this documen

2.19.2 Removing and installing sunroof sun blind - A4, country-specific version

Removing

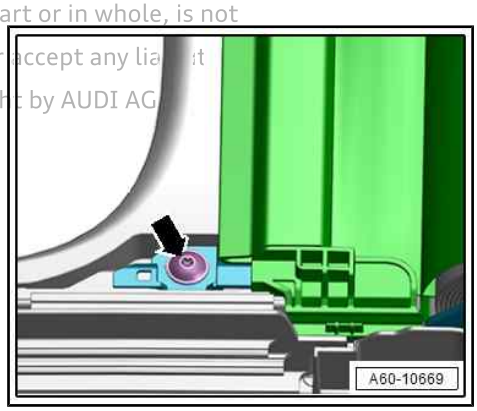
– Move sunroof sun blind all the way back.

– Remove sunroof frame ⇒ page 259 .

– Remove glass panel (rear) ⇒ page 276 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

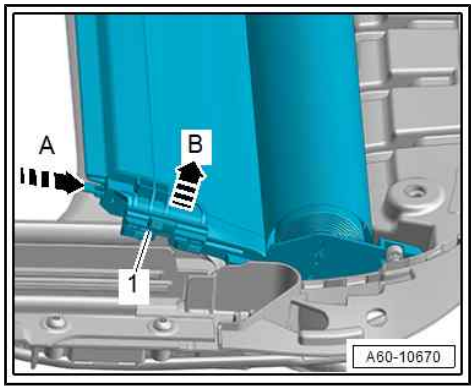
– Unscrew bolt -arrow- (left and right).



– Press guide -1- (left and right) towards rear -arrow A-.

– Detach guides upwards together with sunroof sun blind -arrow B-.

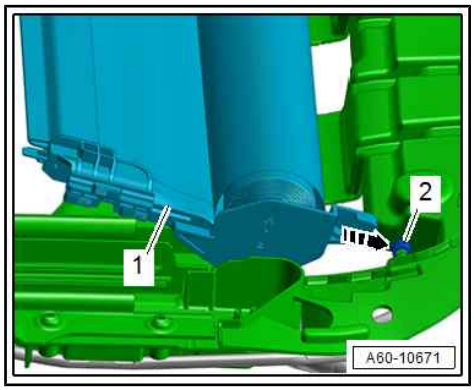
• The sunroof sun blind must be rolled up.



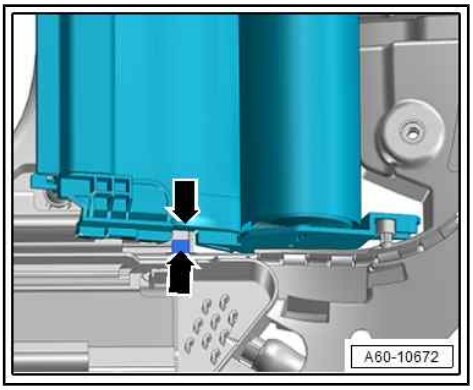
Installing

• The sun blind must be rolled up.

– Insert guide -1- (left and right) in pin -2- on sliding sunroof frame -arrow-.



- Actuator (left and right) on sliding sunroof frame must engage in openings in guide -arrows-.



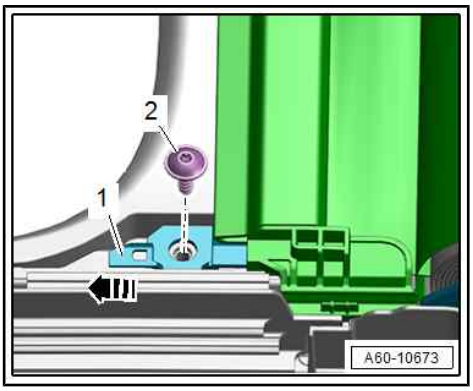
– Press guide -1- (left and right) towards front -arrow- and engage it in position.
– Tighten bolt -2-.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 303 .

Tightening torques

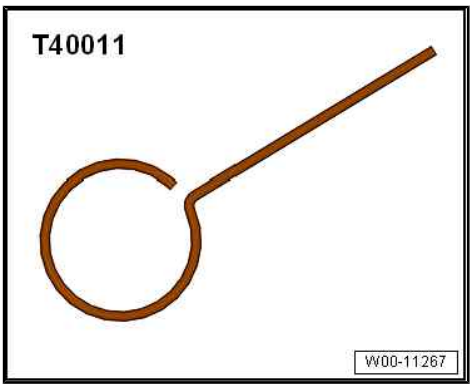
◆ ⇒ “2.3.2 Exploded view - sunroof sun blind, A4, country-specific version ”, page 252



2.19.3 Removing and installing sunroof sun blind - A5

Special tools and workshop equipment required

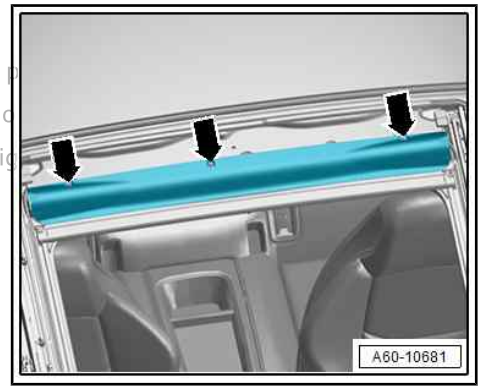
◆ Locking pin - T40011-



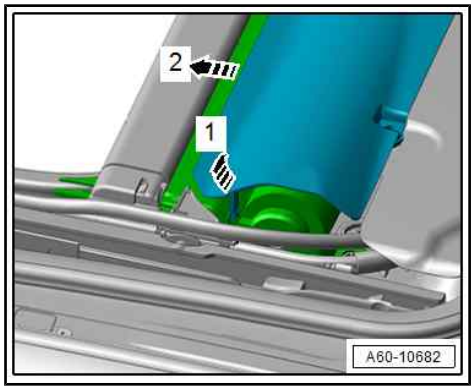
Removing

– Remove glass panel ⇒ page 277 .
– Remove bolts -arrows- at cover panel.

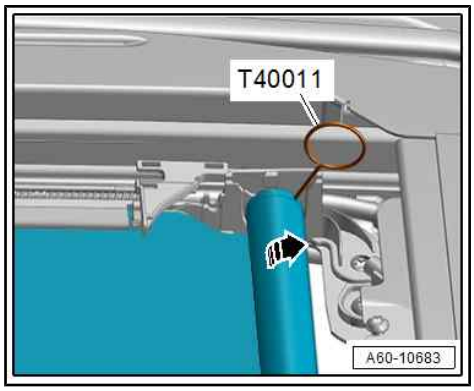
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee c
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrig



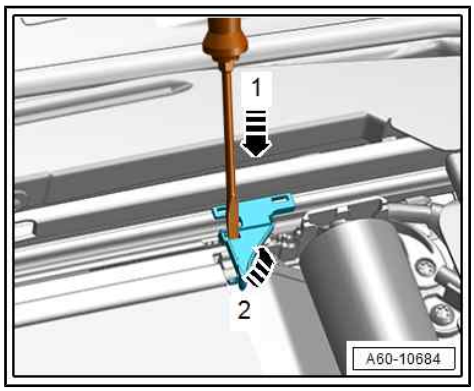
– Disengage sides of cover (right and left) -arrow 1- and pull off towards front -arrow 2-.
– Move sunroof sun blind approx. $^{2}/_{3}$ of the way back.



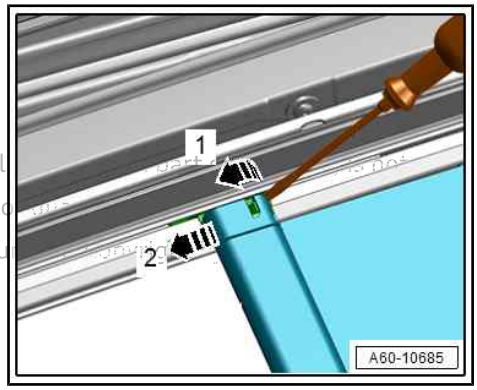
– Turn sunroof sun blind slightly towards rear -arrow- until it can be locked in place with locking pin - T40011- .
– Disengage sunroof sun blind from mounting.



– Release guide with a screwdriver -arrow 1- and fold it upwards -arrow 2-; at the same time, disengage guide strap for sunroof sun blind from guide.

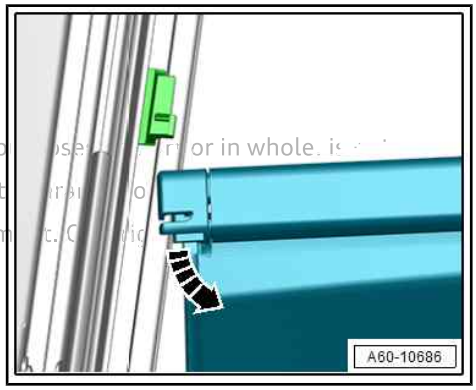


– Unclip slide at mounting for operating cable -arrow 1- and detach it from mounting towards front -arrow 2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does no
with respect to the correctness of information in this docu

– Disengage slide from guide rail -arrow- and detach sunroof sun blind.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 303 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - sunroof sun blind”, page 251

2.20 Removing and installing sunroof roller blind motor - V260-

⇒ “2.20.1 Removing and installing sunroof roller blind motor V260 - A4 Avant”, page 301

⇒ “2.20.2 Removing and installing sunroof roller blind motor V260 - A4, country-specific version ”, page 302

⇒ “2.20.3 Removing and installing sunroof roller blind motor V260 - A5”, page 302

2.20.1 Removing and installing sunroof roller blind motor - V260- - A4 Avant

Removing

– Remove C-pillar trim (driver side) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing C-pillar trim .

– Remove roof end trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim panels; Removing and installing roof end trim .

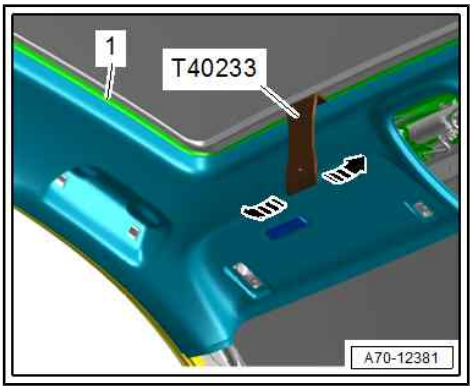
– Remove D-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing D-pillar trim .

– Fully open sun blind.

– Clean removal wedge - T40233- to avoid soiling moulded headliner.

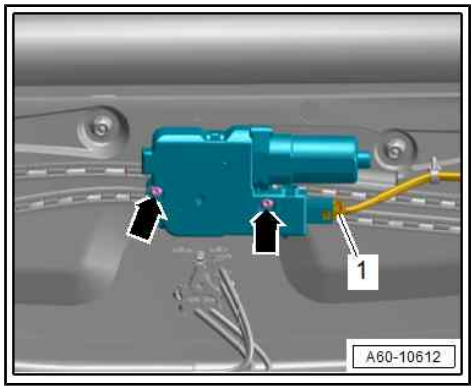
– Insert removal wedge - T40233- between frame -1- for sunroof and moulded headliner.

– Release moulded headliner from frame for sunroof all round using removal wedge - T40233- -arrows-.



– Unplug electrical connector -1-.

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and remove sunroof roller blind motor - V260- .



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 303 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.3.1 Exploded view - sunroof sun blind, A4 Avant”, page 251

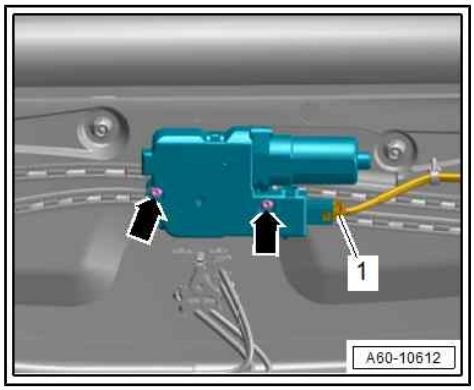
2.20.2 Removing and installing sunroof roller blind motor - V260- - A4, country-specific version

Removing

– Detach moulded headliner and place on seats ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim panels; Removing and installing moulded headliner .

– Unplug electrical connector -1-.

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and remove sunroof roller blind motor - V260- .



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 303 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.3.2 Exploded view - sunroof sun blind, A4, country-specific version ”, page 252

2.20.3 Removing and installing sunroof roller blind motor - V260- - A5

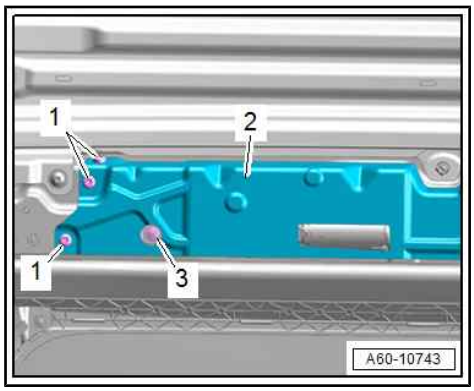
Removing

– Move front seat backrests to rearmost position.

– Detach moulded headliner and place on seats ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim panels; Removing and installing moulded headliner .

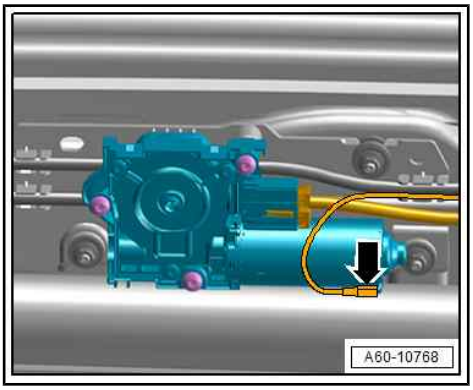
– Sportback: Unscrew nut -3- and bolts -1-.

– Detach cover -2-.



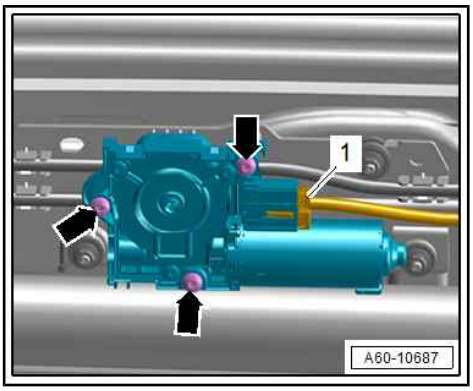
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– If fitted, disconnect earth wire -arrow-.



– Unplug electrical connector -1-.

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach sunroof roller blind motor.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 303 .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - sunroof sun blind”, page 251

2.21 Adapting sunroof roller blind motor - V260-

– Connect vehicle diagnostic tester .

– Switch on ignition.

– Select and start `Diagnosis` mode.

– Select `Test plan` tab.

– Choose `Select own test` and select following options one after the other:

♦ Body

♦ General body repairs

♦ 01 - Self-diagnosis compatible systems

♦ CA - Sun roof control unit J245

♦ CA - Sun roof control unit, functions J245

♦ CA - Basic setting

♦ CA - J394 - roof roller blind no basic setting

– Start selected program and follow instructions on display of vehicle diagnostic tester.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

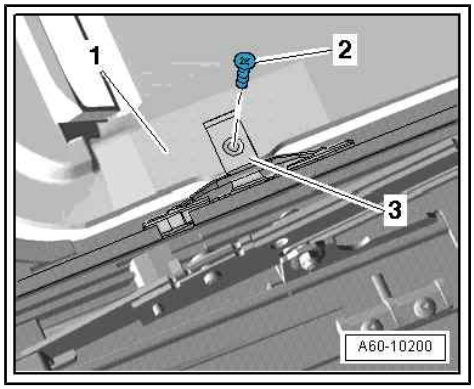
2.22 Removing and installing sun blind

• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 238 .

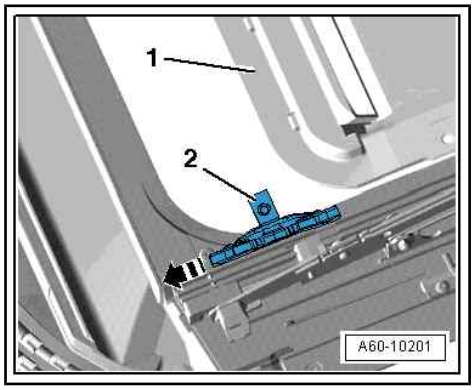
Removing

– Remove glass panel ⇒ page 275 .

– Unscrew bolt -2- for slide -3-.



– Push sun blind -1- slightly to rear.
– Pull out front slide -2- towards front -arrow-.
– Push out rear slide towards rear.
– Detach sun blind upwards.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 303 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - sliding sunroof, A4 Saloon”, page 238

2.23 Removing and installing slide

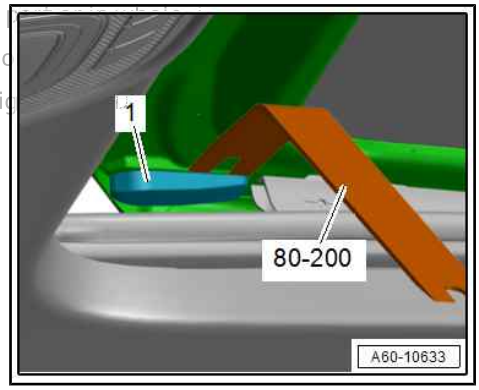
Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal lever - 80-200-

Removing

– Open glass panel until slide is accessible.
– Prise off slide -1- using removal lever - 80-200- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Carefully press retaining strips of slide into mounting on glass panel.
– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .

2.24 Removing and installing wind deflector

⇒ “2.24.1 Removing and installing wind deflector - A4 Saloon”, page 305

⇒ “2.24.2 Removing and installing wind deflector - A4 Avant”, page 305

⇒ “2.24.3 Removing and installing wind deflector - A4, country-specific version ”, page 307

⇒ “2.24.4 Removing and installing wind deflector - A5”, page 308

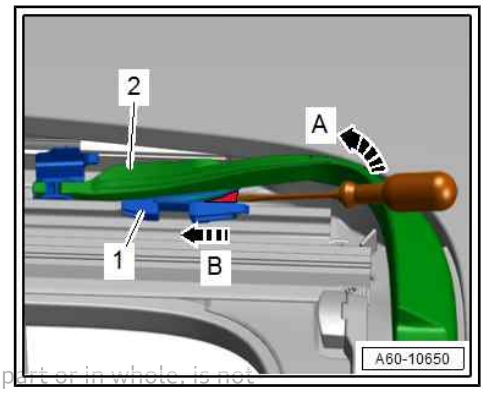
2.24.1 Removing and installing wind deflector - A4 Saloon

Removing

– Run glass panel towards rear.

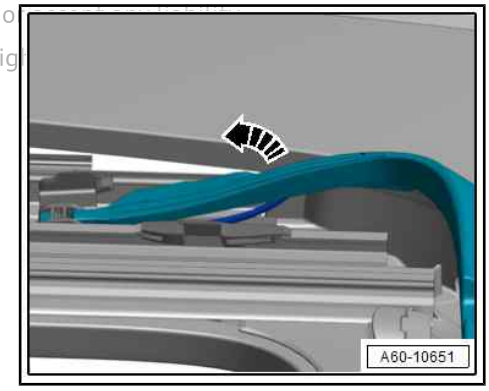
– Lift tab on mounting -1- for wind deflector -2- slightly using a screwdriver -arrow A-.

– Slide mounting for wind deflector towards rear as far as stop -arrow B-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Swing wind deflector upwards -arrow- and disengage from mounting.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Fasten mounting for wind deflector in sunroof frame.

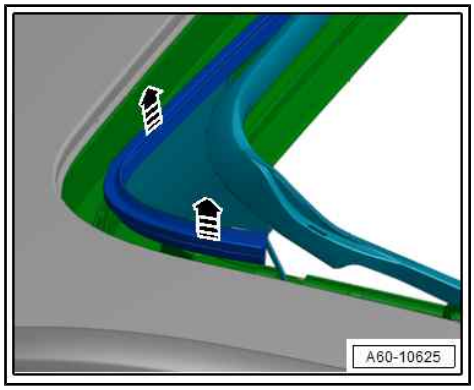
– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .

2.24.2 Removing and installing wind deflector - A4 Avant

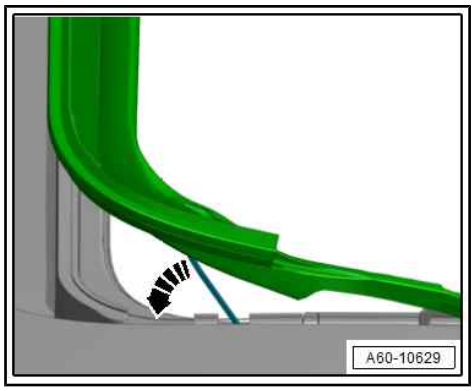
Removing

– Move glass panel (front) all the way back.

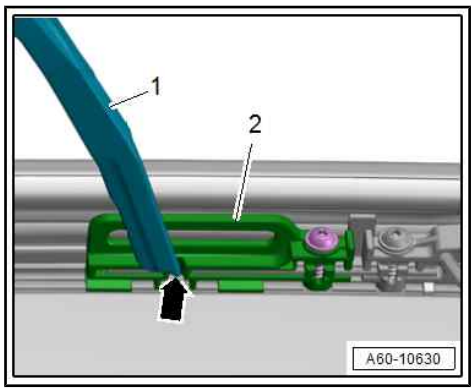
– Starting from side, detach piping at bottom of wind deflector net from sunroof frame -arrow-.



– On left and right, press spring of wind deflector downwards -arrow- and disengage from wind deflector.



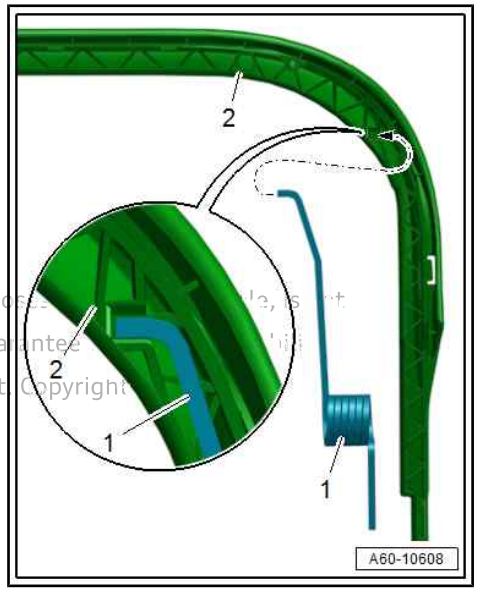
– Position wind deflector frame -1- in mounting -2- on both sides so that it is above notch -arrow-.
– With frame in this position, swing it upwards and detach it to side from mounting.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Engage frame of wind deflector in mounting first.
– Carefully fit spring -1- into notch in frame -2- -arrow-.
– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .



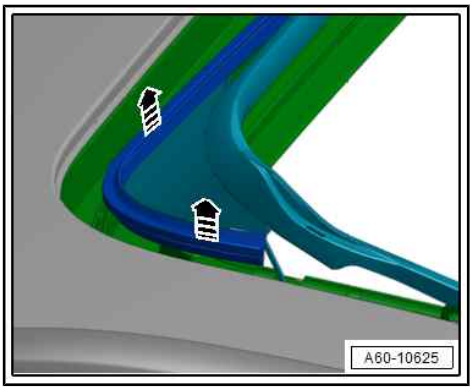
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

2.24.3 Removing and installing wind deflector - A4, country-specific version

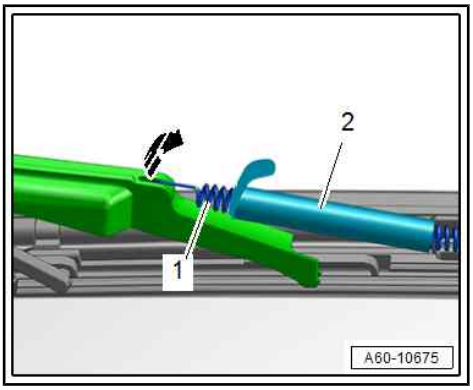
Removing

– Move glass panel (front) all the way back.

– Starting from side, detach piping at bottom of wind deflector net from sunroof frame -arrow-.

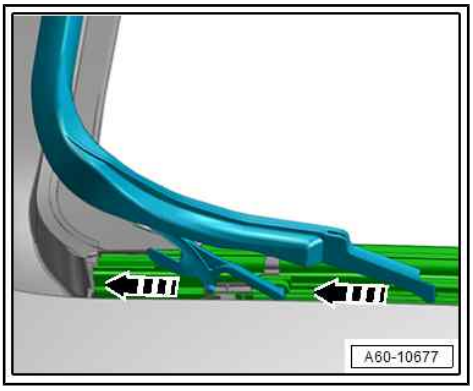


– Fold rubber cover -2- (left and right) back and disengage spring -1- for wind deflector -arrows-.



– Pull wind deflector linkage (left and right) out of guide towards front -arrows-.

– Remove wind deflector.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Ensure that wind deflector net engages in clip -arrow- on linkage.

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p t or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does no y liability with respect to the correctness of information in this docu

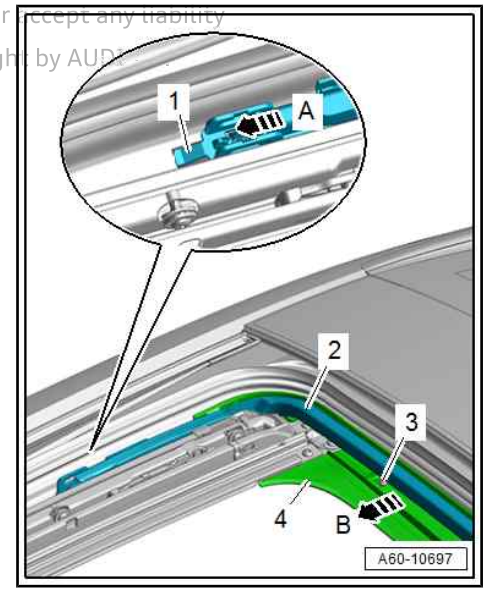
2.24.4 Removing and installing wind deflector - A5

Removing

– Move glass panel all the way back.

– Release retaining clip -1- (both sides) upwards using a small screwdriver.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Press wind deflector -2- (both sides) towards rear -arrow A- and disengage.

– Loosen bolts -3-.

– Lift fabric deflector -4- off sunroof frame towards rear -arrow B-.

– Detach wind deflector -2- together with deflector -4-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Perform adaption ⇒ page 285 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.4 Exploded view - wind deflector”, page 255

2.25 Removing and installing mounting for wind deflector

⇒ “2.25.1 Removing and installing mounting for wind deflector - A4 Saloon”, page 308

⇒ “2.25.2 Removing and installing mounting for wind deflector - A4 Avant”, page 309

⇒ “2.25.3 Removing and installing mounting for wind deflector - A4, country-specific version ”, page 309

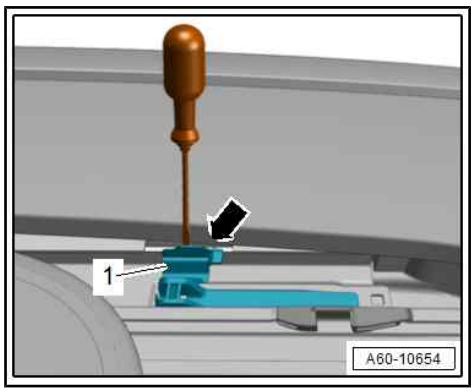
2.25.1 Removing and installing mounting for wind deflector - A4 Saloon

Removing

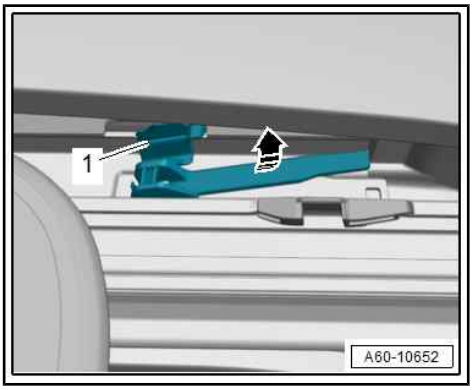
– Remove wind deflector ⇒ page 305 .

– Slide mounting -1- to notch -arrow- in sunroof frame on both sides.

– Use a screwdriver to unclip mountings on left and right out of rail from outside.



– On left and right, slide mounting -1- out through notch in sunroof frame -arrow-.



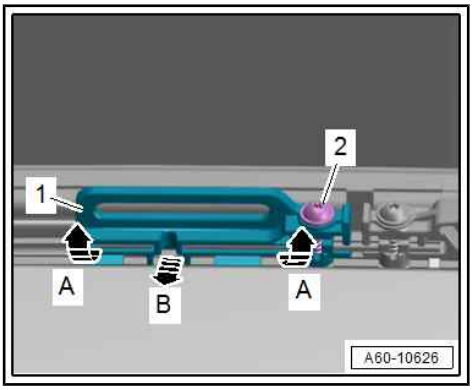
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

2.25.2 Removing and installing mounting for wind deflector - A4 Avant

Removing

– Open glass panel (front).
– Remove bolt -2-.
– Lift retaining tabs slightly -arrows A-.
– Pull wind deflector mounting -1- to side out of sunroof frame -arrow B-.
– Pivot bearing for wind deflector 90° and disengage it from wind deflector.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

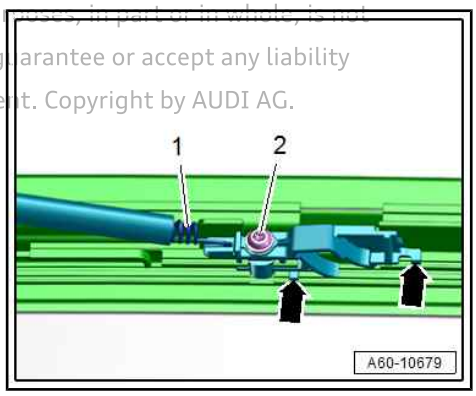
◆ ⇒ “2.4.2 Exploded view - wind deflector, A4 Avant”, page 256

2.25.3 Removing and installing mounting for wind deflector - A4, country-specific version

Removing

– Open glass panel (front).
– Disengage spring -1- for wind deflector.
– Remove bolt -2-.
– Carefully lift retaining tabs -arrows-.
– Detach mounting for wind deflector to one side together with guide for glass panel (front).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.4.3 Exploded view - wind deflector, A4, country-specific version ”, page 257

2.26 Removing and installing spring for wind deflector

⇒ “2.26.1 Removing and installing spring for wind deflector”, page 310

⇒ “2.26.2 Removing and installing spring for wind deflector - A4, country-specific version ”, page 310

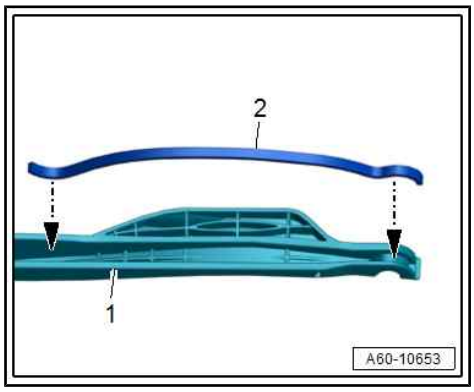
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.26.1 Removing and installing spring for wind deflector

Removing

– Remove wind deflector ⇒ page 305 .

– Take spring -2- out of ends -arrows- of wind deflector -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

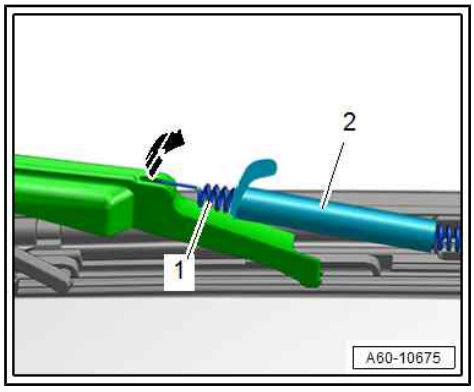
– Fit new springs (use their shape as a guide for correct positioning) -arrows-.

2.26.2 Removing and installing spring for wind deflector - A4, country-specific version

Removing

– Open glass panel (front).

– Fold rubber cover -2- (left and right) back and disengage spring -1- for wind deflector -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

2.27 Opening manually

If the sliding sunroof motor - V1- is defective, the glass panel can be opened manually using a hexagon key. To do so, interior light/ reading light (front) must be removed first ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/ reading light (front) .

3 Water drain hoses

⇒ “3.1 Overview - water drain hoses”, page 311

⇒ “3.2 Cleaning water drain hoses”, page 314

⇒ “3.3 Removing and installing water drain hoses”, page 315

3.1 Overview - water drain hoses

⇒ “3.1.1 Overview - water drain hoses (front), A4”, page 311

⇒ “3.1.2 Overview - water drain hoses (rear), A4 Saloon”, page 312

⇒ “3.1.3 Exploded view - water drain hoses (rear), A4 Avant”, page 313

⇒ “3.1.4 Exploded view - water drain hoses (rear), A5”, page 314

3.1.1 Overview - water drain hoses (front), A4

1 - Grommet

- ❑ Coat with soap solution and press completely into vehicle body

2 - Water drain hose (front)

- ❑ Cleaning ⇒ page 314
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 315

3 - Retaining clip

- ❑ For water drain hose

4 - Retaining clip

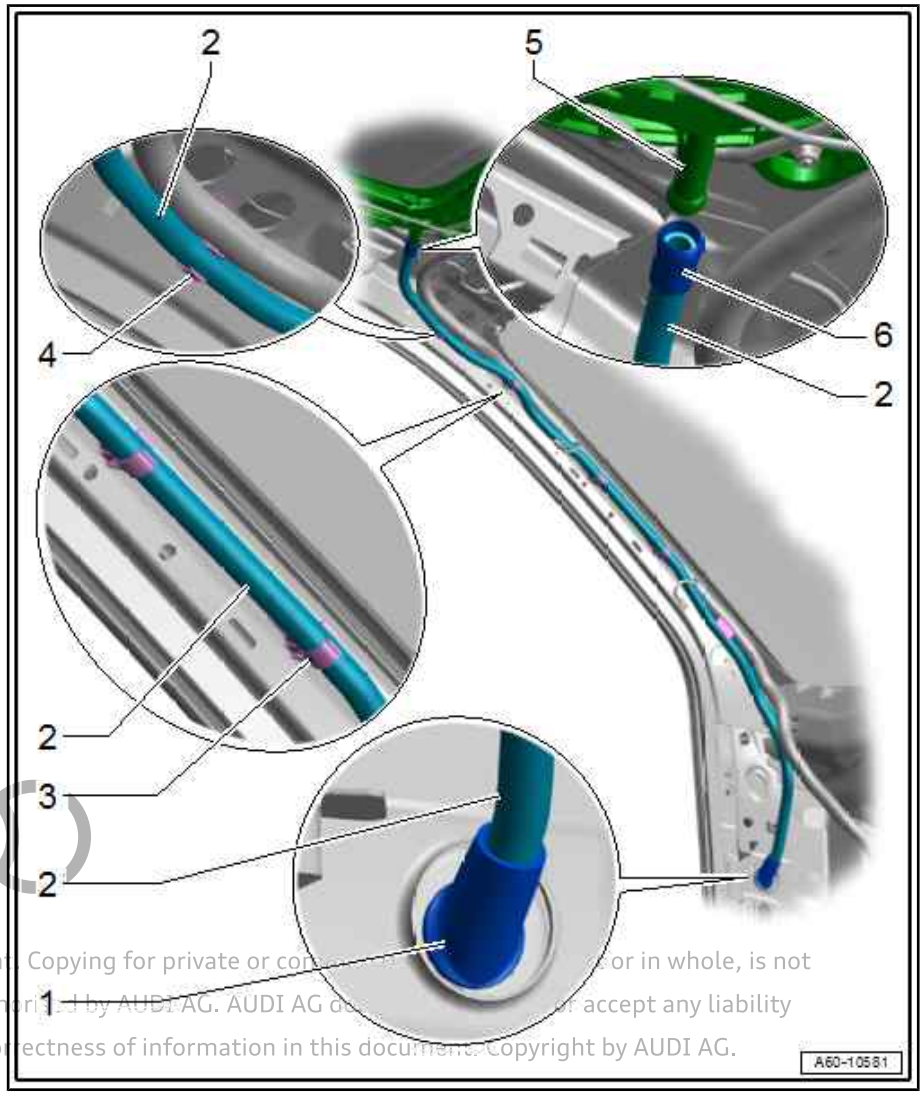
- ❑ For water drain hose
- ❑ A4 Saloon: Different versions on left and right

5 - Connection

- ❑ On sunroof frame

6 - Connecting piece

- ❑ Fit onto connection



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com... or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG do... accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.1.2 Overview - water drain hoses (rear), A4 Saloon

1 - Grommet

- ❑ Coat with soap solution and press completely into vehicle body

2 - Water drain hose (rear)

- ❑ Cleaning ⇒ page 314
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 317

3 - Mounting

- ❑ For water drain hose

4 - Retaining clip

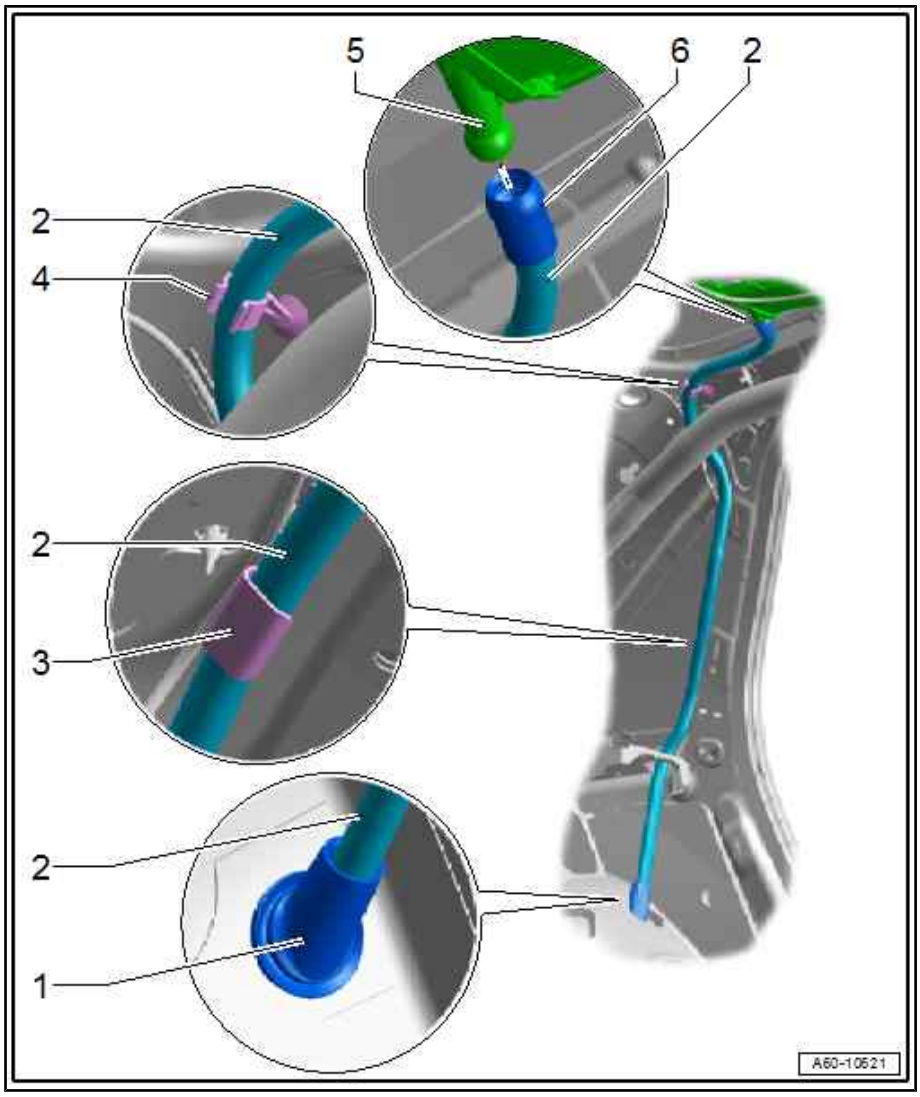
- ❑ For water drain hose

5 - Connection

- ❑ On sunroof frame

6 - Connecting piece

- ❑ Fit onto connection



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.1.3 Exploded view - water drain hoses (rear), A4 Avant

1 - Grommet

- ❑ Coat with soap solution and press completely into vehicle body

2 - Water drain hose (rear)

- ❑ Cleaning ⇒ page 314
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 317

3 - Longitudinal reinforcement

- ❑ With opening for water drain hose

4 - Connecting piece

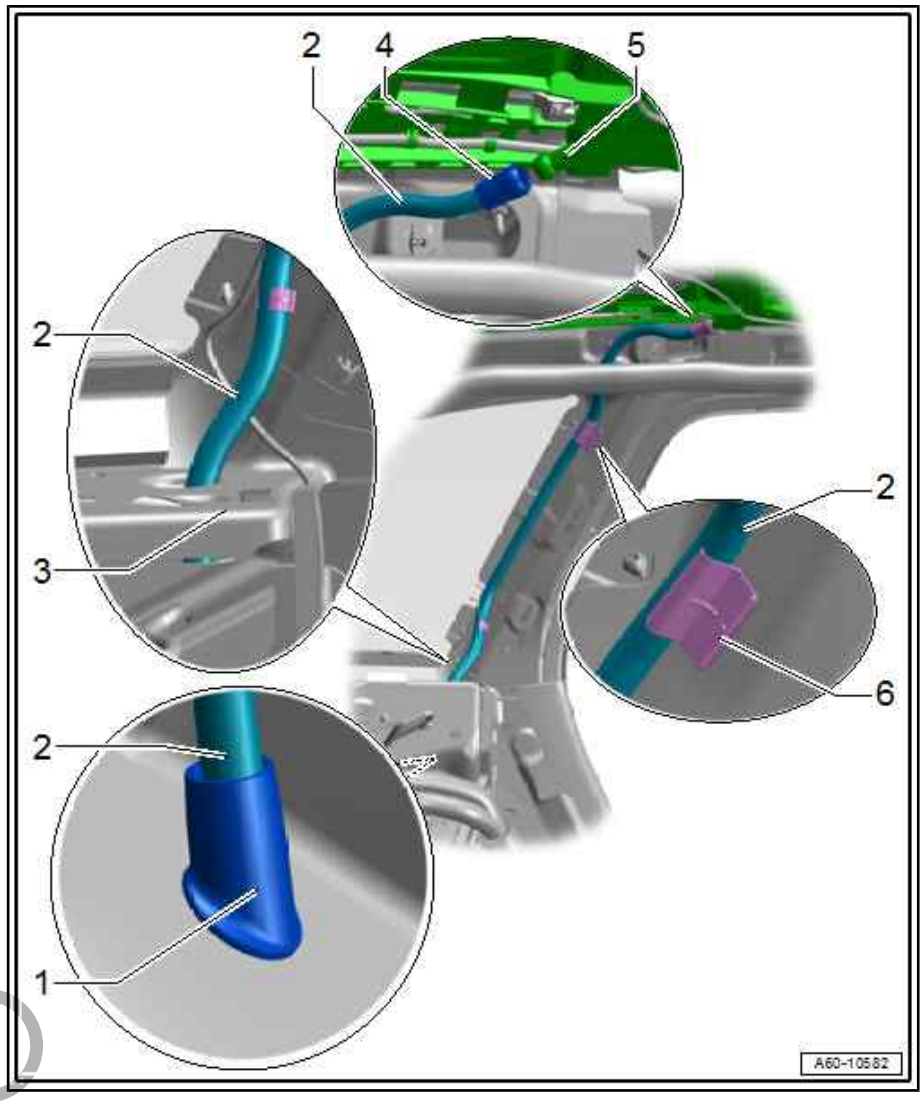
- ❑ Fit onto connection

5 - Connection

- ❑ On sunroof frame

6 - Mounting

- ❑ For water drain hose



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.1.4 Exploded view - water drain hoses (rear), A5

1 - Grommet

- ❑ Coat with soap solution and press completely into vehicle body

2 - Water drain hose (rear)

- ❑ Cleaning ⇒ page 314
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 318

3 - Mounting

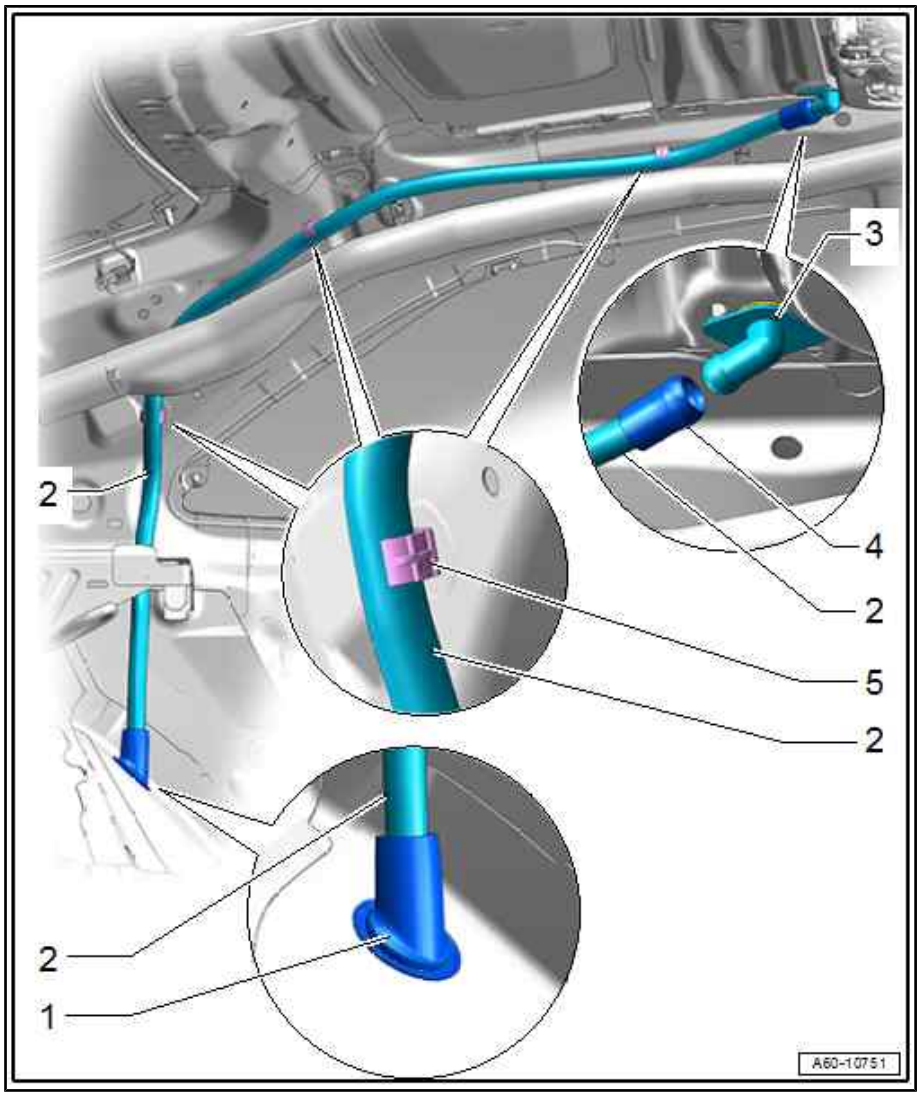
- ❑ For water drain hose
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Ensure correct allocation: grey on left, red on right
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 318

4 - Connecting piece

- ❑ Fit onto connection

5 - Retaining clip

- ❑ For water drain hose

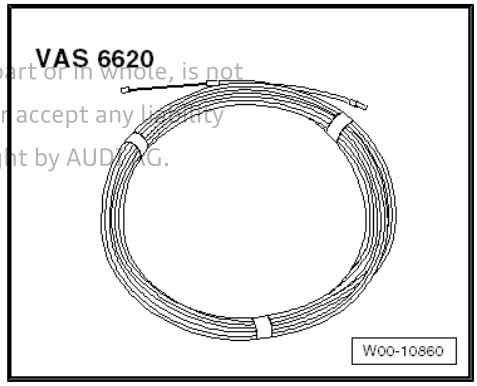


3.2 Cleaning water drain hoses

- ♦ Water drain hoses (front) ⇒ page 315
- ♦ Water drain hoses (rear) ⇒ page 315

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Cleaning and insertion aid - VAS 6620-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Water drain hoses (front)

For routing of water drain hoses (front), refer to ⇒ page 311 .

– Open sunroof panel.

– Use cleaning and insertion aid - VAS 6620- to clean water drain hoses (starting at top end of hoses).

Water drain hoses (rear)

For routing of water drain hoses (rear), refer to ⇒ page 311 .

– Remove wheel housing liner (rear) ⇒ page 660 .

– Use cleaning and insertion aid - VAS 6620- to clean water drain hoses (starting at bottom end of hoses).

Note:

If glass panel (rear) has been removed, water drain hoses (rear) can also be cleaned from top.

3.3 Removing and installing water drain hoses

⇒ “3.3.1 Removing and installing water drain hoses (front) - A4”, page 315

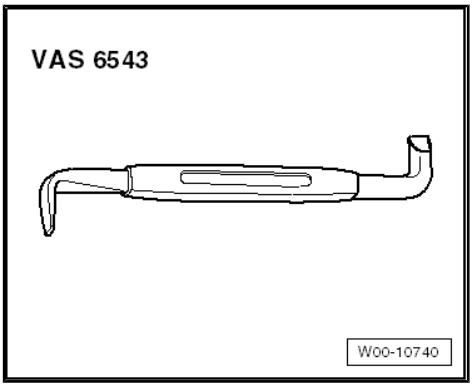
⇒ “3.3.2 Removing and installing water drain hoses (rear) - A4”, page 317

⇒ “3.3.3 Removing and installing water drain hoses (rear) - A5”, page 318

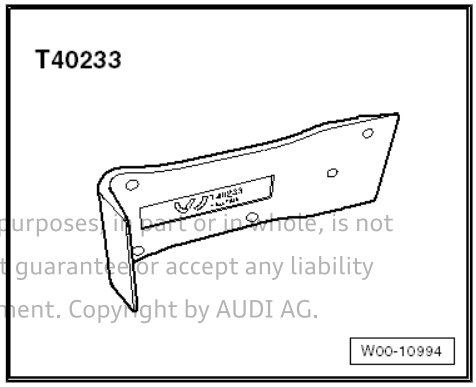
3.3.1 Removing and installing water drain hoses (front) - A4

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Angled screwdriver - VAS 6416-



♦ Removal wedge - T40233-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

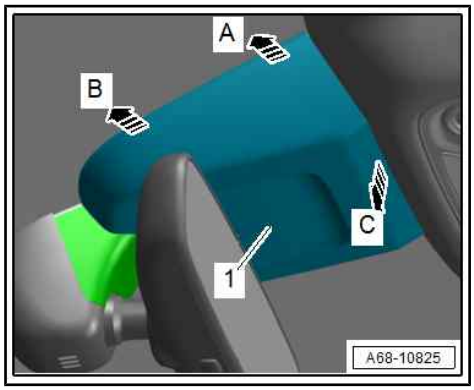
Removing

– Remove interior light/reading light (front) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/ reading light (front) .

– Remove sun visor (left and right) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Equipment; Removing and installing sun visor .

– Remove centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Equipment; Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor .

Equipment version with front camera for driver assist systems:



– To unclip cover -arrows A, B, C-, carefully insert angled screwdriver - VAS 6416- between windscreen and cover.

– Repeat procedure on opposite side.

– Disengage cover -1- at front and pull out towards rear.

Continued:

– Remove A-pillar trim (left and right) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing A-pillar trim .

– Driver side: Remove mounting for onboard supply control unit - J519- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Control units; Removing and installing onboard supply control unit - J519- .

– Front passenger side: Remove glove box ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Storage compartments/covers/trim panels; Removing and installing glove box .

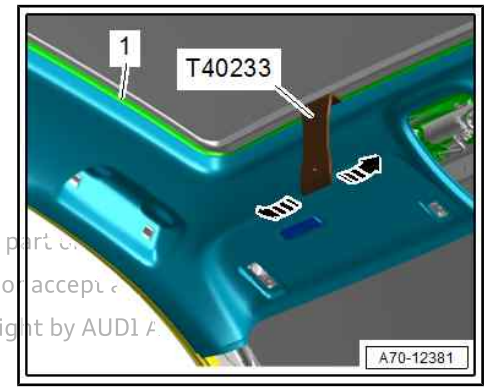
– Remove grab handle (left and right) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Equipment; Removing and installing grab handle .

– Remove B-pillar trim (top) on both sides ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing B-pillar trim .

– Open sun blind.

– Clean removal wedge - T40233- to avoid soiling moulded headliner.

– Insert removal wedge - T40233- between frame -1- for sunroof and moulded headliner.



– Release moulded headliner at front from sunroof frame using removal wedge - T40233- -arrows-.

– Lower moulded headliner on corresponding side.

– Detach water drain hose from sunroof and move clear at clips and guides.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Insert a piece of wire (approx. 500 mm long) through grommet -arrow- into water drain hose (the wire will later be used as a guide wire to help insert new water drain hose).
– Loosen grommet at A-pillar and detach it from water drain hose.
– Detach water drain hose inwards (hold wire in place).



Installing

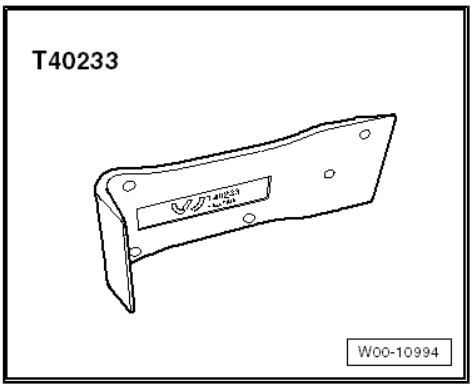
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert water drain hose with help of guide wire.
– Slide grommet onto water drain hose and insert carefully into plenum chamber.
– Engage water drain hose in all clips and guides.
• Mark on hose must be positioned in retaining clip above windscreen.

3.3.2 Removing and installing water drain hoses (rear) - A4

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - T40233-

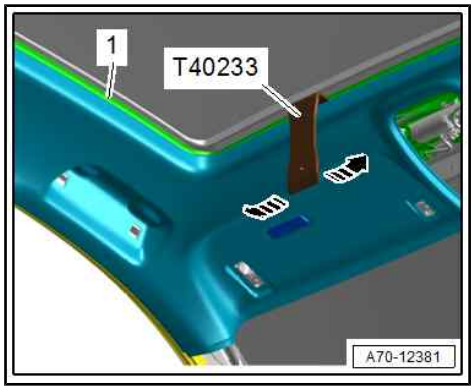


Removing

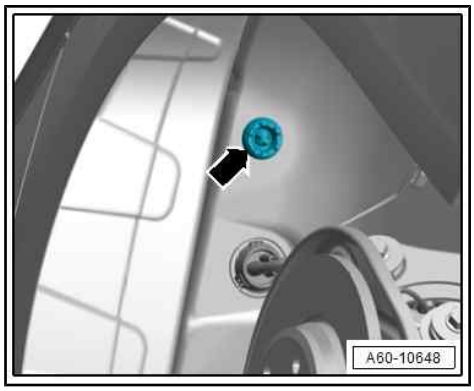
– Remove D-pillar trim on corresponding side ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing D-pillar trim .
– Remove C-pillar trim on corresponding side ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing C-pillar trim .
– Remove grab handle on corresponding side ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Equipment; Removing and installing grab handle .
– Clean removal wedge - T40233- to avoid soiling moulded headliner.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Insert removal wedge - T40233- between frame -1- for sunroof and moulded headliner.
– Release moulded headliner at rear from sunroof frame using removal wedge - T40233- -arrows-.
– Lower moulded headliner on corresponding side.
– Remove wheel housing liner (rear) on corresponding side ⇒ page 660 .



– Disengage grommet -arrow- from wheel housing (rear).
– Detach water drain hose.



Installing

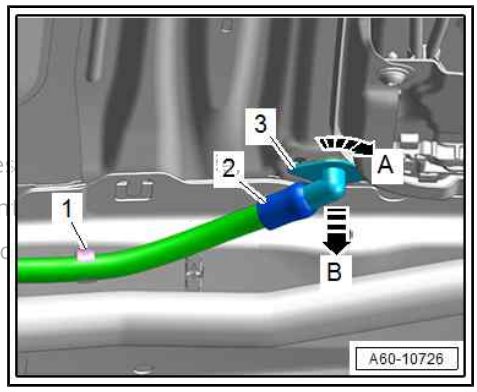
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert water drain hose with help of guide wire.
– Slide grommet onto water drain hose and insert carefully into plenum chamber.
– Engage water drain hose in all clips and guides.
• Mark on hose must be positioned in retaining clip (top) at rear side window.
– Insert grommet carefully in wheel housing.

3.3.3 Removing and installing water drain hoses (rear) - A5

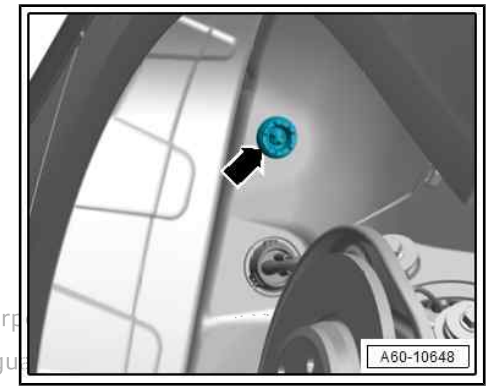
Removing

– Move front seat backrests to rearmost position.
– Detach moulded headliner and place on seats ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Roof trim panels; Removing and installing moulded headliner .
– Detach connecting piece -2- from mounting -3-.
– Turn mounting in clockwise direction -arrow A- and detach -arrow B-.
– Move water drain hose clear at retaining clips -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guaran
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

– Remove wheel housing liner (rear) on corresponding side ⇒ page 660 .
– Disengage grommet -arrow- from wheel housing (rear).
– Detach water drain hose.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Slide grommet onto water drain hose and insert carefully.
– Engage water drain hose in all clips and guides.
– Insert grommet carefully in wheel housing.

Powered by copyright.audi.de for personal or commercial purp
provided by this website by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

61 – Convertible roof, hardtop, canopy

1 Convertible roof

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - convertible roof”, page 320

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - convertible roof frame”, page 321

⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - main mounting for convertible roof”, page 323

⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - locking mechanism for convertible roof”, page 324

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing convertible roof”, page 325

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing retaining plate for convertible roof”, page 327

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing convertible roof locking mechanism”, page 327

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing convertible roof locking element”, page 328

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing mounting with convertible roof lock motor V223 ”, page 328

⇒ “1.10 Service position of convertible roof and convertible roof compartment lid”, page 329

⇒ “1.11 Manual operation”, page 330

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1 Exploded view - convertible roof

1 - Convertible roof locking mechanism

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 324

2 - Convertible roof headliner

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 331

3 - Convertible roof frame

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 321

4 - Convertible roof frame attachments

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 354

5 - Convertible roof cover

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 331

6 - Tensioning cables and control cables for convertible roof cover

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 332

7 - Hydraulic system

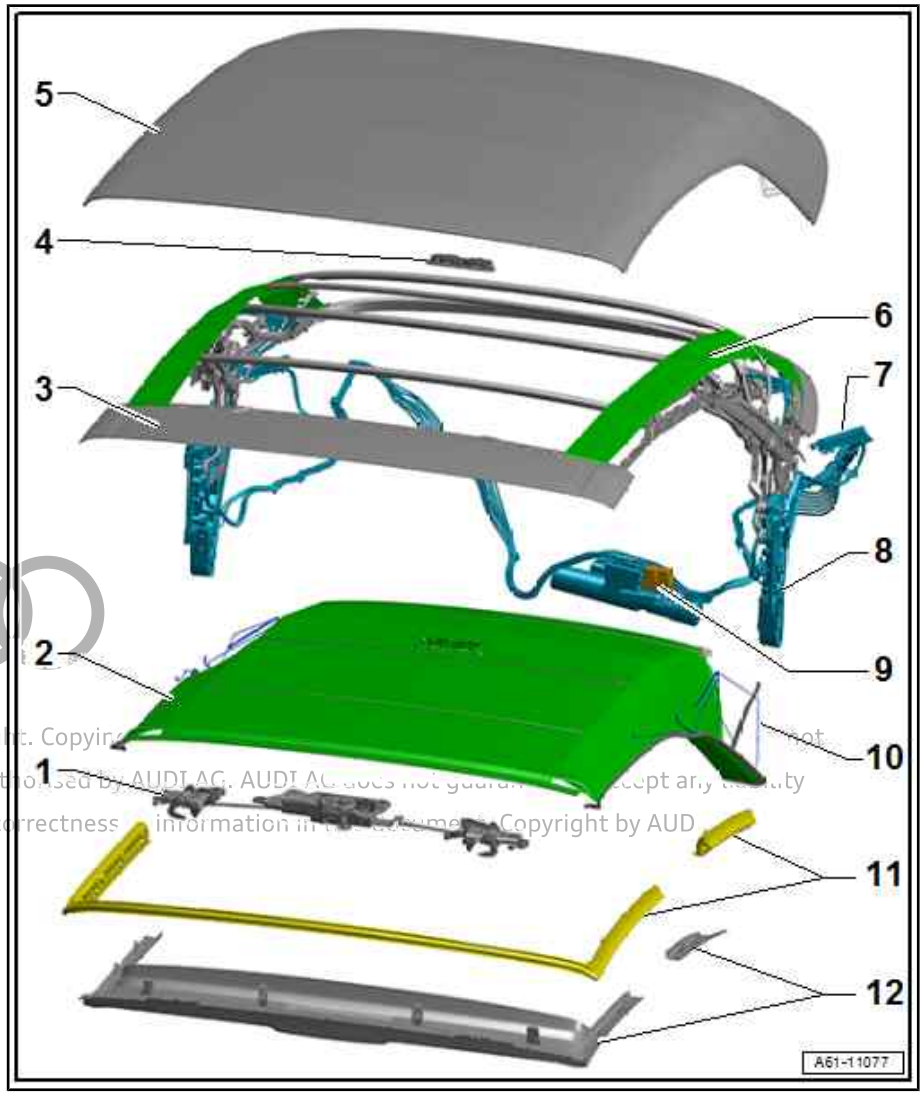
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ page 361

8 - Main mounting

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 323

9 - Electrical and electronic components

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 377



Protected by copyright. Copyri... not
copied unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guaran... accept any liability
for the correctness ... information in this document. Copyright by AUD...

10 - Tensioning cables and control cables for convertible roof headliner

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 333

11 - Convertible roof seals

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 351

12 - Convertible roof trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 353

1.2 Exploded view - convertible roof frame

- ♦ Exploded view - convertible roof frame attachments ⇒ page 354

1 - Main mounting
- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ page 323

2 - Support rail 2
- ❑ For convertible roof seal

3 - Support rail 1
- ❑ For convertible roof seal

4 - Roof guide element 2

5 - Roof guide element 1

6 - Front cross strut

7 - Cross strut 2

8 - Cross strut 3

9 - Cross strut 4

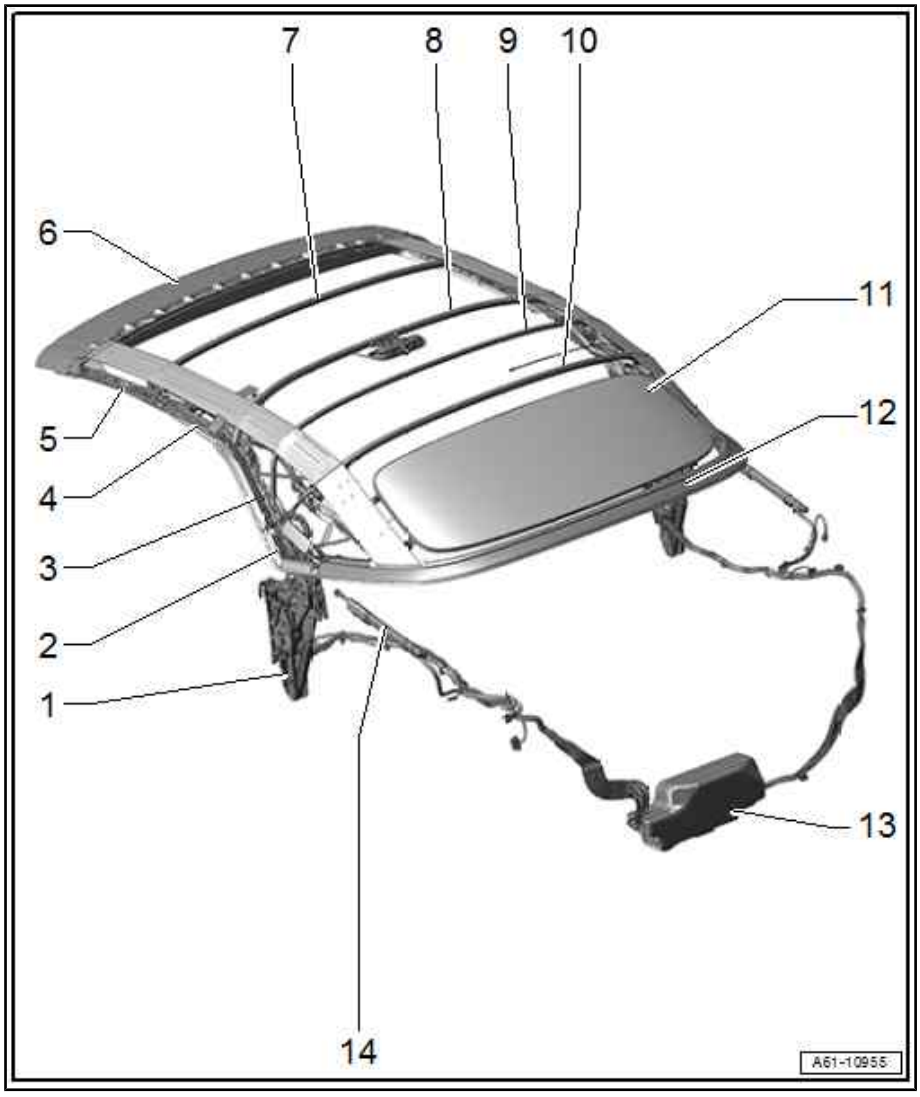
10 - Cross strut 5

11 - Rear window

12 - Tensioner

13 - Hydraulic pump
- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ page 362

14 - Hydraulic cylinder
- ❑ Exploded view
⇒ page 362



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Exploded view - main mounting for convertible roof

1 - Washer
- ❑ 3x

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 33 Nm

3 - Rivet

4 - Wiring guide

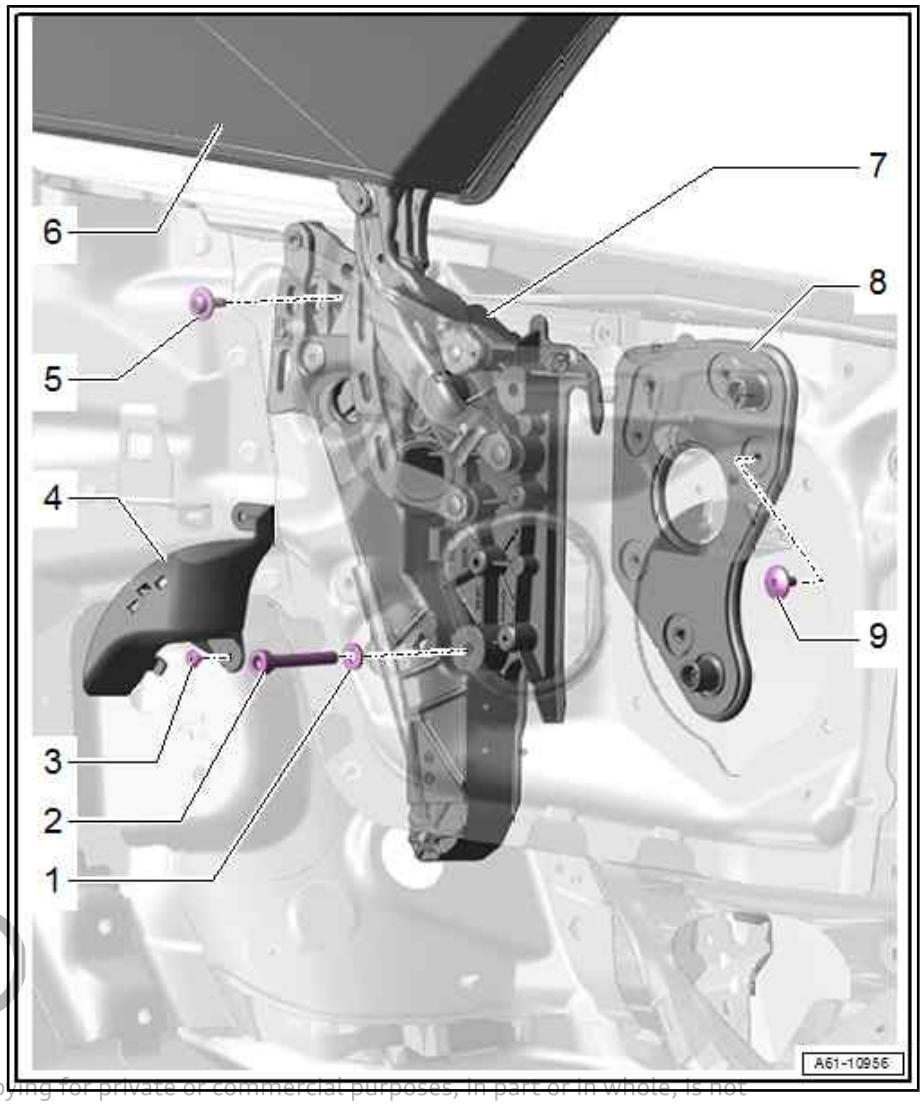
5 - Bolt
- ❑ 8 Nm

6 - Convertible roof
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 325

7 - Main mounting for convertible roof

8 - Retaining plate
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 327

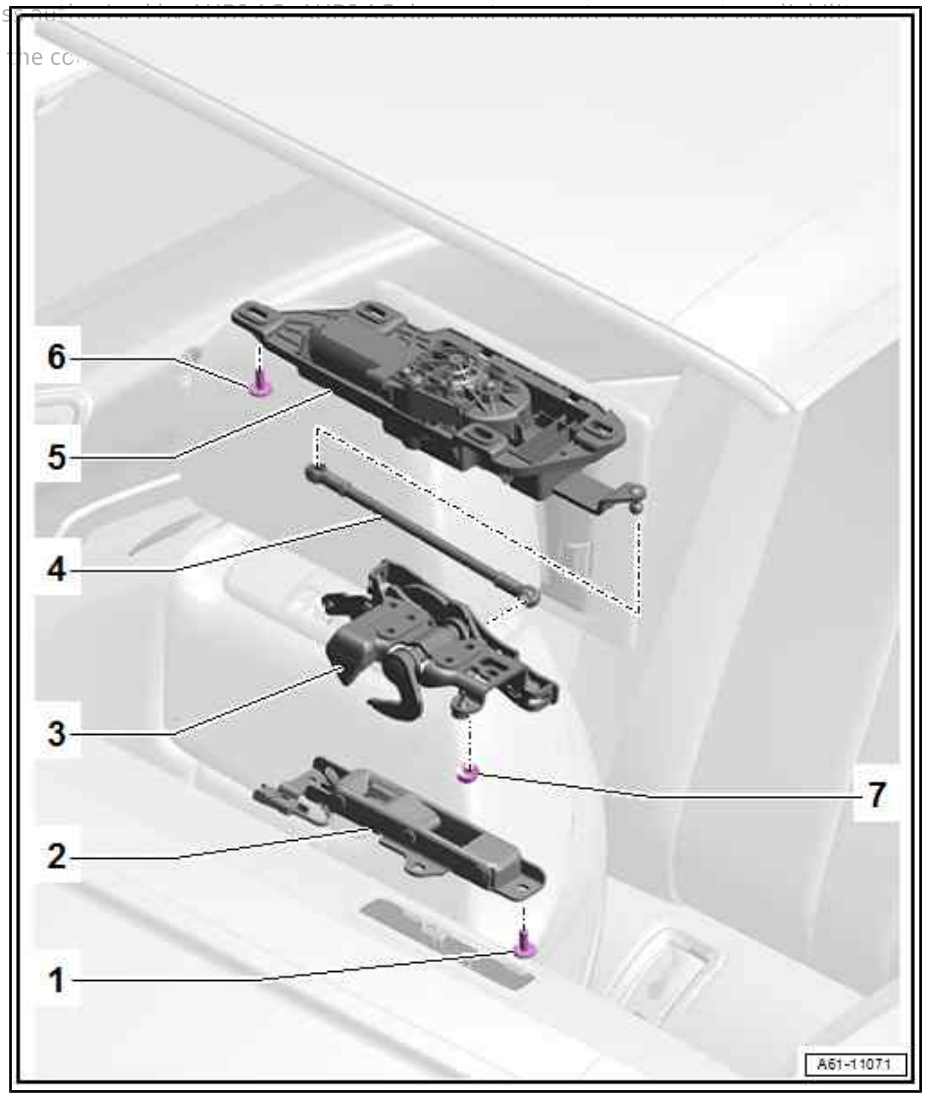
9 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 15 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4 Exploded view - locking mechanism for convertible roof

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unles
with respect to the co



1 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening torque and tightening sequence ⇒ page 325

2 - Locking element

- ❑ With convertible roof latch closed switch (left-side) - E891- , convertible roof latch closed switch (right-side) - E892- , convertible roof locking readiness switch (left-side) - E893- , convertible roof locking readiness switch (right-side) - E894-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 328

3 - Convertible roof locking mechanism

- ❑ With convertible roof latch open switch - F294- , convertible roof latch closed switch - F295-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 327

4 - Operating rod

- ❑ For convertible roof locking mechanism

5 - Mounting

- ❑ With convertible roof lock motor - V223-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 328

6 - Bolt

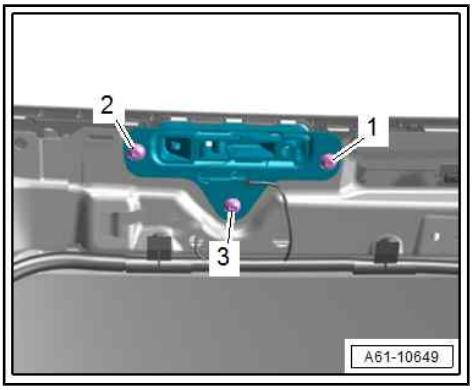
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 8 Nm

7 - Nut

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 10 Nm

Locking element - tightening torque and sequence

– Tighten bolts to 15 Nm in the sequence -1, 2, 3-.



1.5 Removing and installing convertible roof

• Two further mechanics are required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 327).

Removing

– Remove luggage compartment side trim (left and right) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim .

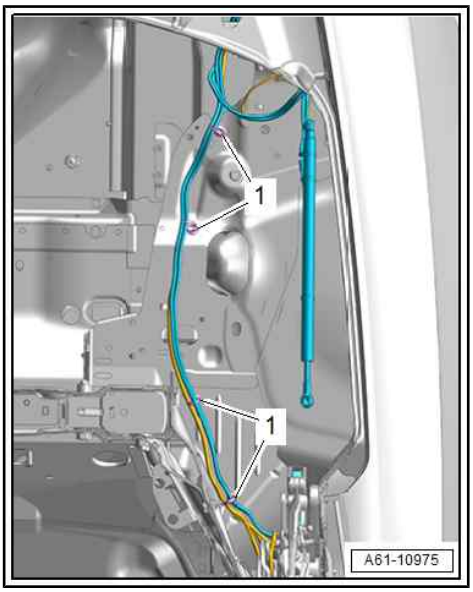
– Remove convertible roof compartment lid ⇒ page 114 .

– Remove left motor for convertible roof box - V433- ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Convertible roof compartment ; Removing and installing left motor for convertible roof box - V433- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Move hydraulic lines clear; to do so:

– Pry retainers -1- out of body.

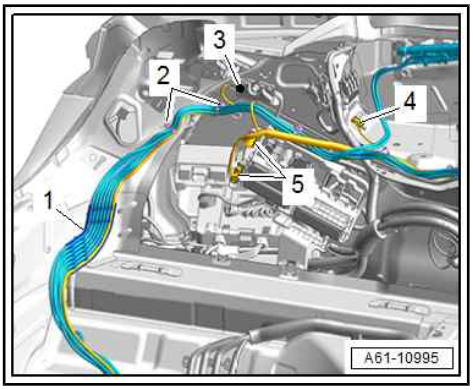


– Pry retainers -2- out of body.

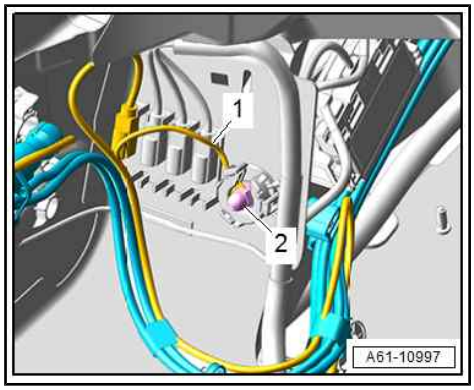
– Move hydraulic line/wiring harness clear at mounting -1-.

– Unplug electrical connectors -4 and 5-.

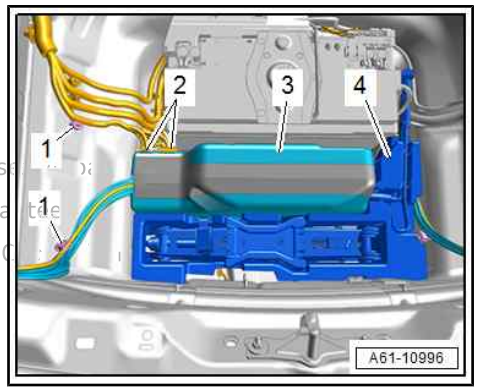
– Unscrew nut -3- and move earth wire clear.



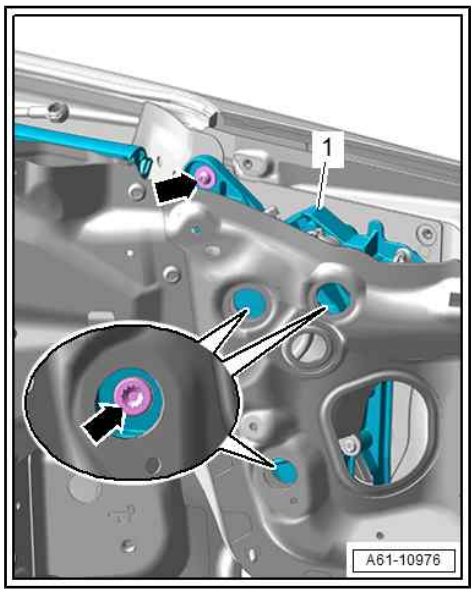
– Right side: Remove nut -2- and move earth wire -1- clear.



– Press retainers -1- off threaded pins.
– Take out tool kit -4-.
– Unplug electrical connectors -2-.
– Move hydraulic pump -3- towards front with hydraulic lines connected.
– Move convertible roof to “open” position by hand.
– Remove side trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing side trim .



– Unscrew bolts -arrows- at main mounting -1-.



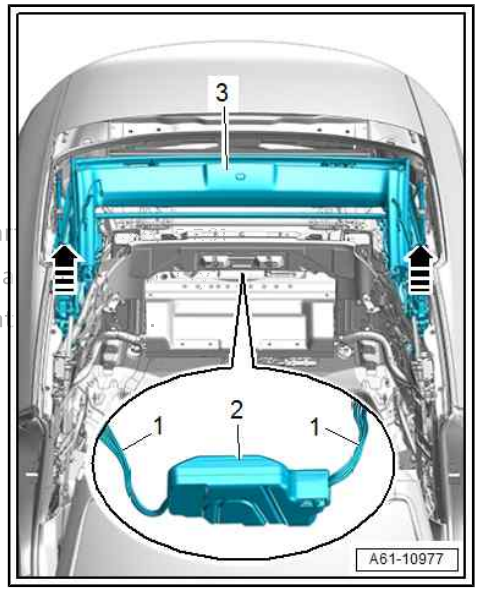
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Lift convertible roof -3- out of vehicle -arrows- with the assistance of three mechanics.

• Two mechanics should take hold of the convertible roof.

• The third mechanic should remove the hydraulic pump -2- and hydraulic lines -1- with hydraulic cylinders.

– Carefully lift out convertible roof and set it down on a soft surface.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order, note the following:

– Close convertible roof and check adjustment of side windows ⇒ page 515 .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - main mounting for convertible roof”, page 323

1.6 Removing and installing retaining plate for convertible roof

• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 323 .

Removing

– Remove convertible roof ⇒ page 325 .

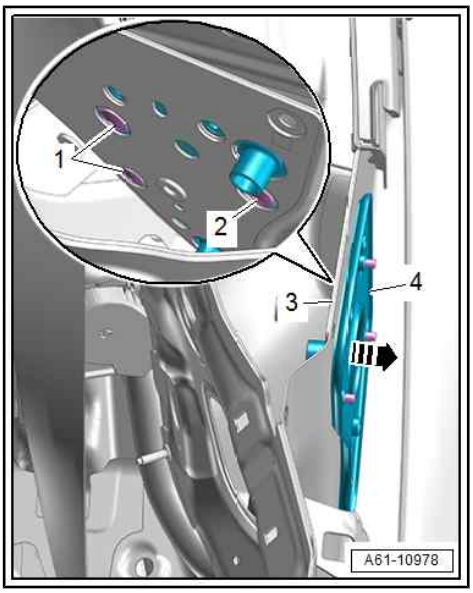
• Rear side window in “open” position

– Remove mounting for side window ⇒ page 214 .

– Remove bolts -1, 2-.

– Pull retaining plate -4- out of body -3- -arrow-.

– Lift out retaining plate.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

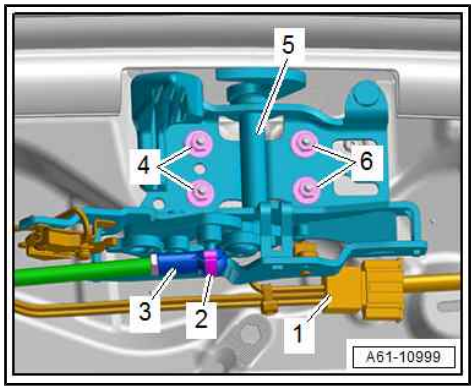
♦ ⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - main mounting for convertible roof”, page 323

1.7 Removing and installing convertible roof locking mechanism

Removing

– Remove mounting with convertible roof lock motor ⇒ page 328 .

– Mark installation position of convertible roof locking mechanism -5- for re-installation.
– Unplug electrical connector -1- and move wiring harness clear.
– Lift retaining clip -2- slightly using a small screwdriver, and pull ball socket -3- off ball stud.
– Unscrew nuts -4 and 6- and detach convertible roof locking mechanism -5-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert convertible roof locking mechanism according to marking made during removal.

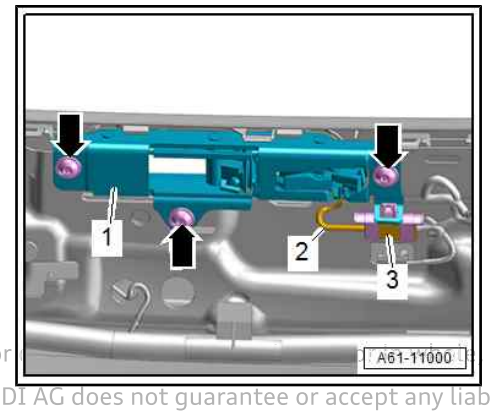
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - locking mechanism for convertible roof”, page 324

1.8 Removing and installing convertible roof locking element

Removing

– Remove windscreen frame trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels .
– Mark installation position of locking element -1- for re-installation.
– Unplug electrical connector -3- and move wiring harness -2- clear.
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach locking element -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert locking element according to marking made during removal.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ Fig. ““Locking element - tightening torque and sequence”“ , page 325

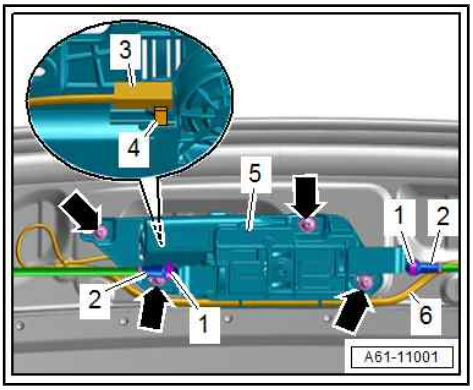
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.9 Removing and installing mounting with convertible roof lock motor - V223-

Removing

– Remove trim (front) ⇒ page 357 .

– Lift retaining clip -1- slightly using a small screwdriver, and pull ball socket -2- off ball stud.
– Move electrical wiring harness -6- clear.
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach mounting -5- with convertible roof lock motor - V223- .
– Unplug electrical connector -3-; to do so, press catch -4- (both sides) carefully to the side.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Position mounting -5- with convertible roof lock motor - V223- and screw in bolts -arrows- until they make contact.
• It must be possible to move the mounting with the convertible roof lock motor - V223- so it can be aligned.
– Fit ball socket -2- of operating rod at ball stud.
– Close convertible roof locking mechanism.
– Tighten bolts -arrows- for mounting -5- with convertible roof lock motor - V223- (must be aligned).

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - locking mechanism for convertible roof”, page 324

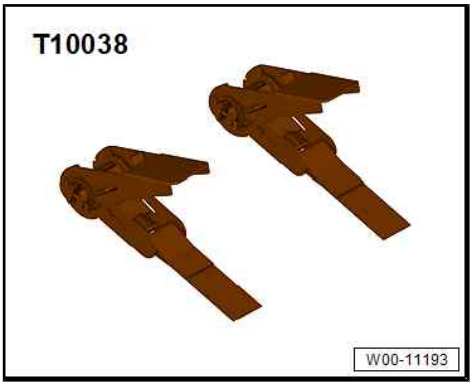
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.10 Service position of convertible roof and convertible roof compartment lid

♦ Position “1” ⇒ page 330
♦ Position “2” ⇒ page 330
♦ Position “3” ⇒ page 330

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Tensioning strap - T10038- (2x)



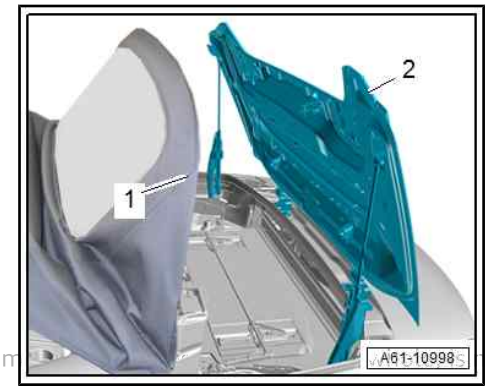
♦ Hook - T40306-

Procedure

Position 1:

– Open convertible roof until tensioner -1- and roof compartment lid -2- have reached the positions shown.

• Convertible roof compartment lid must have reached its end position.

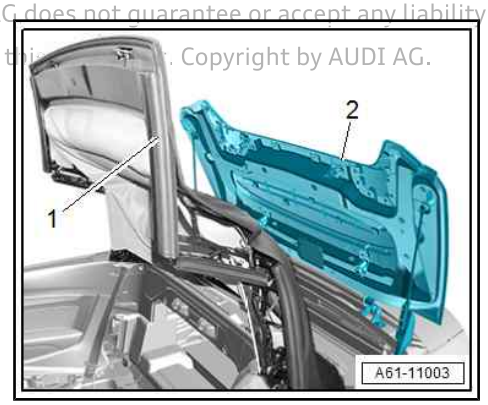


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com ot permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in t . Copyright by AUDI AG.

Position 2:

– Open convertible roof until roof -1- and roof compartment lid -2- have reached the positions shown.

• Convertible roof compartment lid must have reached its end position.



Position 3:

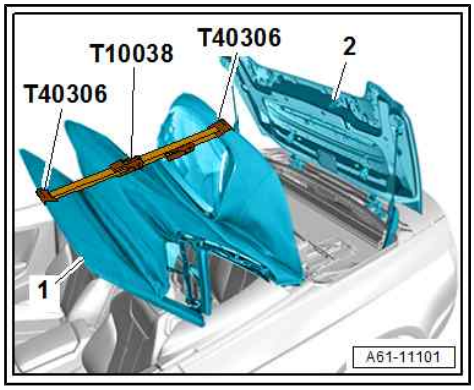
– Open convertible roof until roof -1- and roof compartment lid -2- have reached the positions shown.

• Convertible roof compartment lid must have reached its end position.

– Secure convertible roof compartment lid in “open” position to make sure it is not closed unintentionally.

– Guide two tensioning straps - T10038- into hooks - T40306- and tension straps three revolutions on shaft at quick-release tensioner.

– Engage hooks - T40306- at front and rear centre edge of convertible roof and tension again, if necessary.



1.11 Manual operation

For information on how to operate the convertible roof compartment lid and the convertible roof in the event of a fault, refer to ⇒ Owner's Manual .

2 Convertible roof cover

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - convertible roof cover and convertible roof headliner”, page 331

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - tensioning cables and control cables for convertible roof cover”, page 332

⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - tensioning cables and control cables for convertible roof headliner”, page 333

⇒ “2.4 Exploded view - tensioning and control cable repair kit”, page 334

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing convertible roof cover”, page 337

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing convertible roof headliner”, page 341

⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing tensioning cable for convertible roof cover”, page 344

⇒ “2.8 Removing and installing tensioning cable for rear window operating lever”, page 347

⇒ “2.9 Procedure for repairing tensioning and control cables”, page 348

2.1 Exploded view - convertible roof cover and convertible roof headliner

- Exploded view - tensioning and control cable repair kit
  ⇒ page 334

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Spreader rivet

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.5 Nm

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

5 - Retaining frame for rear window

- ❑ For convertible roof headliner

6 - Convertible roof frame

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 321

7 - Convertible roof cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 337

8 - Clip

- ❑ Renew after removing convertible roof cover ⇒ Item 7 (page 332)

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

10 - Bolt

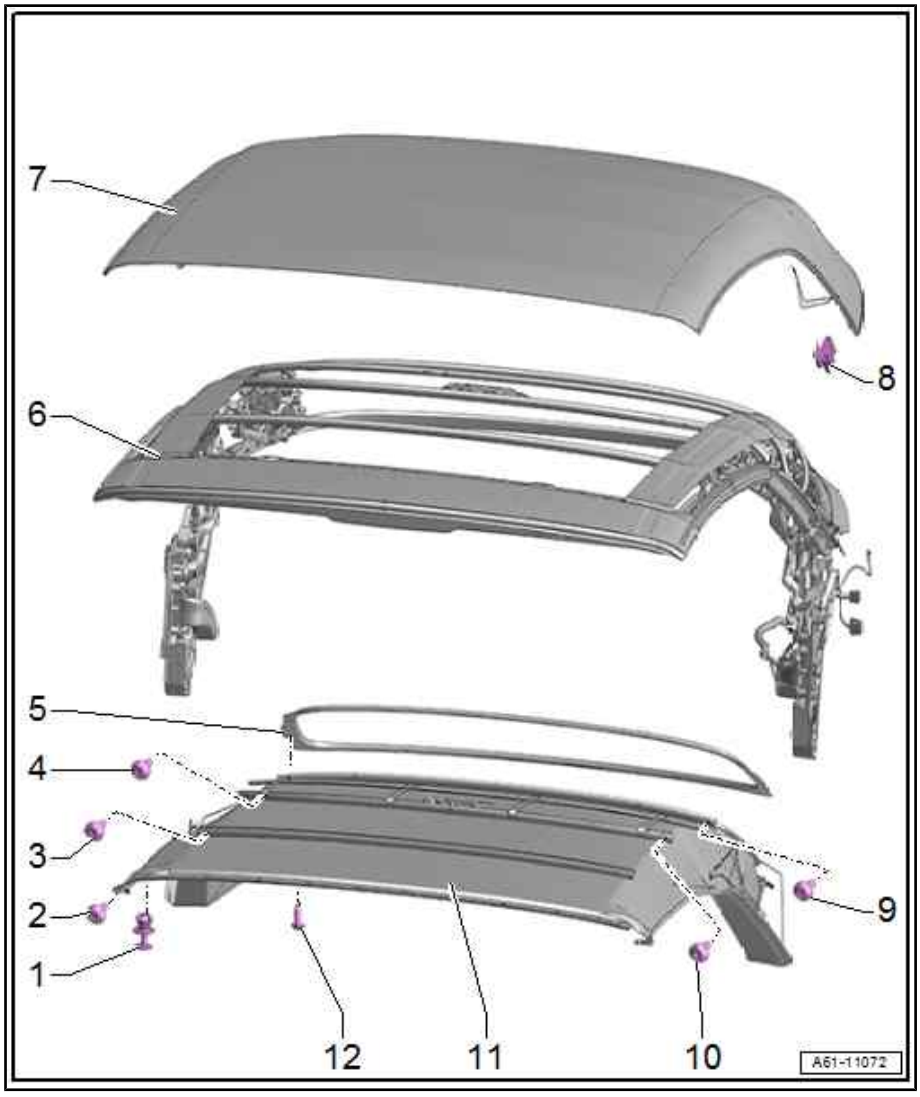
- ❑ 2 Nm

11 - Convertible roof headliner

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 341

12 - Bolt

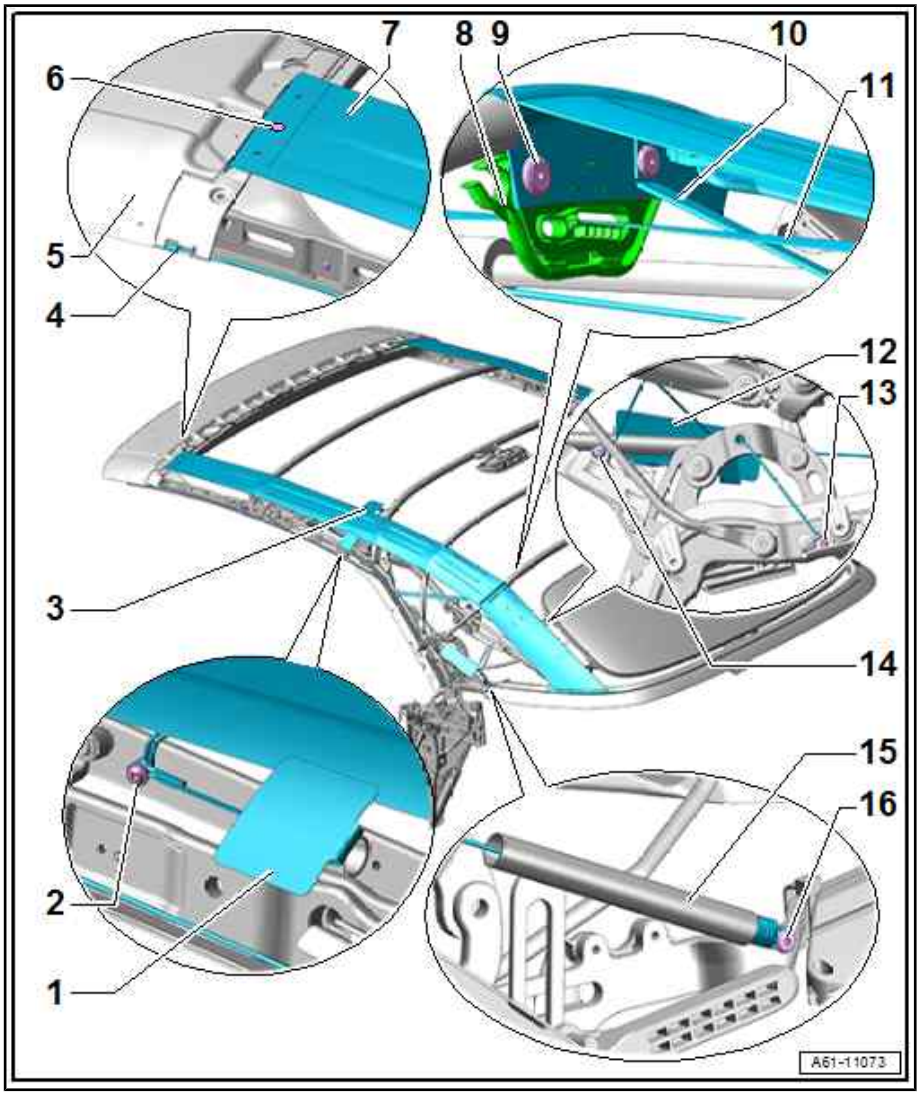
- ❑ 2 Nm



2.2 Exploded view - tensioning cables and control cables for convertible roof cover

- ♦ Exploded view - tensioning and control cable repair kit ⇒ page 334
- • Differences regarding routing of tensioning and control cables ⇒ page 334

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Control mechanism 3
- ❑ For convertible roof cover
- ❑ Cannot be renewed separately

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 2 Nm

3 - Control mechanism 1
- ❑ For convertible roof cover
- ❑ Cannot be renewed separately

4 - Tensioning cable
- ❑ For convertible roof cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 344

5 - Front cross strut

6 - Rivet

7 - Guide strap 1
- ❑ For cross struts “2 ... 5”

8 - Guide
- ❑ For belt, tensioning cable and control cable

9 - Rivet
- ❑ 2x

10 - Guide strap 2

11 - Guide strap 3

12 - Control mechanism 2
- ❑ For convertible roof cover
- ❑ Cannot be renewed separately

13 - Bolt
- ❑ 2 Nm

14 - Bolt
- ❑ 2 Nm

15 - Abrasion guard

16 - Bolt
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

2.3 Exploded view - tensioning cables and control cables for convertible roof headliner

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Exploded view - tensioning and control cable repair kit ⇒ page 334

• Differences regarding routing of tensioning and control cables ⇒ page 334

1 - Tensioning cable
- ❑ For convertible roof headliner

2 - Tensioning cable
- ❑ For convertible roof headliner

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

4 - Control cable
- ❑ For convertible roof headliner

5 - Bolt
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

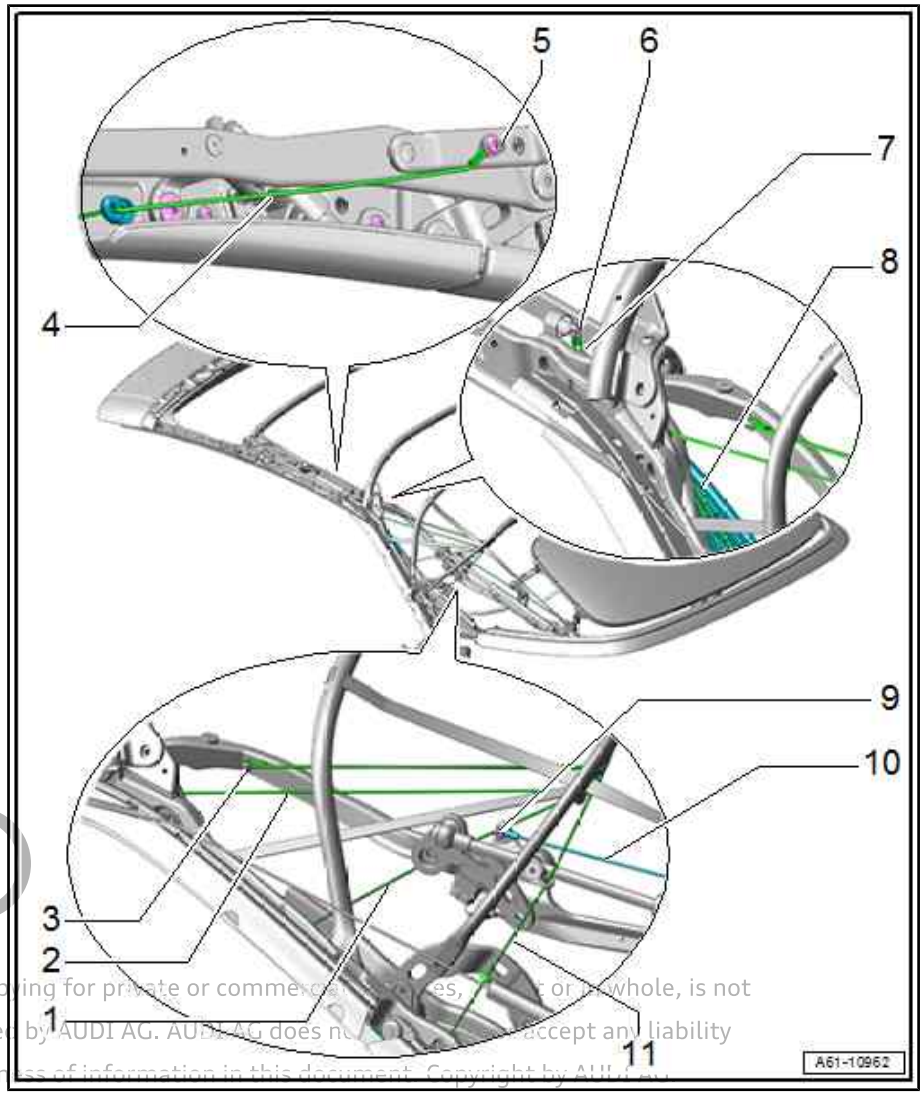
7 - Rubber strap
- ❑ For convertible roof headliner

8 - Cover
- ❑ For convertible roof hinge

9 - Bolt
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

10 - Tensioning cable
- ❑ Rear window operating lever
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 347

11 - Tensioning cable
- ❑ For convertible roof headliner



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability whatsoever for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

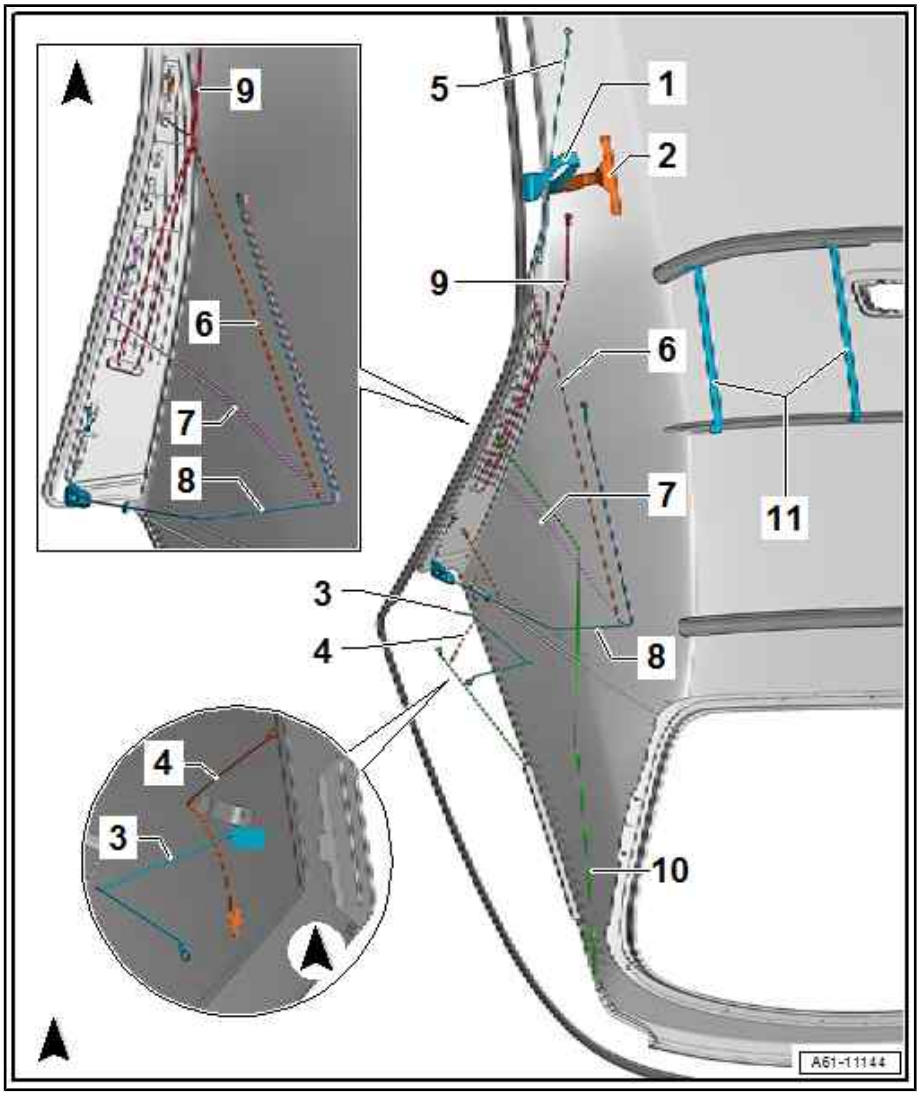
2.4 Exploded view - tensioning and control cable repair kit

⇒ "2.4.1 Exploded view - tensioning and control cable repair kit, up to 27.08.2017", page 334

⇒ "2.4.2 Exploded view - tensioning and control cable repair kit, from 28.08.2017 onwards", page 336

2.4.1 Exploded view - tensioning and control cable repair kit, up to 27.08.2017

♦ Procedure for repairing tensioning and control cables ⇒ page 348



1 - Tensioning strap

- ❑ Total length when installed: 187 mm
- ❑ Total length measured between ends of tensioning strap

2 - Tensioning strap

- ❑ Total length when installed: 250 mm
- ❑ Total length measured between ends of tensioning strap

3 - Tensioning cable

- ❑ Total length when installed: 205 ± 2 mm
- ❑ Total length measured from tongue end
- ❑ Overlap on tongue: 20 mm

4 - Tensioning cable

- ❑ Total length when installed: 250 ± 2 mm
- ❑ Total length measured from tongue end
- ❑ Overlap on tongue: 20 mm

5 - Control cable

- ❑ Total length when installed: 255 ± 2 mm
- ❑ Total length measured from end of stitching on tongue
- ❑ Overlap on tongue: 20 mm

6 - Control cable

- ❑ Total length when installed: 683 $^{+3}$ $_{-2}$ mm
- ❑ Total length measured between ends of loops

7 - Control cable

- ❑ Total length when installed: 597 $^{+3}$ $_{-2}$ mm
- ❑ Total length measured between ends of loops

8 - Control cable

- ❑ Total length when installed: 611 $^{+3}$ $_{-2}$ mm
- ❑ Total length measured between ends of loops
- ❑ Dimension between sealing tag and mounting on convertible roof headliner: 138 mm / dimension between sealing tag and end of loop: 191 ± 2 mm
- ❑ Fastener is located between mounting on convertible roof headliner and sealing tag.

9 - Control cable

- ❑ Total length when installed: 520 ± 3 mm
- ❑ Total length measured between centre of eyelets

10 - Control cable

- ❑ Total length of control cable (top) when installed: 705 ± 2 mm
- ❑ Total length of control cable (bottom) when installed: 448 ± 2 mm

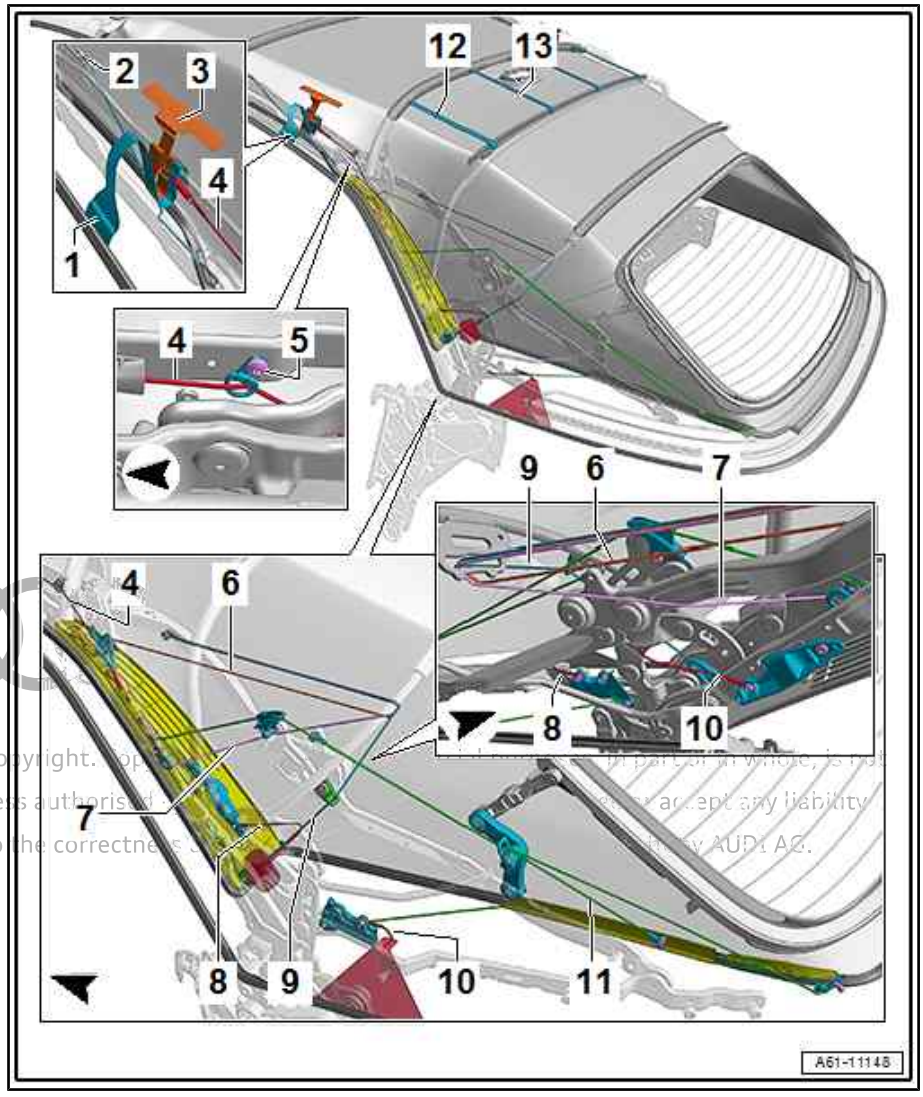
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Total length measured between ends of loops and end of stitching on tongue

11 - Tensioning strap

- ❑ Total length when installed: 335 ± 1 mm
- ❑ Total length measured between ends of tensioning strap

2.4.2 Exploded view - tensioning and control cable repair kit, from 28.08.2017 onwards



1 - Tensioning strap

- ❑ Total length when installed: 187 mm
- ❑ Total length measured between ends of tensioning strap

2 - Control cable

- ❑ Total length when installed: 255 ± 2 mm
- ❑ Total length measured between ends of loops and end of stitching on tongue
- ❑ Overlap on tongue: 20 mm

3 - Tensioning strap

- ❑ Total length when installed: 250 mm
- ❑ Total length measured between ends of tensioning strap

4 - Control cable

- ❑ Total length when installed: 252 ± 2 mm
- ❑ Total length measured between ends of loops

5 - Bolt

6 - Control cable

- ❑ Total length when installed: 638 $^{+3}$ $_{-2}$ mm
- ❑ Total length measured between ends of loops

7 - Control cable

- ❑ Total length when installed: 597 $^{+3}$ $_{-2}$ mm
- ❑ Total length measured between ends of loops

8 - Control cable

- ❑ Total length when installed: 235 ± 2 mm
- ❑ Total length measured between end of loops and end of tongue
- ❑ Overlap on tongue: 20 mm

9 - Control cable

- ❑ Total length when installed: 611 $^{+3}$ $_{-2}$ mm
- ❑ Total length measured between ends of loops

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ Dimension between sealing tag and mounting on convertible roof headliner: 138 mm / dimension between sealing tag and end of loop: 191 ± 2 mm
- ❑ Fastener is located between mounting on convertible roof headliner and sealing tag.

10 - Control cable

- ❑ Total length when installed: 61 ± 2 mm
- ❑ Total length measured between end of loops and end of tongue
- ❑ Overlap on tongue: 20 mm

11 - Control cable

- ❑ Total length of control cable (top) when installed: 738 ± 2 mm
- ❑ Total length of control cable (bottom) when installed: 448 ± 2 mm
- ❑ Total length measured between ends of loops and end of stitching on tongue

12 - Tensioning strap

- ❑ Total length when installed: 325 ± 1 mm
- ❑ Total length measured between ends of tensioning strap

13 - Tensioning strap

- ❑ Total length when installed: 348 ± 1 mm
- ❑ Total length measured between ends of tensioning strap

2.5 Removing and installing convertible roof cover

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 331 .
- To avoid interchanging components and to make sure that they are re-installed in the original positions, mark the retaining straps, tensioning cables and electrical wires prior to removal. Make sketches or take photographs if necessary.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

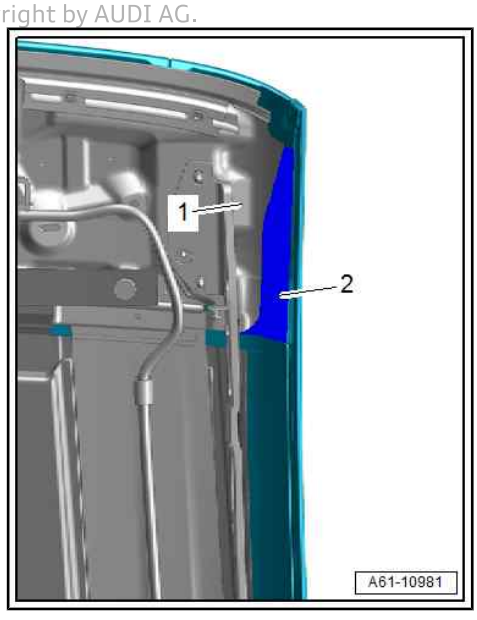
♦ Wide mole grips, commercially available

Removing

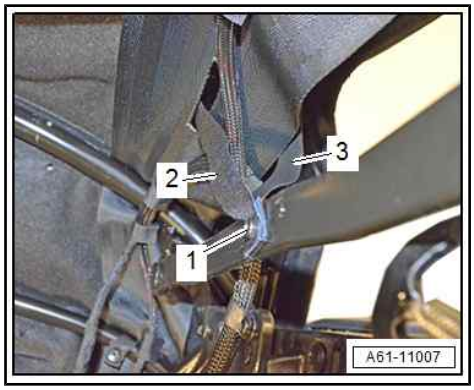
– Remove convertible roof seal (front) ⇒ page 354 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

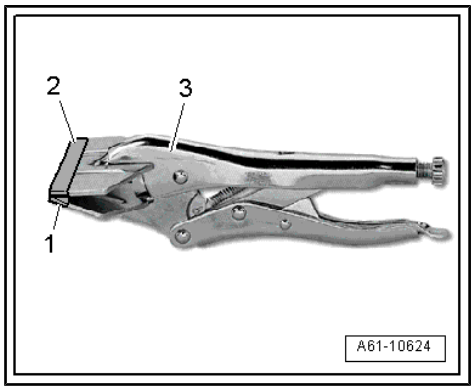
– Remove convertible roof seal (rear) ⇒ page 356 .
– Remove convertible roof headliner ⇒ page 341 .
– Remove adhesive strip (side) -2- at cross strut -1-.



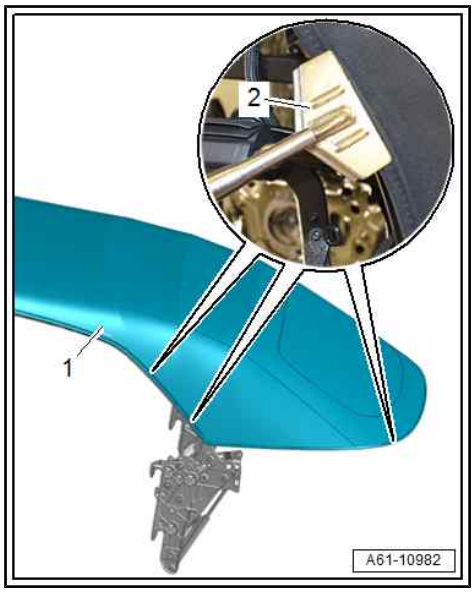
– Remove bolt -1-.
– Move guide straps -2, 3- clear.



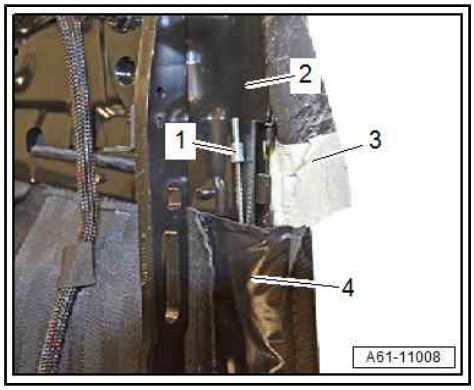
– Mask clamping jaws of wide mole grips (commercially available) -3- with felt strips -1, 2- to protect convertible roof cover.



– Using wide mole grips -2-, pull retaining strip on convertible roof cover -1- off surround at main guide element (rear) and off tensioner.

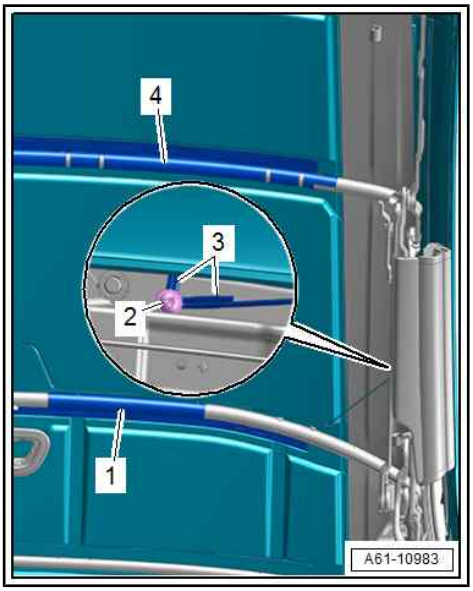


– Remove adhesive strip -3- above guide cable.
– Disengage guide cable -1- at front cross strut -2-.
– Move guide cable clear at convertible roof cover; to do so, pull guide cable out of guide -4- in convertible roof cover.

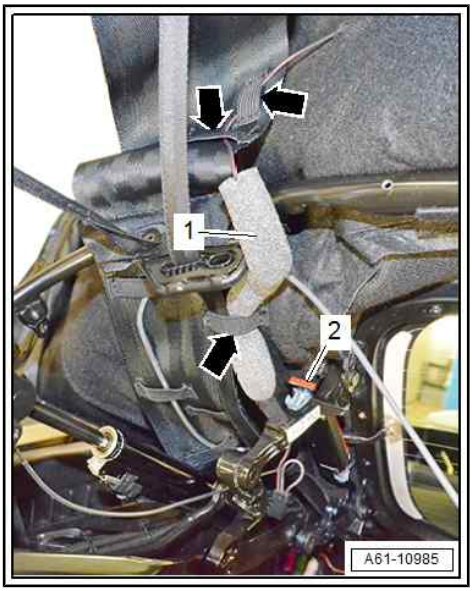


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

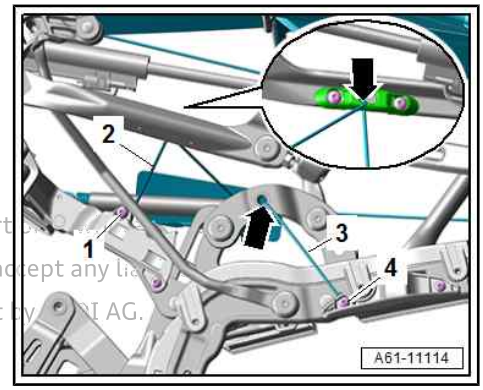
– Separate adhesive bonds on fabric flaps -1, 4- for cross struts 1 and 2.
– Remove bolt -2- and move control cables -3- clear.
– Disengage convertible roof cover from front cross strut and fold back towards rear.



– Right side: Unplug electrical connector -2- and move wiring harness -1- clear -arrows-.
– Fold convertible roof cover (at side) up at rear window.

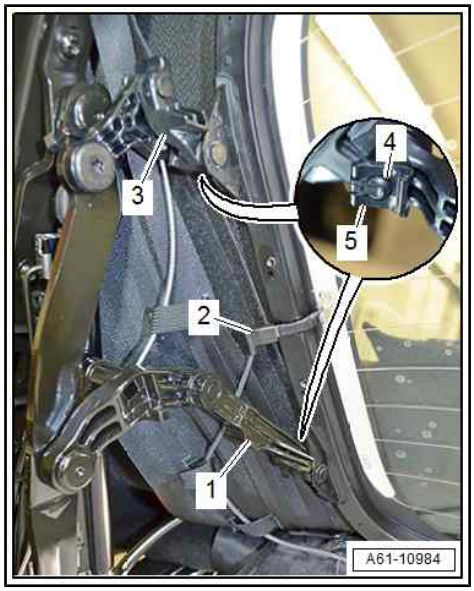


– Remove bolts -1, 4- and move control cables -2, 3- clear -arrows-.

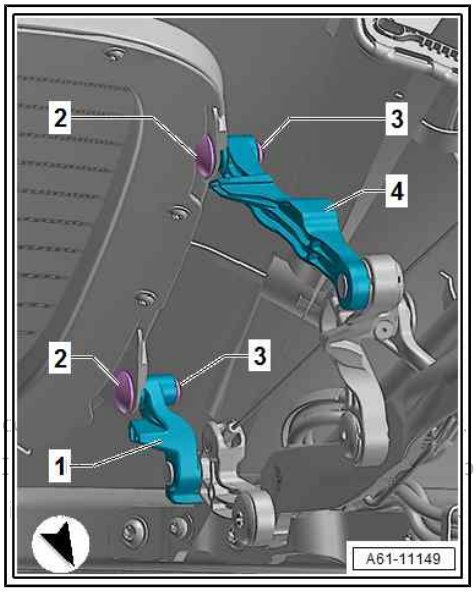


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Left side: Unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Depending on version: Unfasten rear window operating levers -1 and 3- from rear window frame; to do so, detach securing clip -5- and pull out pin -4-.

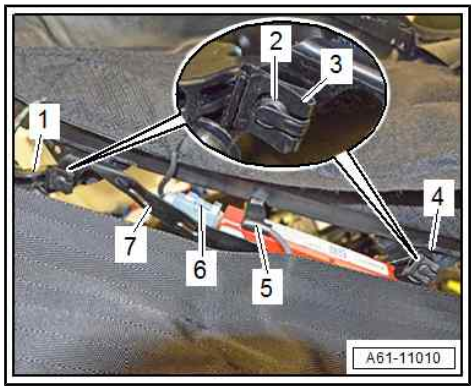


– Depending on version: Unfasten rear window operating levers -1 and 4- from rear window frame; to do so, detach spring washer -2- and pull out pin -3-.



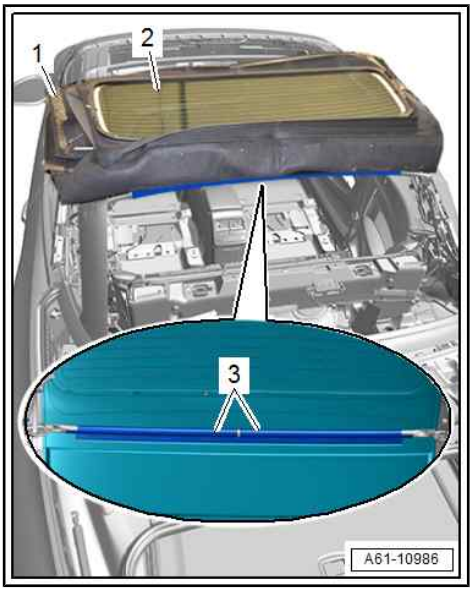
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or
is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUD
ility
with respect to the correctness of information

– Right side: Unplug electrical connector -5-.
– Unfasten rear window operating levers -1 and 4- from rear window frame; to do so, detach securing clip -3- and pull out pin -2-.
• When unfastening rear window operating lever, mounting -7- with aerial is unfastened at the same time.
– Disconnect aerial wire -6-.



– Fold rear window -2- forwards and separate adhesive bond on fabric flap -3- for cross strut 5.

– Detach convertible roof cover -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Check all cross struts for sharp edges at openings; if necessary remove burrs at edges.

– Route tensioning and control cables ⇒ page 332 .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - tensioning cables and control cables for convertible roof cover”, page 332

2.6 Removing and installing convertible roof headliner

• To avoid interchanging components and to make sure that they are re-installed in the original positions, mark the retaining straps, tensioning cables and electrical wires prior to removal. Make sketches or take photographs if necessary.

Removing

– Remove interior light/reading light (rear) ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/reading light (rear) .

– Remove trim (front) ⇒ page 357 .

– Remove bolt -2-.

– Remove spreader rivets -arrows-.

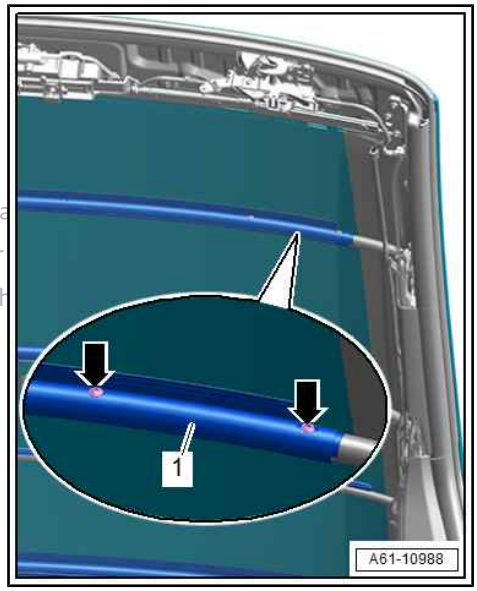
– Lower convertible roof headliner -1- as far as cross strut 2.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

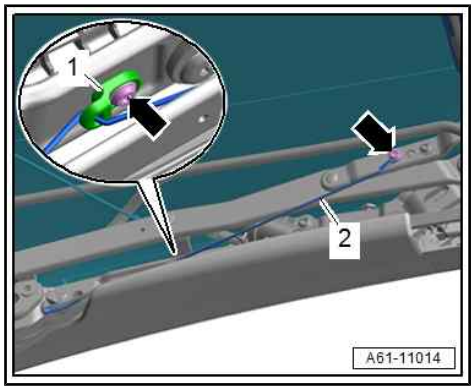


– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach retaining strip -1- for convertible roof headliner at cross strut 2.
– Lower convertible roof headliner as far as cross strut 3.

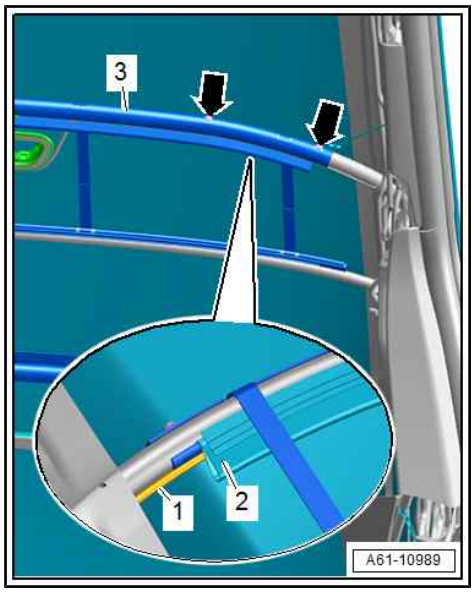
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrigh



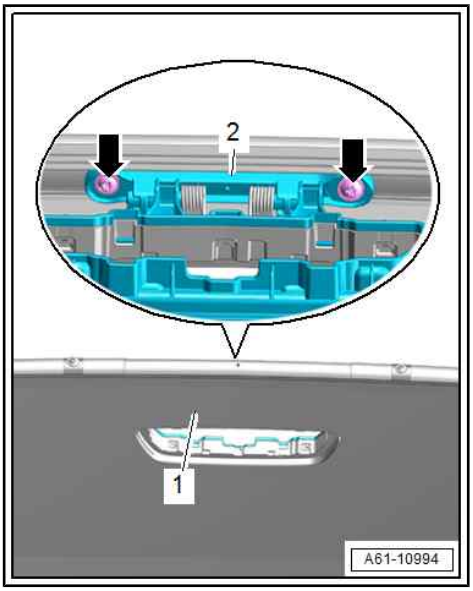
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach control cable -2- with guide eyelet -1-.



– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach retaining strip -3- for convertible roof headliner at cross strut 3.
– Move electrical wiring harness -1- clear at wiring duct -2-.

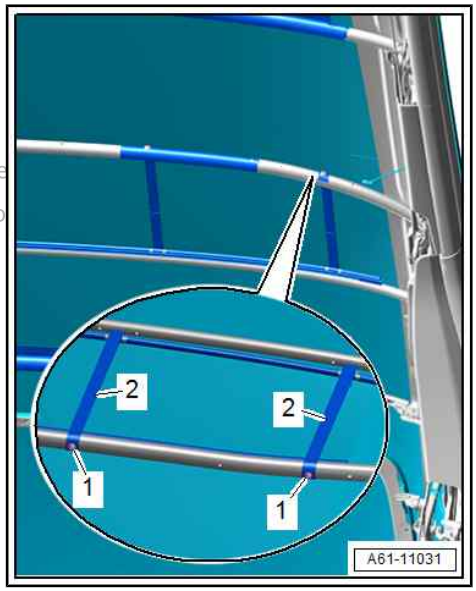


– Reach behind convertible roof headliner -1- and unscrew bolts -arrows-.
– Detach mounting -2- with convertible roof headliner from cross strut 3.

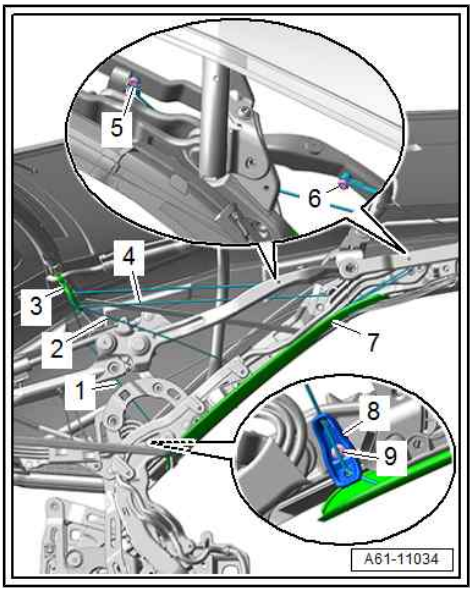


– Unscrew bolts -1- and move guide straps -2- clear.
– Lower convertible roof headliner as far as cross strut 4.

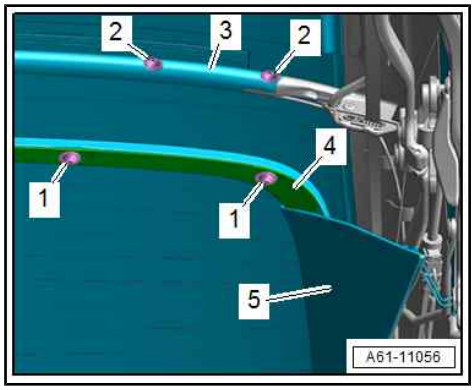
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG do
with respect to the correctness of information in this



– Remove bolt -6-.
– Move guide cables -1, 2, 4- clear; to do so, thread them out through cable guide -3-.
– Remove bolt -5- and move cover -7- for convertible roof hinge clear.
– Remove bolt -9- and move guide -8- clear together with control cable.

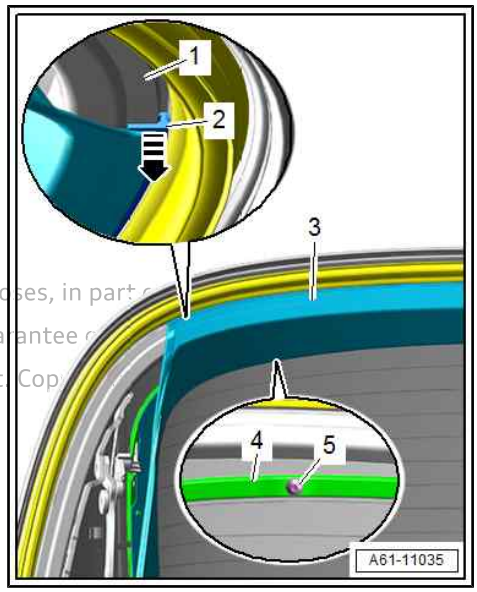


– Remove bolts -2-.
– Detach retaining strip -3- for convertible roof headliner at cross strut 4.
– Remove bolts -1-.
– Detach convertible roof headliner -5- (with retaining strip -4-) from rear window frame.



– Pull retaining strip -2- for convertible roof headliner off surround -1- for tensioner -arrow-.
– Remove bolts -5-.
– Release control cable ⇒ Item 10 (page 335) .
– Detach convertible roof headliner -3- with retaining strip -4-.
– Place convertible roof headliner in vehicle interior.
– Fold convertible roof headliner and take it out towards front.
– If renewing convertible roof headliner, also remove the following components:

♦ Mounting for rear interior light ⇒ page 359



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
reproduced unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Cop

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - convertible roof cover and convertible roof headliner”, page 331

♦ ⇒ “3.3 Exploded view - convertible roof frame attachments”, page 354

2.7 Removing and installing tensioning cable for convertible roof cover

• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 331 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

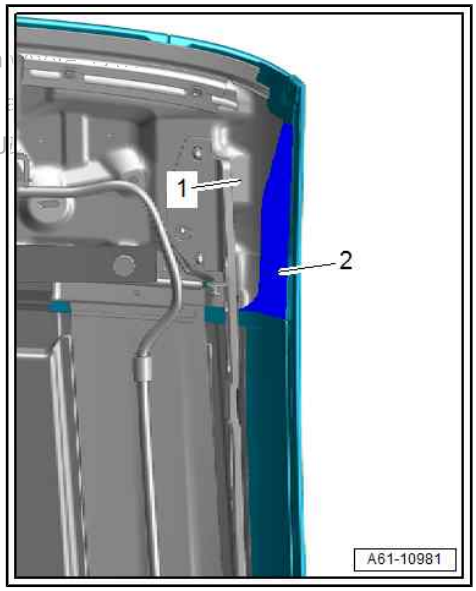
♦ Wide mole grips, commercially available

Removing

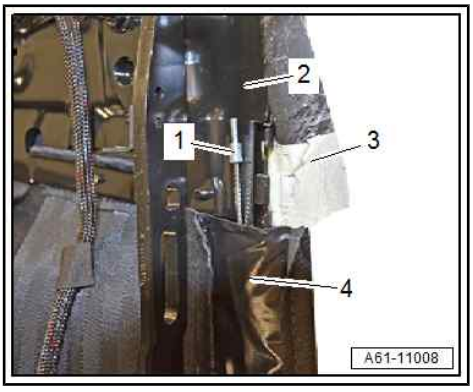
– Remove convertible roof seal (front) ⇒ page 354 .

– Remove adhesive strip (side) -2- at cross strut -1-.

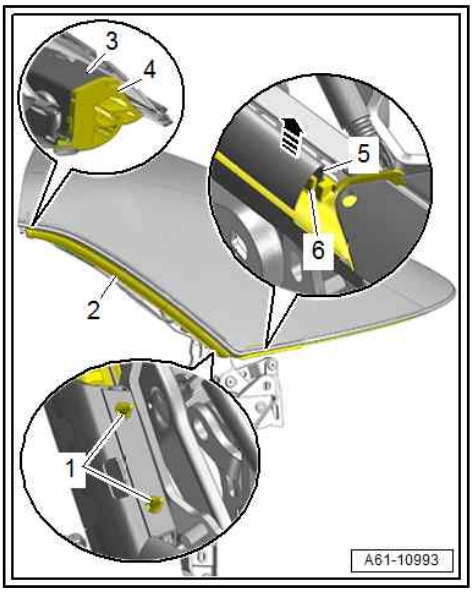
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU



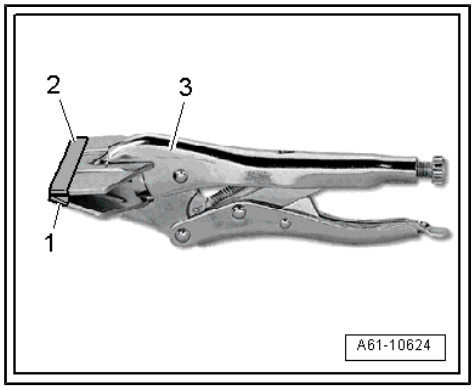
– Remove adhesive strip -3- above guide cable.
– Disengage guide cable -1- at front cross strut -2-.
– Move guide cable clear at convertible roof cover; to do so, pull guide cable out of guide -4- in convertible roof cover.



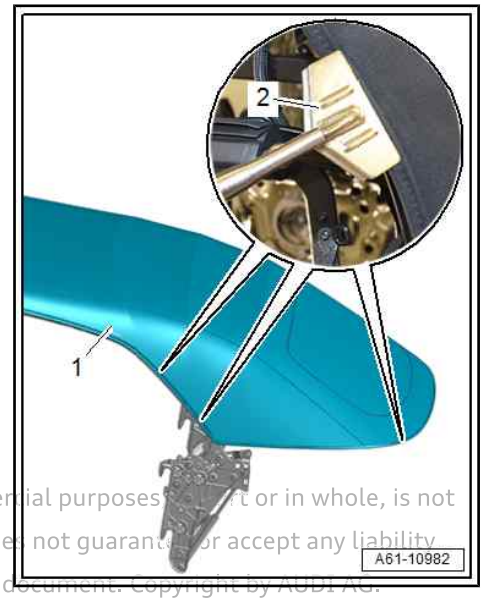
– Detach end piece -4- of convertible roof seal from retaining strip -3-.
– Pull convertible roof seal -2- off retaining strip.
– Disengage retaining lugs -1- from retaining strip.
– Carefully pull joint -5- for convertible roof cover out of retaining strip -6- for convertible roof seal -arrow-.



– Mask clamping jaws of wide mole grips (commercially available) -3- with felt strips -1, 2- to protect convertible roof cover.

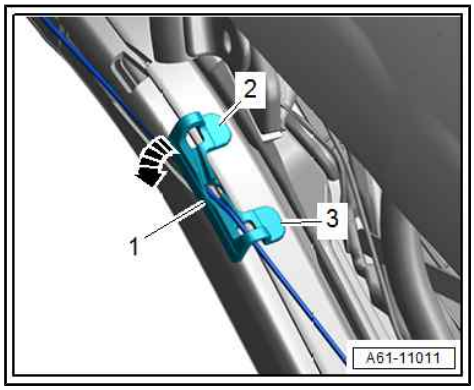


– Using wide mole grips -2-, pull retaining strip on convertible roof cover -1- off surround at main guide element (rear).
– Push convertible roof cover slightly to one side.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Detach guide -1-; to do so, lift fastener (front) -2- and push guide outwards -arrows-.
– Lift fastener (rear) -3- and detach guide.



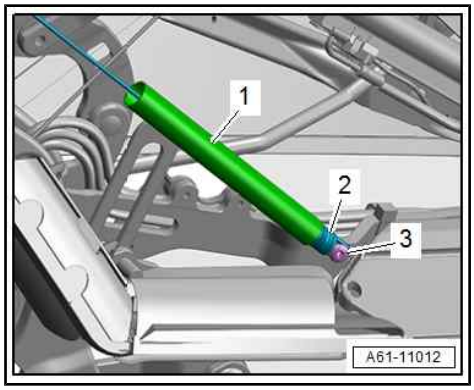
– Push abrasion guard -1- back slightly.
– Unscrew bolt -3- and remove tensioning cable -2-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - tensioning cables and control cables for convertible roof cover”, page 332



2.8 Removing and installing tensioning cable for rear window operating lever

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 331 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wide mole grips, commercially available

Removing

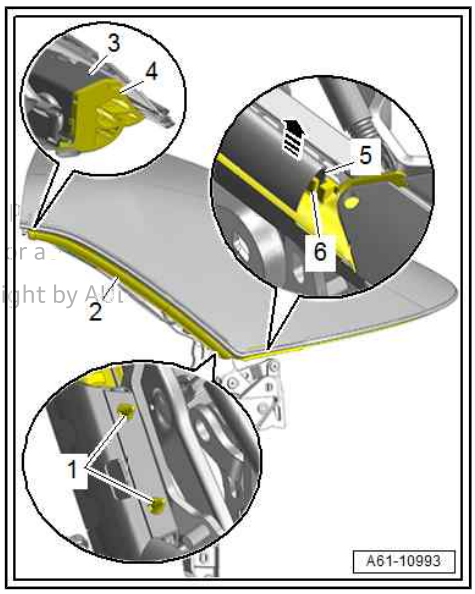
– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 330 .

– Detach end piece -4- of convertible roof seal from retaining strip -3-.

– Pull convertible roof seal -2- off retaining strip.

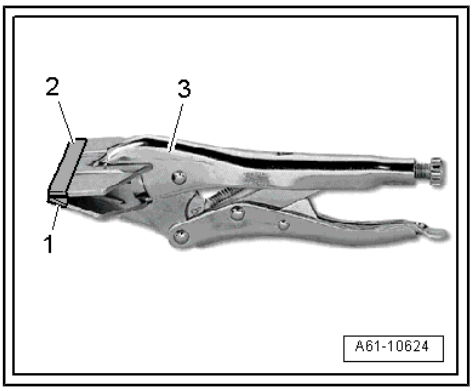
– Disengage retaining lugs -1- from retaining strip.

– Carefully pull joint -5- for convertible roof cover out of retaining strip -6- for convertible roof seal -arrow-.

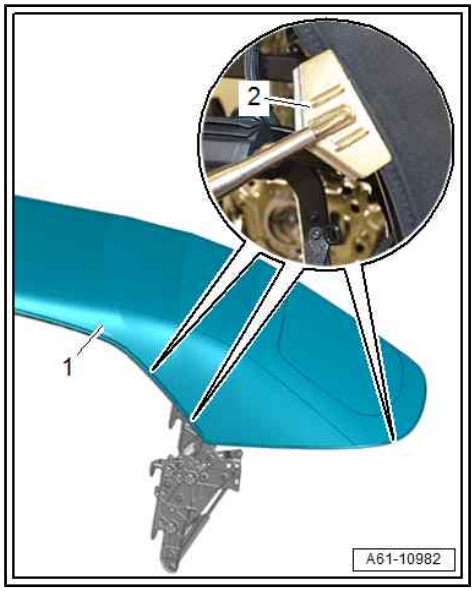


Printed by Audi Service Training for non-commercial purposes, in part
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI

– Mask clamping jaws of wide mole grips (commercially available) -3- with felt strips -1, 2- to protect convertible roof cover.

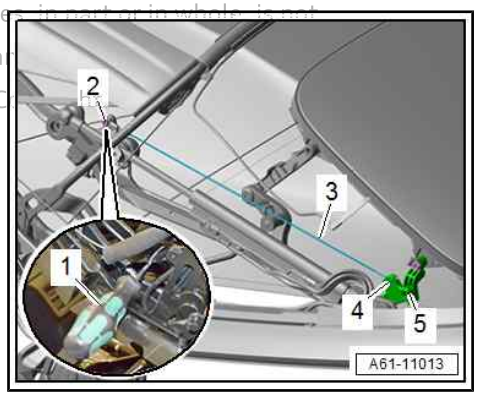


– Using wide mole grips -2-, pull retaining strip on convertible roof cover -1- off surround at main guide element (rear).
– Push convertible roof cover slightly to one side.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the correctness and completeness of this document.

– Apply screwdriver -1- at main bearing as shown, and remove bolt -2-.
– Remove rear window operating lever ⇒ page 360 .
– Detach tensioning cable -3- with rear window operating lever -4-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - tensioning cables and control cables for convertible roof cover”, page 332

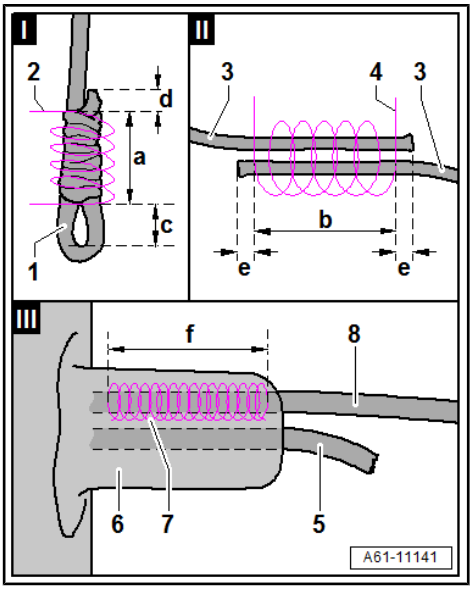
2.9 Procedure for repairing tensioning and control cables

⇒ “2.9.1 Sewing tensioning and control cables”, page 349

⇒ “2.9.2 Attaching fastening elements to tensioning and control cables”, page 349

◆ Exploded view - tensioning and control cable repair kit ⇒ page 334

2.9.1 Sewing tensioning and control cables



If a tensioning or control cable has been cut through, it must be repaired by sewing the sections together again. As a general rule, the connection should be at a point of the tensioning or control cable where the overlapping sections can move freely; i.e. they should not make contact with any components of the convertible roof. This is generally the case at the ends of the tensioning and control cables.

-I-: Sewing a loop

– Fold cable up to create a loop -1- according to the following dimensions and sew it up by hand -2-.

♦ Dimension -a- = 10 +/– 1 mm

♦ Dimension -c- = 6 +/– 2 mm

♦ Dimension -d- = 5 – 3 mm

-II-: Sewing up tensioning/control cable

– Cut tensioning/control cable to the correct length ⇒ page 334 .

• Take length of overlapping sections into account before cutting cable.

– Align tensioning/control cable -3- according to the following dimensions and sew overlapping sections together by hand -4-.

♦ Dimension -b- = 20 mm

♦ Dimension -e- = 5 _ 3 mm

-III-: Sewing tensioning/control cable to tongue

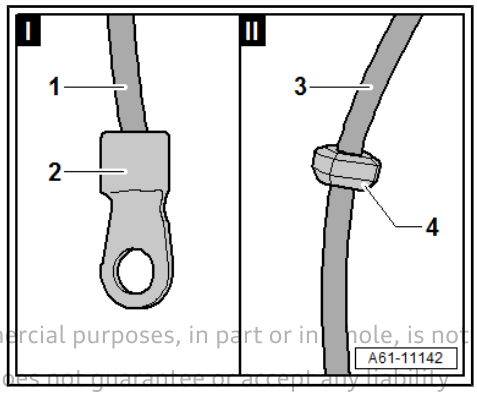
If a tensioning/control cable has been cut at the tongue -6-, it must be repaired directly at the tongue.

– Cut tensioning/control cable to the correct length ⇒ page 334 .

– Align tensioning/control cable -8- according to the following dimensions with overlap at tongue -6- next to severed tensioning/control cable -5- and sew together by hand -7-.

♦ Dimension -f- = 20 mm

2.9.2 Attaching fastening elements to tensioning and control cables



-I-: Attaching eyelet

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wiring harness repair set - VAS 1978 B-

♦ Head adapter 0.35 – 2.5 mm² - VAS 1978/1-1-

– Secure eyelet -2- to end of tensioning/control cable -1- using crimping pliers.

-II-: Attaching sealing tag

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wiring harness repair set - VAS 1978 B-
- Head adapter 4.0 – 6.0 mm² - VAS 1978/2 A-

– Attach sealing tag -4- to tensioning/control cable -3- at specified position ⇒ Item 8 (page 335) using crimping pliers.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Attachments

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - convertible roof seals”, page 351

⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - convertible roof trim”, page 353

⇒ “3.3 Exploded view - convertible roof frame attachments”, page 354

⇒ “3.4 Removing and installing convertible roof seals”, page 354

⇒ “3.5 Removing and installing convertible roof trim”, page 357

⇒ “3.6 Removing and installing connecting rod”, page 358

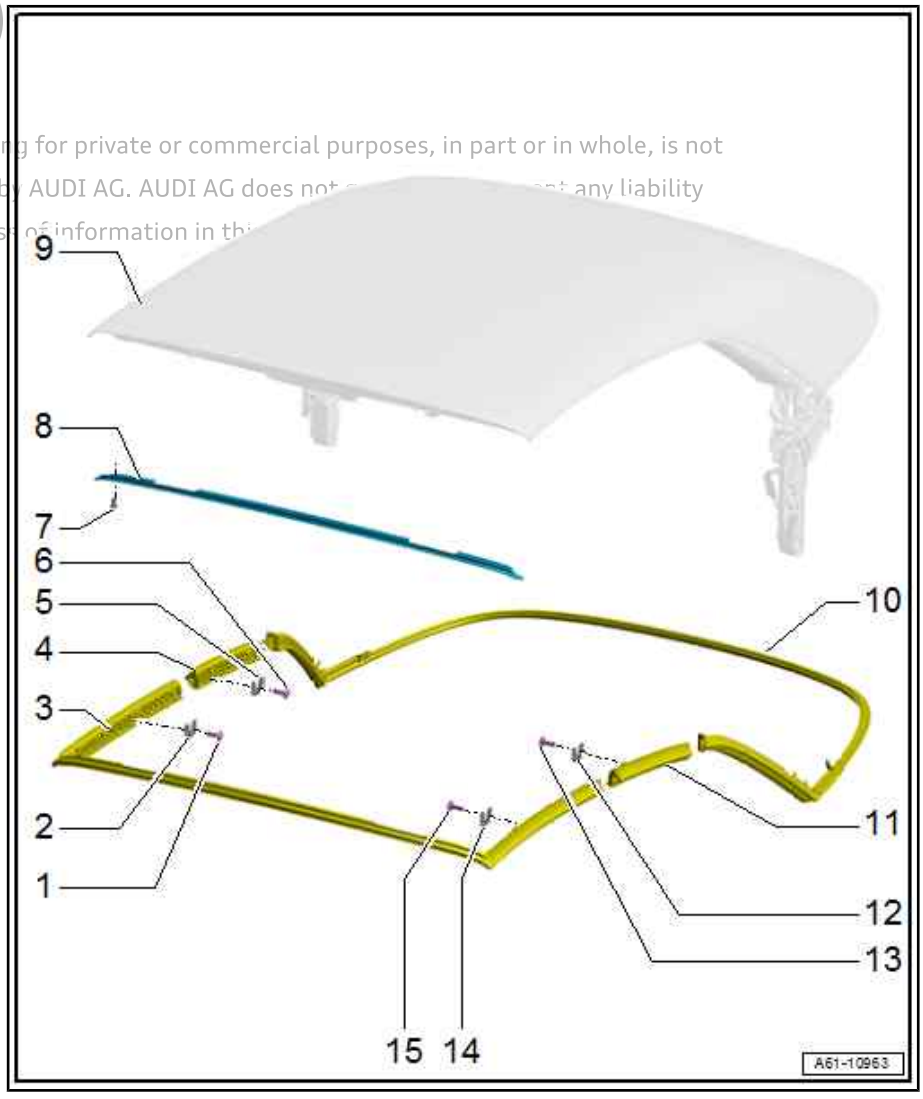
⇒ “3.7 Removing and installing damper”, page 358

⇒ “3.8 Removing and installing mounting for interior light (rear)”, page 359

⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing rear window operating lever”, page 360

3.1 Exploded view - convertible roof seals

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this



1 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 5 Nm

2 - Spacer
- ❑ Different thicknesses

3 - Convertible roof seal
- ❑ Front
- ❑ Renew butyl cord/tape after removing ⇒ page 355
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 354

4 - Convertible roof seal
- ❑ Centre
- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 355

5 - Spacer
- ❑ Different thicknesses

6 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 5 Nm

7 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 7x
- ❑ 5 Nm

8 - Retaining strip
- ❑ For seal (front)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 354

9 - Convertible roof

10 - Convertible roof seal

- ❑ Rear
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 356

11 - Convertible roof seal

- ❑ Centre
- ❑ Left-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 355

12 - Spacer

- ❑ Different thicknesses

13 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 5 Nm

14 - Spacer

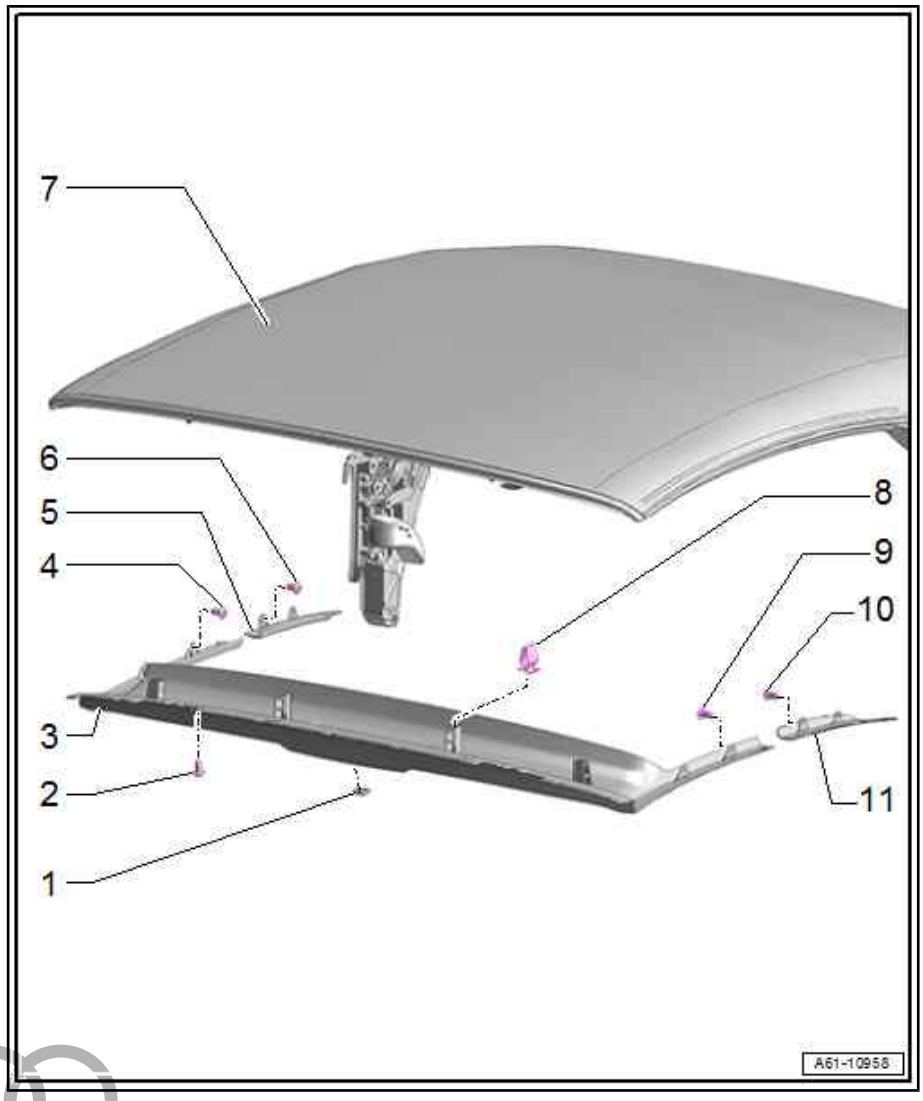
- ❑ Different thicknesses

15 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2 Exploded view - convertible roof trim



1 - Cover
- ❑ For convertible roof manual release mechanism

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 5 Nm

3 - Trim
- ❑ Front
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 357

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

5 - Trim
- ❑ Centre
- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 358

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

7 - Convertible roof
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 320

8 - Clip
- ❑ 4x

9 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

11 - Trim
- ❑ Centre
- ❑ Left-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 358

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.3 Exploded view - convertible roof frame attachments

1 - Connecting rod
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 358

2 - Damper
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 358

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 5 Nm

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 8 Nm

5 - Mounting
- ❑ For interior light
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 359

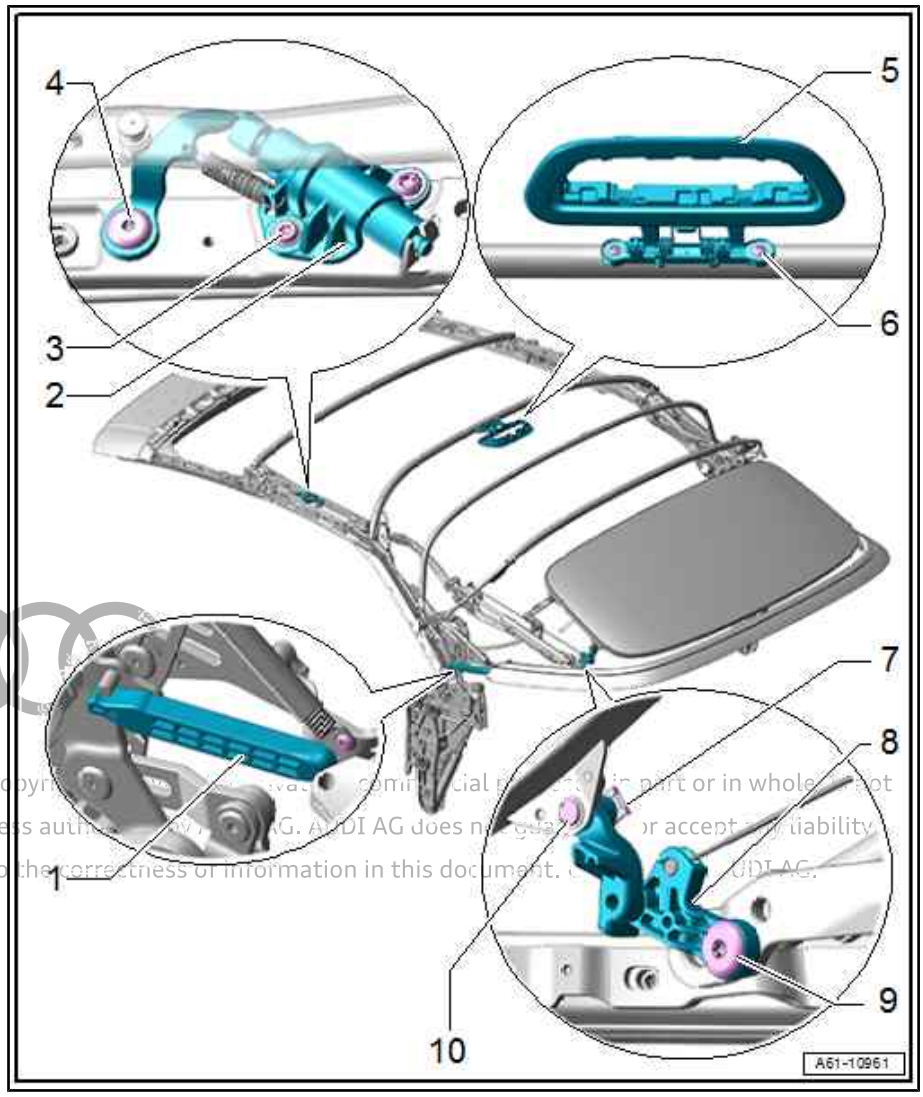
6 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

7 - Securing clip

8 - Rear window operating lever
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 360

9 - Bolt
- ❑ 8 Nm

10 - Stud



Protected by copyright. Copying for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © AUDI AG.

3.4 Removing and installing convertible roof seals

⇒ “3.4.1 Removing and installing convertible roof seal (front)”, page 354

⇒ “3.4.2 Removing and installing convertible roof seal (centre)”, page 355

⇒ “3.4.3 Removing and installing convertible roof seal (rear)”, page 356

3.4.1 Removing and installing convertible roof seal (front)

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 355 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Butyl adhesive sealing cord - AKL 450 005 05-

Removing

– Remove trim (front) ⇒ page 357 .

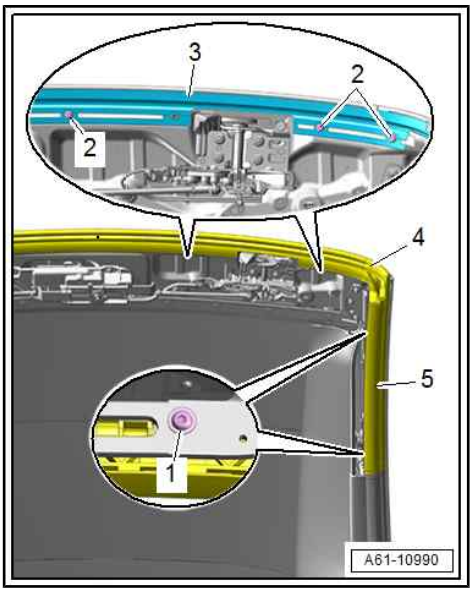
– Mark installation position of convertible roof seal -5- for re-installation.

– Remove bolts -1-.

– Detach convertible roof seal -5- at side together with retaining strip; pay attention to spacers.

– Remove bolts -2-.

– Detach convertible roof seal -4- together with strip -3-.



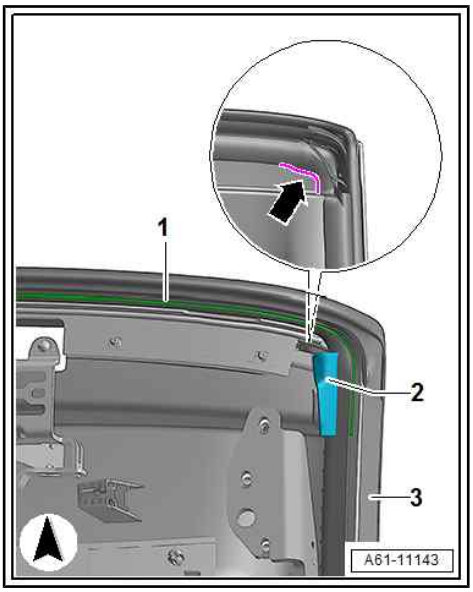
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert convertible roof seal according to marking made during removal.

– Mark position of butyl cord -1- and butyl tape -2- on convertible roof seal -3- for re-installation.

– Renew
butyl adhesive sealing cord - AKL 450 005 05- -1- and butyl tape -2- and fit according to marks made during removal.



Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - convertible roof seals”, page 351

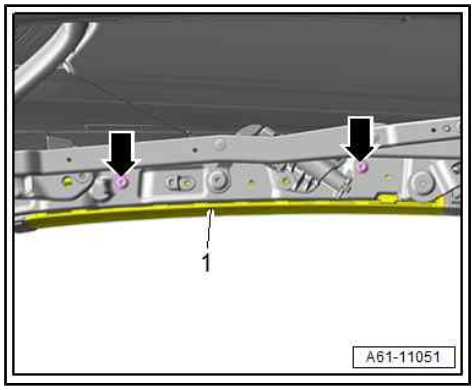
3.4.2 Removing and installing convertible roof seal (centre)

Removing

– Remove trim (centre) ⇒ page 358 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Mark installation position of convertible roof seal -1- for re-installation.
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach convertible roof seal -1- together with retaining strip; pay attention to spacers.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert convertible roof seal according to marking made during removal.

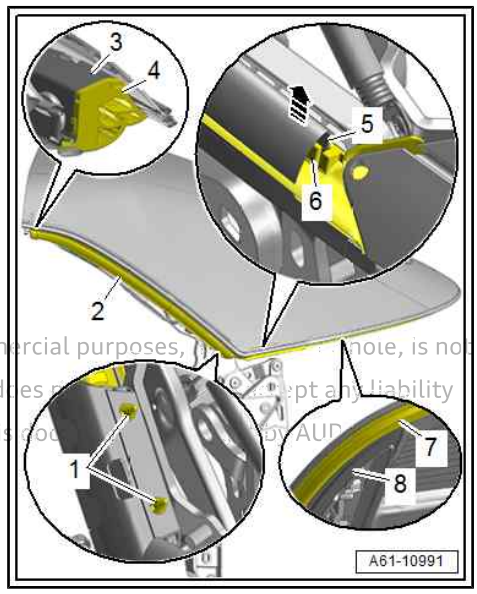
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - convertible roof seals”, page 351

3.4.3 Removing and installing convertible roof seal (rear)

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 330 , ⇒ page 330 .
– Detach end piece -4- of convertible roof seal from retaining strip -3-.
– Pull convertible roof seal -2- off retaining strip.
– Disengage retaining lugs -1- from retaining strip.
– Carefully pull joint -5- for convertible roof cover out of retaining strip -6- for convertible roof seal -arrow-.
– Detach convertible roof seal -7- at tensioner -8- and remove.



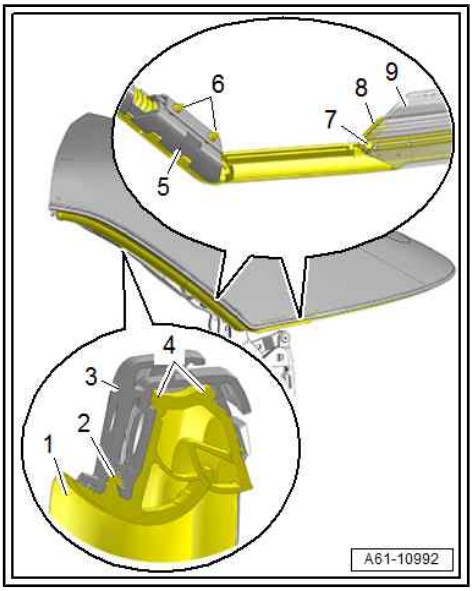
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Insert guide pin -7- and cover -8- for convertible roof seal into mountings on tensioner -9-.
– Insert retaining lugs -6- of convertible roof seal into mounting of retaining strip -5- and press convertible roof seal -1- evenly into retaining strip.

• Guides -2 and 4- of convertible roof seal must be seated correctly in mountings of retaining strip -3-.



3.5 Removing and installing convertible roof trim

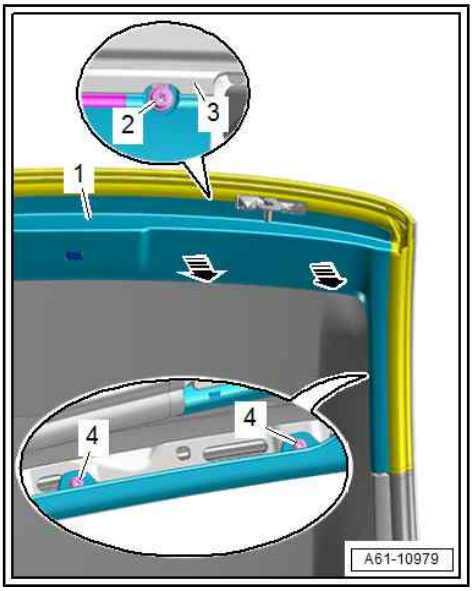
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ “3.5.1 Removing and installing trim (front)”, page 357
⇒ “3.5.2 Removing and installing trim (centre)”, page 358

3.5.1 Removing and installing trim (front)

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 330 .
– Remove bolts -2, 4-.
– Release fasteners -arrows- and detach trim -1- by guiding it out of retaining rail -3- for convertible roof seal (front).
– Depending on version: Separate adhesive bond between convertible roof seal and convertible roof trim ⇒ page 358 .



Installing

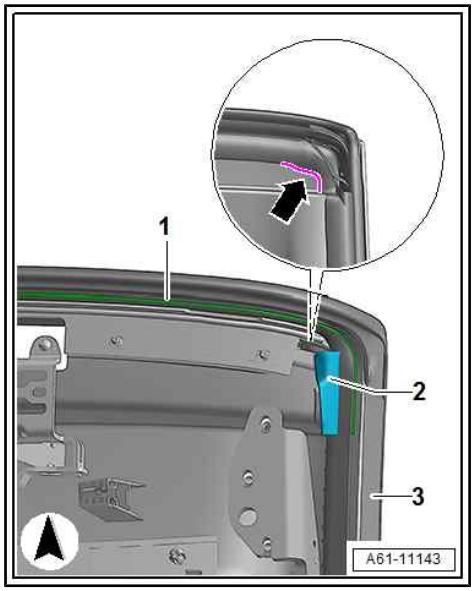
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Remove any clips left in mounting points using removal tool -T40280- .

– Depending on version:
Bond convertible roof seal onto convertible roof trim -arrow- using locking fluid - D 154 100 A1- .

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - convertible roof trim”, page 353

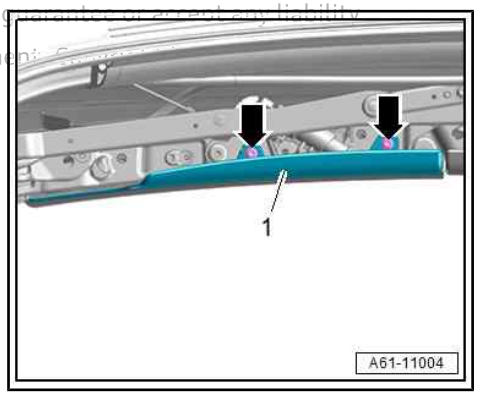


3.5.2 Removing and installing trim (centre)

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 330 .
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach trim -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

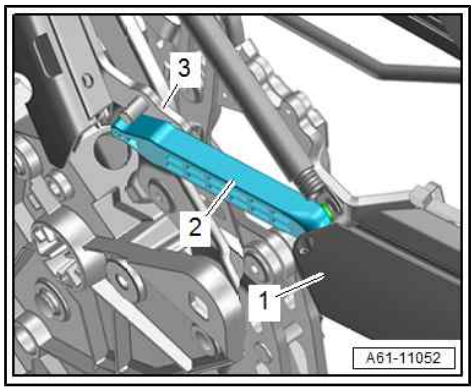
Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - convertible roof trim”, page 353

3.6 Removing and installing connecting rod

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 330 .
– Press connecting rod -2- off ball stud at main guide element -3- and tensioner -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

3.7 Removing and installing damper

• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 354 .

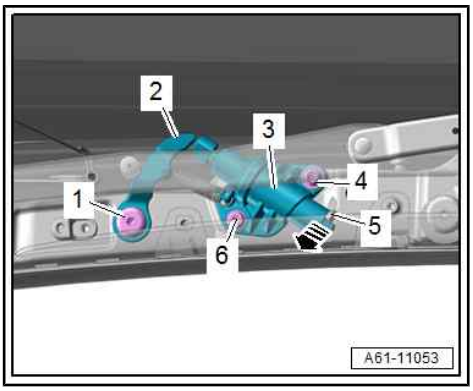
Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 330 .

– Remove bolts -1, 4, 6-.

– Detach operating lever -2- with damper -3-.

– Slide damper out of mounting -5- towards inside of vehicle -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

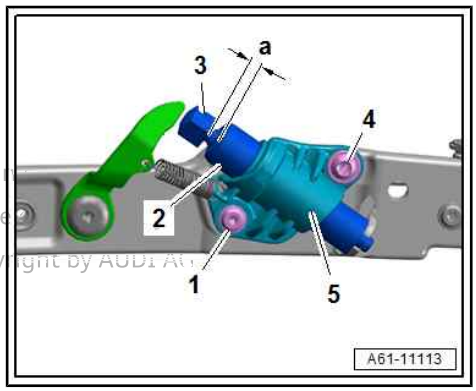
– Install damper and screw in bolts -1, 4- loosely.

• It must still be possible to move bracket with damper.

– Measure distance -a- between stop -3- and damper -2- and, if necessary, move bracket -5- in elongated hole.

• Dimension -a- = 0.5 –1.5 mm

– Tighten bolts.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “3.3 Exploded view - convertible roof frame attachments”, page 354

3.8 Removing and installing mounting for interior light (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

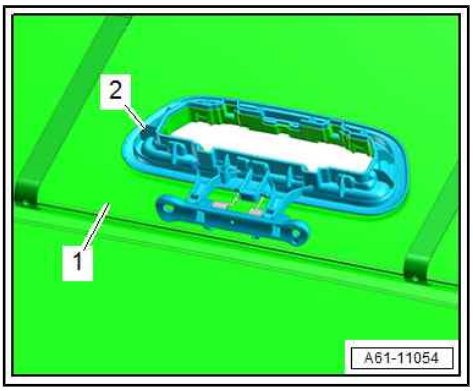
♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

Removing

– Detach convertible roof headliner as far as cross strut 3 ⇒ page 341 .

– Release convertible roof headliner -1- from adhesive bond at mounting -2-.

– Detach mounting.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Clean bonding surface on mounting with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

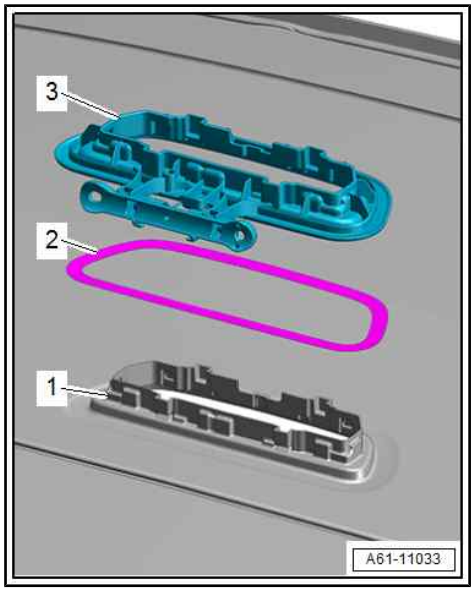
– Detach protective film from moulding -2-, position it on mounting and press it on. Make sure that convertible roof headliner is bonded on without any creases.
– Fit mounting on cross strut “3”.
– Detach protective film from moulding, position convertible roof headliner -1- on mounting -3- and press it on.

New convertible roof headliner:

– Make an opening for interior light in convertible roof headliner in vicinity of mounting.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “3.3 Exploded view - convertible roof frame attachments”, page 354



3.9 Removing and installing rear window operating lever

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 330 .
– Detach securing clip -2- and pull out pin -3-.
– Remove bolt -5-.
– Remove tensioning cable for rear window operating lever ⇒ page 347 .
– Detach rear window operating lever -4- with tensioning cable.

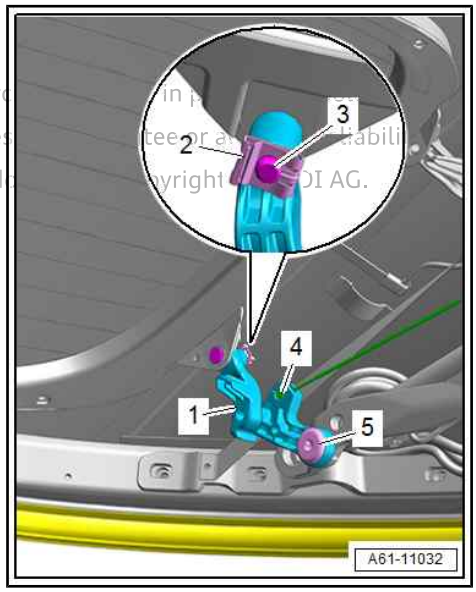
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerc... in p...
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does ...teeor a... liabili...
...ll consent in the correctness of information in this d... ...yright ...DI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “3.3 Exploded view - convertible roof frame attachments”, page 354



4 Hydraulic system

⇒ “4.1 Overview of fitting locations - hydraulic system”, page 361

⇒ “4.2 Exploded view - hydraulic system”, page 362

⇒ “4.3 Exploded view - hydraulic pump”, page 363

⇒ “4.4 Removing and installing hydraulic pump”, page 365

⇒ “4.5 Removing and installing hydraulic pump with hydraulic cylinders”, page 365

⇒ “4.6 Removing and installing hydraulic pump motor”, page 368

⇒ “4.7 Removing and installing hydraulic cylinders”, page 370

⇒ “4.8 Removing and installing hydraulic line”, page 371

⇒ “4.9 Checking fluid level in hydraulic system”, page 373

⇒ “4.10 Filling and bleeding the hydraulic system”, page 374

4.1 Overview of fitting locations - hydraulic system

1 - Hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof compartment lid

- ❑ Left-side
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 362

2 - Hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof drive unit

- ❑ Left-side
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 362

3 - Hydraulic cylinder for tensioner

- ❑ Left-side
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 362

4 - Hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof drive unit

- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 362

5 - Hydraulic cylinder for tensioner

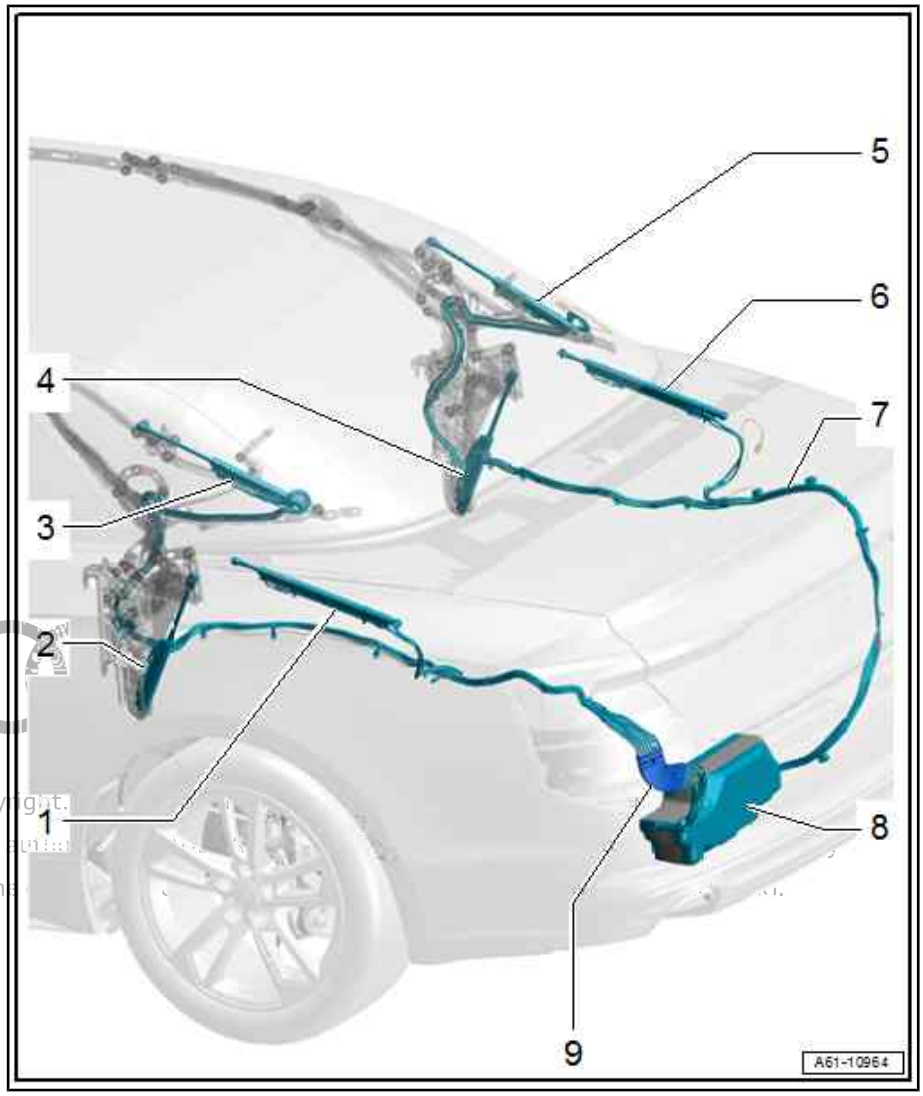
- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 362

6 - Hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof compartment lid

- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 362

7 - Hydraulic lines

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 362



Protected by copyright.
...mitted unless ...

8 - Hydraulic pump

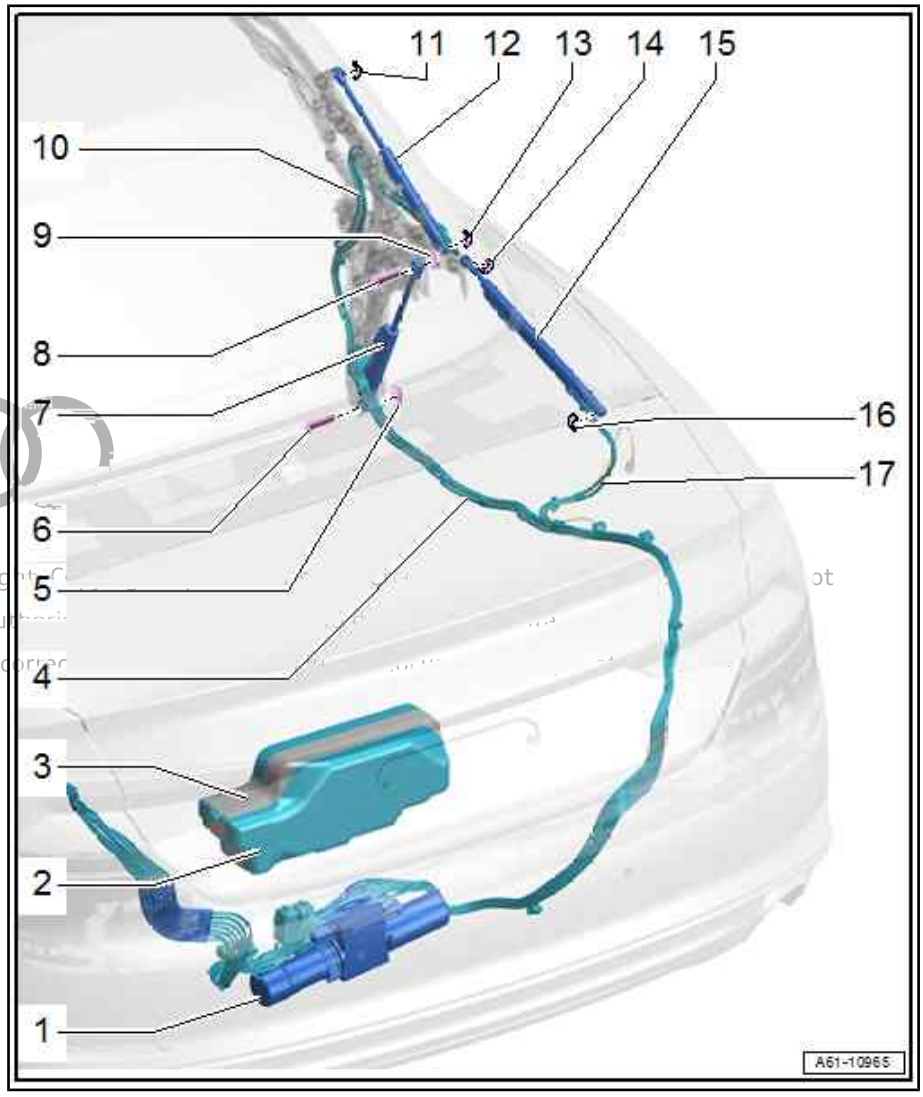
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 362

9 - Fastener

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 362

4.2 Exploded view - hydraulic system

◆ Overview of fitting locations - hydraulic system ⇒ page 361



1 - Hydraulic pump

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 363

2 - Noise insulation

- ❑ For hydraulic pump

3 - Adhesive tape

4 - Hydraulic line

- ❑ For hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof drive unit
- ❑ Renew retaining clip for hydraulic line after removal.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 371

5 - Securing clip

6 - Retaining pins

7 - Hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof drive unit

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 370

8 - Retaining pins

9 - Securing clip

10 - Hydraulic line

- ❑ For hydraulic cylinder for tensioner
- ❑ Renew retaining clip for hydraulic line after removal.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 371

11 - Retaining clip

12 - Hydraulic cylinder for tensioner

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 370

13 - Retaining clip

14 - Retaining clip

15 - Hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof compartment lid

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 371

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

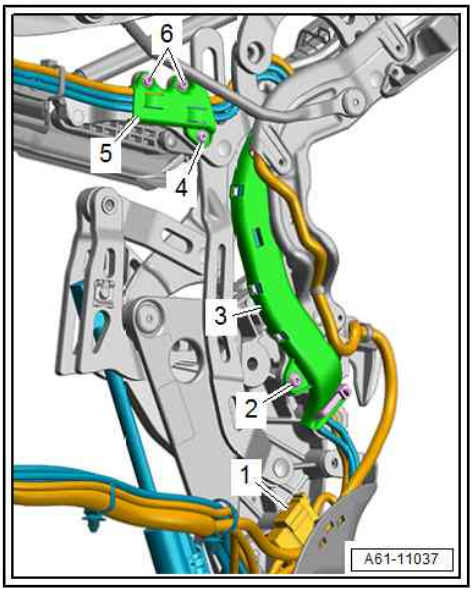
16 - Retaining clip

17 - Hydraulic line

- ❑ For hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof compartment lid
- ❑ Renew retaining clip for hydraulic line after removal.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 371

Cable retainer - tightening torque

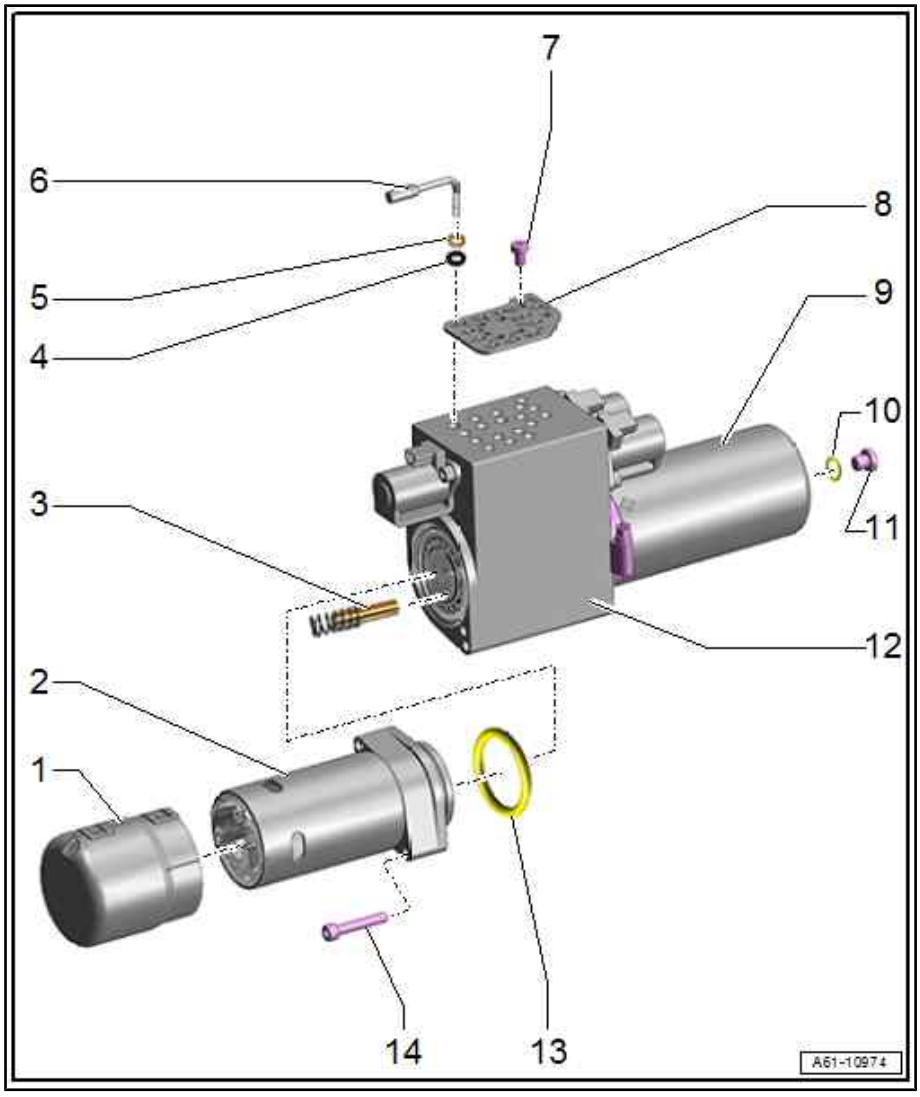
– Tighten bolts -2, 4, 6- to 2.5 Nm.



4.3 Exploded view - hydraulic pump

- ♦ Removing and installing hydraulic pump ⇒ page 365
- ♦ Removing and installing hydraulic pump with hydraulic cylinders ⇒ page 365

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Cover
- ❑ For electrical wiring harness

2 - Motor
- ❑ For hydraulic pump
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 368

3 - Actuator
- ❑ With spring
- ❑ Not available as replacement part

4 - Seal
- ❑ Not available as replacement part

5 - Support ring
- ❑ Not available as replacement part

6 - Hydraulic line
- ❑ Every hydraulic line is marked with a number which must be positioned opposite the number on the retaining plate.
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 371

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 4 Nm

8 - Retaining plate
- ❑ For hydraulic lines

9 - Reservoir
- ❑ Checking fluid level ⇒ page 373

10 - Seal
- ❑ Is renewed together with filler plug
- ❑ Coat lightly with hydraulic fluid before installing

11 - Filler plug
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 1 Nm

12 - Valve block

13 - Seal
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Coat lightly with hydraulic fluid before installing

14 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 6 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.4 Removing and installing hydraulic pump

Removing

– Lift luggage compartment floor.

– Take out compartment for windbreak.

– Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing lock carrier trim .

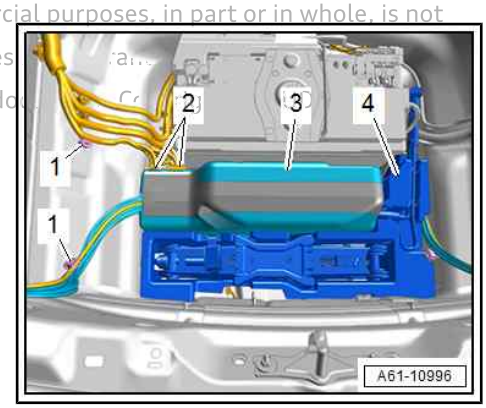
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does [illegible] with respect to the correctness of information in this do[illegible]

– Press retainers -1- off threaded pins.

– Take out tool kit -4-.

– Unplug electrical connectors -2-.

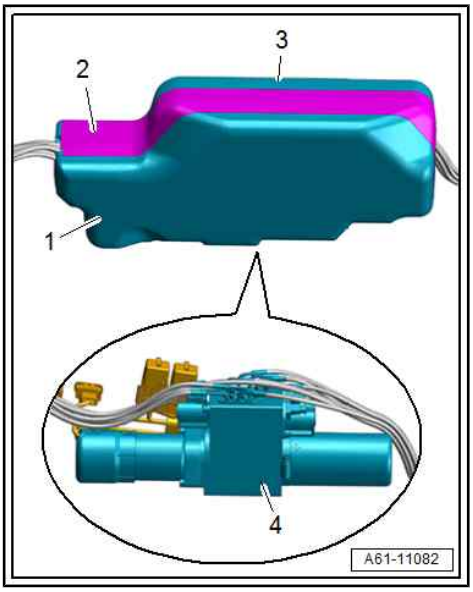
– Move hydraulic pump -3- towards front with hydraulic lines connected.



– Pull off adhesive strip -2-.

– Take hydraulic pump -4- out of noise insulation -3-.

– Remove hydraulic lines ⇒ page 373 .



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

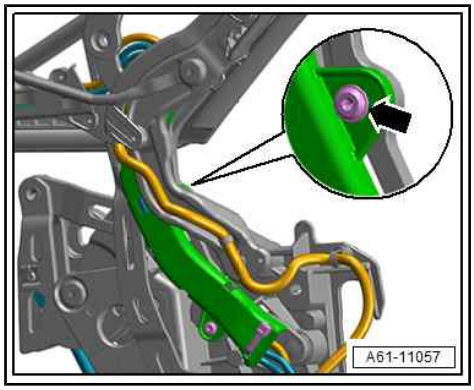
4.5 Removing and installing hydraulic pump with hydraulic cylinders

- To avoid interchanging components and to make sure that they are re-installed in the original positions, mark the hydraulic cylinders, hydraulic lines and electrical wires prior to removal. Make sketches or take photographs if necessary.

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 330 .

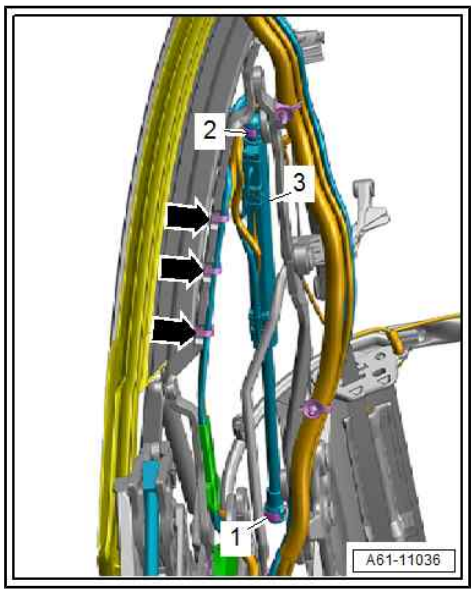
– Remove bolt -arrow-.
– Remove convertible roof ⇒ page 325 .
– Set down convertible roof on a soft surface.



– Move convertible roof to position shown.

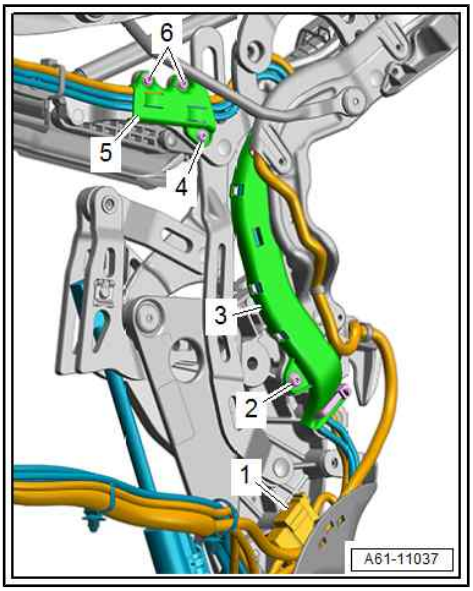


– Lift retaining clips -1 and 2- slightly using a small screwdriver, and pull hydraulic cylinder -3- off ball stud.
– Cut through cable ties -arrows-.

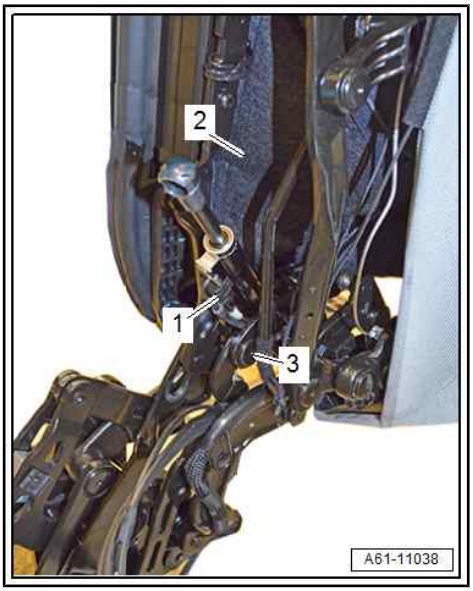


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

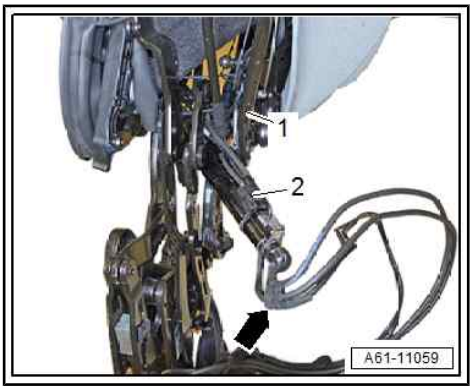
– Remove bolt -2- and move cable retainer -3- clear.
– Remove bolts -4, 6- and detach cable retainer -5-.
– Move electrical connector -1- clear.



– Guide hydraulic cylinder -1- out downwards between convertible roof cover -2- and convertible roof linkage -3-.

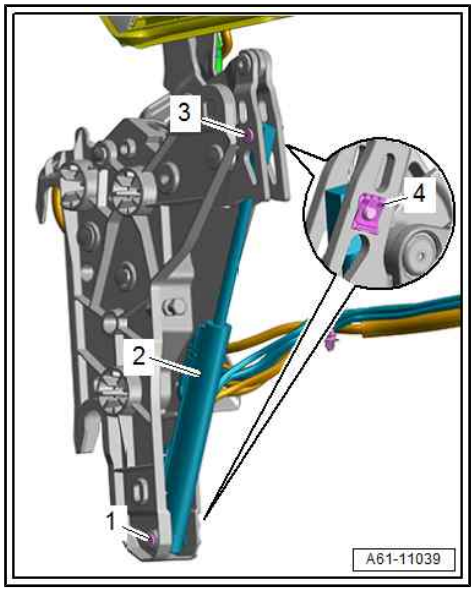


– Guide out hydraulic cylinder -2- at tensioner -1-, as shown in illustration.
– Move hydraulic lines and wiring harness clear -arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release securing clips -4- and pull out retaining pins -1, 3-.
– Detach hydraulic cylinder -2- from main mounting.
– Detach hydraulic cylinder with hydraulic pump.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ Fig. ""Cable retainer - tightening torque"" , page 363

4.6 Removing and installing hydraulic pump motor

• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 363 .

Removing

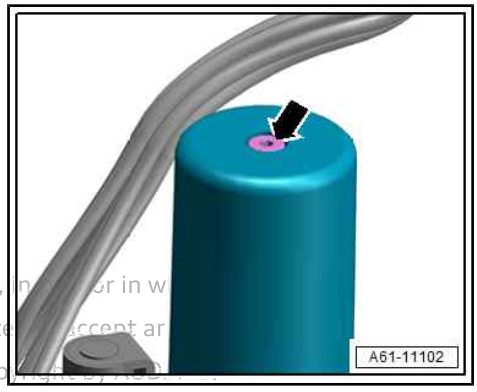
– Remove hydraulic pump and move clear to one side with hydraulic lines connected ⇒ page 365 .

Note:

Before removing, put cleaning cloth or container underneath pump to catch any escaping hydraulic fluid.

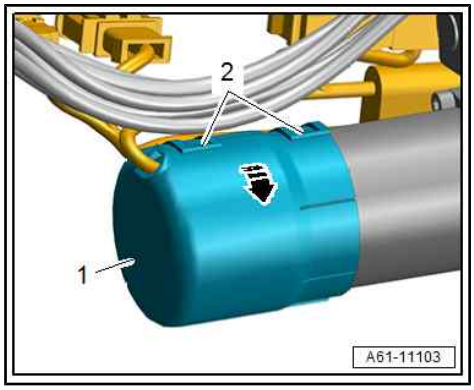
• Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 4 .

– Unscrew filler plug -arrow- once to equalise pressure and screw it in again.
– Place pump with motor facing upwards in a vertical position for several minutes to let hydraulic fluid flow into reservoir.



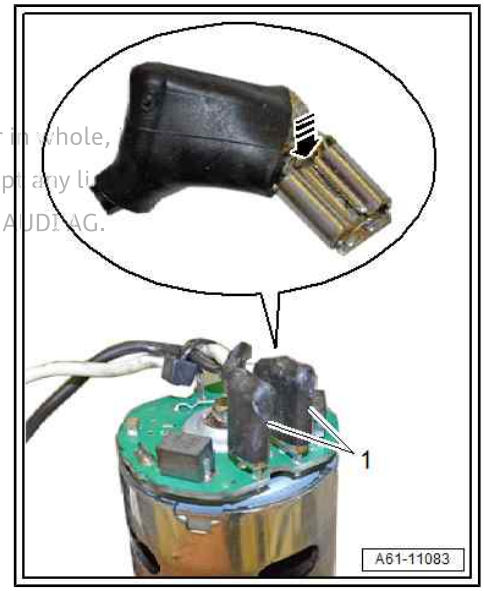
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, n or in w
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarante ccept ar
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

– Release fasteners -2- and swivel cover half to the side -arrow-.
– Remove cover -1- from motor.

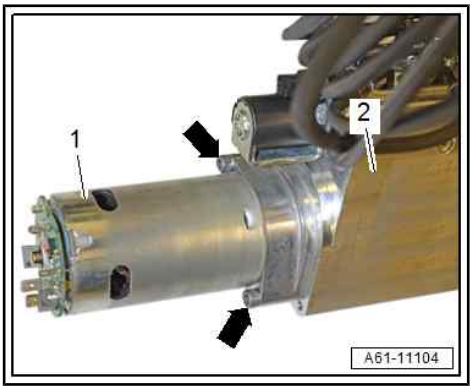


– Press release mechanism -arrow- and unplug electrical connectors -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



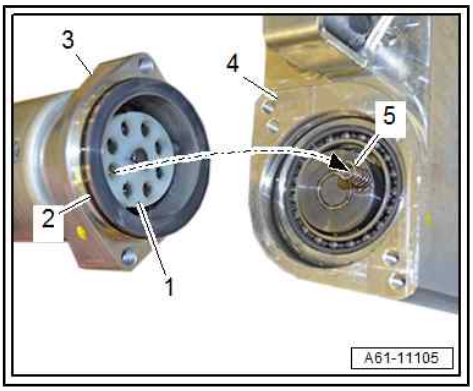
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Pull motor -1- off valve block -2- by moving it back and forth slightly.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Slide new seal -2- onto motor.
– Position motor -3- on valve block -4-.
• Shaft -5- must engage in recess in actuator -1-.
– Fit motor onto valve block, moving it back and forth slightly.
– Check hydraulic fluid level and top up if necessary ⇒ page 374 .



Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “4.3 Exploded view - hydraulic pump”, page 363

4.7 Removing and installing hydraulic cylinders

⇒ “4.7.1 Removing and installing hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof drive unit”, page 370

⇒ “4.7.2 Removing and installing hydraulic cylinder for tensioner”, page 370

⇒ “4.7.3 Removing and installing hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof compartment lid”, page 371

4.7.1 Removing and installing hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof drive unit

Removing

– Remove convertible roof ⇒ page 325 .

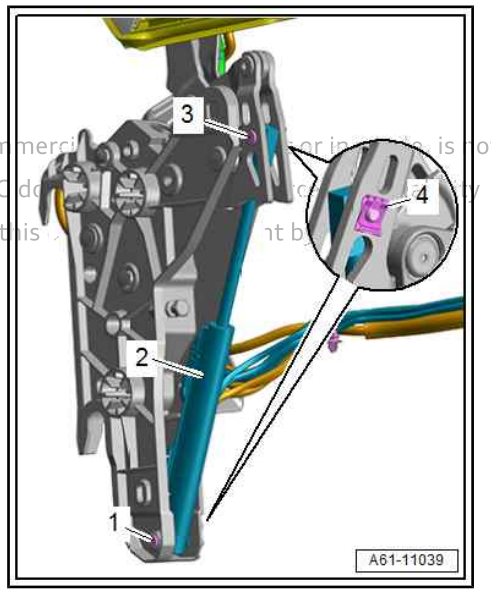
– Release securing clips -4- and pull out retaining pins -1, 3-.

– Detach hydraulic cylinder -2- from main mounting.

If hydraulic cylinder is to be renewed:

♦ Remove hydraulic line ⇒ page 371 .

♦ Hydraulic cylinder (left-side): Move wiring harness clear and remove convertible roof switch -F171- / -F202- ⇒ page 382 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, or in any form, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Fill and bleed hydraulic system ⇒ page 374 .

4.7.2 Removing and installing hydraulic cylinder for tensioner

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 330 .

– Lift retaining clips -1 and 2- slightly using a small screwdriver, and pull hydraulic cylinder -3- off ball stud.

– Cut through cable ties -arrows- and detach hydraulic cylinder.

If hydraulic cylinder is to be renewed:

♦ Remove hydraulic line ⇒ page 371 .

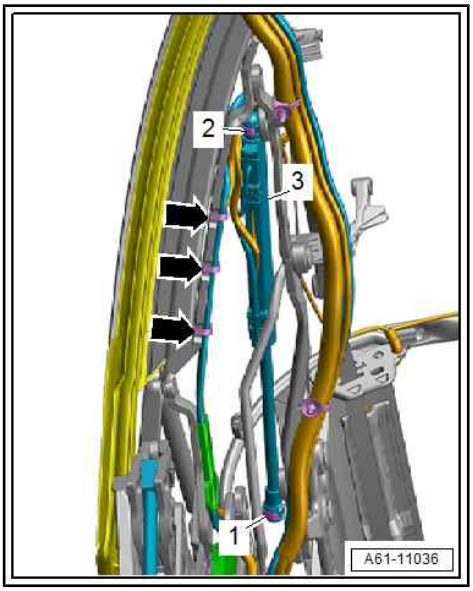
♦ Hydraulic cylinder (left-side): Move wiring harness clear and remove tensioning strut switch -F408- / -F409- ⇒ page 387 .

♦ Hydraulic cylinder (right-side): Move wiring harness clear and remove tensioning strut switch -F420- / -F518- ⇒ page 387 .

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Fill and bleed hydraulic system ⇒ page 374 .



4.7.3 Removing and installing hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof compartment lid

• A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 371).

Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 330 .

– Release securing tab -1- -arrow-, open retainer downwards and detach cable retainer -7- from ball stud (bottom).

– Release fastener -6- and detach cable retainer with wiring harness from hydraulic cylinder -5-.

– Lift retaining clip -3- slightly and pull hydraulic cylinder -2- off ball stud -4-.

– Detach hydraulic cylinder.

If hydraulic cylinder is to be renewed:

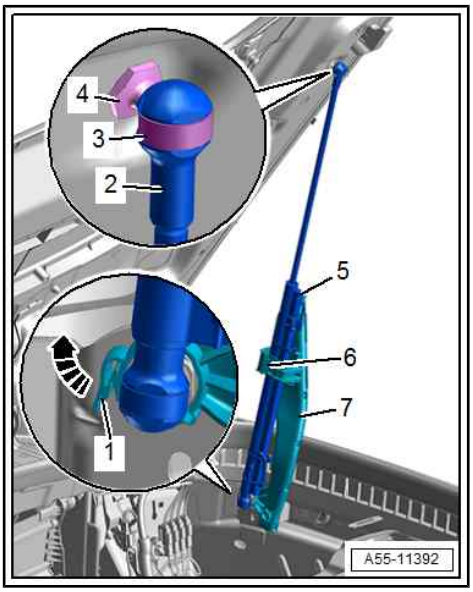
♦ Remove hydraulic line ⇒ page 371 .

♦ Hydraulic cylinder (left-side): Move wiring harness clear and remove convertible roof box lid open switch - F407- ⇒ page 387 .

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Fill and bleed hydraulic system ⇒ page 374 .



4.8 Removing and installing hydraulic line

⇒ “4.8.1 Removing and installing hydraulic line at cylinder”, page 371

⇒ “4.8.2 Removing and installing hydraulic line at valve block”, page 373

4.8.1 Removing and installing hydraulic line at cylinder

• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 362 .

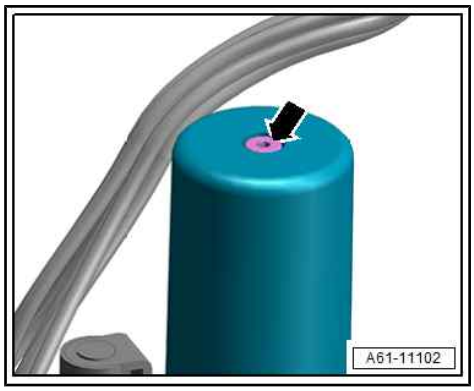
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove hydraulic cylinder ⇒ page 370 , ⇒ page 370 , ⇒ page 371 .

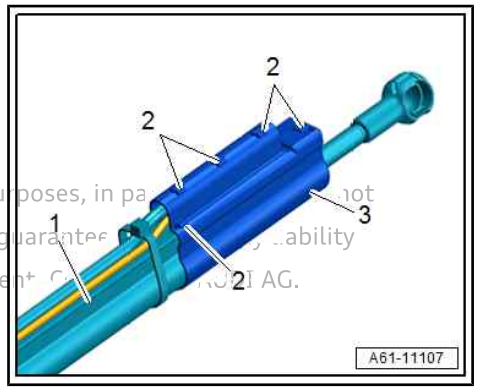
• Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 4 .

– Unscrew filler plug -arrow- once to equalise pressure and screw it in again.



– Hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof compartment lid: Release fasteners -2- and pull cover -3- off hydraulic cylinder -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the availability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



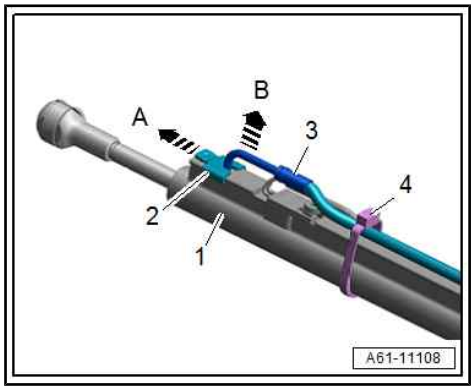
– If fitted, cut through cable tie -4-.

– Press retaining clip -2- off hydraulic line -arrow A- using pipe wrench or punch.

Note:

If access to convertible roof box lid open switch - F407- is obstructed, it must be removed ⇒ page 387 .

– Pull hydraulic line -3- out of hydraulic cylinder -1- -arrow B-.



If hydraulic line is to be renewed:

♦ Remove hydraulic line at valve block ⇒ page 373 .

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Coat hydraulic line lightly with hydraulic fluid.

– Slide hydraulic line into hydraulic cylinder, rotating it while doing so.

Note:

Pushing in the hydraulic line with force will damage the O-ring.

– Secure hydraulic line; to do so, press new retaining clip as far as possible onto hydraulic line.

– Check fluid level ⇒ page 373 .

4.8.2 Removing and installing hydraulic line at valve block

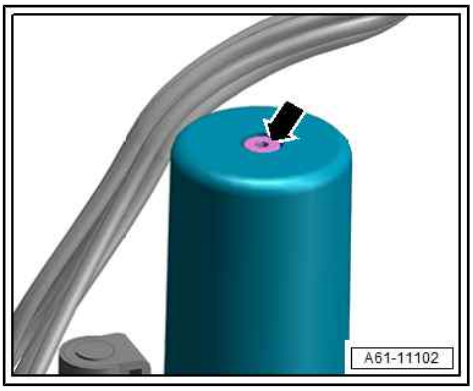
- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 363 .

Removing

– Remove hydraulic pump and move clear to one side with hydraulic lines connected ⇒ page 365 .

- Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 4 .

– Unscrew filler plug -arrow- once to equalise pressure and screw it in again.

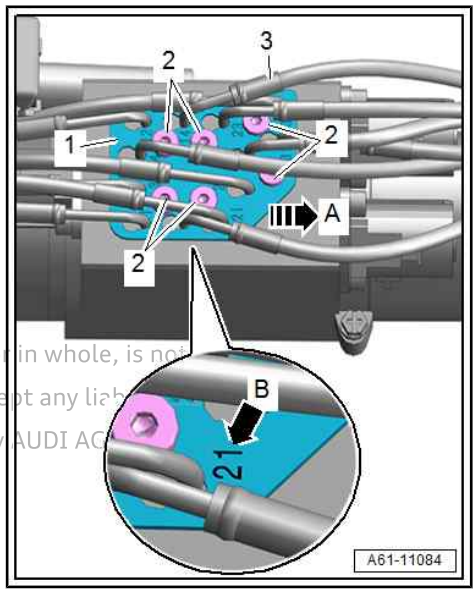


– Remove bolts -2- and slide retaining plate -1- to the side -arrow A-.

– Pull hydraulic lines -3- out of valve block.

If hydraulic line is to be renewed:

◆ Remove hydraulic line at hydraulic cylinder ⇒ page 371 .



Installing

– Coat hydraulic line lightly with hydraulic fluid.

– Slide hydraulic line into valve block, rotating it while doing so.

- Every hydraulic line is marked with a number which must be positioned opposite the number -arrow B- on the valve block.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note:

Pushing in the hydraulic line with force will damage the O-ring.

– Check fluid level ⇒ page 373 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “4.3 Exploded view - hydraulic pump”, page 363

4.9 Checking fluid level in hydraulic system

Procedure

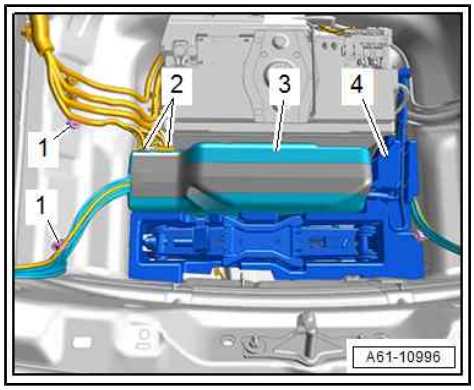
– Lift luggage compartment floor.

– Take out compartment for windbreak.

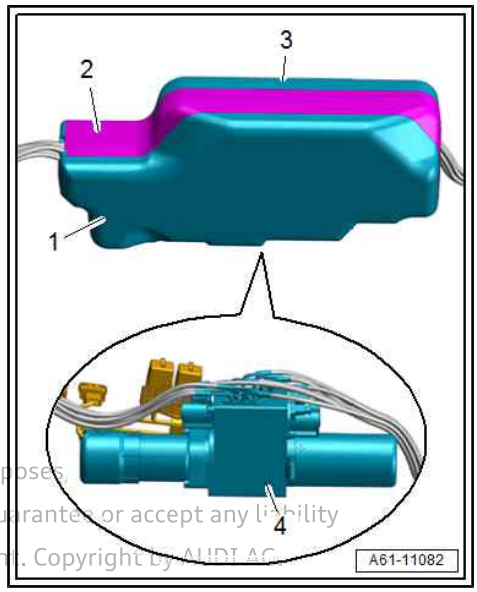
– Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing lock carrier trim .

- Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 4 .

– Take out tool kit -4-.
– Move hydraulic pump -3- towards rear with lines connected.

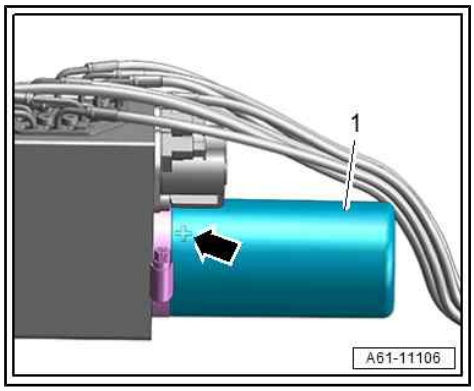


– Pull off adhesive strip -2-.
– Remove noise insulation -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Open and close convertible roof twice via electro-hydraulic actuator mechanism.
– Check fluid level in reservoir -1- with convertible roof open and convertible roof compartment lid closed.
• Fluid level must be within “+” marking -arrow- (hydraulic pump must be in horizontal position).
– If necessary, fill hydraulic system ⇒ page 374 .



4.10 Filling and bleeding the hydraulic system

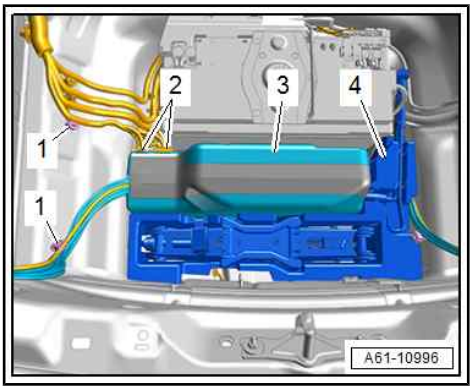
• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 363 .

The electro-hydraulic convertible roof is actuated by a sealed hydraulic system. The system will normally only need filling if there has been a loss of fluid (accident, leak etc.). Due to the stroke and displacement effect of the pistons in the hydraulic cylinders, the hydraulic system must be filled with the convertible roof open and the convertible roof compartment lid closed.

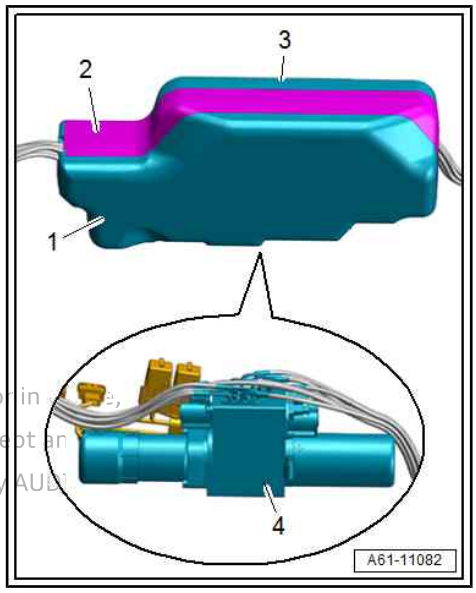
Filling

– Lift luggage compartment floor.

– Take out compartment for windbreak.
– Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing lock carrier trim .
– Take out tool kit -4-.
– Move hydraulic pump -3- towards rear with lines connected.



– Pull off adhesive strip -2-.
– Remove noise insulation -1-.
– Take hydraulic pump -4- out of noise insulation -3-.
• Observe rules for cleanliness ⇒ page 4 .



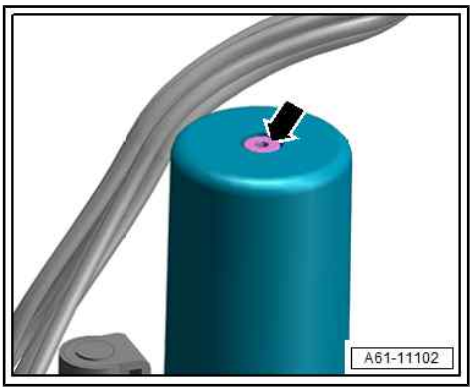
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove filler plug -arrow-.
• Hydraulic fluid level in reservoir must not exceed “+” marking.

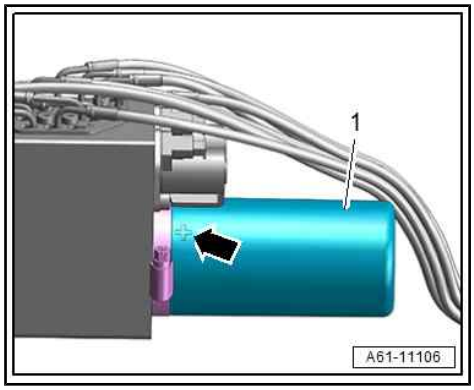
NOTICE

Risk of damage and malfunctions of hydraulic system if hydraulic fluid which has not been approved for the system is used.

– Use only the hydraulic fluid supplied for the specific vehicle ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .



– Fill with hydraulic fluid as far as “+” marking -arrow-. For hydraulic fluid refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .



Bleeding

Note:

The hydraulic system is bled automatically. Opening and closing the convertible roof several times bleeds the system.

– Insert old filler plug with seal and tighten to specified torque.

– Start engine.

– Open and close convertible roof five times via electro-hydraulic actuator mechanism and stop it in various positions.

• Convertible roof must move evenly and smoothly.

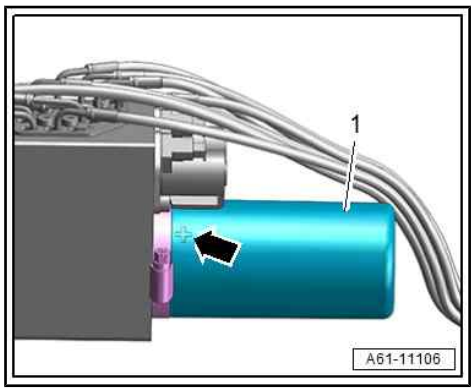


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © AUDI AG.

– Check fluid level in reservoir -1- with convertible roof open and convertible roof compartment lid closed.

• Fluid level must be within “+” marking -arrow- (hydraulic pump must be in horizontal position).

– Renew filler plug for reservoir.



Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “4.3 Exploded view - hydraulic pump”, page 363

5 Electrical and electronic components

⇒ “5.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components”, page 377

⇒ “5.2 Removing and installing convertible roof actuation control unit J256 ”, page 381

⇒ “5.3 Removing and installing convertible roof latch open switch F294 / convertible roof latch closed switch F295 ”, page 382

⇒ “5.4 Removing and installing convertible roof stowed switch F171 / convertible roof front switch F202 ”, page 382

⇒ “5.5 Removing and installing tensioning strut top switch F408 / tensioning strut stowed switch, left F419 ”, page 383

⇒ “5.6 Removing and installing tensioning strut intermediate position switch F518 / tensioning strut stowed switch, right F420 ”, page 385

⇒ “5.7 Removing and installing convertible roof box lid open switch F407 ”, page 387

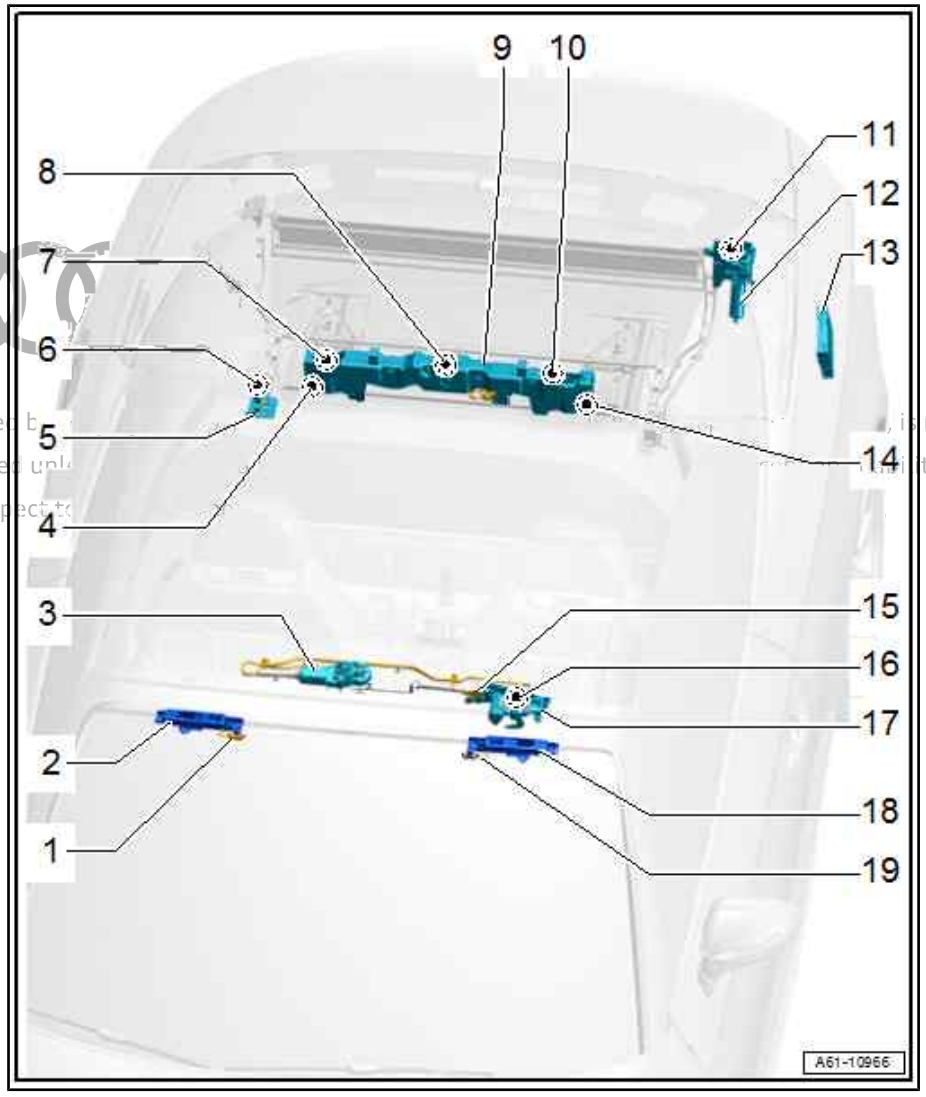
⇒ “5.8 Removing and installing rear ultrasonic sensor for passenger compartment monitoring system G981 / G982 ”, page 388

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components

- Switches on vehicle and on convertible roof ⇒ page 377
- Switches on hydraulic cylinders ⇒ page 379

Switches on vehicle and on convertible roof



1 - Convertible roof locking readiness switch (right-side) - E894-

- ❑ Integrated in convertible roof locking element; cannot be renewed separately
- ❑ Removing and installing convertible roof locking element ⇒ page 328

2 - Convertible roof locking element

- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ With convertible roof latch closed switch (right-side) - E892-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 328

3 - Convertible roof lock motor - V223-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 328

4 - Convertible roof box lid locked switch, right - F421-

- ❑ Integrated in lock unit for convertible roof compartment lid; cannot be renewed separately
- ❑ Removing and installing lock unit for convertible roof compartment lid ⇒ page 122

5 - Mounting bracket (front, right-side)

- ❑ For convertible roof compartment tray

6 - Switch on right for convertible roof box, bottom - E898-

7 - Convertible roof box lid closed switch - F519-

- ❑ Integrated in lock unit for convertible roof compartment lid; cannot be renewed separately
- ❑ Removing and installing lock unit for convertible roof compartment lid ⇒ page 122

8 - Convertible roof box lid lock motor - V222-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 122

9 - Lock unit for convertible roof compartment lid

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 122

10 - Convertible roof box lid released switch - F293-

- ❑ Integrated in lock unit for convertible roof compartment lid; cannot be renewed separately
- ❑ Removing and installing lock unit for convertible roof compartment lid ⇒ page 122

11 - Switch on left for convertible roof box, bottom - E897-

- ❑ Integrated in motor for convertible roof compartment; cannot be renewed separately
- ❑ Removing and installing motor for convertible roof compartment ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Convertible roof compartment

12 - Left motor for convertible roof box - V433-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Convertible roof compartment

13 - Convertible roof actuation control unit - J256-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 381

14 - Convertible roof box lid locked switch, left - F417-

- ❑ Integrated in lock unit for convertible roof compartment lid; cannot be renewed separately
- ❑ Removing and installing lock unit for convertible roof compartment lid ⇒ page 122

15 - Convertible roof latch closed switch - F295-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 382
- ❑ Bolt: 1 Nm

16 - Convertible roof latch open switch - F294-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 382
- ❑ Bolt: 1 Nm

17 - Convertible roof locking mechanism

18 - Convertible roof locking element

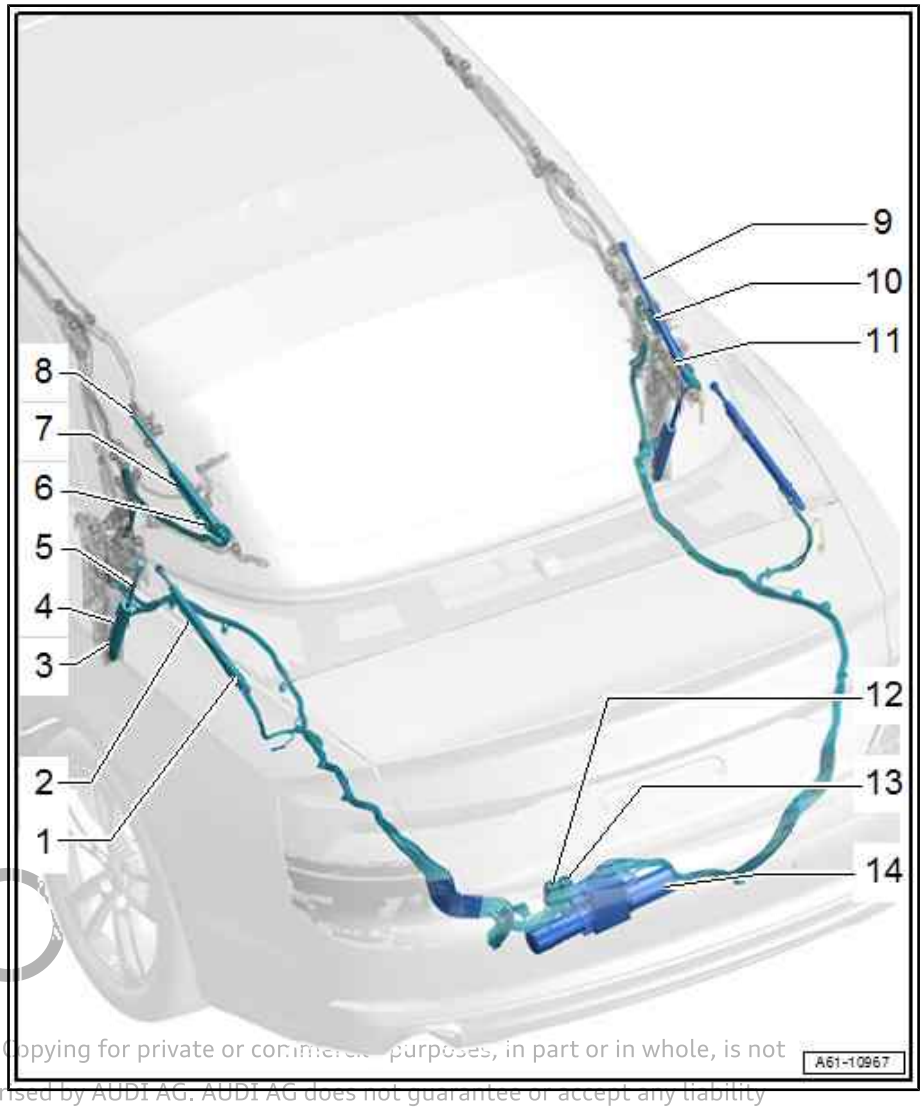
- ❑ Left-side
- ❑ With convertible roof latch closed switch (left-side) - E891-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 328

19 - Convertible roof locking readiness switch (left-side) - E893-

- ❑ Integrated in convertible roof locking element; cannot be renewed separately
- ❑ Removing and installing convertible roof locking element ⇒ page 328

Switches on hydraulic cylinders

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof compartment lid

2 - Convertible roof box lid open switch - F407-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 387

3 - Convertible roof stowed switch - F171-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 382

4 - Convertible roof front switch - F202-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 382

5 - Hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof drive unit

- ❑ Left-side

6 - Tensioning strut top switch - F408-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 383

7 - Tensioning strut stowed switch, left - F419-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 383

8 - Hydraulic cylinder for tensioner

- ❑ Left-side

9 - Hydraulic cylinder for tensioner

- ❑ Right-side

10 - Tensioning strut stowed switch, right - F420-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 385

11 - Tensioning strut intermediate position switch - F518-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 385

12 - Convertible roof actuation hydraulic pump relay - J321-

- ❑ ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations

13 - Hydraulic pump relay 2 for convertible roof - J588-

- ❑ ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations

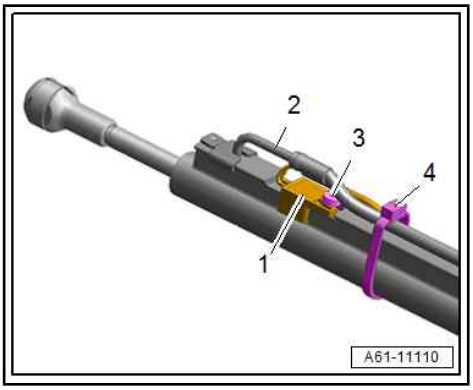
14 - Convertible roof actuation hydraulic pump - V118-

- ❑ With power operated convertible roof valve 1 - N272- , power operated convertible roof valve 2 - N341- , power operated convertible roof valve 3 - N342-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Convertible roof box lid open switch - F407- - tightening torque

– Tighten bolt -3- to 3 Nm.



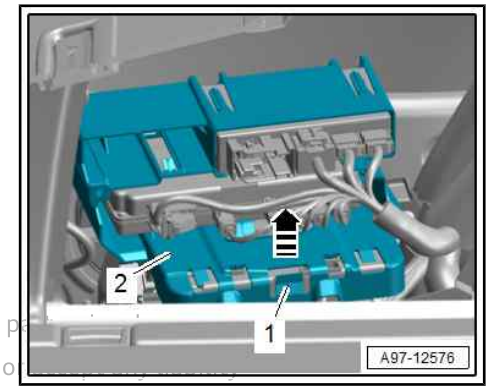
5.2 Removing and installing convertible roof actuation control unit - J256-

Removing

– Remove relay and fuse carrier 2 - SR2- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Overview of fitting locations - relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes .

– Release catch -1-.

– Detach bracket -2- for control units upwards -arrow- and place it on one side.

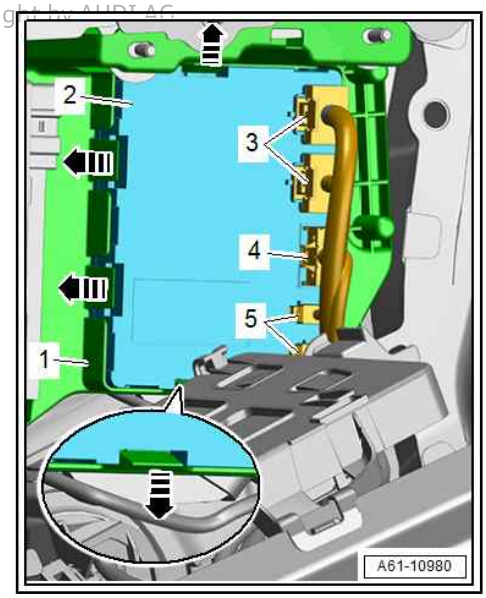


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee o
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release fasteners -arrows- and pull convertible roof actuation control unit - J256- -item 2- out slightly.

– Unplug electrical connectors -3, 4, 5-.

– Pull convertible roof actuation control unit - J256- out of mounting -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- If renewing the convertible roof actuation control unit - J256- , select the function “Replace control unit” for the corresponding control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester, Diagnosis.

5.3 Removing and installing convertible roof latch open switch - F294- / convertible roof latch closed switch - F295-

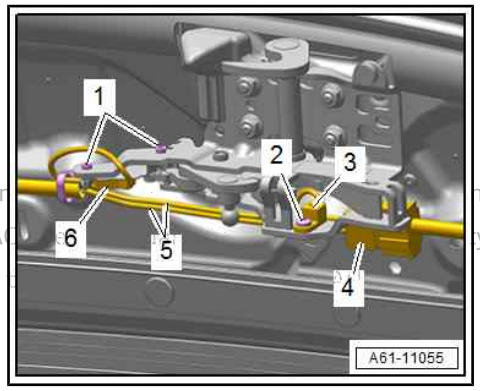
Removing

– Remove trim (front) ⇒ page 357 .

– Remove mounting with convertible roof lock motor - V223- ⇒ page 328 .

– Unplug electrical connector -4- and move wiring harness -5- clear.

– Unscrew bolts -1, 2- and detach switches -3, 6- with wiring harness.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or cor hot permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A y with respect to the correctness of information in

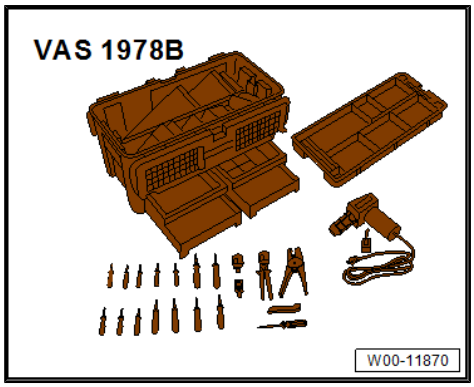
Tightening torques

- ⇒ page 377
- ⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - locking mechanism for convertible roof”, page 324

5.4 Removing and installing convertible roof stowed switch - F171- / convertible roof front switch - F202-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wiring harness repair set - VAS 1978 B-

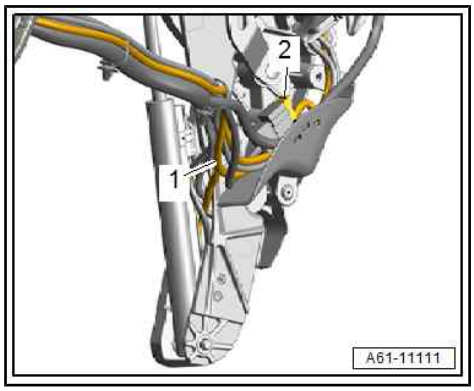


Removing

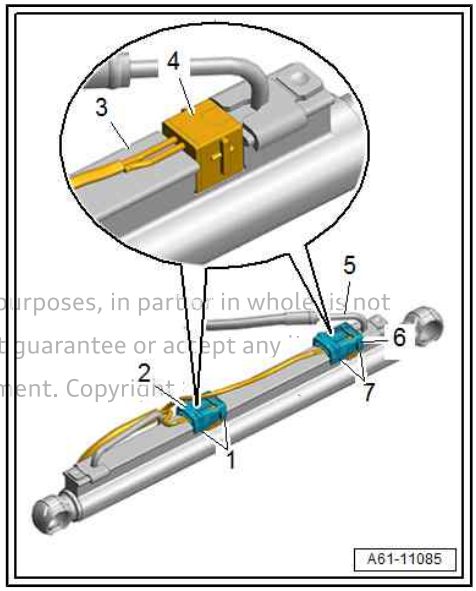
– Remove hydraulic cylinder for convertible roof drive unit ⇒ page 370 .

– Unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Move wiring harness -1- clear, and release contact plugs from connector housing using release tool from wiring harness repair set - VAS 1978 B- .



– Rotate hydraulic line -5- to side.
– Release catches -1, 7- and detach covers -2, 6-.
– Mark installation position of switches -4- for re-installation.
– Detach switches -4- from hydraulic cylinder -3-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

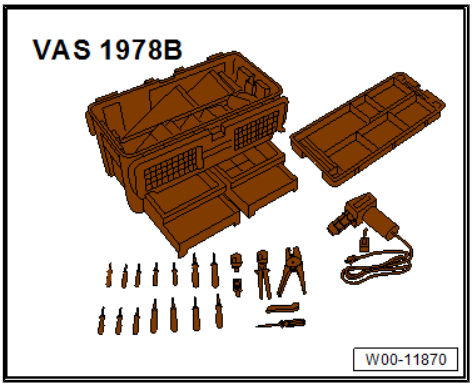
– Insert switches according to markings made during removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.5 Removing and installing tensioning strut top switch - F408- / tensioning strut stowed switch, left - F419-

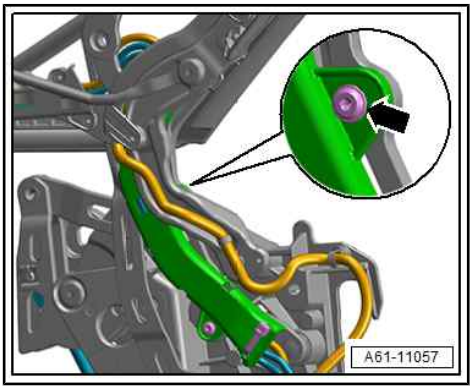
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wiring harness repair set - VAS 1978 B-



Removing

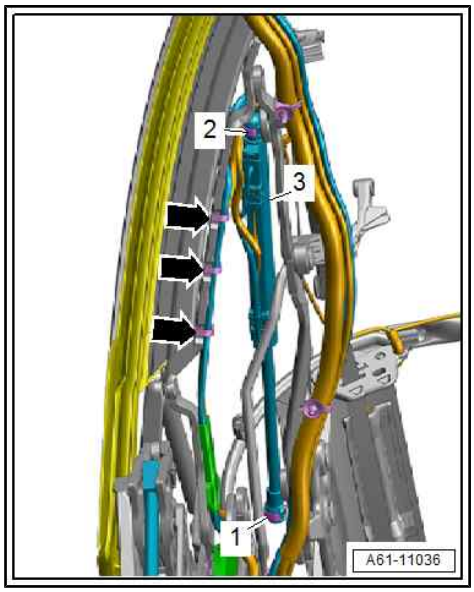
– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 330 .
– Remove bolt -arrow-.
– Remove convertible roof ⇒ page 325 .



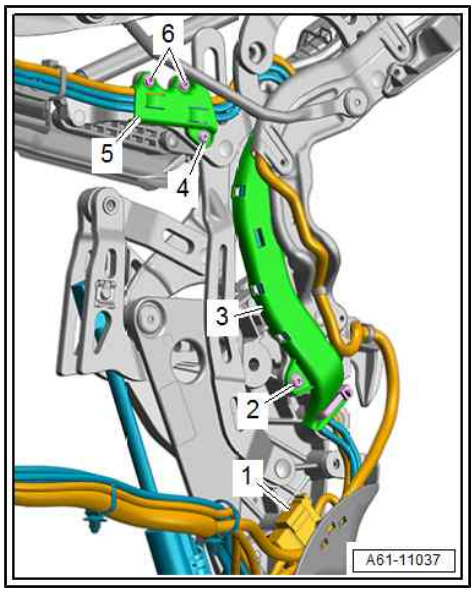
– Move convertible roof to position shown.



– Lift retaining clips -1 and 2- slightly using a small screwdriver, and pull hydraulic cylinder -3- off ball stud.
– Cut through cable ties -arrows-.

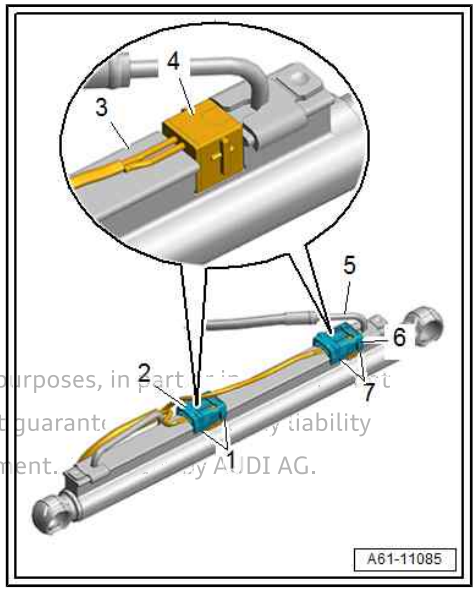


– Remove bolt -2- and move cable retainer -3- clear.
– Remove bolts -4, 6- and detach cable retainer -5-.
– Move clear and unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Move wiring harness clear and release contact plugs from connector housing using release tool from wiring harness repair set - VAS 1978 B- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Rotate hydraulic line -5- to side.
– Release catches -1, 7- and detach covers -2, 6-.
– Mark installation position of switches -4- for re-installation.
– Detach switches -4- from hydraulic cylinder -3-.
– Move wiring harness clear at tensioner.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert switches according to markings made during removal.

Tightening torques

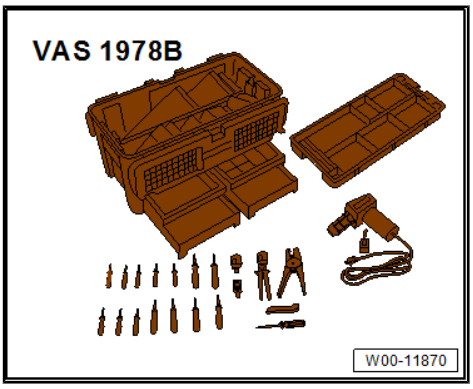
◆ ⇒ Fig. ""Cable retainer - tightening torque"", page 363

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

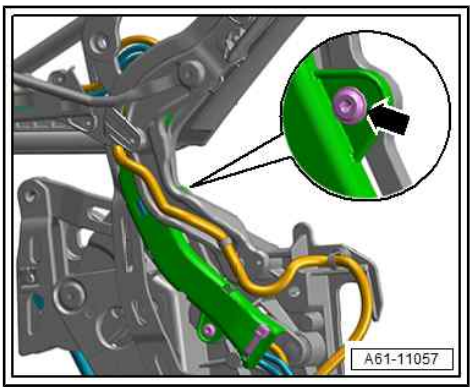
5.6 Removing and installing tensioning strut intermediate position switch - F518- / tensioning strut stowed switch, right - F420-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Wiring harness repair set - VAS 1978 B-



– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 330 .
– Remove bolt -arrow-.
– Remove convertible roof ⇒ page 325 .

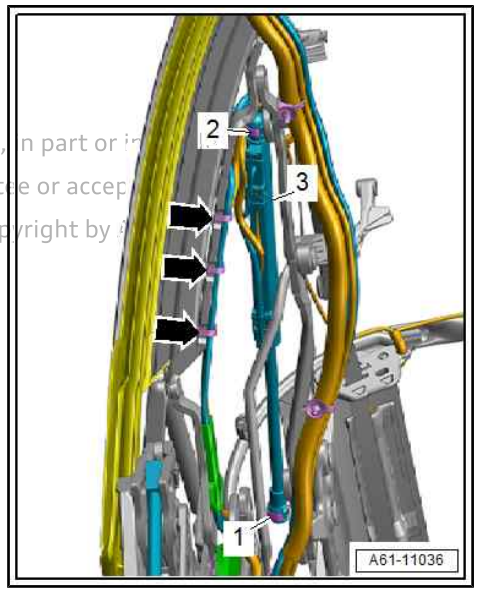


– Move convertible roof to position shown.

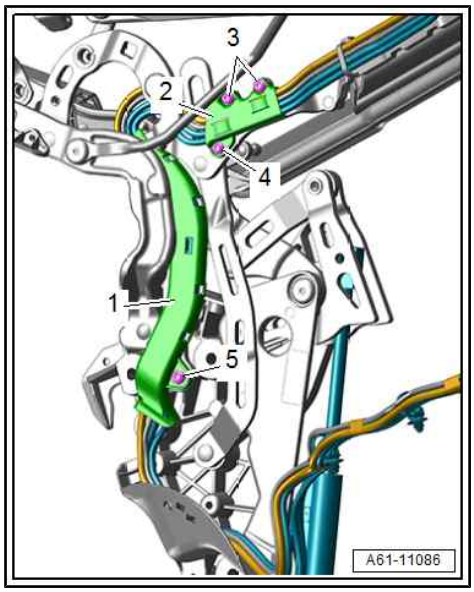


– Lift retaining clips -1 and 2- slightly using a small screwdriver, and pull hydraulic cylinder -3- off ball stud.
– Cut through cable ties -arrows-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accep
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by A



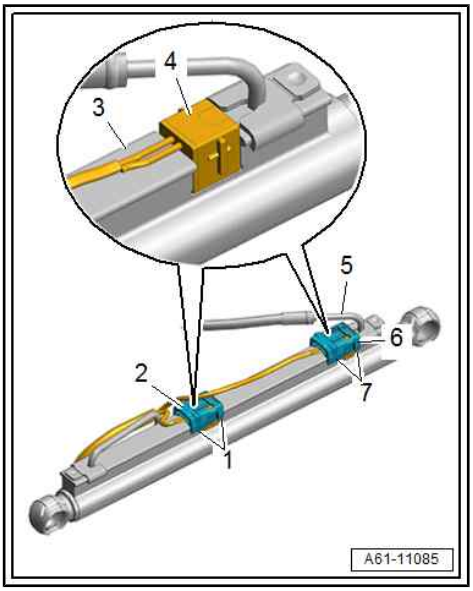
– Remove bolt -5- and move cable retainer -1- clear.
– Remove bolts -3, 4- and detach cable retainer -2-.



– Rotate hydraulic line -5- to side.
– Release catches -1, 7- and detach covers -2, 6-.
– Mark installation position of switches -4- for re-installation.
– Detach switches -4- from hydraulic cylinder -3-.
– Move wiring harness clear at tensioner.

Installing

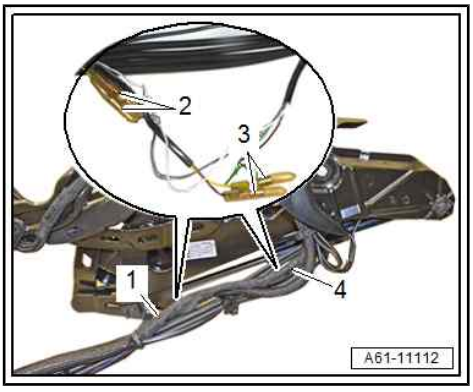
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



– Detach sheathing -1, 4- in area of wiring connections.
– Disconnect electrical wiring -2, 3- and connect with new electrical wiring ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Connectors; Repairing electrical wiring harnesses and electrical connectors .
– Insert switches according to markings made during removal.

Tightening torques

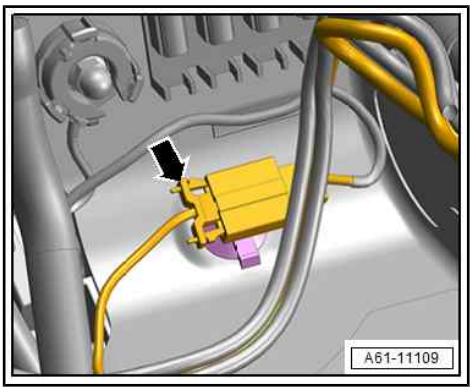
◆ ⇒ Fig. ""Cable retainer - tightening torque"" , page 363



5.7 Removing and installing convertible roof box lid open switch - F407-

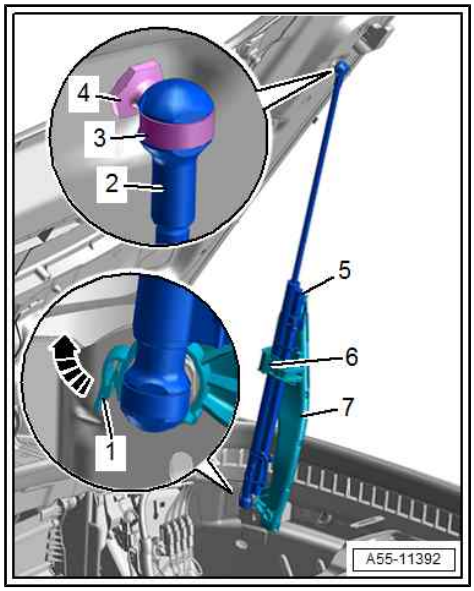
Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 330 .
– Remove side trim for convertible roof compartment ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Convertible roof compartment; Exploded view - convertible roof compartment .
– Unplug electrical connector -arrow- and move wiring harness clear.

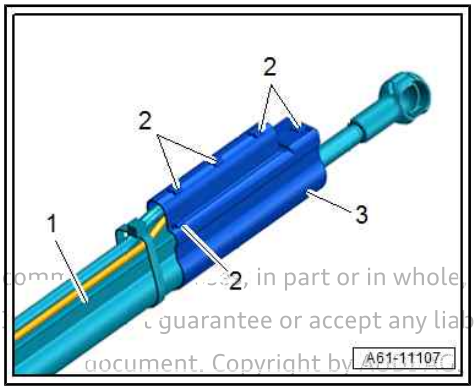


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release securing tab -1- -arrow-, open retainer downwards and detach cable retainer -7- from ball stud (bottom).
– Release fastener -6- and detach cable retainer with wiring harness from hydraulic cylinder -5-.

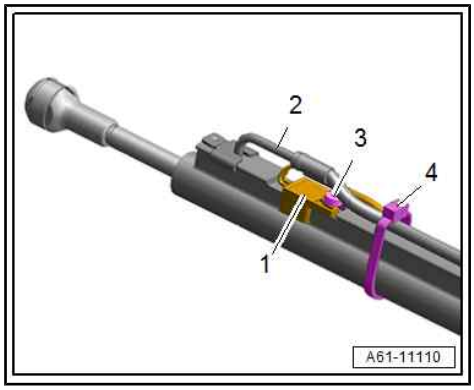


– Release fasteners -2- and pull cover -3- off hydraulic cylinder -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm... in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI ... guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information ... document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Cut through cable tie -4-.
– Rotate hydraulic line -2- to side.
– Remove bolt -3-.
– Detach switch -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ Fig. “ Convertible roof box lid open switch -F407- - tightening torque” , page 381

5.8 Removing and installing rear ultrasonic sensor for passenger compartment monitoring system - G981- / -G982-

Removing

– Remove side trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing side trim .
– Fold insulating mat to one side.

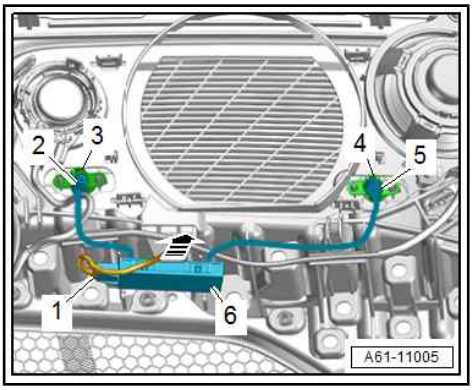
Left side:

– Release catches -3, 4- and loosen individual sensors -2, 5- for passenger compartment monitoring system (rear) from mountings.

– Release catch -arrow- and take passenger compartment monitoring system (rear) -6- out of side trim.

– Unplug electrical connector -1-.

– Remove passenger compartment monitoring system (rear).



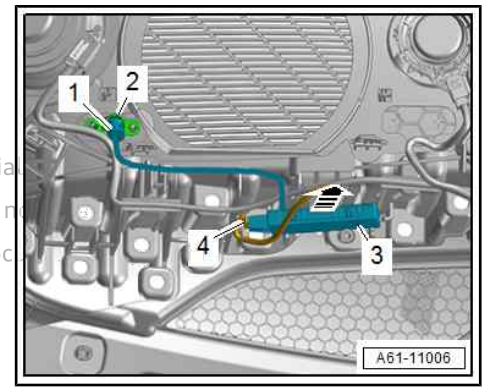
Right side:

– Release catch -2- and loosen individual sensor -1- for passenger compartment monitoring system (rear) from mounting.

– Release catch -arrow- and take passenger compartment monitoring system (rear) -3- out of side trim.

– Unplug electrical connector -4-.

– Remove passenger compartment monitoring system (rear).



Protected by copying for private or commercial
authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does n
this doc

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

63 – Bumpers



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 Bumper (front)

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 391

⇒ “1.2 Exploded view - reflector”, page 400

⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - covers and air ducts”, page 401

⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - impact bar”, page 402

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing bumper cover”, page 403

⇒ “1.6 Adjusting bumper cover”, page 405

⇒ “1.7 Removing and installing bumper cover (side section)”, page 406

⇒ “1.8 Removing and installing bumper cover mounting”, page 406

⇒ “1.9 Removing and installing cover for headlight washer jet”, page 407

⇒ “1.10 Removing and installing air intake grille (centre)”, page 407

⇒ “1.11 Removing and installing air intake grille (side)”, page 410

⇒ “1.12 Removing and installing trim for air intake grille (side)”, page 411

⇒ “1.13 Removing and installing trim for air duct”, page 412

⇒ “1.14 Removing and installing air intake grille (side, bottom) ”, page 412

⇒ “1.15 Removing and installing air duct”, page 412

⇒ “1.16 Removing and installing front spoiler”, page 415

⇒ “1.17 Removing and installing spoiler (bottom section)”, page 416

⇒ “1.18 Removing and installing trim strip”, page 417

⇒ “1.19 Removing and installing underbody guard ”, page 418

⇒ “1.20 Removing and installing closure plate for bumper cover”, page 419

⇒ “1.21 Removing and installing reflector”, page 420

⇒ “1.22 Removing and installing lock carrier cover”, page 421

⇒ “1.23 Removing and installing impact bar”, page 422

⇒ “1.24 Removing and installing moulded foam insert”, page 425

⇒ “1.25 Removing and installing mounting for moulded foam insert”, page 426

1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover

⇒ “1.1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 up to model year 2018, A5”, page 392

⇒ “1.1.2 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 from model year 2019 onwards”, page 393

⇒ “1.1.3 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 S line from model year 2019 onwards”, page 394

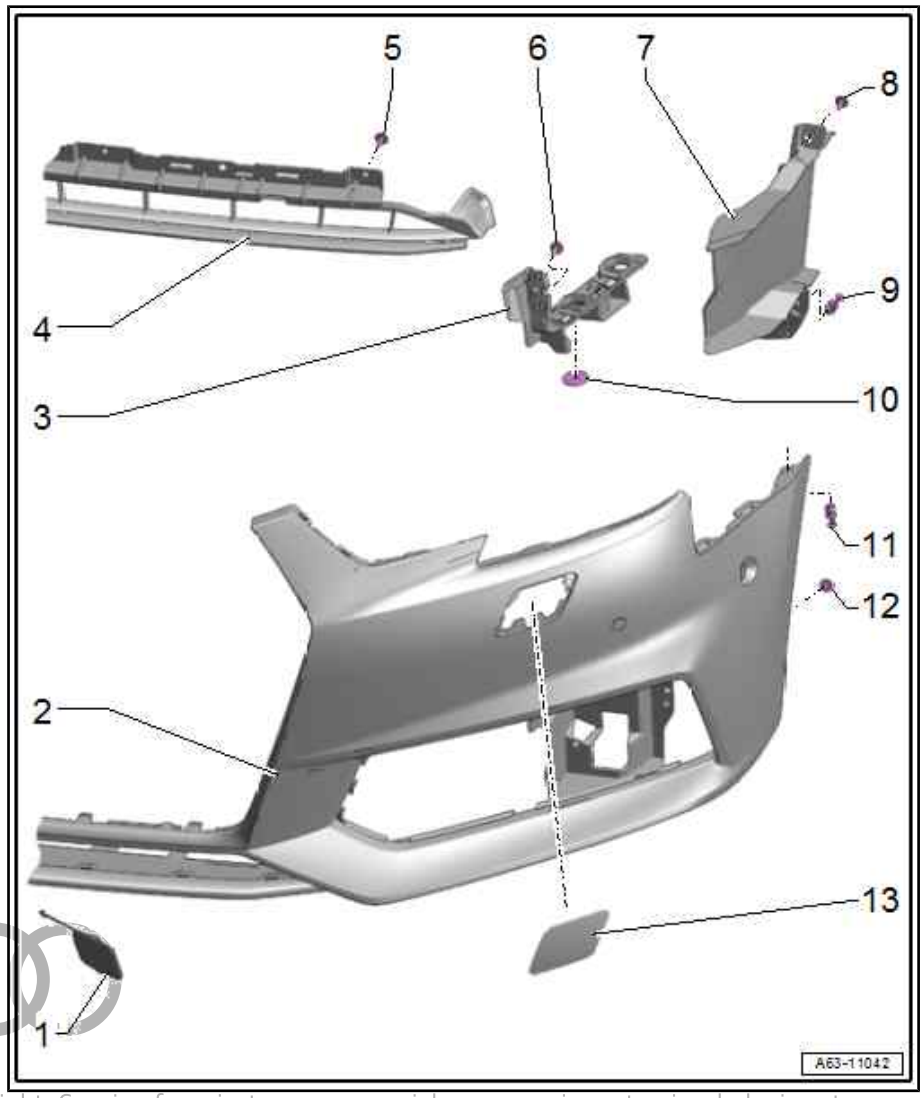
⇒ “1.1.4 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 allroad”, page 395

⇒ “1.1.5 Exploded view - bumper cover, A5 S line, S5”, page 397

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ “1.1.6 Exploded view - bumper cover, RS 4, RS 5”, page 398

1.1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 up to model year 2018, A5



1 - Cover for towing eye

2 - Bumper cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 403
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 405
- ❑ Exploded view - reflector ⇒ page 400
- ❑ Exploded view - covers and air ducts ⇒ page 401

3 - Mounting

- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 406

4 - Air intake grille

- ❑ Centre
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 407

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 2 Nm

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm

7 - Air duct

- ❑ Side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 412

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ A4 Saloon, A4 Avant S line: 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

9 - Spreader rivet

- ❑ A4 Saloon, A4 Avant: S line only

10 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 4 Nm

11 - Spreader rivet

12 - Bolt

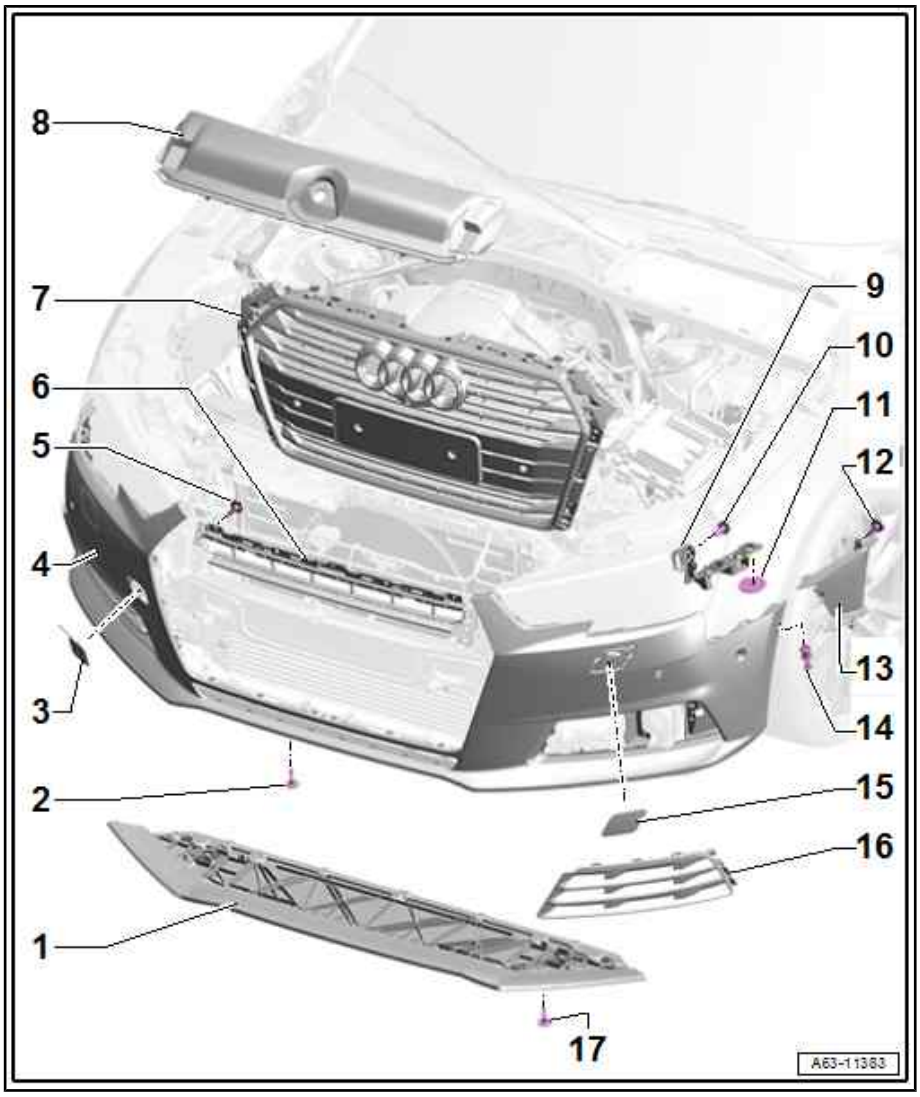
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 654

13 - Cover for washer jet

- ❑ For headlight washer system
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 407

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1.2 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 from model year 2019 onwards



1 - Closure plate
- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 401

2 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 401

3 - Cover for towing eye

4 - Bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 403
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 405
- ❑ Exploded view - reflector ⇒ page 400

5 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 2 Nm

6 - Air intake grille
- ❑ Centre
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 407

7 - Radiator grille
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 549

8 - Lock carrier cover
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 401

9 - Mounting
- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 406

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 4 Nm

11 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 4 Nm

12 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 2 Nm

13 - Air duct
- ❑ Side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 412

14 - Spreader rivet

15 - Cover for washer jet
- ❑ For headlight washer system
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 407

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

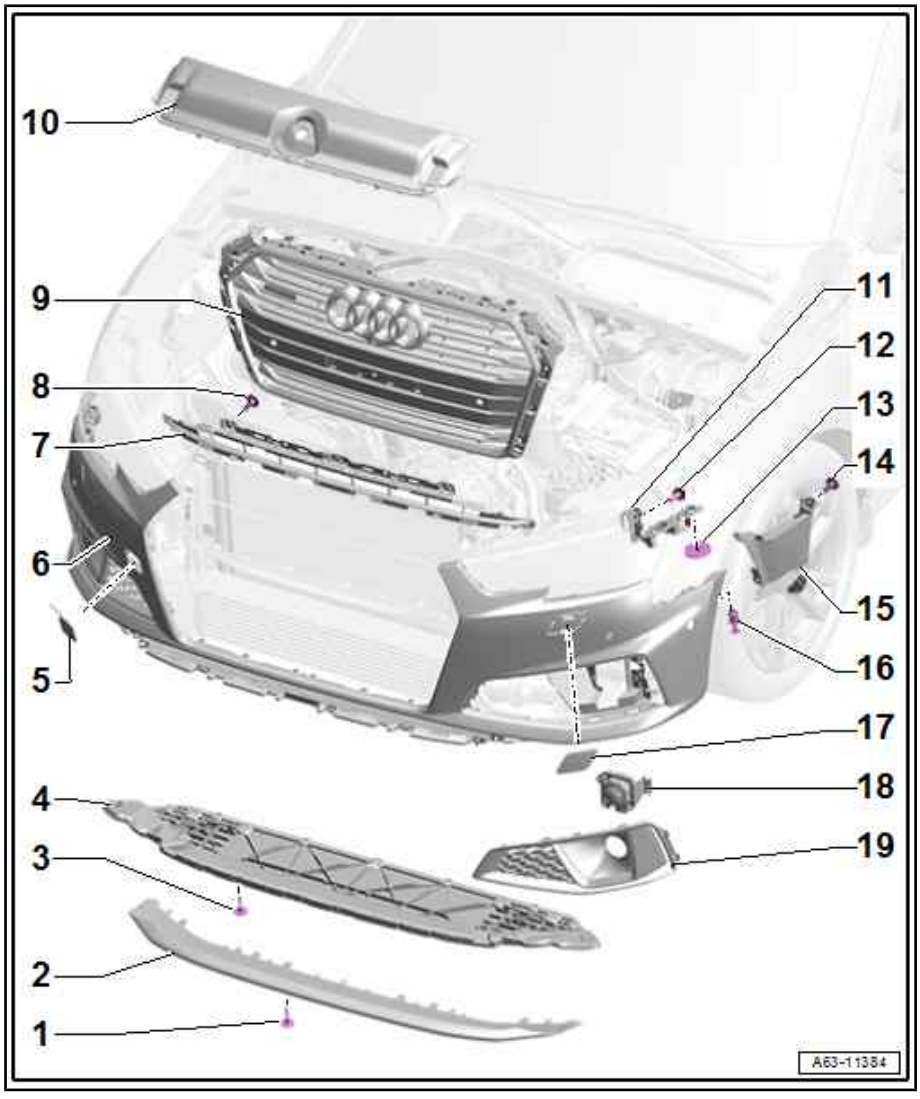
16 - Air intake grille

- ❑ Side
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 401

17 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 654

1.1.3 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 S line from model year 2019 onwards



1 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 401

2 - Spoiler (bottom section)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 416

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 401

4 - Closure plate

- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 401

5 - Cover for towing eye

6 - Bumper cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 403
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 405
- ❑ Exploded view - reflector ⇒ page 400

7 - Air intake grille

- ❑ Centre
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 408

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 2 Nm

9 - Radiator grille

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 549

10 - Lock carrier cover

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 401

11 - Mounting

- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 406

12 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm

13 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 4 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

14 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 2 Nm

15 - Air duct
- ❑ Side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 412

16 - Spreader rivet

17 - Cover for washer jet
- ❑ For headlight washer system
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 407

18 - Adaptive cruise control unit
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Adaptive cruise control; Removing and installing adaptive cruise control unit

19 - Air intake grille
- ❑ Side
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 401

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1.4 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 allroad

1 - Bumper cover (side section)
- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 406

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Bolted connections only at top and bottom
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 549

3 - Radiator grille
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 549

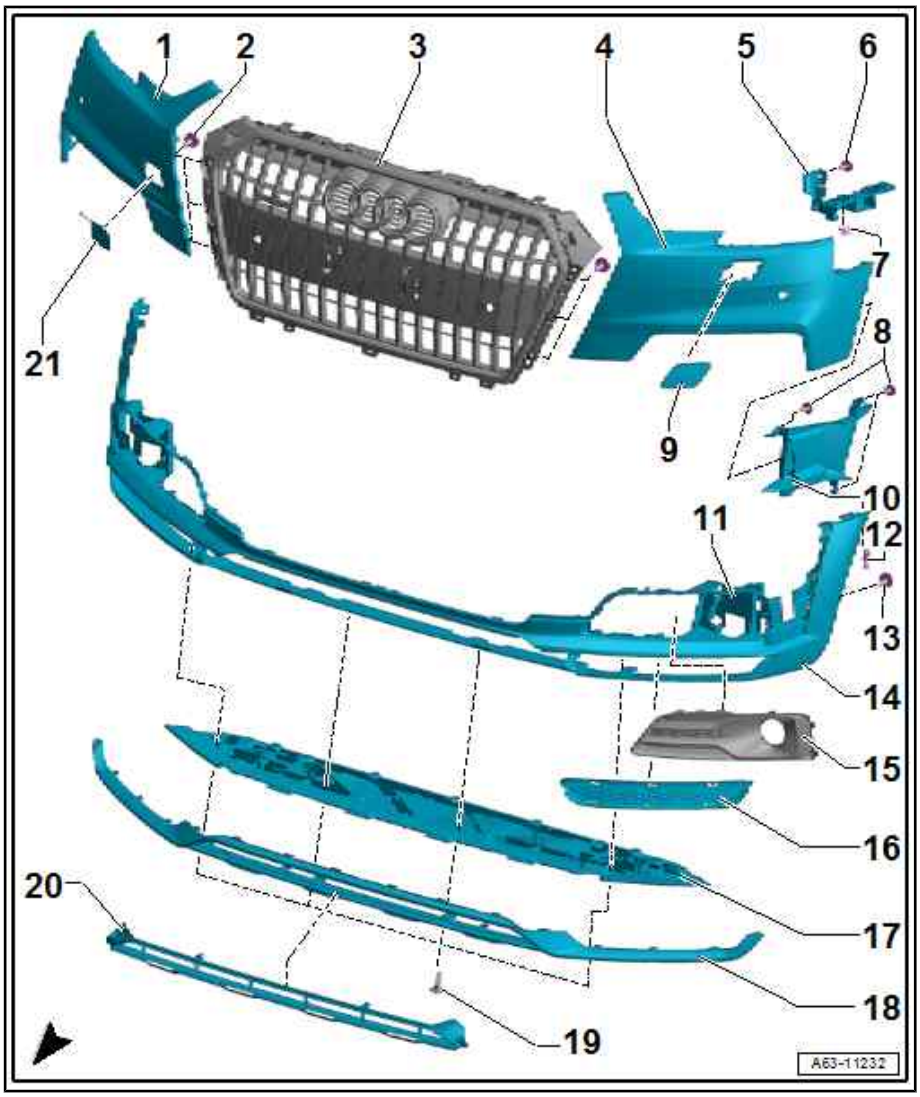
4 - Bumper cover (side section)
- ❑ Left-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 406

5 - Mounting
- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 406

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 4 Nm

7 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 4 Nm

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm



9 - Cover for washer jet

- ❑ For headlight washer system
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 407

10 - Air duct

- ❑ Side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 412

11 - Mounting

- ❑ For adaptive cruise control
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Adaptive cruise control; Overview of fitting locations - adaptive cruise control

12 - Spreader rivet

13 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 654

14 - Spoiler (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 415

15 - Air intake grille

- ❑ Side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 410

16 - Air intake grille

- ❑ Side, bottom
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 412

17 - Closure plate

- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 419

18 - Underbody guard

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 418

19 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 401

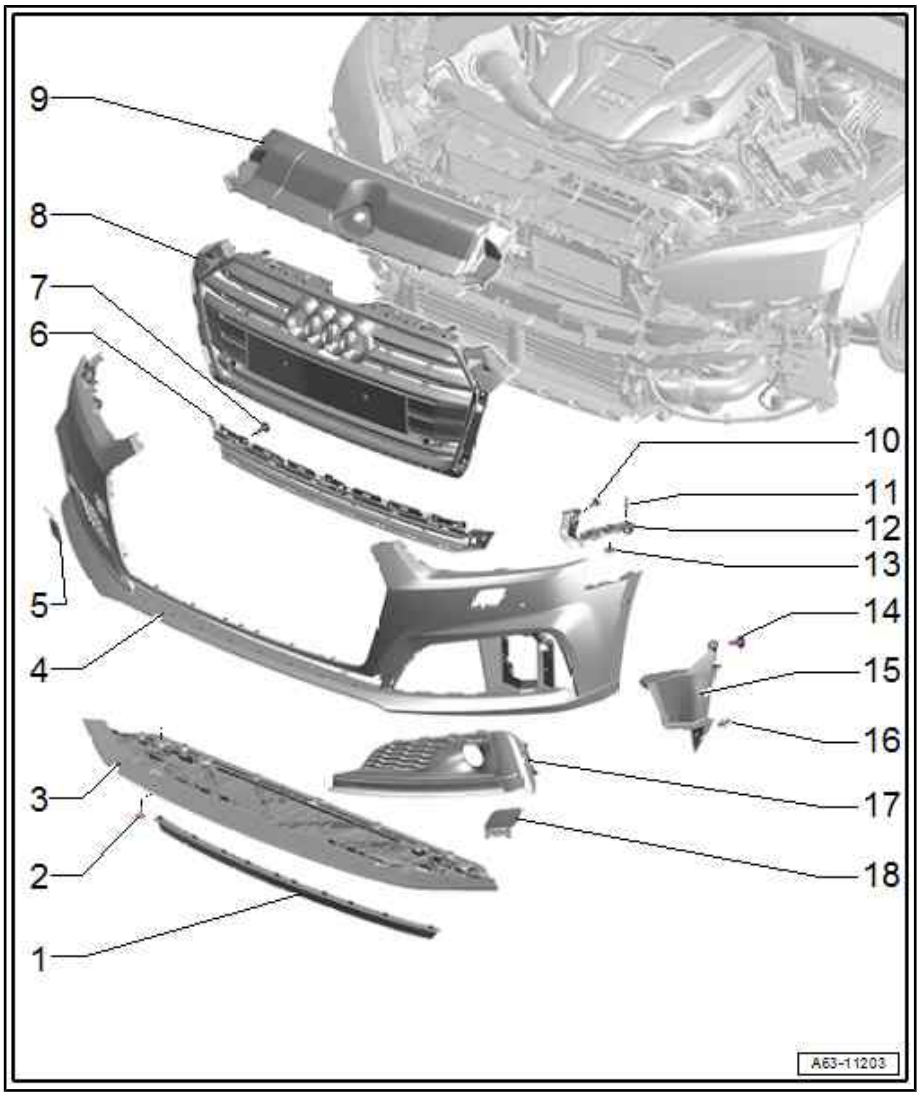
20 - Air intake grille

- ❑ Centre
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 408

21 - Cover for towing eye

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1.5 Exploded view - bumper cover, A5 S line, S5



1 - Spoiler (front)
- ❑ S line/S5 only
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 415

2 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 401

3 - Closure plate
- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 401

4 - Bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 403
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 405
- ❑ Exploded view - reflector ⇒ page 400

5 - Cover for towing eye

6 - Air intake grille
- ❑ Centre
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 409

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 2 Nm

8 - Radiator grille
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 549

9 - Lock carrier cover
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 401

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 4 Nm

11 - Spreader rivet

12 - Mounting
- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 406

13 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 4 Nm

14 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

15 - Air duct
- ❑ Side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 412

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

16 - Spreader rivet

17 - Air intake grille

- ❑ Side
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 401

18 - Cover for washer jet

- ❑ For headlight washer system
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 407

1.1.6 Exploded view - bumper cover, RS 4, RS 5

1 - Spoiler (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 415

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 11x
- ❑ 5 Nm

3 - Closure plate

- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 420

4 - Spoiler (bottom section)

- ❑ Centre
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 416

5 - Trim strip

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 417

6 - Trim for air duct

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 412

7 - Cover

- ❑ For towing eye

8 - Bumper cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 403

9 - Radiator grille

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 551

10 - Air intake grille

- ❑ Centre
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 409

11 - Bolt

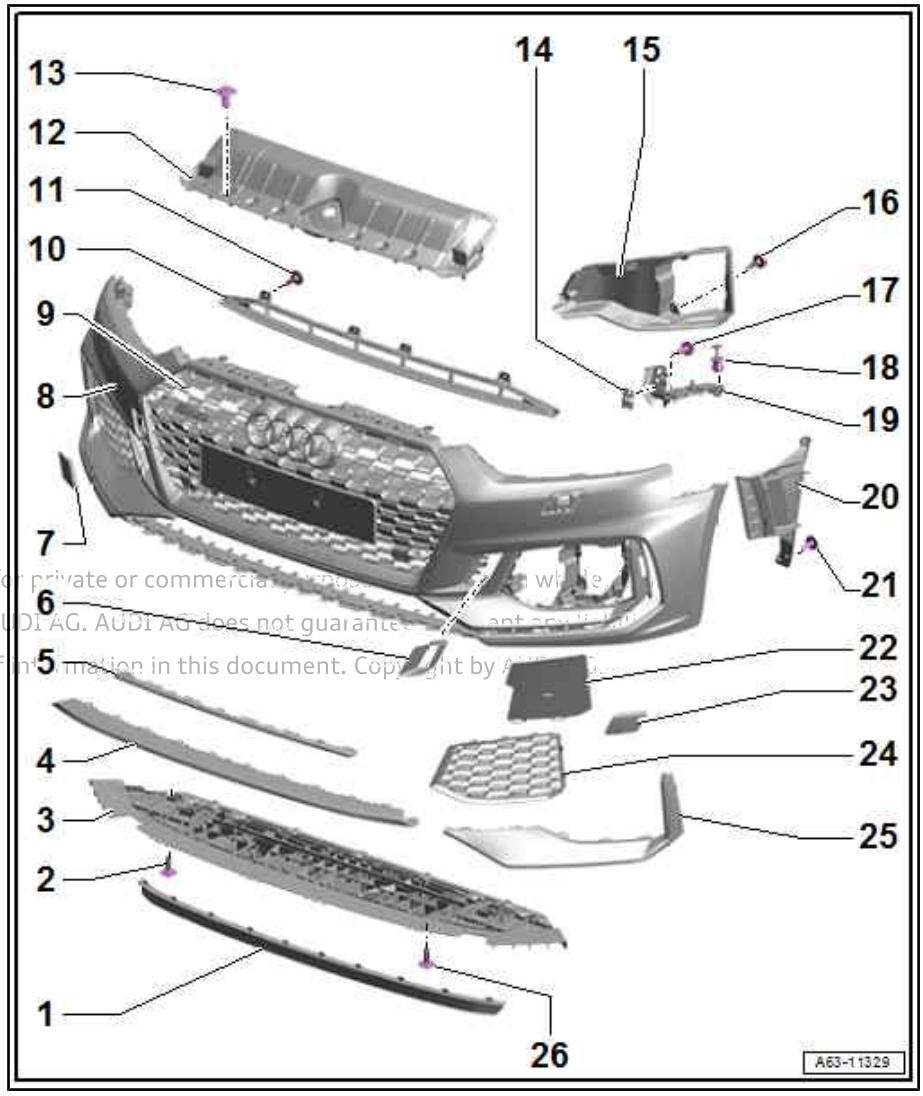
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 2 Nm

12 - Lock carrier cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 421

13 - Fastener

- ❑ 6x



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

14 - Threaded mounting

- ❑ For bolt

15 - Trim

- ❑ For air intake grille (side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 411

16 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 2 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

17 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm

18 - Spreader rivet

19 - Mounting

- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 406

20 - Air duct

- ❑ Side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 413

21 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

22 - Trim

- ❑ For air intake grille (side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 410

23 - Cover for washer jet

- ❑ For headlight washer system
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 407

24 - Air intake grille

- ❑ Side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 410

25 - Spoiler (bottom section)

- ❑ Side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 417

26 - Bolt

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 2 Nm

1.2 Exploded view - reflector

1 - Reflector

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 420

2 - Bumper cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 403



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Exploded view - covers and air ducts

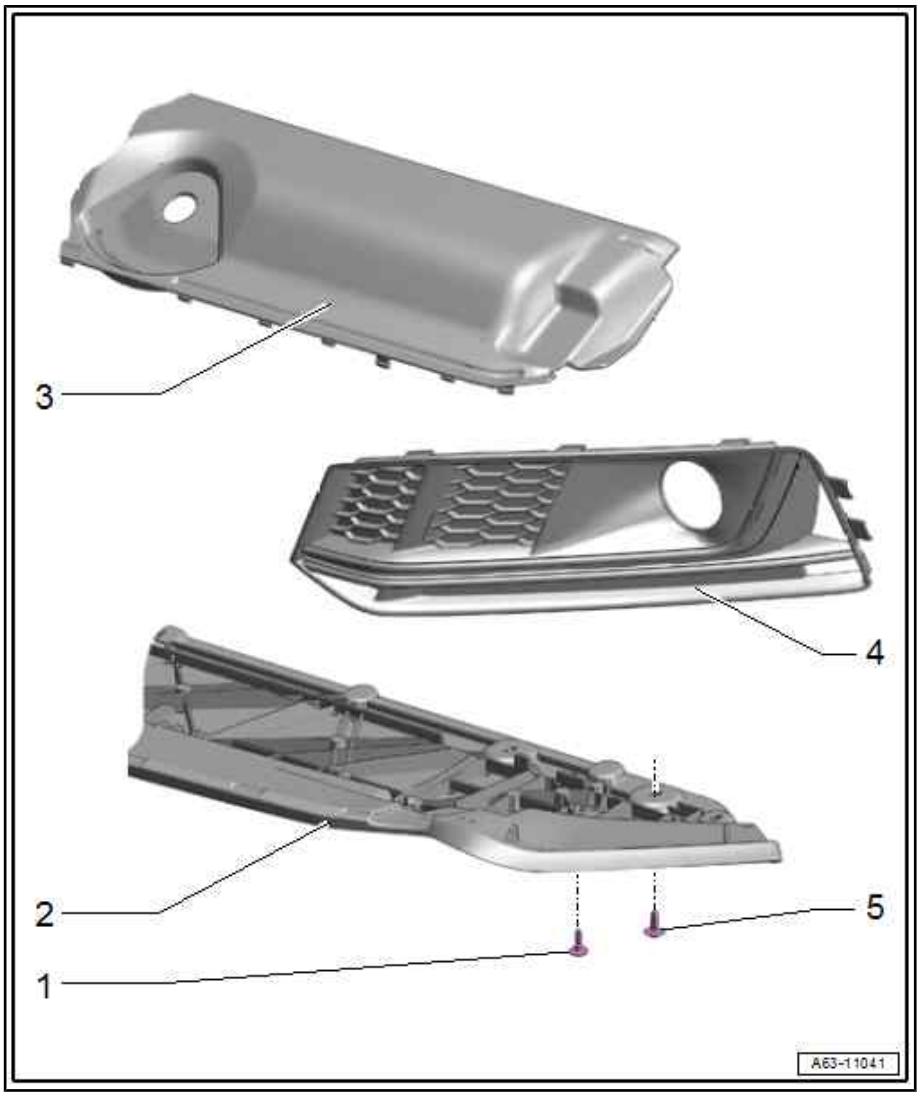
1 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 2 Nm

2 - Closure plate
- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ A5 with spoiler: Removing and installing ⇒ page 415
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 419

3 - Lock carrier cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 421

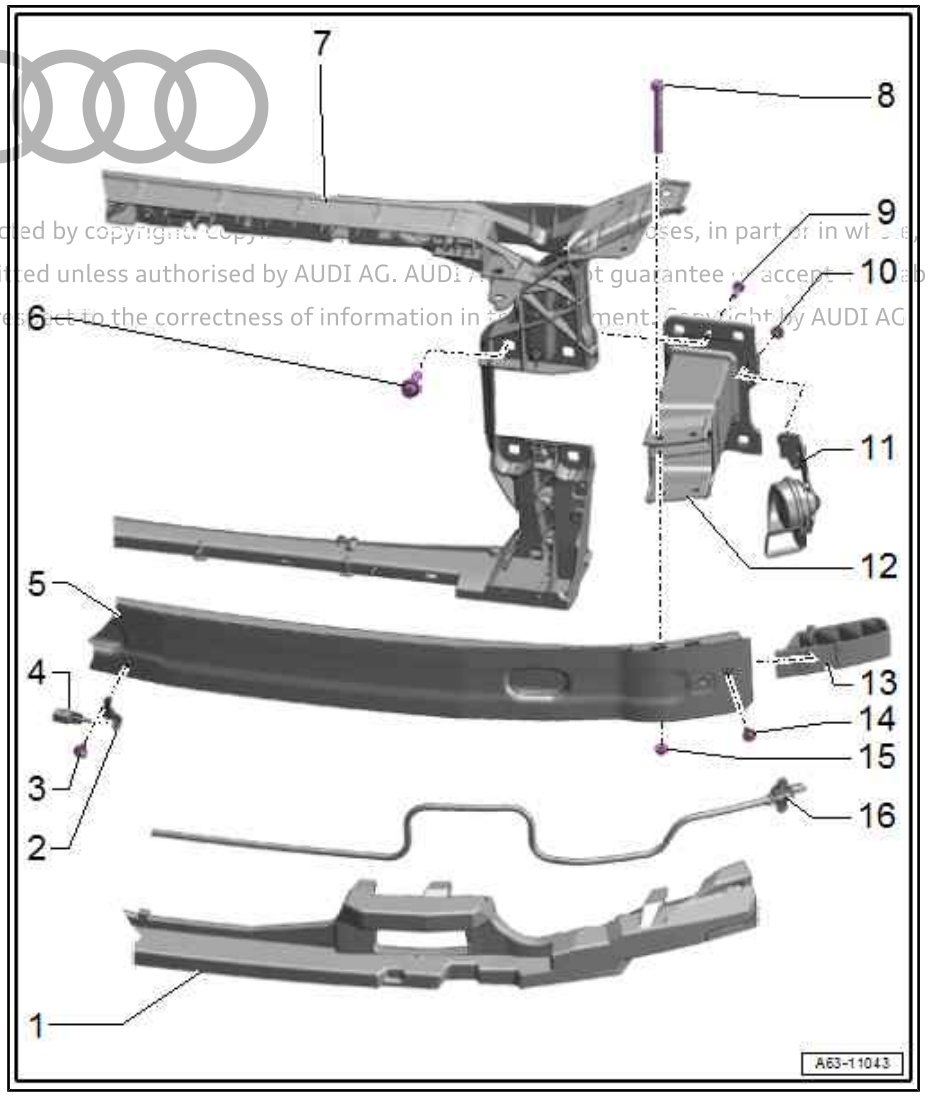
4 - Air intake grille
- ❑ Side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 410

5 - Bolt
- ❑ 5x
- ❑ 5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4 Exploded view - impact bar



1 - Moulded foam insert

- ❑ Country-specific version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 425

2 - Bracket

- ❑ For ambient temperature sensor - G17-

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

4 - Ambient temperature sensor - G17-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87 ; Further control components; Removing and installing ambient temperature sensor - G17-

5 - Impact bar

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 422

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 55 Nm

7 - Lock carrier

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 403

9 - Locking bolt

- ❑ For securing impact bar to lock carrier
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 14 Nm

10 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Horn; Exploded view - horn

11 - Bracket with horn

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Horn; Removing and installing treble horn - H2- / bass horn - H7-

12 - Mounting for impact bar

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 422

13 - Connecting piece

- ❑ Country-specific version

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

15 - Nut

- ❑ 2x

Protected by copyright. Copy... ...ses, in part or in wh... e, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A... ...t guarantee or accept ...ability with respect to the correctness of information in ...ment. Copyright by AUDI AG

16 - Driver side crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection - G851- / front passenger side crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection - G852-

- ❑ Combined with pressure hose
- ❑ Must be renewed if:

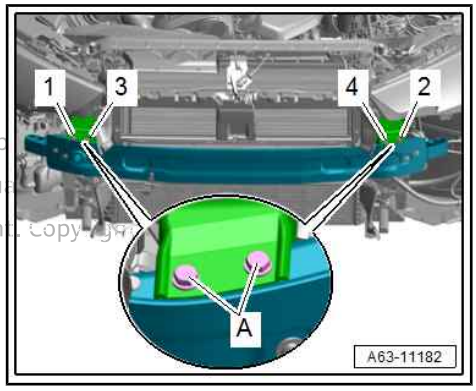
- ♦ Moulded foam insert is visibly damaged
- ♦ Impact bar is visibly deformed
- ♦ Bumper cover is deformed
- ♦ Pressure hose is damaged

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 69 ; Pedestrian protection; Overview - pedestrian protection

Impact bar (front) - tightening torque and sequence

– Tighten bolts -A- to 23 Nm in sequence -1 … 4-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
with respect to the correctness of information in this documen

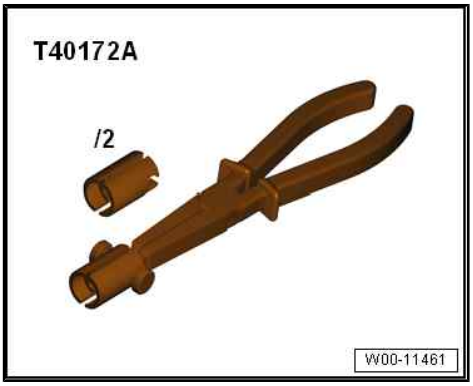


1.5 Removing and installing bumper cover

- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 405).
- Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary ⇒ page 405 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Pliers - T40172 A-



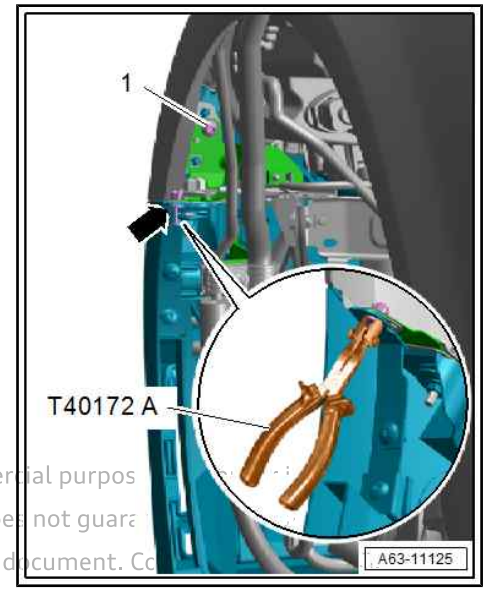
Removing

– Turn front wheels to full lock and unfasten wheel housing liner in area of bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 658 .

A4:

– Remove spreader rivet -arrow- using pliers - T40172 A- with adapter - T40172/1- .

– Remove bolt -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpos
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG doe not guara
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

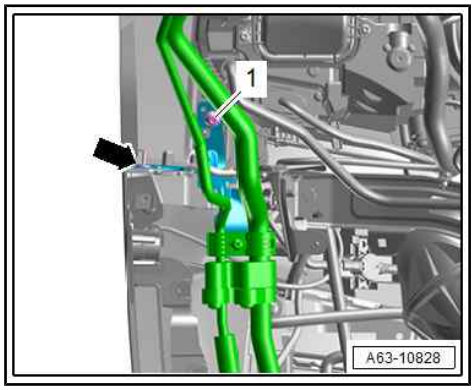
A5:

– Remove spreader rivet -arrow-.

– Remove bolt -1-.

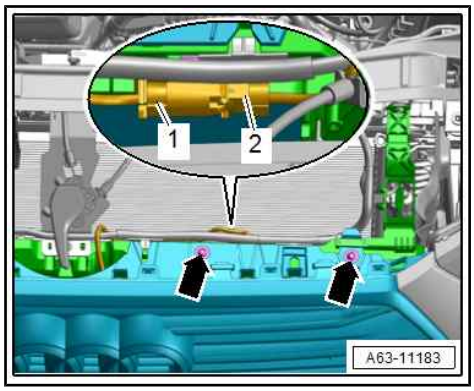
Continued:

– Remove lock carrier cover ⇒ page 421 .



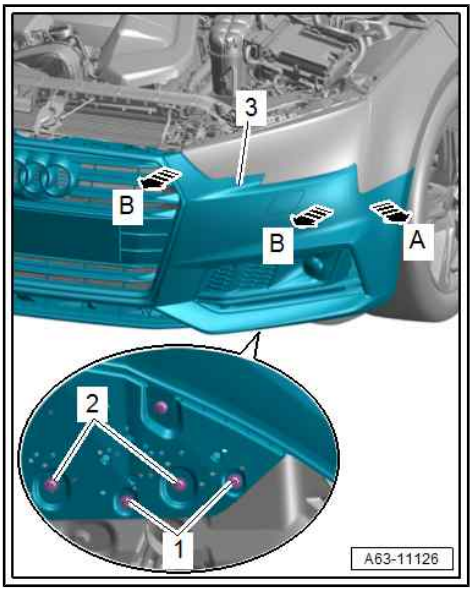
– If fitted, move aerial wires -1- clear and unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Remove bolts -arrows-.



– Remove bolts -1, 2-.

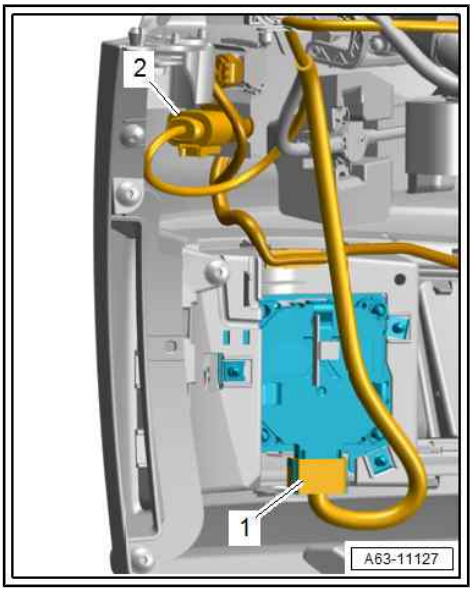
– Disengage side section from side panel (front) -arrow A- and slightly detach bumper cover -3- -arrows B- with the help of a second mechanic.



– If fitted, unplug main connector -2-.

– If fitted, unplug electrical connector -1-.

– Detach bumper cover.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Adjust bumper cover ⇒ page 405 .

Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary:

– Adjust adaptive cruise control ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 44 ; Adaptive cruise control .

• Note conditions under which it is necessary to adjust adaptive cruise control system.

– Calibrate front overhead view camera - R243- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Overhead view camera .

• Note conditions under which it is necessary to calibrate front overhead view camera - R243- .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 391

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.6 Adjusting bumper cover

• Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary ⇒ page 406 .

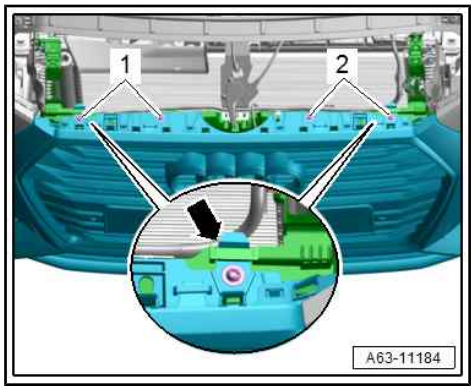
Procedure

– Loosen bolts -1, 2-.

– Align bumper cover (front) longitudinally according to markings -arrow-.

– Tighten bolts.

– Check that gap width is even and repeat adjustment if necessary.



Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary:

– Adjust adaptive cruise control ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 44 ; Adaptive cruise control .

• Note conditions under which it is necessary to adjust adaptive cruise control system.

– Calibrate front overhead view camera - R243- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Overhead view camera .

• Note conditions under which it is necessary to calibrate front overhead view camera - R243- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - radiator grille”, page 549

1.7 Removing and installing bumper cover (side section)

Removing

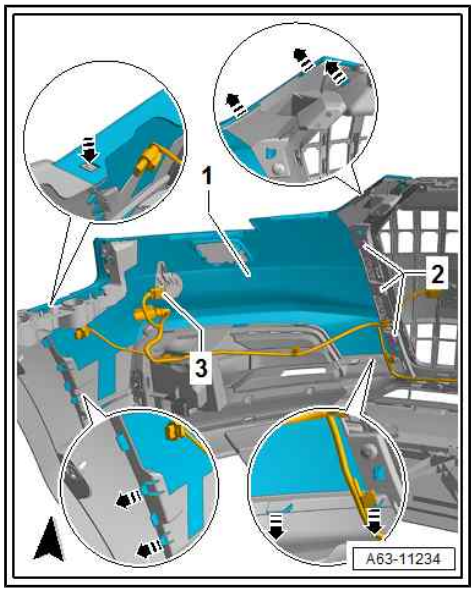
– Remove bumper cover ⇒ page 403 .

– Remove air duct ⇒ page 412 .

– Unplug electrical connector -3-.

– Remove bolts -2-.

– Release fasteners -arrows- and detach bumper cover (side section) -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - radiator grille”, page 549

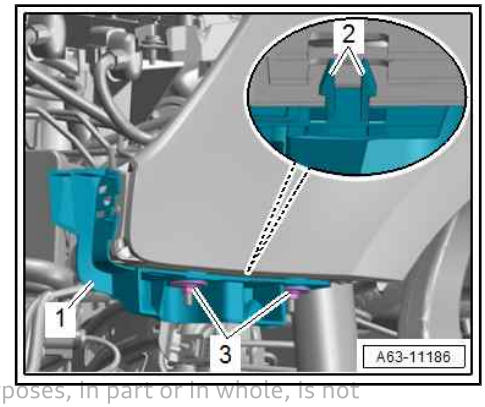
1.8 Removing and installing bumper cover mounting

Removing

– Remove bumper cover ⇒ page 403 .

– Remove nuts -3-.

– Detach bumper cover mounting -1- downwards (release catches -2- to do so).



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 391

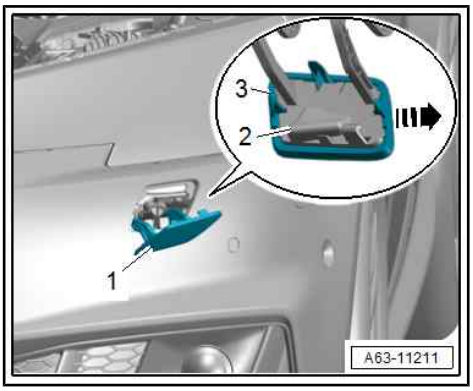
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.9 Removing and installing cover for headlight washer jet

Removing

– Open cover -1- for washer jet.

– Using a screwdriver, lever washer jet cover -3- off mounting -2- -arrow- on inside and disengage it on opposite side.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Press on washer jet cover until it engages audibly.

1.10 Removing and installing air intake grille (centre)

⇒ “1.10.1 Removing and installing air intake grille (centre) - A4”, page 407

⇒ “1.10.2 Removing and installing air intake grille (centre) - A4 S line from model year 2019 onwards”, page 408

⇒ “1.10.3 Removing and installing air intake grille (centre) - A4 allroad”, page 408

⇒ “1.10.4 Removing and installing air intake grille (centre) - A5, RS 4, RS 5”, page 409

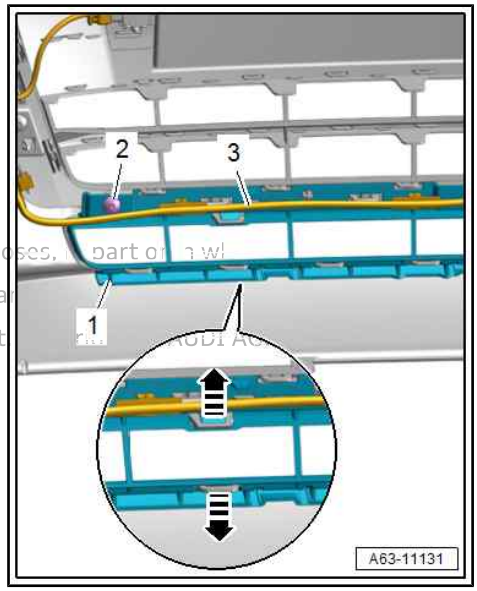
⇒ “1.10.5 Removing and installing air intake grille (centre) - A5 S line, S5”, page 409

1.10.1 Removing and installing air intake grille (centre) - A4

Removing

– Remove closure plate for bumper cover ⇒ page 419 .

– Move electrical wiring harness -3- clear.
– Remove bolts -2-.
– Release fasteners -arrows- and detach air intake grille -1- from bumper cover.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert air intake grille in bumper cover and press it on so that all retaining tabs engage properly in bumper cover.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

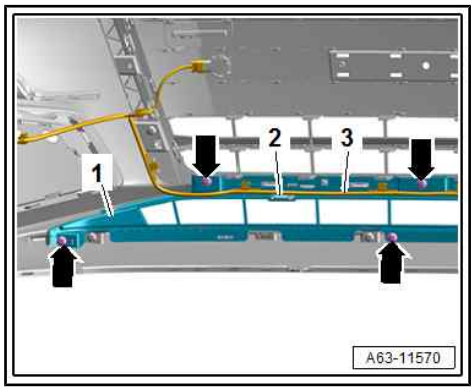
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 up to model year 2018, A5”, page 392

1.10.2 Removing and installing air intake grille (centre) - A4 S line from model year 2019 onwards

Removing

– Remove closure plate for bumper cover ⇒ page 419 .
– Move electrical wiring harness -3- clear.
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Release fasteners -2- and detach air intake grille -1- from bumper cover.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert air intake grille in bumper cover and press it on so that all retaining tabs engage properly in bumper cover.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1.3 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 S line from model year 2019 onwards”, page 394

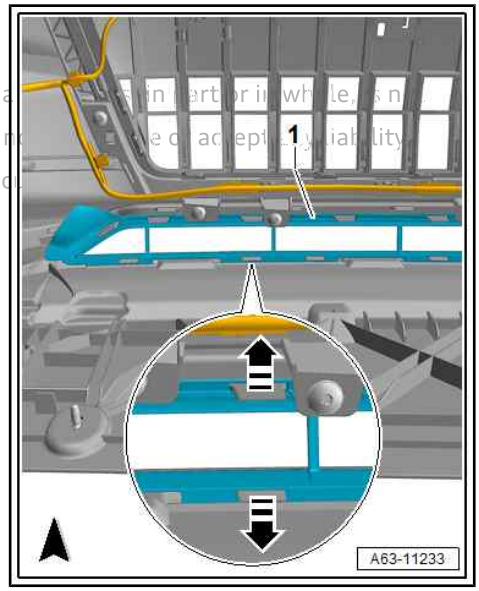
1.10.3 Removing and installing air intake grille (centre) - A4 allroad

Removing

– Remove closure plate for bumper cover ⇒ page 419 .
– Remove radiator grille ⇒ page 552 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercia... in part or in whole, is n... AG does n... the ... acceptability ... with respect to the correctness of information in this doc...

– Release fasteners -arrows- and detach air intake grille -1- from bumper cover.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert air intake grille -1- in bumper cover and press it on so that all retaining tabs engage properly in bumper cover.

1.10.4 Removing and installing air intake grille (centre) - A5, RS 4, RS 5

Removing

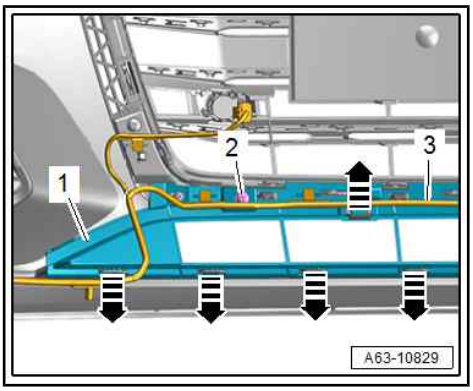
– A5: Remove closure plate for bumper cover ⇒ page 419 .

– RS 4, RS 5: Remove bumper cover ⇒ page 403 .

– Move electrical wiring harness -3- clear.

– Remove bolts -2-.

– Release fasteners -arrows- and detach air intake grille -1- from bumper cover.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert air intake grille in bumper cover and press it on so that all retaining tabs engage properly in bumper cover.

Tightening torques

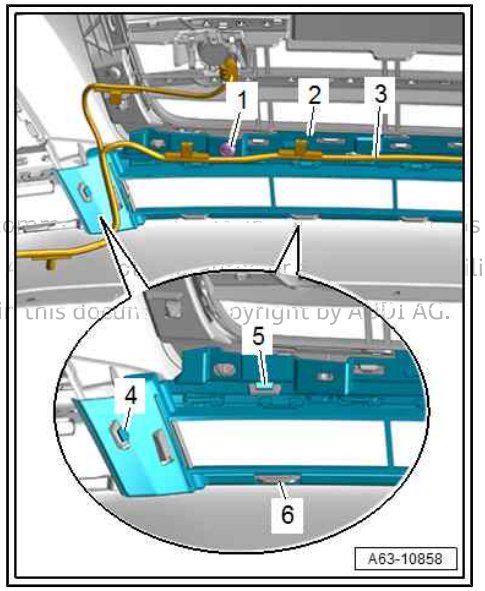
♦ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 391

1.10.5 Removing and installing air intake grille (centre) - A5 S line, S5

Removing

– Remove closure plate for bumper cover ⇒ page 419 .

– Move electrical wiring harness -3- clear.
– Remove bolts -1-.
– Release fasteners -4 … 6- and detach air intake grille -2- from bumper cover.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert air intake grille in bumper cover and press it on so that all retaining tabs engage properly in bumper cover.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1.5 Exploded view - bumper cover, A5 S line, S5”, page 397

1.11 Removing and installing air intake grille (side)

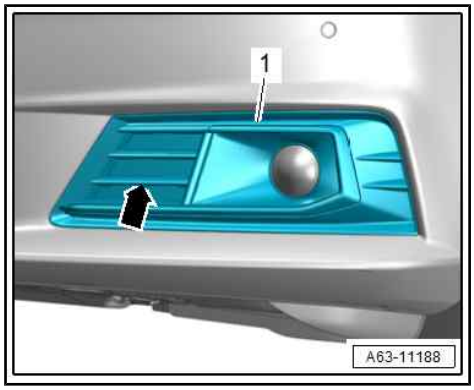
⇒ “1.11.1 Removing and installing air intake grille (side)”, page 410

⇒ “1.11.2 Removing and installing air intake grille (side) - S line, RS 4, RS 5”, page 410

1.11.1 Removing and installing air intake grille (side)

Removing

– Reach into handle recess -arrow- and pull air intake grille -1- out of bumper cover from inside.



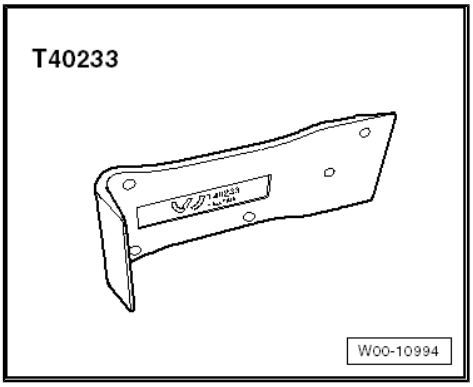
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

1.11.2 Removing and installing air intake grille (side) - S line, RS 4, RS 5

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - T40233-

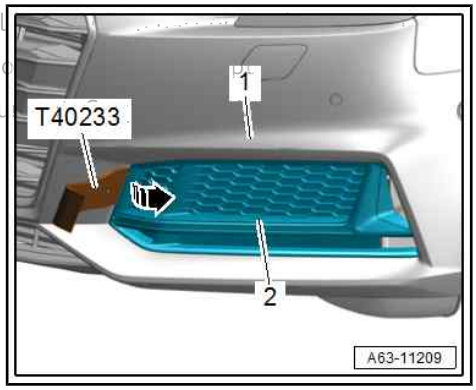


Removing

– Slide removal wedge - T40233- between bumper cover -1- and air intake grille -2-.

– Release air intake grille -arrow- and pull it out of bumper cover.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



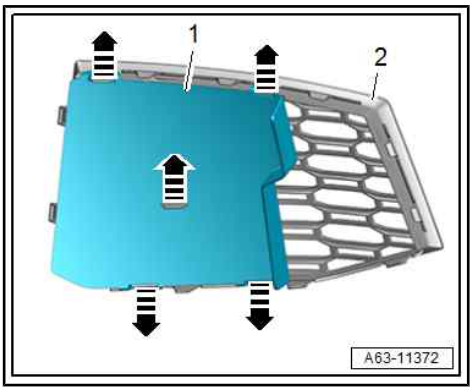
RS 4, RS 5, vehicles without adaptive cruise control:

– Release fasteners -arrows-.

– Detach trim -1- from air intake grille -2-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



1.12 Removing and installing trim for air intake grille (side)

Removing

– Remove bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 403 .

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

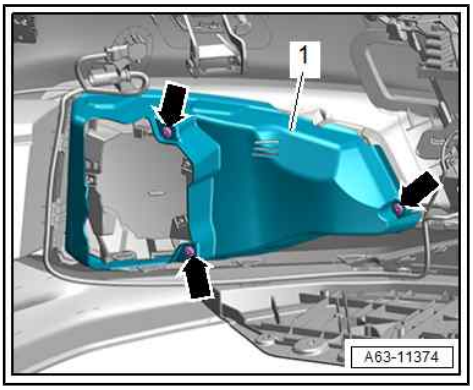
– Remove trim for air intake grille (side) -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “1.1.6 Exploded view - bumper cover, RS 4, RS 5”, page 398



1.13 Removing and installing trim for air duct

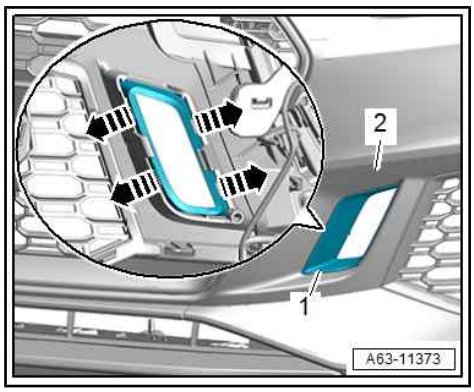
Removing

– Left side: Remove air intake grille trim ⇒ page 411 .

– Right side: Remove air intake grille (side) ⇒ page 410 .

– Release fasteners -arrows-.

– Detach trim -1- from bumper cover -2- towards front.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

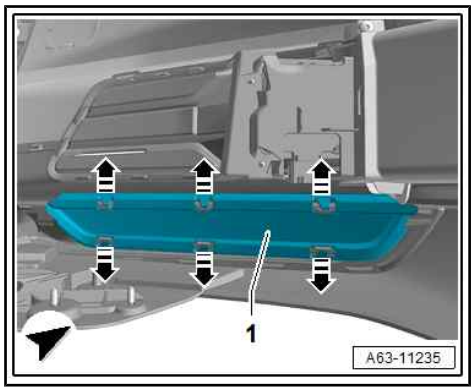
– Press trim on until it engages audibly.

1.14 Removing and installing air intake grille (side, bottom)

Removing

– Remove closure plate for bumper cover ⇒ page 419 .

– Release fasteners -arrows- and detach air intake grille -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert air intake grille -1- in bumper cover and press it on so that all retaining tabs engage properly in bumper cover.

1.15 Removing and installing air duct

⇒ “1.15.1 Removing and installing air duct - A4”, page 412

⇒ “1.15.2 Removing and installing air duct - A4 S line up to model year 2018”, page 413

⇒ “1.15.3 Removing and installing air duct - A5, RS 4, RS 5”, page 413

1.15.1 Removing and installing air duct - A4

Removing

– Remove wheel spoiler ⇒ page 659 .

– Unfasten wheel housing liner (front) at front and push to side ⇒ page 658 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

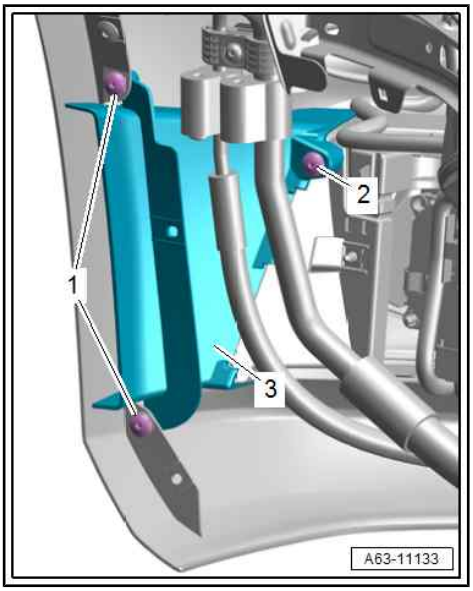
– Remove bolts -1, 2-.
– Detach air duct -3- towards rear.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 391



1.15.2 Removing and installing air duct - A4 S line up to model year 2018

Removing

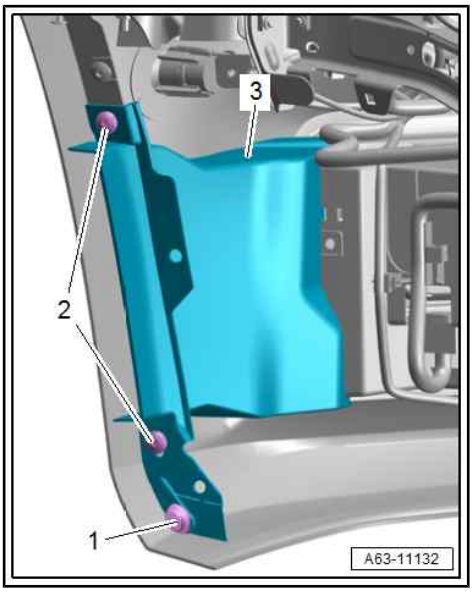
– Remove wheel spoiler ⇒ page 659 .
– Remove bolts -2-.
– Remove spreader rivet -1-.
– Detach air duct -3- towards rear.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 391



1.15.3 Removing and installing air duct - A5, RS 4, RS 5

• Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary ⇒ page 414 .

Removing

– Remove wheel spoiler ⇒ page 659 .
– Unfasten wheel housing liner (front) at front and push to side ⇒ page 658 .

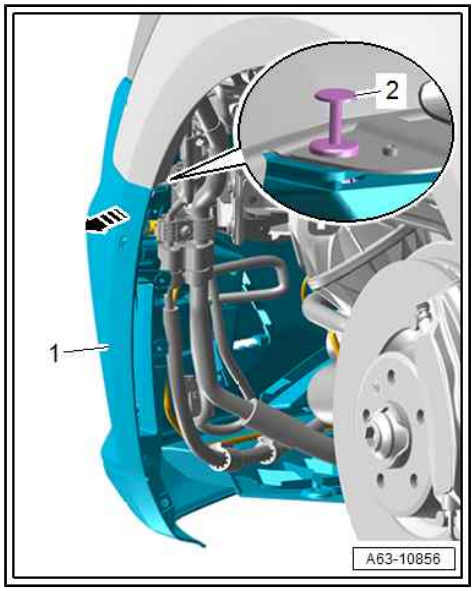
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

A5/RS 5:

– Remove spreader rivet -2-.

– Remove front sender for park assist steering ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Park assist steering; Removing and installing front sender .

– Pull bumper cover (side section) -1- slightly off wing -arrow-.

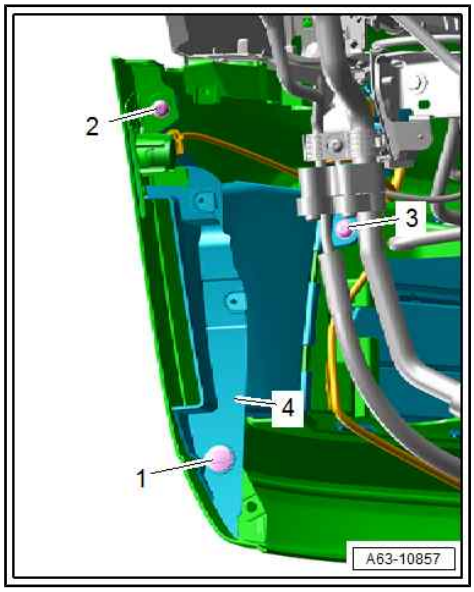


Continued:

– A5: Remove bolts -2, 3-.

– Remove spreader rivet -1-.

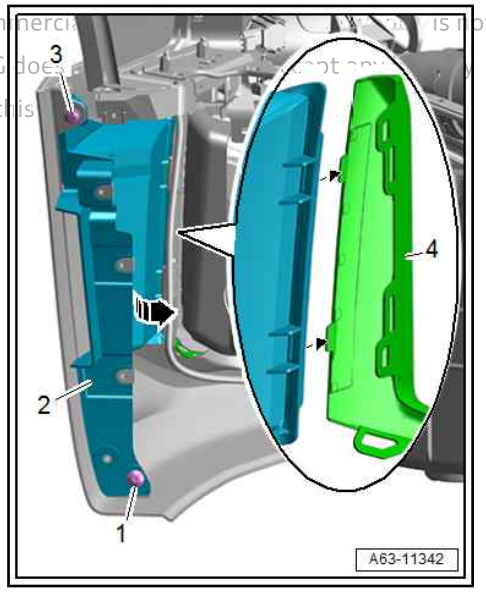
– Detach air duct -4-.



– RS 4, RS 5: Remove bolts -1, 3-.

– Swivel air duct -2- slightly towards inside -arrow- and pull out towards rear.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– RS 5: When inserting, make sure mountings engage in guides on spoiler (bottom section, side) -4-.

Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary:

– Adjust adaptive cruise control ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 44 ; Adaptive cruise control .

• Note conditions under which it is necessary to adjust adaptive cruise control system.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 391

1.16 Removing and installing front spoiler

⇒ “1.16.1 Removing and installing front spoiler - A4 allroad”, page 415

⇒ “1.16.2 Removing and installing front spoiler - A5”, page 415

Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.16.1 Removing and installing front spoiler - A4 allroad

Removing

– Remove air intake grille (centre) ⇒ page 408 .

– Remove bumper cover (side section) ⇒ page 406 .

– Remove air intake grille (side) ⇒ page 410 .

– Remove air intake grille (side, bottom) ⇒ page 412 .

– Remove underbody guard ⇒ page 418 .

– Remove adaptive cruise control unit - J428- / control unit 2 for adaptive cruise control - J850- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27 ; Adaptive cruise control; Removing and installing adaptive cruise control unit .

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

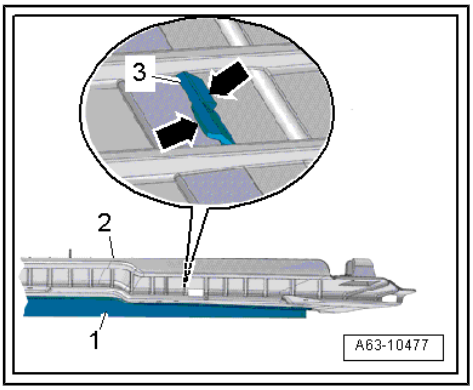
1.16.2 Removing and installing front spoiler - A5

Removing

– Remove closure plate for bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 419 .

– Apply a small quantity of soap solution to retaining tabs -3- and release them, starting at outside and working inwards -arrows-.

– Carefully pull spoiler out of closure plate -2- for bumper cover and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

1.17 Removing and installing spoiler (bottom section)

⇒ “1.17.1 Removing and installing spoiler (bottom section) - A4 S line from model year 2019 onwards”, page 416

⇒ “1.17.2 Removing and installing spoiler (bottom section, centre)”, page 416

⇒ “1.17.3 Removing and installing spoiler (bottom section, side)”, page 417

1.17.1 Removing and installing spoiler (bottom section) - A4 S line from model year 2019 onwards

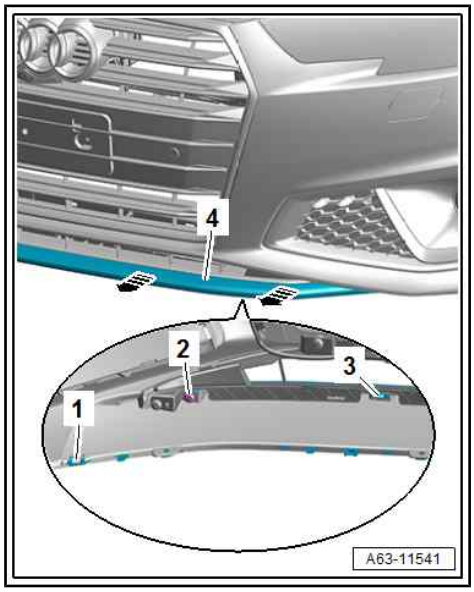
Removing

– Remove closure plate for bumper cover ⇒ page 419 .

– Remove bolts -2-.

– Release fasteners -1, 3-.

– Pull spoiler (bottom section) -4- off bumper cover -arrows-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- When installing, retaining tabs must engage fully in bumper.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1.3 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 S line from model year 2019 onwards”, page 394

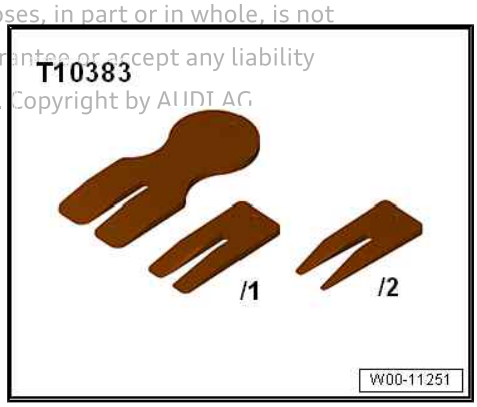
1.17.2 Removing and installing spoiler (bottom section, centre)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

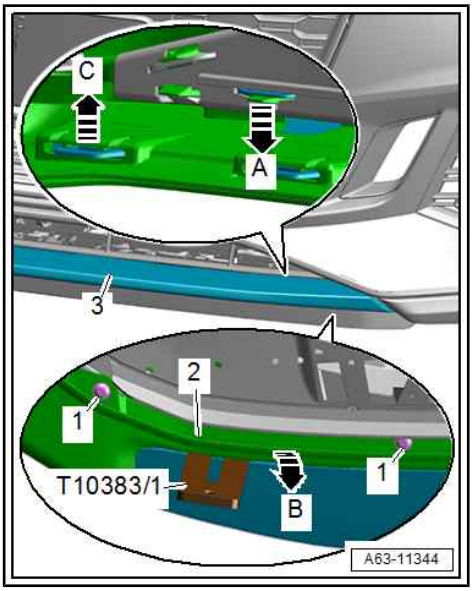
Wedges - T10383-

Removing

– Remove bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 403 .



– Release fasteners -arrow A-.
– Remove bolts -1-.
– Pull bumper cover -2- as far off as possible in area of closure plate for bumper cover (front) -arrow B- and release fasteners -arrow C-; at the same time press spoiler (bottom section) -3- off bumper cover using wedge -T10383/1- .
– Pull spoiler (bottom section) off bumper cover towards front.



Note:

If spoiler (bottom section) cannot be removed as described, closure plate for bumper cover must be removed ⇒ page 420 .

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1.6 Exploded view - bumper cover, RS 4, RS 5”, page 398

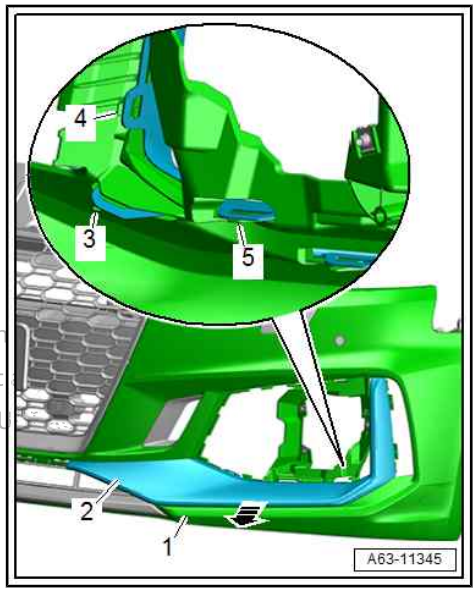
1.17.3 Removing and installing spoiler (bottom section, side)

Removing

– Unfasten trim strip on corresponding side ⇒ page 417 .
– Remove air intake grille (side) ⇒ page 410 .
– Release fasteners -3, 4, 5-.
– Pull spoiler (bottom section) -2- off bumper cover -1- -arrow-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



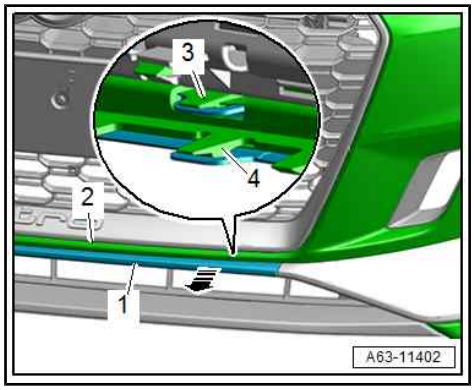
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU

1.18 Removing and installing trim strip

Removing

– Remove air intake grille (centre) ⇒ page 409 .

– Release fasteners -3, 4-.
– Pull trim strip -1- off bumper cover -2- -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

1.19 Removing and installing underbody guard

Removing

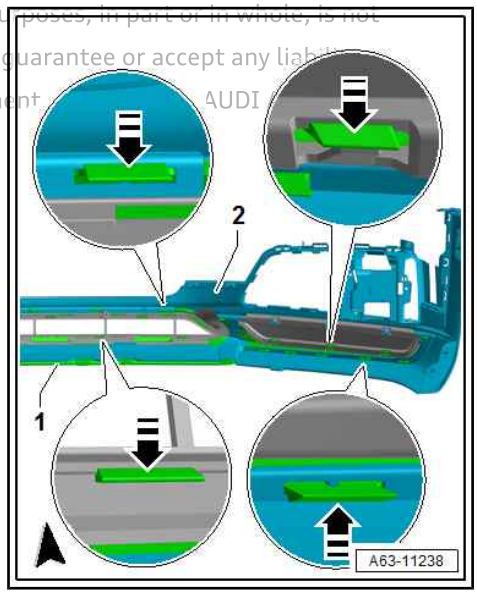
– Remove closure plate for bumper cover ⇒ page 419 .
– Remove bumper cover ⇒ page 403 .
– Release fasteners -arrows- and detach underbody guard -1- from front spoiler -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Fit underbody guard -1- on front spoiler -2- and press it on so that all retaining tabs engage properly in front spoiler.



1.20 Removing and installing closure plate for bumper cover

⇒ “1.20.1 Removing and installing closure plate for bumper cover - A4”, page 419

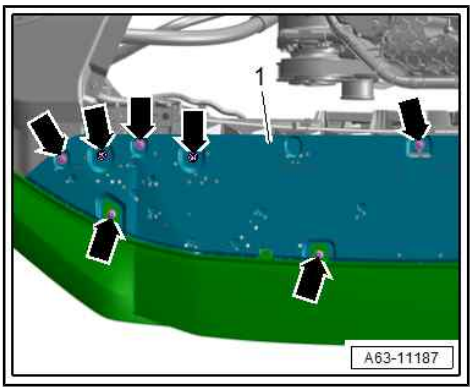
⇒ “1.20.2 Removing and installing closure plate for bumper cover - A5”, page 419

⇒ “1.20.3 Removing and installing closure plate for bumper cover - RS 4, RS 5”, page 420

1.20.1 Removing and installing closure plate for bumper cover - A4

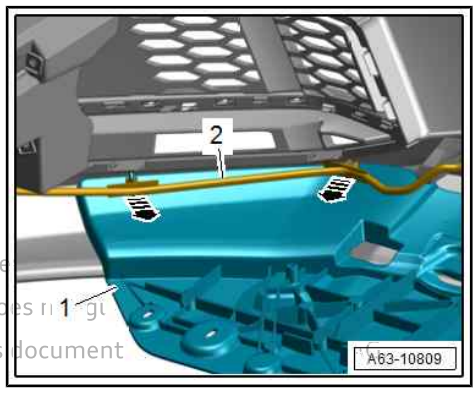
Removing

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- on closure plate -1- for bumper cover (front).



– If fitted, press closure plate -1- for bumper cover (front) as far downwards as possible and move electrical wiring harness -2- clear -arrows-.

– Pull closure plate for bumper cover (front) off towards rear.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

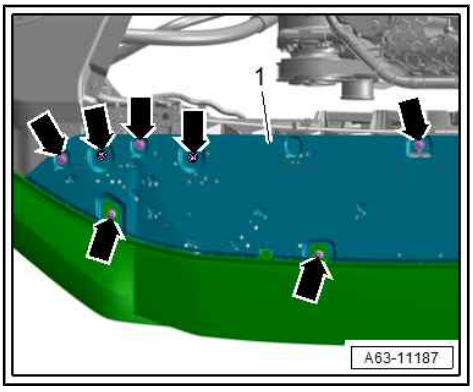
♦ ⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - covers and air ducts”, page 401

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does n gi
with respect to the correctness of information in this document

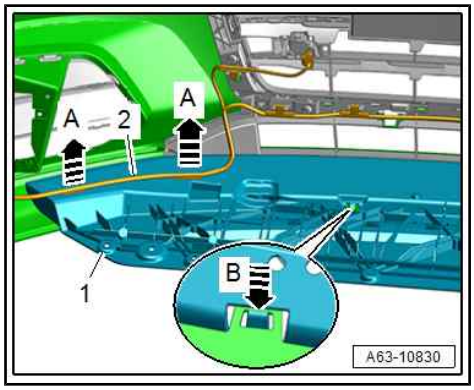
1.20.2 Removing and installing closure plate for bumper cover - A5

Removing

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- on closure plate -1- for bumper cover (front).



– Press closure plate -1- for bumper cover (front) as far downwards as possible and move electrical wiring harness -2- clear -arrows A-.
– Release fastener -arrow B- and detach closure plate for bumper cover (front) towards rear.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

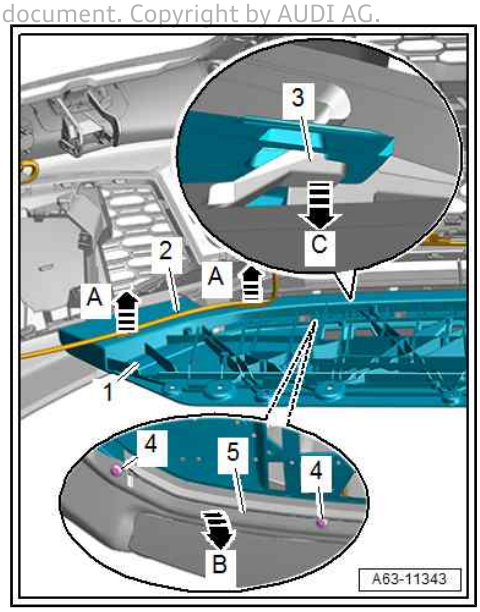
♦ ⇒ “1.3 Exploded view - covers and air ducts”, page 401

1.20.3 Removing and installing closure plate for bumper cover - RS 4, RS 5

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove air intake grille (centre) ⇒ page 409 .
– Move electrical wiring harness -2- clear -arrows A-.
– Unscrew bolts -4- on closure plate -1- for bumper cover (front).
– Pull bumper cover -5- off as far as possible in area of closure plate for bumper cover (front) -arrow B- and release fasteners -3- -arrow C-.
– Pull closure plate for bumper cover (front) off towards rear.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

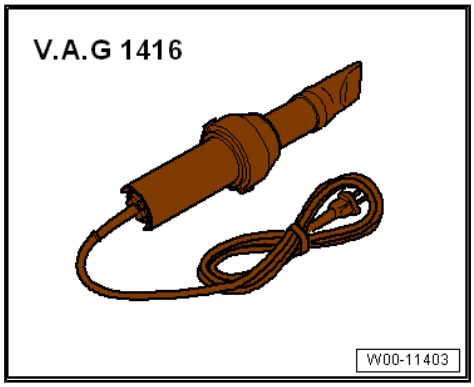
Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “1.1.6 Exploded view - bumper cover, RS 4, RS 5”, page 398

1.21 Removing and installing reflector

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-



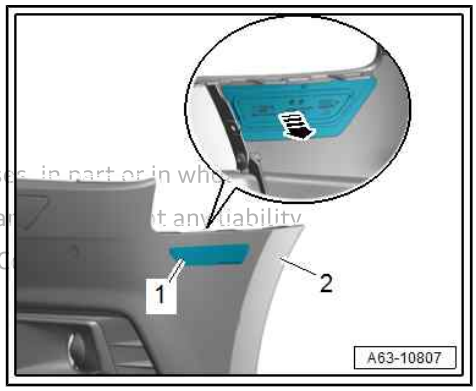
♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-
♦ Plastic primer - D 366 PR1 A1-
♦ Applicator - D 009 500 25-

Removing

– Remove bumper cover ⇒ page 403 .

– Carefully heat reflector -1- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .

– Carefully press reflector off bumper cover -2- -arrow-.



Installing

- The vehicle and the reflector must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Clean plastic bonding surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

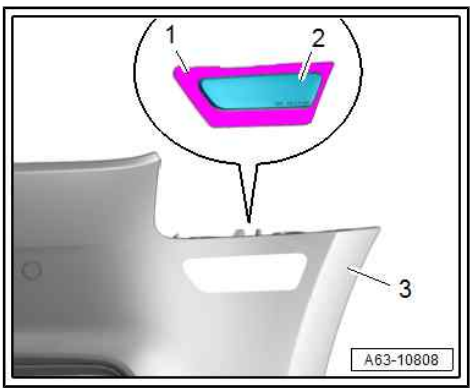
– Apply plastic primer - D 366 PR1 A1- to plastic bonding surface and allow to flash off until cleaning solution has evaporated completely.

- Fit reflector within 60 minutes.

– Peel protective films off adhesive strip -1-.

– Position reflector -2- and press it onto bumper cover -3-.

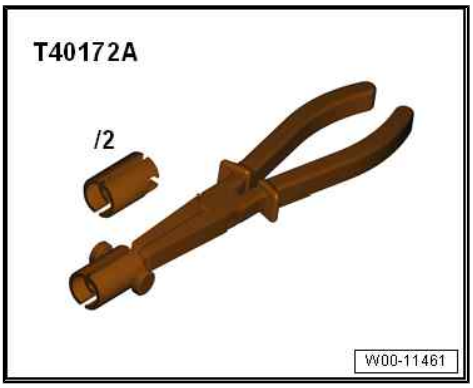
- Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.



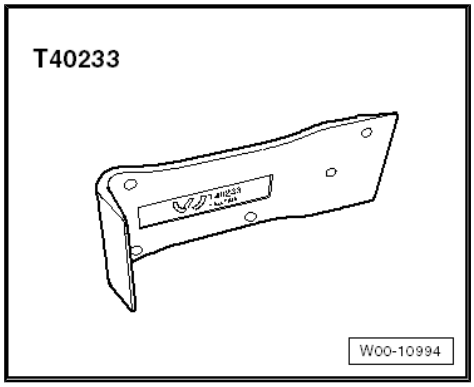
1.22 Removing and installing lock carrier cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Pliers - T40172 A-



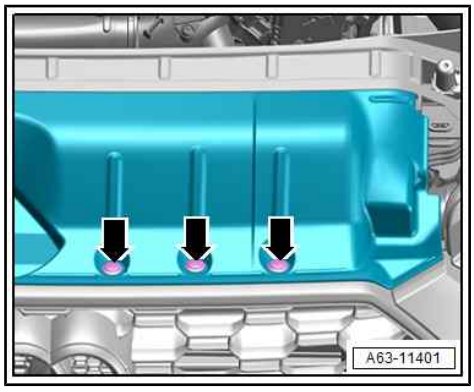
- Removal wedge - T40233-



Removing

– Remove operating lever for arrester ⇒ page 54 .

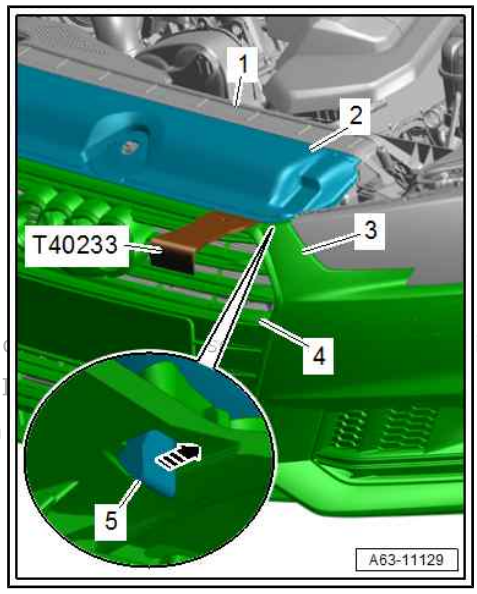
– If fitted, remove fasteners -arrows- using pliers - T40172 A- .



– Release fasteners -5- for lock carrier cover on radiator grille -4- and on bumper cover -3- using removal wedge - T40233- -arrow-.

– Pull lock carrier cover -2- out of groove in lock carrier -1-.

– Detach lock carrier cover.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert lock carrier cover into groove in lock carrier and press on at radiator grille and bumper cover.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or
is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI
ility
with respect to the correctness of information

1.23 Removing and installing impact bar

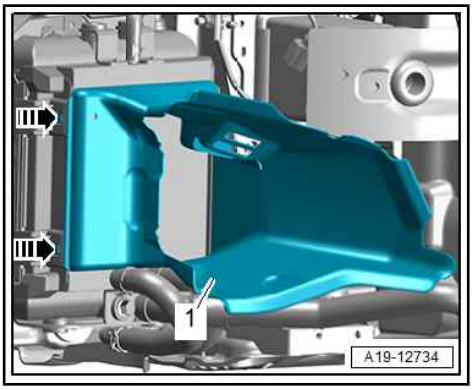
- Removing and installing impact bar ⇒ page 422
- Removing and installing mounting for impact bar ⇒ page 424

Removing and installing impact bar

– Remove wheel housing liner ⇒ page 658 .

– Remove bumper cover ⇒ page 403 .

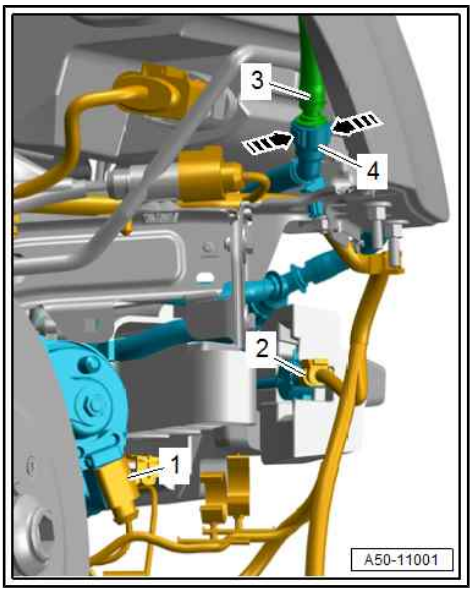
– RS 4, RS 5: Release fasteners on both sides -arrows-.
– Detach air duct -1- towards front.
– Remove headlight washer jet and set it down with fluid hose connected ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Headlight washer system; Removing and installing washer jets .



– If fitted, press release tabs -arrows- and disconnect washer fluid hose -3- (place a drip tray underneath connection point).
– Move fluid hose -4- clear.

CAUTION

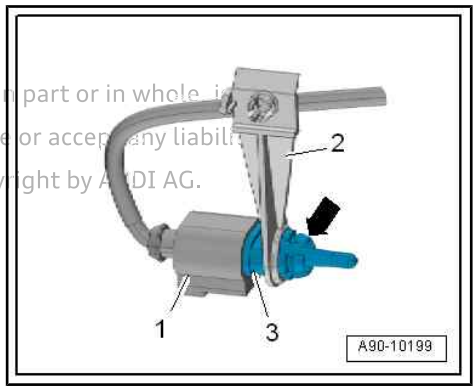
It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury
– Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.



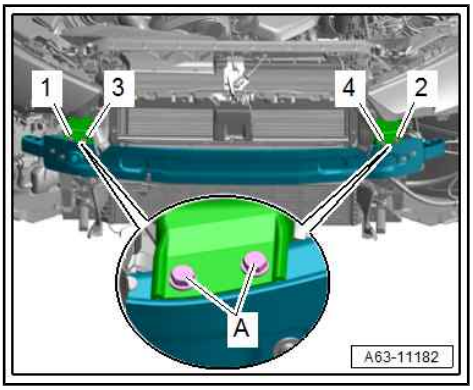
– Vehicles with pedestrian protection system: Unplug electrical connector -2- at crash sensor for pedestrian protection.

– Unplug electrical connector -1- at ambient temperature sensor - G17- -item 3- and move wiring harness clear.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Loosen bolted connections -1 ... 4- and pull out bolts -A- upwards.



If it is not possible to pull the bolts out:

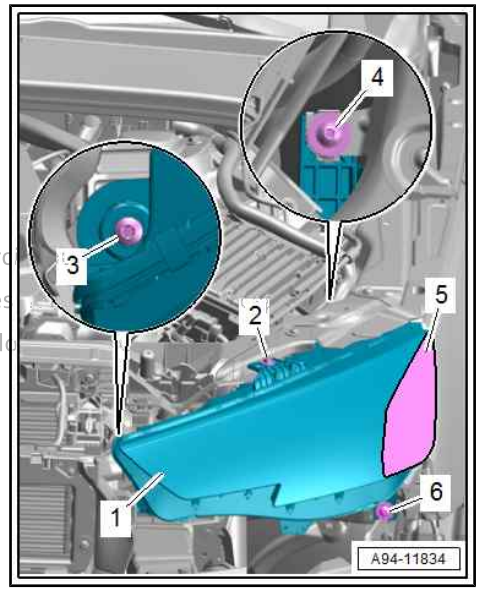
– Mask headlight -1- with adhesive tape in area of wing -5-.

– Remove bolts -2, 3, 4 and 6-.

Note:

After pulling bolts out, secure headlight again using bolts for impact bar.

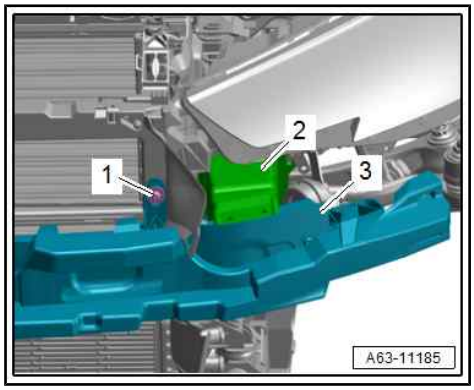
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerc
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this d



Continued:

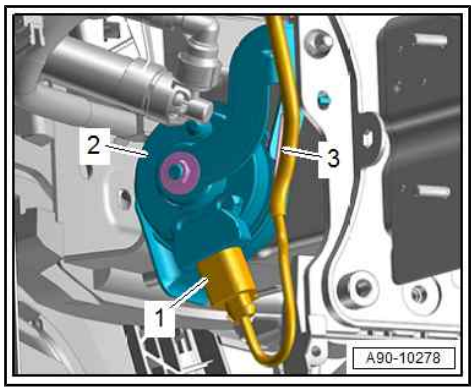
– Remove bolt -1-.

– Detach impact bar -3- from mounting -2-.

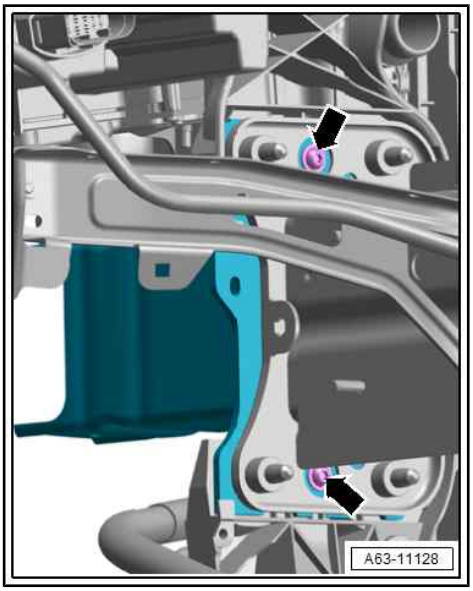


Removing mounting for impact bar

– Unplug electrical connector -1- on horn -2- and move wiring harness -3- clear.

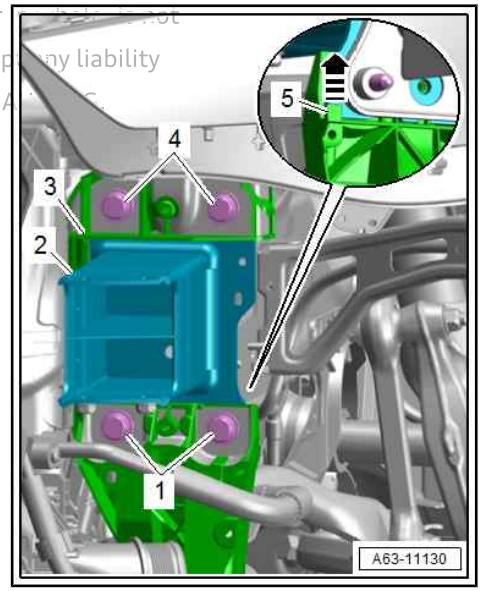


– Remove bolts -arrows-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or ... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by A...

– Remove bolts -1, 4-.
– Pull lock carrier -3- forwards slightly, push mounting -2- for impact bar upwards out of guide -5- -arrow- and detach it to side.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Adjust spring element ⇒ page 46 .

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “1.4 Exploded view - impact bar”, page 402
- ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - lock carrier”, page 6

1.24 Removing and installing moulded foam insert

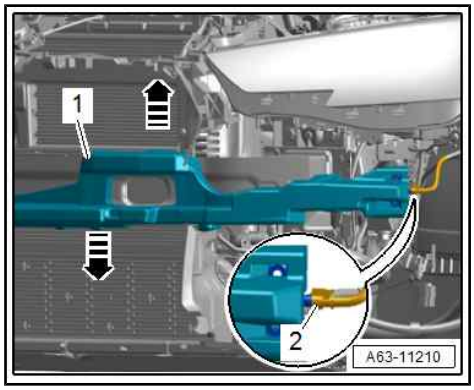
Removing

– Remove bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 403 .

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury
– Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.

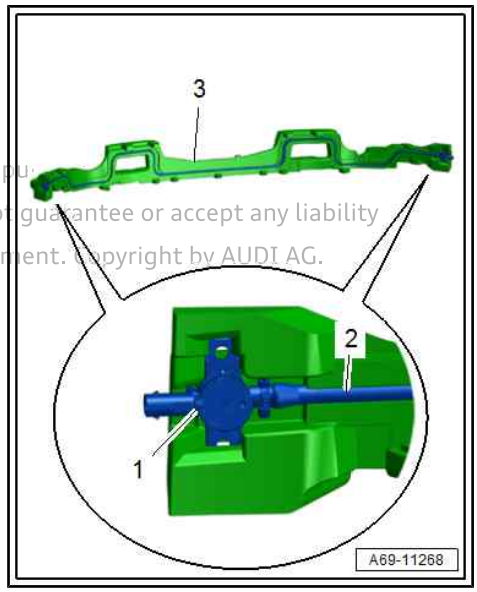
– Pull out and press down connector locking element and unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Release retaining tabs -arrows- and detach moulded foam insert -1- from impact bar.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Engage crash sensor for pedestrian protection -1- in moulded foam insert -3-.



NOTICE

Risk of damage to pressure hose if it is bent.

– **Never kink or stretch pressure hose.**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Insert pressure hose -2- into recess in moulded foam insert.
• The pressure hose must be inserted so that it is free of tension.

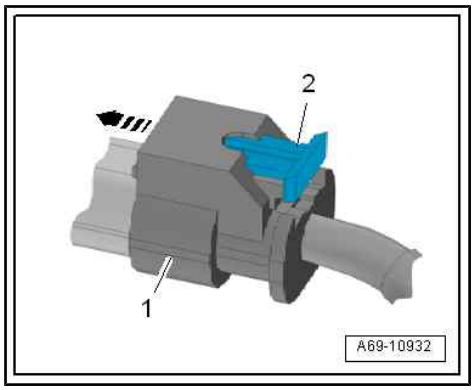
CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.

Risk of injury

– **Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.**

– Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.
– Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.

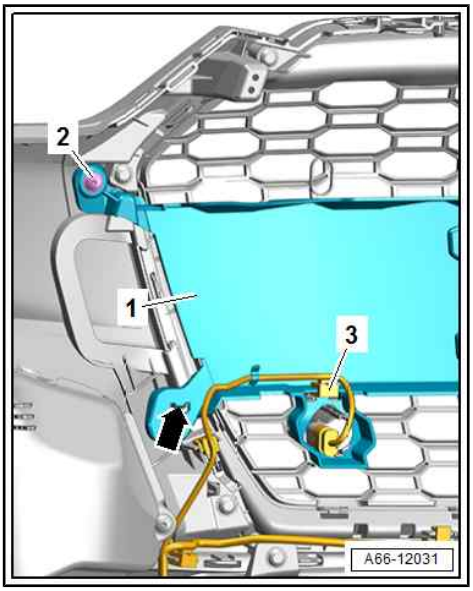


1.25 Removing and installing mounting for moulded foam insert

Removing

– Remove bumper cover ⇒ page 403 .
– Remove front parking aid senders ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Parking aid; Removing and installing front parking aid senders .

– Move electrical wiring harness -3- clear.
– Remove bolt -2-.
– RS 4, RS 5: Release fastener -arrow- or unscrew bolt fitted in this position and remove mounting -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1.2 Exploded view - radiator grille, RS 4, RS 5”, page 551

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Bumper (rear)

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 428

⇒ “2.2 Exploded view - bumper cover mounting”, page 440

⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - impact bar”, page 441

⇒ “2.4 Removing and installing bumper cover”, page 444

⇒ “2.5 Removing and installing bumper cover (top section) ”, page 446

⇒ “2.6 Removing and installing bumper cover (bottom section) ”, page 446

⇒ “2.7 Removing and installing base plate for bumper cover”, page 448

⇒ “2.8 Removing and installing bumper cover mounting”, page 450

⇒ “2.9 Removing and installing closure plate ”, page 451

⇒ “2.10 Removing and installing trim strip for bumper cover”, page 452

⇒ “2.11 Removing and installing bumper cover trim”, page 456

⇒ “2.12 Removing and installing tailpipe trim”, page 458

⇒ “2.13 Removing and installing reflectors”, page 459

⇒ “2.14 Removing and installing impact bar”, page 460

2.1 Exploded view - bumper cover

⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 up to model year 2018”, page 428

⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 S line up to model year 2018”, page 430

⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 from model year 2019 onwards”, page 431

⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 allroad”, page 434

⇒ “2.1.5 Exploded view - bumper cover, A5”, page 435

⇒ “2.1.6 Exploded view - bumper cover, A5 S line, S5”, page 436

⇒ “2.1.7 Exploded view - bumper cover, RS 4, RS 5”, page 439

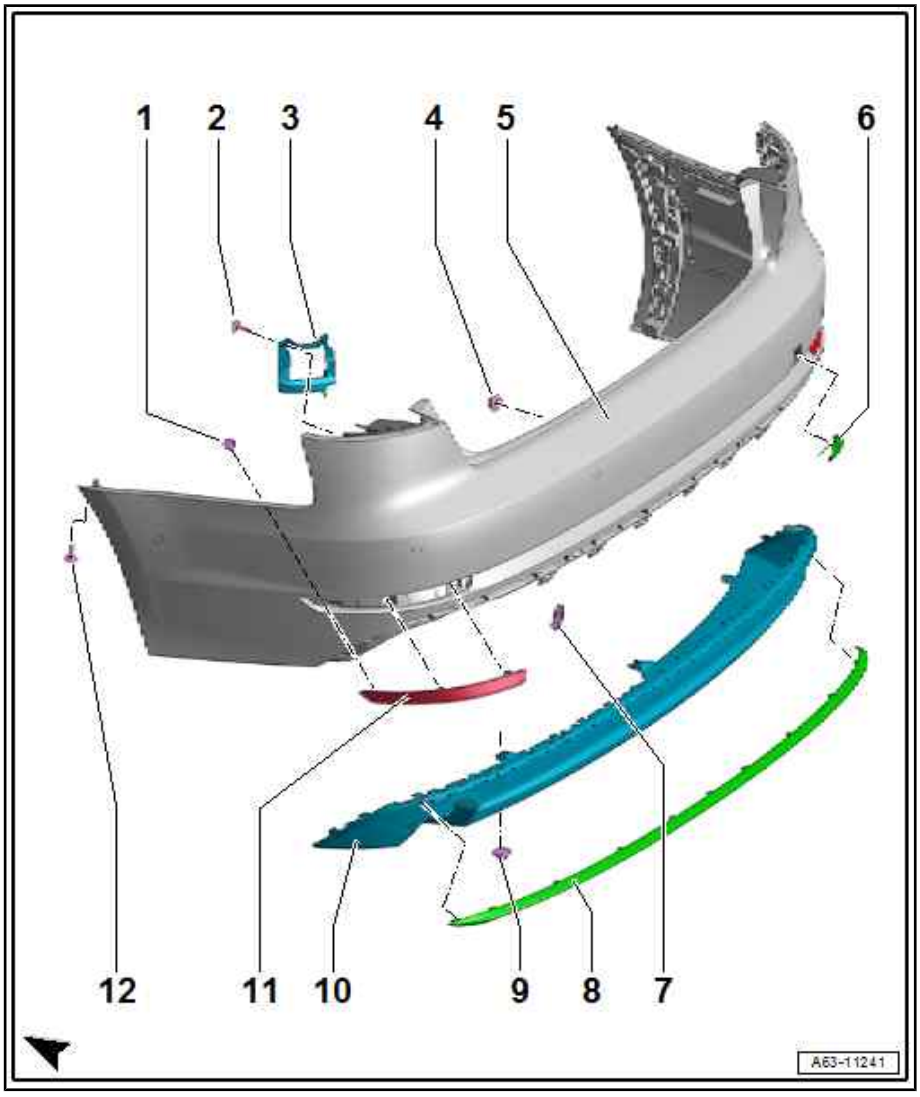
2.1.1 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 up to model year 2018

DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

- If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.
- Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Bolt
- ❑ 2 Nm

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Overview - lane change assist

3 - Mounting
- ❑ For lane change assist control unit
- ❑ Overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Overview - lane change assist

4 - Nut
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 4 Nm

5 - Bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 444
- ❑ Exploded view - bumper cover mounting ⇒ page 440

6 - Cover
- ❑ For towing eye

7 - Spring
- ❑ For reflector

8 - Trim strip
- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 452

9 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

10 - Base plate for bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 448

11 - Reflector
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 459

12 - Bolt
- ❑ 2 Nm

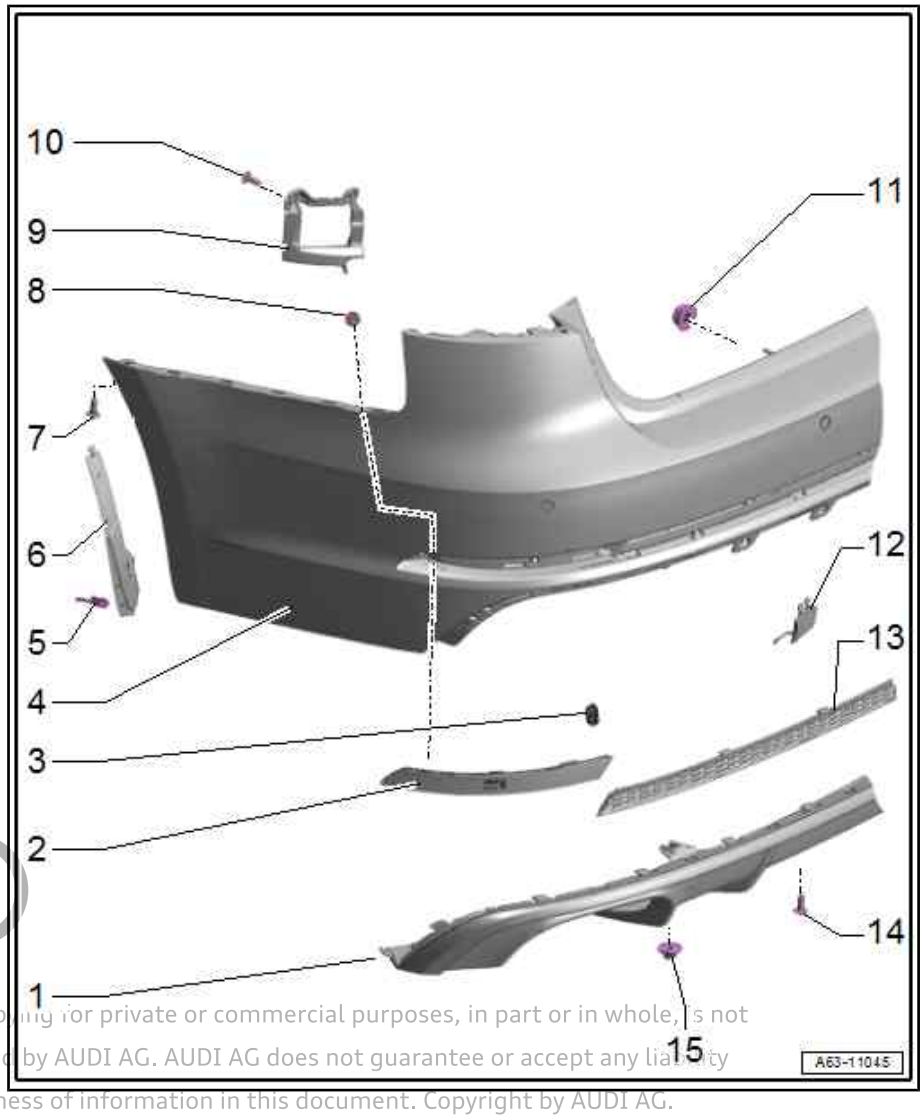
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.2 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 S line up to model year 2018

DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

- **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**
- **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**



1 - Base plate for bumper cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 448

2 - Reflector

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 459

3 - Spring

- ❑ For reflector

4 - Bumper cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 444
- ❑ Exploded view - bumper cover mounting ⇒ page 440

5 - Spreader rivet

- ❑ 2x

6 - Intermediate piece

- ❑ For securing wheel housing liner

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

9 - Mounting

- ❑ For lane change assist control unit
- ❑ Overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Overview - lane change assist

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Overview - lane change assist

11 - Nut

- ❑ 4x

- ❑ 4 Nm

12 - Cover

- ❑ For towing eye

13 - Trim

- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 456

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

15 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

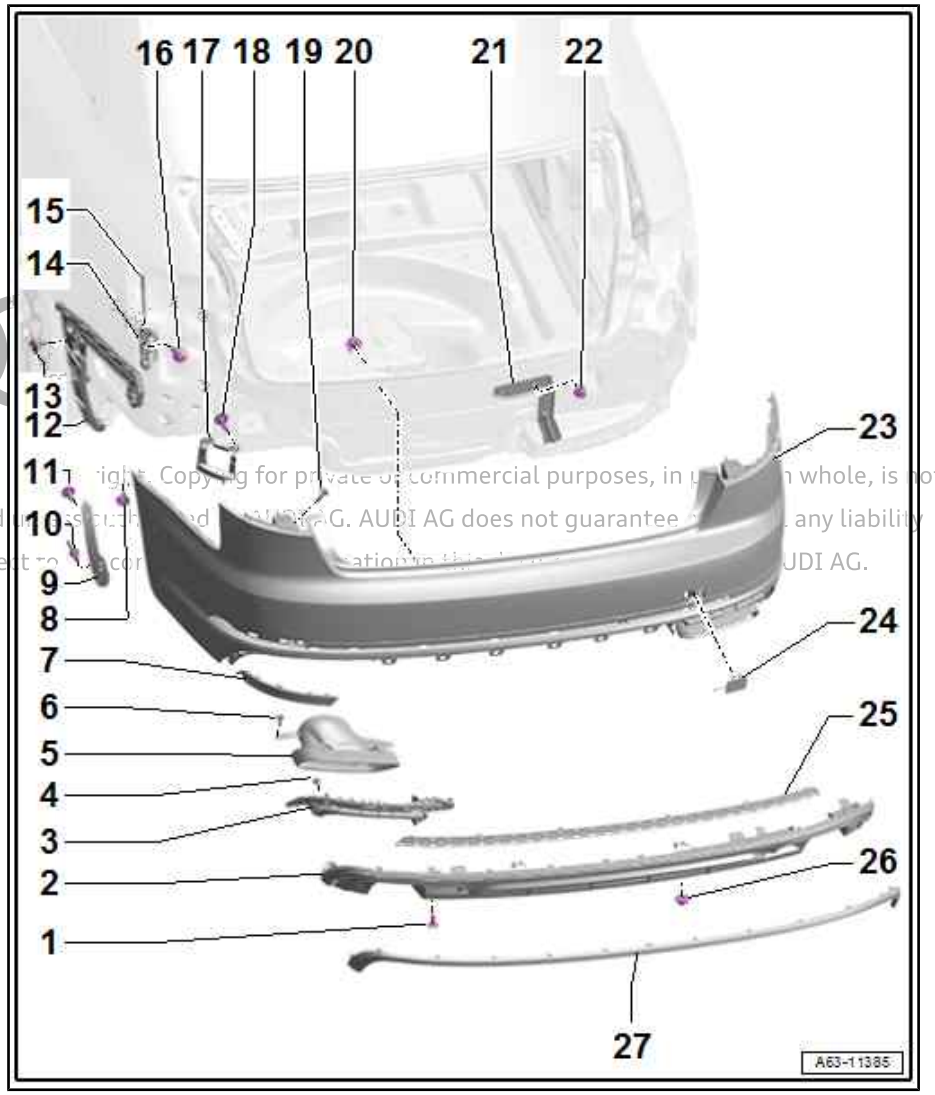
2.1.3 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 from model year 2019 onwards

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

- **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**
- **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**



1 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

2 - Base plate for bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 449

3 - Mounting
- ❑ For tailpipe trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 458

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 2 Nm

5 - Tailpipe trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 458

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

7 - Reflector
- ❑ With spring
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 459

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 2 Nm

9 - Intermediate piece
- ❑ For securing wheel housing liner

10 - Spreader rivet
- ❑ 2x

11 - Bolt
- ❑ 2 Nm

12 - Mounting
- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Side
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 440

13 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 440

14 - Mounting
- ❑ For securing bumper cover
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 440

15 - Locking mechanism
- ❑ For securing bumper cover (rear) to mounting (top)

16 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 440

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © AUDI AG.

17 - Mounting

- ❑ For lane change assist control unit
- ❑ Overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Overview - lane change assist

18 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Overview - lane change assist

19 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

20 - Nut

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 4 Nm

21 - Mounting

- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Centre
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 450

22 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

23 - Bumper cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 444

24 - Cover

- ❑ For towing eye

25 - Trim

- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 456

26 - Nut

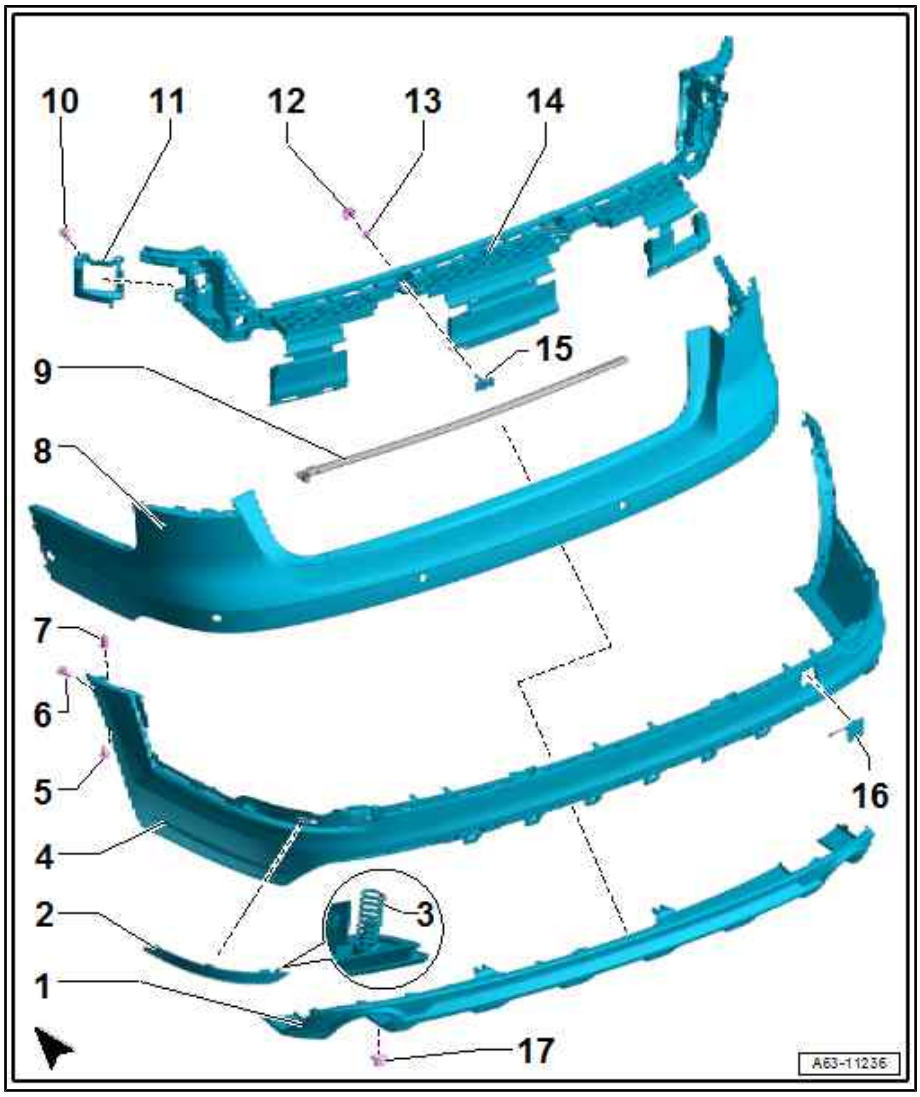
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

27 - Trim strip

- ❑ Equipment version: S line
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 453

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.4 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 allroad



1 - Base plate for bumper cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 448

2 - Reflector

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 459
- ❑ Tightening torque for bolt: 2 Nm

3 - Spring

- ❑ For reflector

4 - Bumper cover (bottom section)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 446

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 658

7 - Expanding nut

8 - Bumper cover (top section)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 446
- ❑ Exploded view - bumper cover mounting ⇒ page 440

9 - Fastening strip

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Overview - lane change assist

11 - Mounting

- ❑ For lane change assist control unit
- ❑ Overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Overview - lane change assist

12 - Nut

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 4 Nm

13 - Sealing washer

14 - Closure plate

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 451

15 - Retaining plate

16 - Cover

- ❑ For towing eye

17 - Nut

- ❑ 2x

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

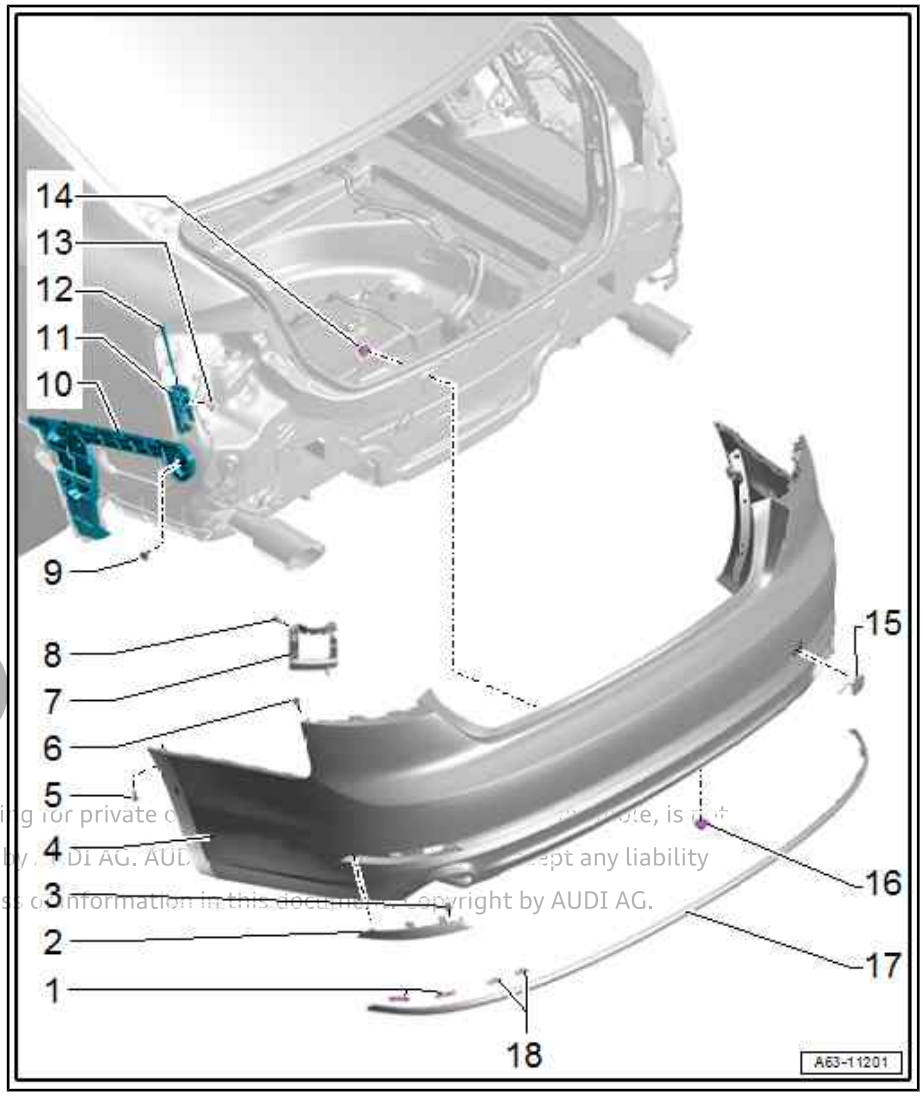
❑ 2 Nm

2.1.5 Exploded view - bumper cover, A5

DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

- **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**
- **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**



1 - Retaining clips

❑ 4x

2 - Reflector

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 459

3 - Spring

❑ For reflector

4 - Bumper cover

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 444

5 - Bolt

❑ 2 Nm

6 - Bolt

❑ 2 Nm

7 - Mounting

❑ For lane change assist control unit

❑ Overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Overview - lane change assist

8 - Bolt

❑ 3x

❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Overview - lane change assist

9 - Bolt

❑ 3x

❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 440

10 - Mounting

❑ For bumper cover

❑ Side

❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 440

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © Copyright by AUDI AG.

11 - Mounting

- For securing bumper cover
- Exploded view ⇒ page 440

12 - Locking mechanism

- For securing bumper cover (rear) to mounting (top)

13 - Bolt

- 2x
- Tightening torque ⇒ page 440

14 - Nut

- 4x
- 4 Nm

15 - Cover

- For towing eye

16 - Nut

- 2x
- 2 Nm

17 - Trim strip

- Depending on version
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 453

18 - Retaining clips

- 11x

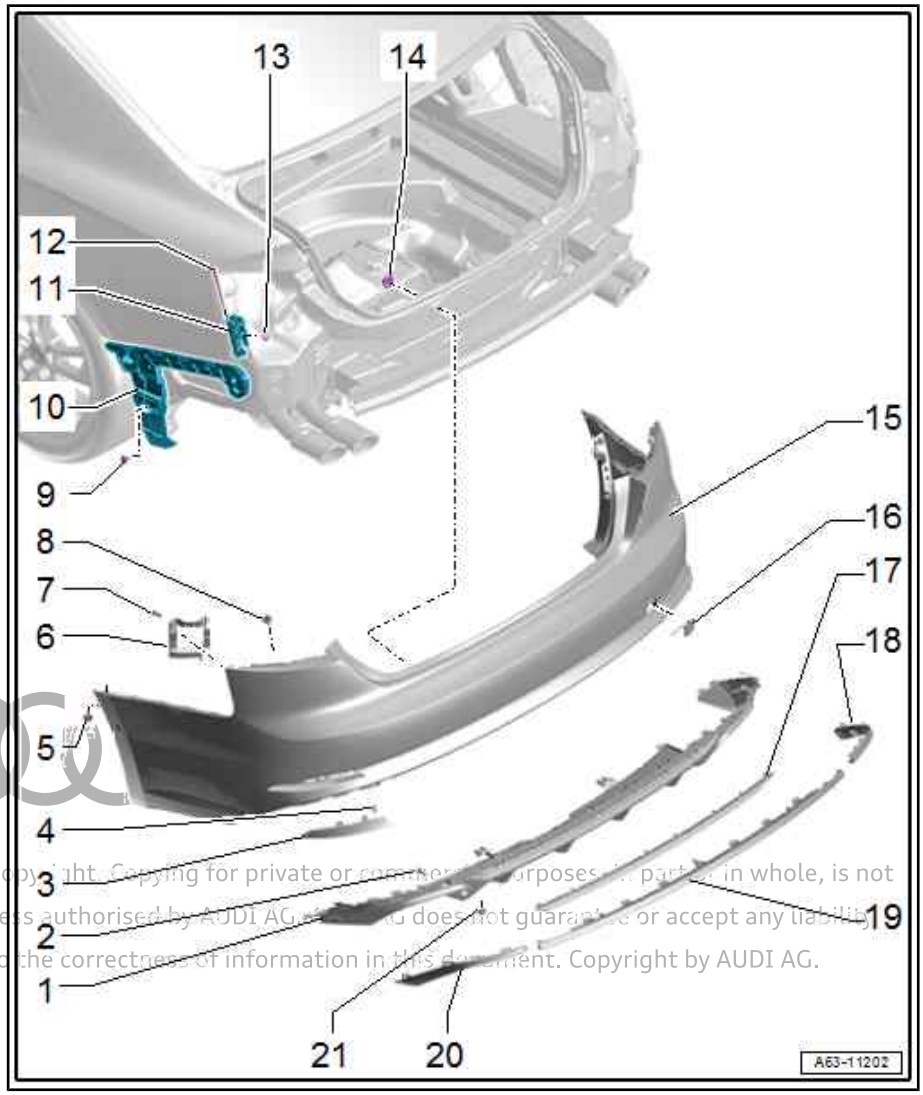
2.1.6 Exploded view - bumper cover, A5 S line, S5

DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

- **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**
- **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Base plate for bumper cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 448

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

3 - Reflector

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 459

4 - Spring

- ❑ For reflector

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

6 - Mounting

- ❑ For lane change assist control unit
- ❑ Overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Overview - lane change assist

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Overview - lane change assist

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 440

10 - Mounting

- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Side
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 440

11 - Mounting

- ❑ For securing bumper cover
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 440

12 - Locking mechanism

- ❑ For securing bumper cover (rear) to mounting (top)

13 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 440

14 - Nut

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 4 Nm

15 - Bumper cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 444

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

16 - Cover

- ❑ For towing eye

17 - Trim

- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 457

18 - Trim strip (right-side)

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 454

19 - Trim strip (centre)

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 454

20 - Trim strip (left-side)

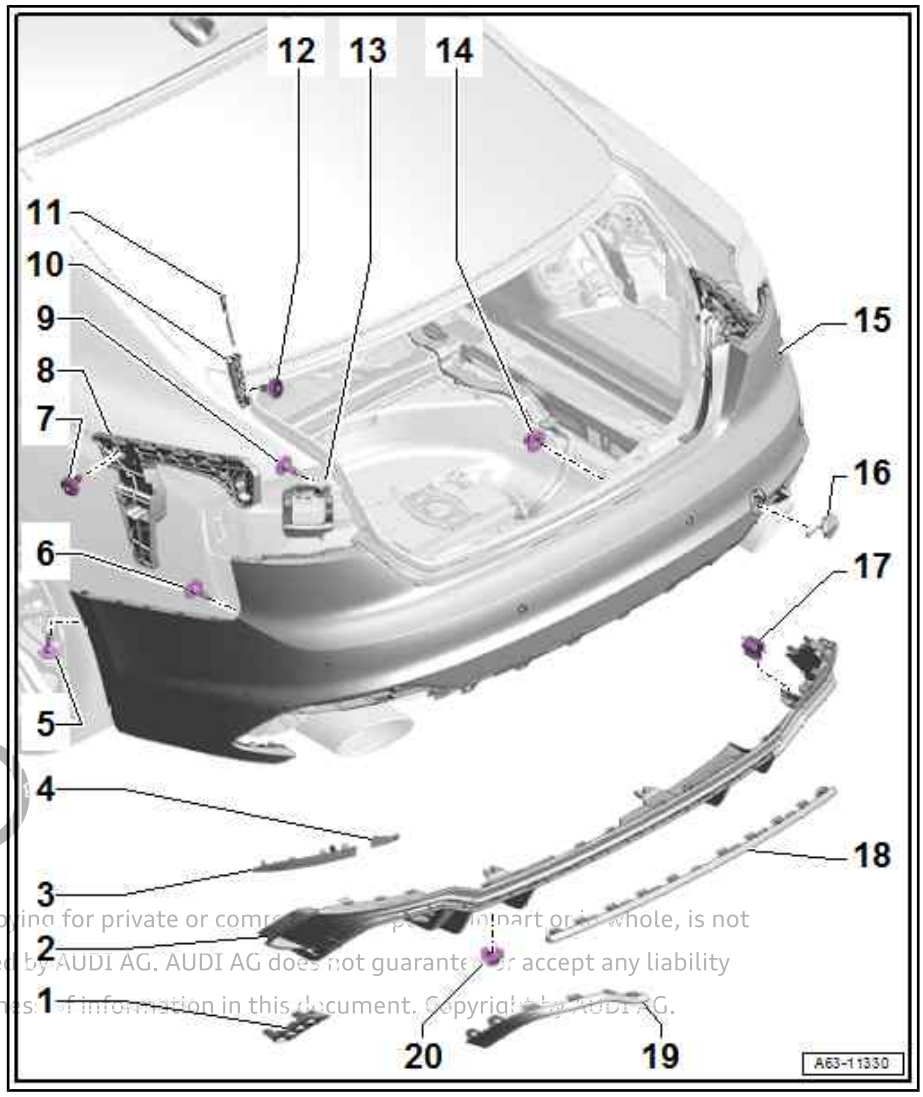
- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 454

21 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.7 Exploded view - bumper cover, RS 4, RS 5



1 - Trim
- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 457

2 - Base plate for bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 450

3 - Reflector
- ❑ With spring
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 459

4 - Reflector (small)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 460

5 - Bolt
- ❑ 2 Nm

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 2 Nm

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 440

8 - Mounting
- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Side
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 440

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Overview - lane change assist

10 - Mounting
- ❑ For securing bumper cover
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 440

11 - Locking mechanism
- ❑ For securing bumper cover (rear) to mounting (top)

12 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 440

13 - Mounting
- ❑ For lane change assist control unit
- ❑ Overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Overview - lane change assist

14 - Nut
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 4 Nm

15 - Bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 444

16 - Cover
- ❑ For towing eye

17 - Retaining clip
- ❑ 4x

18 - Trim strip (centre)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 455

19 - Side trim strip
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 455

20 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

2.2 Exploded view - bumper cover mounting

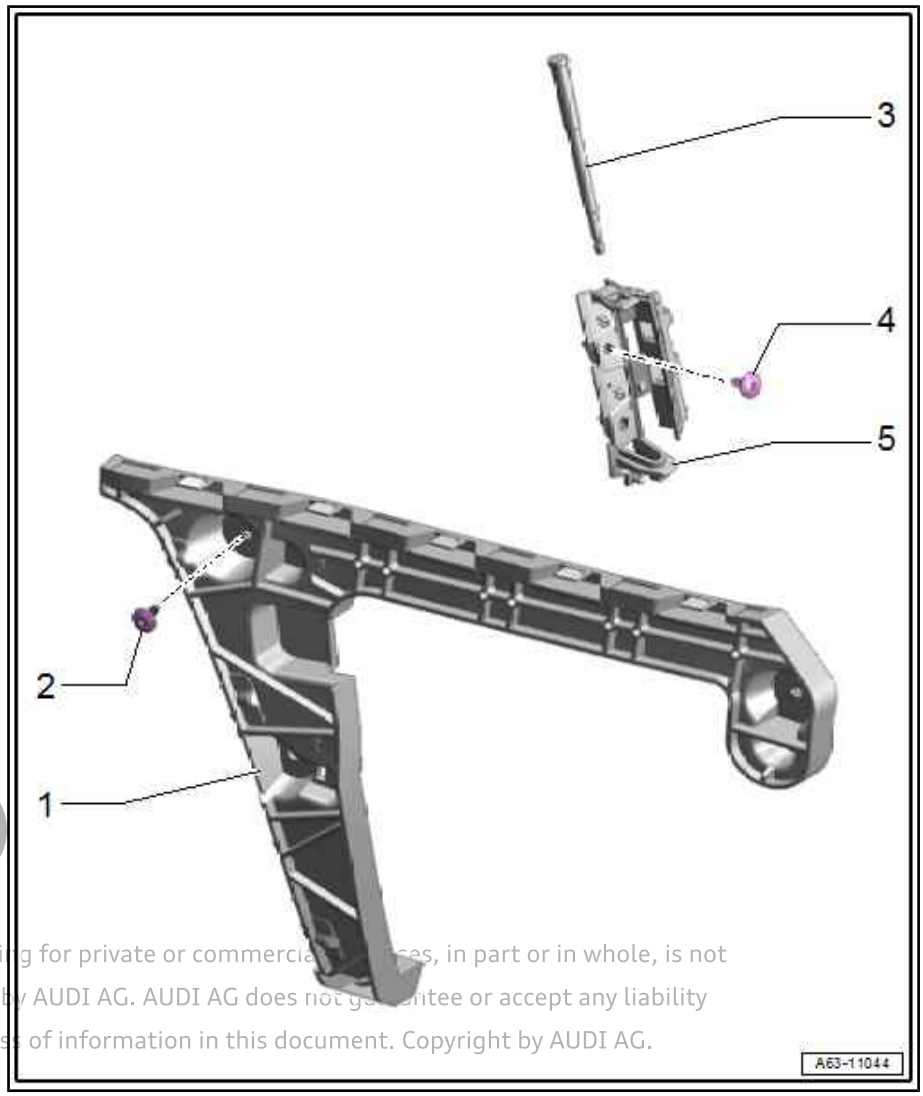
1 - Mounting
- ❑ Side
- ❑ For bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 451

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 441

3 - Locking mechanism
- ❑ For securing bumper cover (rear) to mounting (top)

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening sequence ⇒ page 441

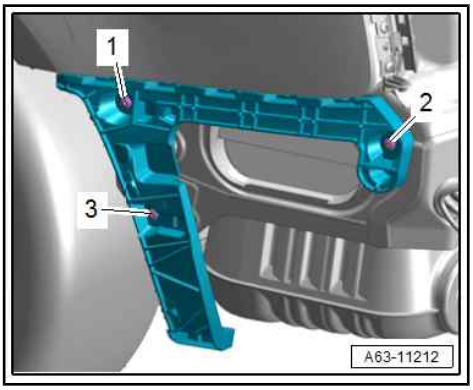
5 - Mounting
- ❑ Top
- ❑ For securing bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 451



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

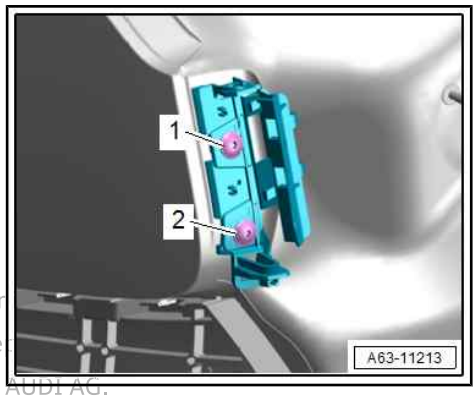
Bumper cover mounting (side) - tightening torque and sequence

- Tighten bolts -1, 2 and 3- to 3 Nm.



Bumper cover mounting (top) - tightening torque and sequence

- Tighten bolts -1 and 2- to 3 Nm.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or acce
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Exploded view - impact bar

⇒ "2.3.1 Exploded view - impact bar, A4, A5", page 441

⇒ "2.3.2 Exploded view - impact bar, RS 4, RS 5", page 443

2.3.1 Exploded view - impact bar, A4, A5

DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

- **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**
- **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**

1 - Filler piece

2 - Impact bar

- ❑ For vehicles with towing bracket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 461

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 60 Nm + 90°

4 - Impact bar

- ❑ For vehicles without towing bracket
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 460

5 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 442

6 - Foam seal

7 - Nut

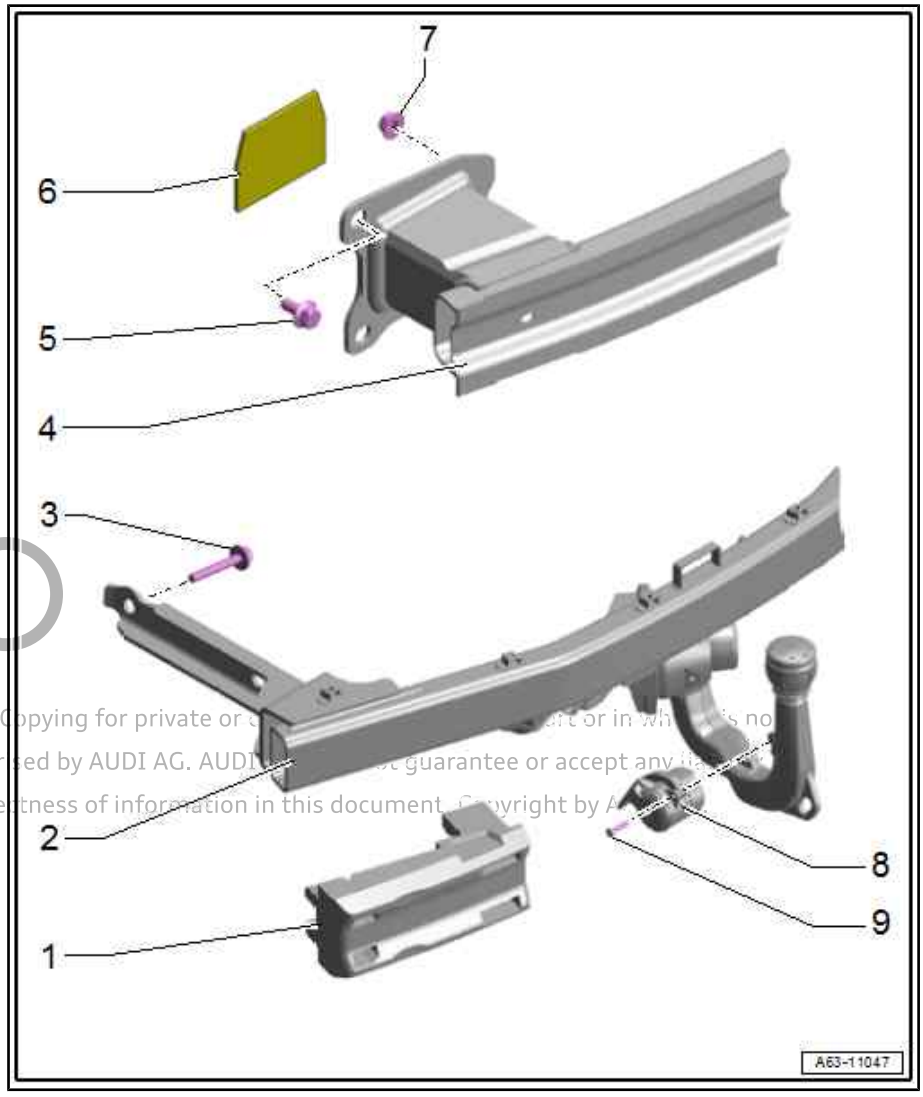
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 442

8 - Socket

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Towing bracket; Trailer socket

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

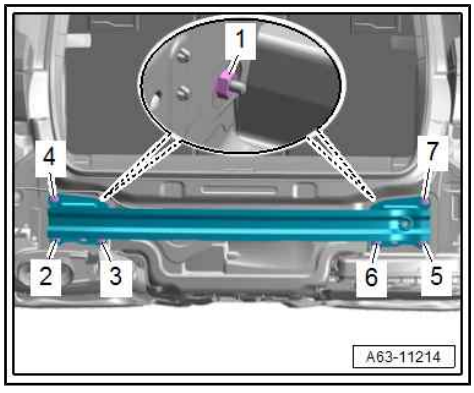


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

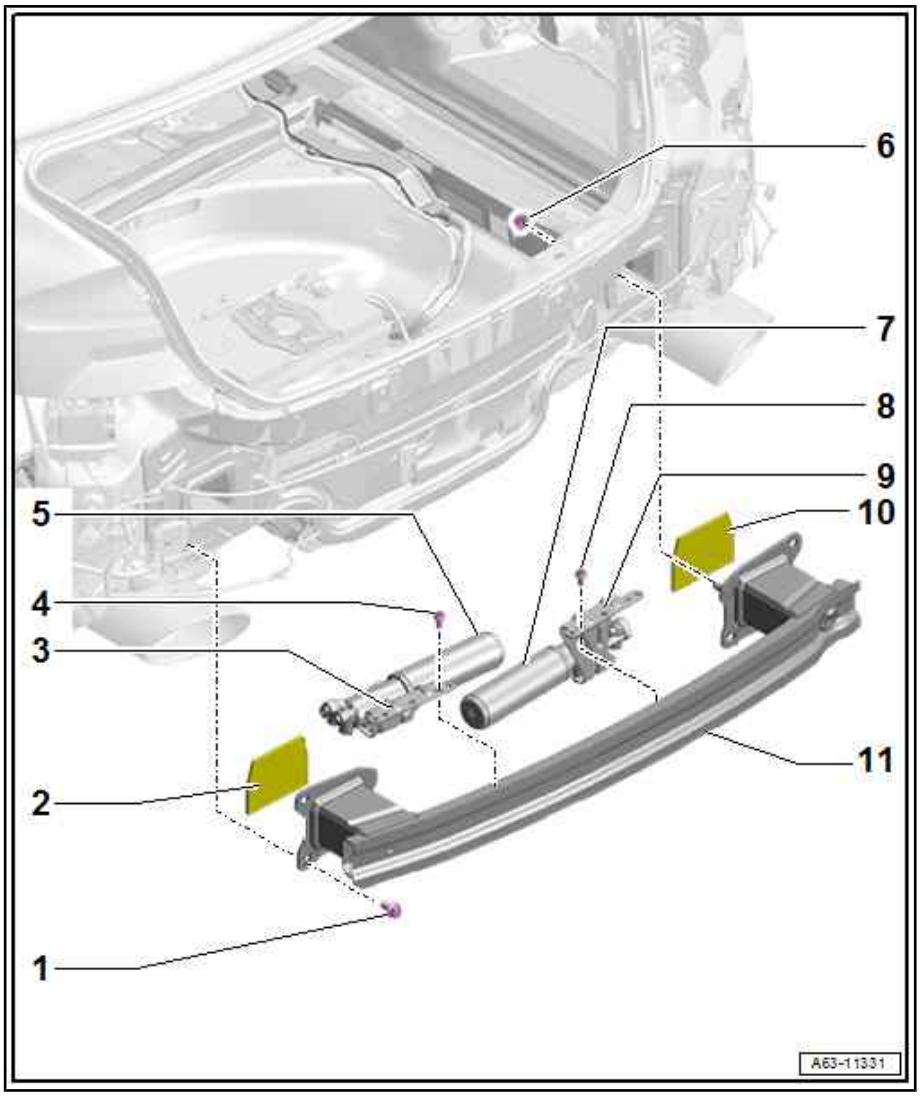
Impact bar - tightening torque and sequence

– Tighten bolts and nuts in stages in sequence shown.

Stage	Bolts/nut	Tightening torque/angle specification
1.	-1-	55 Nm
2.	-2 … 7-	50 Nm
3.	-2 … 7-	45°



2.3.2 Exploded view - impact bar, RS 4, RS 5



Exploded view ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 43 ; Dynamic Ride Control (DRC); Exploded view - central valve

1 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 6x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 442

2 - Foam seal

- ❑ Left-side

3 - Bracket

- ❑ For central valve
- ❑ Left-side

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 43 ; Dynamic Ride Control (DRC); Exploded view - central valve

5 - Central valve

- ❑ Left-side
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 43 ; Dynamic Ride Control (DRC); Exploded view - central valve

6 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 442

7 - Central valve

- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 43 ; Dynamic Ride Control (DRC); Exploded view - central valve

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 43 ; Dynamic Ride Control (DRC); Exploded view - central valve

9 - Bracket

- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ For central valve

10 - Foam seal

- ❑ Right-side

11 - Impact bar

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 460

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4 Removing and installing bumper cover

DANGER

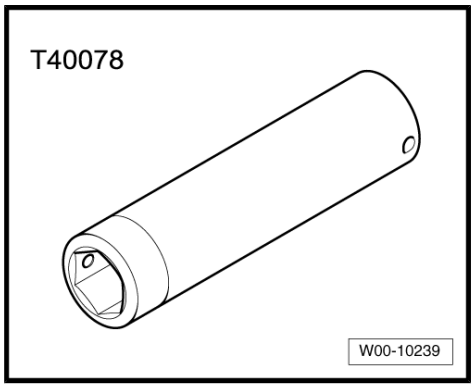
Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

- **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**
- **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**

- Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary ⇒ page 446 .

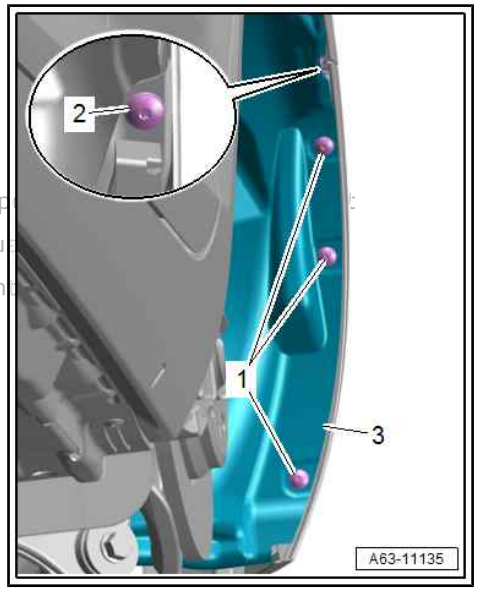
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Socket - T40078-



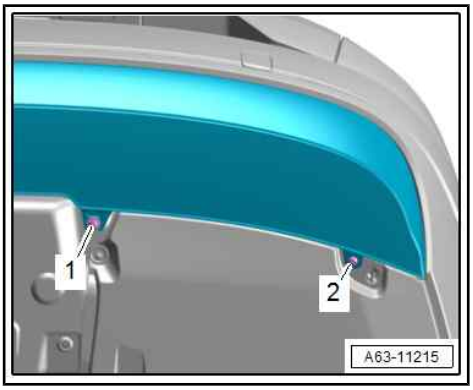
Removing

– Remove bolts -1-.
– Press wheel housing liner -3- to the side.
– Remove bolt -2-.



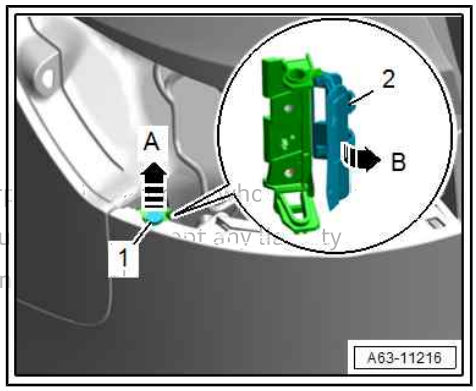
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
with respect to the correctness of information in this documen

– Unscrew nuts -1- and bolt -2-.

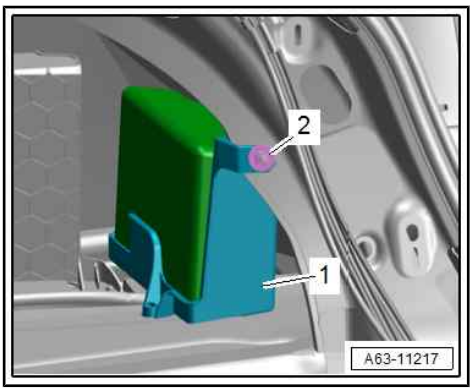


– Remove tail lights ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Tail light cluster; Removing and installing tail light cluster .
– Pull up locking mechanism -1- -arrow A-.
– Open mounting -2- -arrow B- until it locks into place.

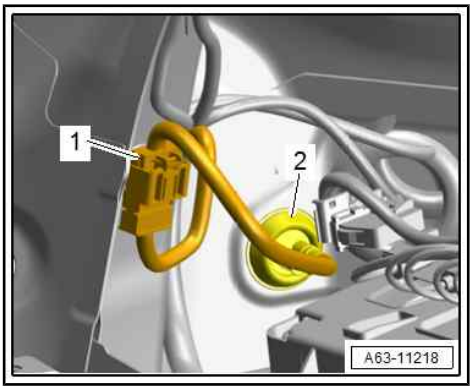
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pur
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
with respect to the correctness of information in this documen



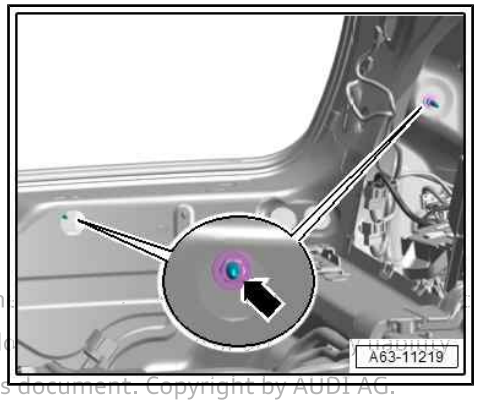
– Open cover in luggage compartment side trim.
– Equipment version with retainer for first-aid kit: Unscrew nut -2- and take out retainer -1-.



– Unplug electrical connector -1- and move wiring harness clear.
– Push grommet -2- through to outside.
– Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing lock carrier trim .

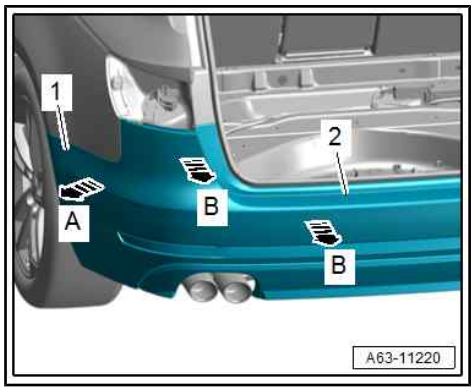


– Unscrew nuts -arrow- using socket - T40078- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG d
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Disengage side section -1- outwards from side panel -arrow A- and detach bumper cover -2- -arrows B-.



– Set down bumper cover on a soft surface.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary:

– Calibrate lane change assist ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Calibrating lane change assist .

• Note conditions under which it is necessary to calibrate lane change assist.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 428

◆ ⇒ “8.2 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (rear)”, page 658

2.5 Removing and installing bumper cover (top section)

Removing

– Remove closure plate ⇒ page 451 .

– Remove bumper cover (bottom section) ⇒ page 446 .

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

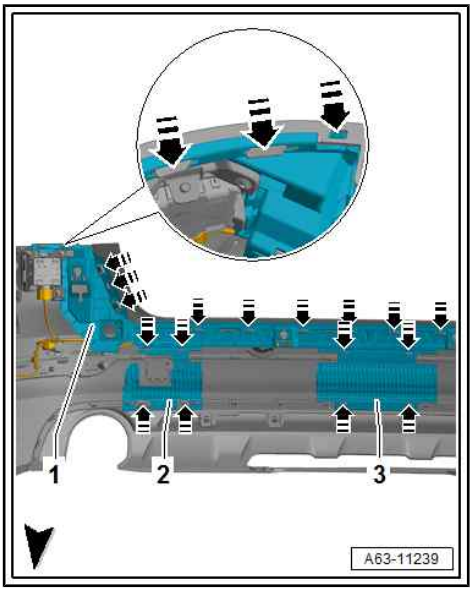
2.6 Removing and installing bumper cover (bottom section)

Removing

– Remove bumper cover ⇒ page 444 .

– Remove base plate for bumper cover ⇒ page 448 .

– Release fasteners -arrows- at moving parts -2, 3- of closure plate -1- and fold them up.
– Remove reflector ⇒ page 459 .

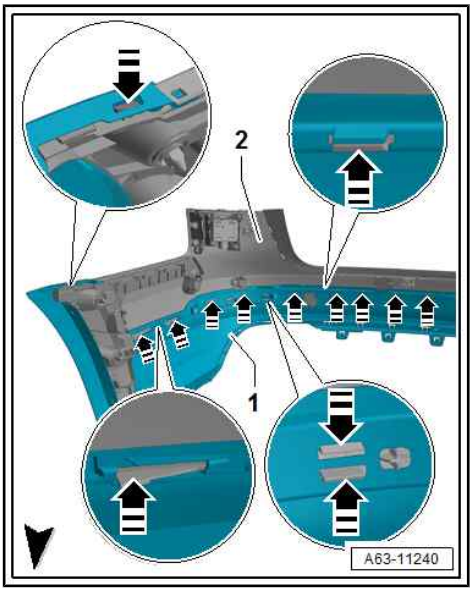


– Release fasteners -arrows- and detach bumper cover (bottom section) -1- from bumper cover (top section) -2-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Fit bumper cover (bottom section) -1- on bumper cover (top section) -2- and press it on so that all retaining tabs engage properly in bumper cover (top section).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.7 Removing and installing base plate for bumper cover

⇒ “2.7.1 Removing and installing base plate for bumper cover - A4 up to model year 2018, A5”, page 448

⇒ “2.7.2 Removing and installing base plate for bumper cover - A4 from model year 2019 onwards”, page 449

⇒ “2.7.3 Removing and installing base plate for bumper cover - RS4, RS5”, page 450

2.7.1 Removing and installing base plate for bumper cover - A4 up to model year 2018, A5

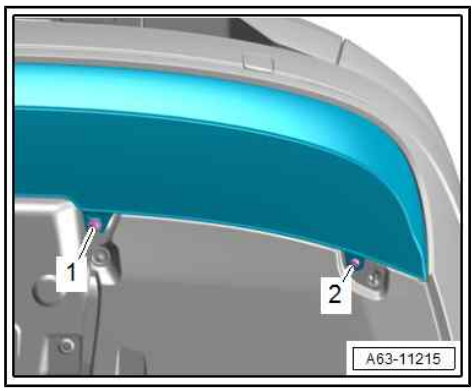
DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

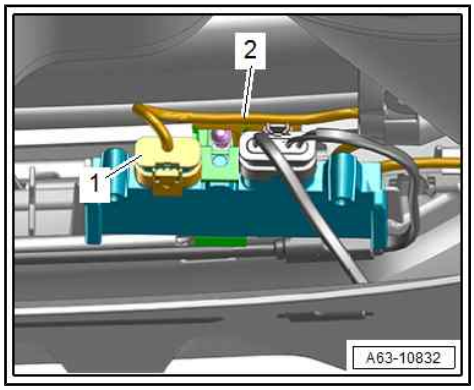
- **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**
- **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**

Removing

- Unscrew nuts -1- and bolt -2-.
- Remove underbody trim (rear) ⇒ page 641 .

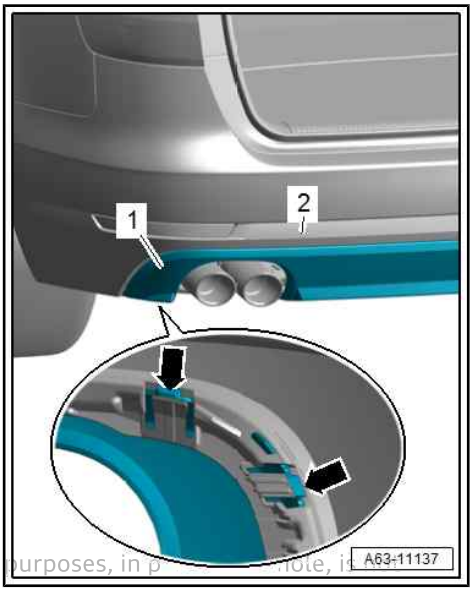


- If fitted, unplug electrical connector -1-.
- Move electrical wiring harness -2- clear.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Release fasteners -arrows- and pull base plate -1- off bumper cover -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Press base plate for bumper cover into bumper cover until it engages audibly.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 428

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p... note, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.7.2 Removing and installing base plate for bumper cover - A4 from model year 2019 onwards

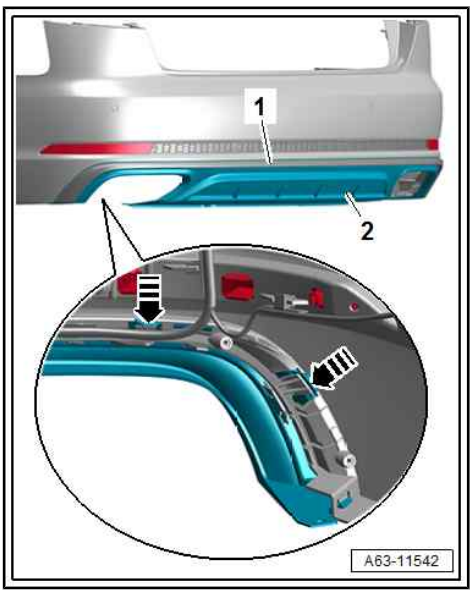
DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

– **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**
– **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**

Removing

– Remove mounting for tailpipe trim ⇒ page 458 .
– Release fasteners -arrows- and pull base plate -1- off bumper cover -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Press base plate for bumper cover into bumper cover until it engages audibly.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 from model year 2019 onwards”, page 431

2.7.3 Removing and installing base plate for bumper cover - RS4, RS5

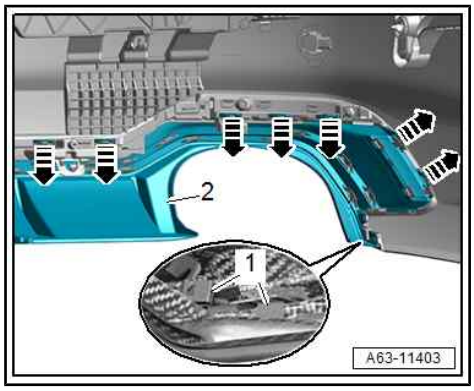
Removing

– Remove bumper cover ⇒ page 444 .

– If fitted, remove rear lid power opening control unit ⇒ page 104 .

– Prise off retaining clips -1-.

– Release fasteners -arrows- and pull base plate -2- off bumper cover.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Press base plate for bumper cover into bumper cover until it engages audibly.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1.7 Exploded view - bumper cover, RS 4, RS 5”, page 439

2.8 Removing and installing bumper cover mounting

⇒ “2.8.1 Removing and installing bumper cover mounting (centre)”, page 450

⇒ “2.8.2 Removing and installing bumper cover mounting (top)”, page 451

⇒ “2.8.3 Removing and installing bumper cover mounting (side)”, page 451

2.8.1 Removing and installing bumper cover mounting (centre)

Removing

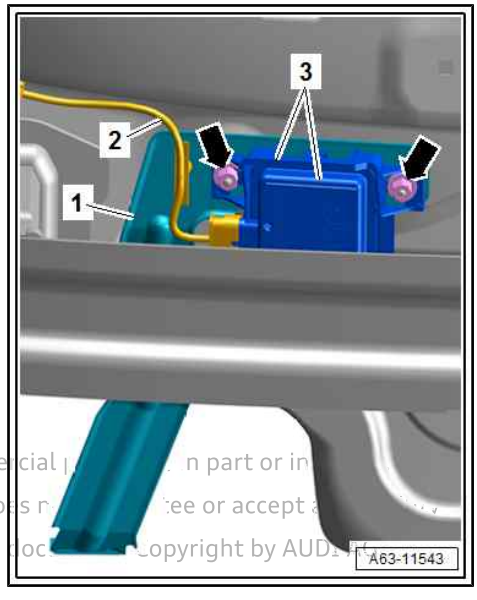
– Remove bumper cover (rear) ⇒ page 444 .

– Remove nuts -arrows-.

– Depending on equipment version: Move electrical wiring harness -2- clear.

– Remove bracket with garage door operation control unit -3- and place it to side with electrical connector attached.

– Remove bumper cover mounting -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 from model year 2019 onwards”, page 431

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p n part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG do s r ee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this oc opyright by AUDI

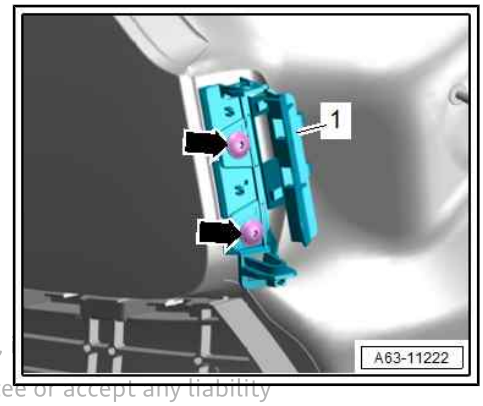
2.8.2 Removing and installing bumper cover mounting (top)

Removing

– Remove bumper cover ⇒ page 444 .

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Detach mounting (top) -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 428

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.8.3 Removing and installing bumper cover mounting (side)

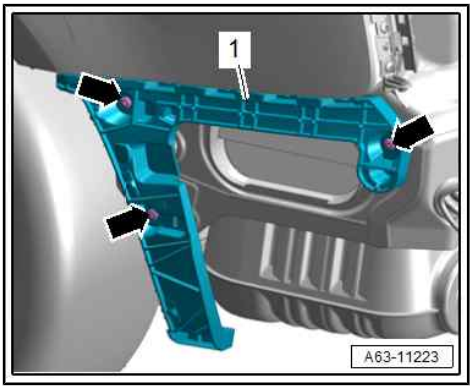
Removing

– Remove bumper cover (rear) ⇒ page 444 .

– Right side: Move drain hose for tank flap unit clear at mounting -1-.

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Detach mounting (side).



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

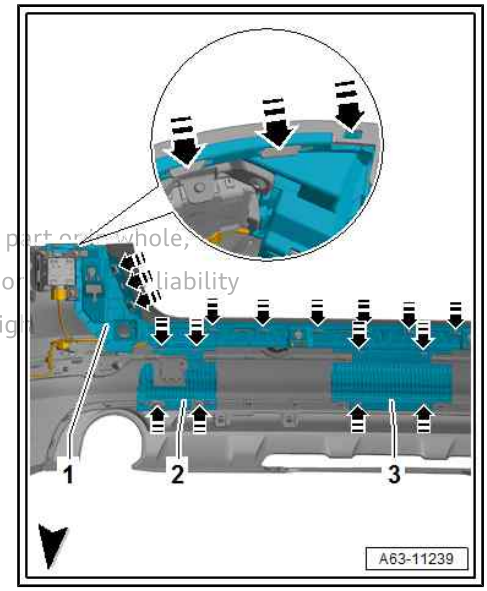
◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 428

2.9 Removing and installing closure plate

Removing

– Remove bumper cover ⇒ page 444 .

– Release fasteners -arrows- and detach closure plate -1-.



• If closure plate is to be renewed, also remove the following components:

◆ Remove lane change assist control unit - J769- and lane change assist control unit 2 - J770- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Overview - lane change assist .

◆ Remove bracket for lane change assist control unit.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert closure plate -1- in bumper cover and press it on so that all retaining tabs engage properly in bumper cover.

2.10 Removing and installing trim strip for bumper cover

⇒ “2.10.1 Removing and installing trim strip for bumper cover - A4 up to model year 2018”, page 452

⇒ “2.10.2 Removing and installing trim strip for bumper cover - A4 from model year 2019 onwards”, page 453

⇒ “2.10.3 Removing and installing trim strip for bumper cover - A5 ”, page 453

⇒ “2.10.4 Removing and installing trim strip for bumper cover - S5”, page 454

⇒ “2.10.5 Removing and installing trim strip for bumper cover - RS 4, RS 5”, page 455

2.10.1 Removing and installing trim strip for bumper cover - A4 up to model year 2018

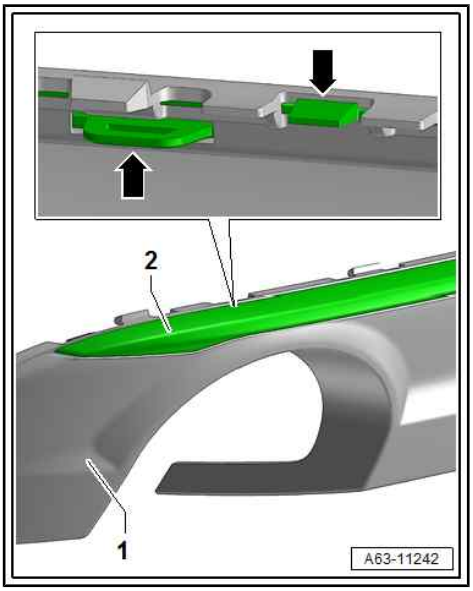
Removing

– Remove base plate for bumper cover ⇒ page 448 .

– Release fasteners -arrows- and detach trim strip -2- from bumper cover.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



2.10.2 Removing and installing trim strip for bumper cover - A4 from model year 2019 onwards

Removing

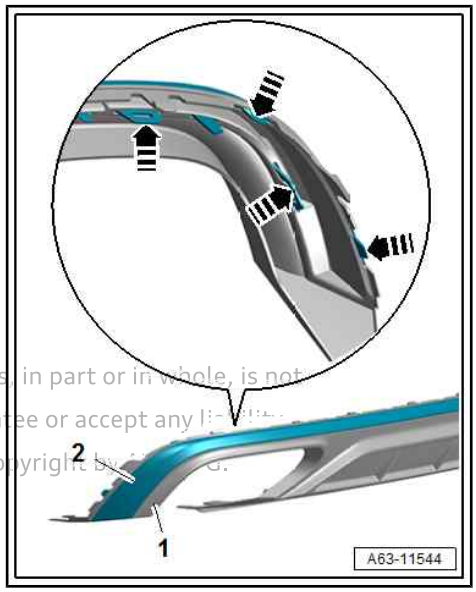
– Remove base plate for bumper cover ⇒ page 448 .

– Release fasteners -arrows- and detach trim strip -2- from base plate -1- for bumper cover.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert trim strip in base plate for bumper cover and press it on so that all retaining tabs engage properly.



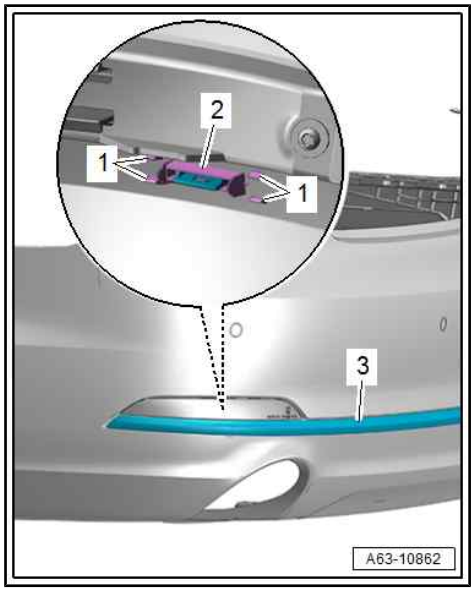
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.10.3 Removing and installing trim strip for bumper cover - A5

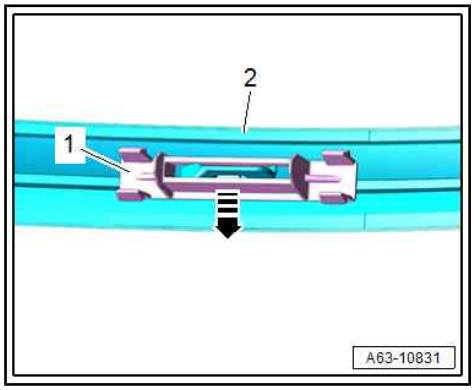
Removing

– Vehicles with TDI engine: Remove bumper cover ⇒ page 444 .

– Release fasteners -1- and pull trim strip -3- together with retaining clip -2- off bumper cover.



– Release fastener -arrow- and detach retaining clip -1- from trim strip -2-.



Installing

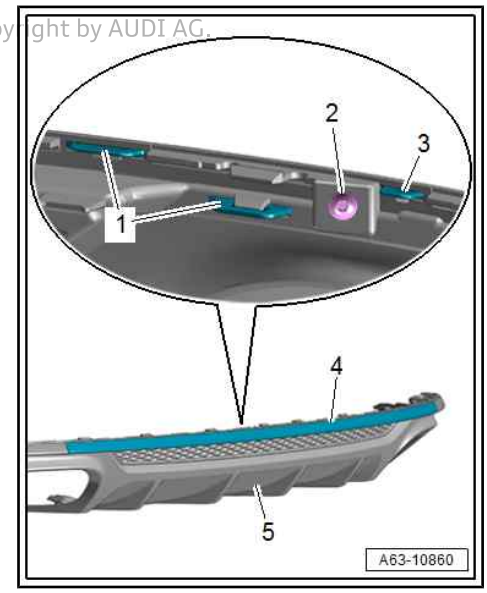
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

2.10.4 Removing and installing trim strip for bumper cover - S5

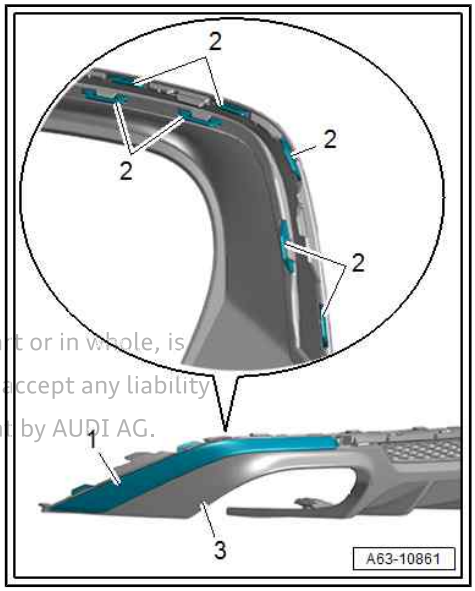
Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove base plate for bumper cover ⇒ page 448 .
– Remove bolt -2-.
– Release fasteners -1, 3- and detach trim strip (centre) -4- from bumper cover -5-.



– Release fasteners -2- and detach trim strip (side) -1- from bumper cover -3-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

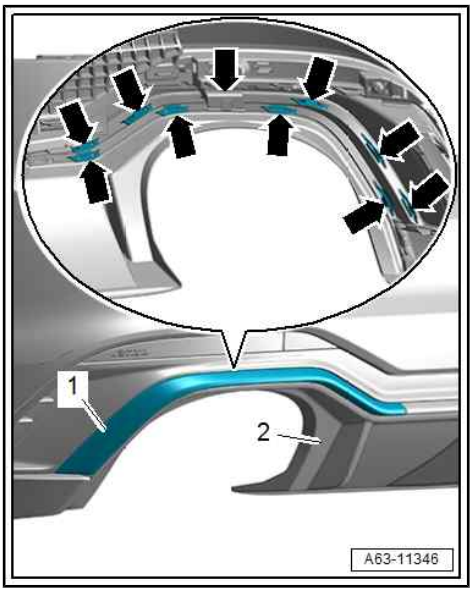
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.10.5 Removing and installing trim strip for bumper cover - RS 4, RS 5

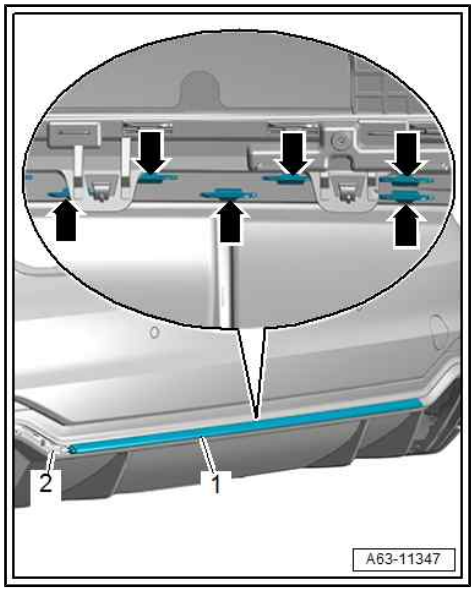
Removing

– Remove bumper cover ⇒ page 444 .

– Release fasteners -arrows- and pull trim strip (side) -1- off base plate for bumper cover -2-.



– Release fasteners -arrows- and pull trim strip (centre) -1- off base plate for bumper cover -2-.



Note:

If trim strips cannot be removed as described, base plate for bumper cover must be removed ⇒ page 448 .

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

2.11 Removing and installing bumper cover trim

⇒ “2.11.1 Removing and installing bumper cover trim - A4 S line”, page 456

⇒ “2.11.2 Removing and installing bumper cover trim - A5 S line, S5”, page 457

⇒ “2.11.3 Removing and installing bumper cover trim - RS 4, RS 5”, page 457

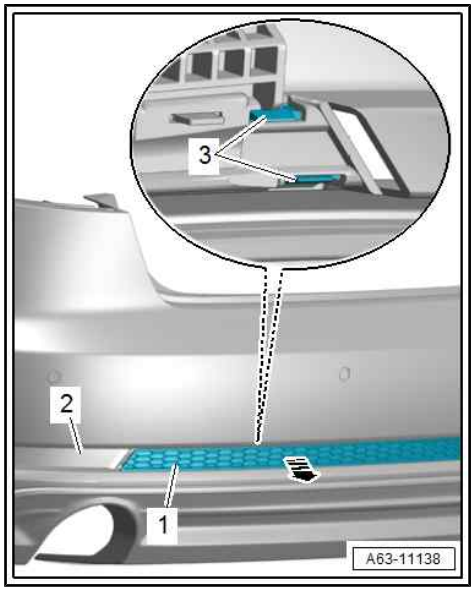
2.11.1 Removing and installing bumper cover trim - A4 S line

Removing

– Remove bumper cover (rear) ⇒ page 444 .

– Remove reflector ⇒ page 459 .

– Release fasteners -3- and detach trim -1- from bumper cover -2- -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

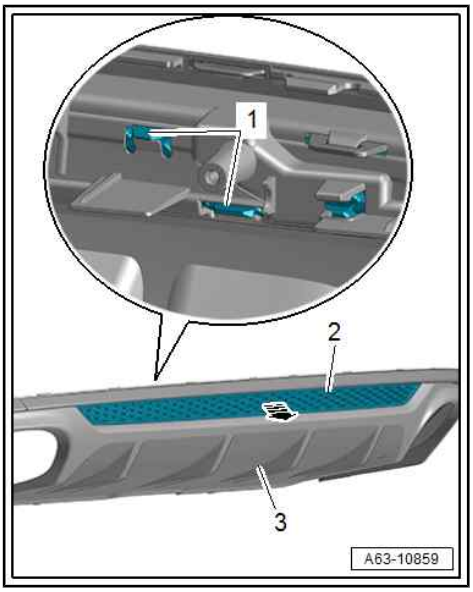
2.11.2 Removing and installing bumper cover trim - A5 S line, S5

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove base plate for bumper cover ⇒ page 448 .

– Release fasteners -1- and detach trim -2- from bumper cover -3- -arrow-.



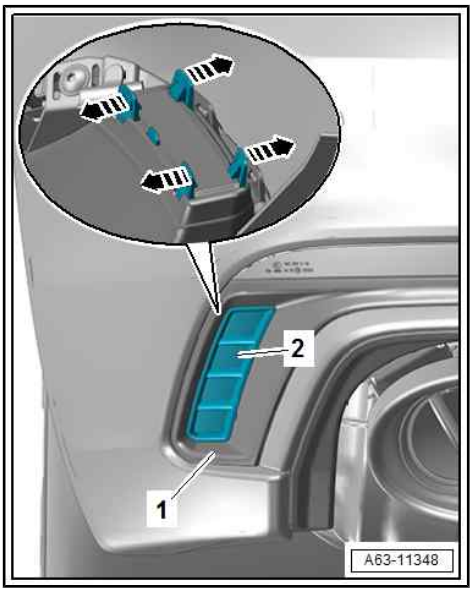
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

2.11.3 Removing and installing bumper cover trim - RS 4, RS 5

Removing

– Release fasteners -arrows- and pull trim -2- off base plate for bumper cover -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

2.12 Removing and installing tailpipe trim

⇒ “2.12.1 Removing and installing tailpipe trim - A4 from model year 2019 onwards”, page 458

⇒ “2.12.2 Removing and installing mounting for tailpipe trim - A4 from model year 2019 onwards”, page 458

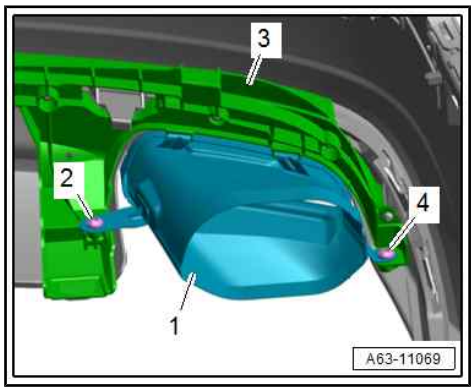
2.12.1 Removing and installing tailpipe trim - A4 from model year 2019 onwards

Removing

– Remove bumper cover (rear) ⇒ page 444 .

– Remove bolts -2, 4-.

– Detach tailpipe trim -1- inwards from mounting -3-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 from model year 2019 onwards”, page 431

2.12.2 Removing and installing mounting for tailpipe trim - A4 from model year 2019 onwards

Removing

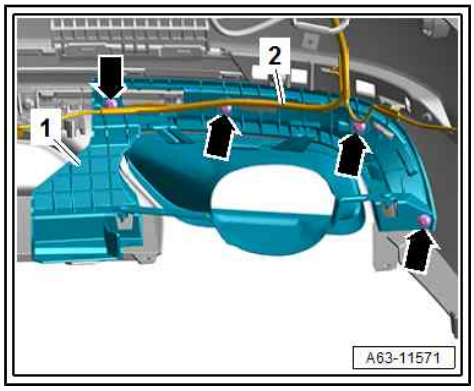
– Remove bumper cover (rear) ⇒ page 444 .

– Depending on equipment version: Remove rear lid power opening control unit - J938- ⇒ page 104 .

– Move electrical wiring harness -2- clear.

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Detach mounting -1- from bumper cover.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 from model year 2019 onwards”, page 431

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.13 Removing and installing reflectors

⇒ “2.13.1 Removing and installing reflector”, page 459

⇒ “2.13.2 Removing and installing reflector - A4 allroad”, page 459

⇒ “2.13.3 Removing and installing reflector (small) - RS 4, RS 5”, page 460

2.13.1 Removing and installing reflector

Removing

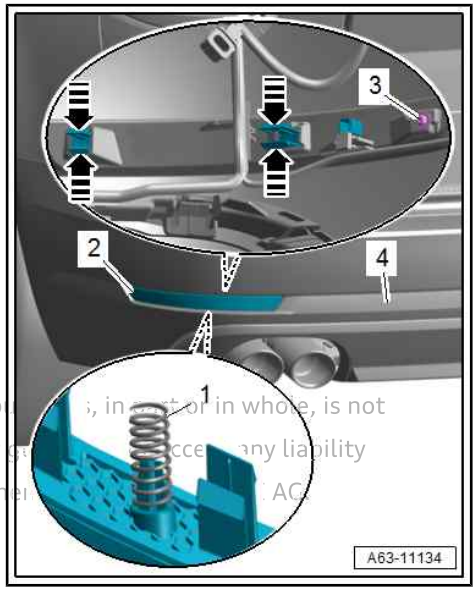
– Vehicles with TDI engine, right side: Remove bumper cover ⇒ page 444 .

– RS 4, RS 5: Remove bumper cover ⇒ page 444 .

– Remove bolt -3-.

– Release fasteners -arrows-.

– Press reflector -2- out of bumper cover -4-.



Note:

The force of the spring -1- will also push out the reflector.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - bumper cover”, page 428

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu ; in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g cce any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this docume AG

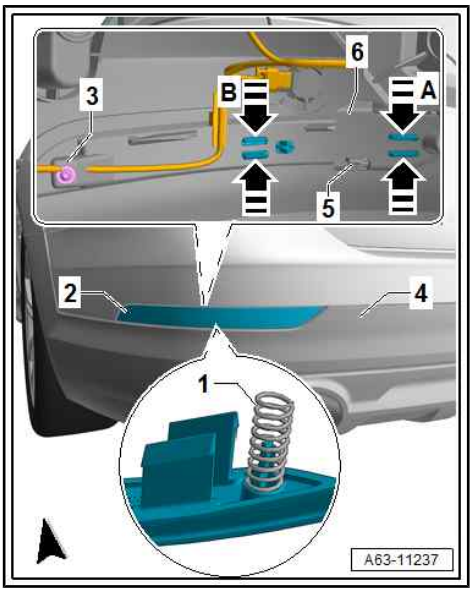
2.13.2 Removing and installing reflector - A4 allroad

Removing

– Remove bolt -3-.

– Release fasteners -5, arrows A- and open rear lid -6-.

– Release fasteners -arrows B- and press reflector -2- off bumper cover -4-.



Note:

The force of the spring -1- will also push out the reflector.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.4 Exploded view - bumper cover, A4 allroad”, page 434

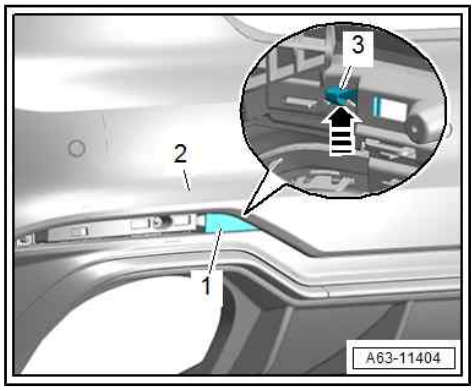
2.13.3 Removing and installing reflector (small) - RS 4, RS 5

Removing

– Remove reflector ⇒ page 459 .

– Release fastener -3- -arrow-.

– Press reflector -1- out of bumper cover -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

2.14 Removing and installing impact bar

⇒ "2.14.1 Removing and installing impact bar - vehicles without towing bracket", page 460

⇒ "2.14.2 Removing and installing impact bar - vehicles with towing bracket", page 461

2.14.1 Removing and installing impact bar - vehicles without towing bracket

DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

– **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**

– **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 441 .

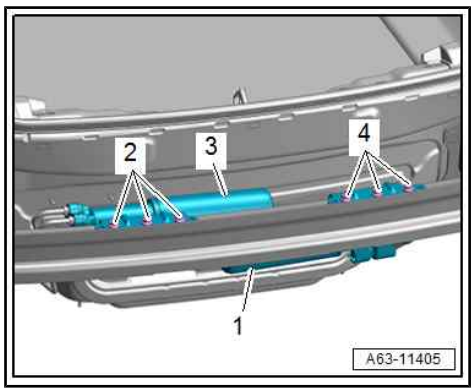
Removing

– Remove bumper cover (rear) ⇒ page 444 .

RS 4, RS 5:

– Remove bolts -2, 4-.

– Tie bracket with central valve -1, 3- up to body.



Continued:

– Unscrew nut -2- and bolts -1 and 4-.

– Detach impact bar -3-.

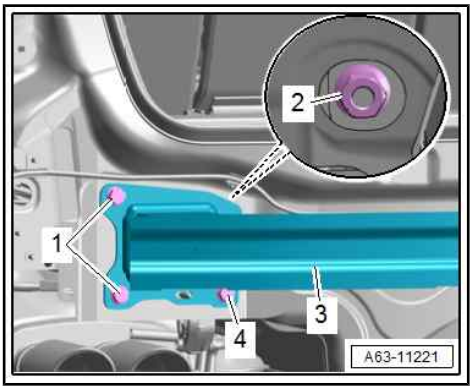
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ Fig. ""Impact bar - tightening torque and sequence"" , page 442

♦ ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 43 ; Dynamic Ride Control (DRC); Exploded view - central valve



2.14.2 Removing and installing impact bar - vehicles with towing bracket

DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

– If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.

– Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .

• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 441 .

• A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 462).

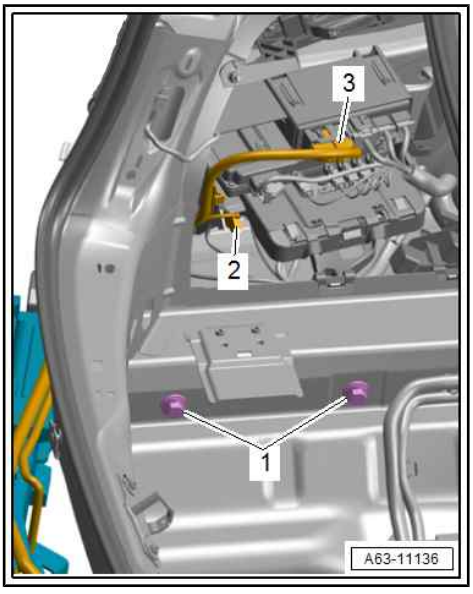
Removing

– Remove bumper cover (rear) ⇒ page 444 .

– Unplug electrical connector -3-, disconnect earth wire -2- and move them clear.

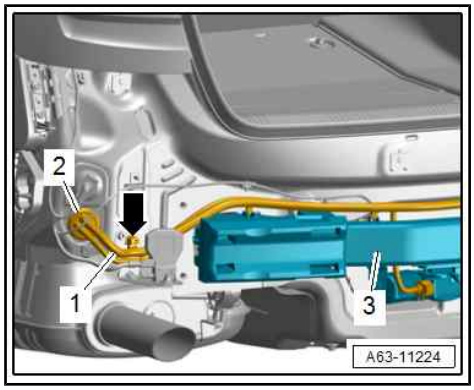
– If fitted, press lining for spare wheel well slightly to one side.

– Remove bolts -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Push grommet -2- through to outside.
– Move electrical wiring harnesses -1- clear -arrow- and guide out of body cut-out.
– Pull out impact bar -3- with the help of a second mechanic.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.3 Exploded view - impact bar”, page 441

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

64 – Glazing

1 Repair notes

⇒ “1.1 Minimum drying times for bonded windows”, page 463

⇒ “1.2 Repairing windows”, page 463

⇒ “1.3 Tools and materials required for installation and removal”, page 464

⇒ “1.4 Preparing undamaged windows for installation”, page 467

⇒ “1.5 Preparing new windows for installation”, page 468

⇒ “1.6 Preparing body flange for installation”, page 469

⇒ “1.7 Cleaning off adhesive sealant”, page 469

1.1 Minimum drying times for bonded windows

- For safety reasons, use only non-conductive 2-component adhesive with the designations listed below when installing the windscreen or rear window.
- You must NOT drive the vehicle until the minimum drying time has elapsed, as the vehicle is otherwise not safe to drive.
- During the minimum drying time the vehicle must be left standing on a level surface at room temperature (at least 15 °C).

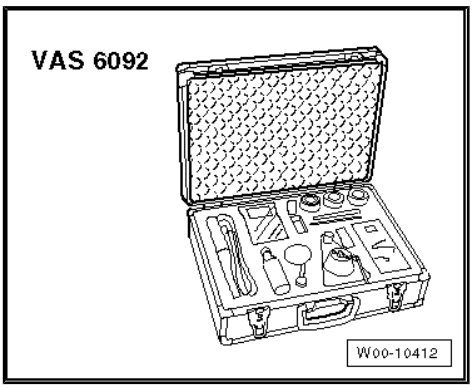
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Window	Adhesive	Minimum drying time (in hours)
Windscreen	2-component window adhesive set - D 004 660 M2-	2
Rear window	2-component window adhesive set - D 004 660 M2-	2
Side windows	1-component adhesive for side windows - D 169 300 M1-	6

1.2 Repairing windows

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Windscreen repair kit - VAS 1993- or -VAS 6092-



Windscreens damaged by stone chipping can be repaired using windscreen repair kit - VAS 6092- and resin, Talon - VAS 1993/2- .

- The damaged areas must not exceed a certain size and area, and must not be within the main field of vision.

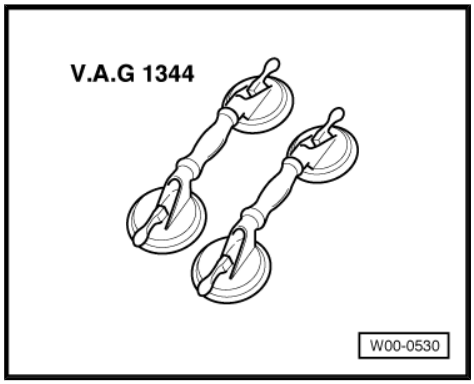
For detailed information, refer to the ⇒ instructions supplied with each kit.

Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction, copying or distribution for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

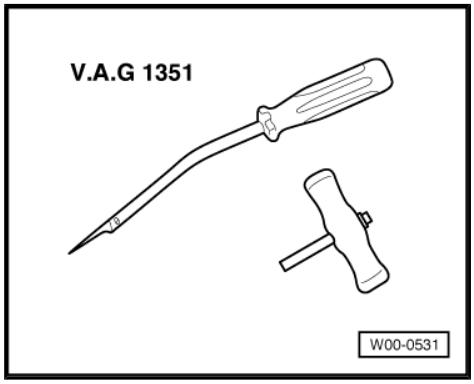
1.3 Tools and materials required for installation and removal

Special tools and workshop equipment required

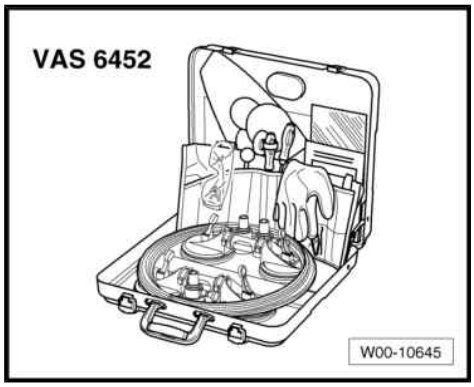
- Suction lifter - V.A.G 1344-



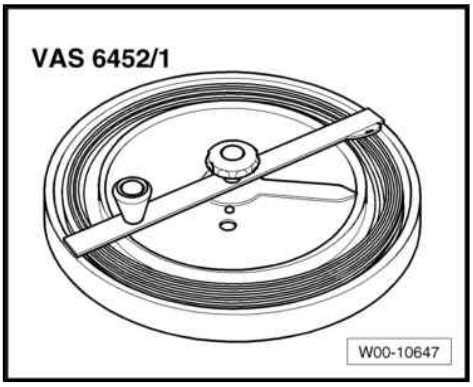
- Cutting tool - V.A.G 1351-



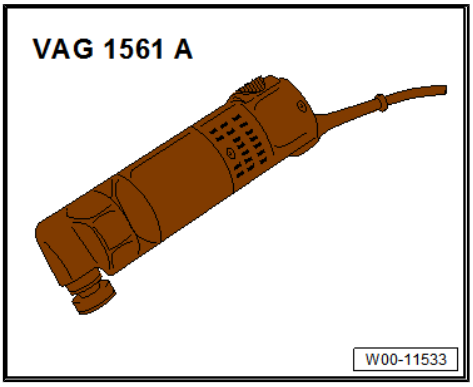
- Pull handle - V.A.G 1351/1-
- Removal kit for flush bonded windows - VAS 6452- or window removal set - VAS 861 001A-



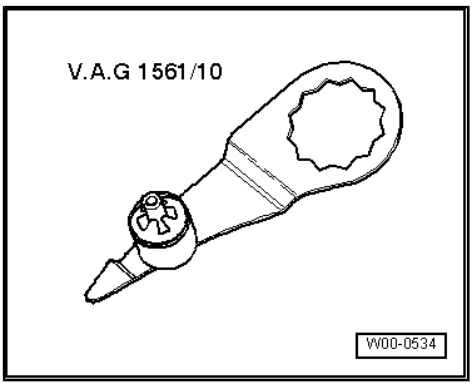
- Wire reel - VAS 6452/1-



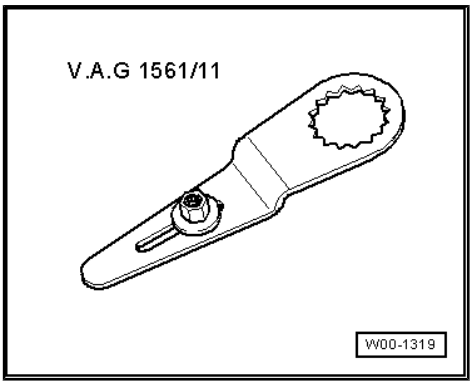
- Wire for removal kit - VAS 6452/2-
- Electric cutter - V.A.G 1561A-



- Blade (offset) - V.A.G 1561/10-

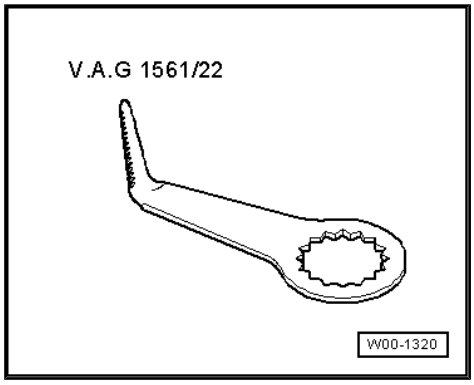


- Universal blade - V.A.G 1561/11-

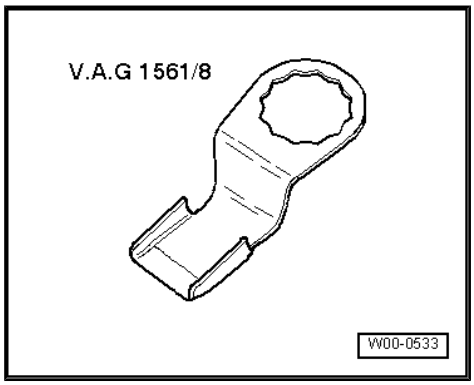


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

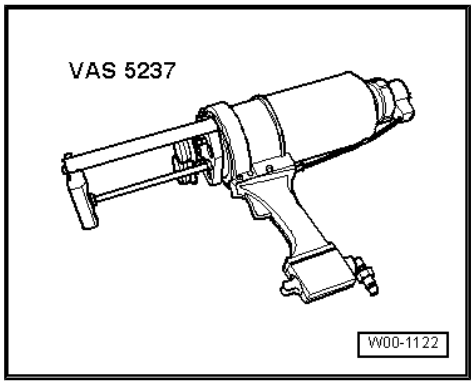
- Blade (L-shaped, 25.4 mm) - V.A.G 1561/22-



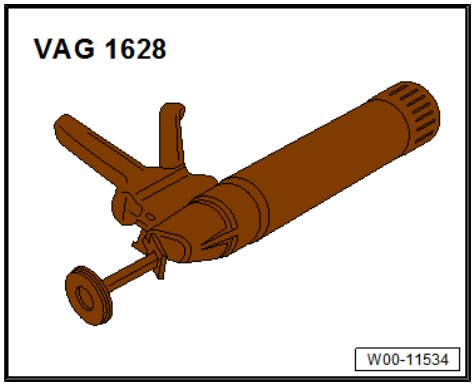
- Scraper (15 + 25 mm) - V.A.G 1561/7+8-



- Double cartridge gun - VAS 5237-

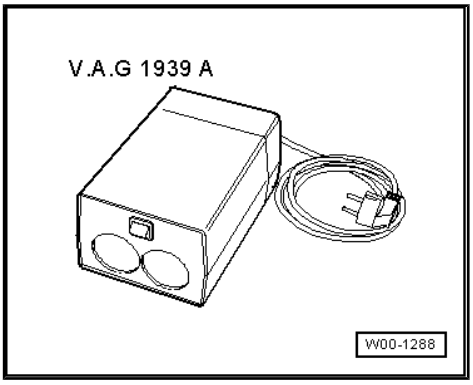


- Hand-cartridge gun - V.A.G 1628-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Cartridge heater - V.A.G 1939A-



Materials

- 2-component window adhesive set - D 004 660 M2- 3)
- 1-component adhesive for side windows - D 169 300 M1- 6)
- Primer - D 009 200 02-
- Applicator - D 009 500 25-
- Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-
- Adhesive remover - D 002 000 10-
- Cutting wire - 6452/2- / cutting cord - 357 853 999-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3) Note minimum drying time ⇒ page 463 .

4) To process this material use double cartridge gun - VAS 5237- .

5) Heat using cartridge heater - V.A.G 1939 A- according to manufacturer's instructions.

6) Small 180 ml cartridge for sealing and/or for use when the 400 ml double cartridge is not sufficient.

1.4 Preparing undamaged windows for installation

- The vehicle and window must be at room temperature.
- The adhesive bead must be free of dirt and grease.
- Just before installation, cut back adhesive bead for an even surface but do NOT remove it completely.
- Do not apply primer to adhesive bead and do not use cleaning solution.
- The window must be fitted within 15 minutes after applying the adhesive.

– Just before re-installing an undamaged window, use electric cutter - V.A.G 1561 A- and scraper (25 mm) - V.A.G 1561/8- to cut back the remaining adhesive on the window to give a smooth surface, but do NOT remove completely.

Note:

The remaining sealant is required as a base for better adhesion of the new adhesive.

- If the window is not bonded on immediately after the adhesive on the flange is cut back, the remaining material must be activated using activator for pre-coated windows - D 181 802 M1- . Flash-off time: 10 minutes

– Apply adhesive ⇒ page 468 .

1.5 Preparing new windows for installation

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

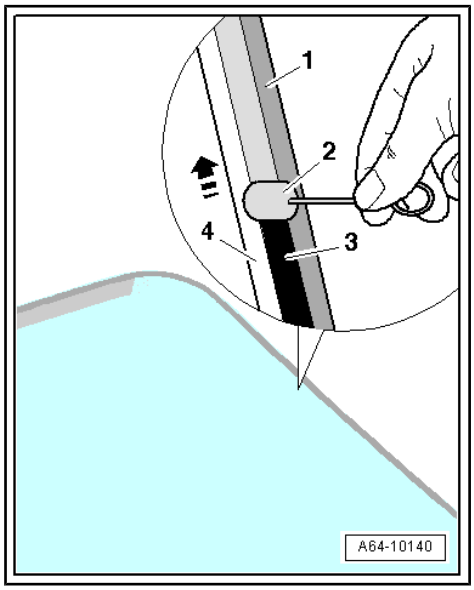
– Clean bonding surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

- The vehicle and window must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.
- The glass must always be primed before applying adhesive.
- The primer is conductive and must not come into contact with the bus bar, e.g. of the rear window heating.
- The window must be fitted within 15 minutes after applying the adhesive.

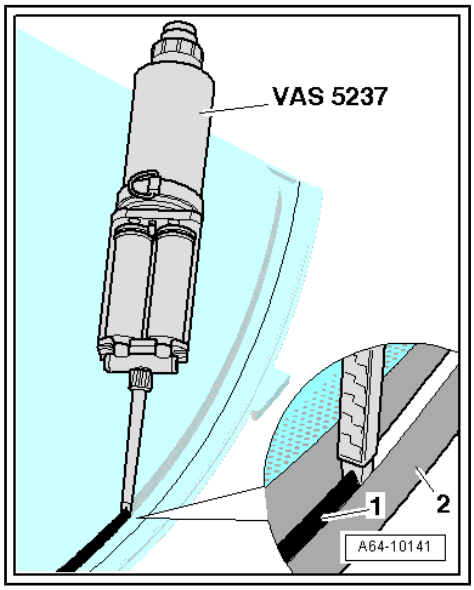
Applying primer:

– Use applicator -2- to apply primer - D 009 200 02- -3- evenly and in one movement onto window -4- beside moulding -1- and allow to flash off for 10 minutes.

- Start application with fully soaked felt.
- Primer width: 20 mm
- Apply primer centrally in relation to adhesive bead.
- Flash-off time: 10 minutes

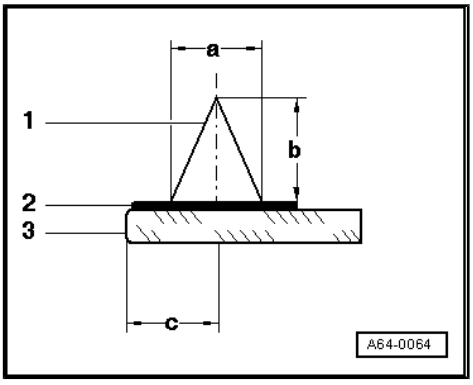


Applying adhesive:



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Apply adhesive -1- all around window -2-, as shown.



Dimensions for applying adhesive:

1 - Adhesive bead

2 - Primer

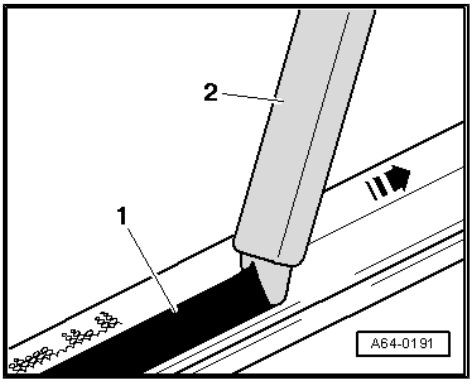
3 - Window glass

- Dimension -a- = 6.5 mm
- Dimension -b- = 10 mm
- Dimension -c-: note different distances from edge of window ⇒ page 471 , ⇒ page 499 , ⇒ page 479

Note:

The cross-section of the adhesive bead is determined by the size of the applicator nozzle opening and the rate of application.

– Apply full surface of nozzle -2- to window.



- Direction of application -arrow- for adhesive bead -1-.

– Windscreen or rear window glass must be installed in opening using two suction lifters.

- The glass must be fitted within 15 minutes; otherwise the adhesive properties of the adhesive will be impaired.

1.6 Preparing body flange for installation

- The vehicle must be at room temperature.
- The adhesive bead must be free of dirt and grease.
- Just before installation, cut back adhesive bead for an even surface but do NOT remove it completely.
- Do not apply primer to adhesive bead and do not use cleaning solution.

– Shortly before installing, use scraper (25 mm) - V.A.G 1561/8- to cut back remaining adhesive on flange for an even surface, but do NOT remove completely.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note:

The remaining sealant is required as a base for better adhesion of the new adhesive.

- If the window is not bonded on immediately after the adhesive on the flange is cut back, the remaining material must be activated using activator for pre-coated windows - D 181 802 M1- . Flash-off time: 10 minutes
- If body flange has been damaged, repaired or renewed, paintwork structure must be repaired and, if necessary, anti-corrosion measures must be taken ⇒ Audi Paintwork Guide . Clean treated area with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- , let it dry, and then apply primer - D 009 200 02- . Flash-off time: 10 minutes

1.7 Cleaning off adhesive sealant

We recommend using adhesive remover - D 002 000 10- for cleaning. Observe safety precautions when handling.

- When cleaning from inside the vehicle passenger compartment, make sure you do not exert outward pressure on the window you have just fitted.

Cleaning painted surfaces

– First clean painted surface with a dry cloth. Then clean off remaining adhesive sealant with adhesive remover - D 002 000 10- .

Cleaning plastic trim panels

– Allow adhesive to dry (approx. 1 hour) and then pull off.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Windscreen

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - windscreen”, page 471

⇒ “2.2 Removing and installing windscreen”, page 473

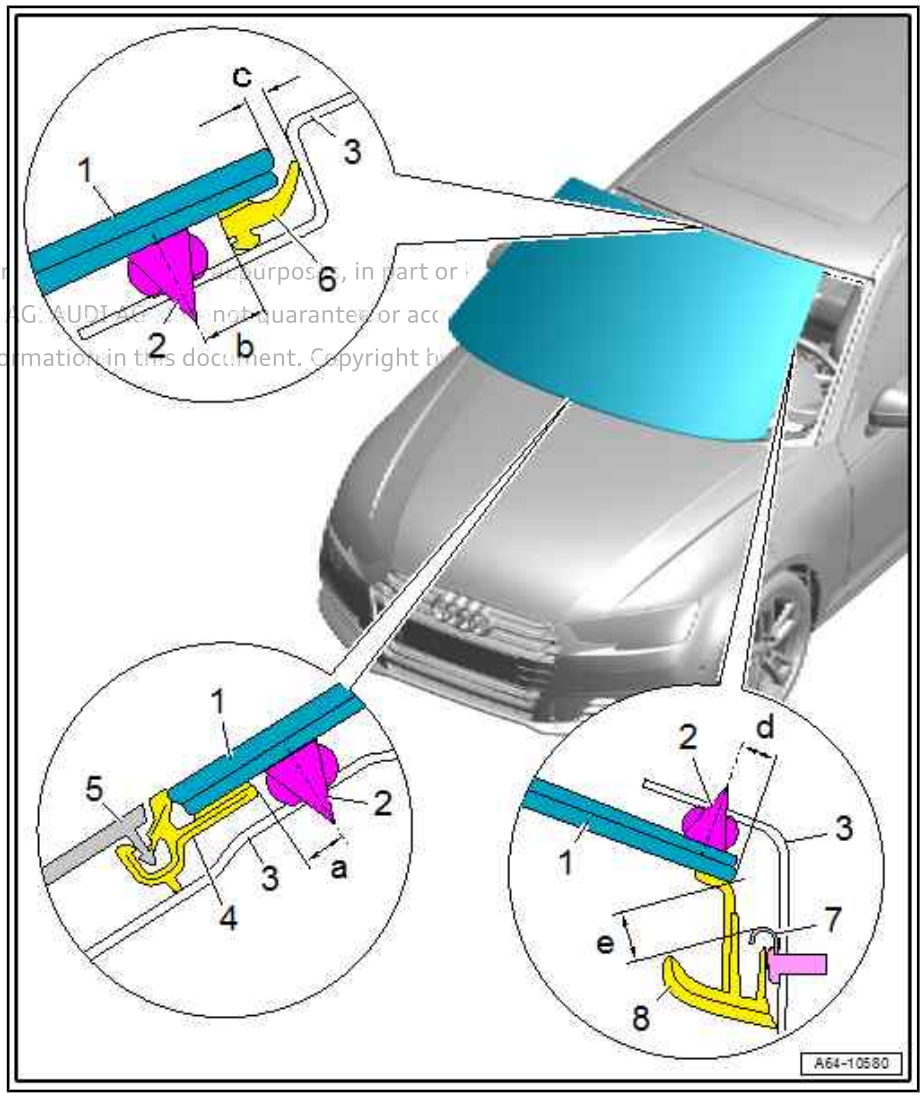
2.1 Exploded view - windscreen

⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - windscreen, A4, A5 Coupé, A5 Sportback”, page 471

⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - windscreen, A5 Cabriolet”, page 472

2.1.1 Exploded view - windscreen, A4, A5 Coupé, A5 Sportback

The following dimensions refer to distances between distinctive points. Mechanics must also pay attention to the routing of the original adhesive bead on the removed component.



1 - Windscreen

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 473
- ❑ Distance from roof: Dimension -c- = 2.5 mm
- ❑ Distance to A-pillars: Dimension -e- = at least 3 mm (align centrally if necessary)

2 - Adhesive bead

- ❑ Note minimum drying times ⇒ page 463
- ❑ Note differing distances from edge of windscreen:

A4:

- ♦ Dimension -a- = 7 mm
- ♦ Dimension -b- = 7.5 mm
- ♦ Dimension -d- = 9 mm

A5:

- ♦ Dimension -a- = 7.6 mm
- ♦ Dimension -b- = 7.2 mm
- ♦ Dimension -d- = 11.3 mm

- ❑ Thickness of adhesive bead(s) ⇒ page 468

3 - Windscreen frame

4 - Surround for plenum chamber cover

- ❑ Fixed component of windscreen
- ❑ With a new windscreen, protective beading must be pulled out before fitting cowl panel trim ⇒ page 472

5 - Plenum chamber cover

- ❑ Insert in surround -item 4-
- ❑ Allow adhesive to dry before pressing home

Protected by copyright. Copying for pr... purpos..., in part or ...
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or acc...
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright b...

6 - Trim section

- ❑ Renew if re-using an undamaged windscreen
- ❑ Mounting trim section (undamaged windscreen) ⇒ page 477

7 - Fastening strip

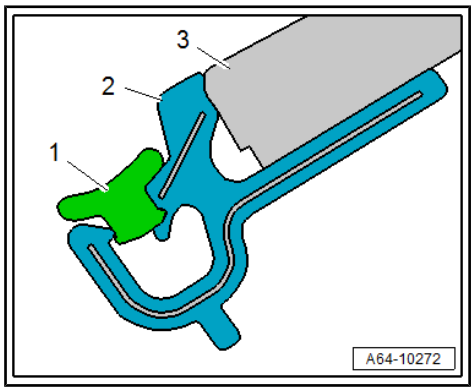
- ❑ For water deflector strip

8 - Water deflector strip

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 616

Removing protective beading

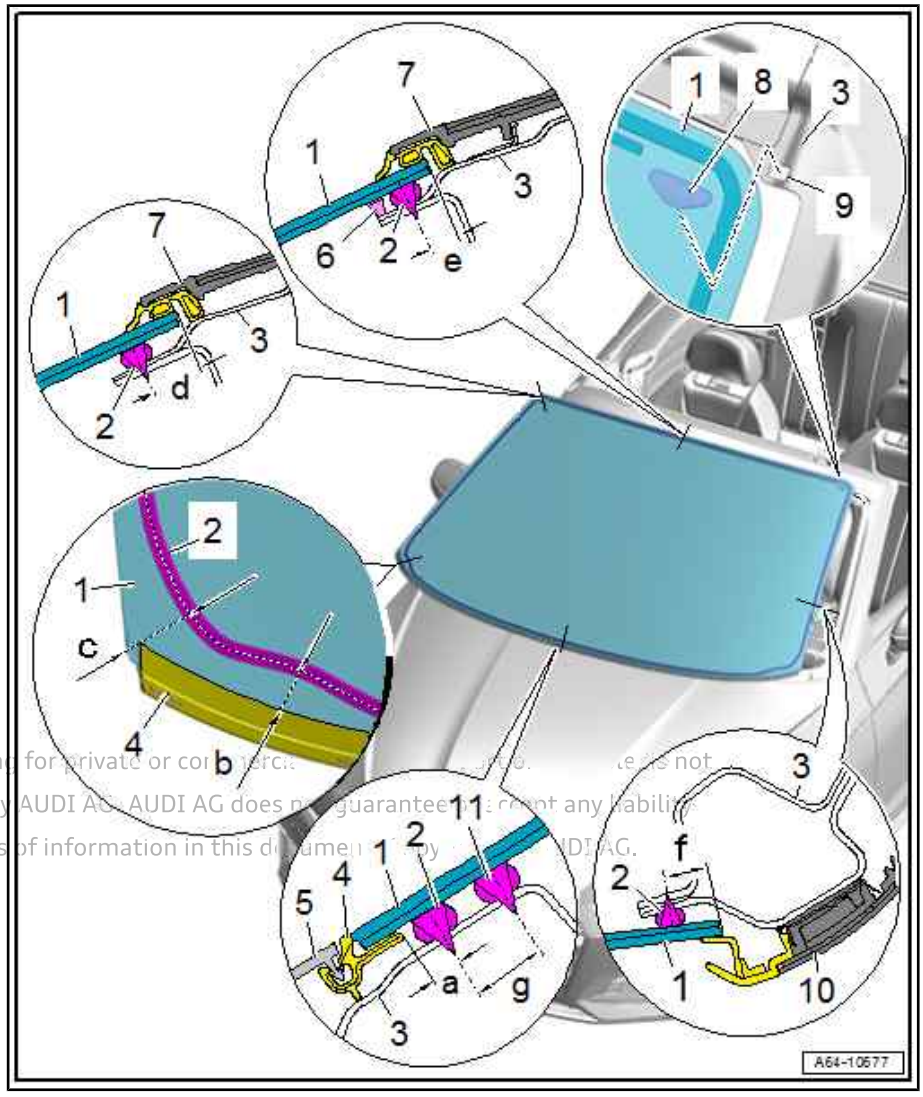
– Before fitting plenum chamber cover when new windscreen -3- is installed, first remove protective beading -1- from surround -2-.



2.1.2 Exploded view - windscreen, A5 Cabriolet

The following dimensions refer to distances between distinctive points. Mechanics must also pay attention to the routing of the original adhesive bead on the removed component.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Windscreen

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 473
- ❑ Align centrally between A-pillars

2 - Adhesive bead

- ❑ Note minimum drying times ⇒ page 463
- ❑ Note differing distances from edge of windscreen:

- ♦ Dimension -a- = 7.6 mm
- ♦ Dimension -b- = 29.6 mm
- ♦ Dimension -c- = 42.3 mm
- ♦ Dimension -d- = 8.8 mm
- ♦ Dimension -e- = 8.6 mm
- ♦ Dimension -f- = 16.2 mm

- ❑ Thickness of adhesive bead(s) ⇒ page 468

3 - Windscreen frame

4 - Surround for plenum chamber cover

- ❑ Fixed component of windscreen
- ❑ With a new windscreen, protective beading must be pulled out before fitting cowl panel trim ⇒ page 472

5 - Plenum chamber cover

- ❑ Insert in surround -item 4-
- ❑ Allow adhesive to dry before pressing home

6 - Spacer

7 - Trim for windscreen frame

8 - Locating pin

- ❑ 2x

9 - Locating hole

10 - Side trim for windscreen frame

11 - Adhesive bead

- ❑ Note minimum drying times ⇒ page 463
- ❑ Country-specific version
- ❑ It is important to ensure that no air is trapped between adhesive beads -2- and -11-

- ♦ Dimension -g- = 12 mm
  - ❑ Length of adhesive bead same as previous bead
  - ❑ Thickness of adhesive bead(s) ⇒ page 468

2.2 Removing and installing windscreen

- Observe repair instructions ⇒ page 463 .

- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 477).
- Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary ⇒ page 478 .
- Tools and materials required for installation and removal ⇒ page 464 .

Removing

– A4, A5 Coupé, A5 Sportback: Remove water deflector strip ⇒ page 616 .

– Remove plenum chamber cover ⇒ page 35 .

– Remove sun visors and centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Equipment; Exploded view - sun visors .

– A5 Cabriolet: Remove windscreen frame trim ⇒ page 589 .

– Remove interior mirror ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 68 ; Interior mirror; Removing and installing interior mirror .

– Remove rain and light sensor ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Windscreen wiper system; Removing and installing rain and light sensor .

– Remove A-pillar trim (left and right) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing A-pillar trim .

– Unplug any electrical connectors.

CAUTION

Risk of injury to hands and eyes due to glass splinters.

Danger of cutting yourself.

– Put on safety goggles.

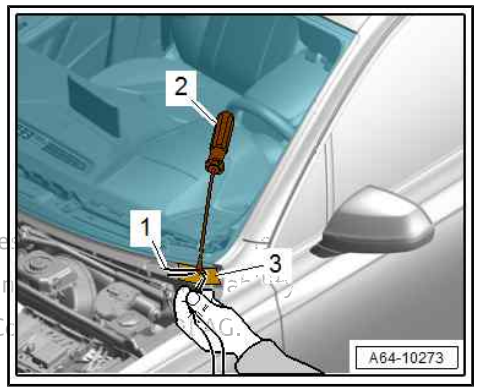
– Put on protective gloves.

– Use wire reel - VAS 6452/1- to reel off about 6.5 metres of cutting wire (corresponding to 6 turns) and cut off.

– Mask over body flange at bottom with adhesive tape -1- to avoid damage at point where awl is pushed through.

– Pierce adhesive bead in this area with awl -2- from inside to outside.

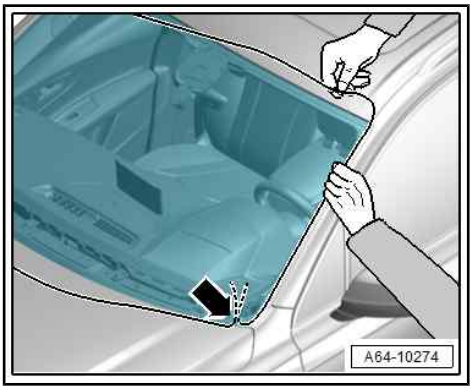
– Thread both ends of cutting wire -3- into awl and pull through to inside.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. C
AG.

– Position cutting wire under glass all around windscreen.

• The wire ends must not be twisted at the point where they pass through the adhesive bead -arrow-.

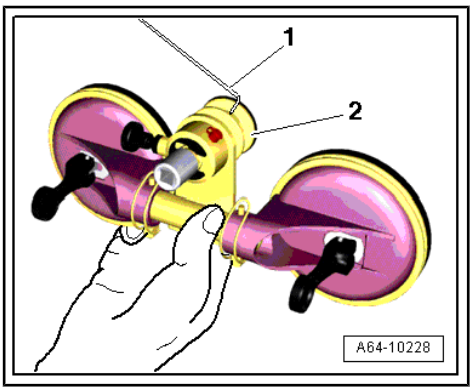


– Attach both reels to inside of windscreen.

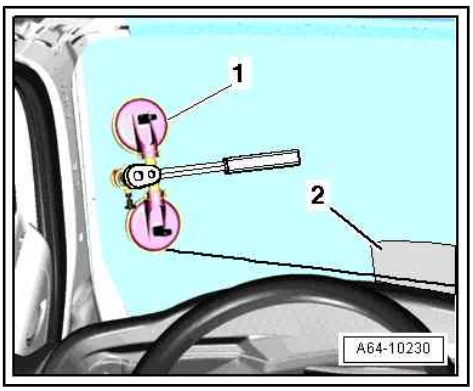
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG do
with respect to the correctness of information in this



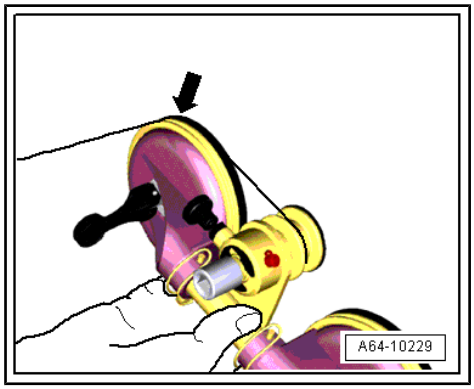
– Insert end of cutting wire -1- into reel -2-.



– Tension cutting wire and insert protective film -2- between dash panel and cutting wire.

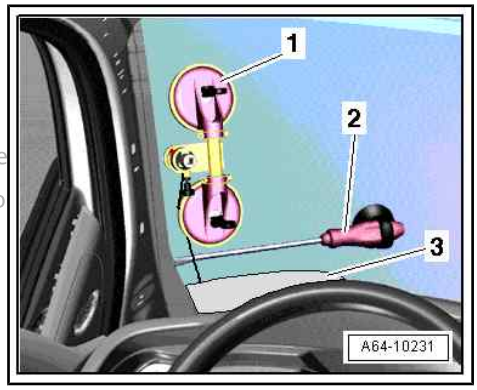


– Cut clear the first area. While doing so, cutting wire is guided into integrated idler pulley -arrow- on reel.

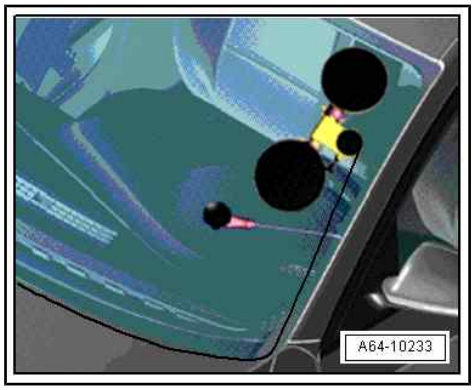


– Additionally insert guide awl -2- into adhesive bead and attach it to windscreen using suction pad so that cutting wire runs along windscreen as close to the glass as possible.
– Adjust protective film -3- as necessary with length of wire and continue cutting clear using reel -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG do
with respect to the correctness of information in this



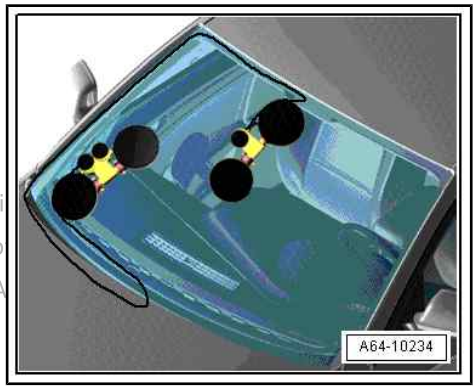
– Adjust reel and guide awl, and cut clear area at A-pillar.
– Move reel and guide awl to approx. centre of windscreen.



– Cut windscreen clear approx. to centre.

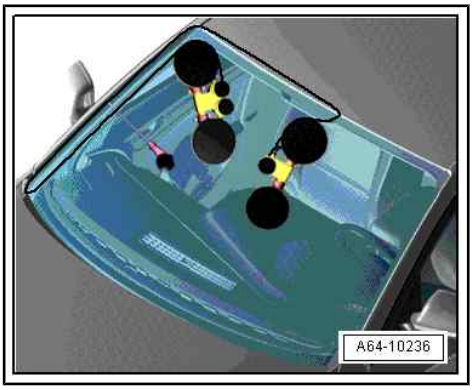


– Use second reel to cut bottom area of windscreen clear.

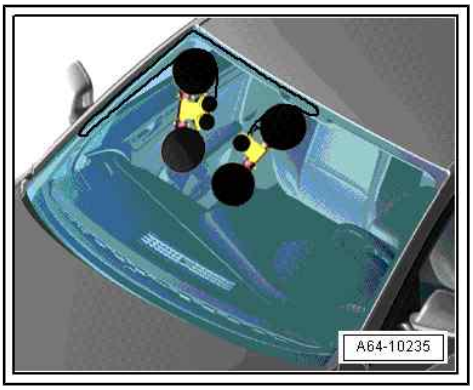


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or i
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accep
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by A

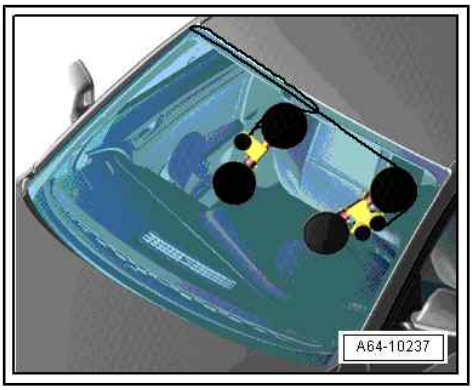
– Move reel up and insert guide awl.



– Cut windscreen clear upwards along A-pillar.



– Adjust reel over centre of windscreen, adjust first reel and cut windscreen fully clear at top.
– Use suction lifters -V.A.G 1344- to take windscreen out of opening.



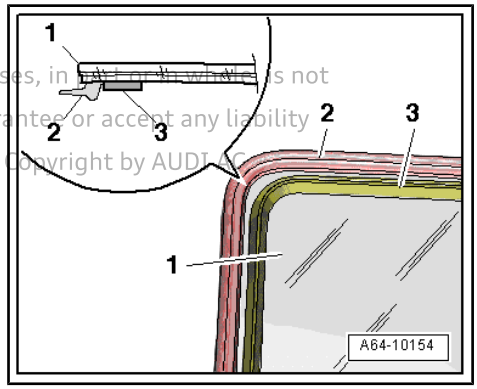
Installing

– Prepare undamaged glass for installation ⇒ page 467 .

A4, A5 Coupé, A5 Sportback: Mounting trim section (undamaged windscreen):

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Before installing new trim section, remove remnants of old trim section -2- from windscreen -1- using a commercially available glass scraper.



Note:

The remaining material from the old windscreen adhesive bead -3- can be used as an installation marking for the new trim section.

– Prepare new glass for installation ⇒ page 468 .

– Prepare body flange for installation ⇒ page 469 .

– Using two suction lifters, insert windscreen in opening and align centrally.

• A4, A5 Coupé, A5 Sportback: Distance from edge of windscreen to roof frame ⇒ Item 1 (page 471)

• A5 Cabriolet: Distance from edge of windscreen to roof frame ⇒ Item 1 (page 473)

• Secure windscreen to roof at top with adhesive tape.

– Pull protective strip out of windscreen surround before fitting plenum chamber cover ⇒ page 472 .

• Note minimum drying times ⇒ page 463 .

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary:

– Equipment version with front camera for driver assist systems: Re-calibrate camera ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 44 ; Front camera for driver assist systems; Calibrating front camera for driver assist systems .

• Note conditions under which it is necessary to calibrate front camera for driver assist systems.

– Equipment version with head-up display: Calibrate control unit for head-up display ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90 ; Dash panel insert; Calibrating control unit for head-up display .

• Note conditions under which it is necessary to calibrate control unit for head-up display.

3 Rear window

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - rear window”, page 479

⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing rear window”, page 481

3.1 Exploded view - rear window

⇒ “3.1.1 Exploded view - rear window, A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé”, page 479

⇒ “3.1.2 Exploded view - rear window, A4 Avant”, page 480

⇒ “3.1.3 Exploded view - rear window, A5 Sportback”, page 480

3.1.1 Exploded view - rear window, A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé

The following dimensions refer to distances between distinctive points. Mechanics must also pay attention to the routing of the original adhesive bead on the removed component.

1 - Rear window

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 481
- ❑ Distance from roof: dimension -a- = 2 mm
- ❑ Distance to D-pillars: dimension -d- = 3 mm (align centrally if necessary)

2 - Adhesive bead

- ❑ Note minimum drying times ⇒ page 463
- ❑ Note differing distances from edge of window:

A4:

- Dimension -b- = 15.5 mm
- Dimension -c- = 14.5 mm
- Dimension -e- = 27.5 mm

A5:

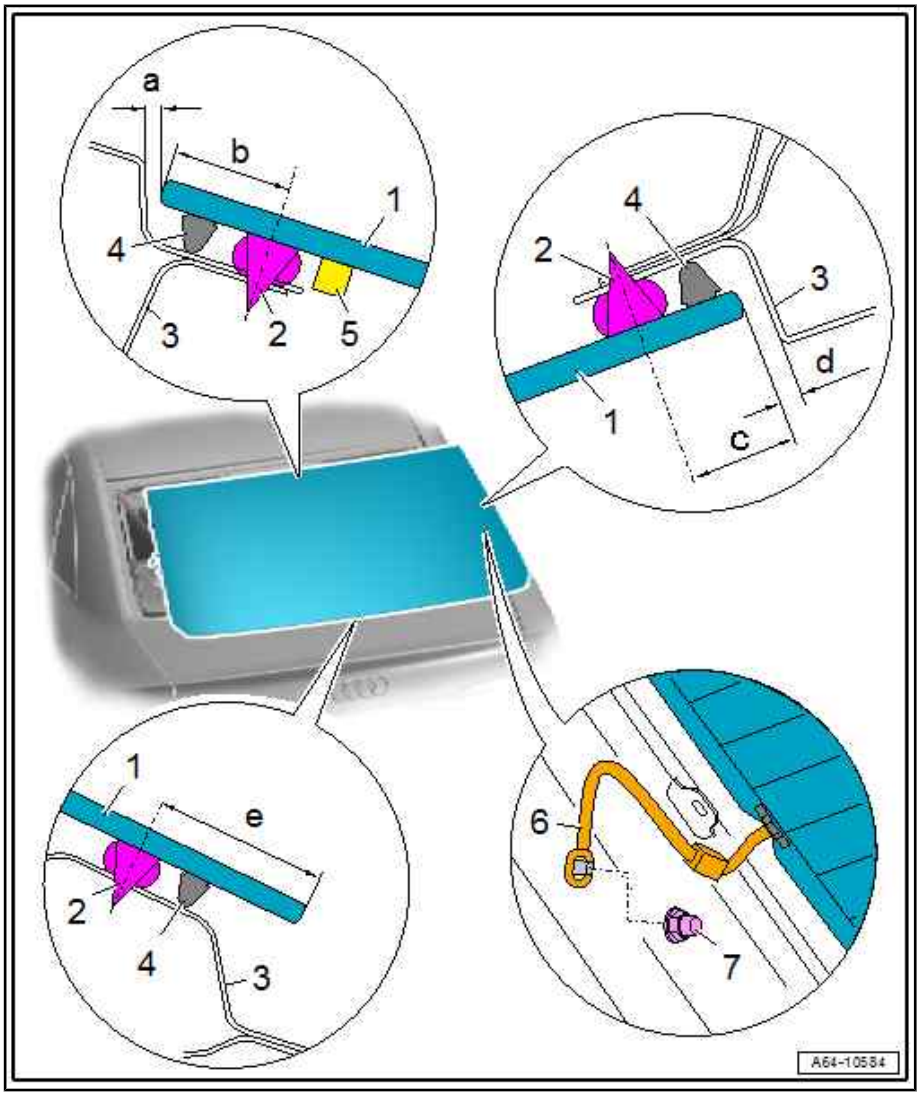
- Dimension -b- = 17.7 mm
- Dimension -c- = 8.1 mm
- Dimension -e- = 29.7 mm

- ❑ Thickness of adhesive bead(s) ⇒ page 468

3 - Rear window frame

4 - Spacers

- ❑ 8x
- ❑ Position at marks made on ceramic band



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 - Foam strip

6 - Earth wire

7 - Nut

- ❑ 9 Nm

3.1.2 Exploded view - rear window, A4 Avant

The following dimensions refer to distances between distinctive points. Mechanics must also pay attention to the routing of the original adhesive bead on the removed component.

1 - Rear window

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 481
- ❑ Distance to rear lid at top: dimension -b- = 2 mm
- ❑ Align so that spacing is equal on both sides

2 - Adhesive bead

- ❑ Note minimum drying times ⇒ page 463
- ❑ Note differing distances from edge of window:

- Dimension -a- = 48.5 mm
- Dimension -c- = 2 mm
- Dimension -d- = 7.5 mm

- ❑ Thickness of adhesive bead(s) ⇒ page 468

3 - Rear window frame

- ❑ In rear lid

4 - Spacers

- ❑ 8x
- ❑ Position at marks made on ceramic band

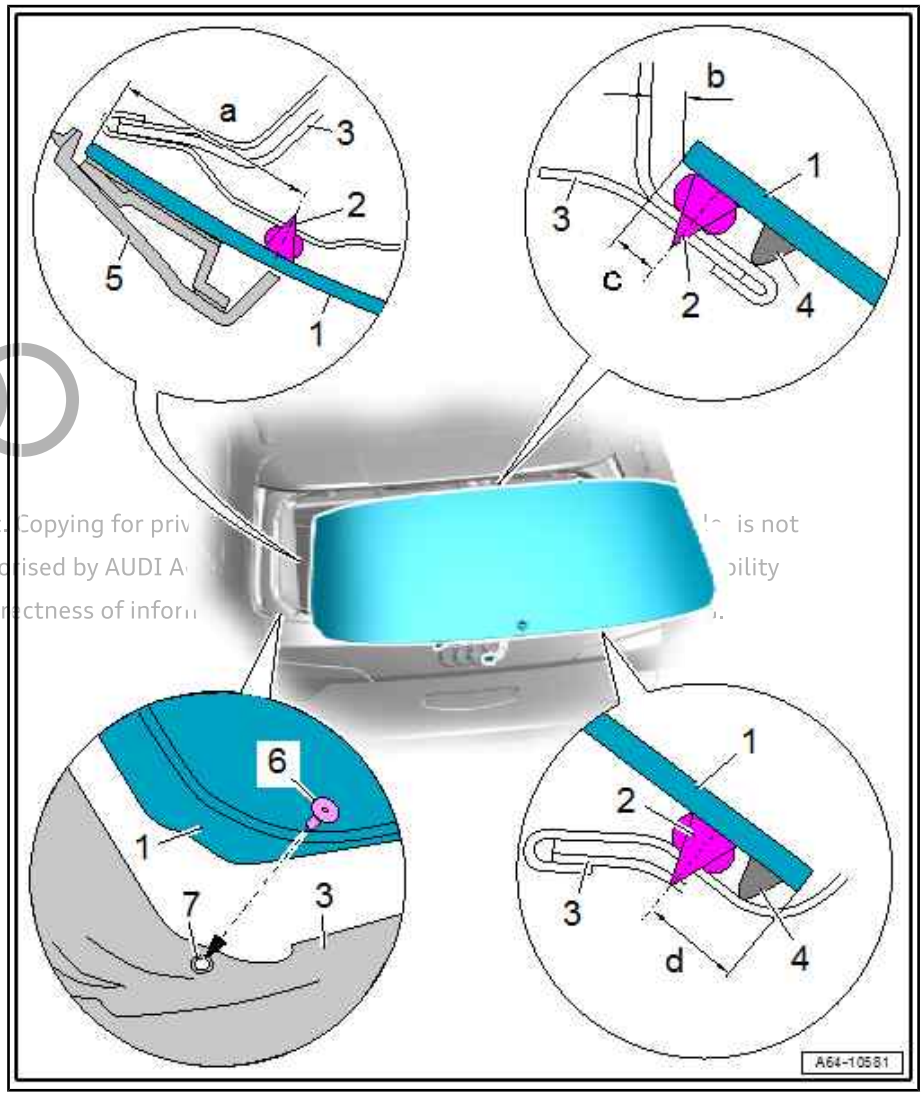
5 - Spoiler (side)

- ❑ For rear window
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 566

6 - Centring pin

- ❑ Is cut in two when window is removed

7 - Locating hole



Protected by copyright. Copying for priv is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI A bility for the correctness of inform.

3.1.3 Exploded view - rear window, A5 Sportback

The following dimensions refer to distances between distinctive points. Mechanics must also pay attention to the routing of the original adhesive bead on the removed component.

1 - Rear window

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 493
- ❑ Align so that spacing is equal on both sides
- ❑ Observe distance from side panel

♦ Dimension -b- = 3.0 mm

2 - Adhesive bead

- ❑ Note minimum drying time ⇒ page 463
- ❑ Note different distances from edge of window

♦ Dimension -a- = 35.3 mm

♦ Dimension -c- = 16.2 mm

♦ Dimension -d- = 18.1 mm

- ❑ Thickness of adhesive bead(s) ⇒ page 468

3 - Rear window frame

- ❑ In rear lid

4 - Spacers

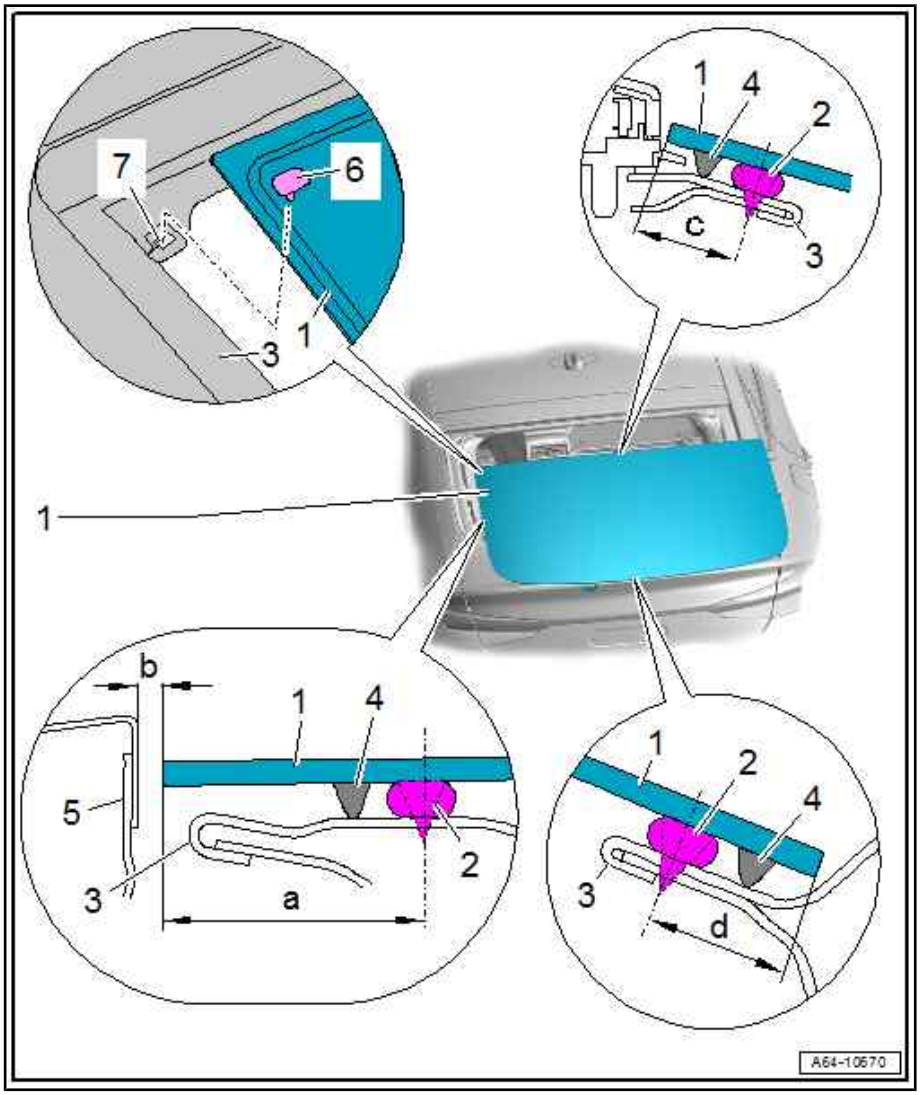
- ❑ 8x
- ❑ Position at marks made on ceramic band

5 - Side panel

6 - Locating pin

- ❑ 2x

7 - Locating hole



3.2 Removing and installing rear window

⇒ "3.2.1 Removing and installing undamaged rear window - A4 Saloon", page 481

⇒ "3.2.2 Removing undamaged rear window - A4 Avant", page 485

⇒ "3.2.3 Removing and installing undamaged rear window - A5 Coupé", page 489

⇒ "3.2.4 Removing undamaged rear window - A5 Sportback", page 493

⇒ "3.2.5 Removing damaged rear window", page 497

⇒ "3.2.6 Installing rear window", page 497

3.2.1 Removing and installing undamaged rear window - A4 Saloon

- Observe repair instructions ⇒ page 463 .
- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 485).
- Tools and materials required for installation and removal ⇒ page 464 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Procedure

– Remove D-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing D-pillar trim .

– Remove high-level brake light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; High-level brake light; Removing and installing high-level brake light bulb .

– Unscrew nut ⇒ Item 7 (page 480) for earth connections for rear window.

– Disconnect earth wire from threaded pin, move towards centre of window and secure with adhesive tape.

– Unplug electrical connectors, move them towards centre of window and secure with adhesive tape.

CAUTION

Risk of injury to hands and eyes due to glass splinters.

Danger of cutting yourself.

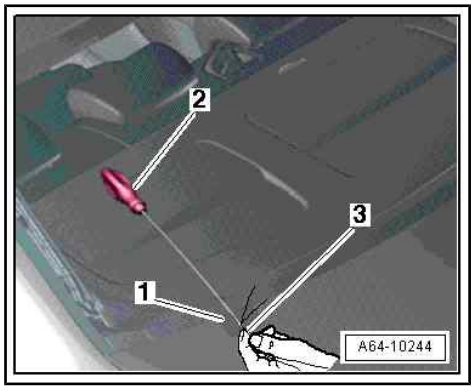
– Put on safety goggles.

– Put on protective gloves.

– Use wire reel - VAS 6452/1- to reel off about 6.50 metres of cutting wire (corresponding to 6 turns) and cut off.

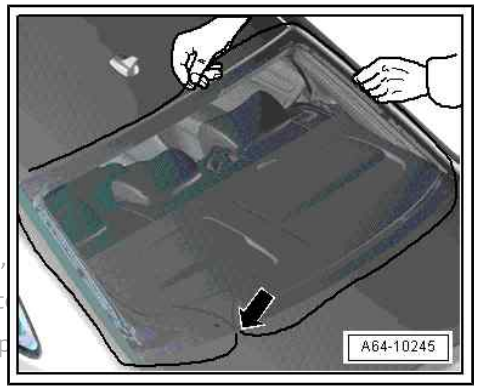
– Mask over body flange with adhesive tape -1- to avoid damage where awl is pushed through at the bottom.

– Thread both ends of cutting wire -3- into awl -2- and pull through to the inside.



– Position cutting wire under glass all around rear window.

• The wire ends must not be twisted at the point where they pass through the adhesive bead -arrow-.

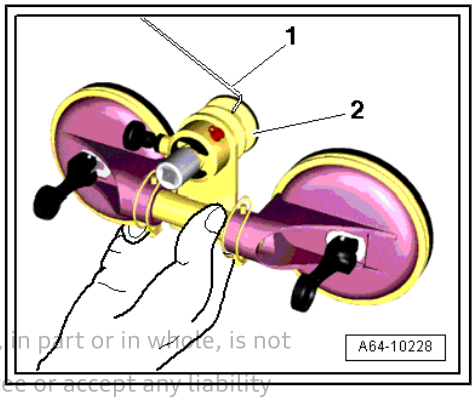


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarant with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Cop

– Attach both reels to inside of rear window.

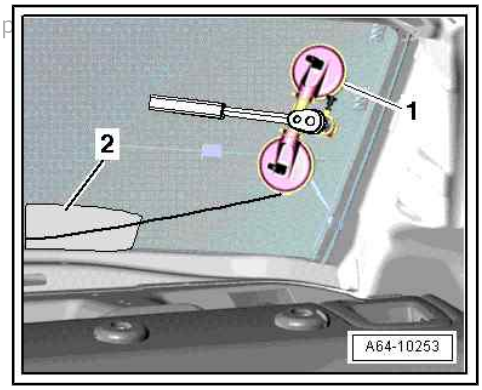


– Insert end of cutting wire -1- into reel -2-.

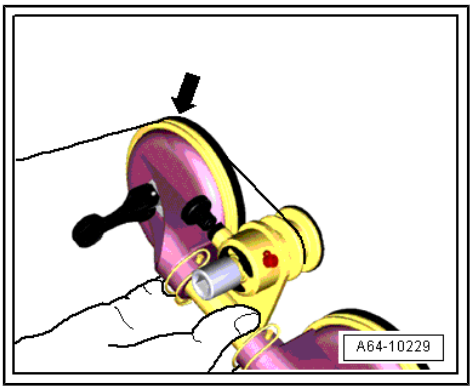


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

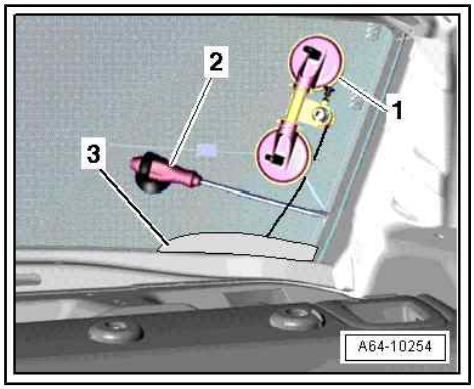
– Tension cutting wire with reel -1- and insert plastic film -2- from removal kit - VAS 6452- as protection between wire and rear shelf.



– Cut clear the first area. While doing so, wire is guided into integrated idler pulley -arrow- on reel.

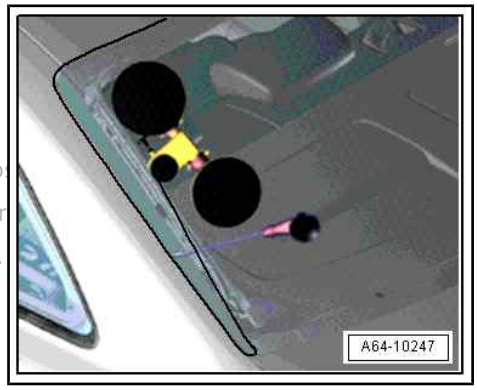


– Additionally insert guide awl -2- into adhesive bead and attach it to window using suction pad so that wire runs along window as close to the glass as possible.
– Adjust protective film -3- as necessary with length of wire and continue cutting clear using reel -1-.

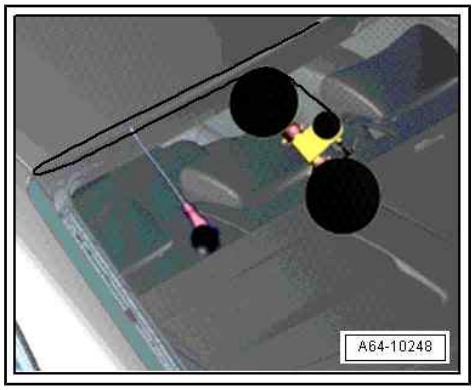


– Adjust reel and guide awl, and cut clear area at D-pillar.
– Adjust reel and guide awl.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guar
with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



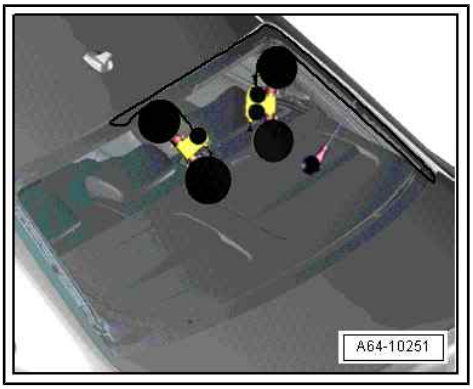
– Continue cutting window clear approx. to centre.



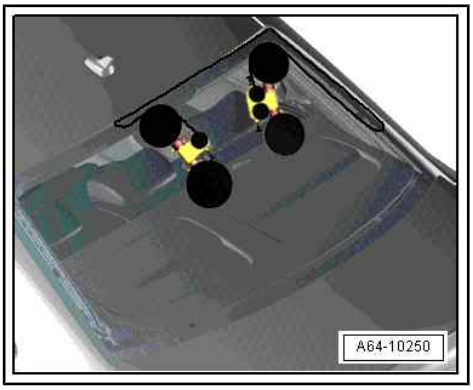
– Use second reel to cut clear bottom area of window.



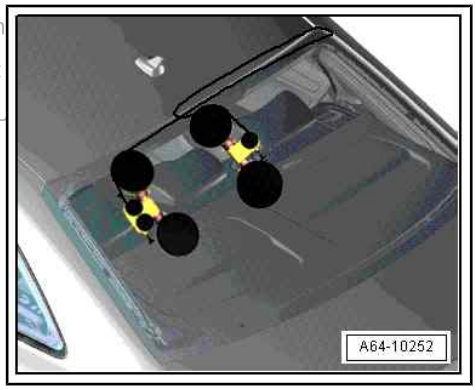
– Move reel up and insert guide awl.



– Cut window clear upwards along D-pillar.



– Adjust reel over centre of window and adjust via first reel and cut window fully clear at top.
– Remove window from window opening using suction lifters.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU

3.2.2 Removing undamaged rear window - A4 Avant

- Observe repair instructions ⇒ page 463 .
- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 489).
- Tools and materials required for installation and removal ⇒ page 464 .

Procedure

– Remove spoiler ⇒ page 566 .
– Remove rear lid trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels .
– Remove rear window wiper motor ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Rear window wiper system; Removing and installing rear window wiper motor - V12- .
– Unplug electrical connectors, move them towards centre of window and secure with adhesive tape.

CAUTION

Risk of injury to hands and eyes due to glass splinters.

Danger of cutting yourself.

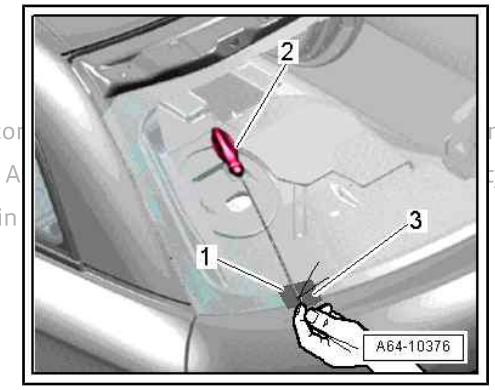
- **Put on safety goggles.**
- **Put on protective gloves.**

– Use wire reel - VAS 6452/1- to reel off about 6.50 metres of cutting wire (corresponding to 6 turns) and cut off.

– Mask over body flange at bottom with adhesive tape -1- to avoid damage at point where awl is pushed through.

– Pierce adhesive bead from inside to outside with awl -2-.

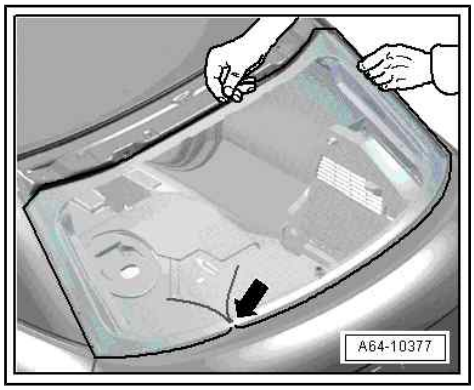
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A ty with respect to the correctness of information in



– Thread both ends of cutting wire -3- into awl and pull through to inside.

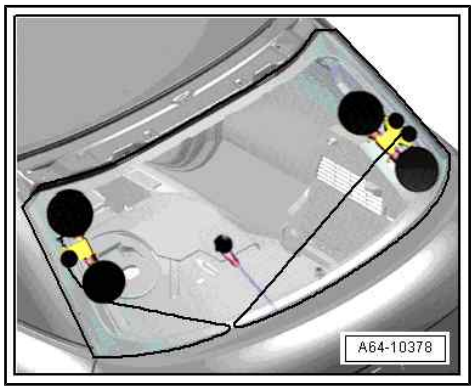
• The wire ends must not be twisted at the point where they pass through the adhesive bead -arrow-.

– Position cutting wire around rear window (under window), as shown.

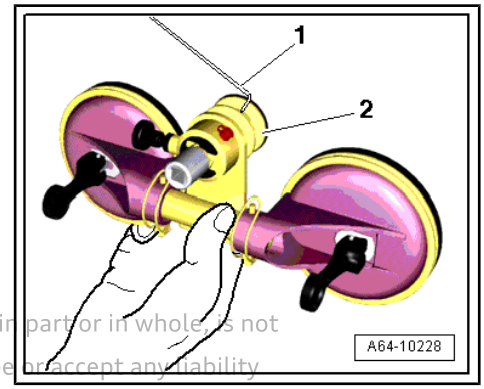


– Attach both reels to inside of rear window.

– Additionally insert guide awl into adhesive bead and attach it to window using suction pad so that wire runs along window as close to the glass as possible.

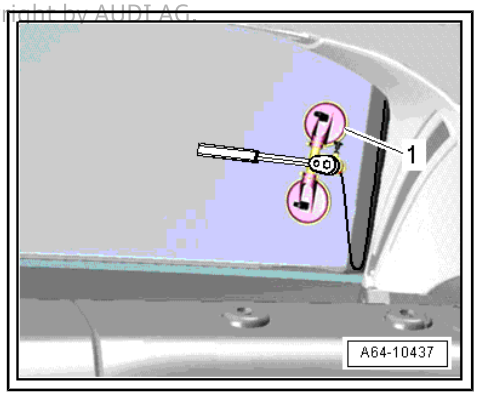


– Insert end of cutting wire -1- into reel -2-.

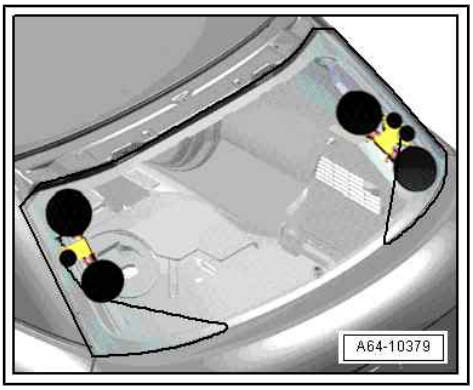


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

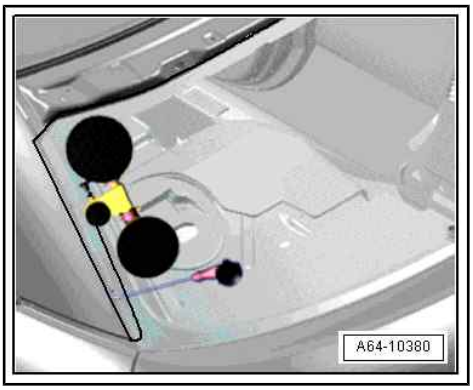
– Tension cutting wire with reel -1-.



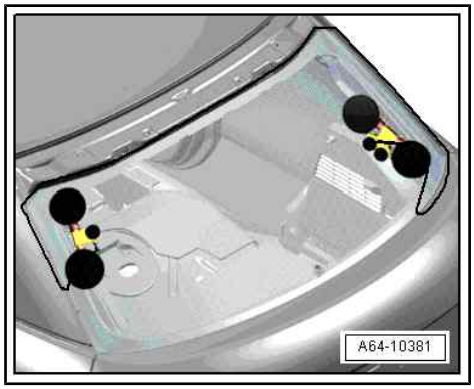
– Cut out first section of window glass at bottom.



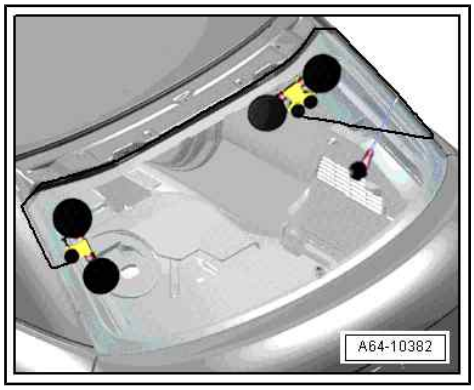
– Cut window glass clear at D-pillar (bottom).
– Position guide awl and continue to cut window clear upwards at D-pillar.



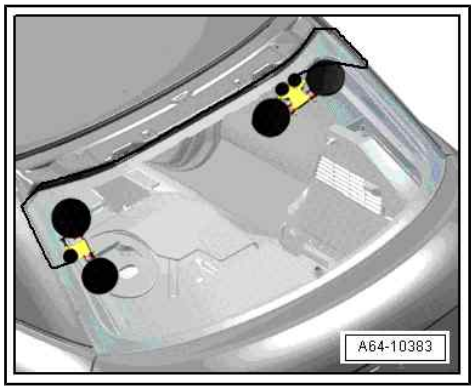
– Adjust reel and guide awl, and cut clear area at bottom of D-pillar on opposite side.



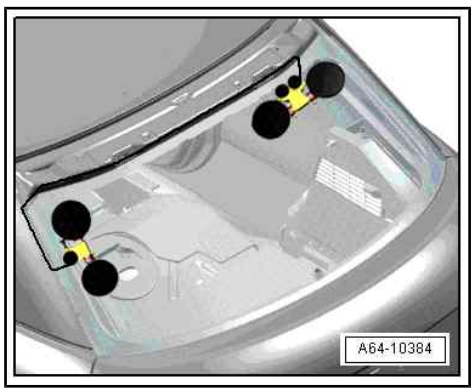
– Move reel up and insert guide awl.
– Cut out window towards top.



– Adjust reel position.

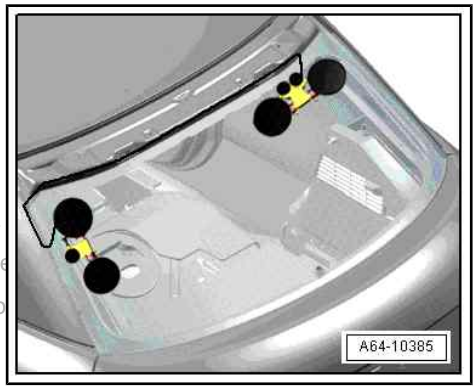


– Cut window clear at top right corner.



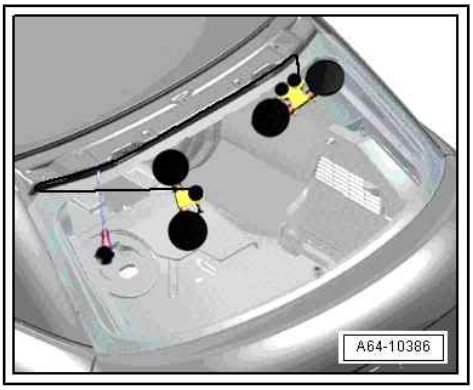
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Move reel to top left corner of window and cut out window.

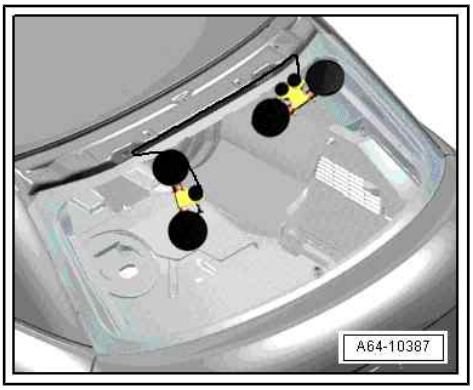


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes,
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarante
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Cop

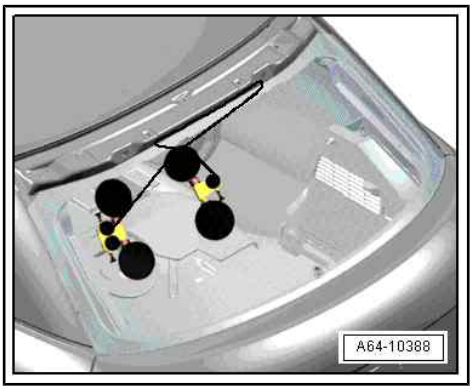
– Move left reel to approx. centre of window and apply guide awl.



– Cut clear window from top edge approx. to centre.



– Move right reel over left reel and cut out window completely.
– Lift window out of rear lid using suction lifters.



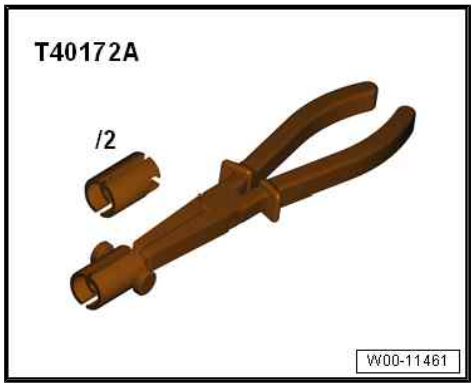
3.2.3 Removing and installing undamaged rear window - A5 Coupé

- Observe repair instructions ⇒ page 463 .
- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 493).

- Tools and materials required for installation and removal ⇒ page 464 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Pliers - T40172 A-



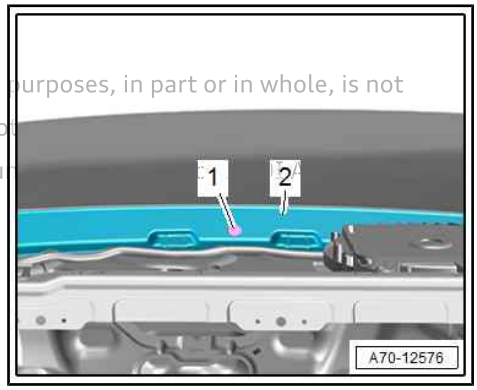
Procedure

– Remove rear shelf ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear shelf .

– Remove spreader rivet -1- using pliers - T40172 A- with adapter - T40172/1- .

– Detach trim -2- for rear window frame.

– Unscrew nut ⇒ Item 7 (page 480) for earth connection (left and right) for rear window.



– Disconnect earth wire from threaded pin, move towards centre of window and secure with adhesive tape.

– Unplug electrical connectors (left and right), move them towards centre of window and secure with adhesive tape.

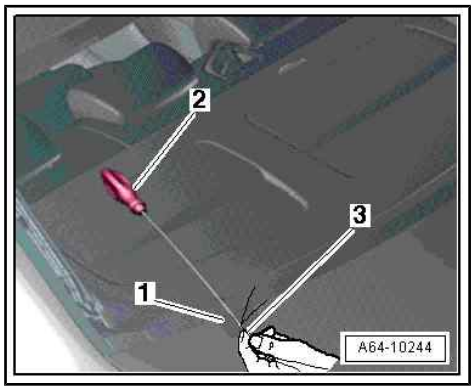
⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury to hands and eyes due to glass splinters.
Danger of cutting yourself.
– Put on safety goggles.
– Put on protective gloves.

– Use wire reel - VAS 6452/1- to reel off about 6.50 metres of cutting wire (corresponding to 6 turns) and cut off.

– Mask over body flange with adhesive tape -1- to avoid damage where awl is pushed through at the bottom.

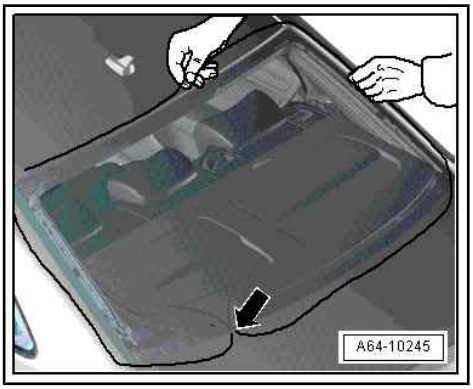
– Thread both ends of cutting wire -3- into awl -2- and pull through to the inside.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Position cutting wire under glass all around rear window.

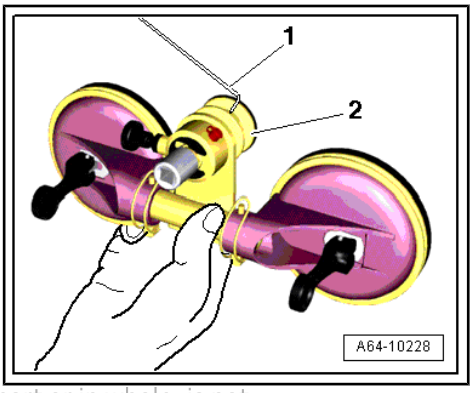
• The wire ends must not be twisted at the point where they pass through the adhesive bead -arrow-.



– Attach both reels to inside of rear window.

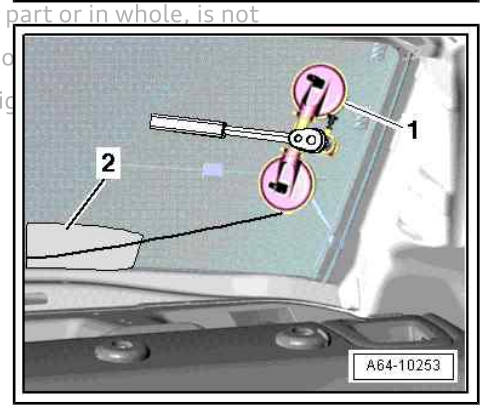


– Insert end of cutting wire -1- into reel -2-.

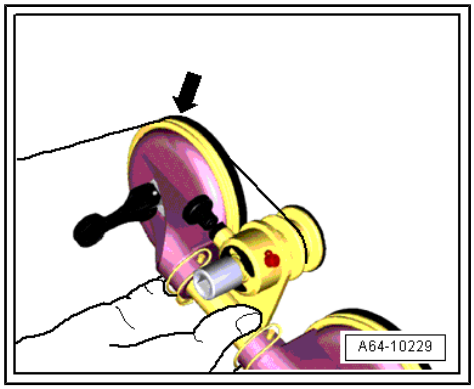


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorized by Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee o
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrig

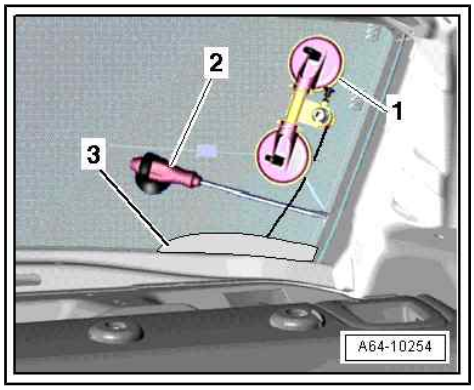
– Tension cutting wire with reel -1- and insert plastic film -2- from removal kit - VAS 6452- as protection between wire and rear shelf.



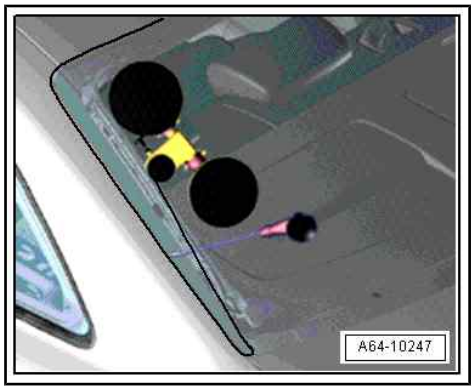
– Cut clear the first area. While doing so, wire is guided into integrated idler pulley -arrow- on reel.



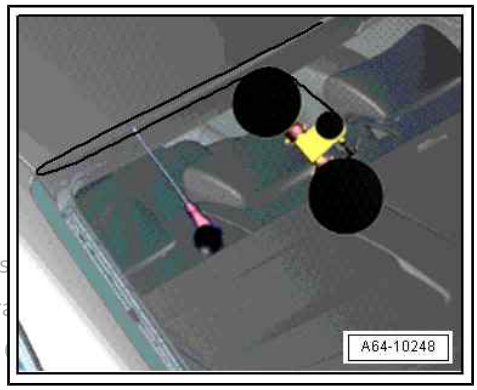
– Additionally insert guide awl -2- into adhesive bead and attach it to window using suction pad so that wire runs along window as close to the glass as possible.
– Adjust protective film -3- as necessary with length of wire and continue cutting clear using reel -1-.



– Adjust reel and guide awl, and cut clear area at C-pillar.
– Adjust reel and guide awl.



– Continue cutting window clear approx. to centre.



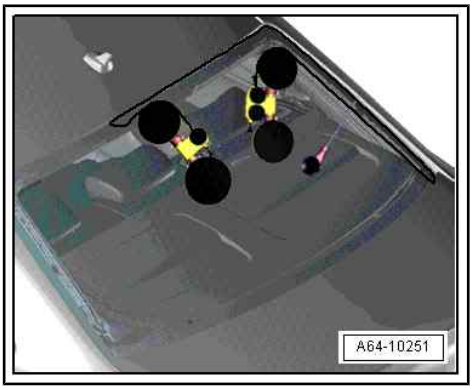
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpos
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara
with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Use second reel to cut clear bottom area of window.

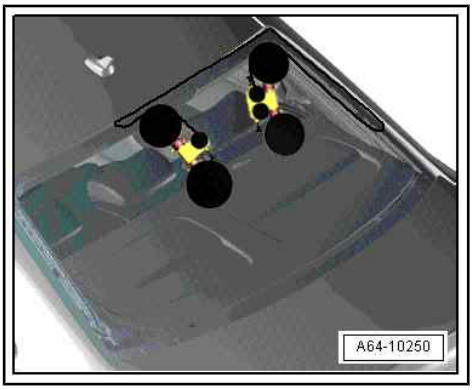


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee o
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrig

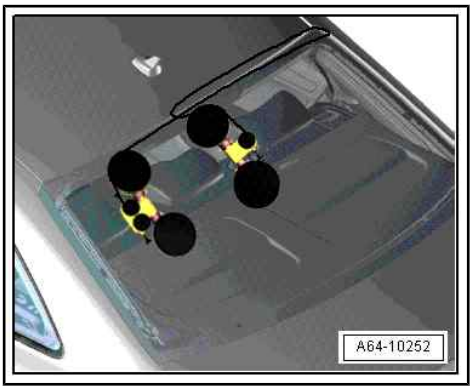
– Move reel up and insert guide awl.



– Cut window clear upwards along C-pillar.



– Adjust reel over centre of window and adjust via first reel and cut window fully clear at top.
– Remove window from window opening using suction lifters.



3.2.4 Removing undamaged rear window - A5 Sportback

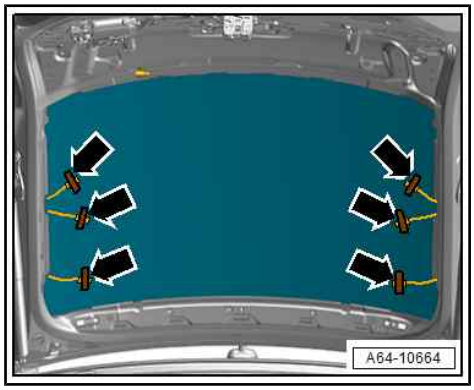
- Observe repair instructions ⇒ page 463 .
- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 496).

- Tools and materials required for installation and removal ⇒ page 464 .

Procedure

– Remove rear lid trim (top) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (top) .

– Unplug electrical connectors, move them towards centre of window and secure with adhesive tape -arrows-.



⚠ CAUTION

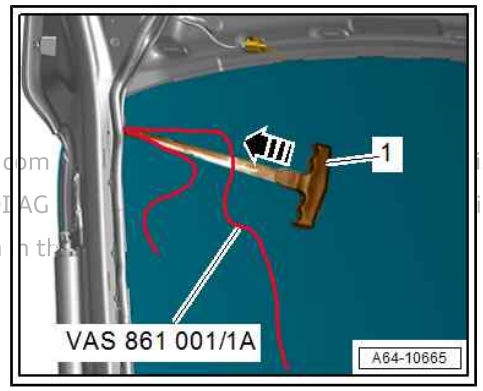
Risk of injury to hands and eyes due to glass splinters.
Danger of cutting yourself.
– Put on safety goggles.
– Put on protective gloves.

– Insert cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- into awl -1-.

Note:

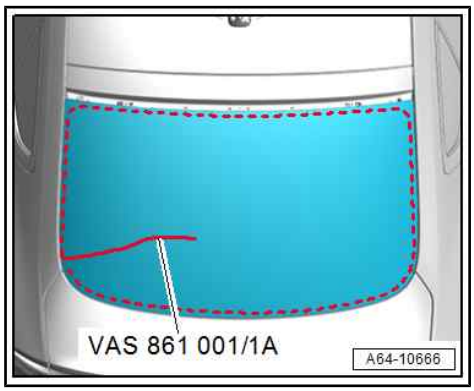
Mask over rear lid with adhesive tape to avoid damage at point where awl is pushed through.

– Pierce adhesive bead on rear window (bottom left) with awl from inside to outside -arrow- and pull cutting cord through towards outside.

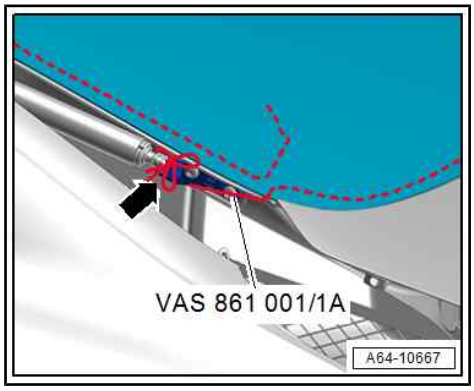


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com is not
permitted, unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG ility
with respect to the correctness of information in th

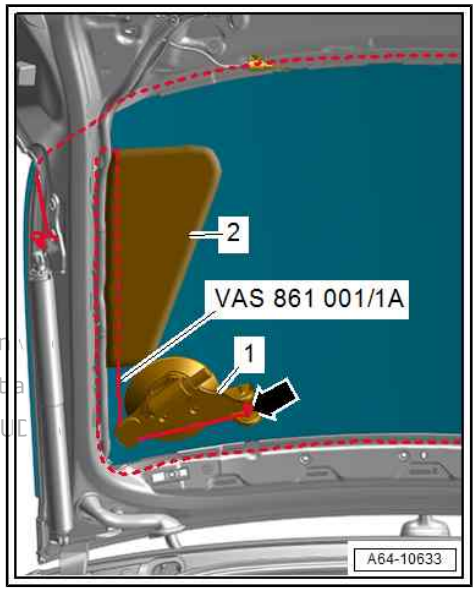
– Working clockwise, position cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- under glass all around rear window.



– Secure outer end of cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- to mounting -arrow- for gas strut or to rear lid drive motor, as applicable.

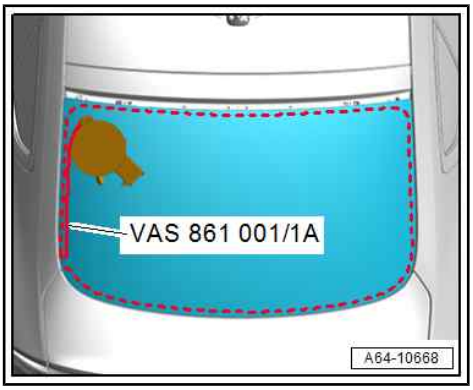


– Attach removal device -1- to inside of window at top left.
– Insert inner end of cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- into reel -arrow-.
– Tension cutting cord with reel.
– Insert removal protection -2- from window removal set - VAS 861 001A- between window frame and rear window to help guide cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- .

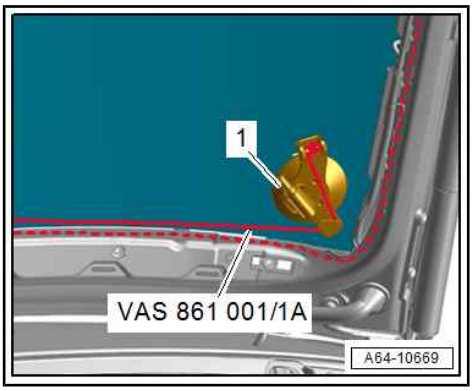


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUD

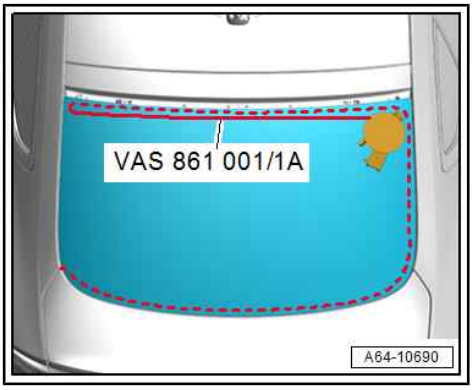
– Cut left side of rear window clear.



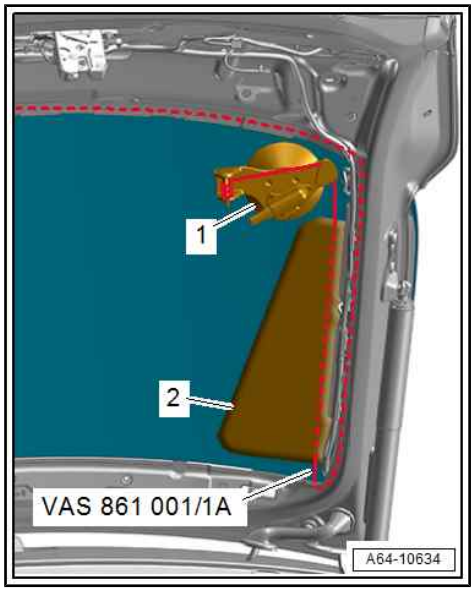
– Move removal device -1- to top right corner of rear window.



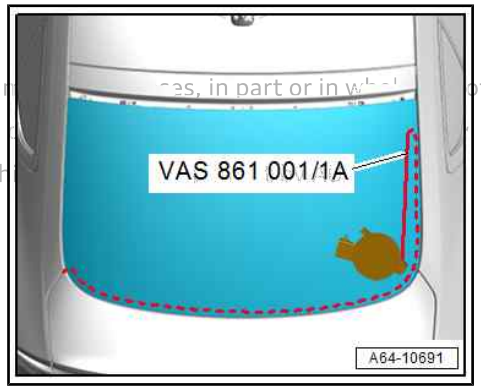
– Cut top section of rear window clear. This cuts through the locating pin.



– Move removal device -1- to bottom right corner of rear window.
– Insert removal protection -2- from window removal set - VAS 861 001A- between window frame and rear window to help guide cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- .

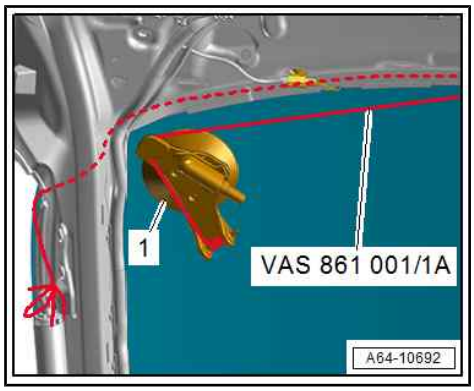


– Cut right side of rear window clear. This cuts through the locating pin.

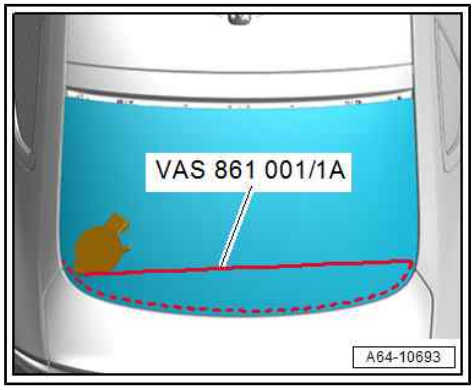


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm ces, in part or in wh ot
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of information in th

– Move removal device -1- to bottom left corner of rear window.



– Cut bottom section of rear window clear.
– Lift rear window out of opening using two suction lifters.



3.2.5 Removing damaged rear window

- Observe repair instructions ⇒ page 463 .

Procedure

A4 Saloon:

– Remove D-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing D-pillar trim .

– Remove high-level brake light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; High-level brake light; Removing and installing high-level brake light bulb .

– Unscrew nut ⇒ Item 7 (page 480) for earth connections for rear window.

A4 Avant:

– Remove spoiler ⇒ page 558 .

– Remove rear lid trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels .

– Remove rear window wiper motor ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92 ; Rear window wiper system; Removing and installing rear window wiper motor - V12- .

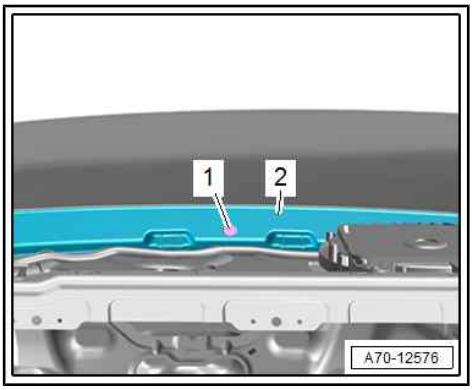
A5 Coupé:

– Remove rear shelf ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear shelf .

– Remove spreader rivet -1- using pliers - T40172 A- with adapter - T40172/1- .

– Detach trim -2- for rear window frame.

– Unscrew nut ⇒ Item 7 (page 480) for earth connection (left and right) for rear window.



A5 Sportback:

– Remove rear lid trim (top) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Removing and installing rear lid trim (top) .

Continued:

CAUTION

Risk of injury to hands and eyes due to glass splinters.
Danger of cutting yourself.
– Put on safety goggles.
– Put on protective gloves.

– Protect body and interior against damage from glass splinters.

– Remove glass fragments down to adhesive.

– Mask flange all around with fabric-backed adhesive tape.

– Cut through adhesive (with glass fragments) in window opening using electric cutter - V.A.G 1561A- and offset blade - V.A.G 1561/10- (with roller stop).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2.6 Installing rear window

- Observe repair instructions ⇒ page 463 .

- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 498).
- Tools and materials required for installation and removal ⇒ page 464 .

Procedure

– Prepare new glass for installation ⇒ page 468 .

– Prepare undamaged glass for installation ⇒ page 467 .

– Prepare body flange for installation ⇒ page 469 .

– Fit rear window into window opening using suction lifters.

– Align glass so that spacing is equal on both sides.

- Note minimum drying times ⇒ page 463 .

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse sequence; observe the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note:

After connecting the available electrical wiring/aerial wires, wiring for other optional equipment may be left over. Cut off the ends of the unneeded wires at the base of their connection.

4 Side windows

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - rear side window”, page 499

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing rear side window”, page 505

⇒ “4.3 Adjusting rear side window”, page 515

4.1 Exploded view - rear side window

⇒ “4.1.1 Exploded view - rear side window, A4 Saloon”, page 499

⇒ “4.1.2 Exploded view - rear side window, A4 Avant”, page 500

⇒ “4.1.3 Exploded view - rear side window, A5 Coupé”, page 501

⇒ “4.1.4 Exploded view - rear side window, A5 Sportback”, page 502

⇒ “4.1.5 Exploded view - rear side window, A5 Cabriolet”, page 504

4.1.1 Exploded view - rear side window, A4 Saloon

The following dimensions refer to distances between distinctive points. Mechanics must also pay attention to the routing of the original adhesive bead on the removed component.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Rear side window

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 505
- ❑ When installing, first press in with locating pins -item 7-

2 - Adhesive bead

- ❑ Note minimum drying times ⇒ page 463
- ❑ Note differing distances from edge of window:

- Dimension -a- = 40.3 mm
- Dimension -b- = 7.6 mm
- Dimension -c- = 7.5 mm

- ❑ Thickness of adhesive bead(s) ⇒ page 468

3 - Window frame

4 - Moulding

- ❑ Visible area must not be damaged

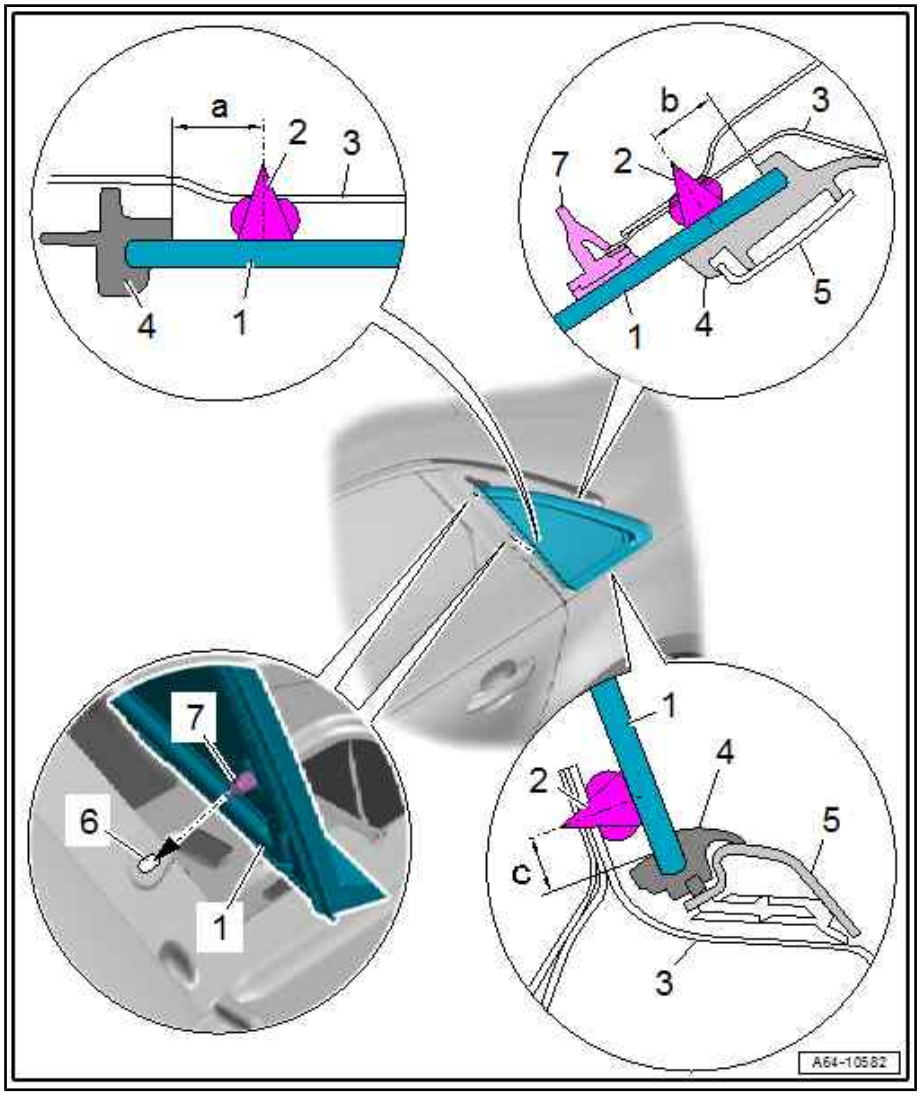
5 - Trim strip

- ❑ Only for equipment version with high-gloss package

6 - Locating hole

7 - Centring pin

- ❑ Is cut in two when window is removed



4.1.2 Exploded view - rear side window, A4 Avant

The following dimensions refer to distances between distinctive points. Mechanics must also pay attention to the routing of the original adhesive bead on the removed component.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Rear side window

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 505
- ❑ When installing, first press in with locating pins -item 7-

2 - Adhesive bead

- ❑ Note minimum drying times ⇒ page 463
- ❑ Note differing distances from edge of window:

- Dimension -a- = 8.5 mm
- Dimension -b- = 7.5 mm
- Dimension -c- = 7.5 mm

- ❑ Thickness of adhesive bead(s) ⇒ page 468

3 - Window frame

4 - Moulding

- ❑ Visible area must not be damaged

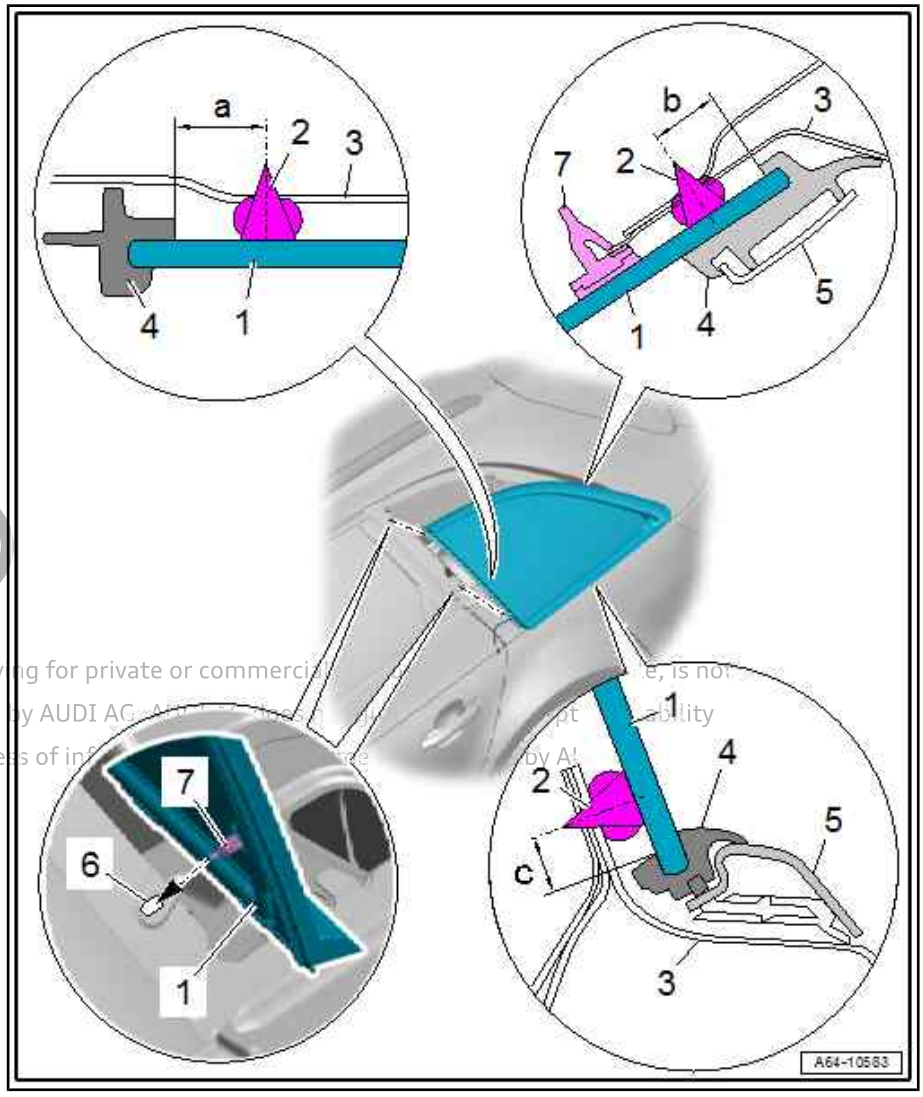
5 - Trim strip

- ❑ Only for equipment version with high-gloss package

6 - Locating hole

7 - Centring pin

- ❑ Is cut in two when window is removed



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.1.3 Exploded view - rear side window, A5 Coupé

The following dimensions refer to distances between distinctive points. Mechanics must also pay attention to the routing of the original adhesive bead on the removed component.

1 - Rear side window

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 507
- ❑ When installing, first press in with locating pins -item 3-

2 - Adhesive bead

- ❑ Note minimum drying times ⇒ page 463
- ❑ Note differing distances from edge of window:

- Dimension -a- = 40.3 mm
- Dimension -b- = 7.6 mm
- Dimension -c- = 7.5 mm
- Dimension -d- = 7.6 mm

- ❑ Thickness of adhesive bead(s) ⇒ page 468

3 - Locating pin

- ❑ Is cut in two when window is removed

4 - Spacer

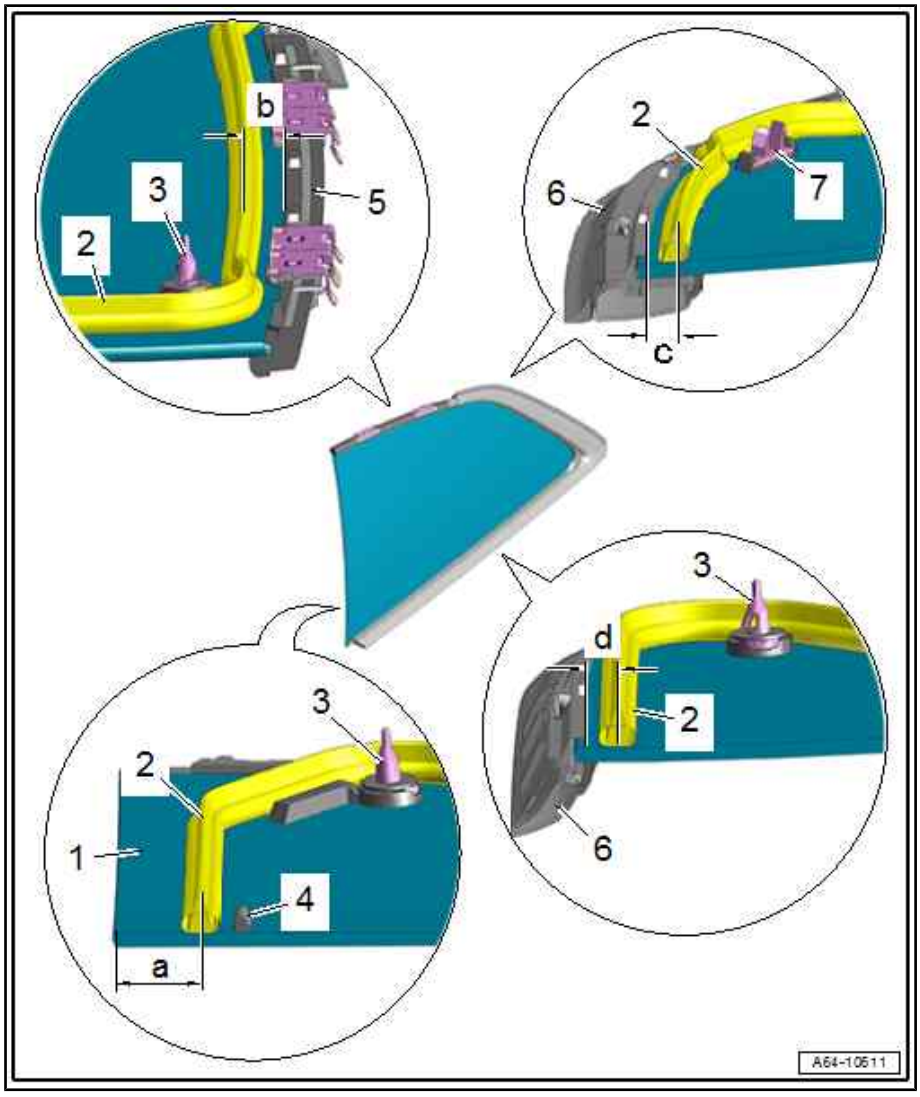
5 - Moulding (top)

- ❑ On side window frame

6 - Moulding (side and bottom)

- ❑ On side window frame

7 - Catch



4.1.4 Exploded view - rear side window, A5 Sportback

The following dimensions refer to distances between distinctive points. Mechanics must also pay attention to the routing of the original adhesive bead on the removed component.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Rear side window

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 509
- ❑ When installing, first press in with locating pin -item 3-

2 - Adhesive bead

- ❑ Note minimum drying time ⇒ page 463
- ❑ Note different distances from edge of window

- ♦ Dimension -a- = 24.4 mm
- ♦ Dimension -b- = 18.4 mm
- ♦ Dimension -c- = 9.0 mm
- ♦ Dimension -d- = 7.8 mm
- ♦ Dimension -e- = 14.0 mm
  - ❑ Thickness of adhesive bead(s) ⇒ page 468

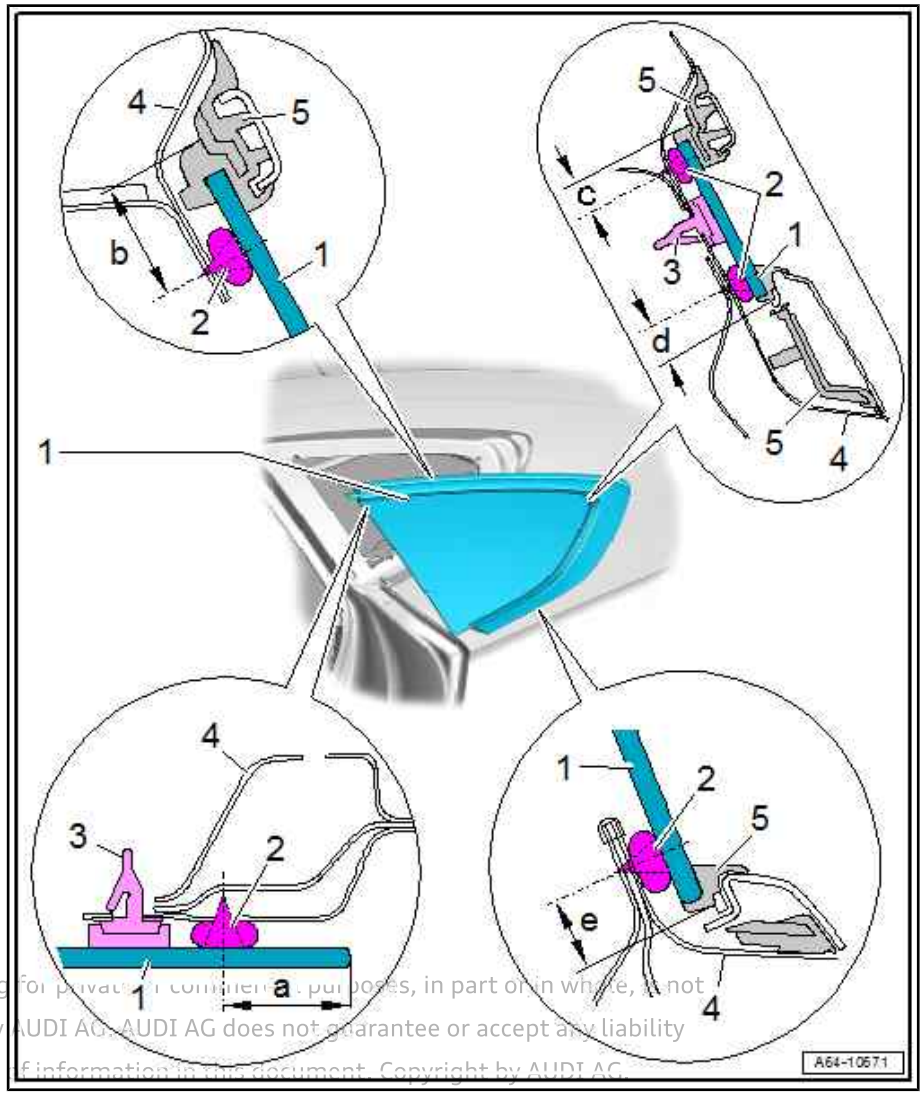
3 - Locating pin

- ❑ Is cut in two when window is removed

4 - Body

5 - Moulding

- ❑ On side window
- ❑ Visible area must not be damaged



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.1.5 Exploded view - rear side window, A5 Cabriolet

1 - Window regulator

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 8 Nm

3 - Side window

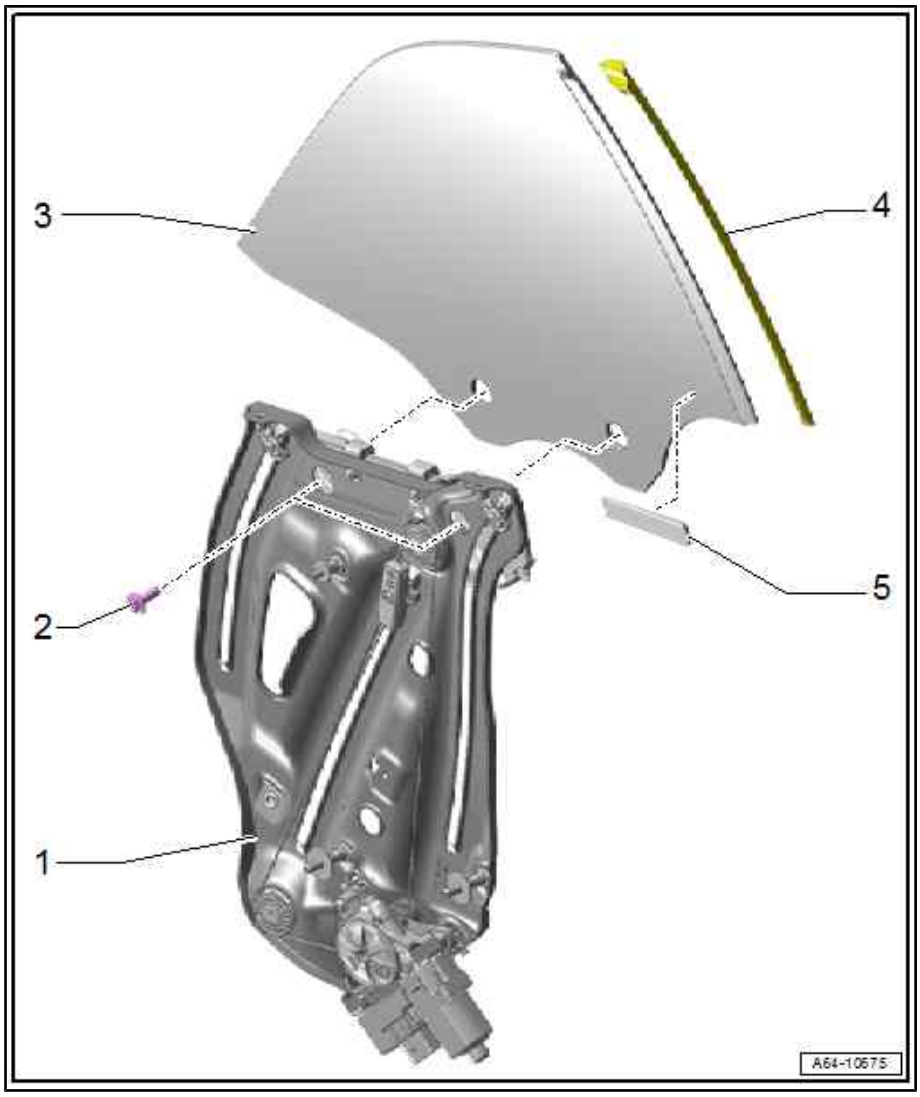
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 513
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 515

4 - Window seal

- ❑ For side window
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 514

5 - Rubber profile

- ❑ Self-adhesive



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.2 Removing and installing rear side window

⇒ “4.2.1 Removing undamaged side window - A4 Saloon”, page 505

⇒ “4.2.2 Removing undamaged side window - A4 Avant”, page 506

⇒ “4.2.3 Removing undamaged side window - A5 Coupé”, page 507

⇒ “4.2.4 Removing undamaged side window - A5 Sportback”, page 509

⇒ “4.2.5 Removing damaged side window”, page 512

⇒ “4.2.6 Installing side window”, page 513

⇒ “4.2.7 Removing and installing rear side window - A5 Cabriolet”, page 513

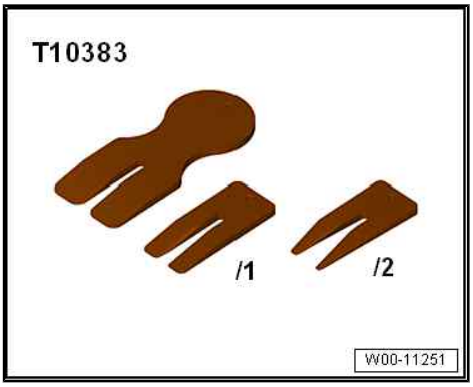
⇒ “4.2.8 Removing and installing window seal for side window”, page 514

4.2.1 Removing undamaged side window - A4 Saloon

- Observe repair instructions ⇒ page 463 .
- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 506).

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



♦ Removal kit for flush bonded windows - VAS 6452-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Procedure

– Use adhesive tape -1- to protect paintwork of side panel and roof in cutting area.

– Insert protective film from removal kit for flush bonded windows - VAS 6452- between cutting cord and trim panels in vehicle interior.

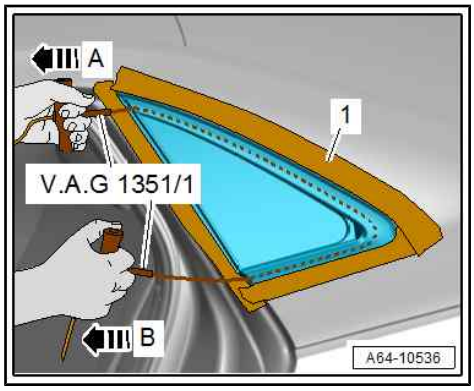
CAUTION

Risk of injury to hands and eyes due to glass splinters.

Danger of cutting yourself.

– Put on safety goggles.

– Put on protective gloves.



– Lift moulding slightly using wedge - T10383/1- and route cutting wire around side window.

– Have a second mechanic hold protective film from removal kit for flush bonded windows - VAS 6452- between cutting wire and roof trim/C-pillar or D-pillar trim.

– Secure pull handles -V.A.G 1351/1- to both ends of cutting wire.

– Using a gentle sawing motion, pull cutting wire towards front in direction of -arrow A- and cut through adhesive bead at bottom of side panel and at roof frame (this first severs locating pin at side window).

– Pull cutting wire downwards in direction of -arrow B- through adhesive bead.

– Take side window out of window frame.

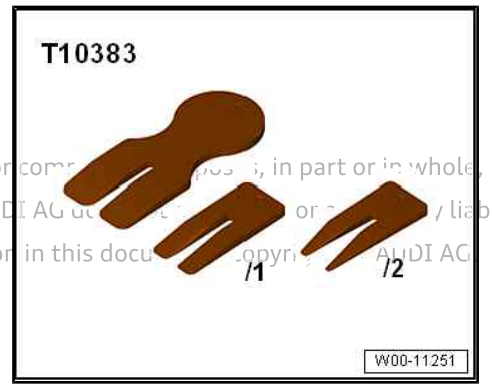
– Remove severed centring pin from locating hole.

4.2.2 Removing undamaged side window - A4 Avant

- Observe repair instructions ⇒ page 463 .
- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 507).

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com... ...s, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG d... ...or a... ...y liability with respect to the correctness of information in this docu... ...opyri... ...AUDI AG.

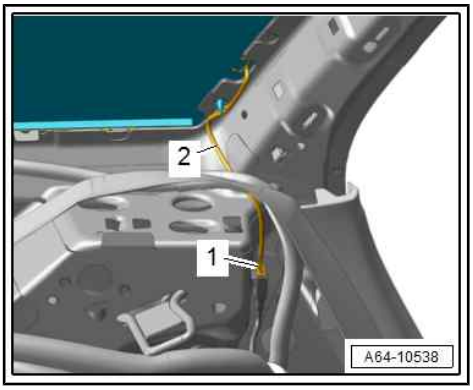
♦ Removal kit for flush bonded windows - VAS 6452-

Procedure

– Equipment version with anti-theft alarm system: Remove C-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing C-pillar trim / equipment version with digital radio: Remove C-

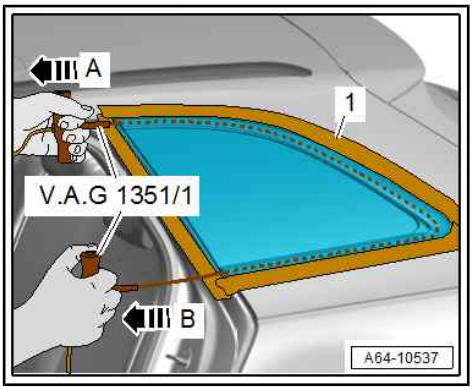
pillar trim (right-side) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing C-pillar trim .

– Unplug electrical connector -1- and move wiring harness -2- clear.



– Use adhesive tape -1- to protect paintwork of side panel and roof in cutting area.

– Insert protective film from removal kit for flush bonded windows - VAS 6452- between cutting cord and trim panels in vehicle interior.



CAUTION

Risk of injury to hands and eyes due to glass splinters.

Danger of cutting yourself.

- **Put on safety goggles.**
- **Put on protective gloves.**

– Lift moulding slightly using wedge - T10383/1- and route cutting wire around side window.

– Have a second mechanic hold protective film from removal kit for flush bonded windows - VAS 6452- between cutting wire and roof trim/D-pillar trim.

– Secure pull handles -V.A.G 1351/1- to both ends of cutting wire.

– Using a gentle sawing motion, pull cutting wire towards front in direction of -arrow A- and cut through adhesive bead at bottom of side panel and at roof frame (this first severs locating pin at side window).

– Pull cutting wire downwards in direction of -arrow B- through adhesive bead.

– Take side window out of window frame.

– Remove severed centring pin from locating hole.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.2.3 Removing undamaged side window - A5 Coupé

- Observe repair instructions ⇒ page 463 .
- Insert removal protection from window removal set - VAS 861 001A- in vehicle interior between cutting cord and trim panels.

Procedure

– Remove roof trim strip (front) ⇒ page 593 .

– Detach inner door seal in area of side window ⇒ page 138 .

CAUTION

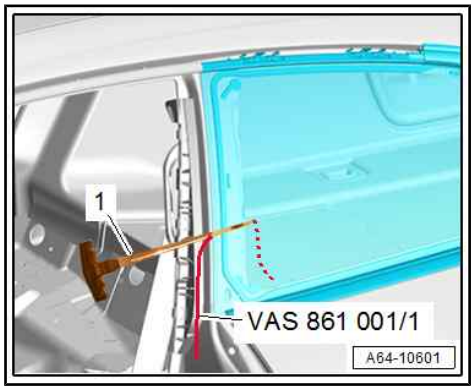
Risk of injury to hands and eyes due to glass splinters.
Danger of cutting yourself.
– Put on safety goggles.
– Put on protective gloves.

– Insert cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- into awl -1-.

Note:

Mask over body flange with adhesive tape to avoid damage at point where awl is pushed through.

– Pierce adhesive bead in this area with awl from outside to inside and pull cutting cord through towards inside.

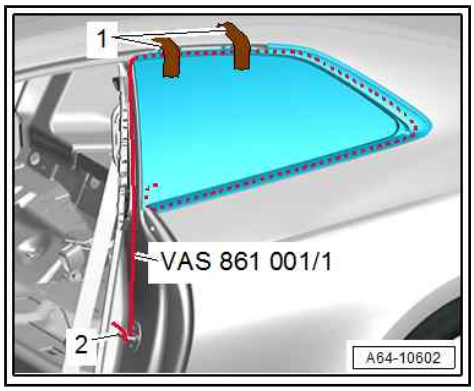


– Position cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- under glass all around side window and secure end to striker -2-.

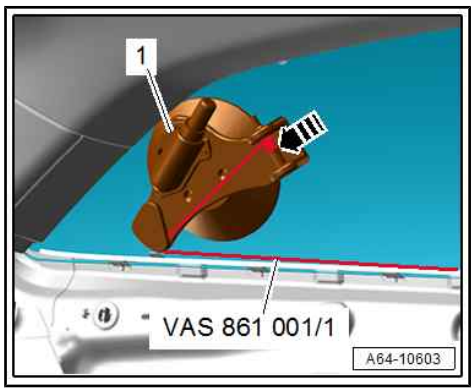
Note:

Lift moulding slightly using trim wedge from window removal set - VAS 861 001A- .

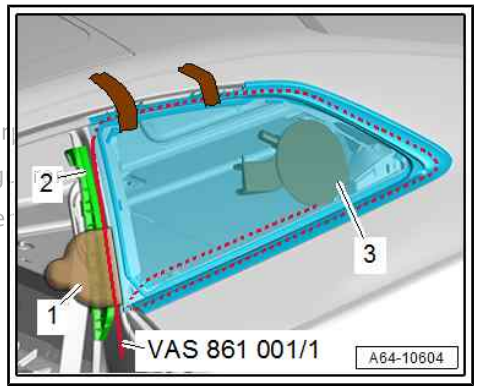
– Secure window at top with adhesive tape -1-.



– Attach removal device with reel -1- to inside of window.
– Insert cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- into reel -arrow-.
– Tension cutting cord with reel.

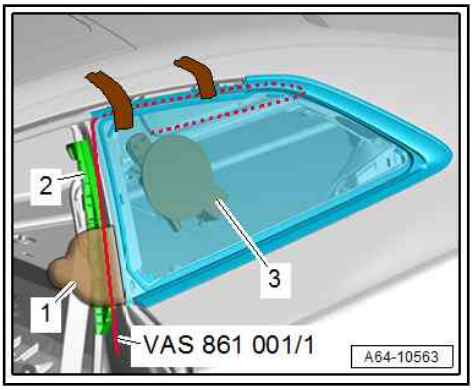


– Insert removal protection -1- from window removal set - VAS 861 001A- between cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- and retainer for inner door seal -2-.
– Cut clear the first area. While doing so, cutting cord is guided into integrated idler pulley -arrow- on reel.

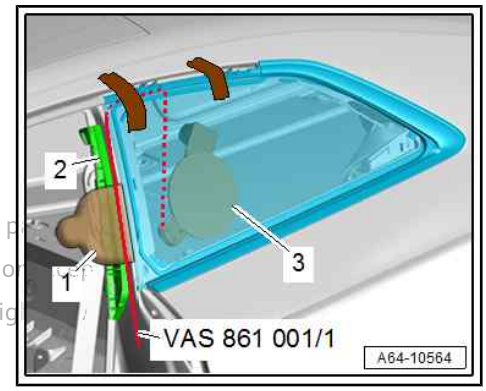


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pur
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g
with respect to the correctness of information in this docume

– Adjust removal device -3- and cut area along C-pillar clear towards top.
– Leave removal protection -1- in place between cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- and retainer for inner door seal -2-.
– Insert a further removal protection element between C-pillar trim and moulded headliner.



– Adjust removal device -3- and cut area around B-pillar clear.
– Leave removal protection -1- in place between cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- and retainer for inner door seal -2-.
– Take side window out of window frame.
– Remove severed centring pin from locating hole.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee o
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrig

4.2.4 Removing undamaged side window - A5 Sportback

• Observe repair instructions ⇒ page 463 .

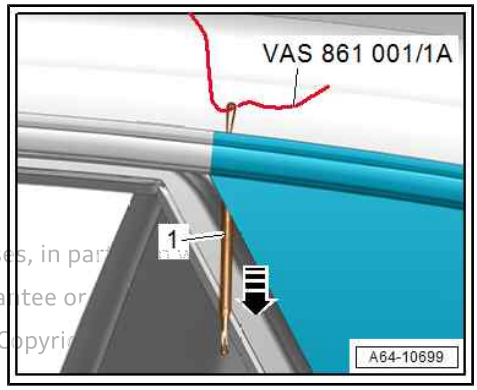
Procedure

– Remove C-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing C-pillar trim .
– Remove D-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing D-pillar trim .
– Detach door seal in area of side window.
– Insert removal protection from window removal set - 861 001A- in vehicle interior between cutting cord and trim panels.

⚠ CAUTION

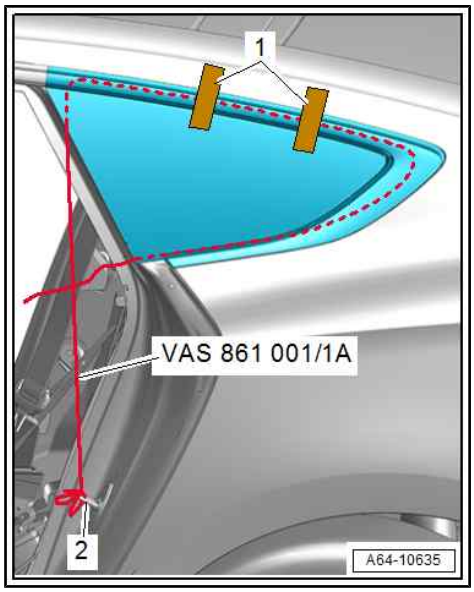
Risk of injury to hands and eyes due to glass splinters.
Danger of cutting yourself.
– Put on safety goggles.
– Put on protective gloves.

– Pull cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- through under trim strip -arrow- using threader -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyri

– Position cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- under seal all around side window and secure end to striker -2-.
– Secure window at top with adhesive tape -1-.

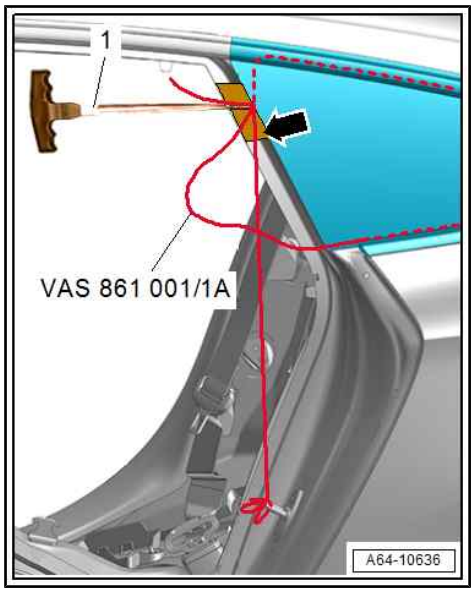


– Insert free end of cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- into awl -1-.

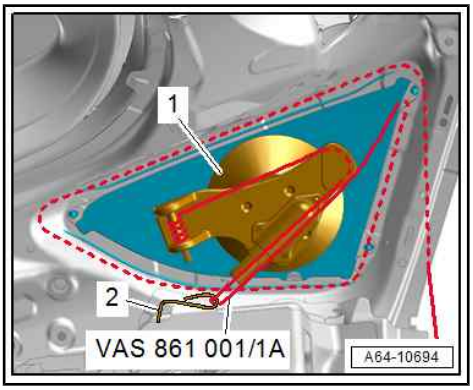
Note:

Mask over body flange with adhesive tape -arrow- to avoid damage at point where awl is pushed through.

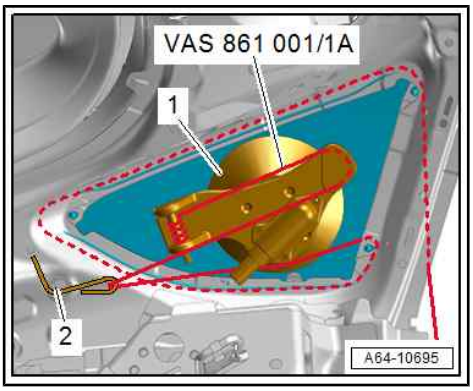
– Pierce adhesive bead in this area with awl from outside to inside and pull cutting cord through towards inside.



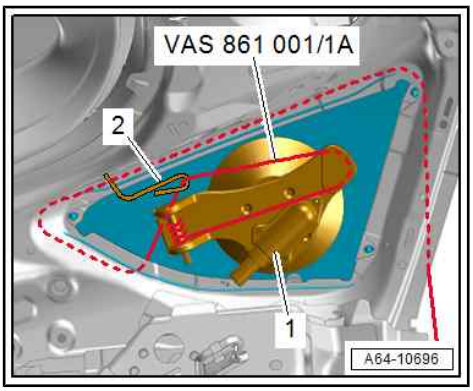
– Attach removal device -1- with reel to inside of window.
– Insert cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- into reel and guide it through cord hook -2-.
– Tension cutting cord with reel.
– Cut the first area clear. While doing so, cutting cord is guided into integrated idler pulley on reel.



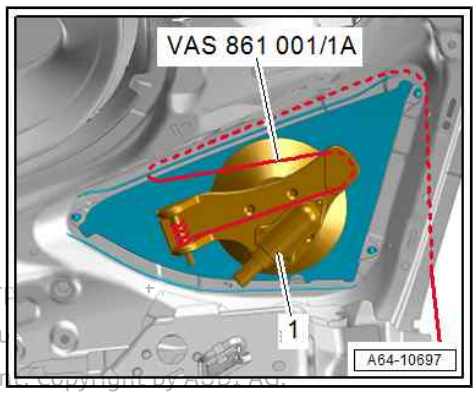
– Adjust cord hook -2- and cut bottom section of side window (rear) clear using removal device -1-. This cuts through the locating pin.



– Adjust cord hook -2- and cut rear section of side window (rear) clear using removal device -1-. This cuts through the locating pin.



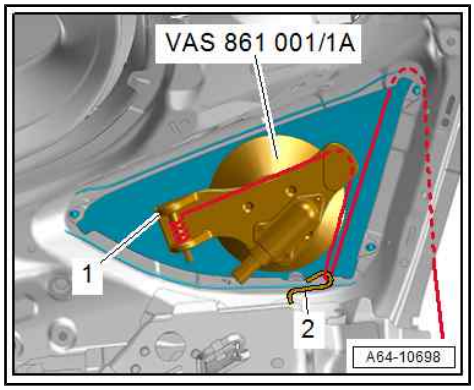
– Remove cord hook and cut top area at D-pillar clear using removal device -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purp
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu
with respect to the correctness of information in this documen

– Insert cord hook -2- in opening under side window and cut top corner of side window clear using removal device -1-. This cuts through the locating pin.

– Pull side window carefully towards rear out of connecting piece for roof trim strip and detach.



4.2.5 Removing damaged side window

• Observe repair instructions ⇒ page 463 .

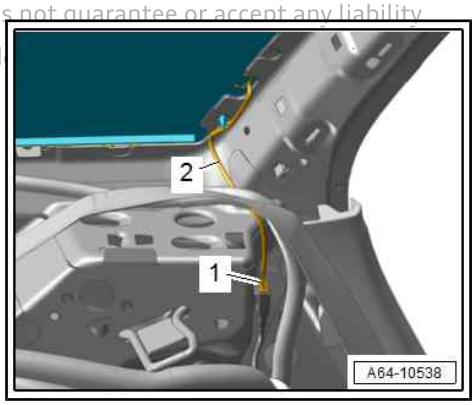
Procedure

A4 Avant:

– Remove C-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing C-pillar trim .

– Unplug electrical connector -1- and move wiring harness -2- clear.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this d



A5 Coupé:

– Remove roof trim strip (front) ⇒ page 593 .

– Detach inner door seal in area of side window ⇒ page 138 .

A5 Sportback:

– Remove C-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing C-pillar trim .

– Remove D-pillar trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing D-pillar trim .

– Detach door seal in area of side window.

Continued:

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury to hands and eyes due to glass splinters.
Danger of cutting yourself.
– Put on safety goggles.
– Put on protective gloves.

– Protect body and interior against damage from glass splinters.

– Mask flange all around with fabric-backed adhesive tape.

– Remove glass fragments down to adhesive.

– Cut through adhesive (with glass fragments) in window opening using electric cutter - V.A.G 1561A- and offset blade - V.A.G 1561/10- (with roller stop).

– Remove severed centring pin from locating hole.

4.2.6 Installing side window

- Observe repair instructions ⇒ page 463 .
- Tools and materials required for installation and removal ⇒ page 464 .

– Prepare new glass for installation ⇒ page 468 .

– Prepare undamaged glass for installation ⇒ page 467 .

– Prepare body flange for installation ⇒ page 469 .

- Use 1-component adhesive for side windows - D 169 300 M1- (small cartridge). If more than one window has to be bonded, 2-component window adhesive set - D 004 660 M2- can also be used.

Procedure

– Apply adhesive all around next to moulding.

– If glass was not damaged while being cut out, apply adhesive to remaining adhesive bead.

– A4: Insert new window in opening and press locating pins into C-pillar; then press locating pin into D-pillar.

– A5 Coupé: Insert new window in opening and press locating pins into B-pillar and C-pillar; then press locating pin into roof frame.

– A5 Sportback: Insert new window in opening and press locating pins into C-pillar and D-pillar; then press locating pin into roof frame.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– When installing a window without locating pin, align window lengthwise at edge of side panel and insert into window opening.

– Secure window glass in position in opening with adhesive tape.

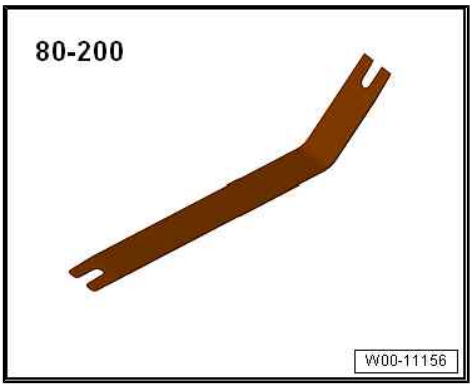
- Note minimum drying times ⇒ page 463 .

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

4.2.7 Removing and installing rear side window - A5 Cabriolet

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-

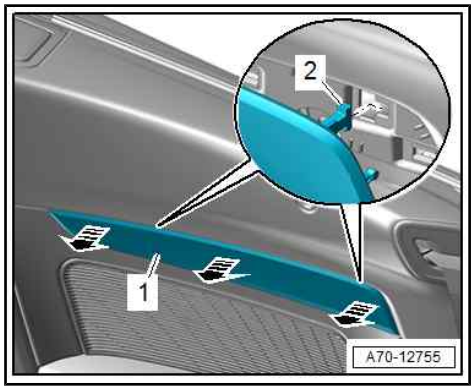


Removing

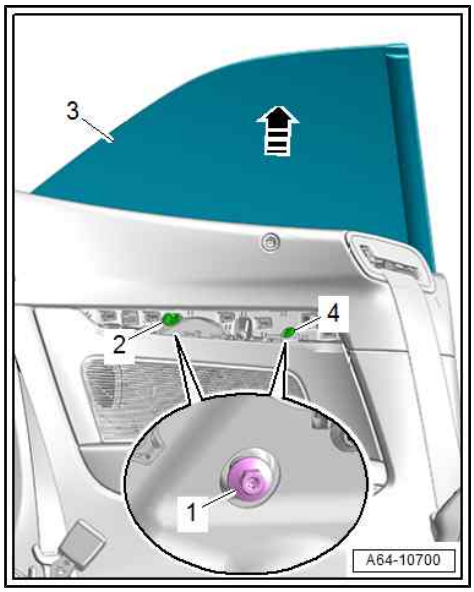
– Open convertible roof.

– Move side window to “closed” position.

– Carefully unclip trim panel -1- from side trim -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Pull trim panel slightly off side trim and slide it towards rear; hooks -2- can then be disengaged from side trim.



– Pierce grommets -2, 4- using a suitable tool.
– Remove bolts -1-.
– Pull side window -3- towards top and rear out of body opening -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Adjust side window ⇒ page 515 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “4.1.5 Exploded view - rear side window, A5 Cabriolet”, page 504

4.2.8 Removing and installing window seal for side window

Removing

– Remove side window ⇒ page 513 .
– Pull window seal out of mounting for side window.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

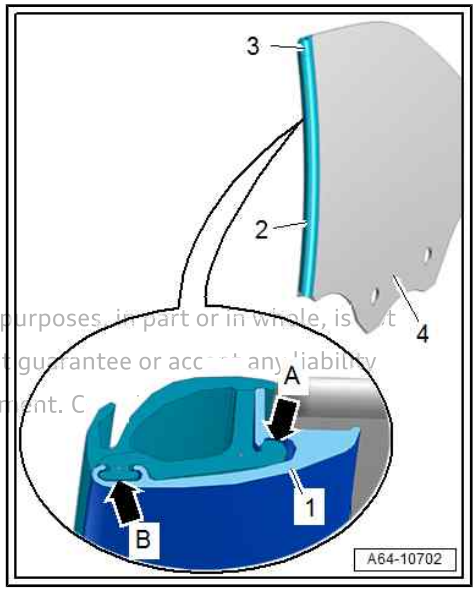
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Apply end piece -3- of window seal at top of side window -4- so that it is flush.

• There must be no overlap or gap between the end piece and the mounting.

– Insert window seal -2- at rear side -arrow A- in mounting -1- and lock in place at front side -arrow B-.

– Press on window seal over its entire length.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. C

4.3 Adjusting rear side window

⇒ “4.3.1 Adjustment dimensions”, page 515

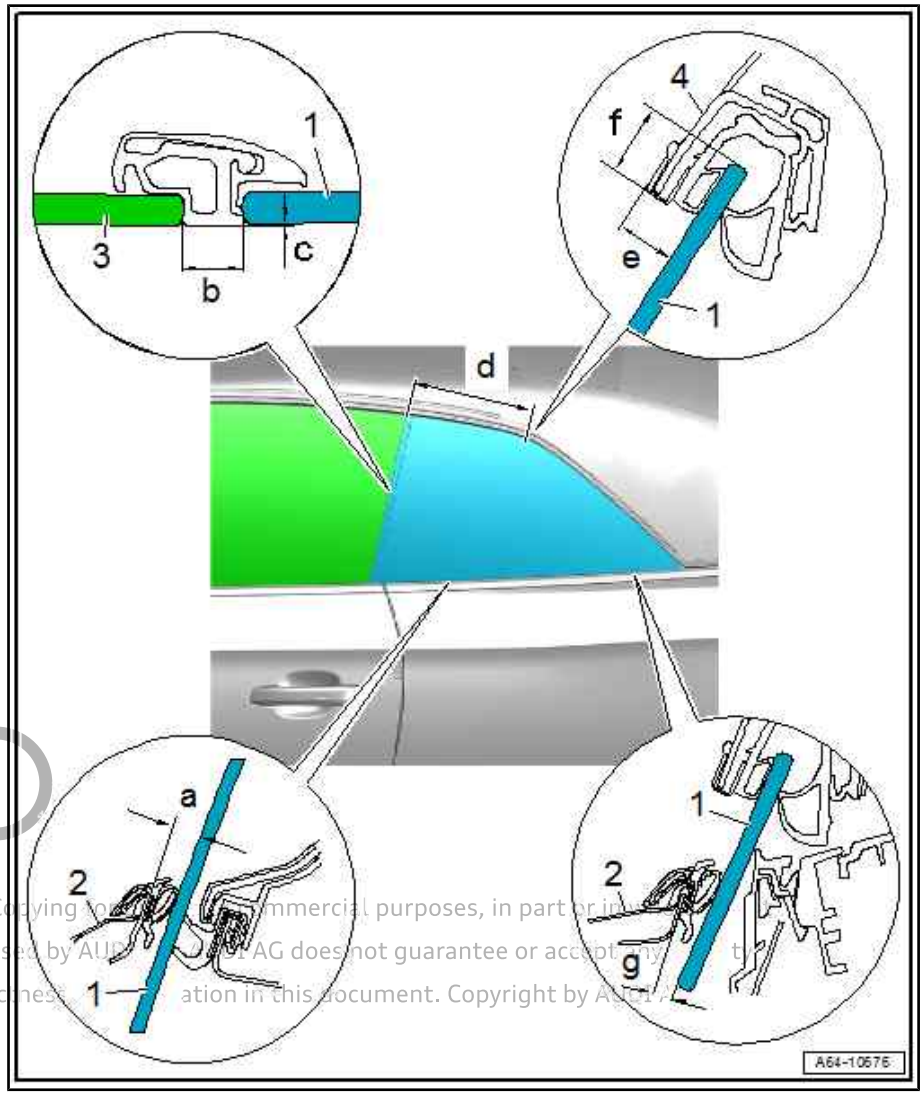
⇒ “4.3.2 Checking lateral adjustment”, page 517

⇒ “4.3.3 Checking height adjustment”, page 518

⇒ “4.3.4 Lateral adjustment”, page 519

⇒ “4.3.5 Height adjustment”, page 521

4.3.1 Adjustment dimensions



Protected by copyright. Copying for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Side window to side panel (front)

- Gap width -a- = 8.3 mm

-1- Side window

-2- Side panel

Side window to door window

- Gap width -b- = 10.2 + 1.0 mm
- Flush alignment -c- = ± 0.7 mm
- Parallel adjustment = 0.9 mm

-1- Side window

-3- Door window

Side window to convertible roof

- Gap width -d- = 125 mm
- Gap width -e- = 16.6 mm
- Gap width -f- = 8.8 mm

-1- Side window

-4- Convertible roof cover

Side window to side panel (rear)

- Gap width -g- = 7.9 mm

-1- Side window

-2- Side panel

4.3.2 Checking lateral adjustment

- Checking lateral adjustment relative to outer edge of convertible roof ⇒ page 517
- Checking lateral adjustment relative to door window ⇒ page 517
- Checking lateral adjustment relative to side window ⇒ page 518

If there is wind noise at the door window, check lateral adjustment.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

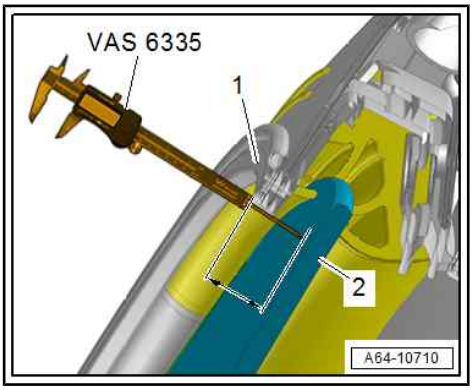
- Digital caliper, 150 mm - VAS 6335-

Checking lateral adjustment relative to outer edge of convertible roof:

– Measure gap width between side window -2- and convertible roof -1- with digital caliper -VAS 6335- .

- Gap width -a- ⇒ page 516

– If lateral adjustment of side window is not correct, adjust side window ⇒ page 519 .

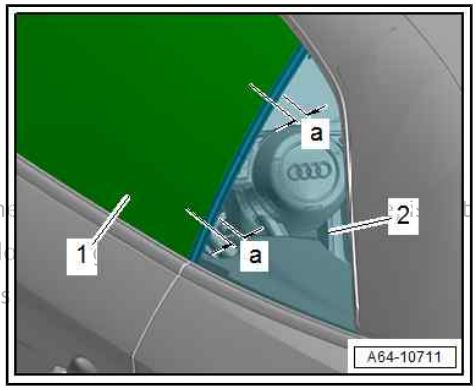


Checking lateral adjustment relative to door window:

– Door window -1- must be parallel to side window -2- at both top and bottom.

- Parallel dimension -a- ⇒ page 516

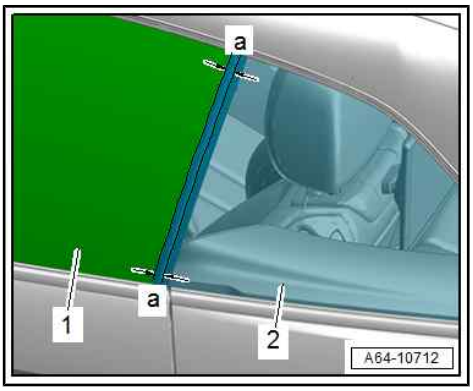
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG d
with respect to the correctness of information in this



– Measure gap width between door window -1- and side window -2-.

- Gap width -a- ⇒ page 516

– If lateral adjustment of side window is not correct, adjust side window ⇒ page 519 .



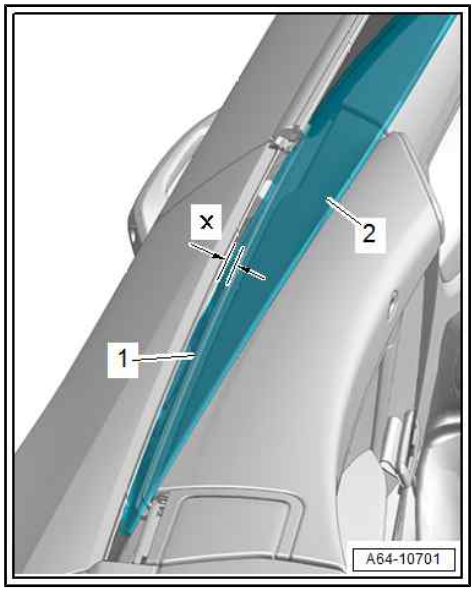
Checking lateral adjustment relative to side panel:

– Measure gap width -x- between side window -1- and side panel -2-.

• Gap width -a- ⇒ page 516

• Gap width -g- ⇒ page 517

– If lateral adjustment of side window is not correct, adjust side window ⇒ page 519 .

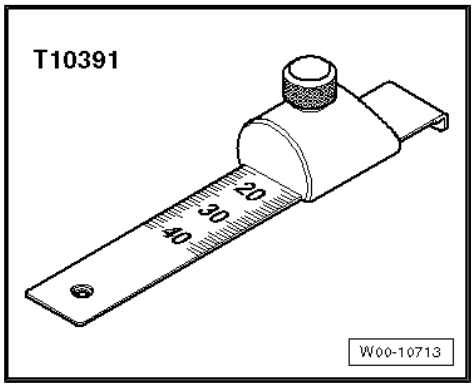


4.3.3 Checking height adjustment

If there is wind noise at the side window, check height adjustment.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

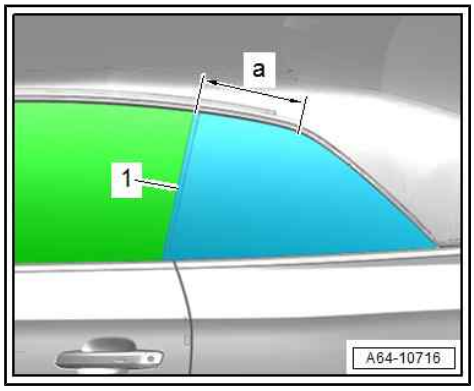
♦ Gauge - T10391-



Procedure

– Determine measuring point at side window:

• Dimension -a- = 125 mm (measured from rear edge of door window -1-) ⇒ page 516



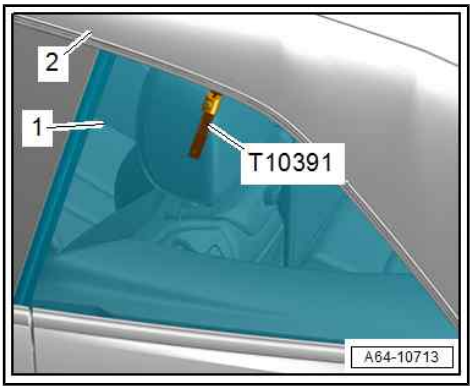
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Place gauge - T10391- on top edge of side window.

– Move side window -1- into “closed” position and measure window immersion depth relative to convertible roof -2-.

• Dimension -f- ⇒ page 516

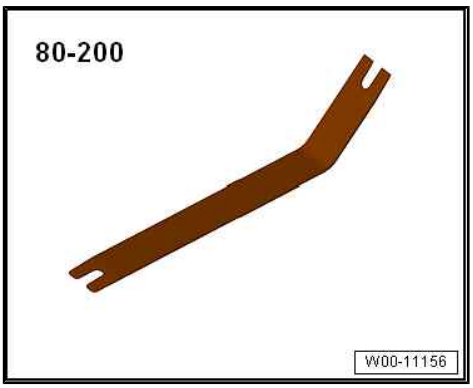
– If height adjustment of side window is not correct, adjust side window ⇒ page 521 .



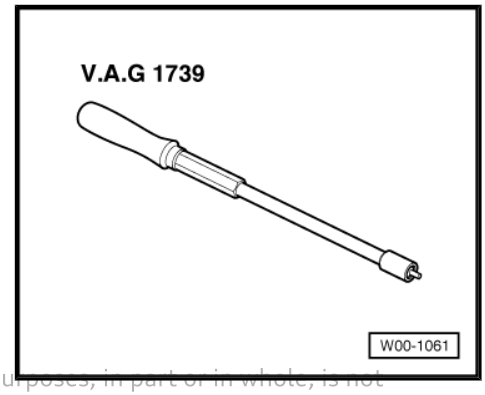
4.3.4 Lateral adjustment

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever - 80-200-



♦ Rear window adjusting tool - V.A.G 1739-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Use this tool for lateral adjustment.

♦ Tubular socket wrench, commercially available

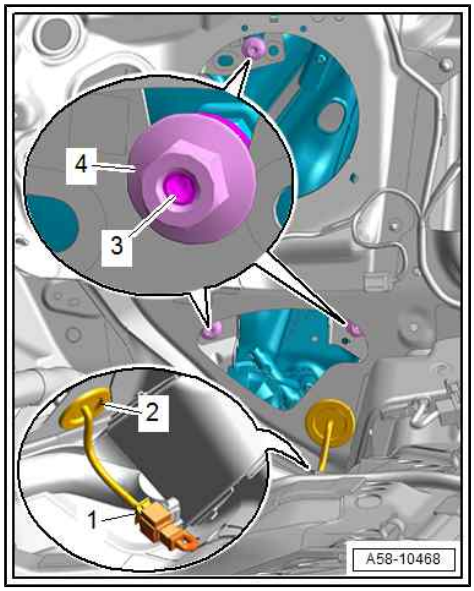
Lateral adjustment at window regulator:

– Remove loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .

– Loosen nuts -4- several turns using tubular socket wrench; counterhold adjuster screws -3- with tool insert while doing so.
– Turn adjuster screws -3- with rear window adjusting tool - V.A.G 1739- .
• Turning anti-clockwise turns side window inwards
• Turning clockwise turns side window outwards
– After adjusting, tighten nut.

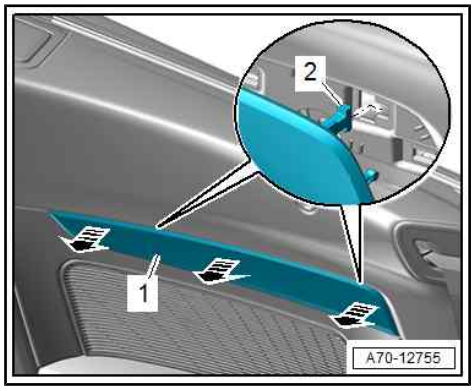
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “4.1.5 Exploded view - rear side window, A5 Cabriolet”, page 504



Lateral adjustment at side window:

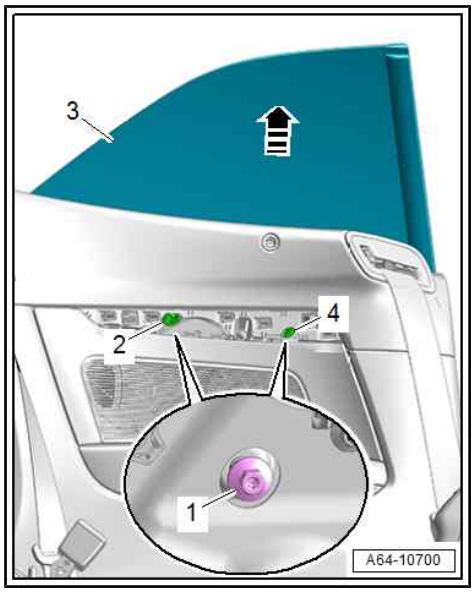
– Carefully unclip trim panel -1- from side trim -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .
– Pull trim panel slightly off side trim and slide it towards rear; hooks -2- can then be disengaged from side trim.



– Pierce grommets -2, 3- using a suitable tool.
– Loosen bolts -1- and adjust side window.
– After adjusting, tighten bolts.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “4.1.5 Exploded view - rear side window, A5 Cabriolet”, page 504



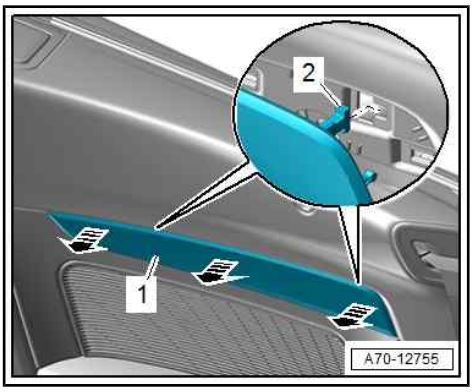
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.3.5 Height adjustment

Procedure

– Carefully unclip trim panel -1- from side trim -arrows- using removal lever - 80-200- .

– Pull trim panel slightly off side trim and slide it towards rear; hooks -2- can then be disengaged from side trim.



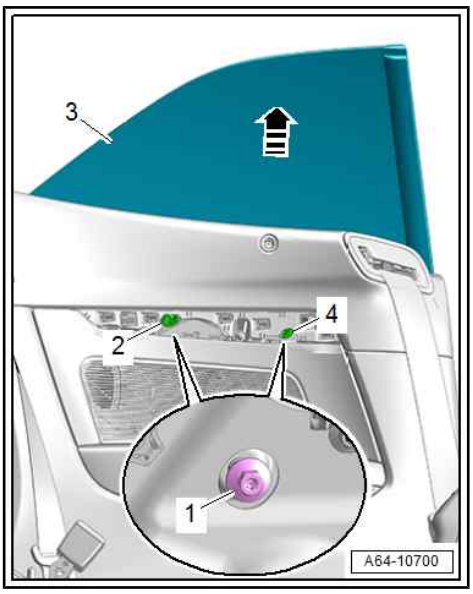
– Pierce grommets -2, 3- using a suitable tool.

– Loosen bolts -1- and adjust side window.

– After adjusting, tighten bolts.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “4.1.5 Exploded view - rear side window, A5 Cabriolet”, page 504



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5 Door windows

⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - front door window”, page 522
⇒ “5.2 Exploded view - rear door window”, page 524
⇒ “5.3 Removing and installing front door window”, page 526
⇒ “5.4 Adjusting front door window”, page 528
⇒ “5.5 Removing and installing rear door window”, page 540
⇒ “5.6 Adjusting rear door window”, page 543

5.1 Exploded view - front door window

⇒ “5.1.1 Exploded view - front door window, A4”, page 522
⇒ “5.1.2 Exploded view - front door window, A5”, page 523

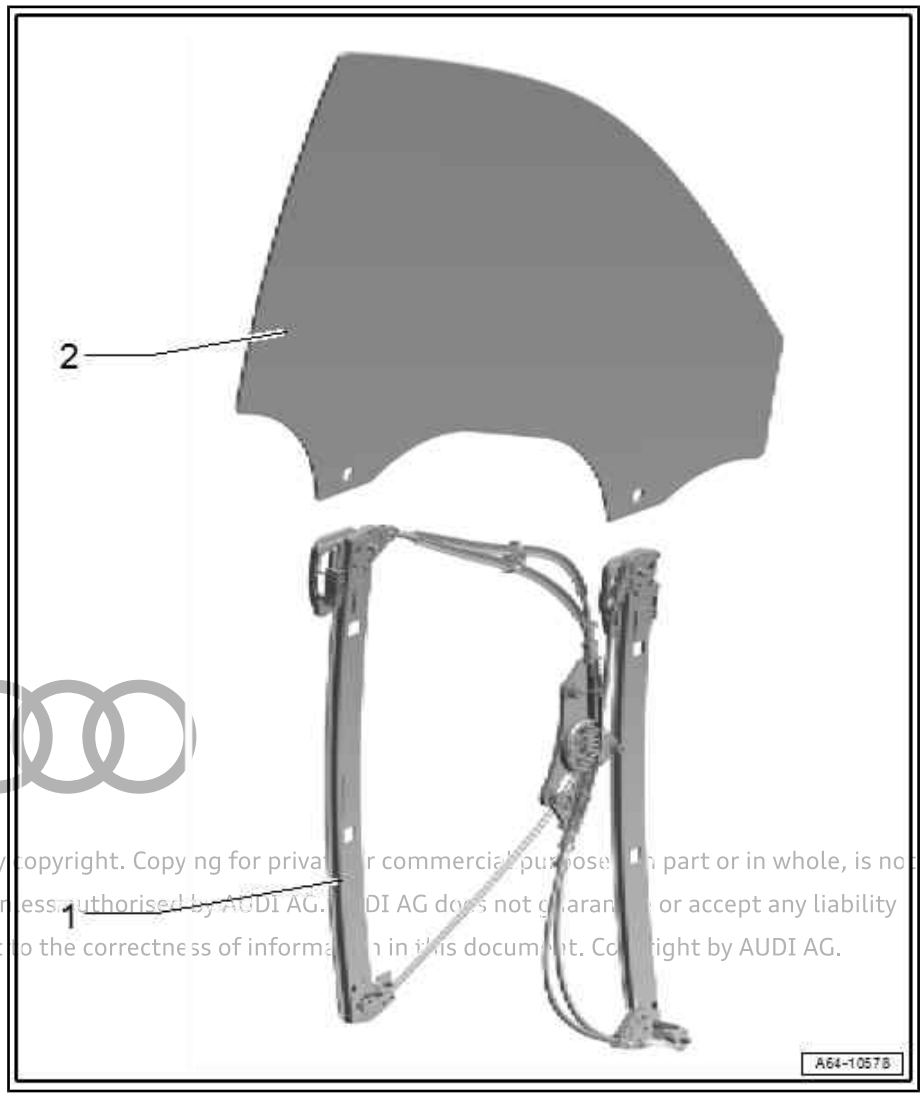
5.1.1 Exploded view - front door window, A4

1 - Window regulator

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 149

2 - Door window

- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ page 526



Protected by copyright. Copy ng for priva r commercial pur pose part or in whole, is no permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. DI AG do s not g aran or accept any liability with respect o the correctne ss of informa n in this docum t. Co right by AUDI AG.

5.1.2 Exploded view - front door window, A5

1 - Window regulator

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 149

2 - Bolt

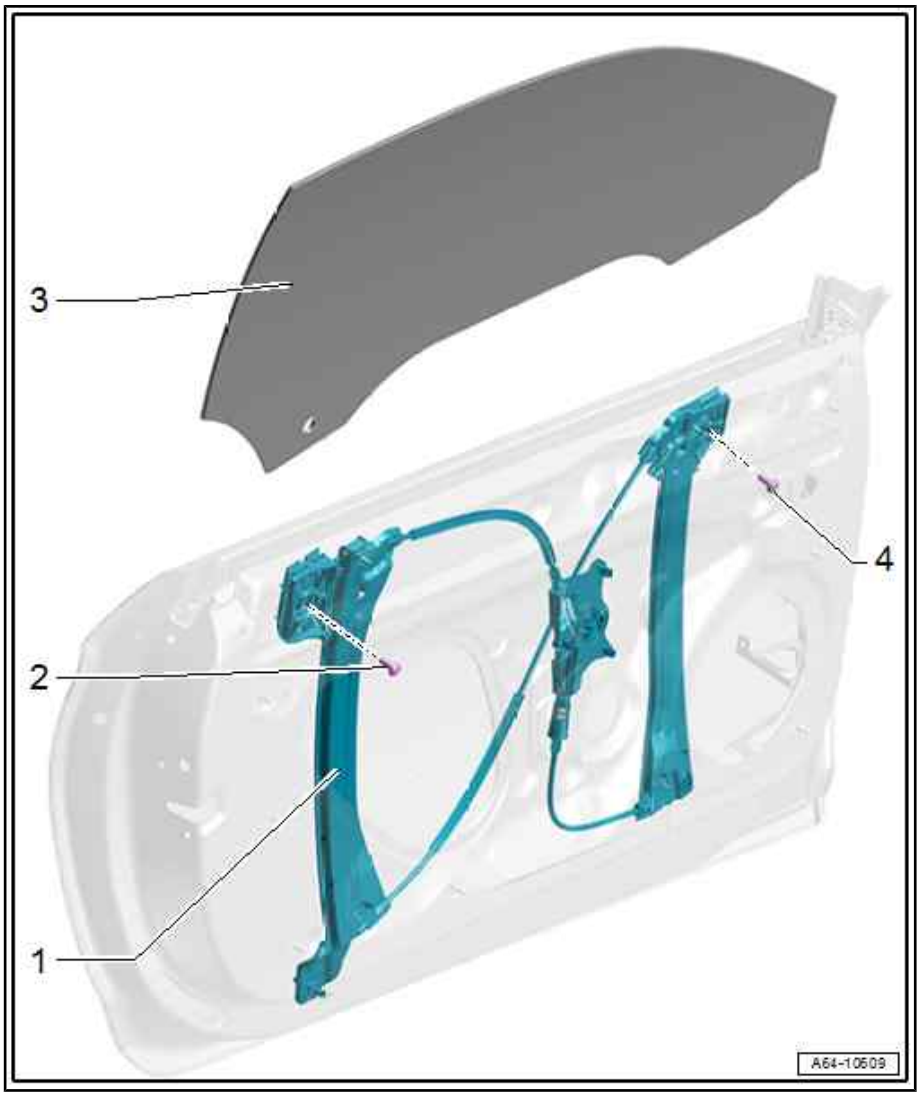
- ❑ 8 Nm

3 - Door window

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 527
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 528

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.2 Exploded view - rear door window

⇒ “5.2.1 Exploded view - rear door window, A4”, page 524

⇒ “5.2.2 Exploded view - rear door window, A4, country-specific version ”, page 525

⇒ “5.2.3 Exploded view - rear door window, A5”, page 526

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.2.1 Exploded view - rear door window, A4

1 - Window regulator

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 201

2 - Locking pin

3 - Stud

- ❑ Studs can be re-installed

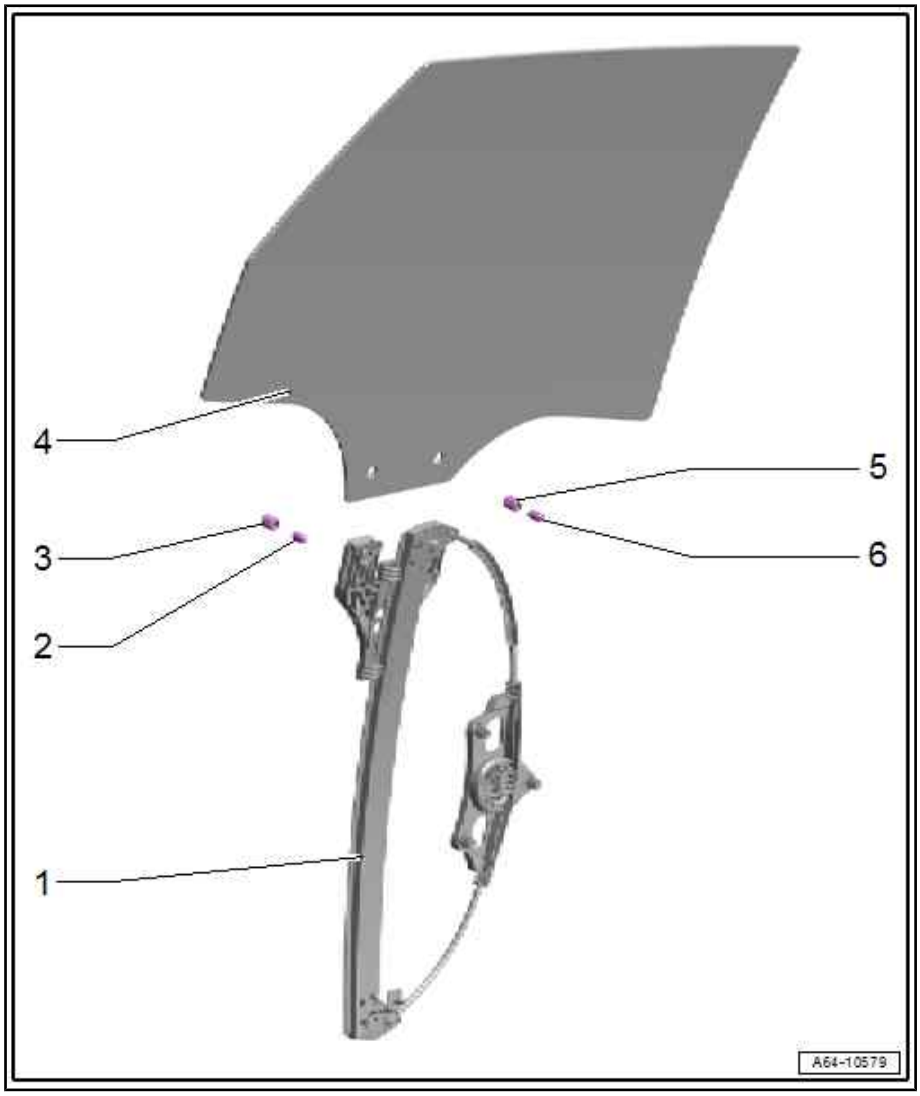
4 - Door window

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 540

5 - Stud

- ❑ Studs can be re-installed

6 - Locking pin



5.2.2 Exploded view - rear door window, A4, country-specific version

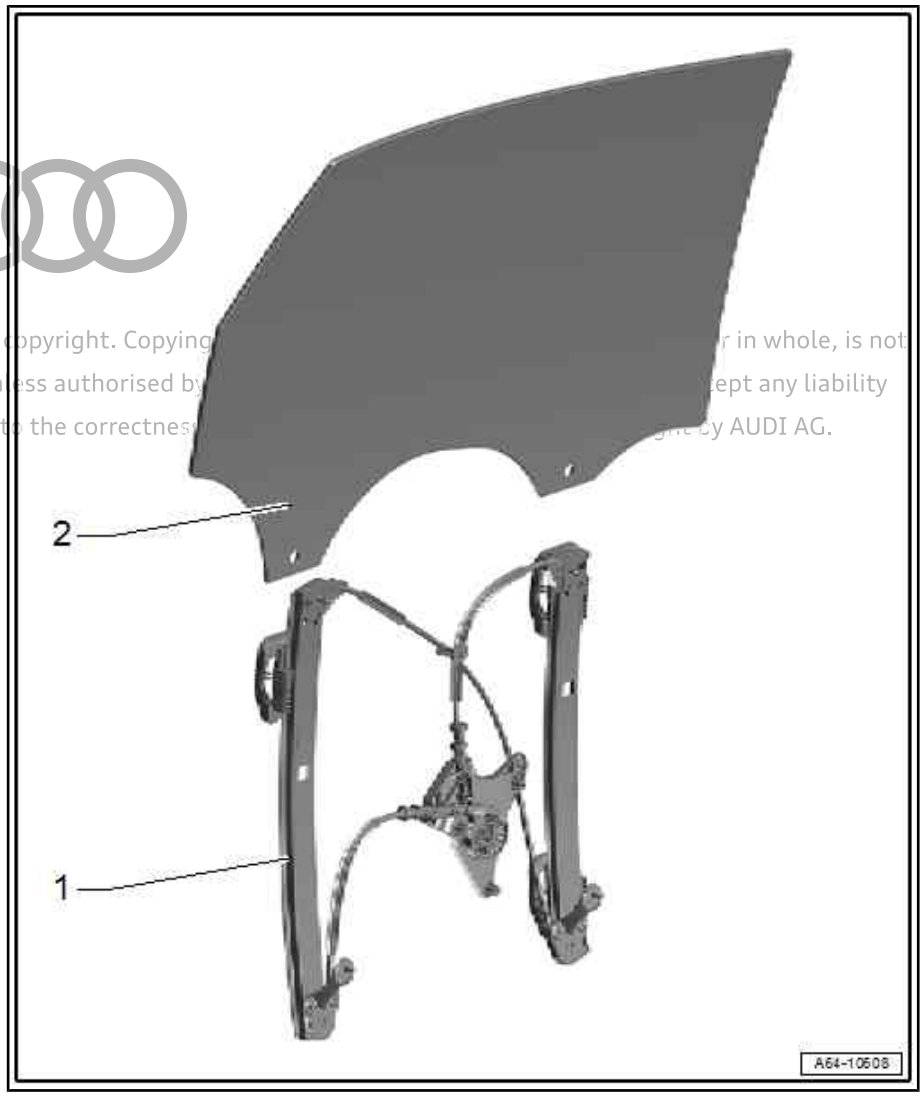
1 - Window regulator

- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 203

2 - Door window

- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ page 541

Protected by copyright. Copying in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



5.2.3 Exploded view - rear door window, A5

1 - Window regulator

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 204

2 - Bolt

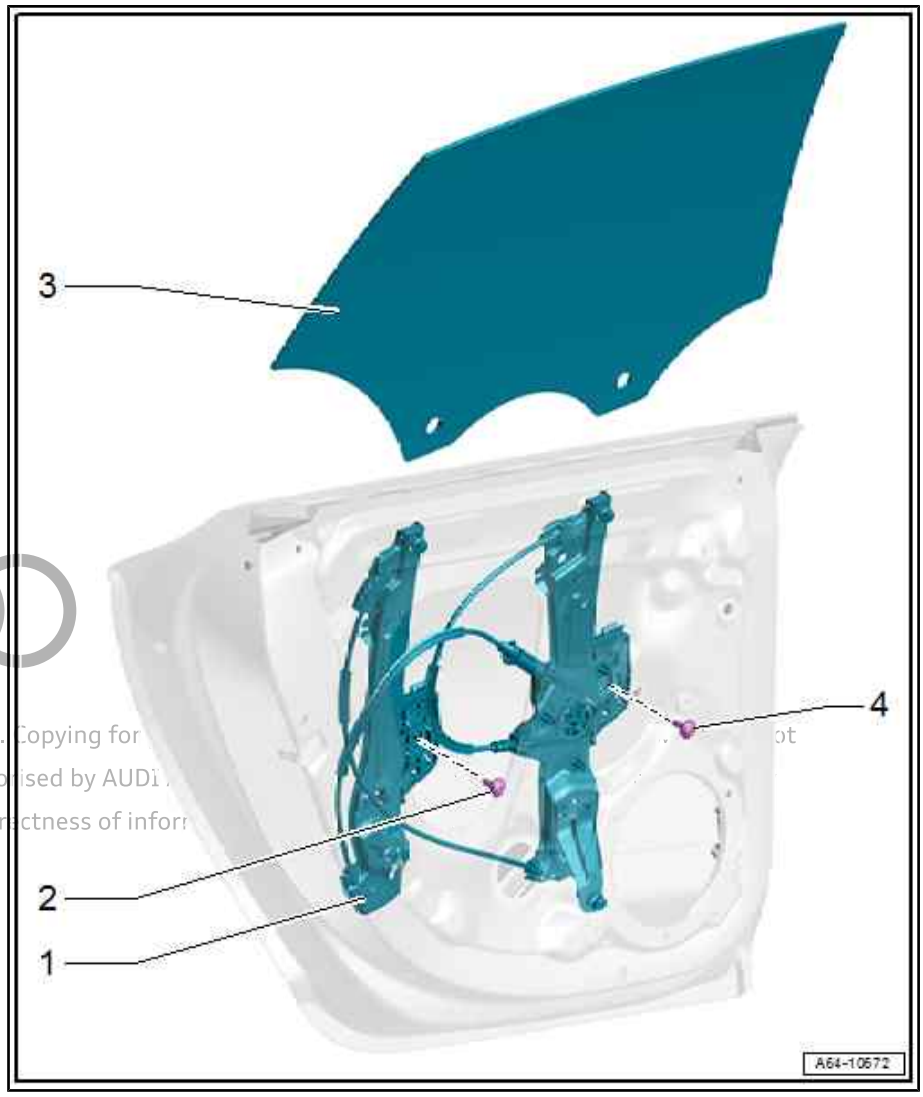
- ❑ 8 Nm

3 - Door window

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 542
- ❑ Adjusting ⇒ page 543

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for
permitted unless authorised by AUDI
with respect to the correctness of inform

5.3 Removing and installing front door window

⇒ “5.3.1 Removing and installing front door window - A4”, page 526

⇒ “5.3.2 Removing and installing front door window - A5”, page 527

5.3.1 Removing and installing front door window - A4

Removing

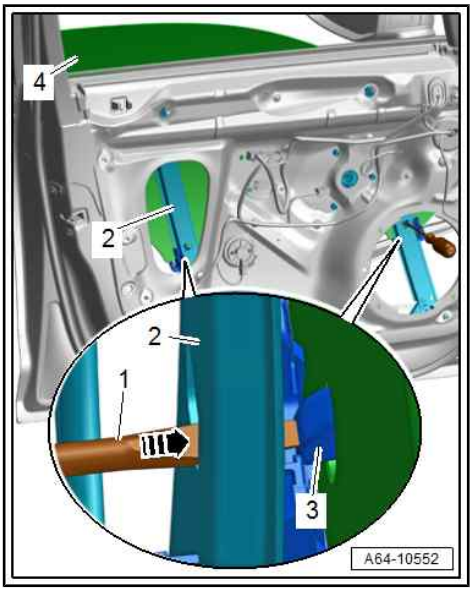
– Remove inner window slot trim strip ⇒ page 167 .

– Remove window regulator motor ⇒ page 157 .

– Remove bass loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .

– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 165 .

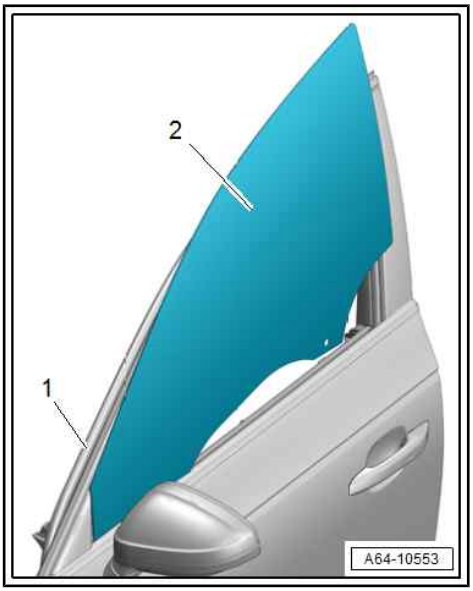
– Lower door window -4- until fastener -3- on actuator is flush with recess in window regulator -2-.
– Release fastener using a screwdriver -1- or similar tool through recess and through hole in door window -arrow- and at the same time detach door window upwards from actuator.
– Tilt door window diagonally forwards and pull it upwards out of window guide.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Tilt door window -2- forwards and insert it in door window guide -1-.
– Align door window in window guides (front and rear) and slide door window downwards.
– Press door window downwards into actuators.
• Actuators then engage in door window.
• The door window does not have to be adjusted.



5.3.2 Removing and installing front door window - A5

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

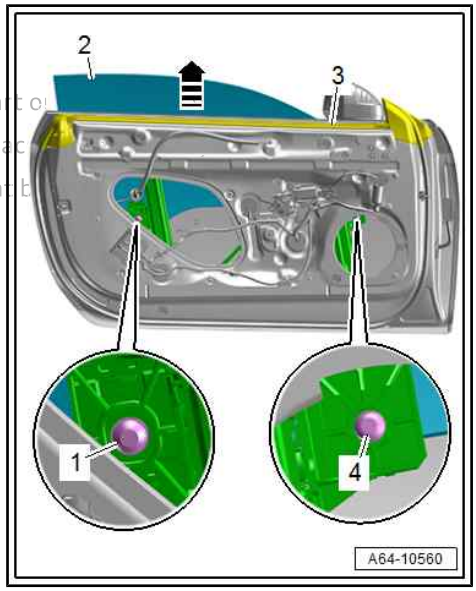
– Remove window regulator motor ⇒ page 157 .
– Remove bass loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .
– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 165 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ac
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright b

– Detach inner window slot trim strip -3- from door seam ⇒ page 168 .

– Lower door window until bolts in opening are visible.

– Unscrew bolt -1- and loosen bolt -4- by just four turns.



Note:

The rear bolt must be removed completely to remove the door window.

– Pull door window -2- upwards out of clamping jaws and lift out of door -arrow-.

Installing

• Gap widths ⇒ page 528

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Tilt door window forwards, insert it in door window guide and then rotate it into door slot.

– Push door window carefully and parallel downwards into clamping jaws. When doing so, make sure door window is secured in window guide (front).

– Press door window downwards into clamping jaws.

Note:

Before inserting bolts (rear), check that door window is seated in mounting of clamping jaw.

– Tighten bolts.

– Adjust door window ⇒ page 528 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - front door window”, page 522

5.4 Adjusting front door window

⇒ “5.4.1 Adjustment dimensions - A5 Coupé”, page 528

⇒ “5.4.2 Adjustment dimensions - A5 Sportback”, page 530

⇒ “5.4.3 Adjustment dimensions - A5 Cabriolet”, page 531

⇒ “5.4.4 Checking lateral adjustment”, page 532

⇒ “5.4.5 Checking height adjustment - A5 Coupé”, page 535

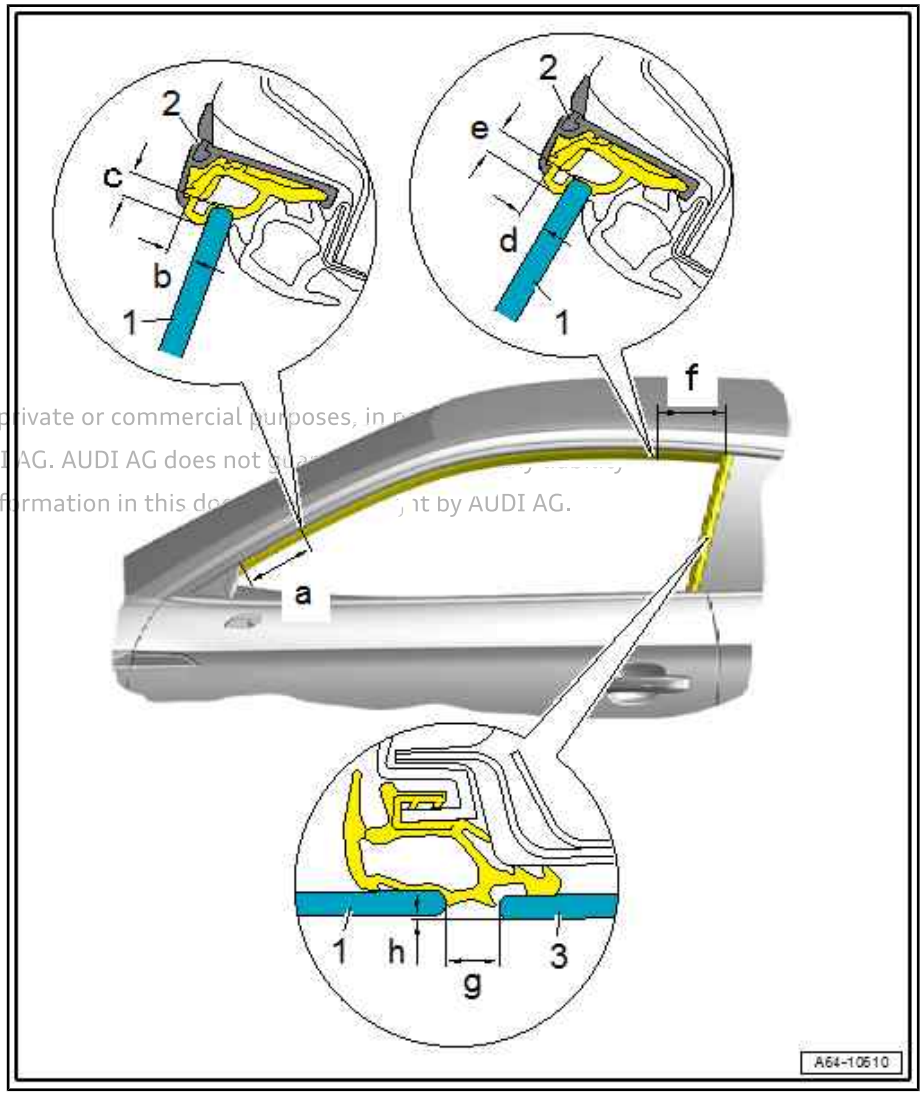
⇒ “5.4.6 Checking height adjustment - A5 Sportback”, page 536

⇒ “5.4.7 Checking height adjustment - A5 Cabriolet”, page 537

⇒ “5.4.8 Lateral adjustment”, page 538

⇒ “5.4.9 Height adjustment”, page 539

5.4.1 Adjustment dimensions - A5 Coupé



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not
with respect to the correctness of information in this do
nt by AUDI AG.

Door window to A-pillar

- Gap width -b- = 5.5 mm
- Gap width -c- = 4.9 mm
- Dimension -a- = 100 mm (measured from A-pillar trim panel)

-1- Door window

-2- Roof trim strip

Door window to roof (rear)

- Gap width -d- = 5.7 mm
- Gap width -e- = 3.3 mm
- Dimension -f- = 100 mm (measured from centre of inner door seal)

-1- Door window

-2- Roof trim strip

Door window to side window

- Gap width -g- = 8 ... 10 mm
- Flush alignment -h- = ± 0.7 mm

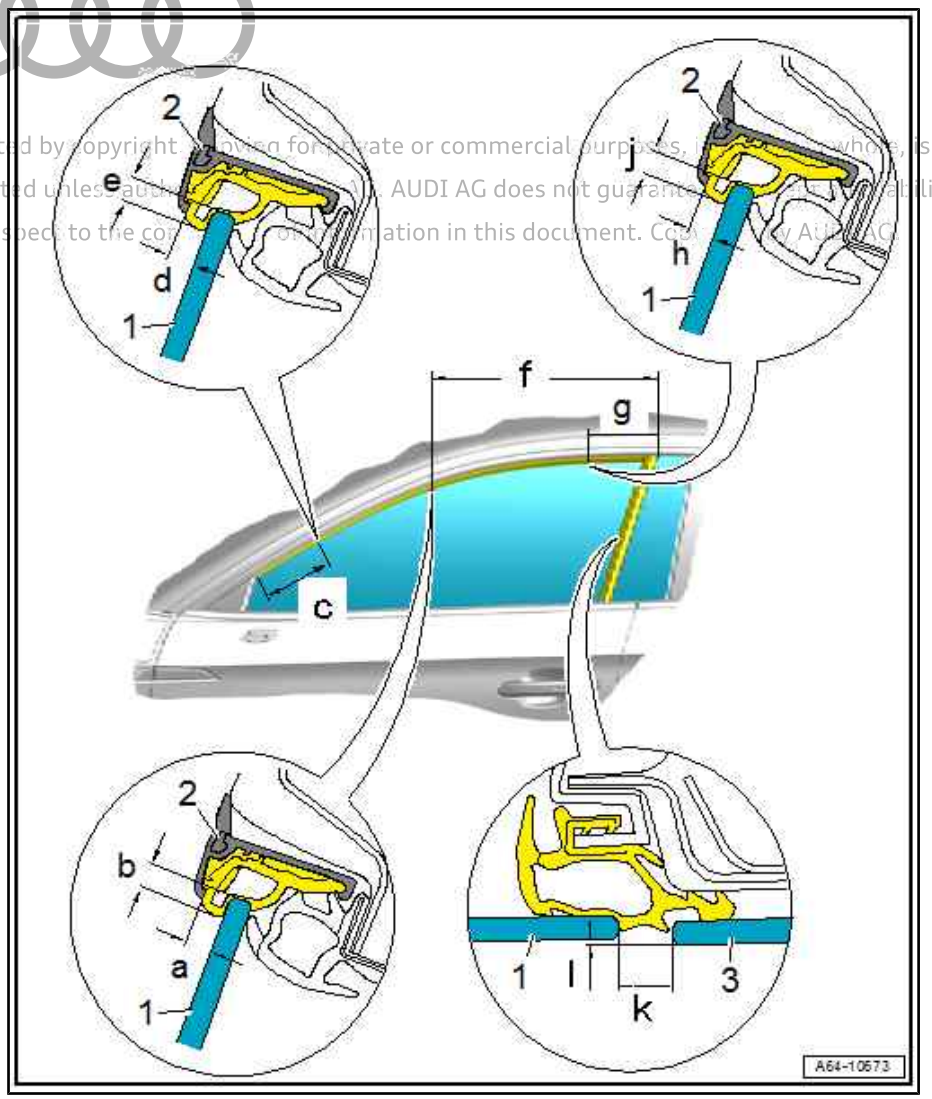
- Parallel adjustment = 0.9 mm

-1- Door window

-3- Side window

5.4.2 Adjustment dimensions - A5 Sportback

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG



Door window to roof (front)

- Gap width -a- = 5.7 mm
- Gap width -b- = 3.3 mm
- Dimension -f- = 417 mm (measured from centre of inner door seal)

-1- Door window

-2- Roof trim strip

Door window to A-pillar

- Gap width -d- = 5.1 mm
- Gap width -e- = 2.4 mm
- Dimension -c- = 50 mm (measured from A-pillar trim panel)

-1- Door window

-2- Roof trim strip

Door window to roof (rear)

- Gap width -h- = 5.7 mm
- Gap width -j- = 3.3 mm
- Dimension -g- = 100 mm (measured from centre of inner door seal)

-1- Door window

-2- Roof trim strip

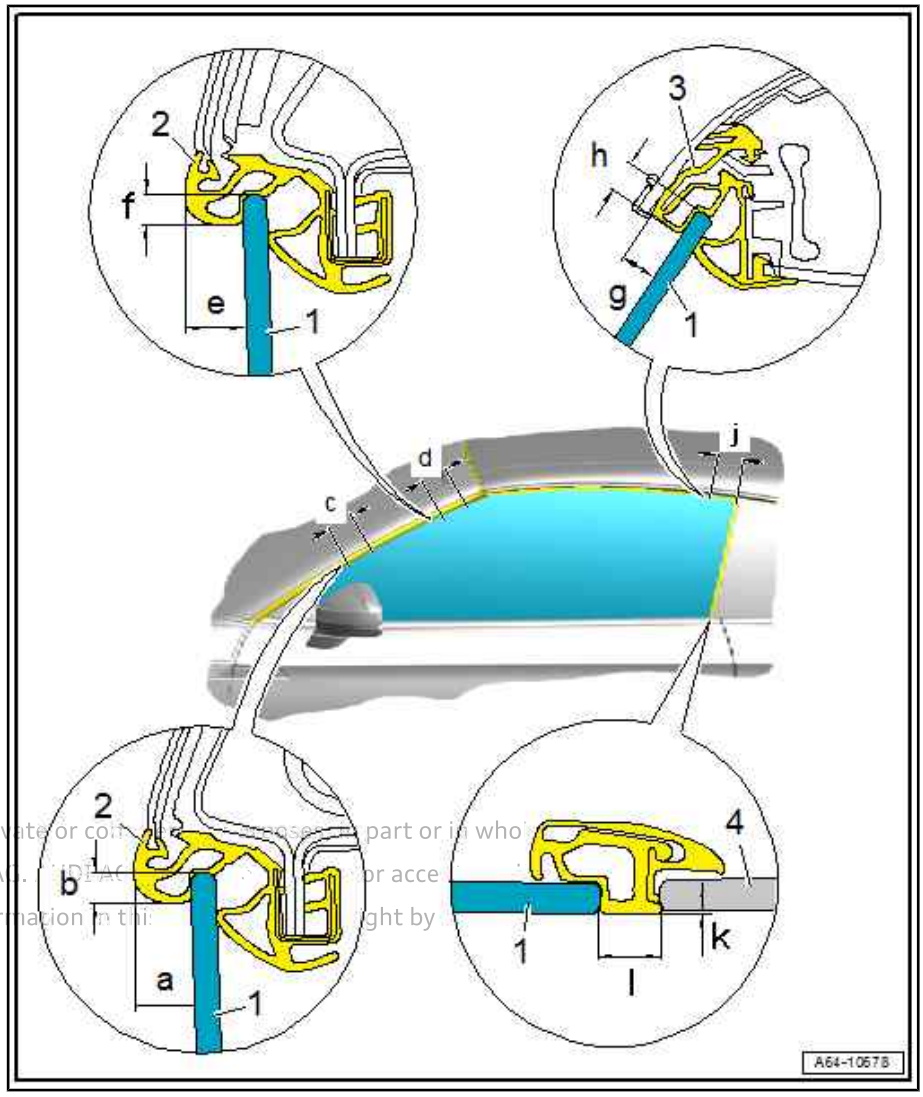
Door window to B-pillar trim panel

- Gap width -k- = 9.8 mm
- Flush alignment -l- = ± 1.1 mm
- Parallel adjustment = 1.0 mm

-1- Door window

-3- Trim panel for B-pillar

5.4.3 Adjustment dimensions - A5 Cabriolet



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Door window to A-pillar

- Gap width -a- = 12.4 ± 1.0 mm
- Gap width -b- = 6.7 +1.5/-1.0 mm
- Dimension -c- = 20 mm (measured from marking on door seal)

-1- Door window

-2- Inner door seal

Door window to A-pillar

- Gap width -e- = 12.4 ± 1.0 mm
- Gap width -f- = 7.1 +1.5/-1.0 mm
- Dimension -d- = 20 mm (measured from marking on door seal)

-1- Door window

-2- Inner door seal

Door window to convertible roof

- Gap width -h- = 6.2 mm
- Gap width -g- = 5.7 mm
- Dimension -j- = 100 mm (measured from centre of window seal for side window)

-1- Door window

-3- Convertible roof seal

Door window to side window

- Flush alignment -k- = ± 0.7 mm
- Gap width -l- = 10.2 + 1.0 mm
- Parallel adjustment = 0.9 mm

-1- Door window

-4- Side window

5.4.4 Checking lateral adjustment

- Checking lateral adjustment relative to inside edge of roof trim strip/convertible roof ⇒ page 533
- Checking lateral adjustment relative to side window - A5 Coupé ⇒ page 534
- Checking lateral adjustment relative to B-pillar trim panel - A5 Sportback ⇒ page 535
- Checking lateral adjustment relative to side window - A5 Cabriolet ⇒ page 535

If there is wind noise at the door window, check lateral adjustment.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Setting gauge - 3371-



♦ Digital caliper, 150 mm - VAS 6335-

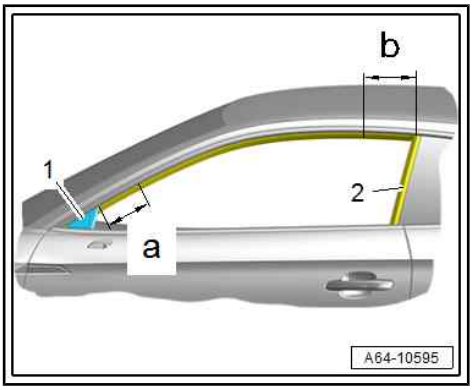
Checking lateral adjustment relative to inside edge of roof trim strip/convertible roof:

A5 Coupé:

– Determine measuring points at door window:

• Dimension -a- = 100 mm (measured from A-pillar trim panel -1-) ⇒ page 529

• Dimension -b- = 100 mm (measured from centre of inner door seal -2-) ⇒ page 529



A5 Sportback:

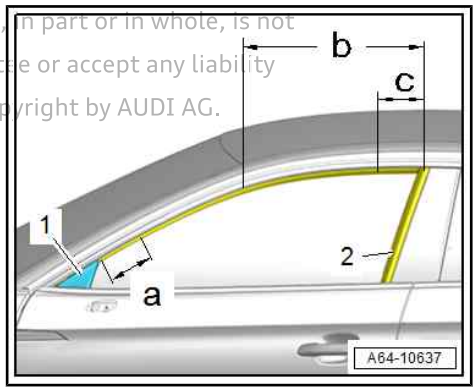
– Determine measuring points at door window:

• Dimension -a- = 50 mm (measured from A-pillar trim panel -1-) ⇒ page 530

• Dimension -b- = 417 mm (measured from centre of inner door seal -2-) ⇒ page 530

• Dimension -c- = 100 mm (measured from centre of inner door seal -2-) ⇒ page 531

Copyright by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
whatsoever with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



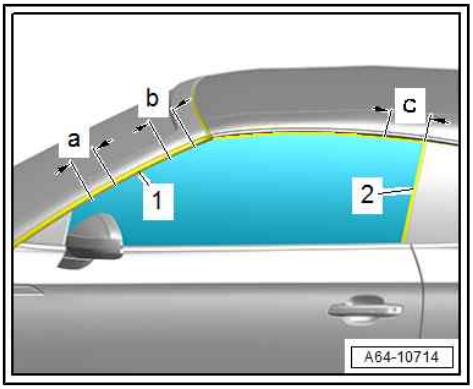
A5 Cabriolet:

– Determine measuring points at door window:

• Dimension -a- = 20 mm (measured from top marking on inner door seal -1-) ⇒ page 532

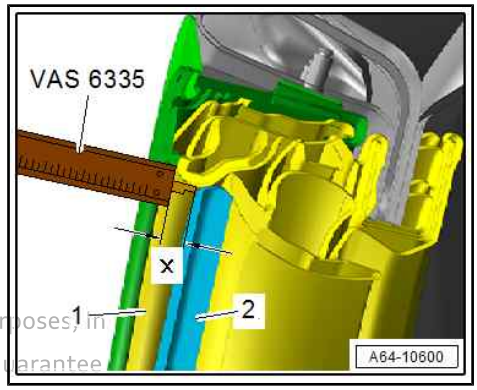
• Dimension -b- = 20 mm (measured from bottom marking on inner door seal -1-) ⇒ page 532

• Dimension -c- = 100 mm (measured from centre of window seal for side window -2-) ⇒ page 532



Continued:

– Position digital caliper -VAS 6335- at specified measuring points on inner door seal -1- and measure dimension -x- to door window -2-.



A5 Coupé:

- Dimension -b- ⇒ page 529
- Dimension -d- ⇒ page 529

A5 Sportback:

- Dimension -a- ⇒ page 530
- Dimension -c- ⇒ page 530
- Dimension -e- ⇒ page 531

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

A5 Cabriolet:

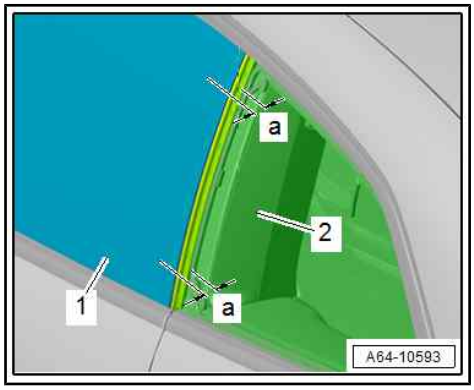
- Dimension -a- ⇒ page 532
- Dimension -e- ⇒ page 532
- Dimension -g- ⇒ page 532

– If lateral adjustment of door window is not correct, adjust door window ⇒ page 538 .

Checking lateral adjustment relative to side window - A5 Coupé:

– Door window -1- must be parallel to side window -2- at both top and bottom.

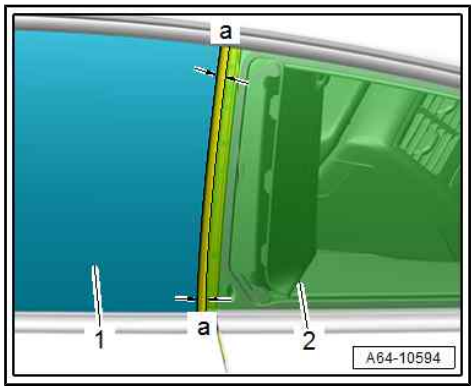
- Parallel dimension -a- ⇒ page 530



– Measure gap width between door window -1- and side window -2-.

- Gap width -a- ⇒ page 529

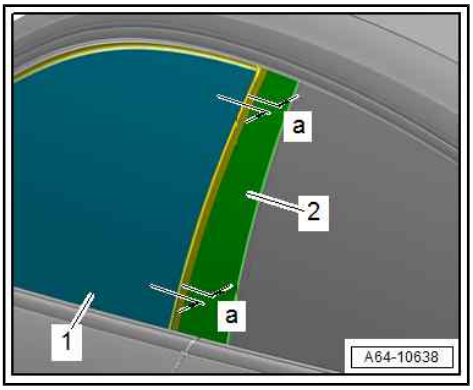
– If lateral adjustment of door window is not correct, adjust door window ⇒ page 538 .



Checking lateral adjustment relative to B-pillar trim panel:

– Door window -1- must be parallel to B-pillar trim panel -2- at both top and bottom.

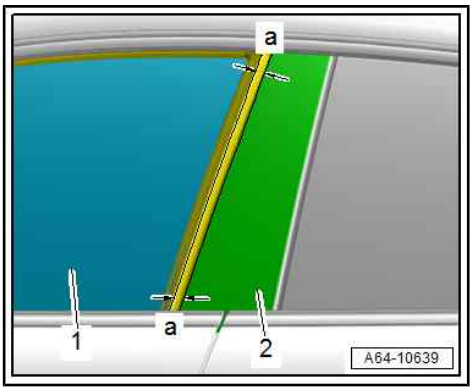
• Parallel dimension -a- ⇒ page 531



– Measure gap width between door window -1- and B-pillar trim panel -2-.

• Gap width -a- ⇒ page 531

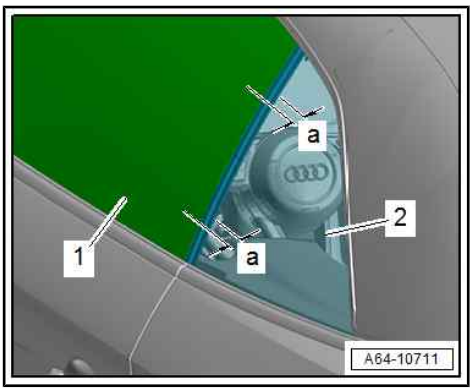
– If lateral adjustment of door window is not correct, adjust door window ⇒ page 538 .



Checking lateral adjustment relative to side window - A5 Cabriolet:

– Door window -1- must be parallel to side window -2- at both top and bottom.

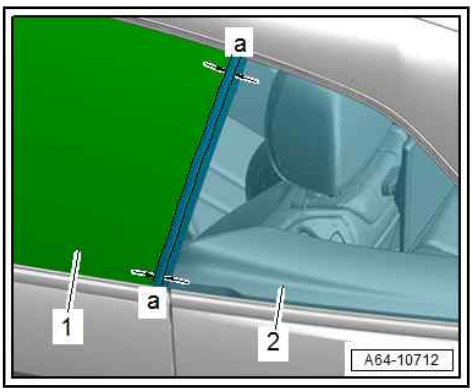
• Parallel dimension -a- ⇒ page 532



– Measure gap width between door window -1- and side window -2-.

• Gap width -a- ⇒ page 532

– If lateral adjustment of door window is not correct, adjust door window ⇒ page 538 .



5.4.5 Checking height adjustment - A5 Coupé

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

If there is wind noise at the door window, check height adjustment.

• Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 528

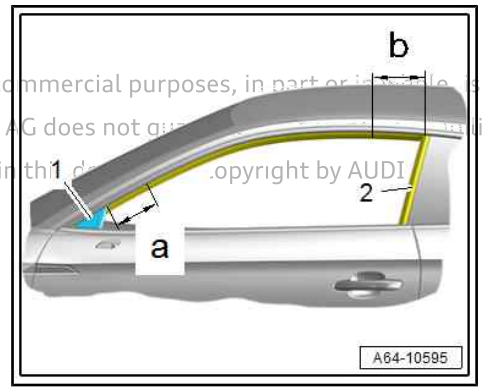
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Adhesive tape

Procedure

– Determine measuring points at door window:

- Dimension -a- = 100 mm (measured from A-pillar trim panel) ⇒ page 529
- Dimension -b- = 100 mm (measured from centre of inner door seal) ⇒ page 529



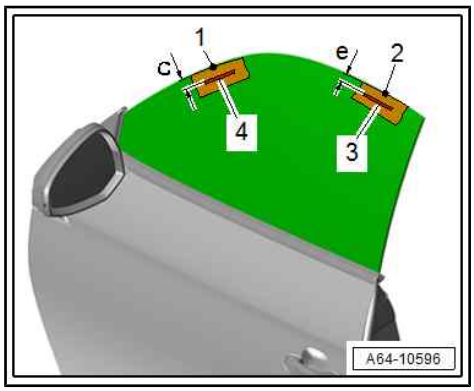
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI

– Apply adhesive tape at specified measuring points -1, 2- on door window.

– Mark reference lines -3, 4- on adhesive tape (measuring from top edge of door window).

- Dimension -c- ⇒ page 529
- Dimension -e- ⇒ page 529

– Close door.

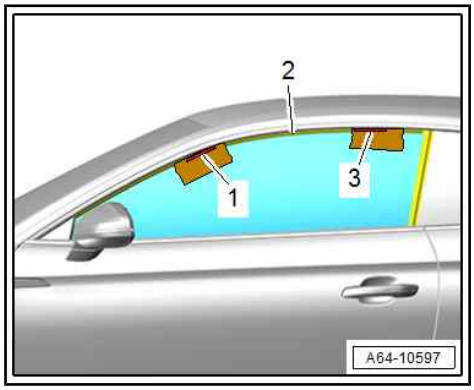


- The reference lines -1, 3- on the adhesive tape should align with the bottom edge of the inner door seal -2-.

Note:

The immersion depth of the windows can also be measured at the specified measuring points using the gauge - T10391- .

– Adjust height of door window accordingly if incorrect ⇒ page 539 .



5.4.6 Checking height adjustment - A5 Sportback

If there is wind noise at the door window, check height adjustment.

- Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 528

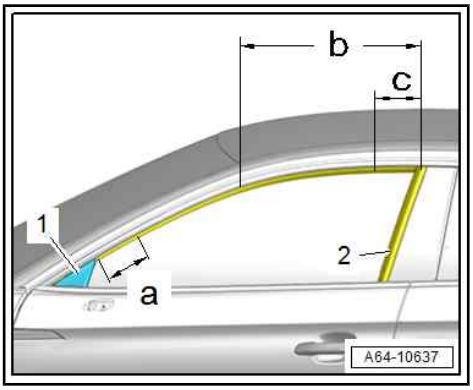
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Adhesive tape

Procedure

– Determine measuring points at door window:

- Dimension -a- = 50 mm (measured from A-pillar trim panel -1-) ⇒ page 530
- Dimension -b- = 417 mm (measured from centre of inner door seal -2-) ⇒ page 530
- Dimension -c- = 100 mm (measured from centre of inner door seal -2-) ⇒ page 531

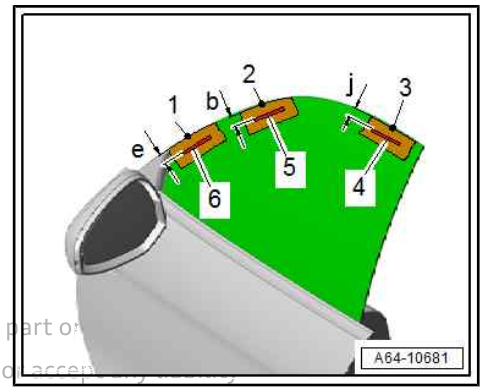


– Apply adhesive tape at specified measuring points -1, 2, 3- on door window.

– Mark reference lines -4, 5, 6- on adhesive tape (measuring from top edge of door window).

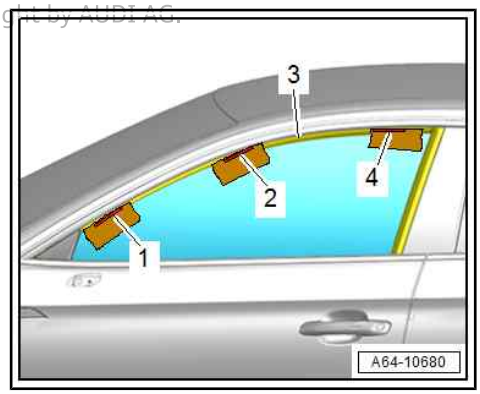
- Dimension -b- ⇒ page 530
- Dimension -e- ⇒ page 530
- Dimension -j- ⇒ page 531

– Close door.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- The reference lines -1, 2, 4- on the adhesive tape should align with the bottom edge of the inner door seal -3-.



Note:

The immersion depth of the windows can also be measured at the specified measuring points using the gauge - T10391- .

– Adjust height of door window accordingly if incorrect ⇒ page 539 .

5.4.7 Checking height adjustment - A5 Cabriolet

If there is wind noise at the door window, check height adjustment.

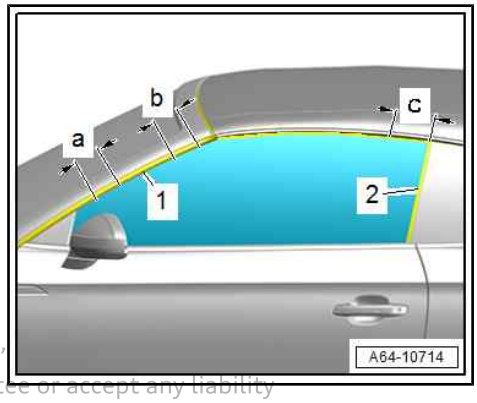
- Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 528

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Adhesive tape

– Determine measuring points at door window:

- Dimension -a- = 20 mm (measured from top marking on inner door seal -1-) ⇒ page 532
- Dimension -b- = 20 mm (measured from bottom marking on inner door seal -1-) ⇒ page 532
- Dimension -c- = 100 mm (measured from centre of window seal for side window -2-) ⇒ page 532

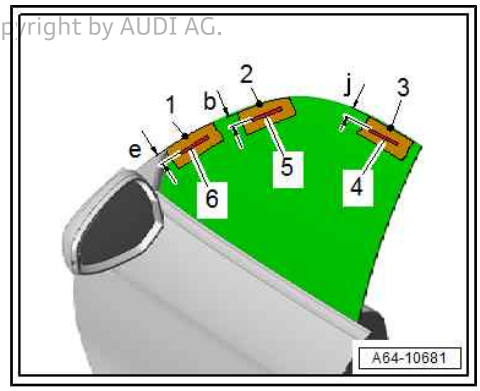


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Apply adhesive tape at specified measuring points -1, 2, 3- on door window.
– Mark reference lines -4, 5, 6- on adhesive tape (measuring from top edge of door window).

- Dimension -c- ⇒ page 532
- Dimension -d- ⇒ page 532
- Dimension -g- ⇒ page 532

– Close door.

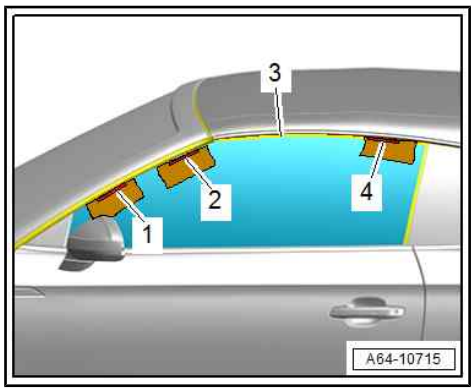


- The reference lines -1, 2, 4- on the adhesive tape should align with the bottom edge of the inner door seal -3-.

Note:

The immersion depth of the windows can also be measured at the specified measuring points using the gauge - T10391- .

– Adjust height of door window accordingly if incorrect ⇒ page 539 .



5.4.8 Lateral adjustment

Procedure

– Remove door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (front); Removing and installing door trim (front) .

– Take out plugs -arrows-.

– Loosen nut -2- and turn adjuster screw -1- with Torx socket wrench.

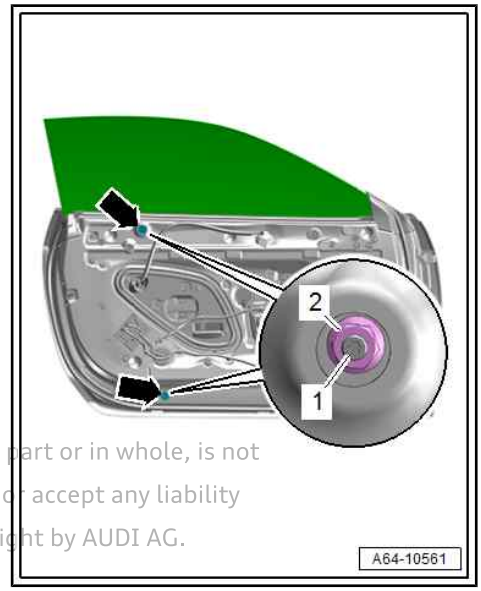
Door (left-side):

- Turning anti-clockwise turns door window inwards.
- Turning clockwise turns door window outwards.

Door (right-side):

- Turning anti-clockwise turns door window outwards.
- Turning clockwise turns door window inwards.

– After adjusting, tighten nut.



Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - window regulator", page 149

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless otherwise stated by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.4.9 Height adjustment

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Socket - T10570-

Procedure

– Move door window to "open" position.

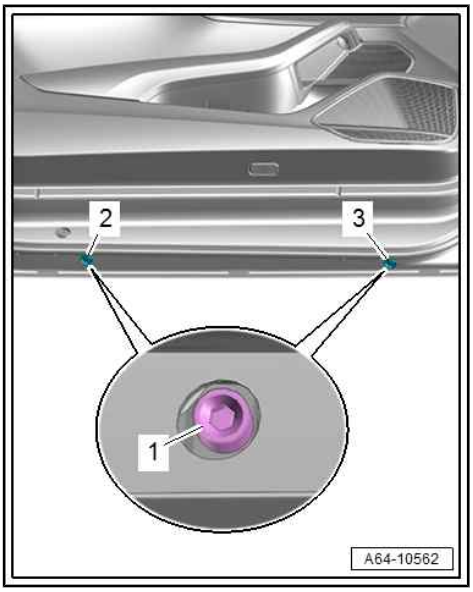
– Take out sealing plugs -2 and 3-.

– Turn adjuster screw -1- using socket - T10570- .

Note:

A5 Sportback: Position of sealing plug -3- differs from illustration; it is located above outer door seal.

- One turn = 1 mm adjustment



5.5 Removing and installing rear door window

⇒ “5.5.1 Removing and installing rear door window - A4”, page 540

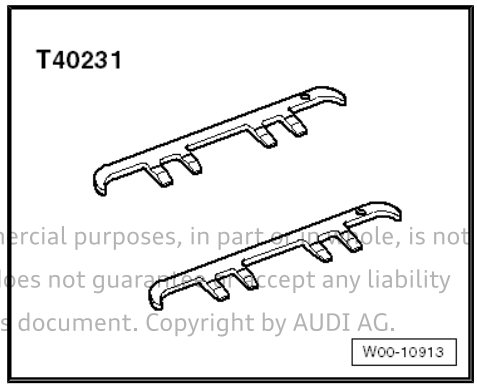
⇒ “5.5.2 Removing and installing rear door window - A4, country-specific version ”, page 541

⇒ “5.5.3 Removing and installing rear door window - A5”, page 542

5.5.1 Removing and installing rear door window - A4

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Use removal tool - T40231- for standard glass.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove inner window slot trim strip ⇒ page 225 .

– Remove outer window slot trim strip ⇒ page 228 .

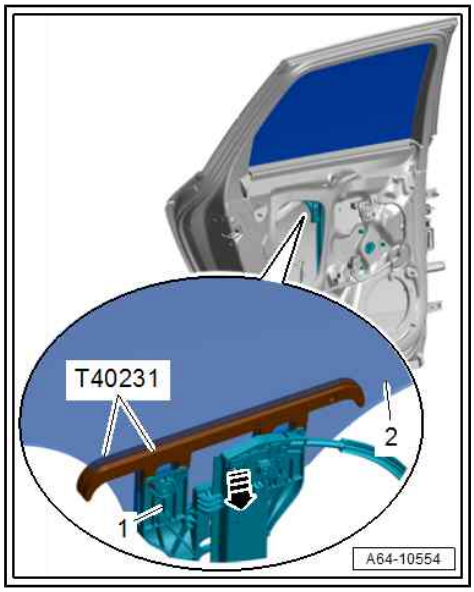
– Remove window regulator motor ⇒ page 215 .

– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 222 .

– Insert removal tool - T40231- on both sides of door window -2- and press downwards at mounting for window regulator -1- -arrow-.

• This will bend open mounting at window regulator so that door window with retaining pins can be lifted out.

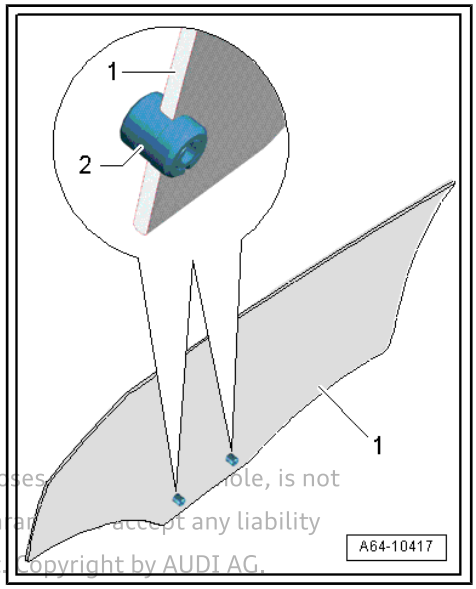
– Pull door window -2- upwards out of mounting and lift out of door.



Installing

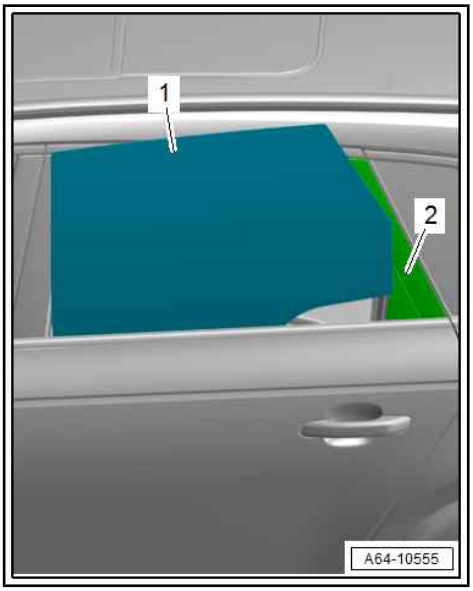
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Insert retaining pins -2- centrally in door window -1- and press locking pin in until it is flush.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Tilt door window -1- forwards and insert it in door window guide -2-.
– Align door window in window guides (front and rear) and slide door window downwards.
– Press door window downwards into actuators.
• Actuators then engage in door window.

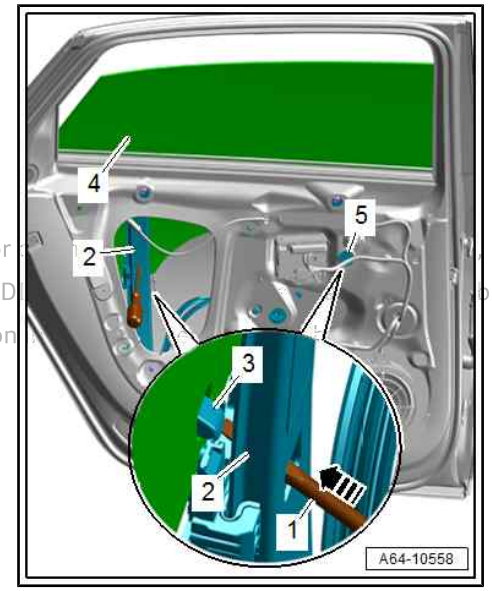


5.5.2 Removing and installing rear door window - A4, country-specific version

Removing

– Remove inner window slot trim strip ⇒ page 225 .
– Remove window regulator motor ⇒ page 215 .
– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 222 .
– Remove trim panel for C-pillar on door ⇒ page 620 .

– Take out sealing plug -5-.
– Lower door window -4- until fastener -3- on actuator is flush with recess in window regulator -2-.
– Release fastener using a screwdriver -1- or similar tool through recess and through hole in door window -arrow- and at the same time detach door window upwards from actuator.
– Pull door window upwards out of mounting and lift out of door.

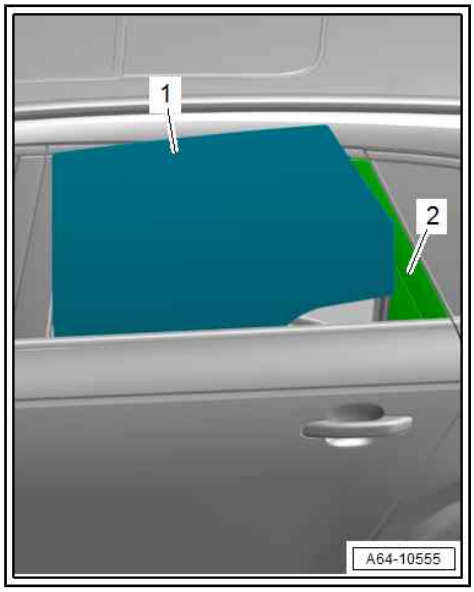


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or ... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUD... ...bility with respect to the correctness of information ...

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Tilt door window -1- forwards and insert it in door window guide -2-.
– Align door window in window guides (front and rear) and slide door window downwards.
– Press door window downwards into actuators.
• Actuators then engage in door window.



5.5.3 Removing and installing rear door window - A5

Removing

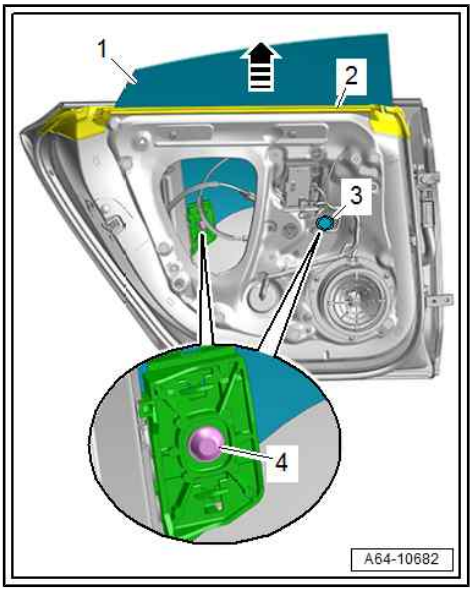
– Remove window regulator motor ⇒ page 215 .
– Remove inner door cover ⇒ page 222 .

– Detach inner window slot trim strip -2- from door seam ⇒ page 226 .
– Take out sealing plug -3-.
– Lower door window until bolts in opening are visible.
– Remove bolts -4-.

Note:

The bolts must be removed completely to remove the door window.

– Pull door window -1- upwards out of clamping jaws and lift out of door -arrow-.



Installing

• Gap widths ⇒ page 543

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Tilt door window forwards, insert it in door window guide and then rotate it into door slot.
– Push door window carefully and parallel downwards into clamping jaws.
– Press door window downwards into clamping jaws.

Note:

Before inserting bolts, check that door window is seated in mountings of clamping jaw.

– Tighten bolts.
– Adjust door window ⇒ page 543 .

Tightening torques

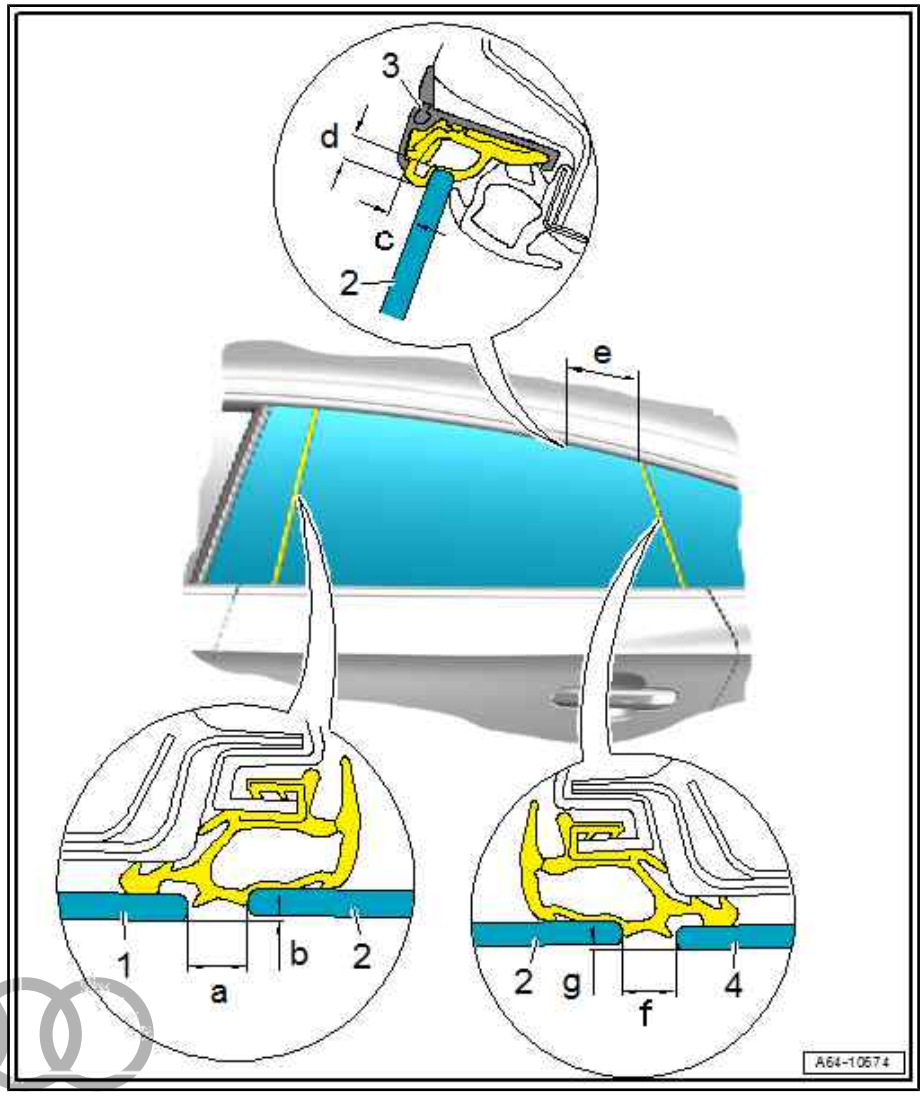
◆ ⇒ “5.2.3 Exploded view - rear door window, A5”, page 526

5.6 Adjusting rear door window

⇒ “5.6.1 Adjustment dimensions”, page 543
⇒ “5.6.2 Checking lateral adjustment”, page 545
⇒ “5.6.3 Checking height adjustment”, page 546
⇒ “5.6.4 Lateral adjustment”, page 547
⇒ “5.6.5 Height adjustment”, page 548

5.6.1 Adjustment dimensions

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Door window to B-pillar trim panel

- Gap width -a- = 9.8 mm
- Flush alignment -b- = ± 1.1 mm
- Parallel adjustment = 1.0 mm

-1- Trim panel for B-pillar

-2- Door window

Door window to roof (rear)

- Gap width -c- = 5.6 mm
- Gap width -d- = 3.0 mm
- Dimension -e- = 294.5 mm (measured from centre of inner door seal)

-2- Door window

-3- Roof trim strip

Door window to side window

- Gap width -f- = 8.8 mm
- Flush alignment -g- = ± 0.7 mm

- Parallel adjustment = 1.1 mm

-2- Door window

-4- Side window

5.6.2 Checking lateral adjustment

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ♦ Checking lateral adjustment relative to inside edge of roof trim strip ⇒ page 545
- ♦ Checking lateral adjustment relative to B-pillar trim panel ⇒ page 546
- ♦ Checking lateral adjustment relative to side window ⇒ page 546

If there is wind noise at the door window, check lateral adjustment.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Setting gauge - 3371-

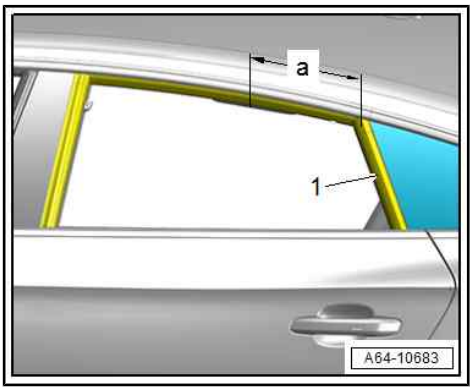


- ♦ Digital caliper, 150 mm - VAS 6335-

Checking lateral adjustment relative to inside edge of roof trim strip:

– Determine measuring points at door window:

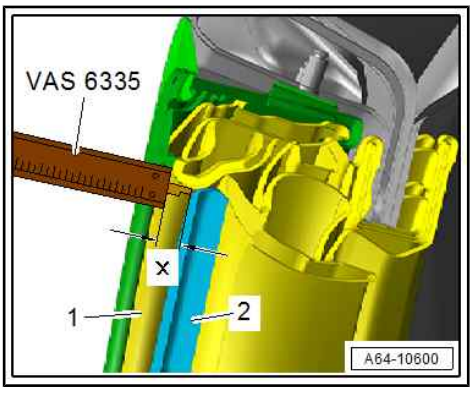
- Dimension -a- = 294.5 mm (measured from centre of inner door seal) -1- ⇒ page 544



– Position digital caliper -VAS 6335- at specified measuring points on inner door seal -1- and measure dimension -x- to door window -2-.

- Dimension -c- ⇒ page 544

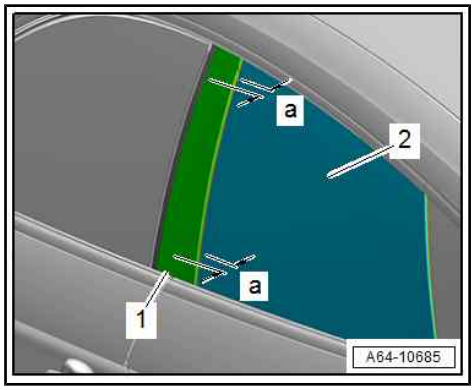
– If lateral adjustment of door window is not correct, adjust door window ⇒ page 538 .



Checking lateral adjustment relative to B-pillar trim panel:

– Door window -2- must be parallel to B-pillar trim panel -1- at both top and bottom.

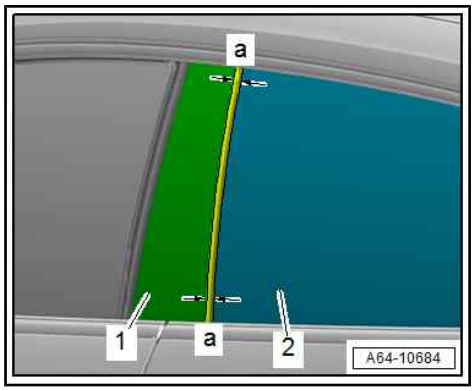
• Parallel dimension -a- ⇒ page 544



– Measure gap width between door window -2- and B-pillar trim panel -1-.

• Gap width -a- ⇒ page 544

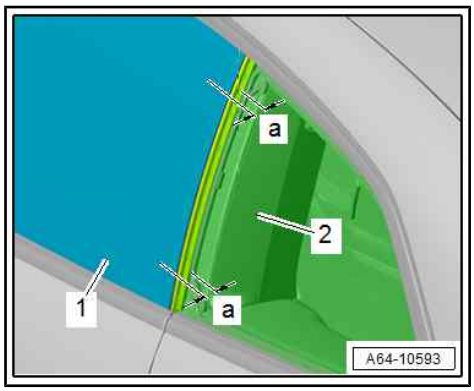
– If lateral adjustment of door window is not correct, adjust door window ⇒ page 547 .



Checking lateral adjustment relative to side window:

– Door window -1- must be parallel to side window -2- at both top and bottom.

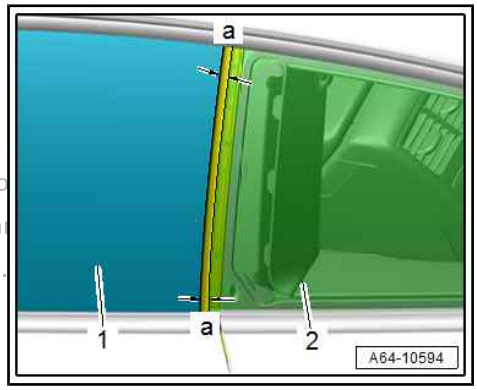
• Parallel dimension -a- ⇒ page 545



– Measure gap width between door window -1- and side window -2-.

• Gap width -a- ⇒ page 544

– If lateral adjustment of door window is not correct, adjust door window ⇒ page 547 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gua
with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

5.6.3 Checking height adjustment

If there is wind noise at the door window, check height adjustment.

• Adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 528

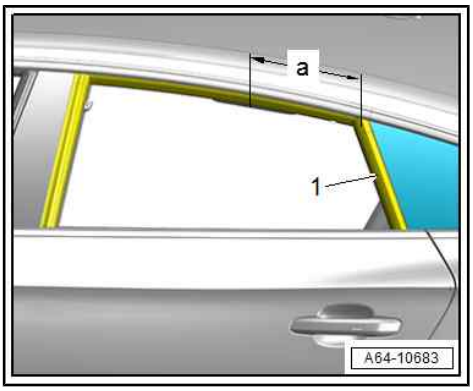
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Adhesive tape

Procedure

– Determine measuring points at door window:

• Dimension -a- = 294.5 mm (measured from centre of inner door seal) -1- ⇒ page 544

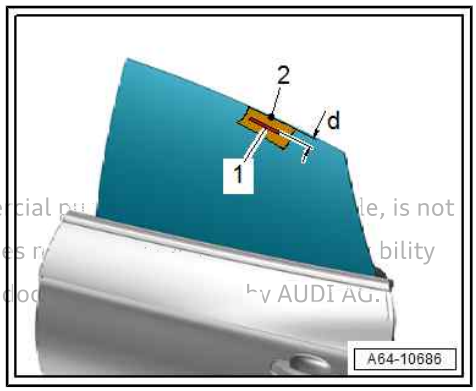


– Apply adhesive tape at specified measuring point -2- on door window.

– Mark reference line -1- on adhesive tape (measuring from top edge of door window).

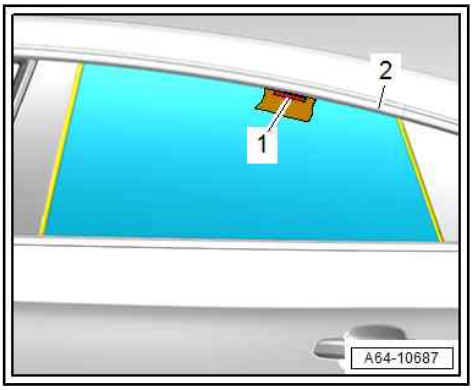
• Dimension -d- ⇒ page 544

– Close door.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

• The reference line -1- on the adhesive tape should align with the bottom edge of the inner door seal -2-.



Note:

The immersion depth of the windows can also be measured at the specified measuring points using the gauge - T10391- .

– Adjust height of door window accordingly if incorrect ⇒ page 548 .

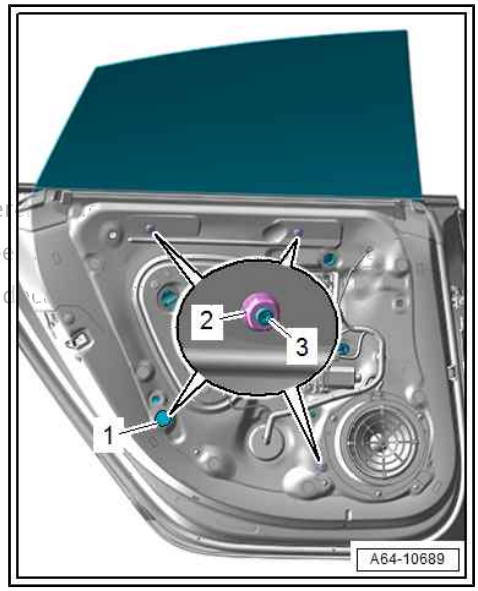
5.6.4 Lateral adjustment

Procedure

– Remove door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (rear); Removing and installing door trim (rear) .

– Remove cap -1-.

– Loosen nut -2- and turn adjuster screw -3- with Torx socket wrench.



Door (left-side):

- Turning anti-clockwise turns door window inwards.
- Turning clockwise turns door window outwards.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commer
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG doe
with respect to the correctness of information in this d

Door (right-side):

- Turning anti-clockwise turns door window outwards.
- Turning clockwise turns door window inwards.

– After adjusting, tighten nut.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - window regulator, A5 Sportback”, page 204

5.6.5 Height adjustment

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Socket - T10570-

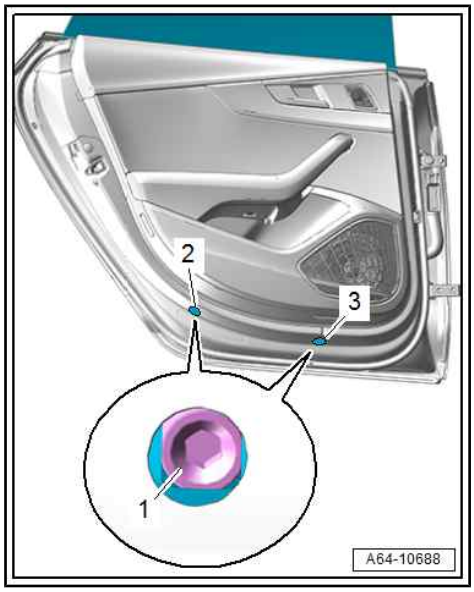
Procedure

– Move door window to “open” position.

– Take out sealing plugs -2 and 3-.

– Turn adjuster screw -1- using socket - T10570- .

• One turn = 1 mm adjustment



66 – Exterior equipment

1 Radiator grille/front trim panel

⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - radiator grille”, page 549

⇒ “1.2 Removing and installing radiator grille”, page 552

⇒ “1.3 Preparing a new radiator grille for installation”, page 553

⇒ “1.4 Removing and installing closure plate”, page 553

⇒ “1.5 Removing and installing number plate holder”, page 554

⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing mounting bracket for front parking aid sender”, page 554

1.1 Exploded view - radiator grille

⇒ “1.1.1 Exploded view - radiator grille, A4, A5”, page 549

⇒ “1.1.2 Exploded view - radiator grille, RS 4, RS 5”, page 551

1.1.1 Exploded view - radiator grille, A4, A5

1 - Cover
- ❑ For front overhead view camera

2 - Emblem
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 662

3 - quattro emblem
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 662

4 - Radiator grille
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 552

5 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 6 Nm

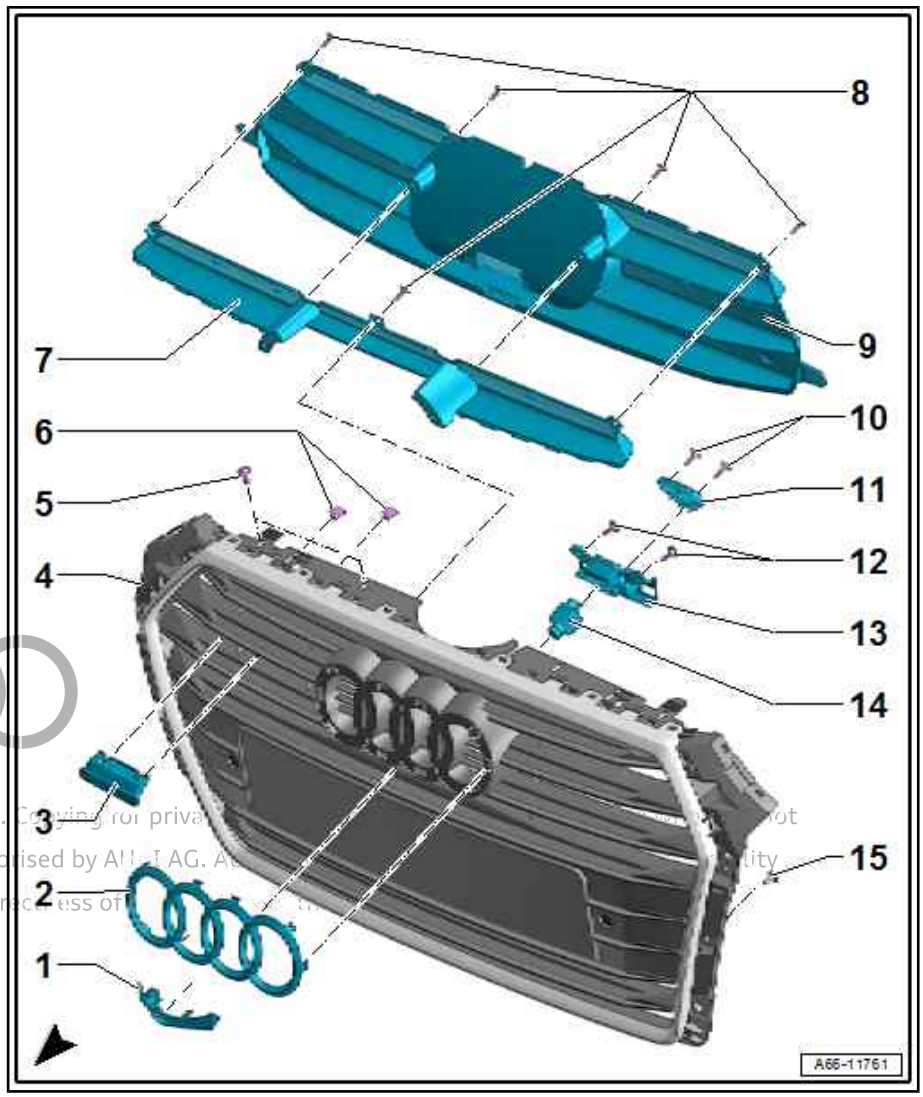
6 - Clip
- ❑ 2x

7 - Closure plate
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 553

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 5x
- ❑ 2 Nm

9 - Cover for radiator grille

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Overhead view



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

camera; Overview of fitting locations - overhead view camera

11 - Bracket

- ❑ For mounting for front overhead view camera

12 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Overhead view camera; Overview of fitting locations - overhead view camera

13 - Mounting

- ❑ For front overhead view camera
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Overhead view camera; Overview of fitting locations - overhead view camera

14 - Front overhead view camera - R243-

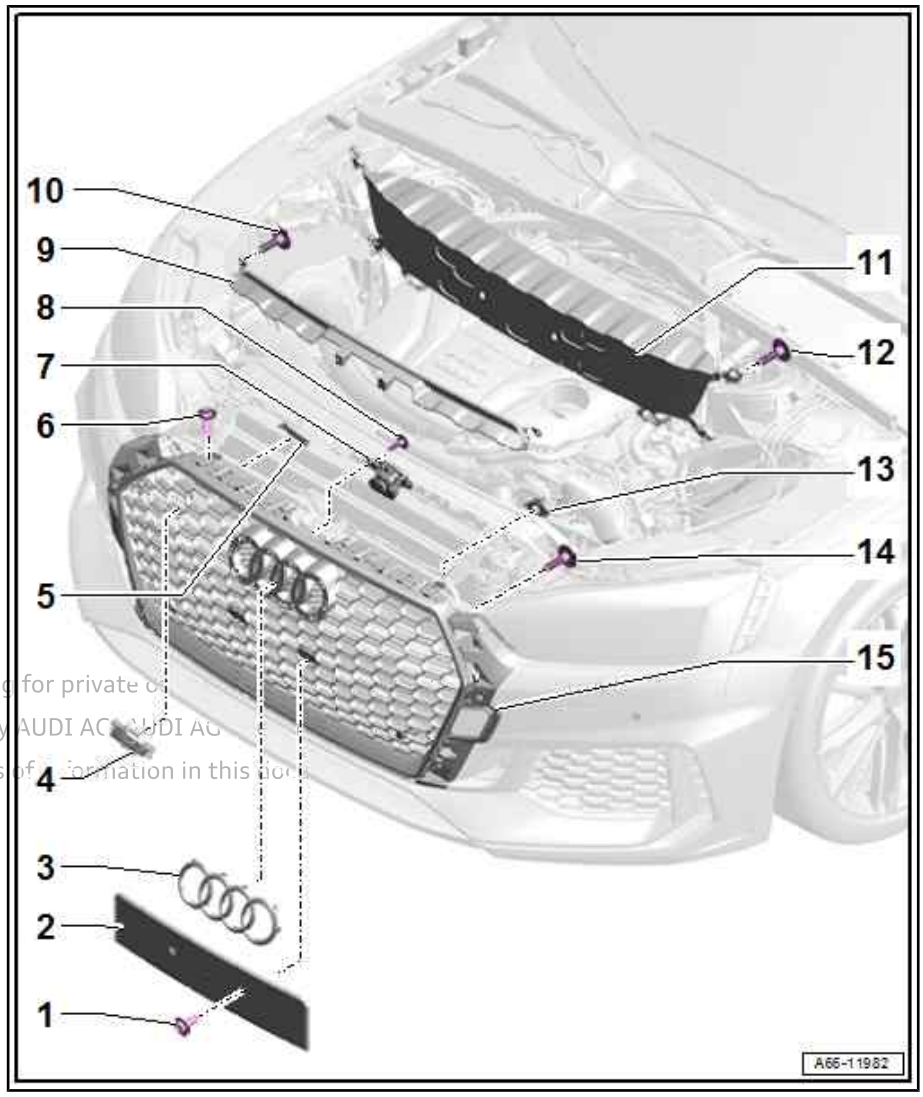
- ❑ Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Overhead view camera; Overview of fitting locations - overhead view camera

15 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Bolted connections only at top and bottom
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.1.2 Exploded view - radiator grille, RS 4, RS 5



1 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1 Nm

2 - Number plate holder
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 554

3 - Emblem
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 662

4 - Emblem
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 662

5 - Retaining strip
- ❑ For emblem

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 6 Nm

7 - Mounting
- ❑ With front overhead view camera - R243-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Overhead view camera; Overview of fitting locations - overhead view camera

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Overhead view camera; Overview of fitting locations - overhead view camera

9 - Closure plate
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 553

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

11 - Cover
- ❑ For moulded foam insert
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 426

12 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

13 - Mounting
- ❑ For parking aid sender
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 554

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

15 - Radiator grille

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 552

1.2 Removing and installing radiator grille

⇒ “1.2.1 Removing and installing radiator grille”, page 552

⇒ “1.2.2 Removing and installing radiator grille - A4 allroad”, page 552

1.2.1 Removing and installing radiator grille

Removing

– Remove bumper cover ⇒ page 403 .

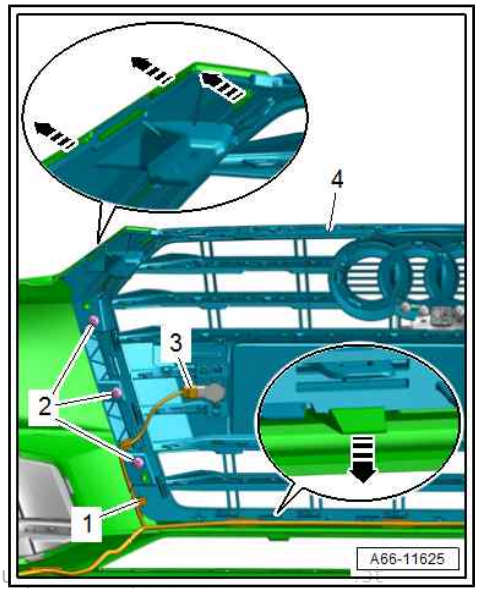
– Remove air intake grille (centre) ⇒ page 407 .

– Unplug electrical connector -3- and move wiring harness -1- clear.

– Remove bolts -2-.

– Release tabs and catches -arrows-.

– Pull radiator grille -4- off bumper cover.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Equipment version with overhead view camera or parking aid: Prepare new radiator grille for installation ⇒ page 553 .

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - radiator grille”, page 549

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.2.2 Removing and installing radiator grille - A4 allroad

Removing

– Remove bumper cover ⇒ page 403 .

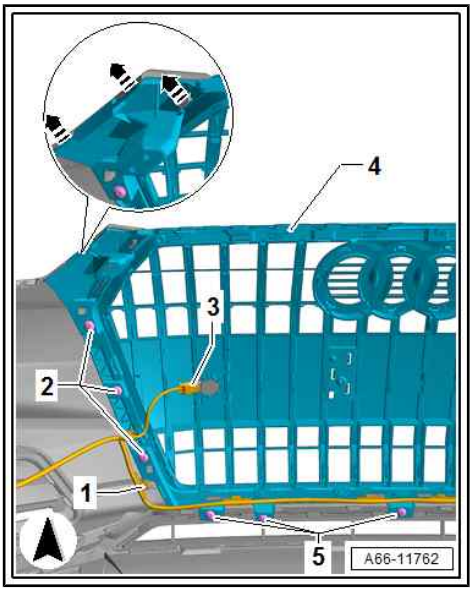
– Unplug electrical connector -3- and move wiring harness -1- clear.
– Remove bolts -2, 5-.

Note:

The centre bolt of bolts -2- is not fitted.

– Release tabs and catches -arrows-.
– Pull radiator grille -4- off bumper cover.
– If lock carrier is to be renewed, also remove the following components:

♦ Remove closure plate ⇒ page 553 .



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Equipment version with overhead view camera or parking aid: Prepare new radiator grille for installation ⇒ page 553 .

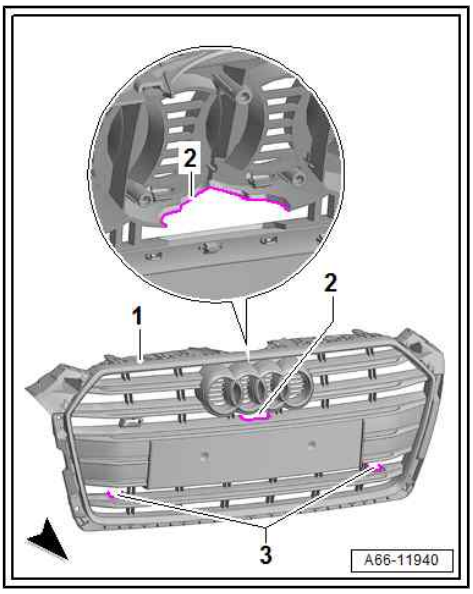
Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - radiator grille”, page 549

1.3 Preparing a new radiator grille for installation

Procedure

– Equipment version with overhead view camera: Cut radiator grille -1- to size at marking -2- using electric cutter - V.A.G 1561A- and blade (L-shaped, 19 mm) - V.A.G 1561/21- or other suitable tools.
– A5, equipment version with parking aid: Cut bumper cover -1- to size at markings -3- using electric cutter - V.A.G 1561A- and blade (L-shaped, 19 mm) - V.A.G 1561/21- or other suitable tools.
– Install radiator grille ⇒ page 552 .



1.4 Removing and installing closure plate

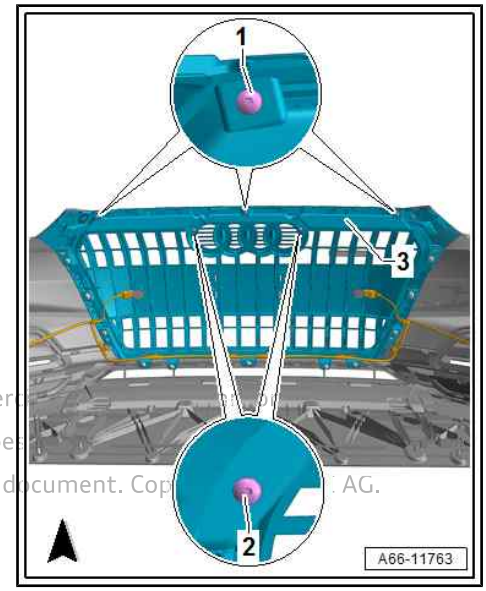
– Remove bumper cover ⇒ page 403 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolts -1, 2-.
– Detach closure plate -3-.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1 Exploded view - radiator grille”, page 549



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commer
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG doe
with respect to the correctness of information in this d
AG.

1.5 Removing and installing number plate holder

Removing

– Detach number plate.
– Remove bolts -2, 3-.
– Disengage number plate holder -1- upwards from honeycomb grille -arrow-; this disengages retainers -4-.
– Detach number plate holder.

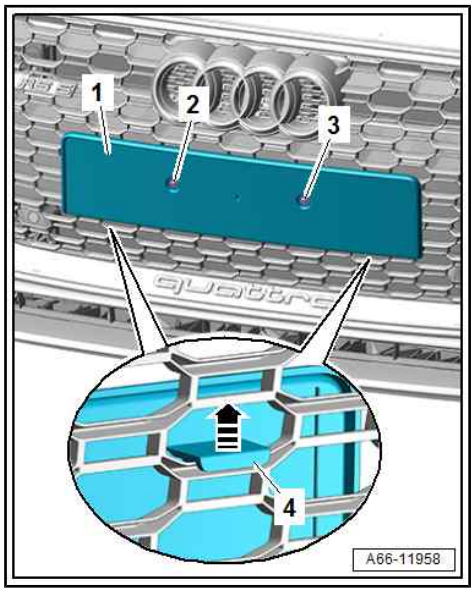
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– The number plate holder must be inserted completely into the honeycomb grille.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “1.1.2 Exploded view - radiator grille, RS 4, RS 5”, page 551

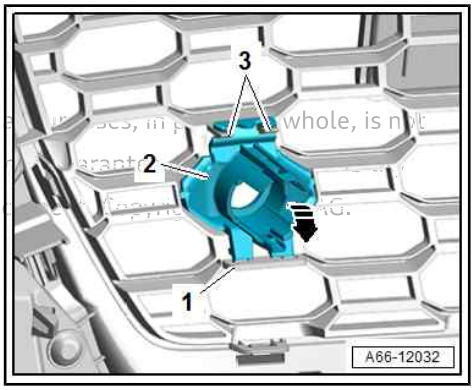


1.6 Removing and installing mounting bracket for front parking aid sender

Removing

– Remove mounting for moulded foam insert ⇒ page 426 .

– Release fasteners -3-.
– Swivel mounting bracket -2- out of retainer -1- -arrow- and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

2 Spoilers

⇒ “2.1 Exploded view - spoilers”, page 556

⇒ “2.2 Removing and installing spoilers”, page 558

⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing spoiler (side)”, page 566

2.1 Exploded view - spoilers

⇒ “2.1.1 Exploded view - spoiler, A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé”, page 556

⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - spoilers, A4 Avant”, page 557

⇒ “2.1.3 Exploded view - spoiler, A5 Sportback, RS 5”, page 558

2.1.1 Exploded view - spoiler, A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Spoiler
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 558

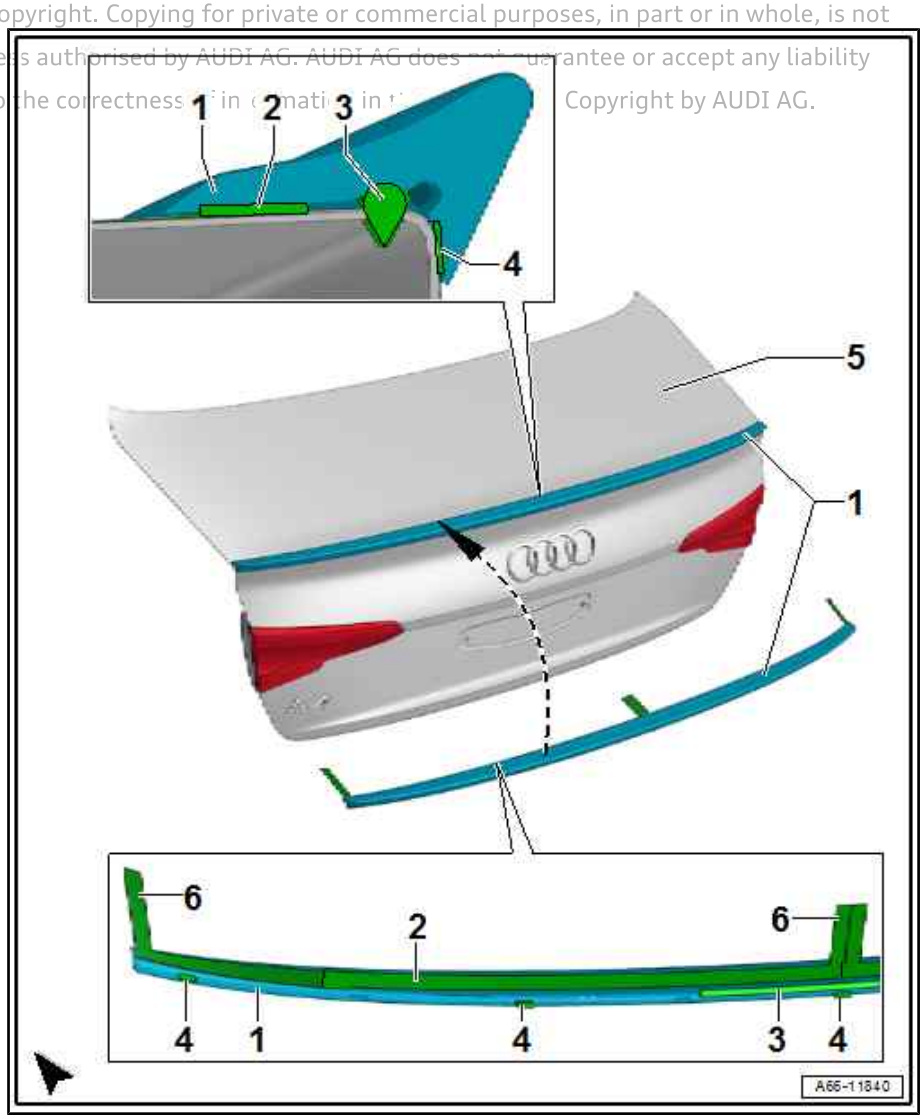
2 - Adhesive tape

3 - Adhesive bead

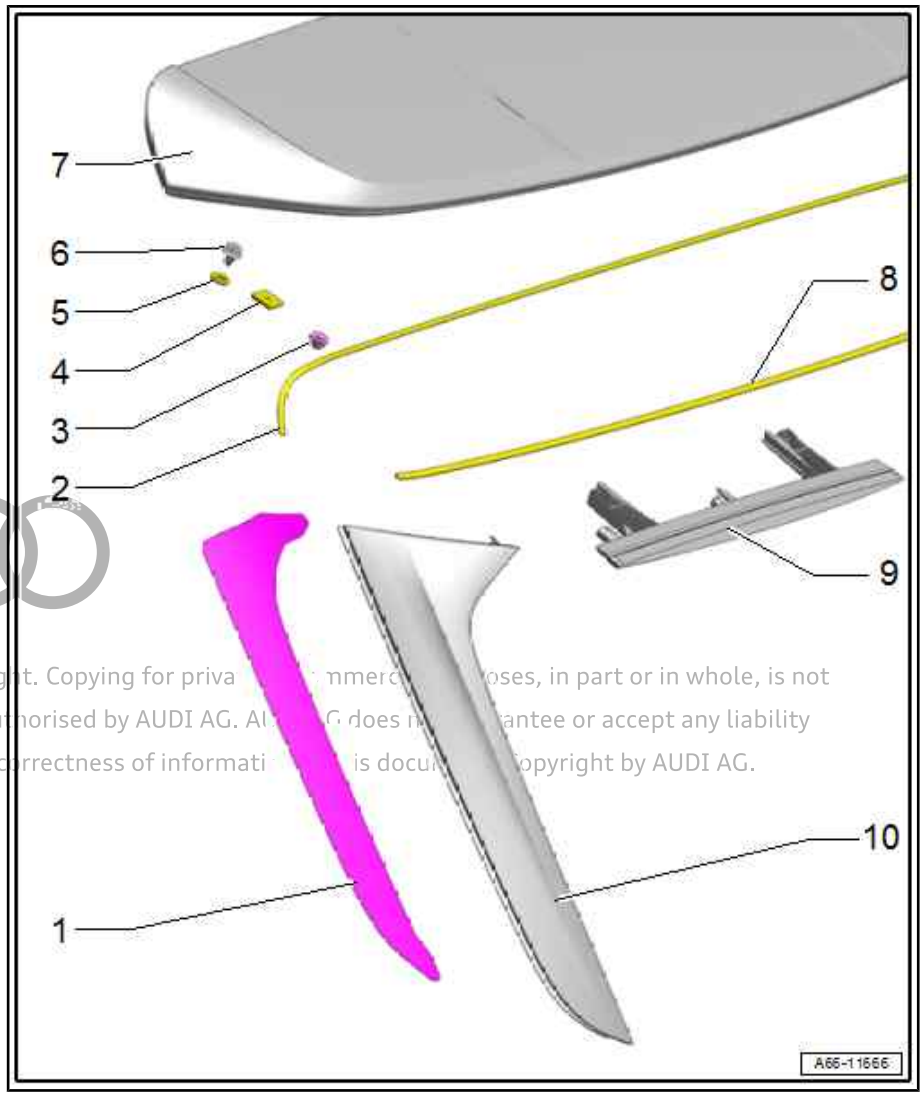
4 - Protective foil

5 - Rear lid

6 - Removal aid



2.1.2 Exploded view - spoilers, A4 Avant



1 - Adhesive tape
- ❑ Renew after removing spoiler (side) ⇒ Item 10 (page 557)

2 - Foam seal
- ❑ Front

3 - Nut
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 4 Nm

4 - Foam seal
- ❑ For securing pin
- ❑ 3x

5 - Foam seal
- ❑ For clip
- ❑ 7x

6 - Clip
- ❑ 7x

7 - Spoiler
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 558

8 - Foam seal
- ❑ Rear

9 - High-level brake light
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; High-level brake light; Exploded view - high-level brake light

10 - Spoiler
- ❑ Side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 566

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.1.3 Exploded view - spoiler, A5 Sportback, RS 5

1 - Spoiler

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing

♦ A5 Sportback
⇒ page 562

♦ RS 5 ⇒ page 564

2 - Adhesive tape

3 - Adhesive bead

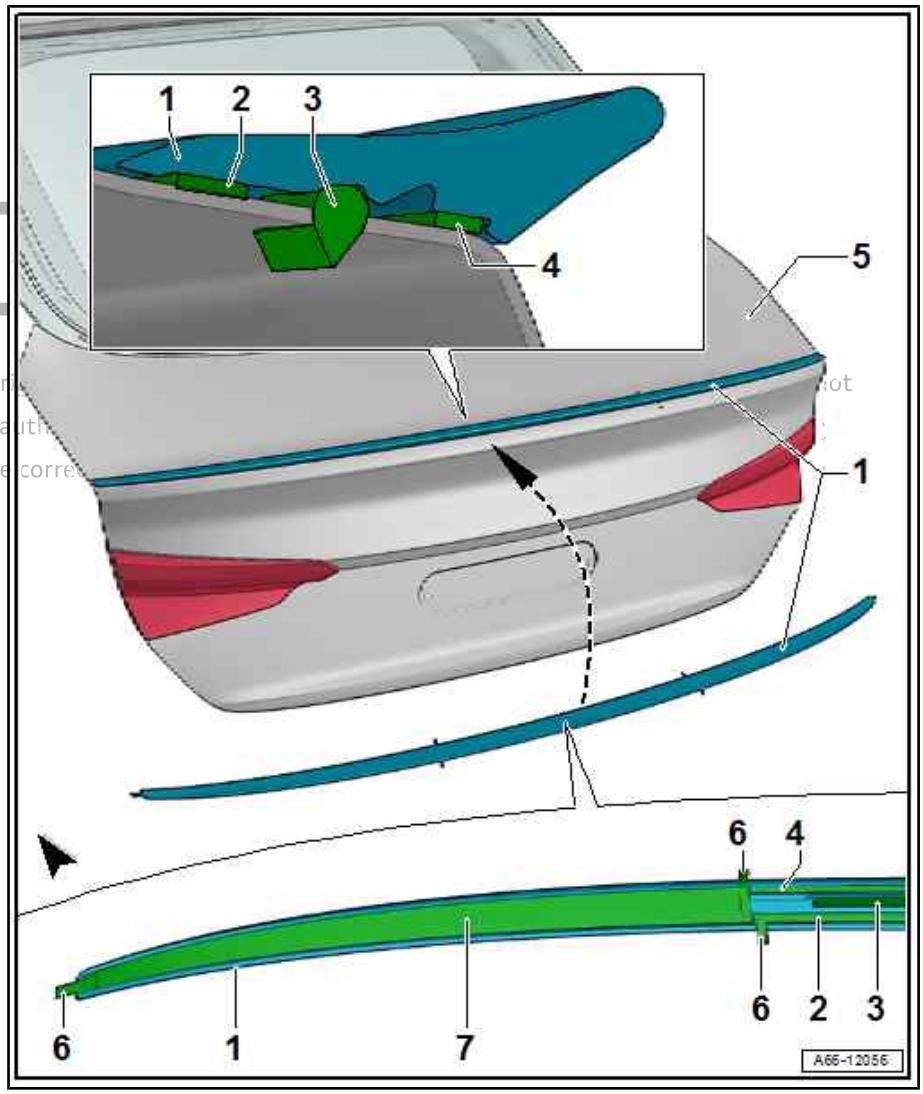
4 - Adhesive tape

5 - Rear lid

6 - Removal aid

7 - Adhesive tape

Protected by copyr ot
permitted unless auth
with respect to the corre



2.2 Removing and installing spoilers

⇒ “2.2.1 Removing and installing spoiler - A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé”, page 558

⇒ “2.2.2 Removing and installing spoiler - A4 Avant”, page 560

⇒ “2.2.3 Removing and installing spoiler - A5 Sportback”, page 562

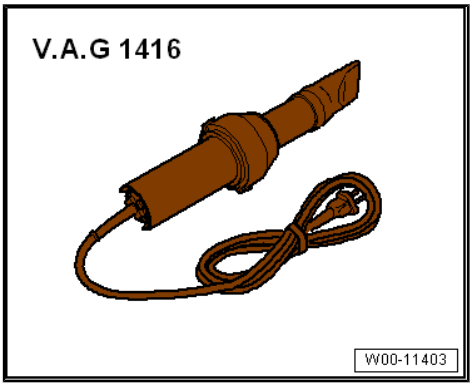
⇒ “2.2.4 Removing and installing spoiler - RS 5”, page 564

2.2.1 Removing and installing spoiler - A4 Saloon, A5 Coupé

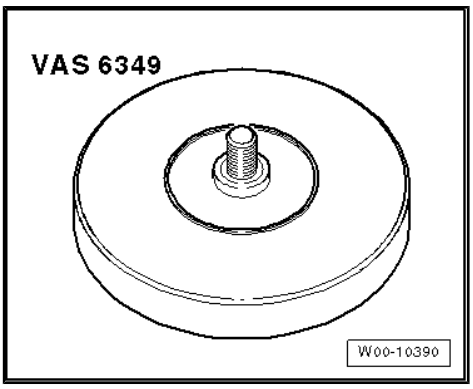
- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 556 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-



- Adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349-

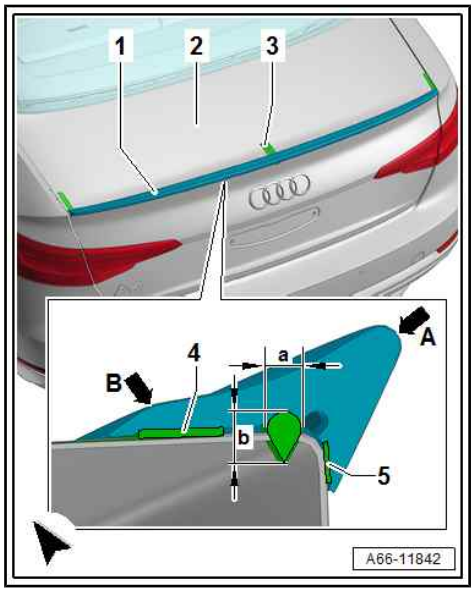


- Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-
- 1-component MS adhesive - D 172 090 A2-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Heat bonding area on spoiler -1- with a hot air blower and pull spoiler off, starting at the outer edge and working inwards.



Installing

- The vehicle and the spoiler must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.
- Just before installation, cut back adhesive bead for an even surface but do NOT remove it completely.
- Do not apply primer to adhesive bead and do not use cleaning solution.
- The spoiler must be fitted within 15 minutes after applying the adhesive.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Shortly before installing the spoiler, cut back the remaining adhesive sealant ⇒ Item 3 (page 556) with a carpet knife, but do not remove it completely.

Note:

The remaining sealant is required as a base for better adhesion of the new adhesive.

Any unauthorised copying or copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Clean bonding surface of adhesive strips on body with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

– Clean bonding surface on spoiler with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

– Fold over end of protective film or attach a removal aid -3- to protective film.

– Apply 1-component MS adhesive - D 172 090 A2- in centre of bonding area over entire width of groove on spoiler -1-.

- Dimension -a- = 4 mm ± 1 mm
- Dimension -b- = 5 mm ± 1.5 mm

– Position spoiler -1- on rear lid -2- and align centrally.

– Starting at inside and working outwards, remove protective film using removal aids.

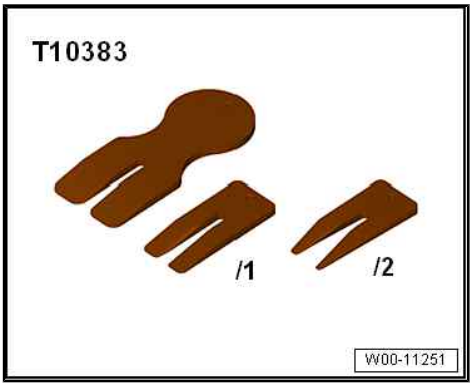
– Press spoiler on over its entire length (first outside edge -arrow A- and then inside edge -arrow B-).

- Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 24 hours.

2.2.2 Removing and installing spoiler - A4 Avant

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wedges - T10383-



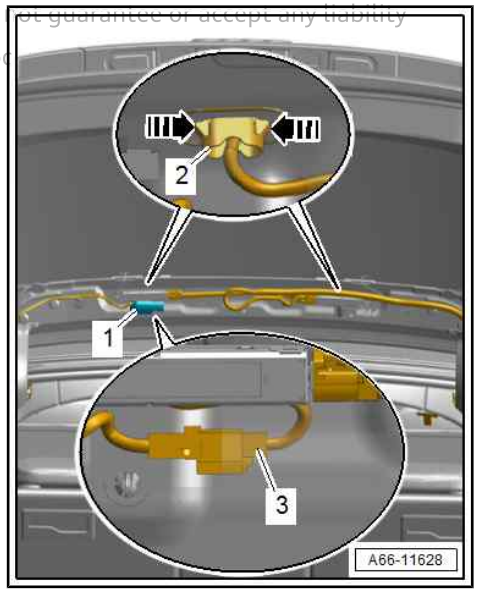
Removing

– Remove aerials ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Aerial systems; Overview of fitting locations - aerial systems .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this doc

– Move electrical wiring harness -1- clear and unplug connector -3-.

– Release catches -arrows- and move grommets -2- clear.

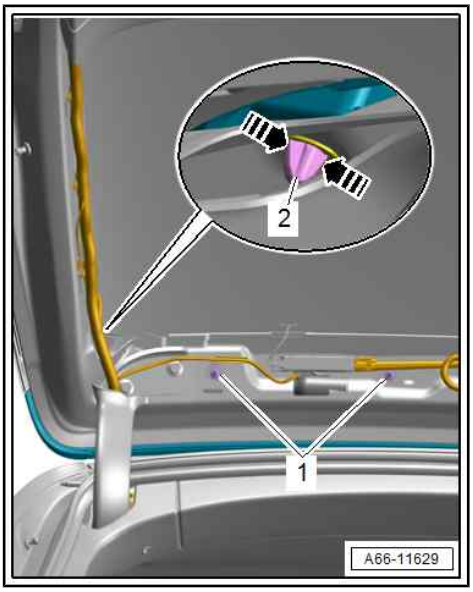


– Remove nuts -1-.

– Release clip -2- with long-nose pliers -arrows-.

– Close rear lid.

– Press spoiler off rear lid using wedge -T10383/1- and detach.



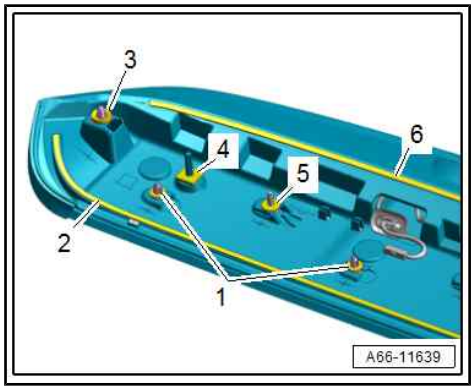
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Check foam seals -1 ... 6- for damage.

• The foam seals -1 ... 6- must be seated on the clips, the locating lugs, the threaded pins and the spoiler.

– Position spoiler on rear lid and press it on until it engages audibly.



Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “2.1.2 Exploded view - spoilers, A4 Avant”, page 557

2.2.3 Removing and installing spoiler - A5 Sportback

• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 558 .

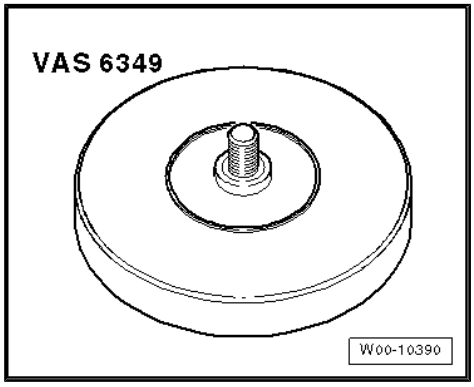
• A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 563).

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Template - T40377-

◆ Window removal set - VAS 861 001A-

◆ Adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349-

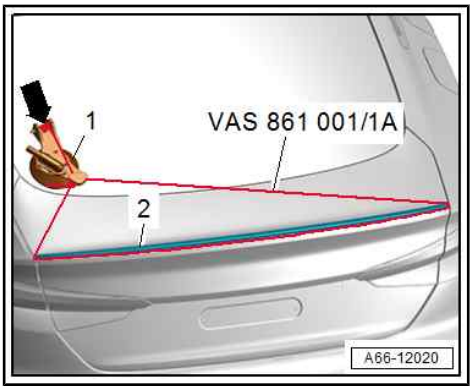


◆ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

◆ 1-component MS adhesive - D 172 090 A2-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing



– Attach removal device -1- to outer edge of window (bottom left).
– Route cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- around spoiler -2-.
– Attach outer end of cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- to idler pulley of removal device.
– Insert inner end of cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- into reel -arrow-.
– Tension cutting cord with reel.
– Cut spoiler clear and remove.

Installing

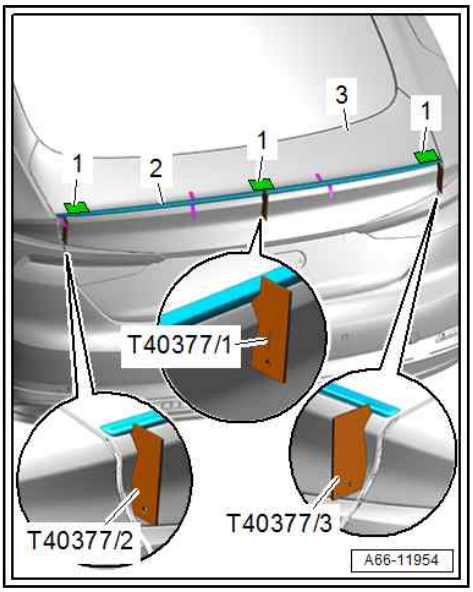
- The vehicle and the spoiler must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.
- Just before installation, cut back adhesive bead for an even surface but do NOT remove it completely.
- Do not apply primer to adhesive bead and do not use cleaning solution.
- The spoiler must be fitted within 15 minutes after applying the adhesive.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.
– Shortly before installing the spoiler, cut back the remaining adhesive sealant ⇒ Item 3 (page 558) with a carpet knife, but do not remove it completely.

Note:

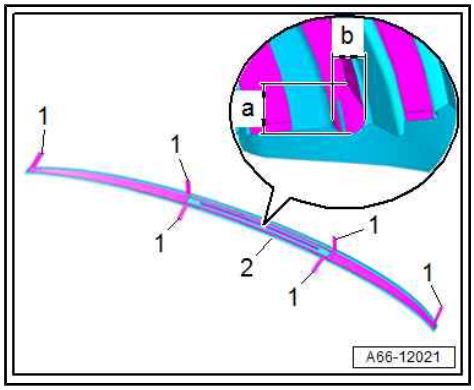
The remaining sealant is required as a base for better adhesion of the new adhesive.



– Position spoiler -2- on rear lid -3- with the assistance of a second mechanic.
♦ Position spoiler centrally using template - T40377/1- .
♦ Position spoiler at left outer edge of tail light using template - T40377/2- .
♦ Position spoiler at right outer edge of tail light using template - T40377/3- .
♦ Mark position of spoiler with spacers -1-.
– Clean bonding surface of adhesive strips on body with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.
– Clean bonding surface on spoiler with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

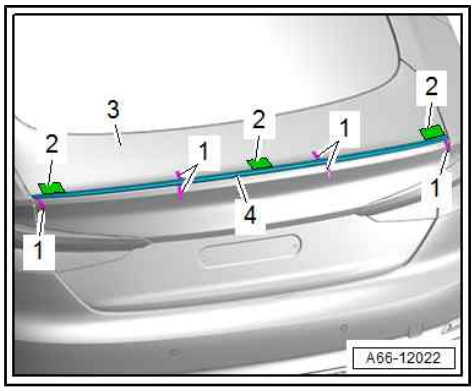
– Fold over end of protective film or attach a removal aid -1- to protective film.
– Apply 2-component MS adhesive - D 172 090 A2- in centre of bonding area over entire width of groove on spoiler -1-.

• Dimension -a- = 5 mm ± 1.5 mm
• Dimension -b- = 4 mm ± 1 mm



– Position spoiler -4- on rear lid -3- according to spacers -2- fitted previously and align centrally.
– Starting at inside and working outwards, remove protective film using removal aids -1-.
– Press spoiler on over its entire length (first outside edge and then inside edge).

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 24 hours.

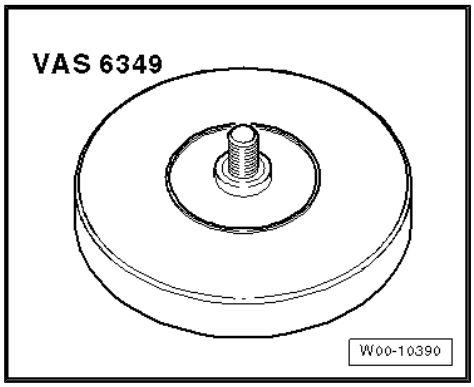


2.2.4 Removing and installing spoiler - RS 5

• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 558 .
• A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 566).

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Adhesive strip remover - VAS 6349-



♦ Window removal set - VAS 861 001A-
♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-
♦ 1-component MS adhesive - D 172 090 A2-

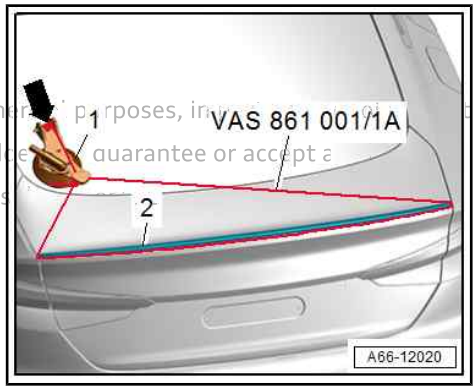
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Mark installation position of spoiler.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Attach removal device -1- to outer edge of window (bottom left).
– Route cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- around spoiler -2-.
– Attach outer end of cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- to idler pulley of removal device.
– Insert inner end of cutting cord - VAS 861 001/1A- into reel -arrow-.
– Tension cutting cord with reel.
– Cut spoiler clear and remove.



Installing

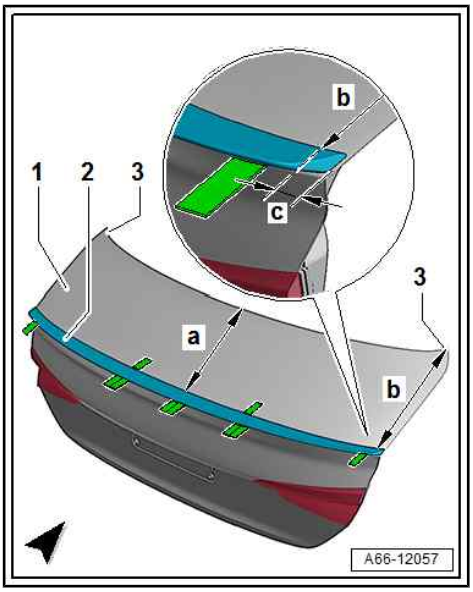
- The vehicle and the spoiler must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.
- Just before installation, cut back adhesive bead for an even surface but do NOT remove it completely.
- Do not apply primer to adhesive bead and do not use cleaning solution.
- The spoiler must be fitted within 15 minutes after applying the adhesive.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.
– Shortly before installing the spoiler, cut back the remaining adhesive sealant with a carpet knife, but do not remove it completely.

Note:

The remaining sealant is required as a base for better adhesion of the new adhesive.

– Position spoiler -2- on rear lid -1- according to the following dimensions and mark installation position if necessary.



RS 5, Coupé:

- ♦ Dimension -a- = 316 mm
- ♦ Dimension -b- = 370 mm
- ♦ Dimension -c- = 41 mm

RS 5, Sportback:

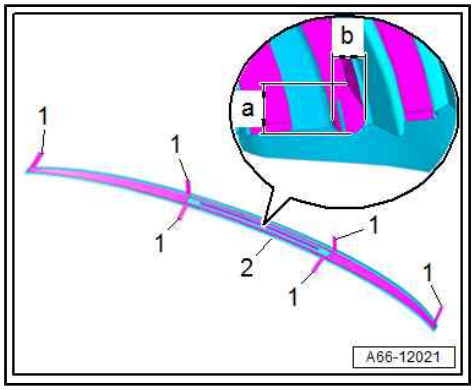
- ♦ Dimension -a- = 338 mm
- ♦ Dimension -b- = 300 mm
- ♦ Dimension -c- = 47 mm

Note:

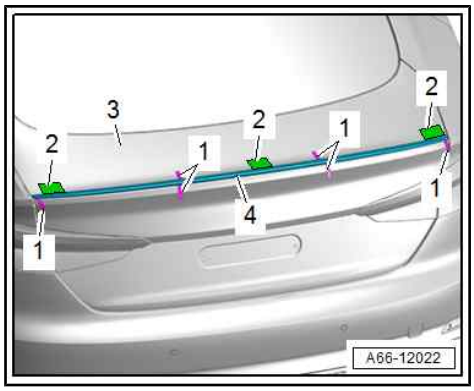
Dimension -c- corresponds to side distance of dimension -b- extended along edge of rear lid.

– Clean bonding surface of adhesive strips on body with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.
– Clean bonding surface on spoiler with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

– Fold over end of protective film or attach a removal aid -1- to protective film.
– Apply 2-component MS adhesive - D 172 090 A2- in centre of bonding area over entire width of groove on spoiler -1-.
• Dimension -a- = 5 mm ± 1.5 mm
• Dimension -b- = 4 mm ± 1 mm



– With the help of a second mechanic , position spoiler -4- on rear lid -3- according to marking made on rear lid and align it centrally.
– Starting at inside and working outwards, remove protective film using removal aids -1-.
– Press spoiler on over its entire length (first outside edge and then inside edge).
• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 24 hours.



2.3 Removing and installing spoiler (side)

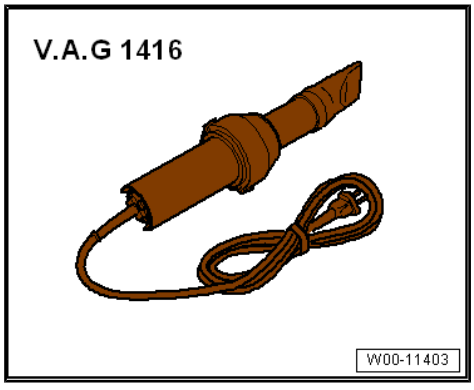
• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 557 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Roller - 3356-



♦ Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa e, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarante y liability with respect to the correctness of information in this docume y AUDI AG.

- Wedges - T10383-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

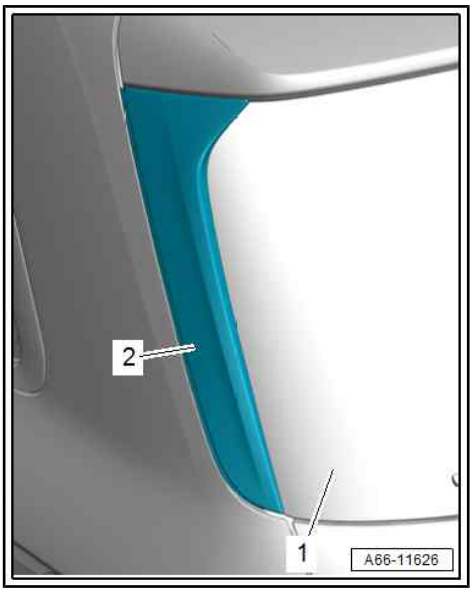
- Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-
- Glass primer - D 177 500 A1-

Removing

– Carefully heat spoiler (side) -2- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .

– Carefully prise spoiler (side) off rear window -1- using wedge -T10383/1- .

– Detach spoiler (side).



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- The vehicle and the spoiler must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

Preparations for re-installation:

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on spoiler.

– Clean plastic bonding surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

– Apply double-sided adhesive tape (⇒ Electronic parts catalogue) to same area.

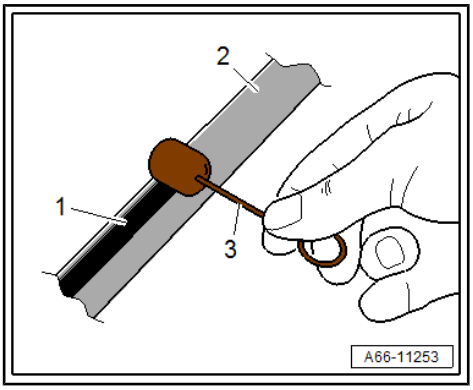
Continued:

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape from rear window.

– Clean bonding surface on glass with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

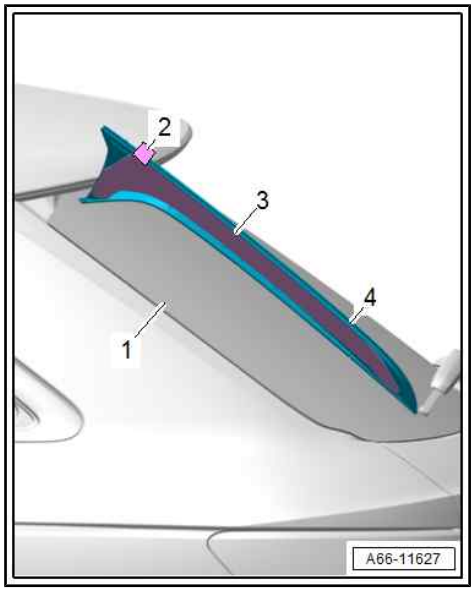
– Apply glass primer - D 177 500 A1- -item 1- to bonding area on glass -2- using applicator - D 009 500 25- -item 3- and allow to dry.

- If the glass primer - D 177 500 A1- has been allowed to flash off for more than 8 hours, primer must be re-applied.
- Attach adhesive strip so that side with blue protective film faces spoiler.



– Fold over ends of protective film or attach a removal aid -2- to protective film.
– Align spoiler (side) -4- at rear window -1-; note adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 76 .
– Peel protective film off adhesive strip -3- using removal aid.
– Press spoiler (side) on over entire length using roller -3356- .

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Strips / trim panels / extensions

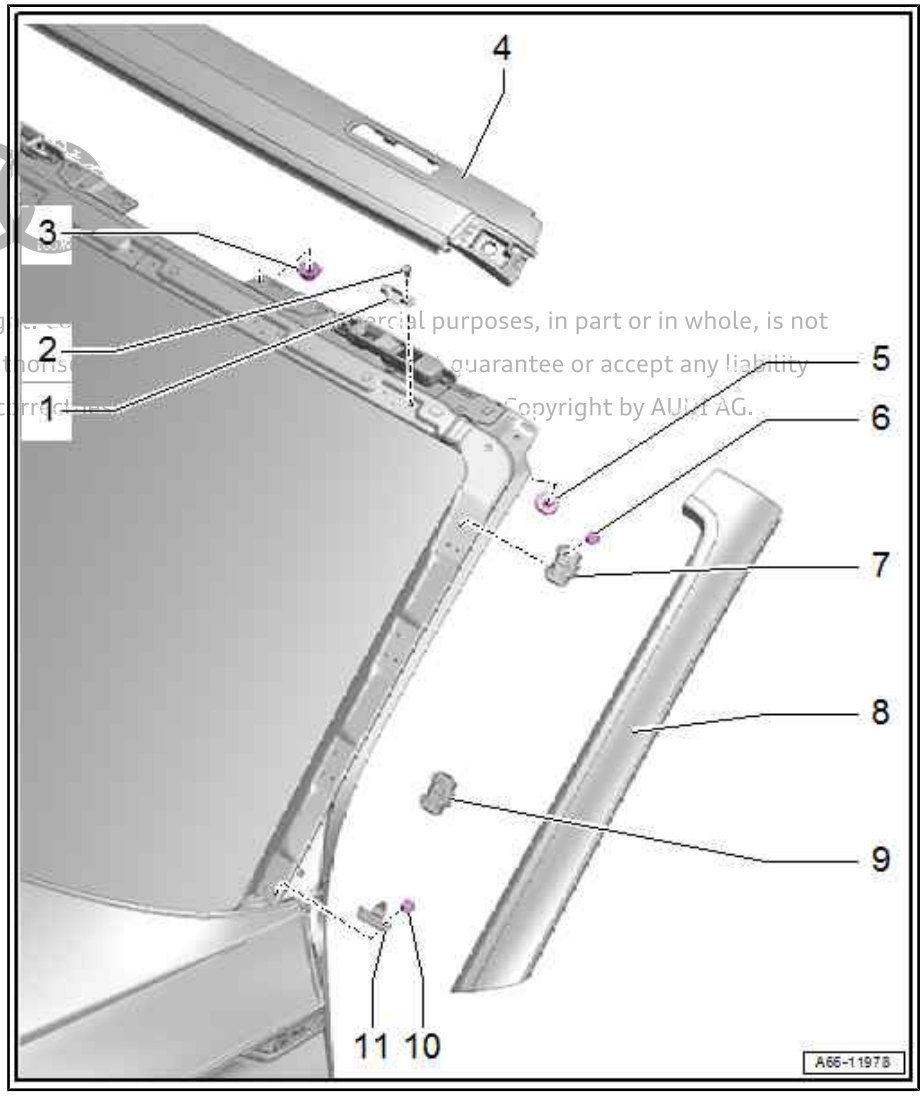
⇒ “3.1 Exploded view - trim strip and covers”, page 569
⇒ “3.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim”, page 576
⇒ “3.3 Exploded view - side member trim”, page 577
⇒ “3.4 Exploded view - water deflector strip”, page 581
⇒ “3.5 Exploded view - trim panel for A-pillar”, page 582
⇒ “3.6 Exploded view - trim panel for B-pillar”, page 583
⇒ “3.7 Exploded view - trim panel for C-pillar”, page 585
⇒ “3.8 Exploded view - wheel arch covers”, page 586
⇒ “3.9 Removing and installing trim strip”, page 587
⇒ “3.10 Removing and installing wing trim panel”, page 595
⇒ “3.11 Removing and installing side panel trim”, page 596
⇒ “3.12 Removing and installing cover”, page 597
⇒ “3.13 Adjustment dimensions for covers”, page 600
⇒ “3.14 Removing and installing sill panel trim”, page 601
⇒ “3.15 Removing and installing side member trim”, page 603
⇒ “3.16 Removing and installing bracket for side member trim”, page 612
⇒ “3.17 Removing and installing mounting”, page 612
⇒ “3.18 Removing and installing fastening strip for side member trim”, page 612
⇒ “3.19 Removing and installing trim strip for side member trim”, page 614
⇒ “3.20 Removing and installing water deflector strip”, page 616
⇒ “3.21 Removing and installing trim panel for A-pillar”, page 617
⇒ “3.22 Removing and installing trim panel for B-pillar on door”, page 618
⇒ “3.23 Removing and installing trim panel for B-pillar”, page 619
⇒ “3.24 Removing and installing trim panel for C-pillar on door”, page 620
⇒ “3.25 Removing and installing wheel arch covers”, page 621

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.1 Exploded view - trim strip and covers

- Exploded view - trim for windscreen frame ⇒ page 569
- Exploded view - trim strips, A4 ⇒ page 570
- Exploded view - trim strip, A5 ⇒ page 571
- Exploded view - trim strip for convertible roof compartment lid ⇒ page 572
- Exploded view - door covers ⇒ page 573
- Exploded view - air intakes in body ⇒ page 574

Exploded view - trim for windscreen frame



1 - Retaining clip
- ❑ For trim for windscreen frame
- ❑ 5x
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 589

2 - Pop rivet
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ For retaining clip

3 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

4 - Trim for windscreen frame
- ❑ Renew retaining clips after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 589

5 - Nut
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

6 - Pop rivet
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ For retaining clip

7 - Retaining clip
- ❑ For side trim for wind-screen frame
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 587

8 - Side trim for windscreen frame
- ❑ Renew retaining clips after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 587

9 - Retaining clip
- ❑ For side trim for windscreen frame
- ❑ Bonded on
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 587

10 - Pop rivet
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ For retaining clip

11 - Retaining clip
- ❑ For side trim for windscreen frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 587

Exploded view - trim strips, A4

Protected by copyrig... purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless au... guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the c... Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Front door

2 - Trim strip for front door

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 590

3 - Rear door

4 - Trim strip for rear door

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 591

5 - Clip

- ❑ With marking indicating rear door

6 - Side window - A4 Saloon

7 - Trim strip for side window - A4 Saloon

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 593

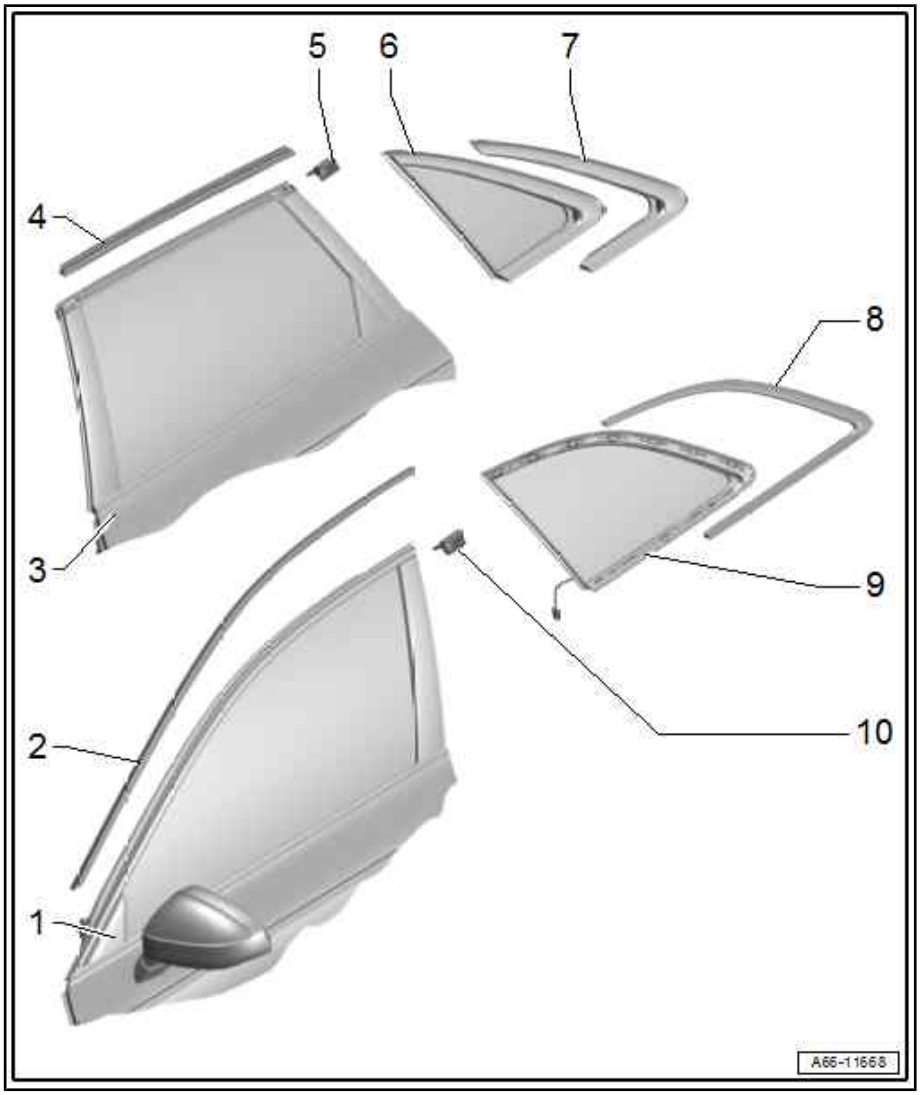
8 - Trim strip for side window - A4 Avant

- ❑ Can only be removed together with side window
- ❑ Removing and installing side window ⇒ page 506

9 - Side window - A4 Avant

10 - Clip

- ❑ With marking indicating front door



Exploded view - trim strip, A5

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

permitted unless a
ith respect to the

1 - Pop rivet

- ❑ 9x

2 - Paintwork protection pad

- ❑ 10x

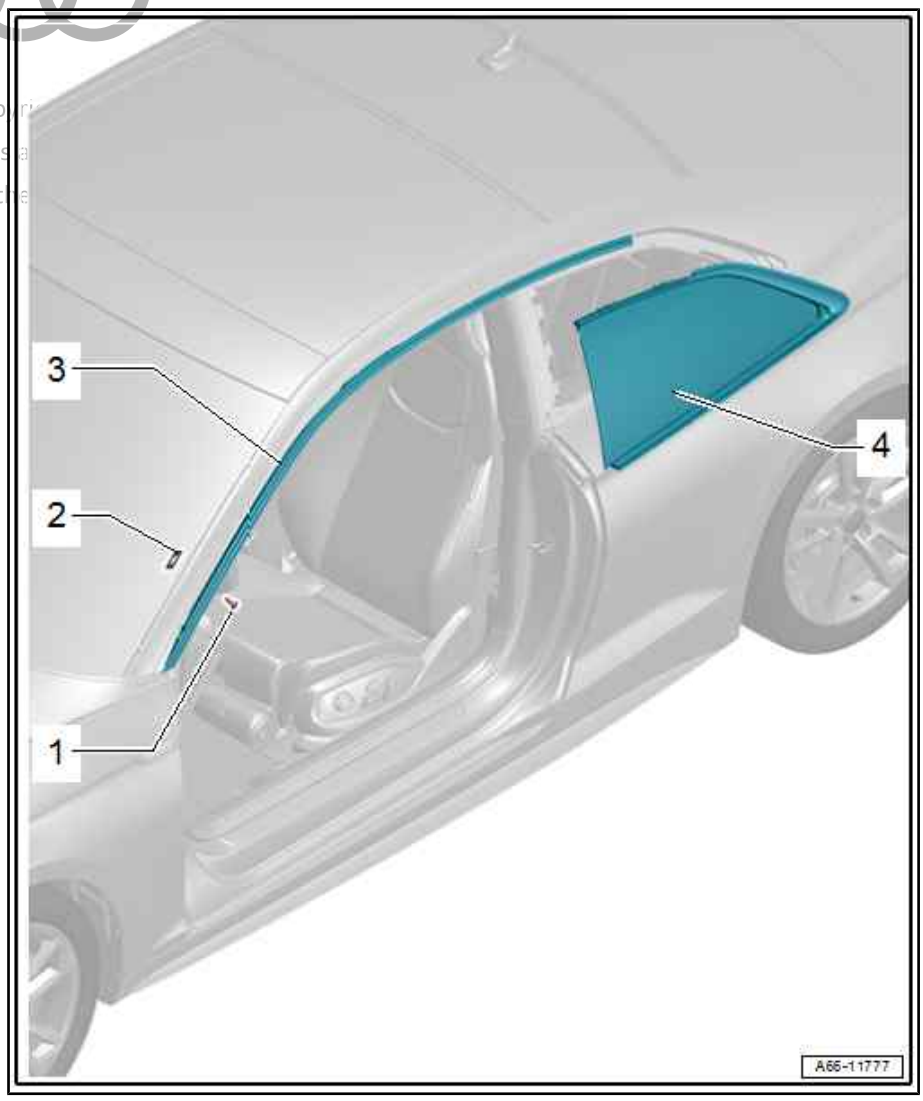
3 - Roof trim strip

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 593

4 - Side window

- ❑ With trim strip and mounting for roof trim strip
- ❑ Removing and installing:

- ♦ A5 Coupé ⇒ page 507
- ♦ A5 Sportback ⇒ page 509



Exploded view - trim strip for convertible roof compartment lid

1 - Nut

- ❑ 11x
- ❑ 2 Nm

2 - Trim strip

- ❑ For convertible roof compartment lid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 595

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 - Spacer

- ❑ Cannot be renewed separately
- ❑ 5x

4 - Convertible roof compartment lid

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 111



Exploded view - door covers

1 - Side member trim
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 578

2 - Wheel arch cover (front)
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 586

3 - Wing

4 - Front door

5 - Rear door

6 - Wheel arch cover (door)
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 586

7 - Side panel

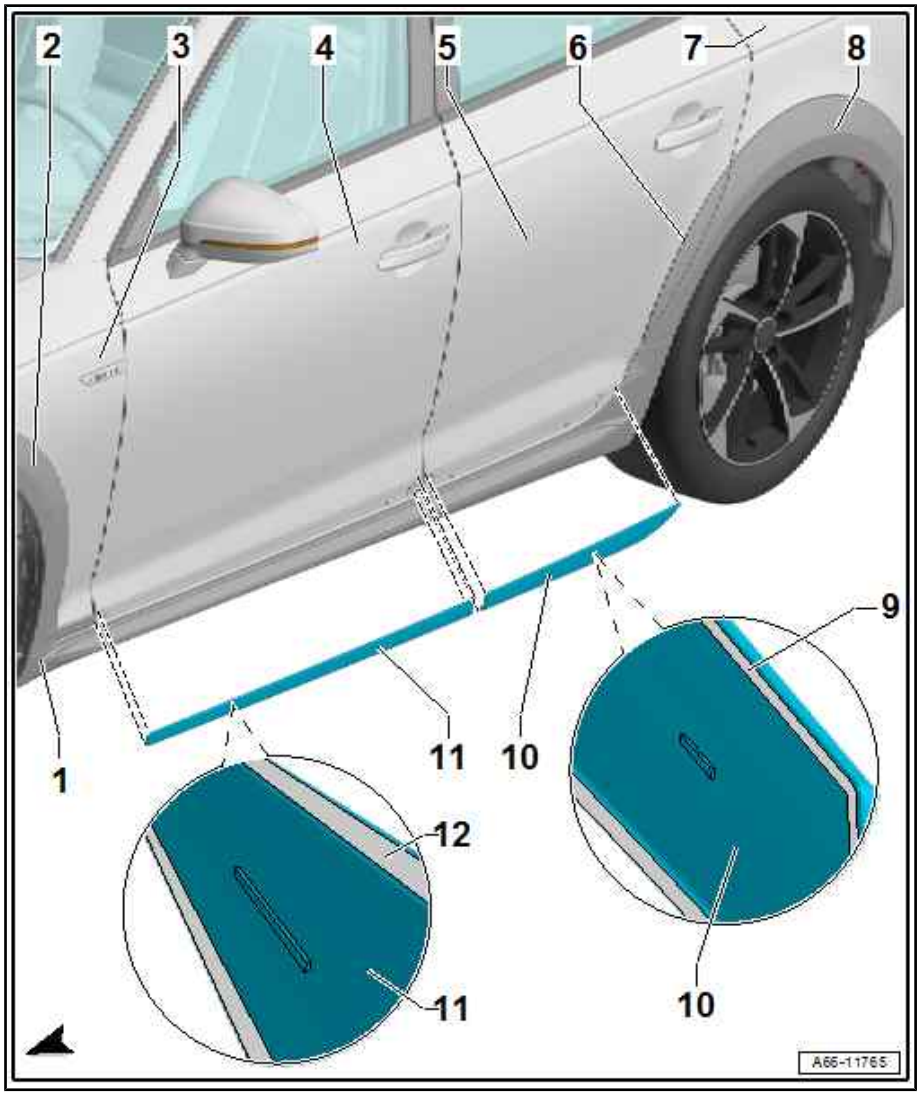
8 - Wheel arch cover (rear)
- ❑ Exploded view
  ⇒ page 586

9 - Adhesive tape

10 - Door cover (rear)
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ page 597

11 - Door cover (front)
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ page 597

12 - Adhesive tape



Exploded view - air intakes in body

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

A - Air intakes in body (front)

1 - Wing trim panel

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 595

2 - Retainer

- ❑ For trim (front)
- ❑ Renew after removing

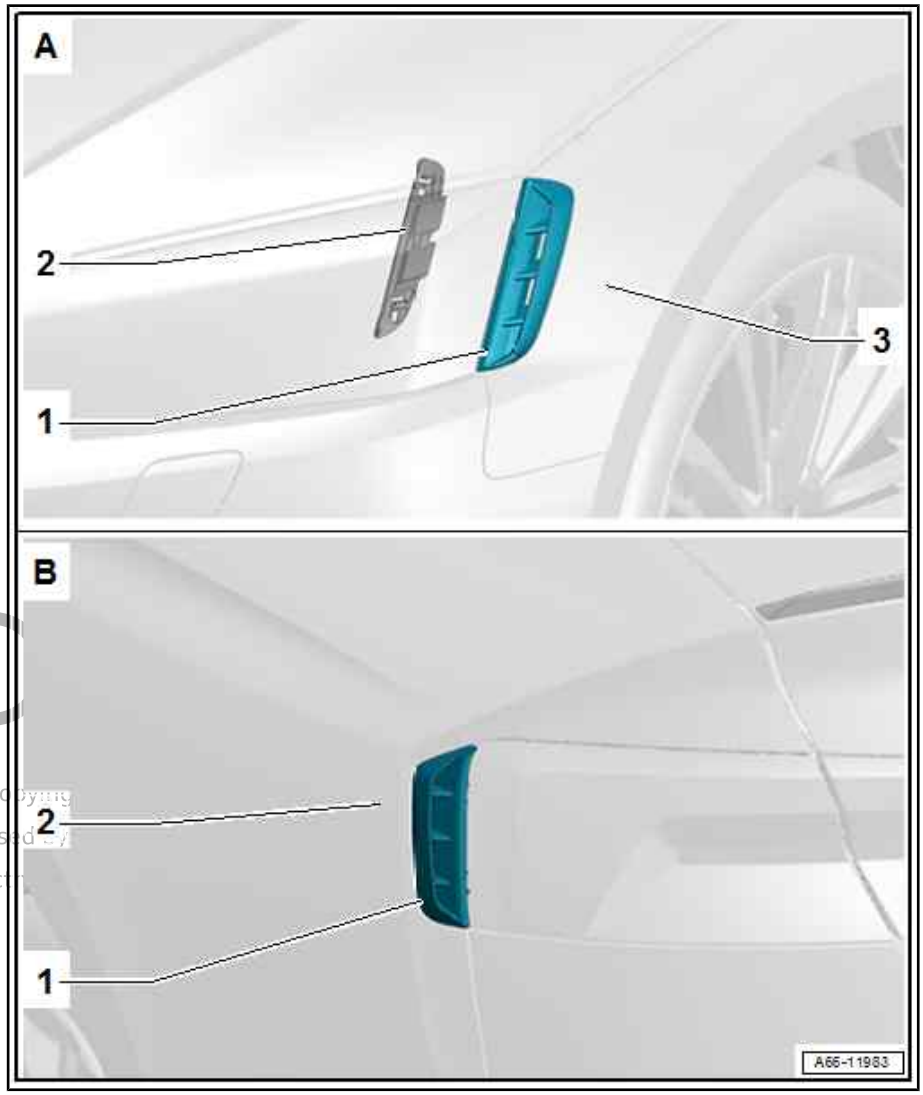
3 - Wing

B - Air intakes in body (rear)

1 - Side panel trim

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 596

2 - Side panel

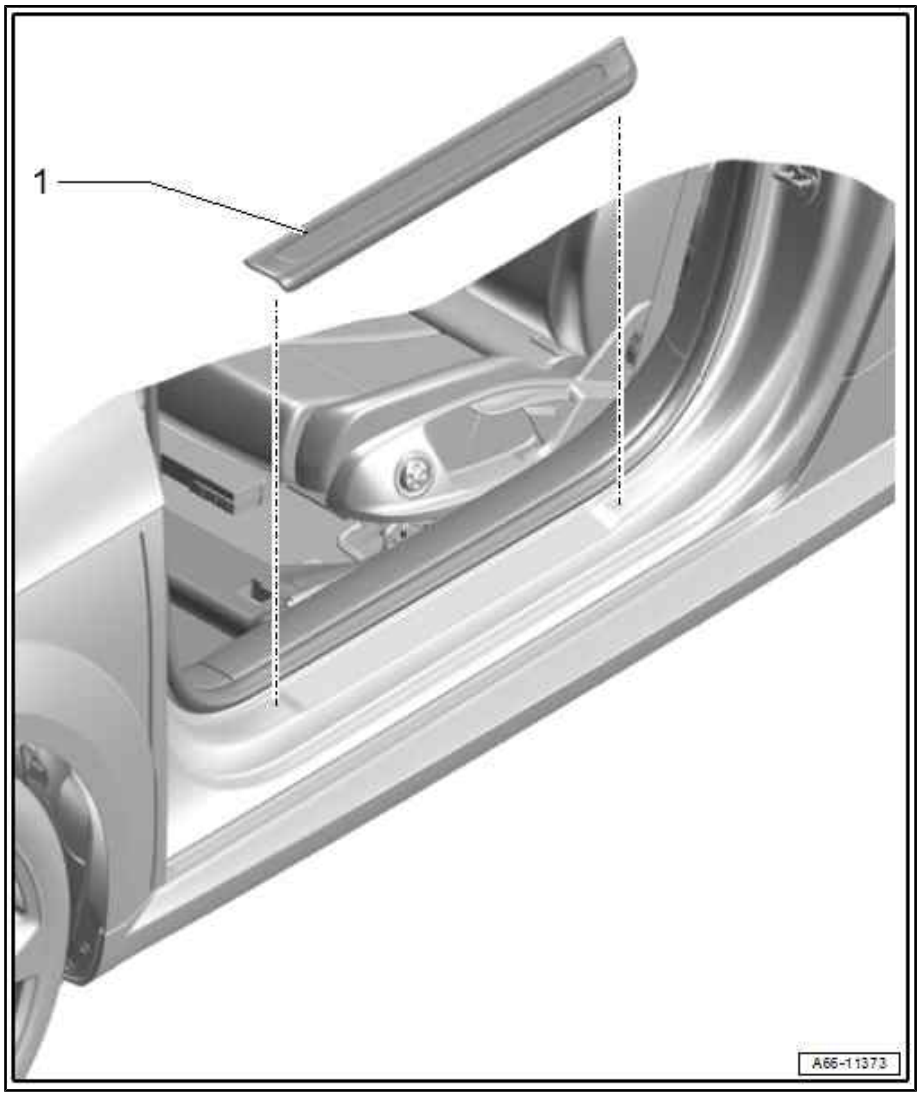


Protected by copyright. Copying permitted unless authorised by with respect to the correct

3.2 Exploded view - sill panel trim

1 - Sill panel trim (front)

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 601



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.3 Exploded view - side member trim

⇒ “3.3.1 Exploded view - side member trim, A4”, page 577

⇒ “3.3.2 Exploded view - side member trim, A4 allroad”, page 578

⇒ “3.3.3 Exploded view - side member trim, RS4”, page 579

⇒ “3.3.4 Exploded view - side member trim, A5”, page 580

3.3.1 Exploded view - side member trim, A4

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

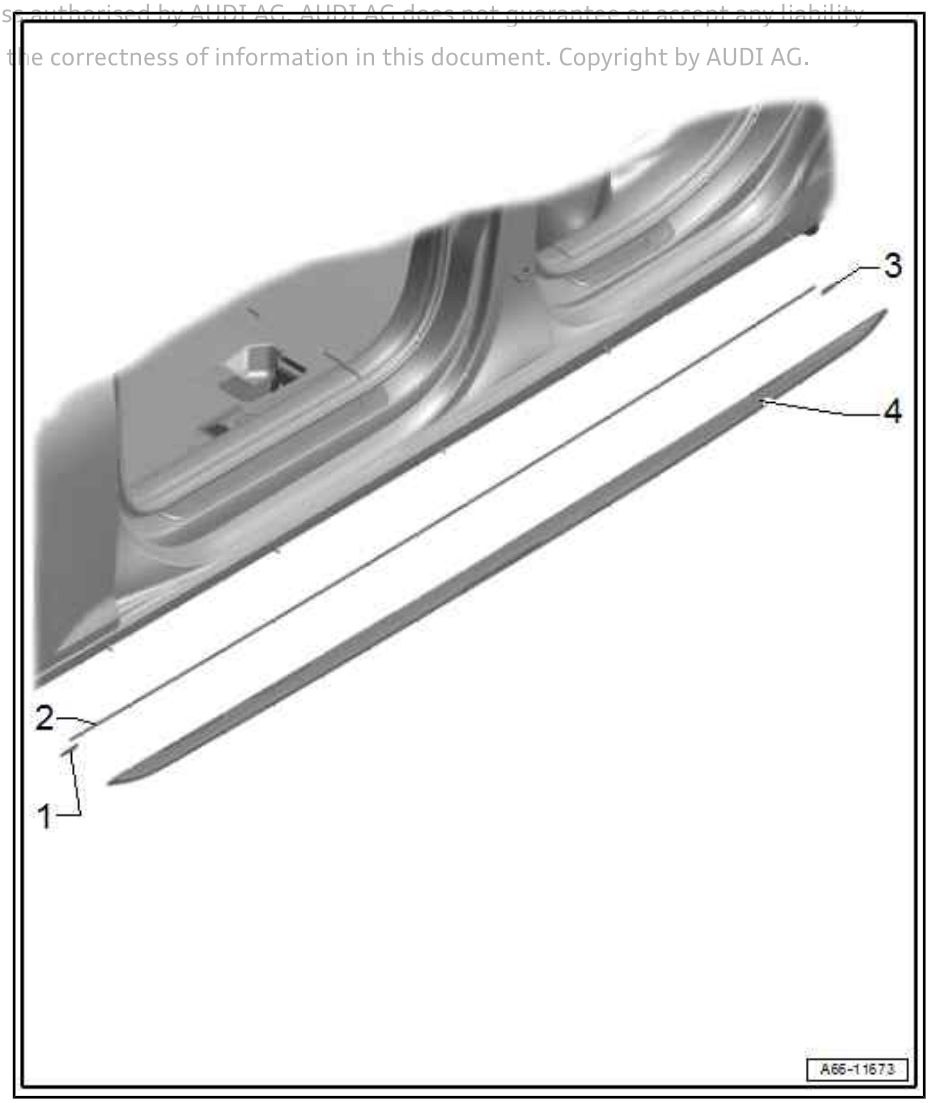
1 - Adhesive tape

2 - Adhesive tape

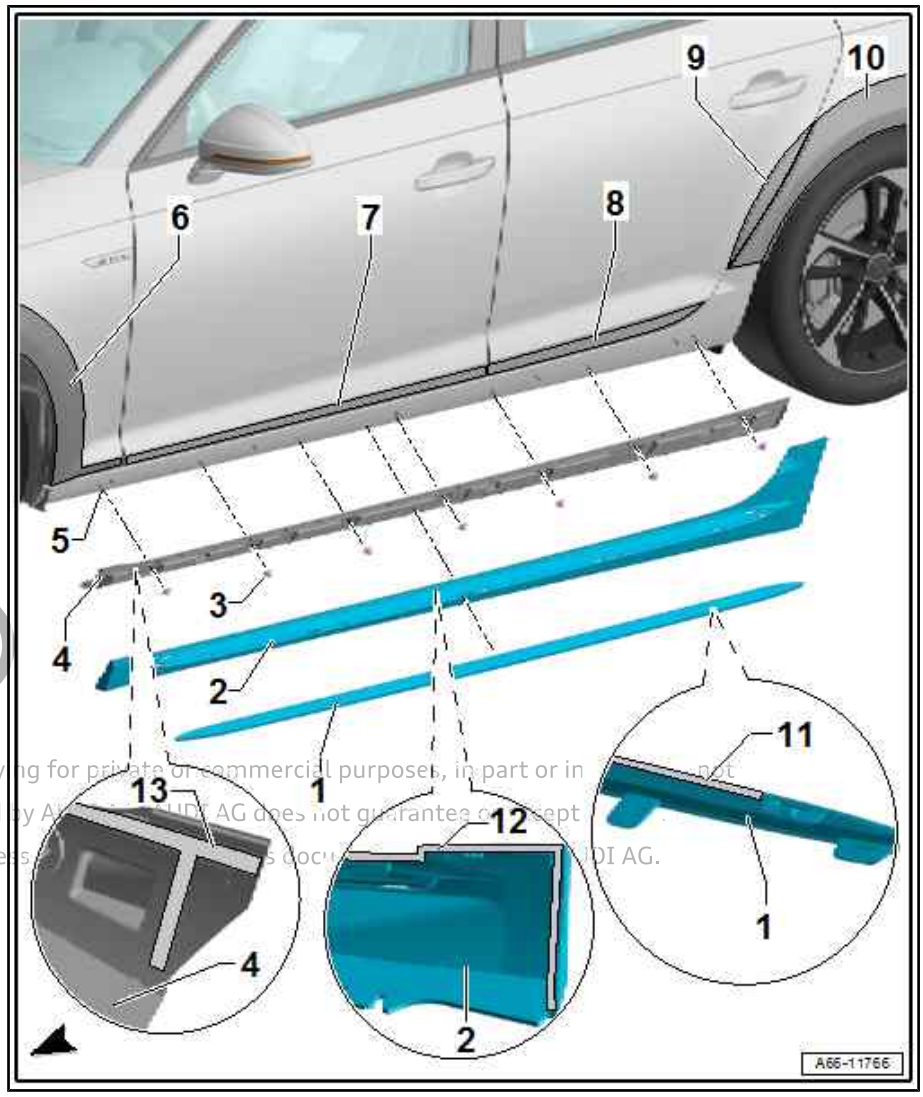
3 - Adhesive tape

4 - Side member trim

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 603



3.3.2 Exploded view - side member trim, A4 allroad



1 - Trim strip
- ❑ For side member trim
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 614

2 - Side member trim
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 604

3 - Nut
- ❑ 7x
- ❑ 2 Nm

4 - Fastening strip
- ❑ For side member trim
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 612

5 - Stud

6 - Wheel arch cover (front)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 586

7 - Door cover (front)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 573

8 - Door cover (rear)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 573

9 - Wheel arch cover (door)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 586

10 - Wheel arch cover (rear)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 586

11 - Adhesive tape

12 - Adhesive tape

13 - Adhesive tape

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in ... not ... authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept ... with respect to the correctness ... of this document ... AUDI AG.

3.3.3 Exploded view - side member trim, RS4

1 - Side member trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 606

2 - Retainer
- ❑ For side member trim
- ❑ 5x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 612

3 - Nut
- ❑ 7x
- ❑ 2 Nm

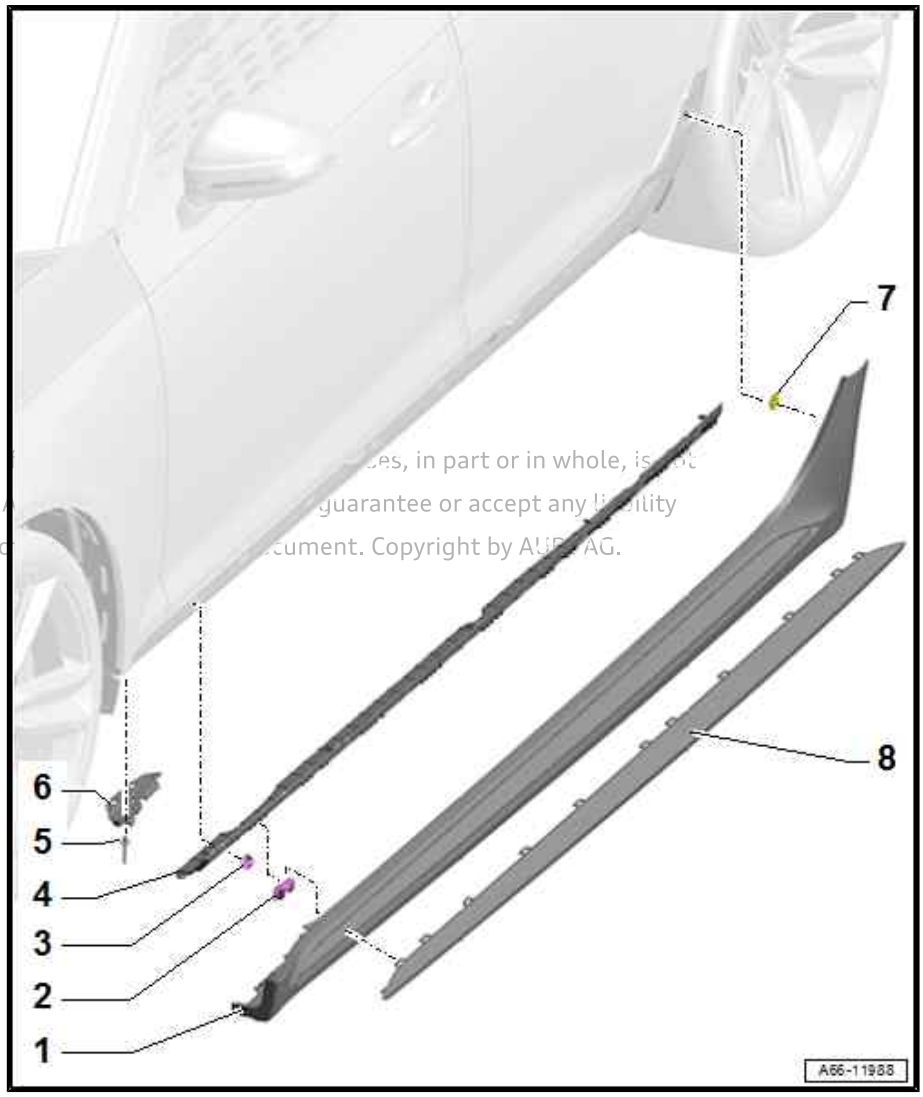
4 - Fastening strip
- ❑ For side member trim
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 612

5 - Rivet

6 - Bracket
- ❑ Front
- ❑ For side member trim

7 - Seal

8 - Trim strip
- ❑ Renew after removing



Protected by copyright. Copying ces, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by guarantee or accept any liability with r cument. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.3.4 Exploded view - side member trim, A5

1 - Bolt
- ❑ 8 Nm

2 - Bracket
- ❑ For side member trim
- ❑ Front
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 612

3 - Bracket
- ❑ For side member trim
- ❑ Rear
- ❑ 5x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 609

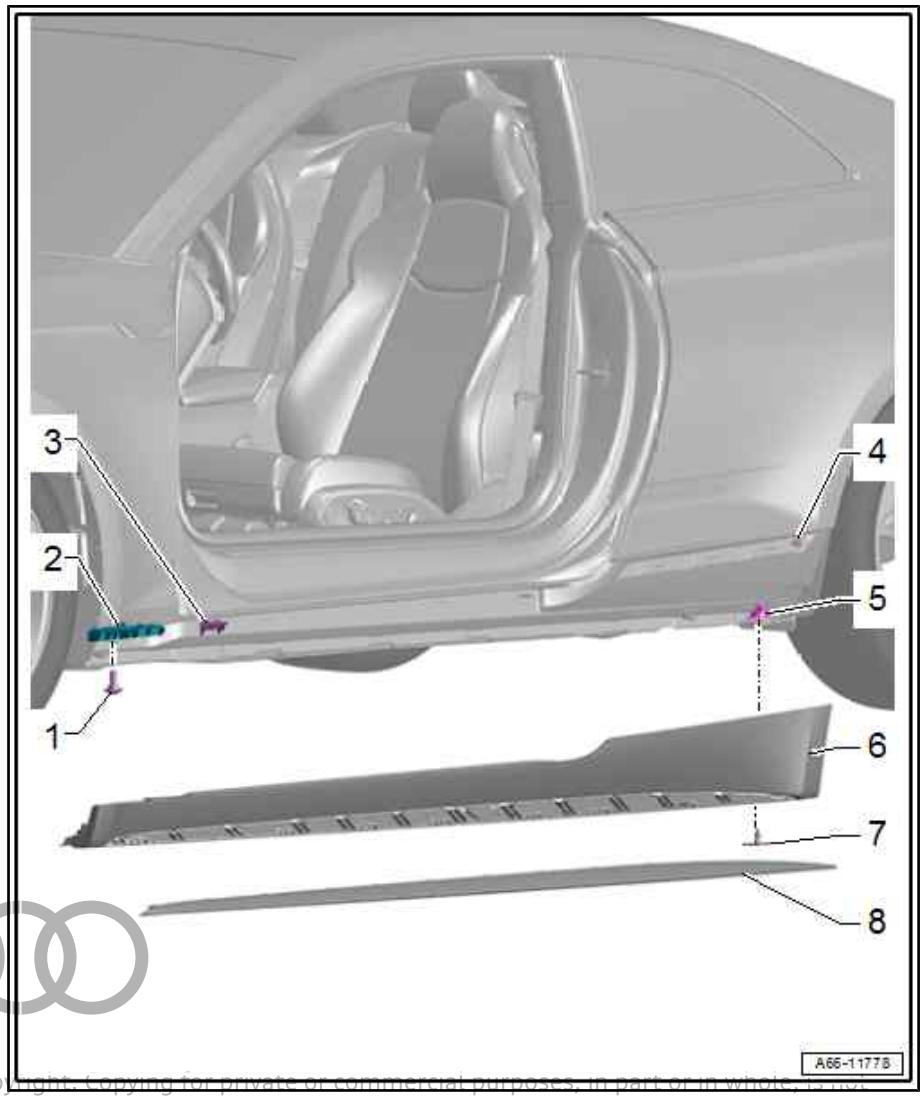
4 - Clip
- ❑ A5 Coupé only
- ❑ 4x

5 - Mounting
- ❑ 7x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 612

6 - Side member trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 609

7 - Quick-release fastener
- ❑ 7x

8 - Trim strip
- ❑ RS 5: Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 615



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.4 Exploded view - water deflector strip

1 - Water deflector strip

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 616

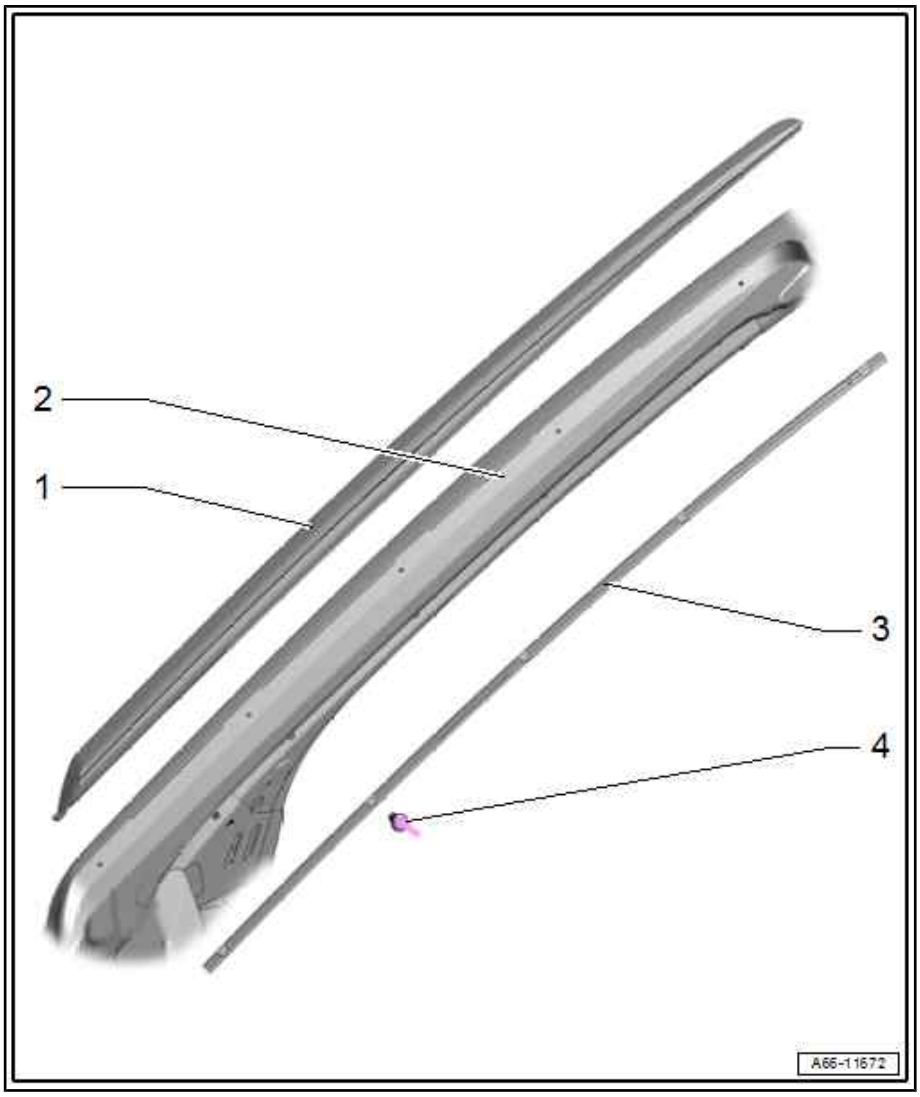
2 - A-pillar

3 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 616

4 - Pop rivet

- ❑ 5x
- ❑ When riveting, make sure that burrs do not form on rivet head



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

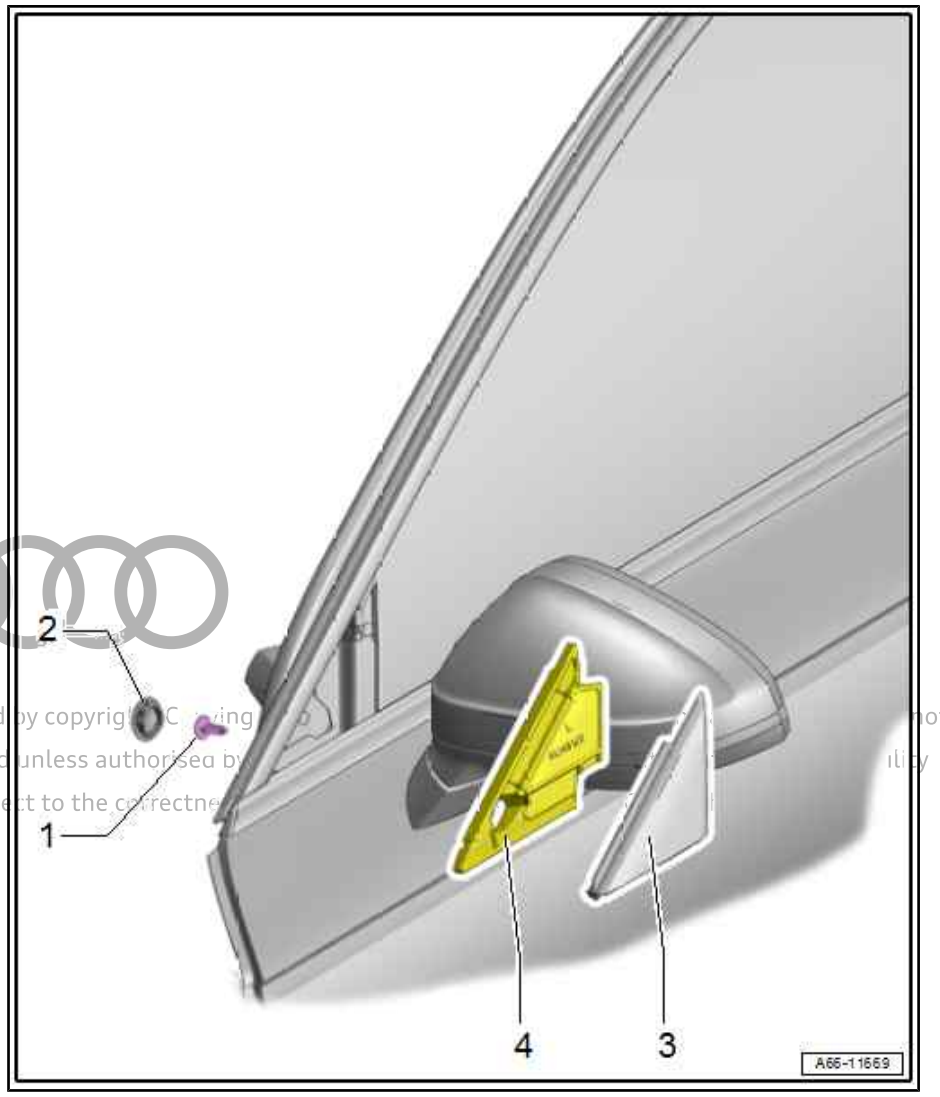
3.5 Exploded view - trim panel for A-pillar

1 - Bolt
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

2 - Cover
- ❑ A4 only

3 - Trim panel for A-pillar
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 617

4 - Sealing piece
- ❑ A4 only
- ❑ Trim panel for A-pillar



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

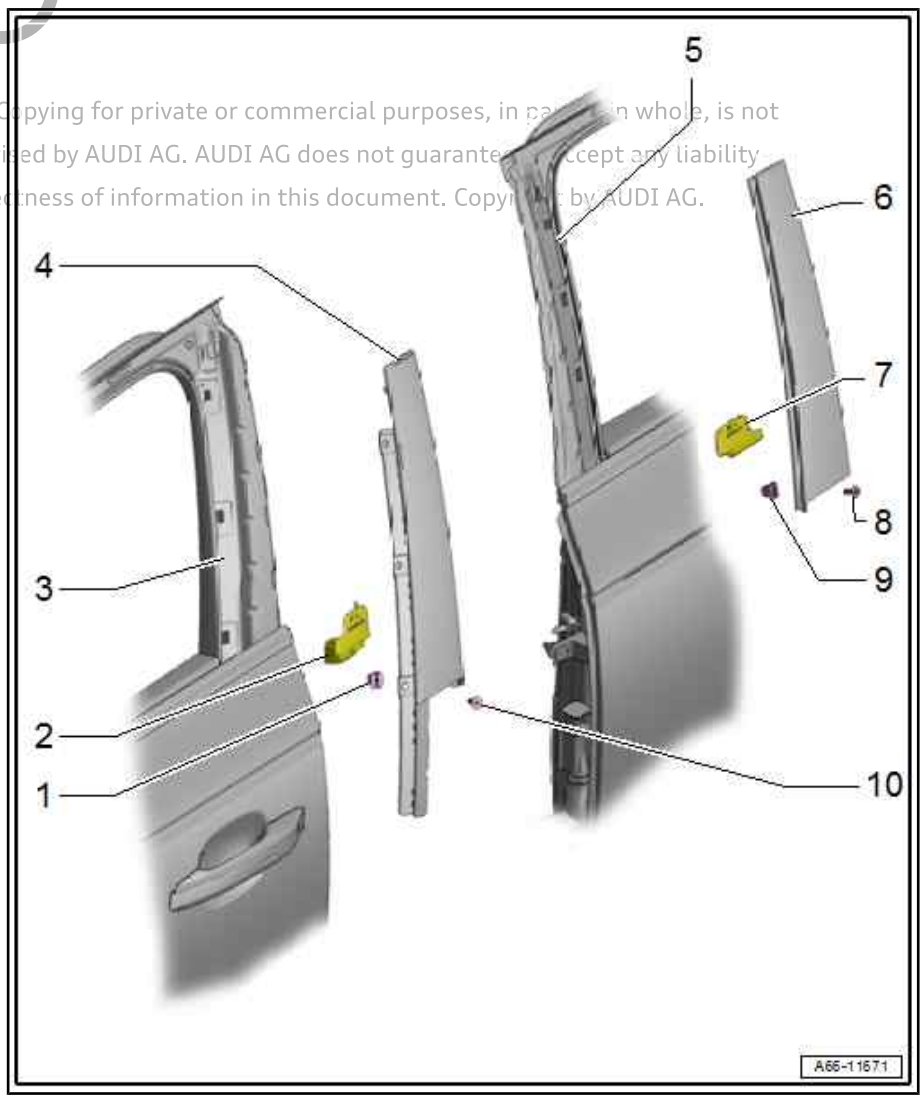
3.6 Exploded view - trim panel for B-pillar

⇒ “3.6.1 Exploded view - trim panel for B-pillar, A4”, page 583

⇒ “3.6.2 Exploded view - trim panel for B-pillar, A5 Sportback”, page 584

3.6.1 Exploded view - trim panel for B-pillar, A4

This document is protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Clip nut
- ❑ 3x

2 - Sealing element
- ❑ For trim panel for B-pillar (front door)

3 - Front door

4 - Trim panel for B-pillar (front door)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 618

5 - Rear door

6 - Trim panel for B-pillar (rear door)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 618

7 - Sealing element
- ❑ For trim panel for B-pillar (rear door)

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

9 - Clip nut
- ❑ 3x

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

3.6.2 Exploded view - trim panel for B-pillar, A5 Sportback

1 - Trim panel for B-pillar

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 619

2 - Mounting

- ❑ For trim panel for B-pillar
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 619

3 - Bolt

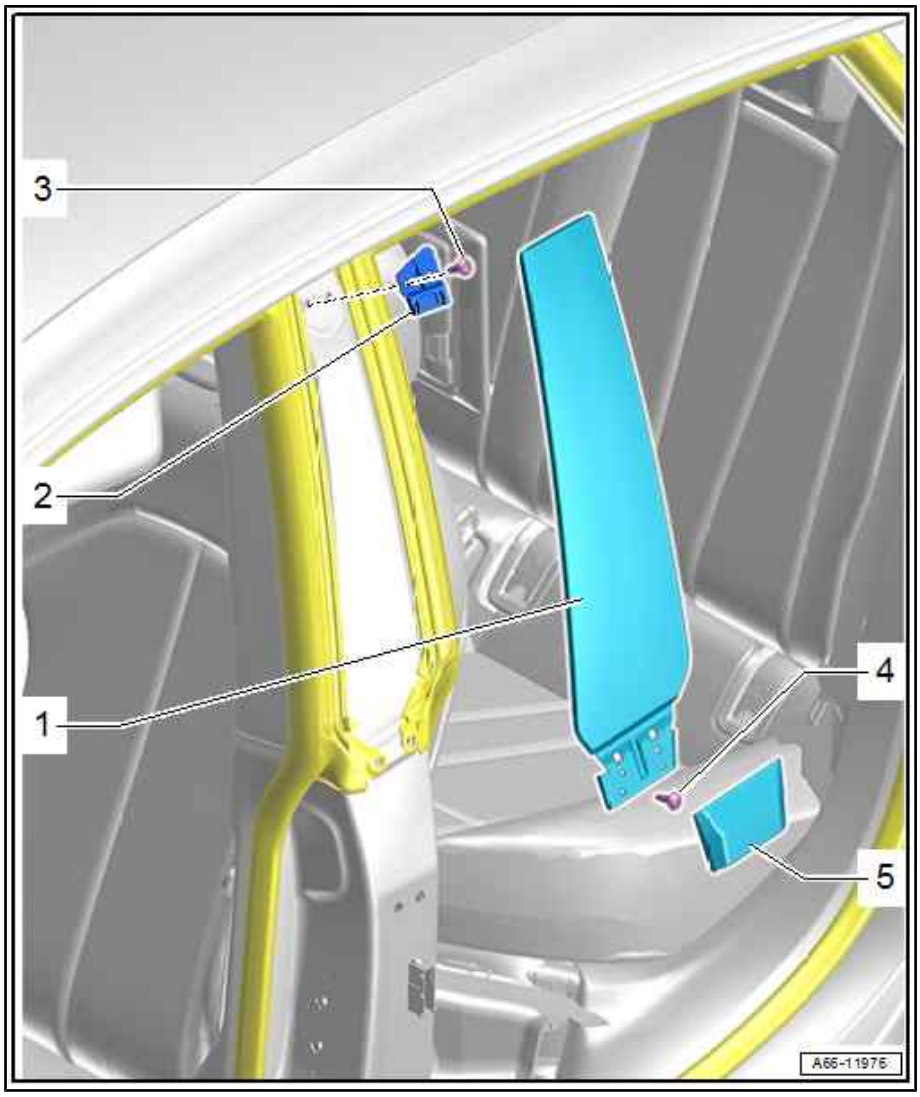
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3 Nm

5 - Cover

- ❑ For trim panel for B-pillar



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.7 Exploded view - trim panel for C-pillar

1 - Sealing element

- ❑ For trim panel for C-pillar on door (rear)

2 - Rear door

3 - Trim panel for C-pillar on door

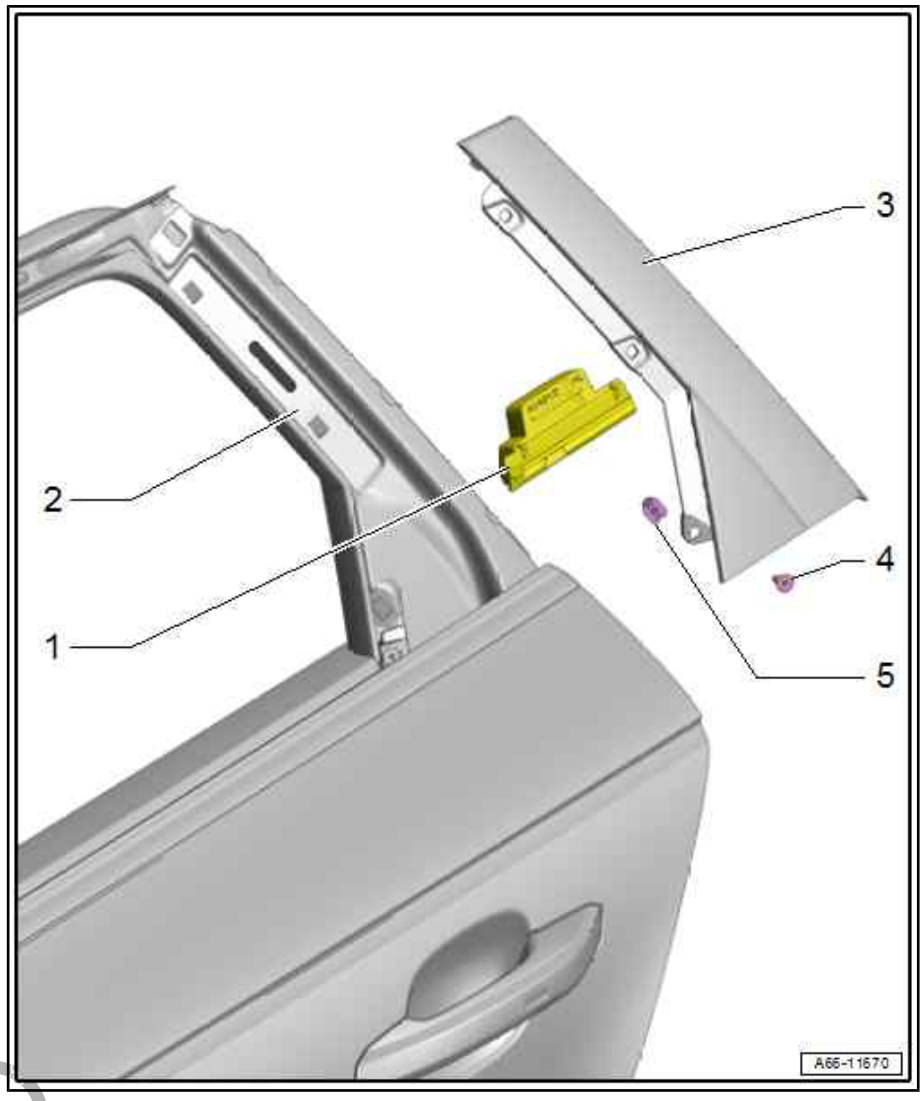
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 620

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

5 - Clip nut

- ❑ 3x



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.8 Exploded view - wheel arch covers

1 - Rear door

2 - Wing

3 - Wheel arch cover (front)
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 621

4 - Centring pin

5 - Adhesive tape

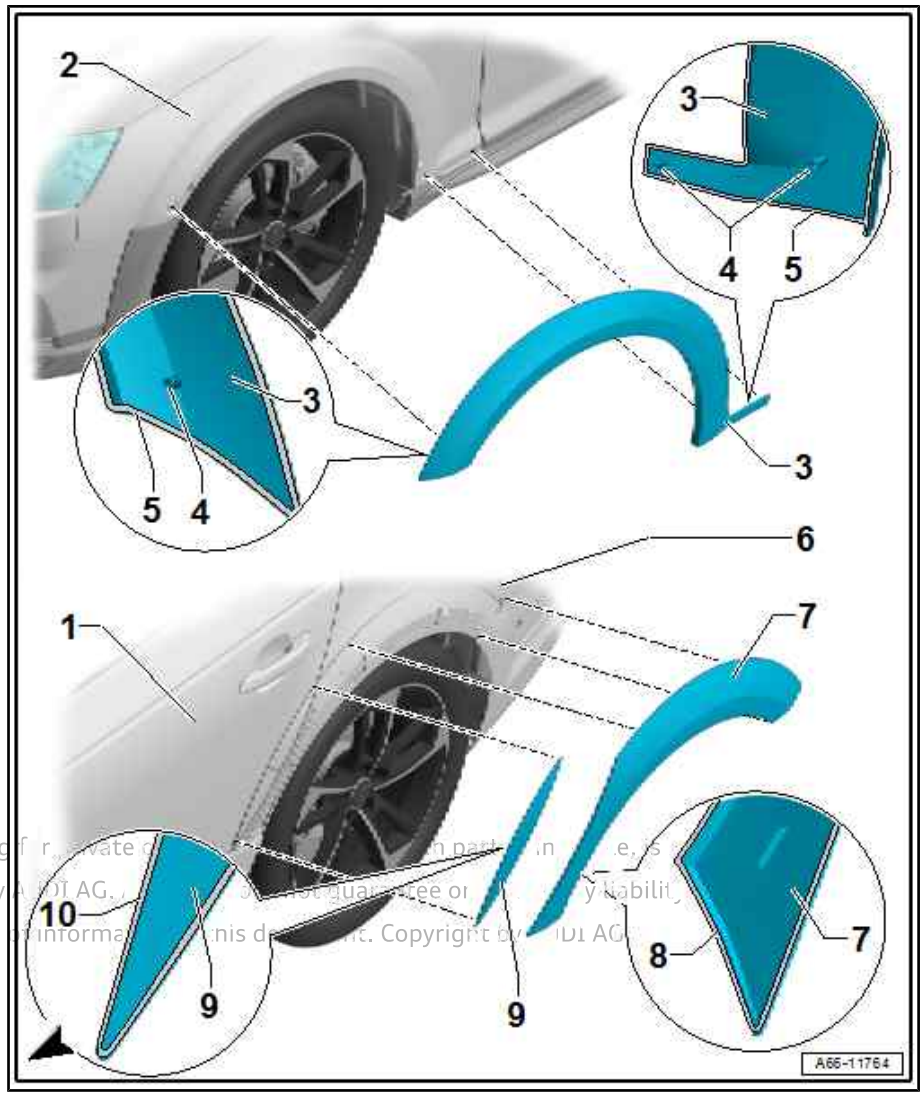
6 - Side panel

7 - Wheel arch cover (rear)
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 624

8 - Adhesive tape

9 - Wheel arch cover (door)
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 622

10 - Adhesive tape



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.9 Removing and installing trim strip

⇒ “3.9.1 Removing and installing side trim for windscreen frame”, page 587

⇒ “3.9.2 Removing and installing trim for windscreen frame”, page 589

⇒ “3.9.3 Removing and installing trim strip - front door”, page 590

⇒ “3.9.4 Removing and installing trim strip - rear door”, page 591

⇒ “3.9.5 Removing and installing trim strip - side window”, page 593

⇒ “3.9.6 Removing and installing roof trim strip”, page 593

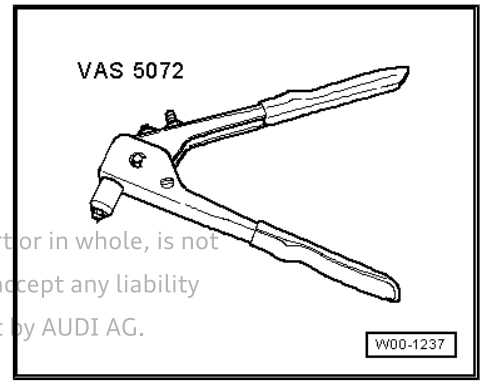
⇒ “3.9.7 Removing and installing trim strip for convertible roof compartment lid”, page 595

3.9.1 Removing and installing side trim for windscreen frame

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 569 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Pop rivet pliers - VAS 5072-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

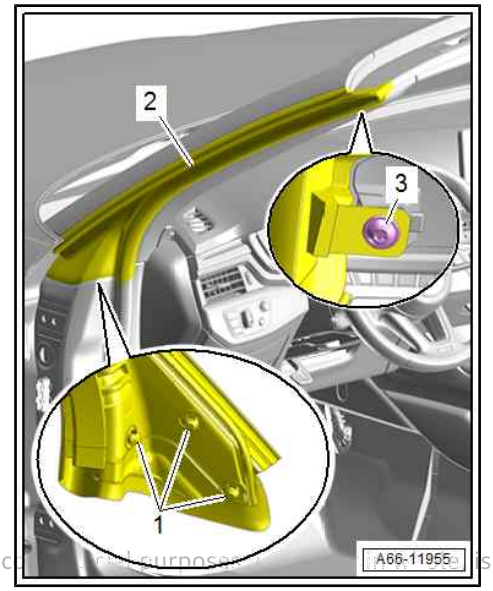
- Drill
- Pop rivet ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

Removing

– Open bonnet.

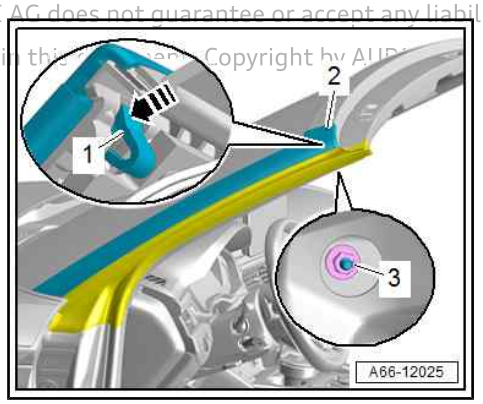
– Remove A-pillar trim (top) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing A-pillar trim .

– Remove bolt -3-.
– Pull off retaining lugs -1- at A-pillar.
– Pull seal -2- off body flange at A-pillar.

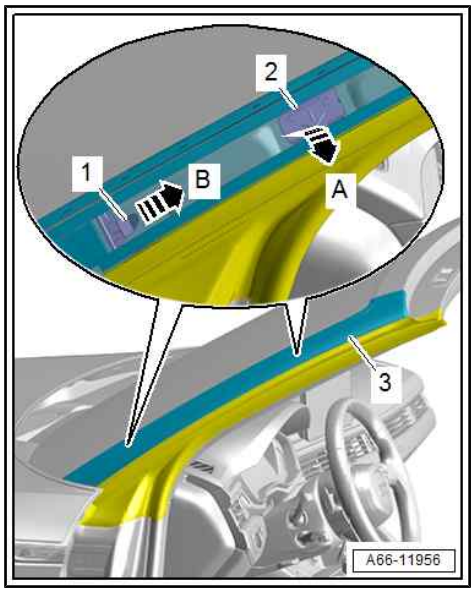


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or c... purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this ... Copyright by AUDI...

– Unscrew nut -3-.
– Release fastener -1- -arrow- and lift trim for windscreen frame -2-.



– Unclip trim for windscreen frame -3- from retaining clips -2- -arrow A-.
– Pull trim for windscreen frame upwards out of retaining clip -1- at bottom -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

CAUTION

Risk of injury caused by flying metal shavings.
Eyes and skin can suffer irritation or injuries.
– **Put on safety goggles.**
– **Put on protective gloves.**

– Renew retaining clip -2-; to do so, drill off pop rivets -arrows- and knock out rivet stems.

• Take care to remove all remnants of the pop rivet drilled out.

– Detach retaining clip.

– When riveting on retaining clip, make sure that arrow -3- points towards outside.

• The vehicle and the retaining clip must be at room temperature.

• The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Clean bonding surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

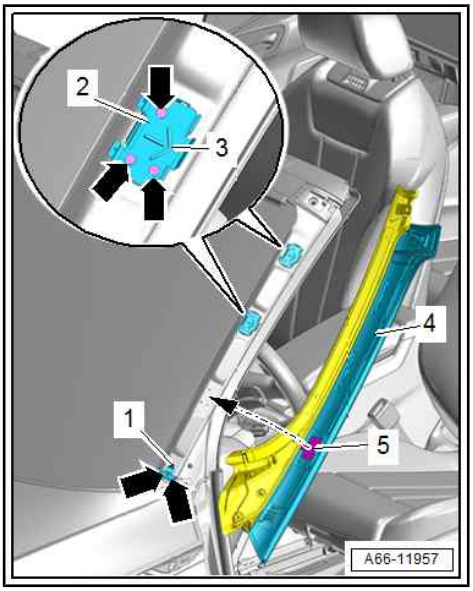
– Fit retaining clip -5- in side trim for windscreen frame -4- in position shown in illustration.

– Peel protective film off adhesive tape.

– Insert side trim for windscreen frame in bottom retaining clip and then press it onto top retaining clips until it engages.

• After bonding retaining clips, press them onto windscreen frame.

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.



Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ page 569

◆ ⇒ “1.2.3 Exploded view - door seals, A5 Cabriolet”, page 129

3.9.2 Removing and installing trim for windscreen frame

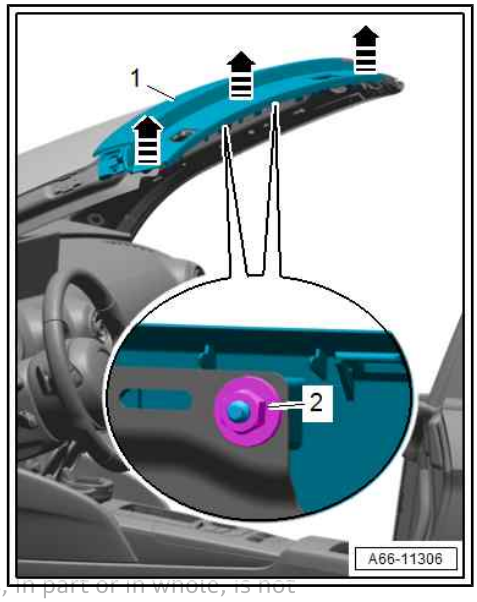
• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 569 .

Removing

– Remove side trim for windscreen frame (left and right) ⇒ page 587 .

– Remove nuts -2-.

– Prise off trim -1- for windscreen frame -arrows-; catches will be released automatically.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

CAUTION

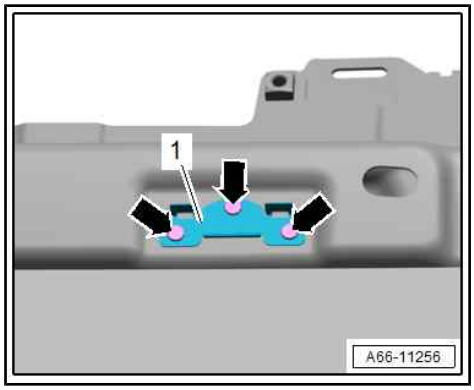
Risk of injury caused by flying metal shavings.
Eyes and skin can suffer irritation or injuries.
– Put on safety goggles.
– Put on protective gloves.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Renew retaining clip -1-; to do so, drill off pop rivets -arrows- and knock out rivet stems.

• Take care to remove all remnants of the pop rivet drilled out.

– Detach retaining clip.



Tightening torques

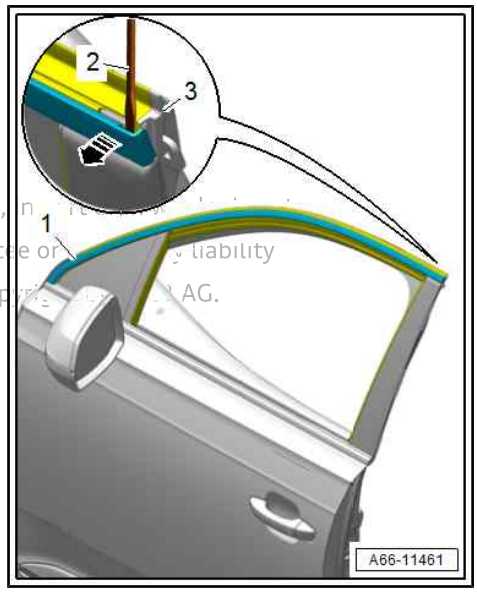
◆ ⇒ page 569

3.9.3 Removing and installing trim strip - front door

Removing

– Lever trim strip -1- out of clip -arrow- by applying a narrow screwdriver -2- at recess.

– Carefully lever trim strip out of window guide -3- along entire length and detach.



Installing

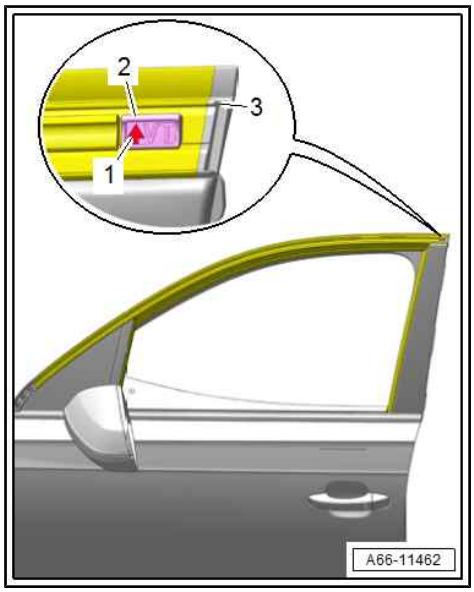
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Copyright by AUDI AG. Service for private and training purposes, in ... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ... liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co... AG.

– Press new retaining clip -2- into mounting on window guide -3-.

• Arrow -1- must face upwards.

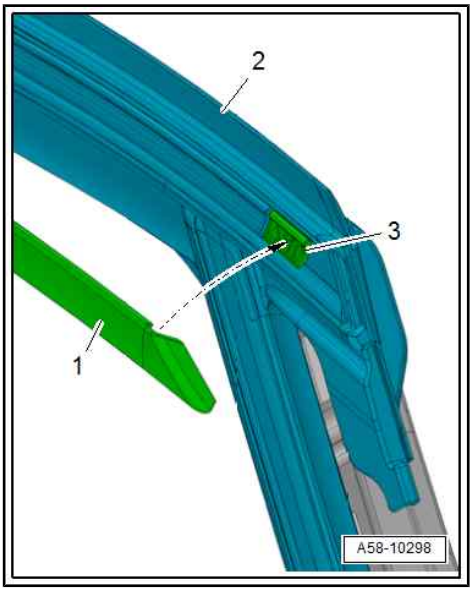
• “VT” = front door



– Align trim strip -1- on door flange at B-pillar and insert into clip -3- and window guide -2- from below.
– Press trim strip on over entire length.

Note:

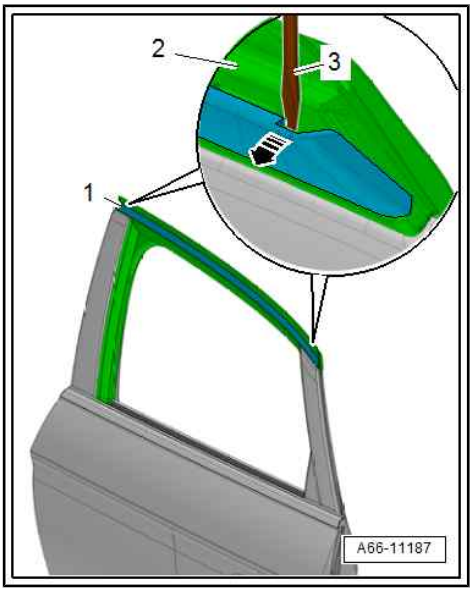
Spray seal with soap solution or similar to make installation easier.



3.9.4 Removing and installing trim strip - rear door

Removing

– Lever trim strip -1- out of clip -arrow- by applying a narrow screwdriver -3- at recess.
– Carefully lever trim strip out of window guide -2- along entire length and detach.

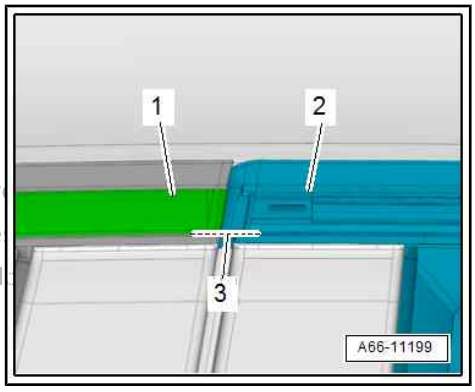


Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

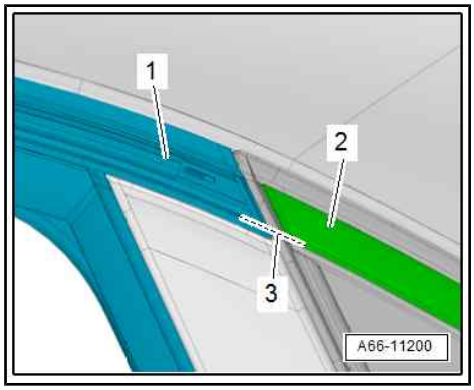
– Before fitting trim strip, ensure that mountings for trim strip in window guide are parallel at front door and at side window.

• Mounting -2- for trim strip must be parallel -3- to trim strip -1- for front door.



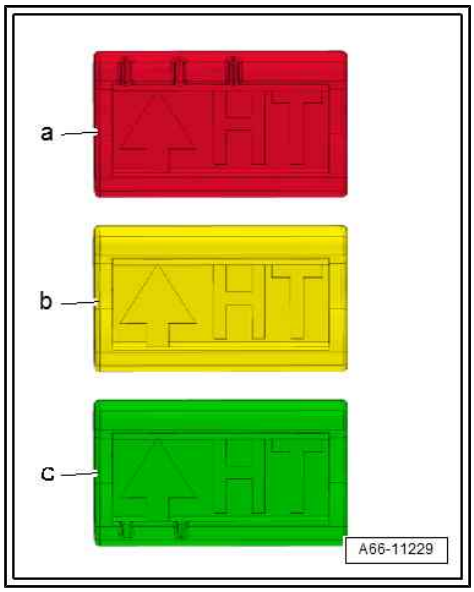
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commer
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG doe
with respect to the correctness of information in this d

- Mounting -1- for trim strip must be parallel -3- to trim strip -2- for side window.



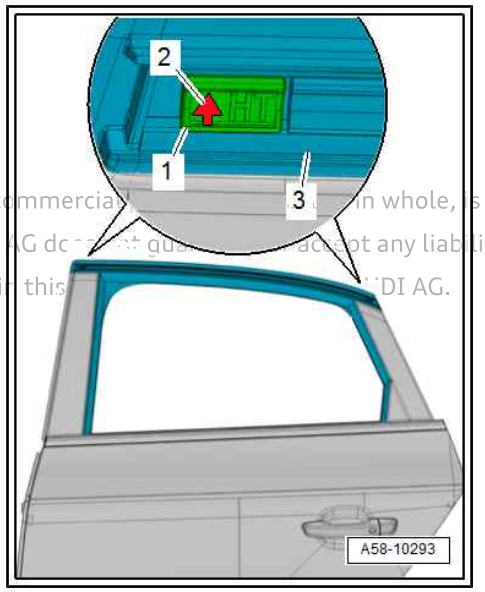
– Coloured clips are used to achieve and check correct adjustment.

- -a- = +1.0 mm
- -b- = Standard position
- -c- = -1.0 mm



– Press new retaining clip -1- into mounting on window guide -3-.

- Arrow -2- must face upwards.
- “HT” = Rear door

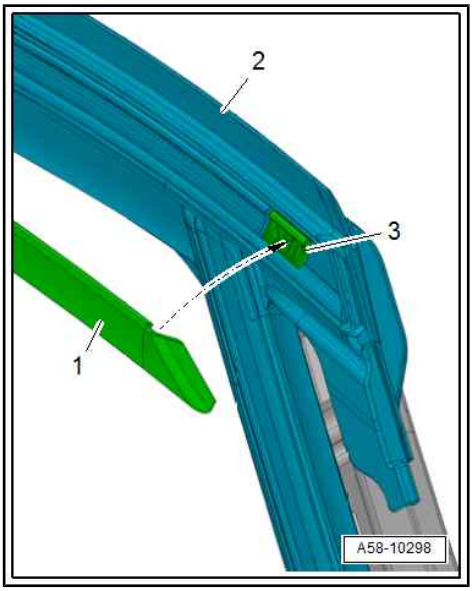


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © AUDI AG.

– Align trim strip -1- on door flange at C-pillar and insert into clips -3- and window guide -2- from below.
– Press trim strip on over entire length.

Note:

Spray seal with soap solution or similar to make installation easier.



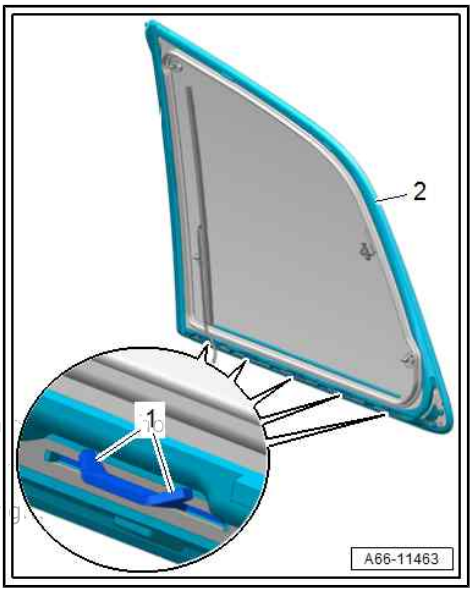
3.9.5 Removing and installing trim strip - side window

Removing

– Remove side window ⇒ page 505 .
– Straighten retaining tabs -1-.
– Carefully lever trim strip -2- out of window guide -arrows- and remove.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyri

3.9.6 Removing and installing roof trim strip

- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 594).

Special tools and workshop equipment required

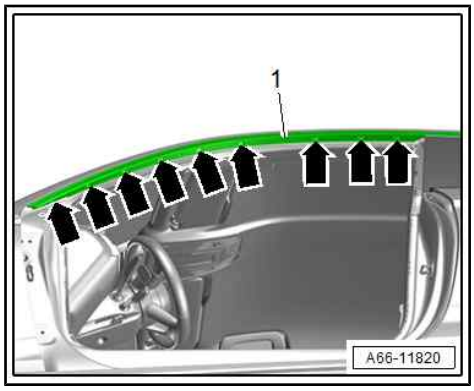
♦ Drill
♦ Drill bit, ∅ 3 mm

Removing

– Open front door.
– A5 Sportback: Open rear door.
– Open bonnet.

– Detach door seal for roof trim strip ⇒ page 142 .

– Have a second mechanic hold the roof trim strip -1- to avoid damaging the paintwork.



CAUTION

Risk of injury caused by flying metal shavings.
Eyes and skin can suffer irritation or injuries.
– Put on safety goggles.
– Put on protective gloves.

– Drill out pop rivet heads -arrows- and knock out rivet stems.

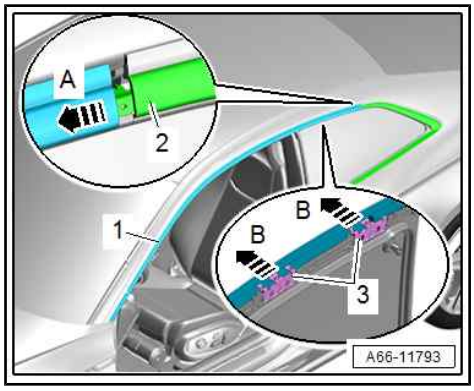
• Take care not to twist or bend roof trim strip.

– Detach roof trim strip -1- at vehicle body.

– A5 Coupé: Pull roof trim strip out of clip on trim strip for side window -2- -arrow A- and detach it from retaining clips -3- -arrows B-.

– A5 Sportback: Pull roof trim strip out of clip on trim strip for side window -2-.

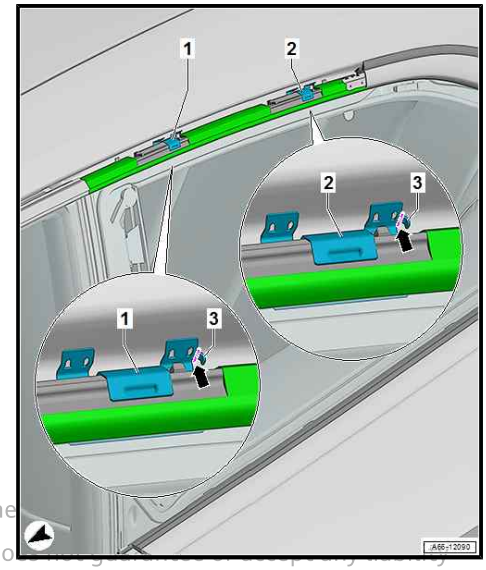
– Detach roof trim strip.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– A5 Coupé models from November 2016 onwards: Detach tabs -3- from retaining clips -1, 2- at marking -arrow-.

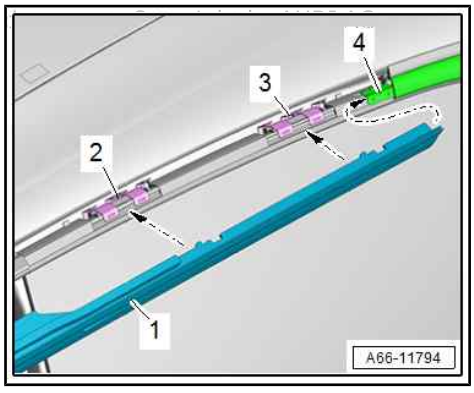


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG do

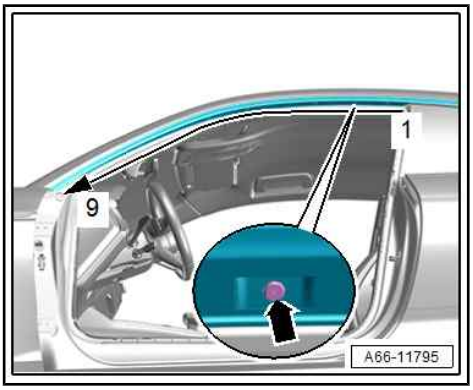
– A5 Coupé: Insert roof trim strip -1- in retaining clips -2, 3- and press it onto clip -4- on trim strip for side window.

• Clip must be inserted correctly in guide.

• Roof trim strip must make flush contact with trim strip for side window.



– Secure roof trim strip with rivets -arrow- in sequence -1 … 9-.



3.9.7 Removing and installing trim strip for convertible roof compartment lid

- A second mechanic is required to perform this step (as described on ⇒ page 595).

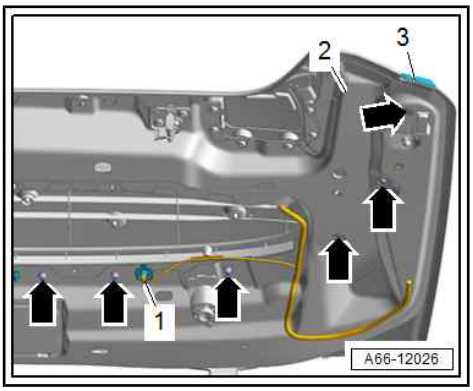
Removing

– Move convertible roof to service position ⇒ page 330 .

– Unplug electrical connector -1-.

– Remove nuts -arrows-.

– Carefully detach trim strip -3- from convertible roof compartment lid -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

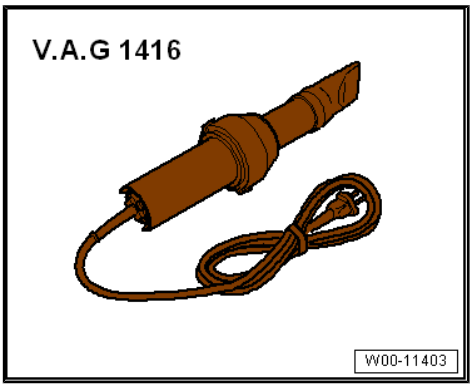
♦ ⇒ page 572

3.10 Removing and installing wing trim panel

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 574 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-



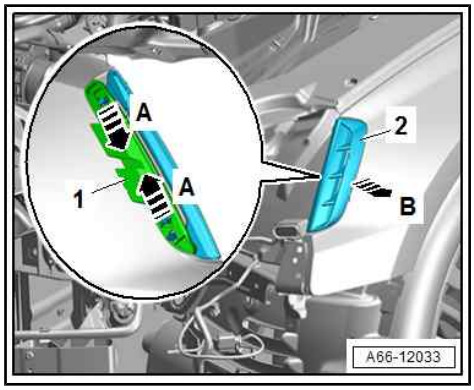
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

Removing

– Remove headlight ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Headlights; Removing and installing headlights .

– Release fasteners -arrows A-.
– Detach bracket -1-.
– Carefully heat wing trim panel -2- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .
– Carefully lever off wing trim panel -arrow B-, taking care not to damage paintwork.



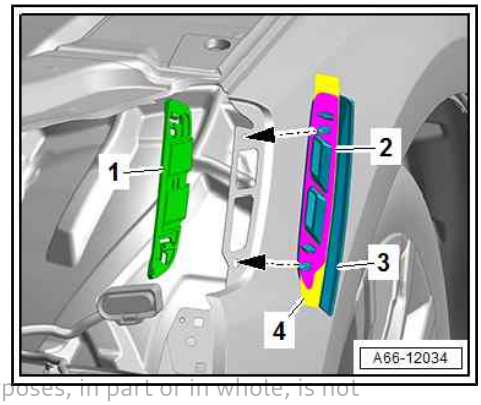
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- The vehicle and the trim must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.
– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.
– Peel protective film -4- off adhesive strip -2-.
– Position wing trim panel -3- above pins on wing -arrows-.
– Press trim panel onto wing and press bracket -1- on so it engages.

- Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.



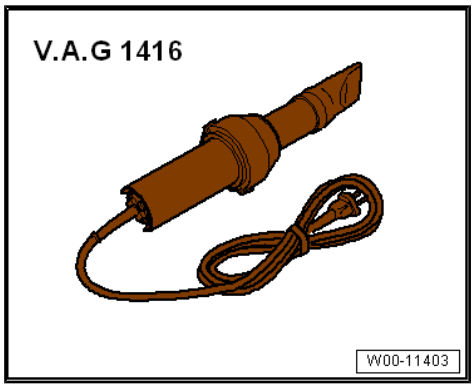
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Unauthorized distribution, AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.11 Removing and installing side panel trim

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 574 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-

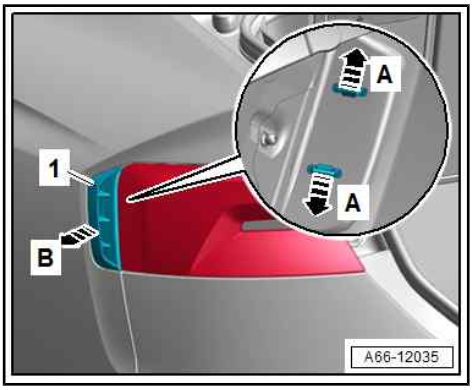


♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

Removing

– Open cover in luggage compartment side trim.
– Fold insulating mat to one side.

– Carefully heat side panel trim -1- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .
– Release fasteners -arrows A- and carefully lever off side panel trim -arrow B-, taking care not to damage paintwork.



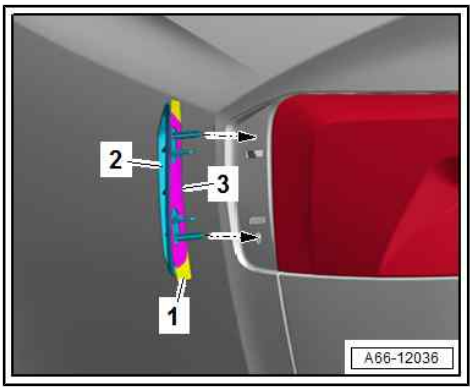
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- The vehicle and the trim must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.
– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.
– Peel protective film -1- off adhesive strip -3-.
– Position wing trim panel -2- above pins on wing -arrows-.
– Press trim panel onto wing so it engages.

- Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.



3.12 Removing and installing cover

⇒ “3.12.1 Removing and installing door cover”, page 597
⇒ “3.12.2 Removing and installing cover for wheel housing liner”, page 599
⇒ “3.12.3 Preparing cover for wheel housing liner for installation”, page 600

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.12.1 Removing and installing door cover

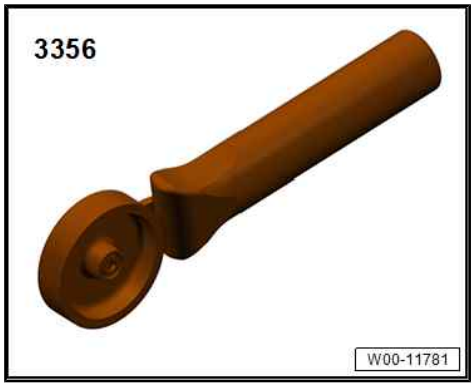
- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 573 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

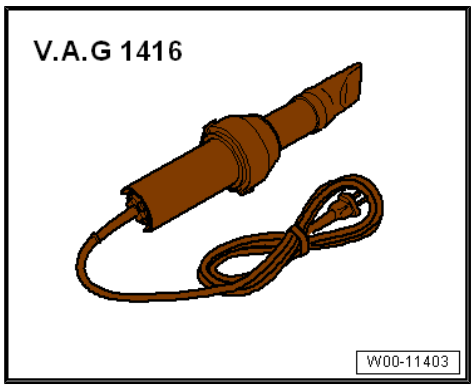
♦ Setting gauge - 3371-



- Roller - 3356-



- Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-

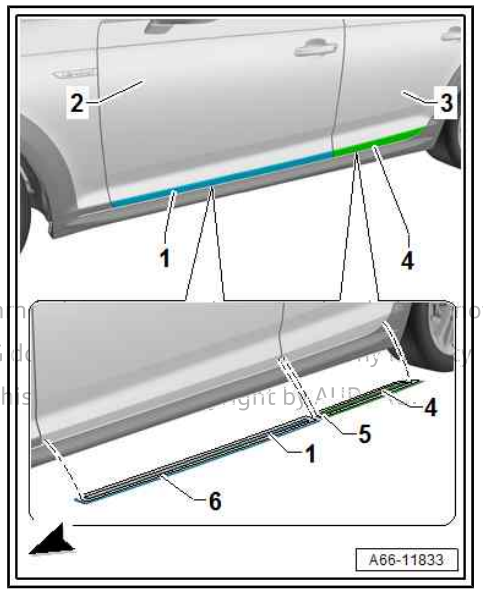


- Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-
- Primer - D 355 205 A2-
- Applicator - D 009 500 25-

Removing

– Mark installation position of door cover for re-installation.

– Heat door cover -1, 4- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- in bonding area -5, 6- and pull cover off gradually.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- The vehicle and the cover must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Apply primer - D 355 205 A2- -item 1- to bonding area -2- on painted surface using applicator - D 009 500 25- -item 3- and allow to flash off for 10 minutes.

• If the primer - D 355 205 A2- has been allowed to flash off for more than 2 hours, primer must be re-applied.

– Fold over end of protective film or attach a removal aid to protective film.

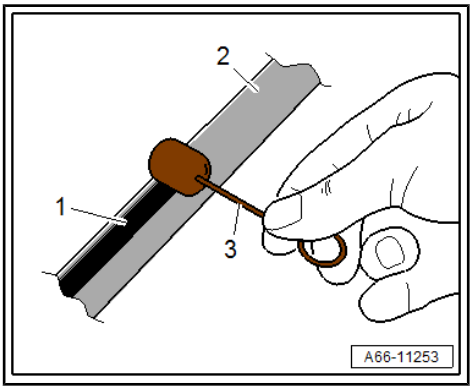
– Position door cover (front) -1- on front door -2- according to marking made during removal; note adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 600 .

– Position door cover (rear) -4- on rear door -3- according to marking made during removal; note adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 600 .

– Peel protective film off adhesive strip -5, 6- using removal aid.

– Press on door cover -1, 4- using roller - 3356- .

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.



3.12.2 Removing and installing cover for wheel housing liner

♦ Removing and installing wing panel cover ⇒ page 599

♦ Removing and installing cover for side member ⇒ page 599

Removing and installing wing panel cover:

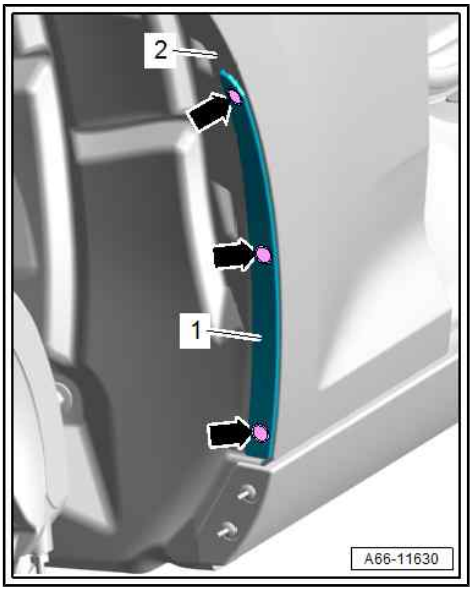
Removing

– Remove spreader rivets -arrows-.

– Detach cover -1- from wing -2-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



Removing and installing cover for side member:

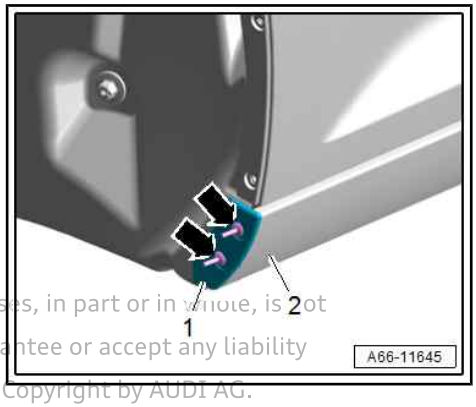
Removing

– Remove spreader rivets -arrows-.

– Detach cover -1- from side member -2-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

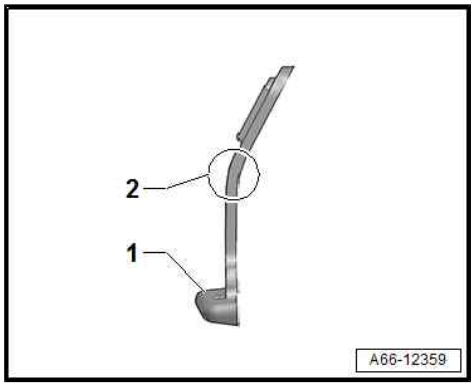
3.12.3 Preparing cover for wheel housing liner for installation

Procedure

– A5 Cabriolet, cover for wheel housing liner (right-side): Clamp cover for wheel housing liner -1- in a vice in area shown -2- and straighten it.

Note:

Only the cover for wheel housing liner on the right side of the vehicle has to be straightened.



3.13 Adjustment dimensions for covers

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co... part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUD... accept ... With respect to the correct... rmati... b...

1 - Spoiler (front)

2 - Wheel arch cover (front)

- Dimension -a- = 0.5 mm
- Dimension -b- = 1.5 mm

3 - Door cover (front)

- Dimension -c- = 5.8 mm
- Dimension -d- = 6.4 mm
- Dimension -e- = 6.4 mm

4 - Door cover (rear)

- Dimension -f- = 6.3 mm
- Dimension -g- = 6.4 mm
- Dimension -h- = 6.4 mm
- Dimension -i- = 4.6 mm

5 - Wheel arch cover (door)

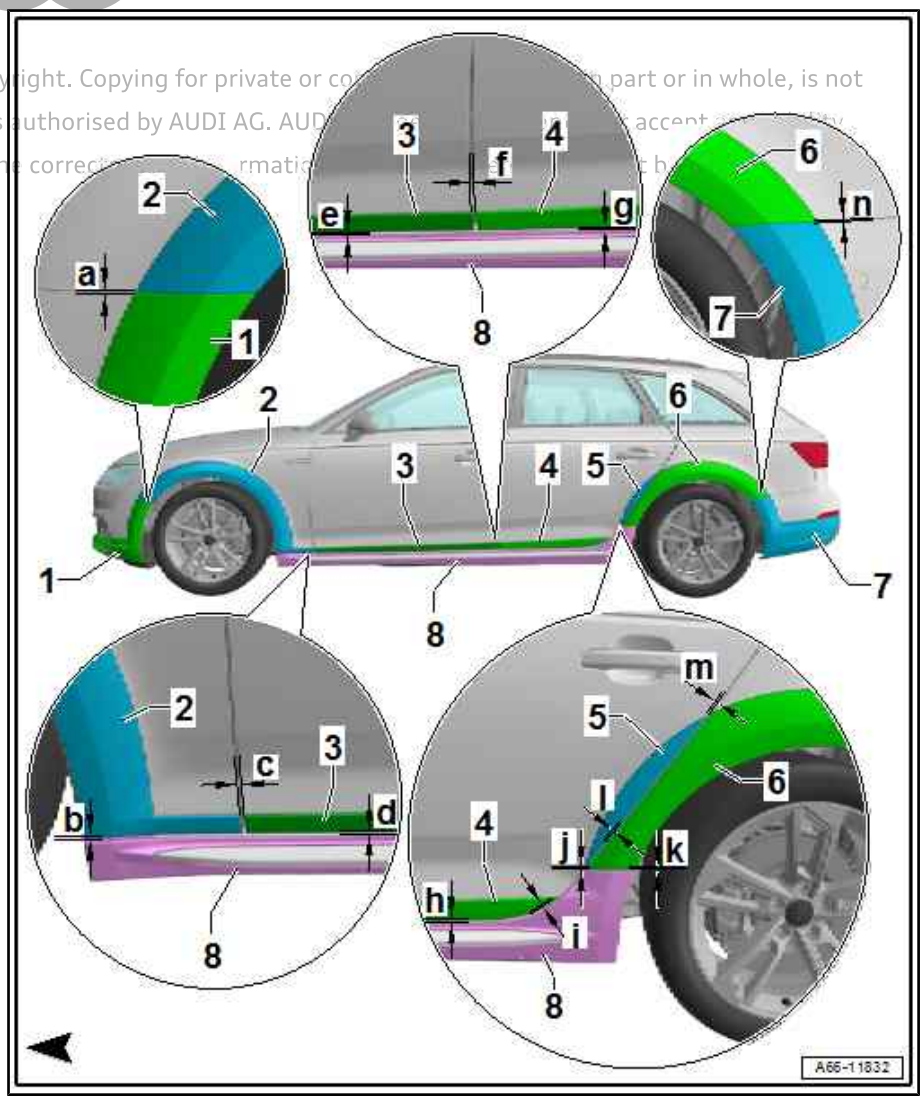
- Dimension -l- = 3.6 mm

6 - Wheel arch cover (rear)

- Dimension -j- = 2.1 mm
- Dimension -k- = 1.8 mm
- Dimension -m- = 3.6 mm
- Dimension -n- = 0.5 mm

7 - Bumper cover (bottom section)

8 - Side member trim



3.14 Removing and installing sill panel trim

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 576 .

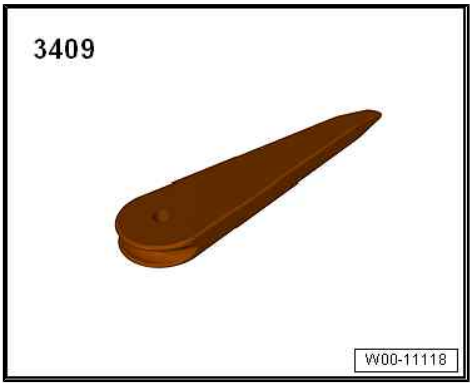
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Roller - 3356-

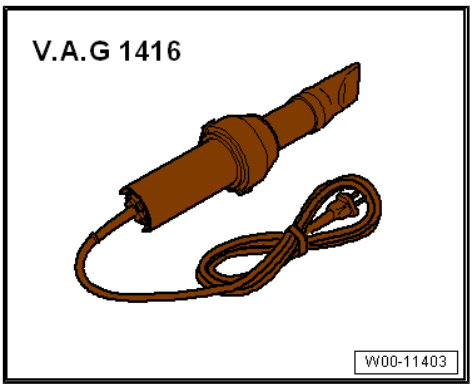


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p... or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does n... or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this do... pyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



♦ Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-



♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

Removing

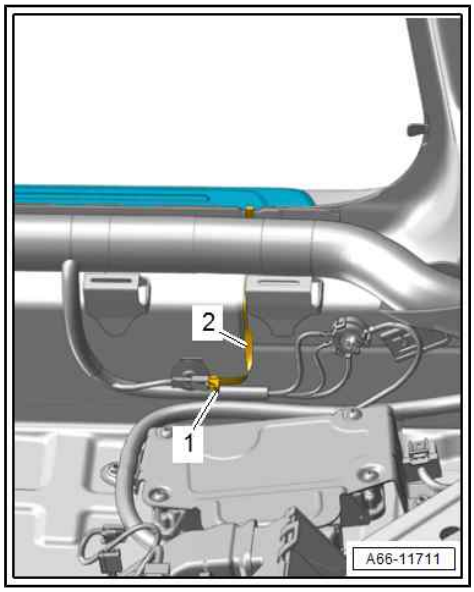
Equipment version with sill panel trim lighting:

– Remove sill panel trim (front) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Passenger compartment trim panels; Removing and installing sill panel trim .

– Loosen inner door seal in area of wiring harness.

– Press floor covering to side.

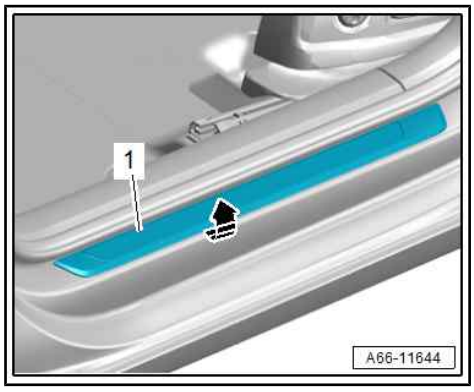
– Unplug electrical connector -1- and move wiring harness -2- clear.



Continued:

– Carefully heat sill panel trim -1- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .

– Use removal wedge - 3409- to prise sill panel trim carefully off side member -arrow-, taking care not to damage paintwork.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

• The vehicle and the trim must be at room temperature.

• The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

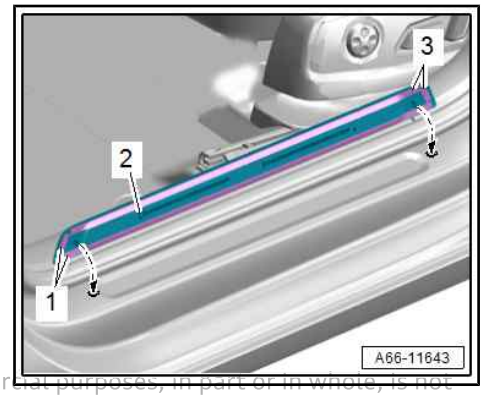
– Peel protective films off adhesive strips -1, 3-.

– Position sill panel trim -2- above pins on side member -arrows-.

– Press sill panel trim onto side member using roller -3356- .

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.15 Removing and installing side member trim

⇒ “3.15.1 Removing and installing side member trim - A4”, page 603

⇒ “3.15.2 Removing and installing side member trim - A4 allroad”, page 604

⇒ “3.15.3 Removing and installing side member trim - RS4”, page 606

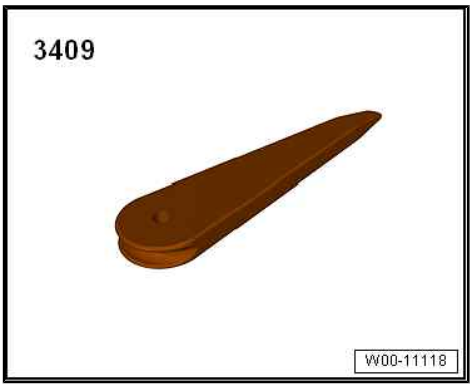
⇒ “3.15.4 Removing and installing side member trim - A5”, page 609

3.15.1 Removing and installing side member trim - A4

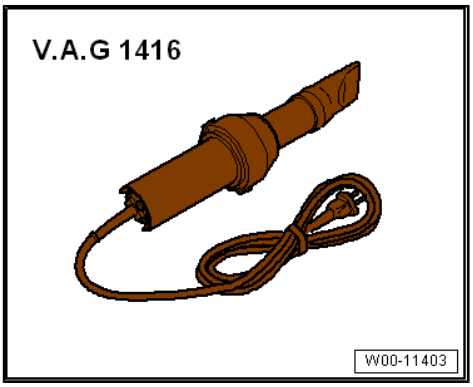
- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 577 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



♦ Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-



♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

♦ Primer - D 355 205 A2-

♦ Applicator - D 009 500 25-

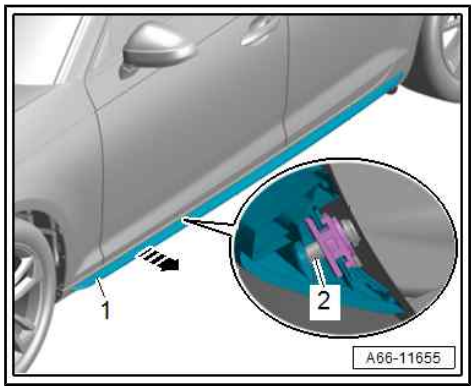
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Carefully heat side member trim -1- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .

– Carefully prise side member trim from threaded pins -2- -arrow- using removal wedge - 3409- .

– Detach side member trim and set it down on a soft surface.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- The vehicle and the trim must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

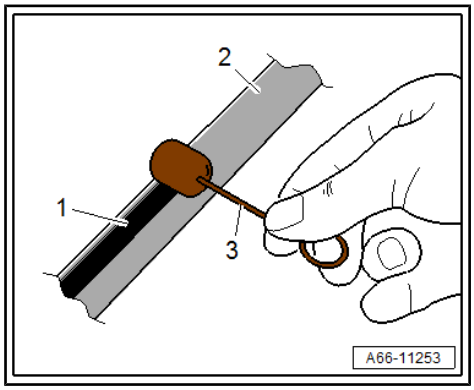
– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

– Apply primer - D 355 205 A2- -item 1- to bonding area -2- on painted surface using applicator - D 009 500 25- -item 3- and allow to flash off for 10 minutes.

- If the primer - D 355 205 A2- has been allowed to flash off for more than 2 hours, primer must be re-applied.

– Fold over end of protective film or attach a removal aid to protective film.

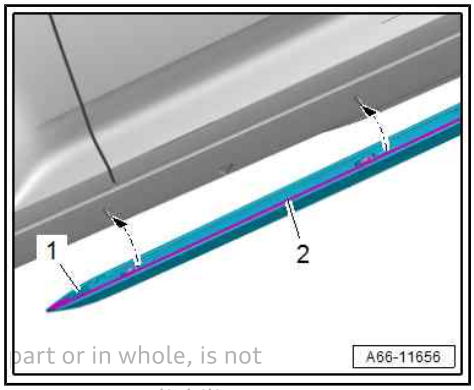


– Peel protective film off adhesive strip -2-.

– Position side member trim -1- over threaded pins -arrows-.

– Press on side member trim over entire length.

- Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.



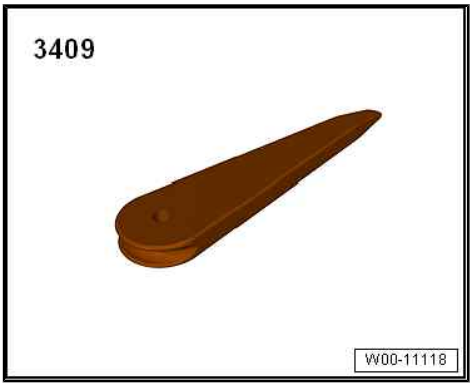
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.15.2 Removing and installing side member trim - A4 allroad

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 578 .

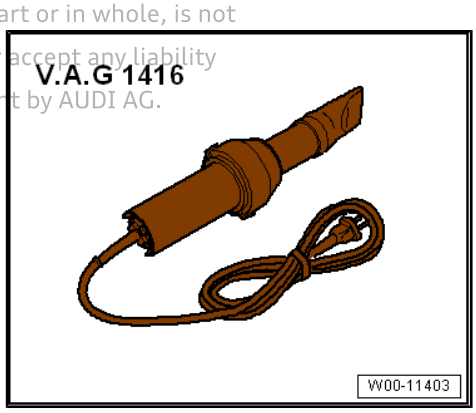
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-



♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

♦ Primer - D 355 205 A2-

♦ Applicator - D 009 500 25-

Removing

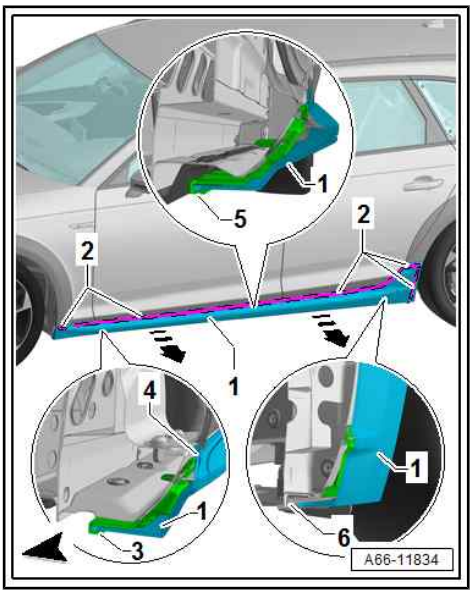
– Remove rear door ⇒ page 185 .

– Release side member trim -1- at bottom edge of fastening strip -3, 5, 6-.

– Heat side member trim -1- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- in bonding area -2-.

– Release side member trim -1- at top edge of fastening strip -4-.

– Pull side member trim -1- off gradually -arrows-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- The vehicle and the trim must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

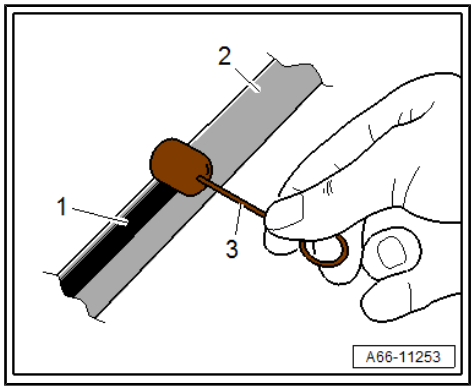
– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

– Apply primer - D 355 205 A2- -item 1- to bonding area -2- on painted surface using applicator - D 009 500 25- -item 3- and allow to flash off for 10 minutes.

• If the primer - D 355 205 A2- has been allowed to flash off for more than 2 hours, primer must be re-applied.

– Fold over end of protective film or attach a removal aid to protective film.



– Position side member trim -4- using centring pins -1-.

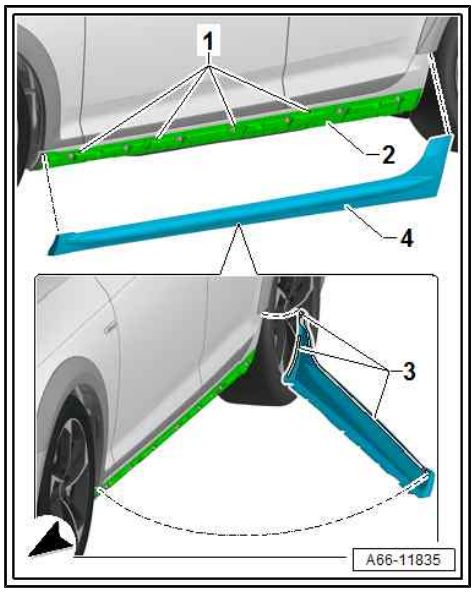
– Engage top edge of side member trim -4- in fastening strip -2-.

– Engage bottom edge of side member trim -4- in fastening strip -2-.

– Peel protective film off adhesive strip -3- using removal aid.

– Press on side member trim over entire length.

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.



3.15.3 Removing and installing side member trim - RS4

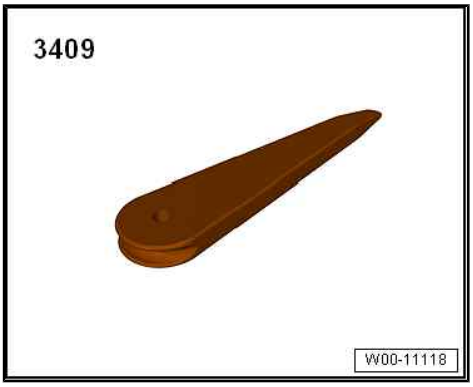
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Roller - 3356-

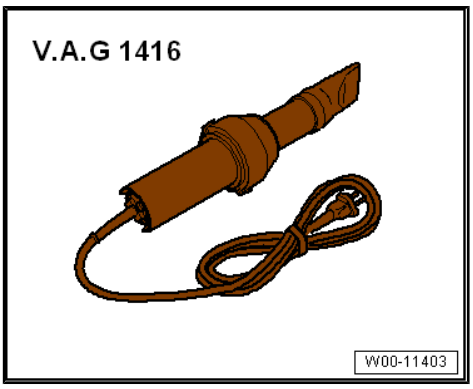


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerci… t or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG do… tee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this do… Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Removal wedge - 3409-



- Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-



- Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-
- Primer - D 355 205 A2-
- Applicator - D 009 500 25-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

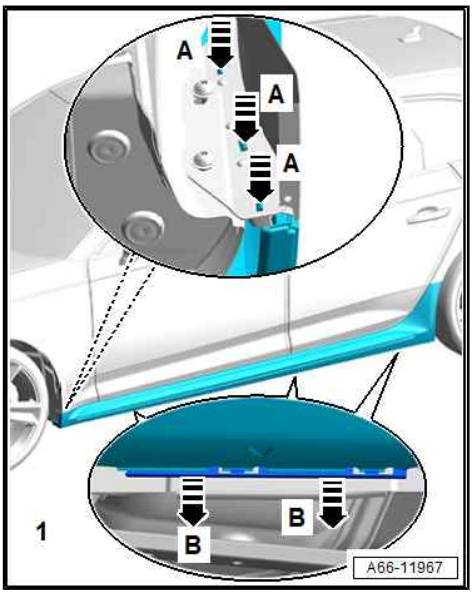
Removing

– Remove rear door ⇒ page 185 .

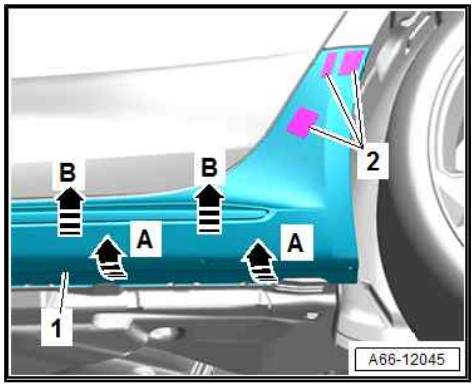
– Unfasten wheel housing liner (front) at rear and push to side ⇒ page 654 .

– Release fasteners -arrows B- and detach side member trim from fastening strip.

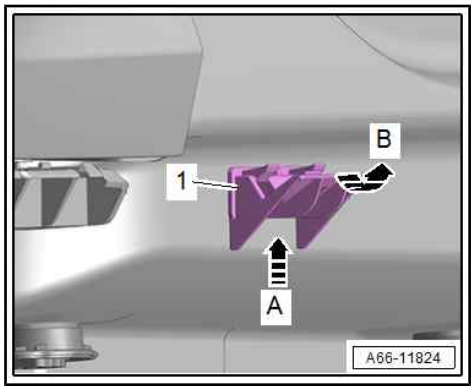
– Release fasteners -arrows A- and detach side member trim (bottom) from wing panel (front).



– Heat side member trim -1- in bonding areas -2- using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- and release it from adhesive bond.
– Press side member trim upwards -arrows B- and pivot it out in direction of -arrows A-.



– Press bracket (rear) -1- upwards -arrow A-, pivot it upwards at bottom section -arrow B- and detach.

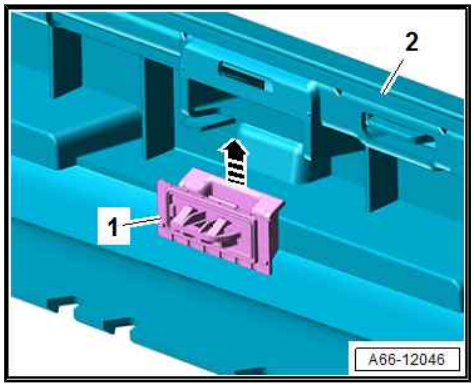


Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

• The contact surface for the bracket on the vehicle body must be even and must not be deformed. Repair if necessary.

– Check abrasion guard -2- for damage.
– Fit bracket (rear) -1- in recess on side member trim -arrow-.



• The vehicle and the trim must be at room temperature.
• The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

Preparations for re-installation:

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape from trim.
– Clean plastic bonding surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.
– Apply plastic primer - D 366 PR1 A1- to plastic bonding surface and allow to flash off until cleaning solution has evaporated completely.
– Apply double-sided adhesive tape (⇒ Electronic parts catalogue) to same area.
• Apply adhesive tape within 60 minutes.

Continued:

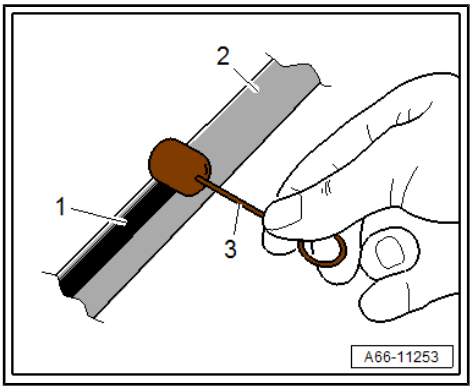
– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.
– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Apply primer - D 355 205 A2- -item 1- to bonding area -2- on painted surface using applicator - D 009 500 25- -item 3- and allow to flash off for 10 minutes.

• If the primer - D 355 205 A2- has been allowed to flash off for more than 2 hours, primer must be re-applied.

– Fold over end of protective film or attach a removal aid to protective film.



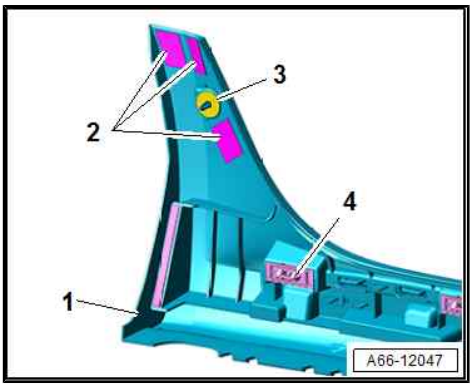
– Position side member trim -1-, making sure that centring pin -3- is positioned at opening.

– Peel protective film off adhesive strips -2- using removal aid.

– Press on side member trim until retainers -4- engage audibly.

– Press on bonding area using roller - 3356- .

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.

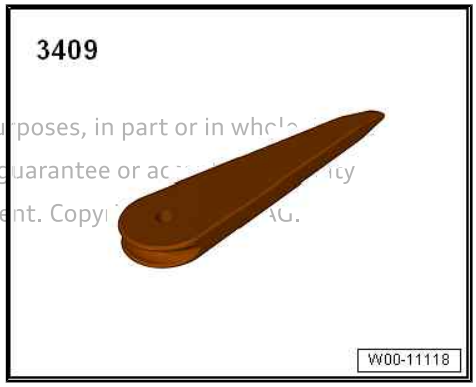


3.15.4 Removing and installing side member trim - A5

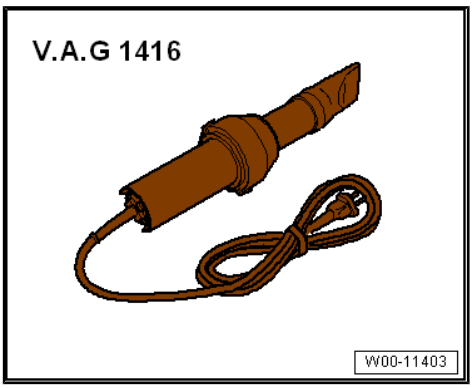
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



♦ Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-



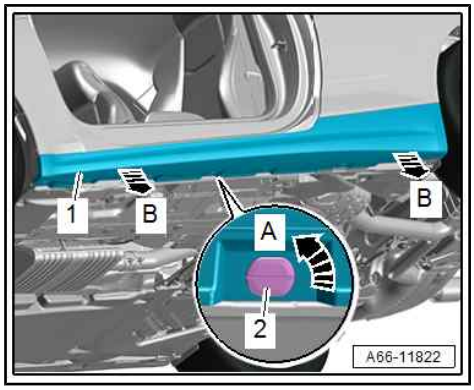
♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

♦ Primer - D 355 205 A2-

♦ Applicator - D 009 500 25-

Removing

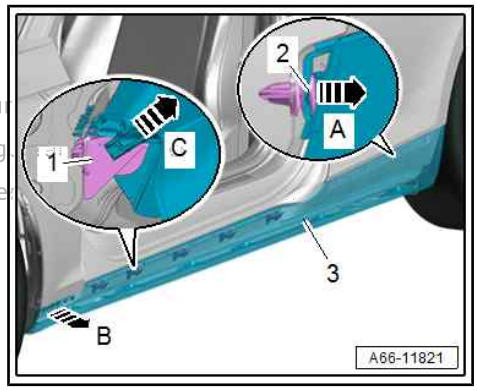
– A5 Sportback: Remove rear door ⇒ page 185 .
– Remove underbody trim (centre) ⇒ page 638 .
– Remove underbody trim (rear) ⇒ page 639 .
– Release quick-release fastener -2- -arrow A-.
– Lift side member trim -1- at bottom slightly and pull outwards -arrows B-.



A5 Coupé:

– Unfasten retaining clips -2- for side member trim from vehicle body, beginning in vicinity of wheel housing -arrow A-.
– Pull side member trim -3- first off bracket at front -arrow B- and then off brackets at rear -1- -arrow C-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g
with respect to the correctness of information in this docume

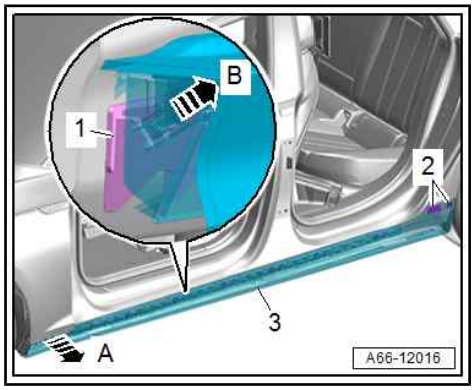


A5 Sportback:

– Carefully heat side member trim in area of side panel using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .
– Carefully loosen side member trim in area of adhesive bonds -2-.
– Pull side member trim -3- first off retainer at front -arrow A- and then off retainers at rear -1- -arrow B-.

Continued:

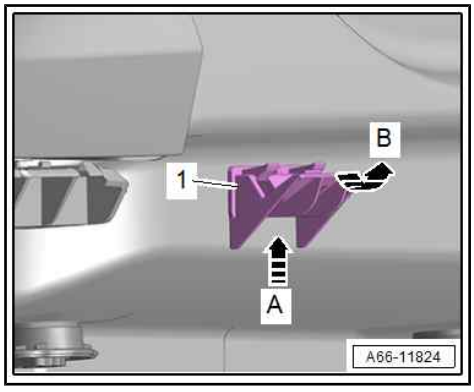
– Detach side member trim and set it down on a soft surface.



– Press bracket (rear) -1- upwards -arrow A-, pivot it upwards at bottom section -arrow B- and detach.

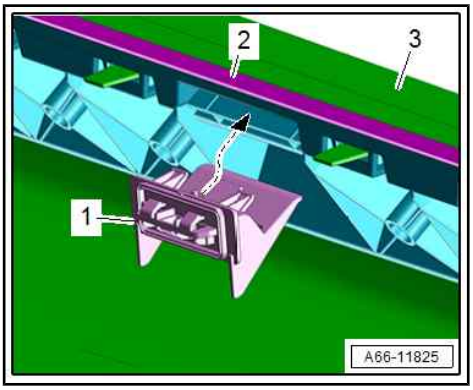
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



– Check abrasion guard -2- for damage.

– Fit bracket (rear) -1- in recess on side member trim -3-.



A5 Coupé:

– Position side member trim and press it on until brackets (rear) and clips engage audibly.

A5 Sportback:

- The vehicle and the trim must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

Preparations for re-installation:

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape from trim.

– Clean plastic bonding surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

– Apply plastic primer - D 366 PR1 A1- to plastic bonding surface and allow to flash off until cleaning solution has evaporated completely.

– Apply double-sided adhesive tape (⇒ Electronic parts catalogue) to same area.

- Apply adhesive tape within 60 minutes.

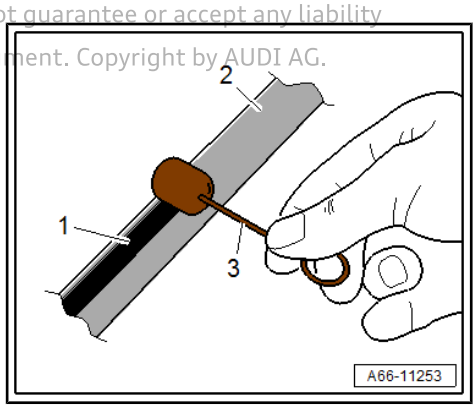
Continued:

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Apply primer - D 355 205 A2- -item 1- to bonding area -2- on painted surface using applicator - D 009 500 25- -item 3- and allow to flash off for 10 minutes.



- If the primer - D 355 205 A2- has been allowed to flash off for more than 2 hours, primer must be re-applied.

– Fold over end of protective film or attach a removal aid to protective film.

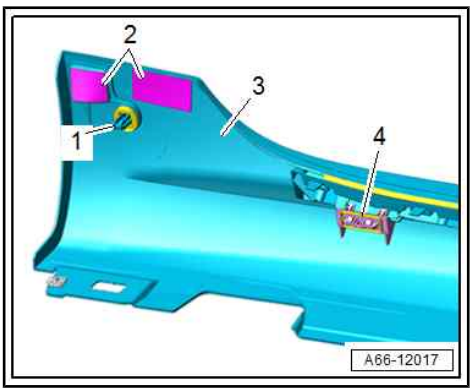
– Position side member trim -3-, making sure that centring pin -1- is positioned at opening.

– Peel protective film off adhesive strips -2- using removal aid.

– Press on side member trim until retainers (rear) -4- engage audibly.

– Press on bonding area using roller - 3356- .

- Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.

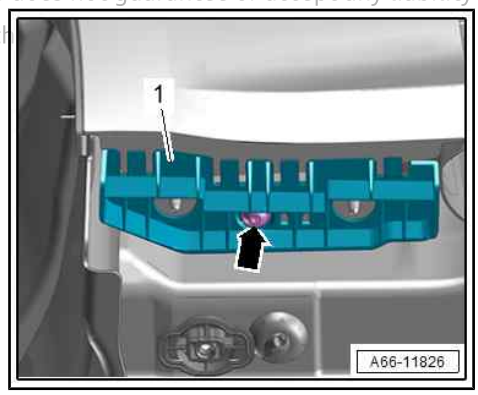


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in th

3.16 Removing and installing bracket for side member trim

Removing

– Remove side member trim ⇒ page 606 or ⇒ page 609 .
– Remove bolt -arrow-.
– Detach bracket (front) -1- for side member trim.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

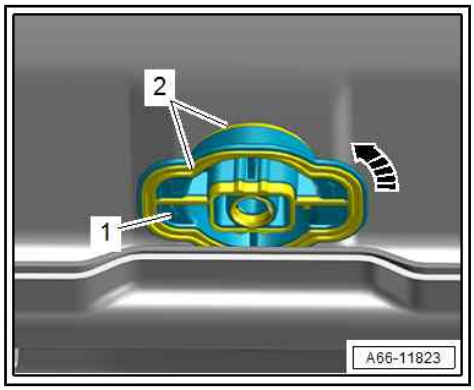
Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “3.3 Exploded view - side member trim”, page 577

3.17 Removing and installing mounting

Removing

– Remove side member trim ⇒ page 609 .
– Turn mounting -1- anti-clockwise -arrow- and remove from vehicle body.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

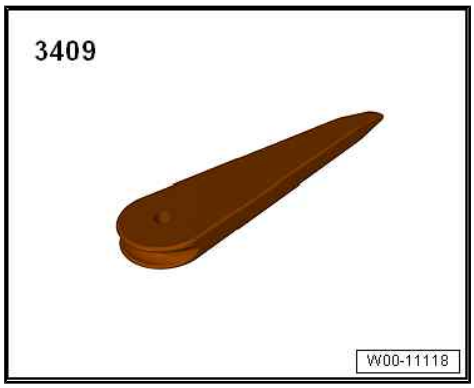
– Check seals -2- for damage.

3.18 Removing and installing fastening strip for side member trim

• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 578 / ⇒ page 579 .

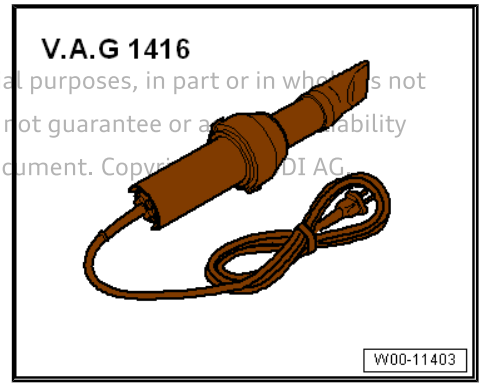
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge - 3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-



♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

♦ Primer - D 355 205 A2-

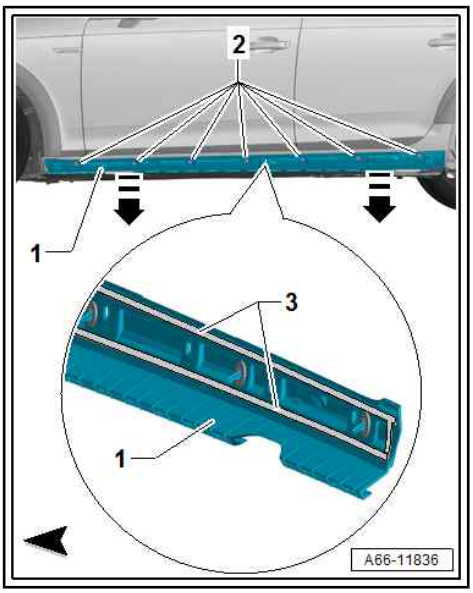
♦ Applicator - D 009 500 25-

Removing

– Remove side member trim ⇒ page 604 or ⇒ page 606 .

– Remove nuts -2-.

– Heat fastening strip for side member trim -1- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- in bonding area -3- and pull it off gradually -arrows-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- The vehicle and the fastening strip must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

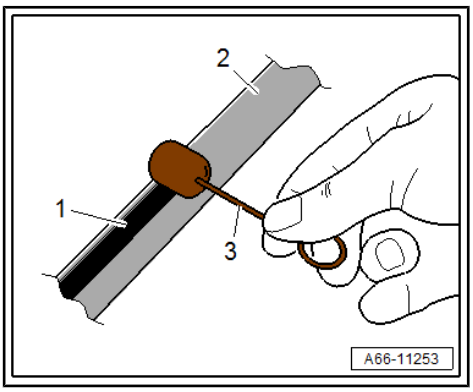
– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

– Apply primer - D 355 205 A2- -item 1- to bonding area -2- on painted surface using applicator - D 009 500 25- -item 3- and allow to flash off for 10 minutes.

- If the primer - D 355 205 A2- has been allowed to flash off for more than 2 hours, primer must be re-applied.

– Fold over end of protective film or attach a removal aid to protective film.

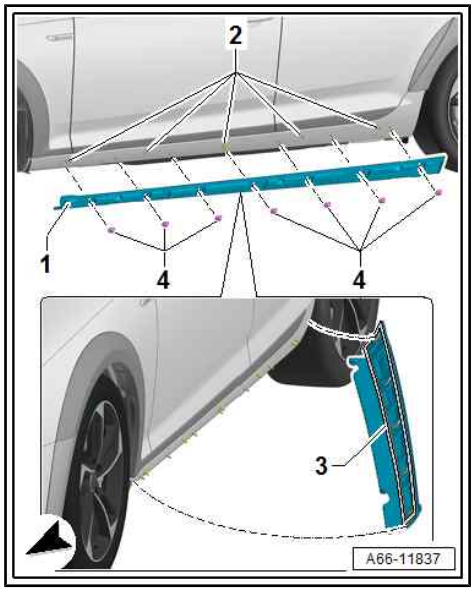


– Position fastening strip -1- using centring pins -2-.
– Peel protective film off adhesive strip -3- using removal aid.
– Tighten nuts -4-.
– Press on fastening strip over entire length.

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “3.3.2 Exploded view - side member trim, A4 allroad”, page 578



3.19 Removing and installing trim strip for side member trim

⇒ “3.19.1 Removing and installing trim strip for side member trim - A4 allroad”, page 614

⇒ “3.19.2 Removing and installing trim strip for side member trim - A5”, page 615

3.19.1 Removing and installing trim strip for side member trim - A4 allroad

• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 578 .

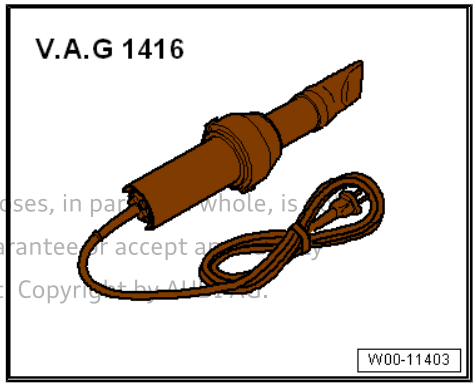
Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal wedge - 3409-

Access by copying or adapting for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-



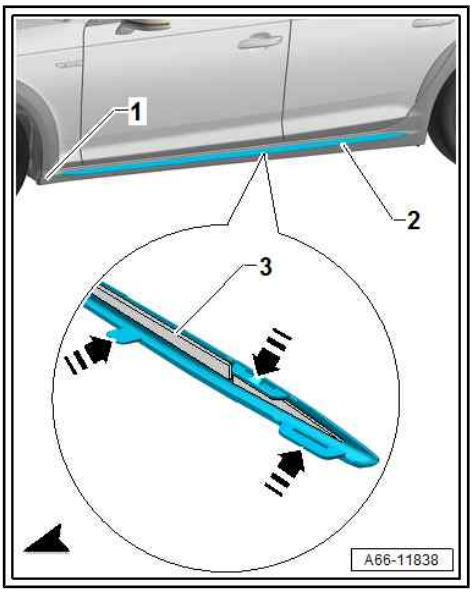
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-
- Primer - D 355 205 A2-
- Applicator - D 009 500 25-

Removing

– Heat trim strip for side member trim -2- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- in bonding area -3-.

– Release fasteners -arrows- and detach trim strip gradually from side member trim -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- The vehicle and the trim strip must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

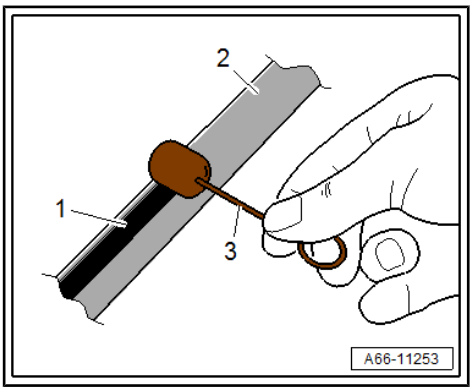
– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

– Apply primer - D 355 205 A2- -item 1- to bonding area -2- on painted surface using applicator - D 009 500 25- -item 3- and allow to flash off for 10 minutes.

- If the primer - D 355 205 A2- has been allowed to flash off for more than 2 hours, primer must be re-applied.

– Fold over end of protective film or attach a removal aid to protective film.



– Fit trim strip -2- on side member trim -1-.

– Peel protective film off adhesive strip -3- using removal aid.

– Press on trim strip -2- over entire length so that all retaining tabs engage fully in side member trim -1-.

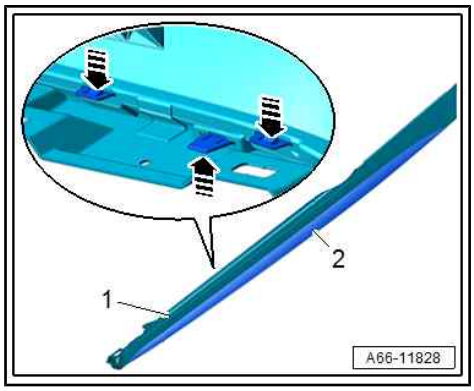
3.19.2 Removing and installing trim strip for side member trim - A5

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 580 .

Removing

– Remove side member trim ⇒ page 609 .

– Release fasteners -arrows- and detach trim strip -2- from side member trim -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

3.20 Removing and installing water deflector strip

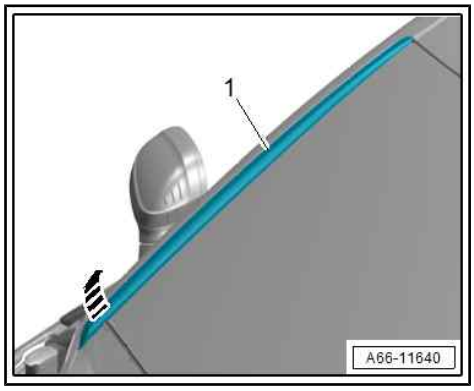
Reproduction or disclosure to third parties of this AUDI AG document or any part thereof is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Electric drill
- Drill bit, ∅ 5 mm

Removing water deflector strip:

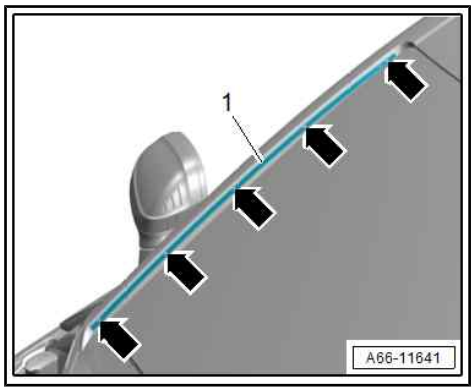
– Starting at bottom, carefully detach water deflector strip -1- upwards -arrow-.



Removing fastening strip for water deflector strip:

CAUTION

Risk of injury caused by flying metal shavings.
Eyes and skin can suffer irritation or injuries.
– Put on safety goggles.
– Put on protective gloves.



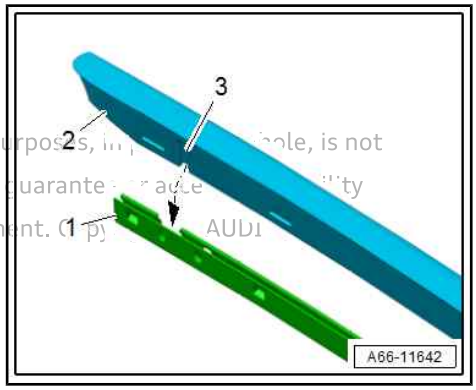
– Drill out rivet heads -arrows- and drive out rivet stems.

– Detach fastening strip -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Start riveting fastening strip -1- at top hole.
- Starting at top, fit water deflector strip -2- in fastening strip; projection -3- must engage in recess -arrow-.
- Press water deflector strip into fastening strip as far as it will go.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part... vehicle, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee ... accuracy ... completeness ... reliability ... of the information contained in this document. Copyright by AUDI

3.21 Removing and installing trim panel for A-pillar

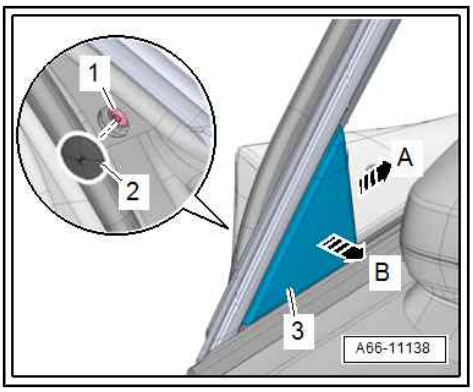
⇒ “3.21.1 Removing and installing trim panel for A-pillar - A4”, page 617

⇒ “3.21.2 Removing and installing trim panel for A-pillar - A5”, page 617

3.21.1 Removing and installing trim panel for A-pillar - A4

Removing

- Pull off cover -2-.
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Press trim panel for A-pillar -3- out of window guide in direction of -arrow A- and remove towards side -arrow B-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

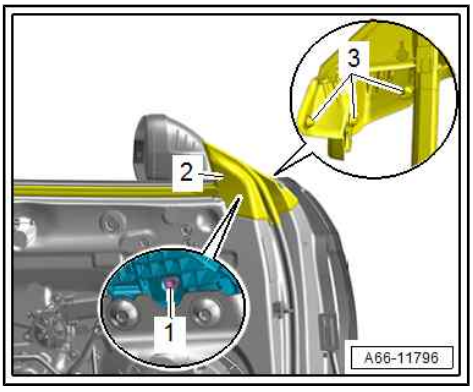
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “3.5 Exploded view - trim panel for A-pillar”, page 582

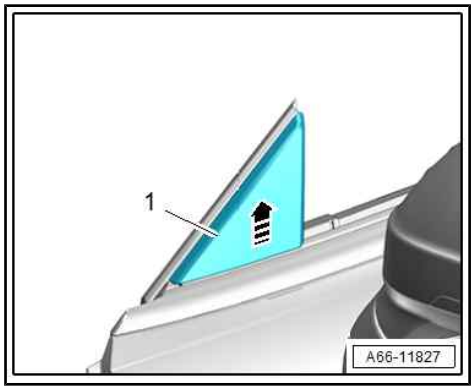
3.21.2 Removing and installing trim panel for A-pillar - A5

Removing

- Remove door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (front); Removing and installing door trim (front) .
- Pull off retaining lugs -3- and press window slot trim strip -2- to side in area of outer door seal.
- Remove bolt -1-.



– Press trim panel for A-pillar -1- out of window guide in direction of -arrow- and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “3.5 Exploded view - trim panel for A-pillar”, page 582

3.22 Removing and installing trim panel for B-pillar on door

⇒ “3.22.1 Removing and installing trim panel for B-pillar (front door)”, page 618

⇒ “3.22.2 Removing and installing trim panel for B-pillar (rear door)”, page 618

3.22.1 Removing and installing trim panel for B-pillar (front door)

Removing

– Move door window to “open” position.

– Remove window frame trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (front); Removing and installing window frame trim .

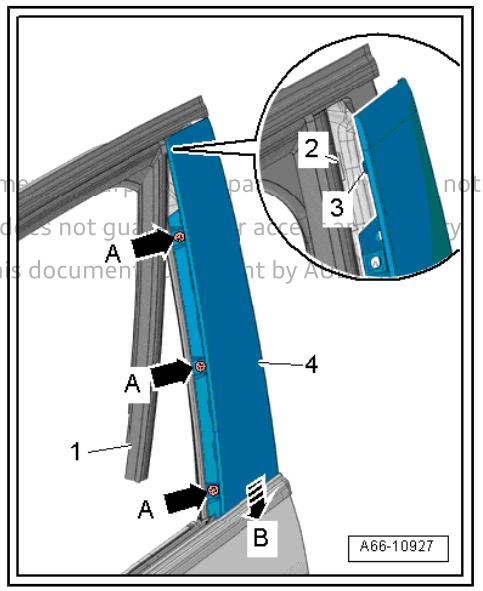
– Pull seal -1- out of window guide (rear) in vicinity of trim panel for B-pillar.

– Remove bolts -arrows A-.

– Slide trim panel for B-pillar -4- downwards -arrow B-; lug -3- will be disengaged from body cut-out -2-.

– Press trim panel for B-pillar towards outside until surrounding section of trim panel for B-pillar is disengaged.

– Pull out trim panel for B-pillar upwards.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm... pa... not
permitted, unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gua... r acc... y
with respect to the correctness of information in this documen... nt by AU...

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “3.6.1 Exploded view - trim panel for B-pillar, A4”, page 583

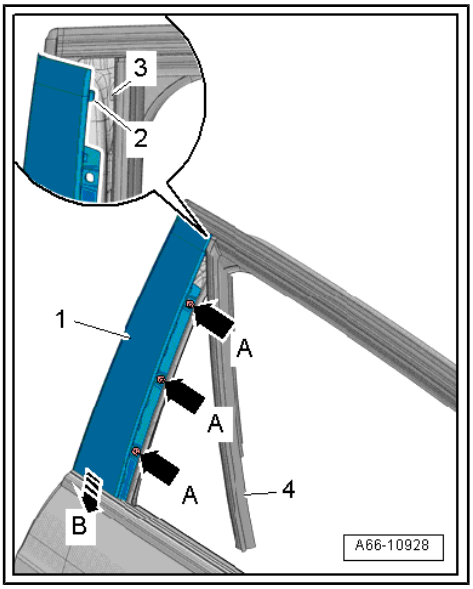
3.22.2 Removing and installing trim panel for B-pillar (rear door)

Removing

– Move door window to “open” position.

– Remove window frame trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (rear); Removing and installing window frame trim .

– Pull seal -4- out of window guide (front) in vicinity of trim panel for B-pillar until bolts are accessible.
– Remove bolts -arrows A-.
– Slide trim panel for B-pillar -1- downwards -arrow B-; lug -2- will be disengaged from body cut-out -3-.
– Press trim panel for B-pillar towards outside until surrounding section of trim panel for B-pillar is disengaged.
– Pull trim panel for B-pillar upwards out of door opening.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

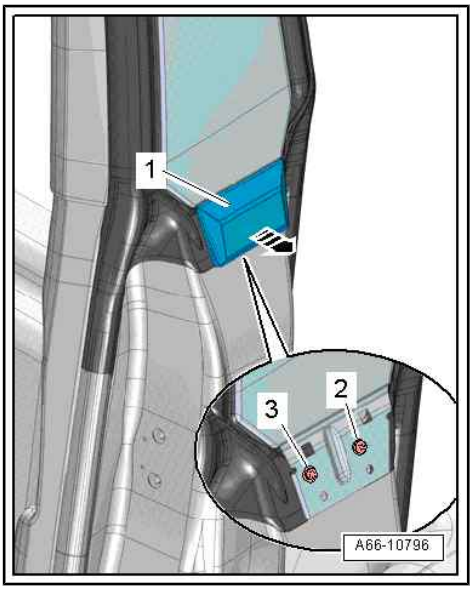
Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “3.6.1 Exploded view - trim panel for B-pillar, A4”, page 583

3.23 Removing and installing trim panel for B-pillar

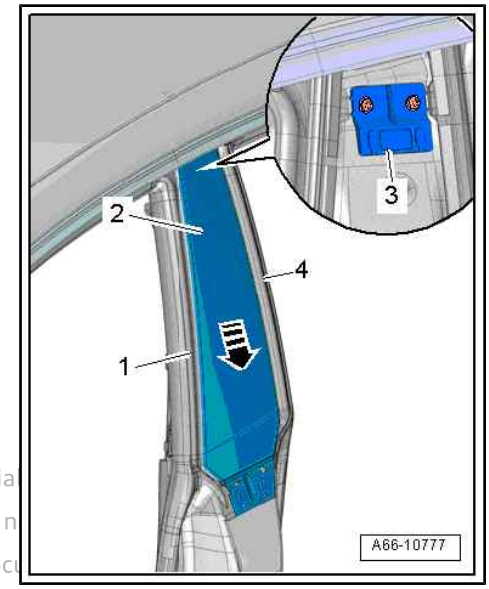
Removing

– Open front and rear doors.
– Unclip cover -1- -arrow- and pull off downwards.
– Remove bolts -2, 3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Slide trim panel for B-pillar -2- downwards -arrow-; lug at top of mounting -3- will be disengaged.
– Pull trim panel for B-pillar off door seals -1 and 4- and remove.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercia
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does n
with respect to the correctness of information in this doc

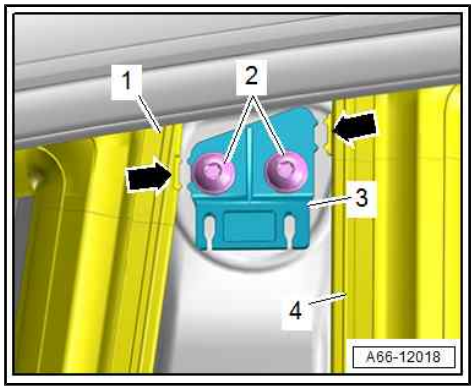
Removing mounting:

– Remove bolts -2-.
– Detach mounting -3-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Position mounting at B-pillar and tighten bolts so that they are hand-tight.
– Align mounting in accordance with marks -arrows- on inner door seals -1, 4-.
• The marks must align.

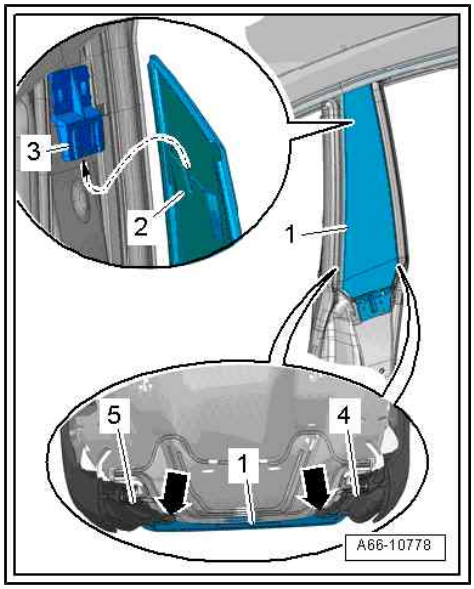


Trim panel for B-pillar:

– Fit trim panel for B-pillar -1- on B-pillar and slide upwards; guide -2- should engage in mounting -3-.
• When trim panel for B-pillar is positioned on B-pillar and slid upwards, it engages in recesses -arrows- in door seal (left-side -5- and right-side -4-).
– Press on trim panel for B-pillar.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “3.6.2 Exploded view - trim panel for B-pillar, A5 Sportback”, page 584

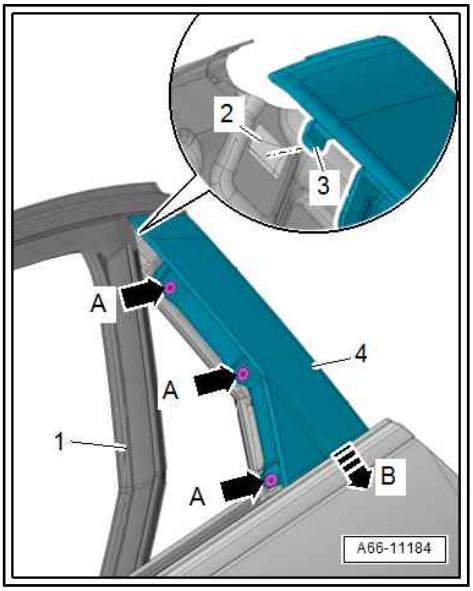


3.24 Removing and installing trim panel for C-pillar on door

Removing

– Move door window to “open” position.

– Remove window frame trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (rear); Removing and installing window frame trim .
– Pull window guide -1- out of trim panel for C-pillar -4- so that bolts can be accessed (but no further).
– Remove bolts -arrows A-.
– Slide trim panel for C-pillar downwards -arrow B-; lug -3- will be disengaged from body cut-out -2-.
– Pull trim panel for C-pillar towards rear out of surrounding section and remove upwards from door.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “3.7 Exploded view - trim panel for C-pillar”, page 585

3.25 Removing and installing wheel arch covers

⇒ “3.25.1 Removing and installing wheel arch covers (front)”, page 621

⇒ “3.25.2 Removing and installing wheel arch covers (door)”, page 622

⇒ “3.25.3 Removing and installing wheel arch covers (rear)”, page 624

3.25.1 Removing and installing wheel arch covers (front)

• The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 586 .

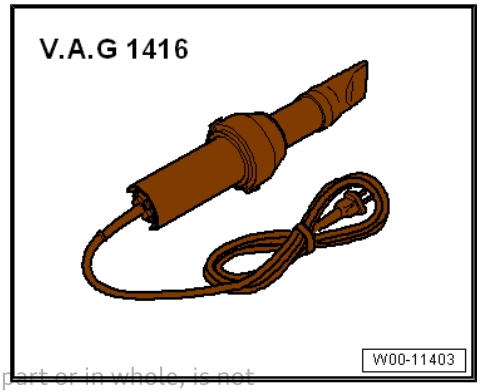
Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Roller - 3356-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

- Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-

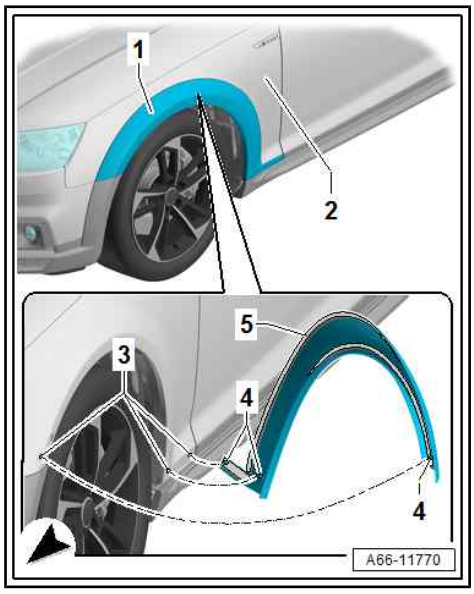


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-
- Primer - D 355 205 A2-
- Applicator - D 009 500 25-

Removing

– Heat wheel arch cover -1- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- in bonding area -5- and pull cover off gradually.



Installing

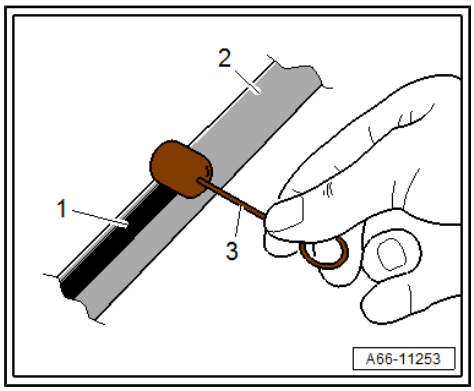
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- The vehicle and the cover must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

– Apply primer - D 355 205 A2- -item 1- to bonding area -2- on painted surface using applicator - D 009 500 25- -item 3- and allow to flash off for 10 minutes.



- If the primer - D 355 205 A2- has been allowed to flash off for more than 2 hours, primer must be re-applied.

– Fold over end of protective film or attach a removal aid to protective film.

– Insert wheel arch cover -1- in openings -3- on wing -2- using centring pins -4-.

– Peel protective film off adhesive strip -5- using removal aid.

– Press on wheel arch cover -1- using roller - 3356- .

- Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.

3.25.2 Removing and installing wheel arch covers (door)

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 586 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Setting gauge - 3371-

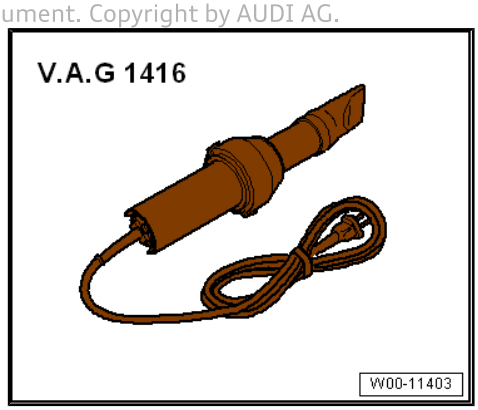


- Roller - 3356-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-

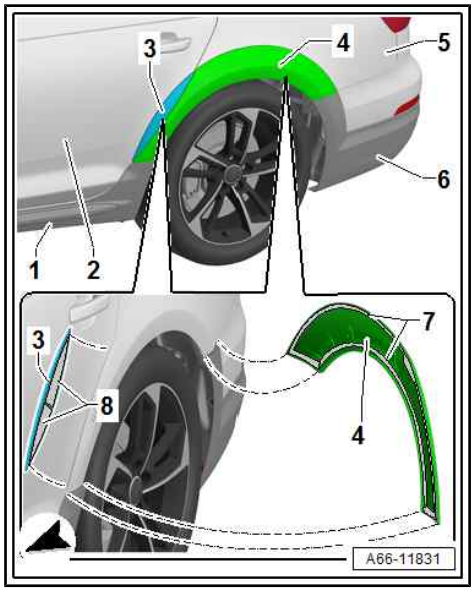


- Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-
- Primer - D 355 205 A2-
- Applicator - D 009 500 25-

Removing

– Mark installation position of wheel arch cover for re-installation.

– Heat wheel arch cover -3- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- in bonding area -8- and pull cover off gradually.



Installing

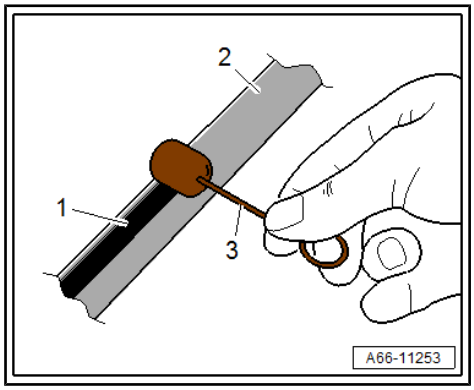
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- The vehicle and the cover must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

– Apply primer - D 355 205 A2- -item 1- to bonding area -2- on painted surface using applicator - D 009 500 25- -item 3- and allow to flash off for 10 minutes.



- If the primer - D 355 205 A2- has been allowed to flash off for more than 2 hours, primer must be re-applied.

– Fold over end of protective film or attach a removal aid to protective film.

– Position wheel arch cover -3- on rear door -2- according to marking made during removal; note adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 600 .

– Peel protective film off adhesive strip -8- using removal aid.

– Press on wheel arch cover -3- using roller - 3356-.

- Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.25.3 Removing and installing wheel arch covers (rear)

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 586 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Setting gauge - 3371-

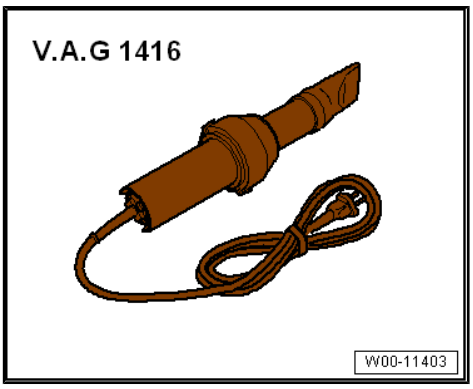


- Roller - 3356-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in [illegible], is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guaran[illegible]y liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co[illegible] AUDI AG.

- Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-

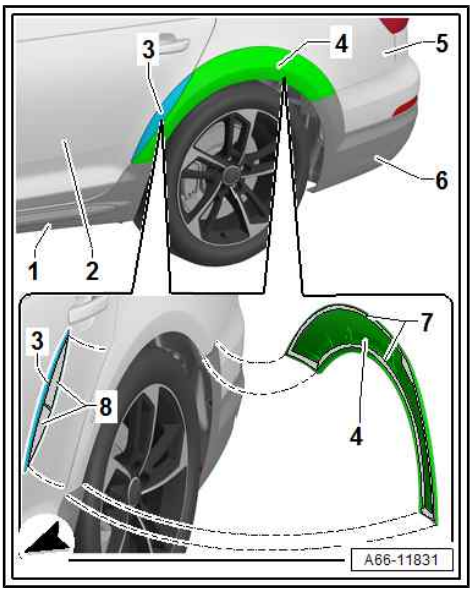


- Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-
- Primer - D 355 205 A2-
- Applicator - D 009 500 25-

Removing

– Mark installation position of wheel arch cover for re-installation.

– Heat wheel arch cover -4- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- in bonding area -7- and pull cover off gradually.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- The vehicle and the cover must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

– Apply primer - D 355 205 A2- -item 1- to bonding area -2- on painted surface using applicator - D 009 500 25- -item 3- and allow to flash off for 10 minutes.

• If the primer - D 355 205 A2- has been allowed to flash off for more than 2 hours, primer must be re-applied.

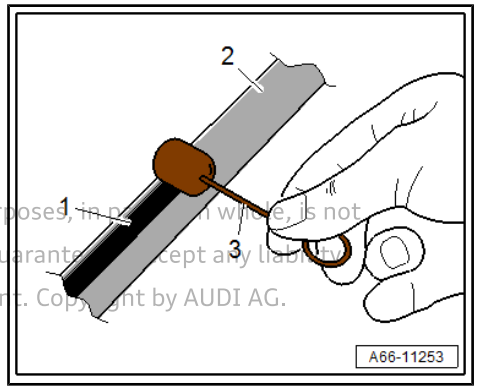
– Fold over end of protective film or attach a removal aid to protective film.

– Position wheel arch cover -4- on side panel -5- according to marking made during removal; note adjustment dimensions ⇒ page 600 .

– Peel protective film off adhesive strip -7- using removal aid.

– Press on wheel arch cover -4- using roller - 3356- .

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 Noise insulation

⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - noise insulation”, page 627

⇒ “4.2 Removing and installing noise insulation”, page 630

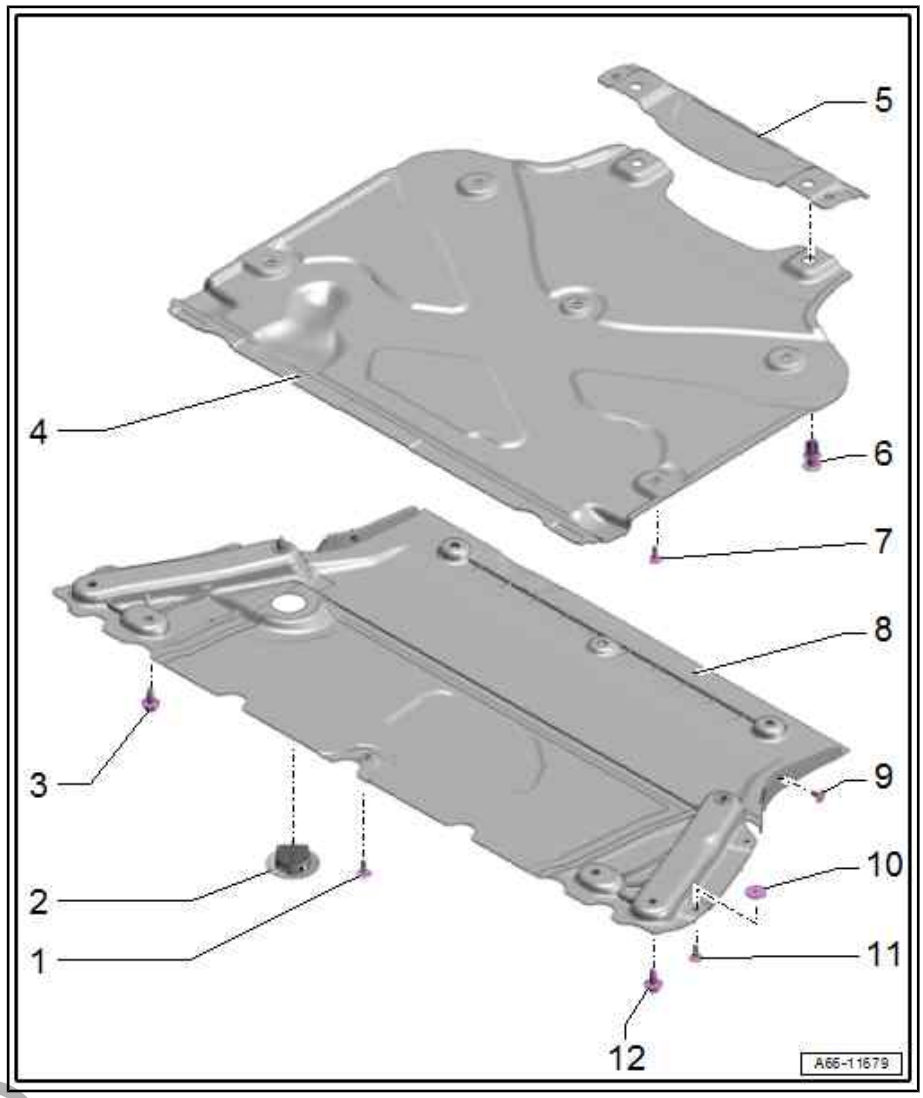
4.1 Exploded view - noise insulation

⇒ “4.1.1 Exploded view - noise insulation, A4, A5 Coupé, A5 Sportback”, page 627

⇒ “4.1.2 Exploded view - noise insulation, RS 4, RS 5”, page 628

⇒ “4.1.3 Exploded view - noise insulation, A5 Cabriolet”, page 629

4.1.1 Exploded view - noise insulation, A4, A5 Coupé, A5 Sportback



1 - Quick-release fastener
- ❑ Without retaining element

2 - Sealing plug/rubber sleeve
- ❑ Sealing plug for vehicles without auxiliary heater
- ❑ Rubber sleeve for exhaust pipe of auxiliary heater

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 12 Nm

4 - Noise insulation
- ❑ Rear
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 631

5 - Air guide
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 631

6 - Spreader rivet
- ❑ 2x

7 - Quick-release fastener
- ❑ Without retaining element
- ❑ 5x

8 - Noise insulation
- ❑ Front
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 630

9 - Spreader rivet

10 - Retaining element
- ❑ 7x

11 - Quick-release fastener
- ❑ 7x

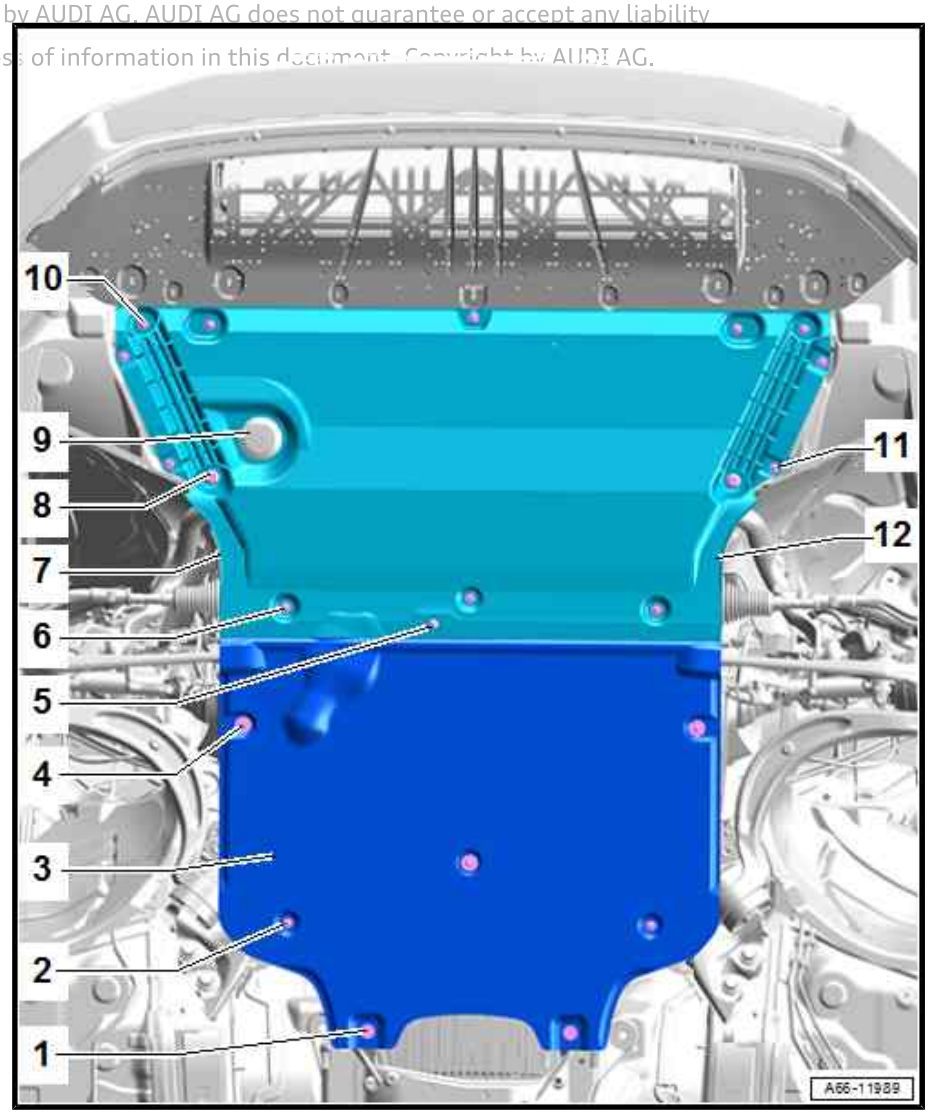
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

12 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 20 Nm

4.1.2 Exploded view - noise insulation, RS 4, RS 5

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Spreader rivet

- ❑ 2x

2 - Quick-release fastener

- ❑ 2x

3 - Noise insulation

- ❑ Rear
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 631

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 2 Nm

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

6 - Quick-release fastener

- ❑ 8x

7 - Spreader rivet

- ❑ 2x

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 20 Nm

9 - Sealing plug/rubber sleeve

- ❑ Sealing plug for vehicles without auxiliary heater
- ❑ Rubber sleeve for exhaust pipe of auxiliary heater

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 12 Nm

11 - Quick-release fastener

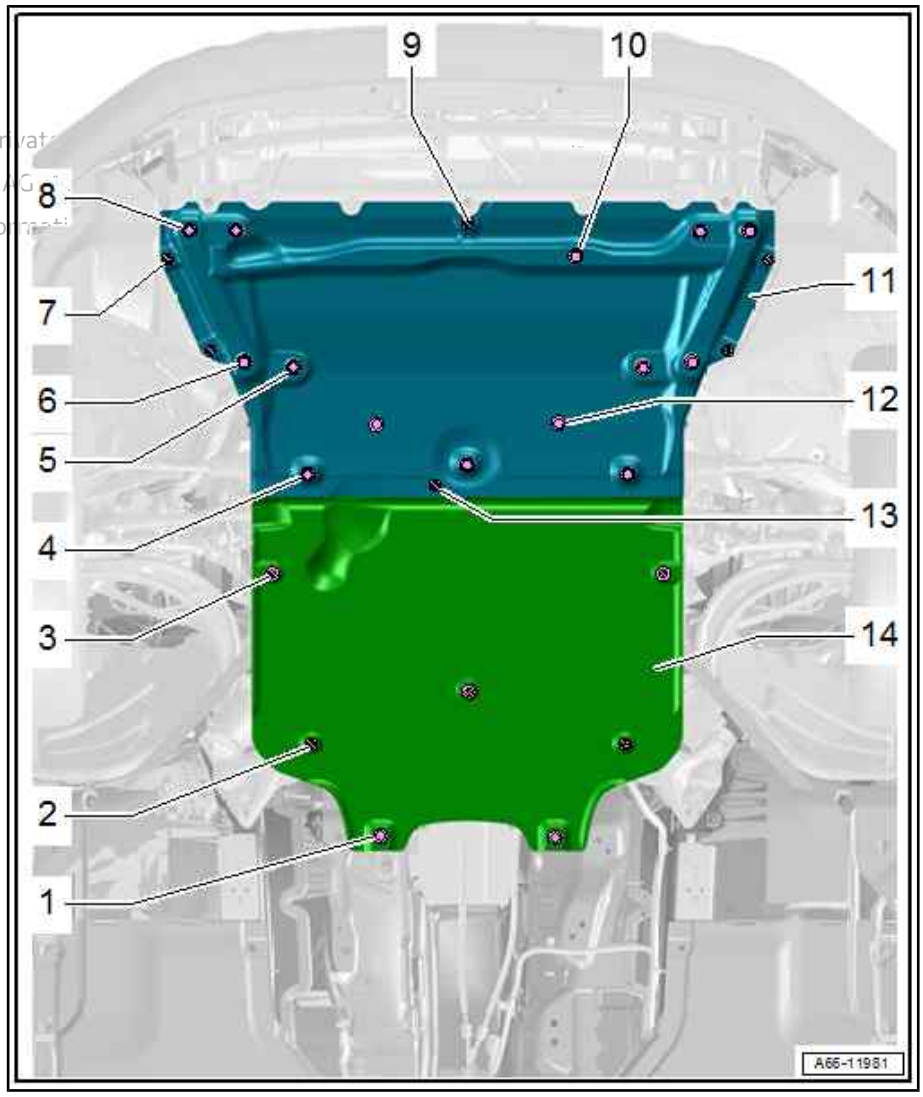
- ❑ 2x

12 - Noise insulation

- ❑ Front
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 630

4.1.3 Exploded view - noise insulation, A5 Cabriolet

Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG.
with respect to the correctness of informati



1 - Spreader rivet
- ❑ 2x

2 - Quick-release fastener
- ❑ Without retaining element
- ❑ 2x

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 2 Nm

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 20 Nm

5 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40 ; Subframe; Exploded view - subframe

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 20 Nm

7 - Quick-release fastener
- ❑ With retaining element
- ❑ 4x

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 20 Nm

9 - Quick-release fastener
- ❑ Without retaining element

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 20 Nm

11 - Noise insulation (front)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 630

12 - Spreader rivet
- ❑ 2x

13 - Bolt
- ❑ 2 Nm

14 - Noise insulation (rear)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 631

4.2 Removing and installing noise insulation

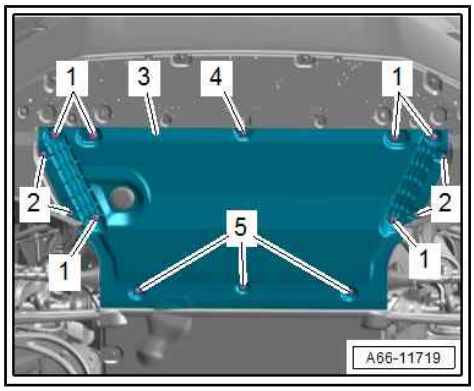
⇒ “4.2.1 Removing and installing noise insulation (front)”, page 630

⇒ “4.2.2 Removing and installing noise insulation (rear)”, page 631

4.2.1 Removing and installing noise insulation (front)

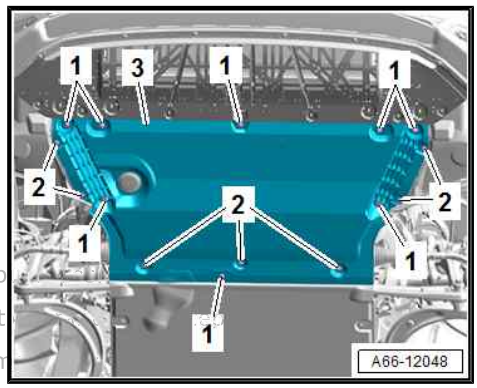
Removing

A4, A5 Coupé, A5 Sportback:



- Remove bolts -1-.
- Release quick-release fasteners -2, 4, 5-.
- Detach noise insulation (front) -3-.

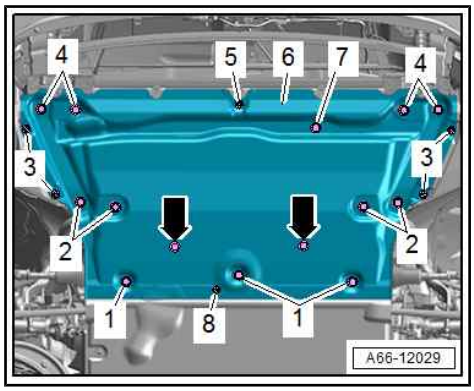
RS 4, RS 5:



- Remove bolts -1-.
- Release quick-release fasteners -2-.
- Detach noise insulation (front) -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not
with respect to the correctness of information in this docum

A5 Cabriolet:



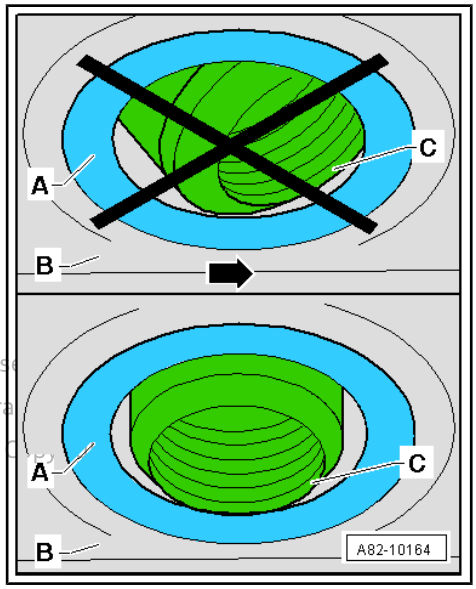
- Remove bolts -1, 2, 4, 7 and 8-.
- Remove spreader rivets -arrows-.
- Release quick-release fasteners -3 and 5-.
- Detach noise insulation (front) -6-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Vehicles with auxiliary heater:

- Rubber sleeve -A- must be seated in noise insulation -B- so that it is free of tension.
- Exhaust pipe -C- must be flush with rubber sleeve or protruding only slightly.
- Opening of exhaust pipe must be perpendicular to noise insulation and must NOT face in direction of travel -arrow-.



Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - noise insulation”, page 627

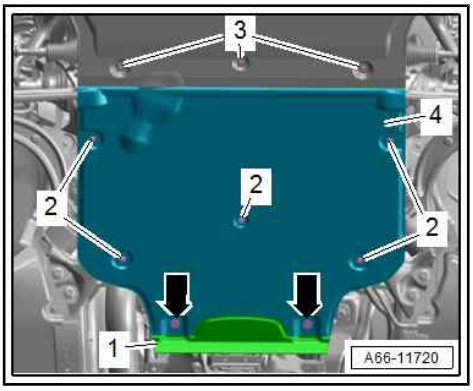
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpos
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara
with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

4.2.2 Removing and installing noise insulation (rear)

Removing

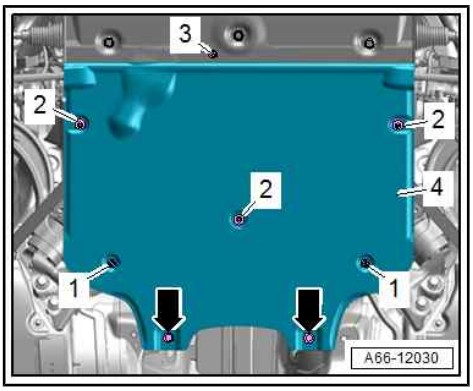
A4, A5 Coupé, A5 Sportback:

– Remove spreader rivets -arrows-.
– Release quick-release fasteners -2 and 3-.
– Detach noise insulation (rear) -4- and air guide -1-.



A5 Cabriolet, RS 4, RS 5:

– Remove spreader rivets -arrows-.
– Remove bolts -2, 3-.
– Release quick-release fastener -1-.
– Detach noise insulation (rear) -4-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “4.1 Exploded view - noise insulation”, page 627

5 Underbody trim

⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - underbody trim”, page 632

⇒ “5.2 Exploded view - underbody struts”, page 634

⇒ “5.3 Removing and installing underbody trim (front)”, page 638

⇒ “5.4 Removing and installing underbody trim for tunnel”, page 638

⇒ “5.5 Removing and installing underbody trim (centre)”, page 638

⇒ “5.6 Removing and installing underbody trim (rear)”, page 639

⇒ “5.7 Removing and installing underbody trim for spare wheel”, page 641

⇒ “5.8 Removing and installing underbody trim (side)”, page 641

⇒ “5.9 Removing and installing tunnel cross-piece”, page 642

⇒ “5.10 Removing and installing diagonal struts”, page 642

⇒ “5.11 Removing and installing underbody guard”, page 644

Reproduction or copying of this document, in whole or in part, for private or commercial purposes, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

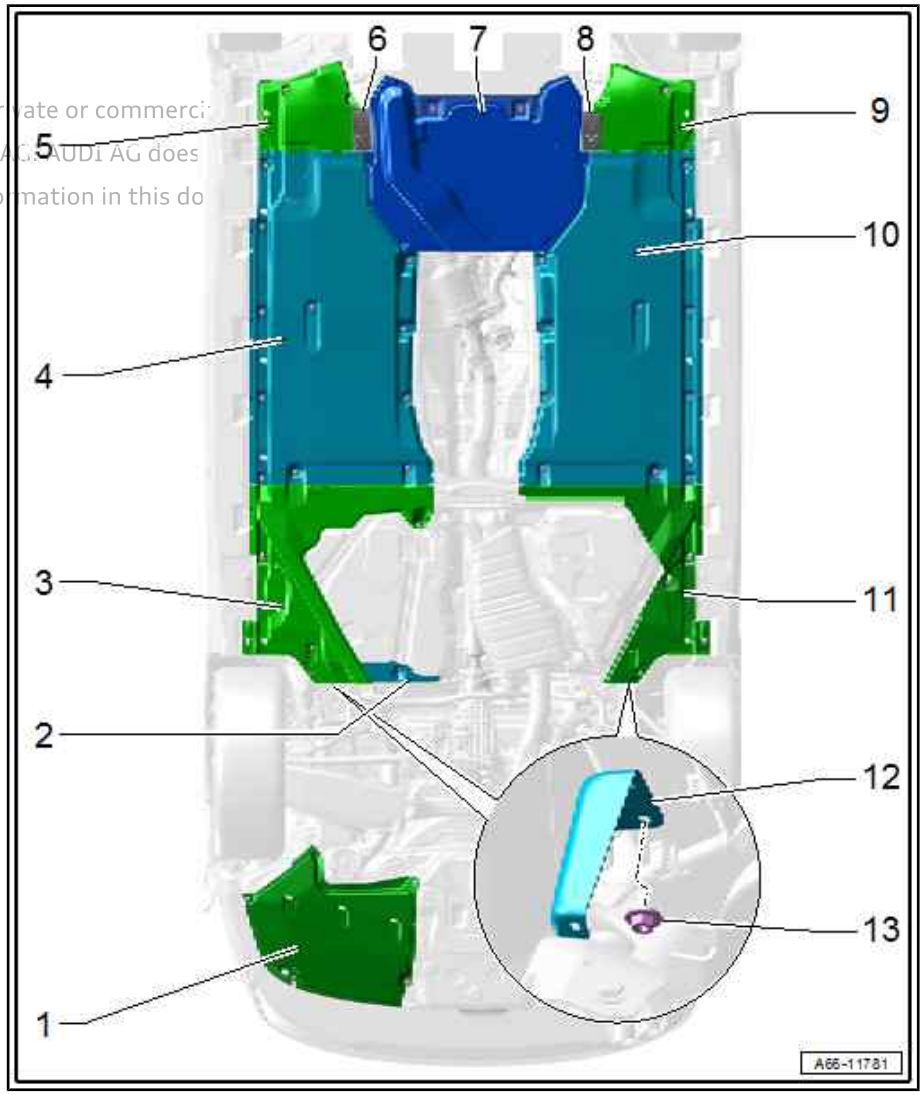
5.1 Exploded view - underbody trim

DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

- **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**
- **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerci
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does
with respect to the correctness of information in this do



1 - Underbody trim (side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 641
- ❑ Tightening torques:

♦ Nut, 2 Nm

♦ Bolt, 2 Nm

2 - Underbody trim for fuel tank

- ❑ Tightening torques:

♦ Nut, 2 Nm

3 - Underbody trim (rear)

- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 639
- ❑ g-tron: removing and installing ⇒ page 640
- ❑ Tightening torques:

♦ Nut, 2 Nm

♦ Bolt, 2 Nm

4 - Underbody trim (centre)

- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 638
- ❑ Tightening torques:

♦ Nut, 2 Nm

♦ Bolt, 2 Nm

5 - Underbody trim (front)

- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 638
- ❑ Tightening torques:

♦ Nut, 2 Nm

6 - Collision guard

- ❑ Right-side

7 - Underbody trim for tunnel

- ❑ Depending on version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 638
- ❑ Spreader rivet
- ❑ Tightening torques:

♦ Bolt, 2 Nm

8 - Collision guard

- ❑ Left-side

9 - Underbody trim (front)

- ❑ Left-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 638
- ❑ Tightening torques:

♦ Nut, 2 Nm

10 - Underbody trim (centre)

- ❑ Left-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 638
- ❑ Tightening torques:

- ♦ Nut, 2 Nm
- ♦ Bolt, 2 Nm

11 - Underbody trim (rear)

- ❑ Left-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 639
- ❑ Tightening torques:

- ♦ Nut, 2 Nm
- ♦ Bolt, 2 Nm

12 - Bracket

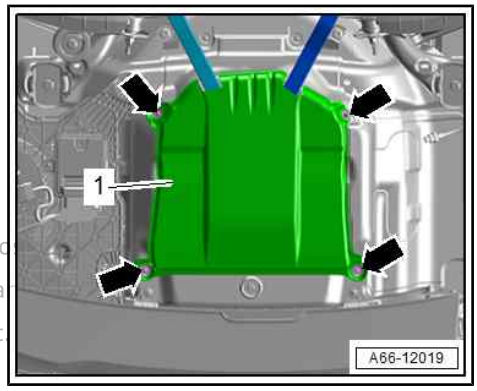
- ❑ For underbody trim (rear)

13 - Nut

- ❑ 8 Nm

Exploded view - underbody trim for spare wheel

- ♦ Removing and installing ⇒ page 641
- ♦ Nut: 2 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gua
with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

5.2 Exploded view - underbody struts

⇒ "5.2.1 Exploded view - underbody struts, A4, A5 Sportback", page 634

⇒ "5.2.2 Exploded view - underbody struts, RS 4", page 636

⇒ "5.2.3 Exploded view - underbody struts, A5 Cabriolet", page 637

5.2.1 Exploded view - underbody struts, A4, A5 Sportback

DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

- **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**
- **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**

1 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 55 Nm

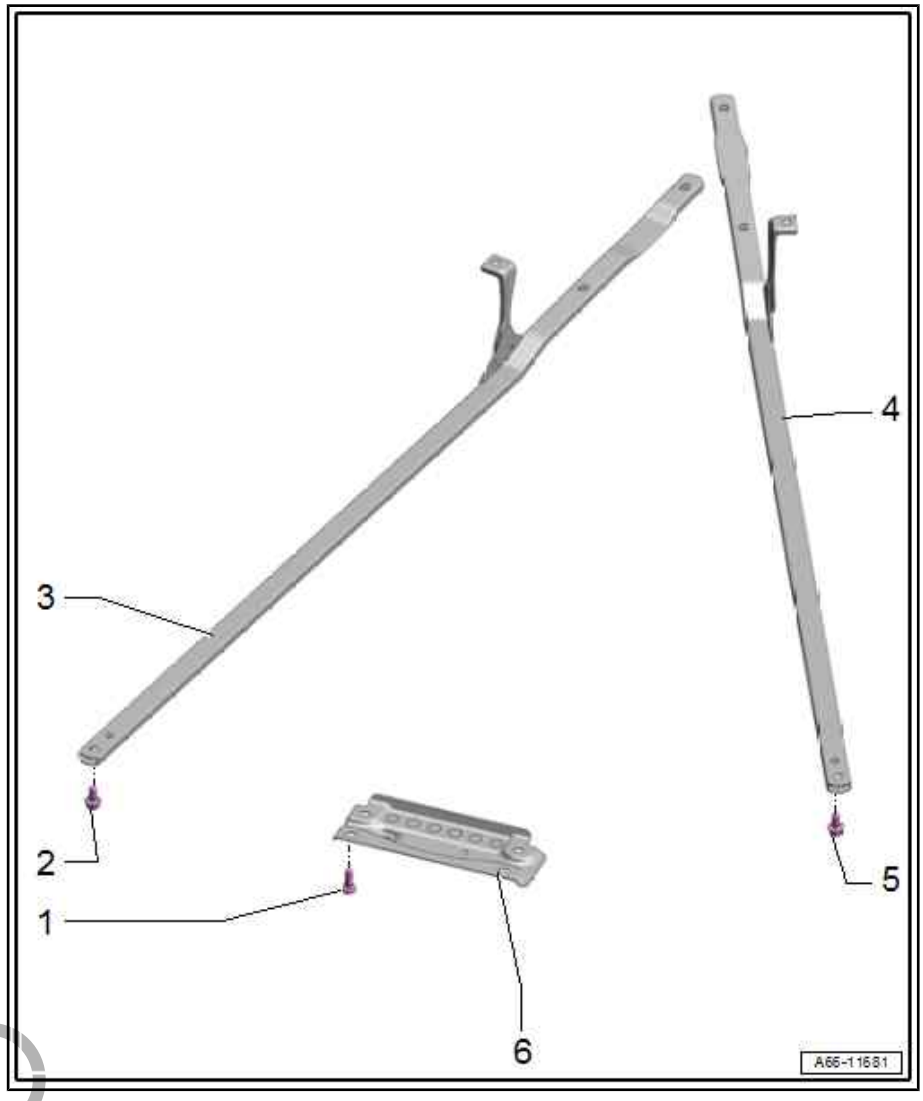
2 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ A4: 5x
- ❑ A5 Sportback: 4x
- ❑ 50 Nm + 90°

3 - Diagonal strut
- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ g-tron: attachment points are arranged differently
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 643

4 - Diagonal strut
- ❑ Left-side
- ❑ g-tron: attachment points are arranged differently
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 643

5 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ A4: 5x
- ❑ A5 Sportback: 4x
- ❑ 50 Nm + 90°

6 - Tunnel cross-piece
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 642



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.2.2 Exploded view - underbody struts, RS 4

1 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 20 Nm

2 - Diagonal strut
- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 643

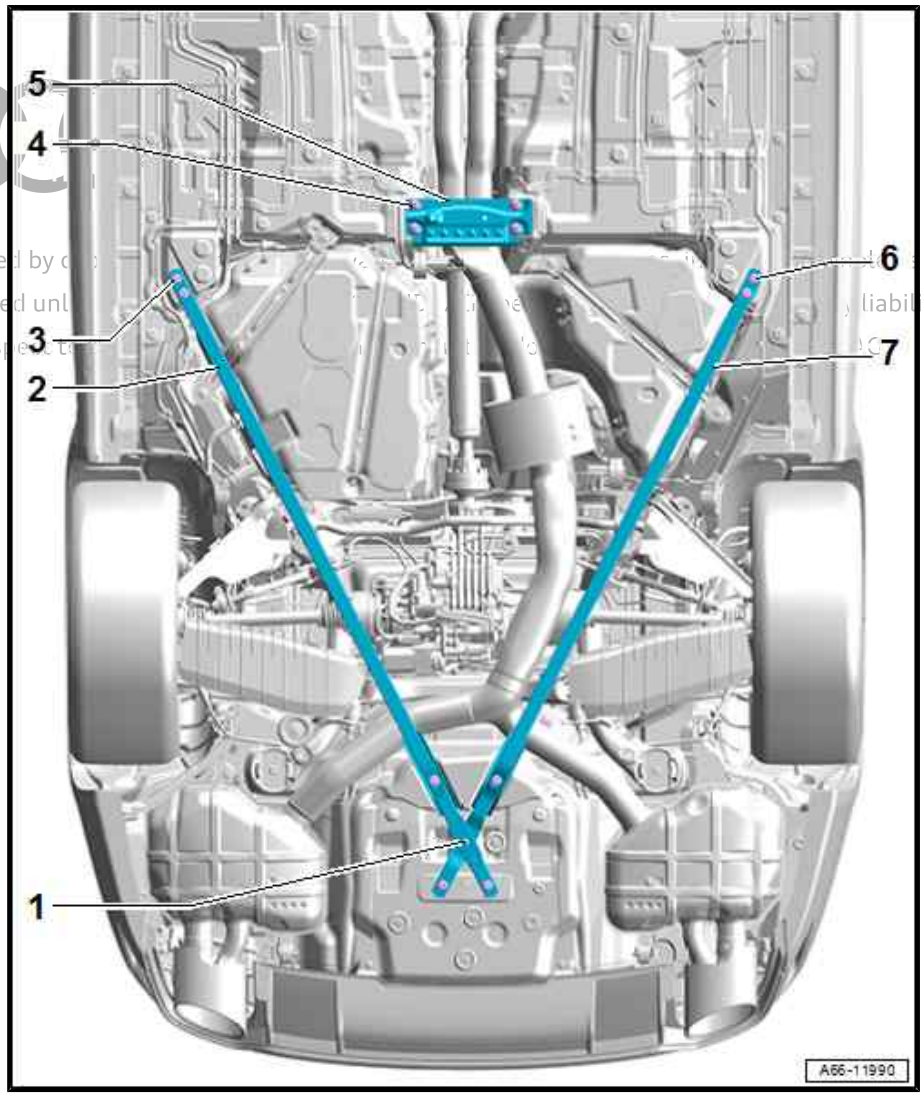
3 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 50 Nm + 90°

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 55 Nm

5 - Tunnel cross-piece
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 642

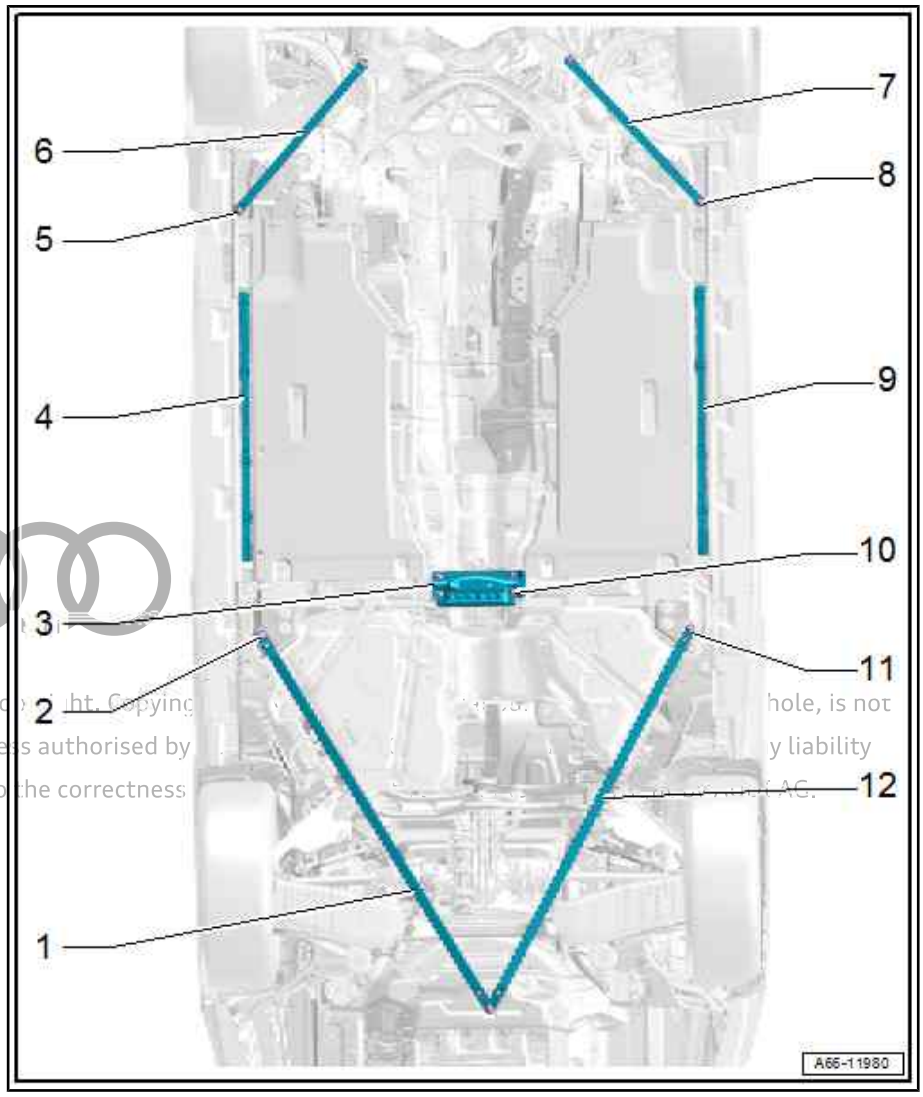
6 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 50 Nm + 90°

7 - Diagonal strut
- ❑ Left-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 643



Protected by c... permitted unl... with resp... not liability

5.2.3 Exploded view - underbody struts, A5 Cabriolet



1 - Diagonal strut
- ❑ Rear
- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 643

2 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 50 Nm + 90°

3 - Tunnel cross-piece
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 642

4 - Underbody guard
- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ With foam pad and fastener
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 644

5 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 50 Nm + 90°

6 - Diagonal strut
- ❑ Front
- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 642

7 - Diagonal strut
- ❑ Front
- ❑ Left-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 642

8 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 50 Nm + 90°

9 - Underbody guard
- ❑ Left-side
- ❑ With foam pad and fastener
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 644

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 55 Nm

11 - Bolt
- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 50 Nm + 90°

Protected by copyright. Copying ... hole, is not permitted unless authorised by ... y liability with respect to the correctness ... AG.

12 - Diagonal strut

- ❑ Rear
- ❑ Left-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 643

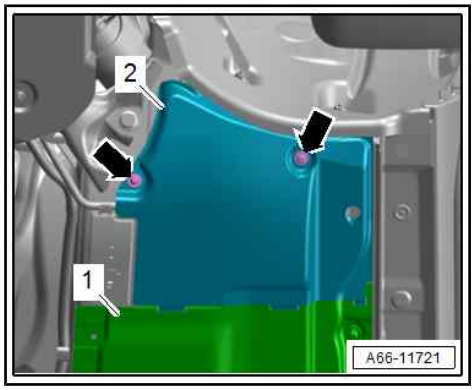
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.3 Removing and installing underbody trim (front)

Removing

– Remove nuts -arrows-.

– Pull underbody trim (front) -2- out of underbody trim (centre) -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - underbody trim”, page 632

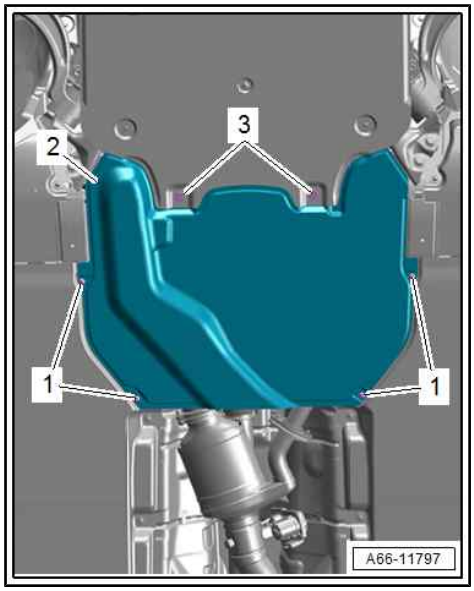
5.4 Removing and installing underbody trim for tunnel

Removing

– Remove spreader rivet -3-.

– Remove bolts -1-.

– Detach underbody trim (tunnel) -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

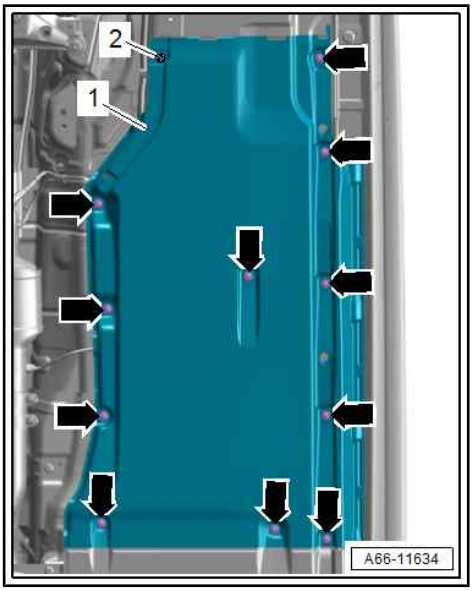
◆ ⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - underbody trim”, page 632

5.5 Removing and installing underbody trim (centre)

Removing

– Cabriolet: Remove underbody guard ⇒ page 644 .

– Remove nuts -arrows- and bolt -2-.
– Detach underbody trim (centre) -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - underbody trim”, page 632

5.6 Removing and installing underbody trim (rear)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ “5.6.1 Removing and installing underbody trim (rear)”, page 639

⇒ “5.6.2 Removing and installing underbody trim (rear right) - g-tron”, page 640

5.6.1 Removing and installing underbody trim (rear)

DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

– **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**
– **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**

Removing

– Unscrew nuts -2, 3- and bolts -1-.

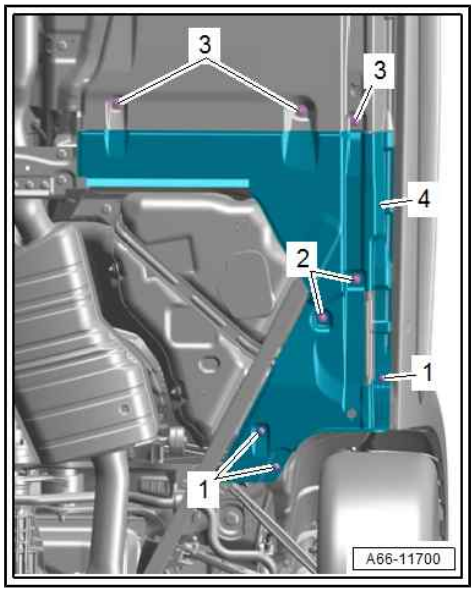
– Detach underbody trim (rear) -4-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - underbody trim”, page 632



5.6.2 Removing and installing underbody trim (rear right) - g-tron

DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

– **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**

– **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**

Removing

– Unscrew nuts -2, 3- and bolts -1-.

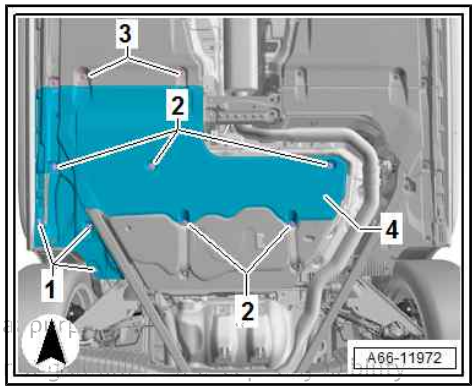
– Detach underbody trim (rear) -4-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “5.1 Exploded view - underbody trim”, page 632



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.7 Removing and installing underbody trim for spare wheel

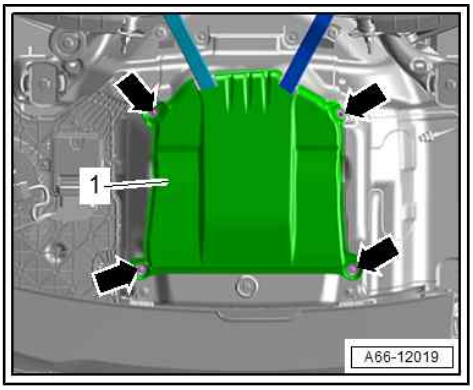
DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

- **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**
- **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**

Removing

- Remove nuts -arrows-.
- Detach underbody trim -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ Fig. ""Exploded view - underbody trim for spare wheel"" , page 634

5.8 Removing and installing underbody trim (side)

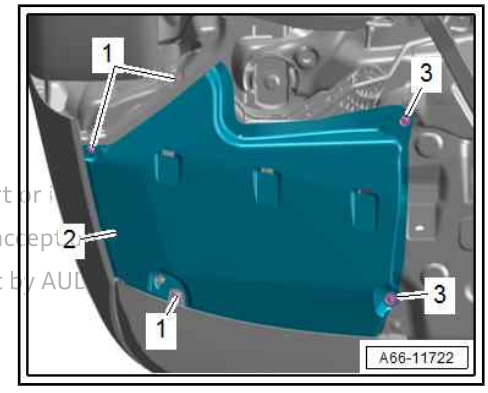
DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

- **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**
- **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**

Removing

- Unscrew nuts -3- and bolts -1-.
- Detach underbody trim (side) -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ "5.1 Exploded view - underbody trim", page 632

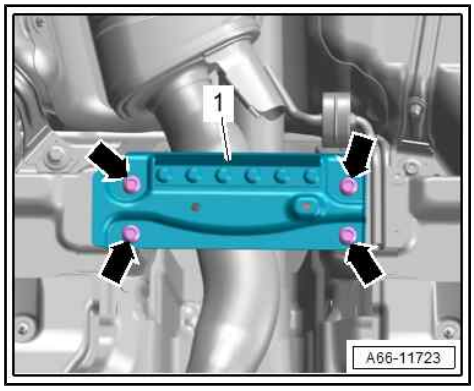
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.9 Removing and installing tunnel cross-piece

Removing

– Remove bolts -arrows-.

– Detach tunnel cross-piece -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “5.2 Exploded view - underbody struts”, page 634

5.10 Removing and installing diagonal struts

⇒ “5.10.1 Removing and installing diagonal struts (front)”, page 642

⇒ “5.10.2 Removing and installing diagonal struts (rear) - A4, A5”, page 643

⇒ “5.10.3 Removing and installing diagonal struts (rear) - RS 4”, page 643

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.10.1 Removing and installing diagonal struts (front)

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 637 .

Removing

NOTICE

Risk of damage to thread if an impact driver (or similar) is used.

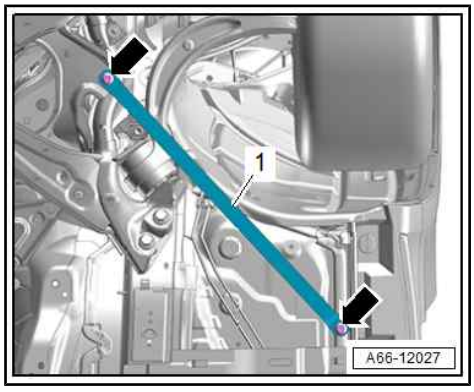
– When screwing in bolts, fit them manually and perform the first few turns by hand.

– Do not use an impact driver to loosen or tighten bolts.

– Remove underbody trim (front) ⇒ page 638 .

– Remove noise insulation (rear) ⇒ page 631 .

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach diagonal strut -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– “Arrow” on diagonal strut must be visible from below and must point in direction of travel.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “5.2.3 Exploded view - underbody struts, A5 Cabriolet”, page 637

5.10.2 Removing and installing diagonal struts (rear) - A4, A5

DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

- **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**
- **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 634 .

Removing

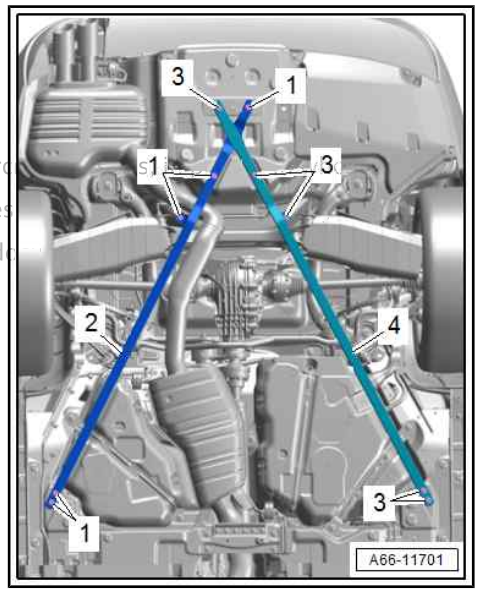
NOTICE

Risk of damage to thread if an impact driver (or similar) is used.

- **When screwing in bolts, fit them manually and perform the first few turns by hand.**
- **Do not use an impact driver to loosen or tighten bolts.**

– A5 Cabriolet: Remove underbody trim (rear) ⇒ page 639 .

– Remove bolts -1, 3- and detach diagonal struts -2, 4-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “5.2.1 Exploded view - underbody struts, A4, A5 Sportback”, page 634
- A5 Cabriolet ⇒ “5.2.3 Exploded view - underbody struts, A5 Cabriolet”, page 637

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerc... permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does ... with respect to the correctness of information in this d...

5.10.3 Removing and installing diagonal struts (rear) - RS 4

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 636 .

Removing

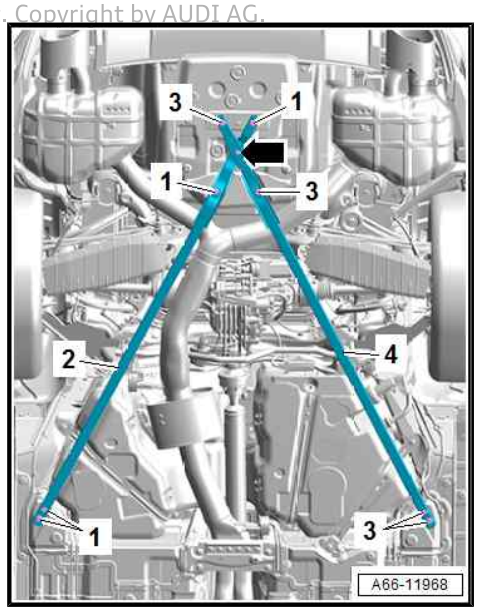
NOTICE

Risk of damage to thread if an impact driver (or similar) is used.

- **When screwing in bolts, fit them manually and perform the first few turns by hand.**
- **Do not use an impact driver to loosen or tighten bolts.**

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolts -1, 3- and -arrow- and remove diagonal struts -2, 4-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

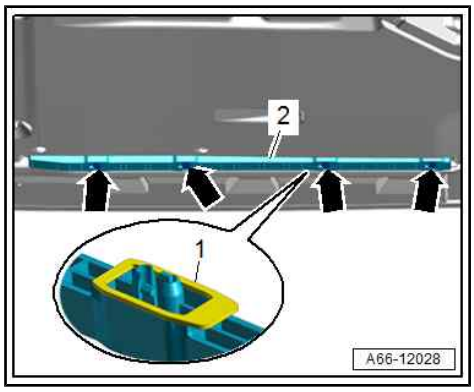
◆ ⇒ “5.2.2 Exploded view - underbody struts, RS 4”, page 636

5.11 Removing and installing underbody guard

Removing

– Release fasteners -arrows- (pull out catch to do so).

– Remove underbody guard -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Check foam pad -1- for damage.

6 Roof strips / roof rails

⇒ “6.1 Exploded view - roof rail”, page 645

⇒ “6.2 Removing and installing roof rail”, page 646

⇒ “6.3 Removing and installing compensation element”, page 646

6.1 Exploded view - roof rail

1 - Nut

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when installing; refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Tightening torque and tightening sequence ⇒ page 645

2 - O-ring

- ❑ Renew if damaged

3 - Compensation element

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 646
- ❑ Apply locking fluid when installing; for locking fluid, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 0.5 Nm

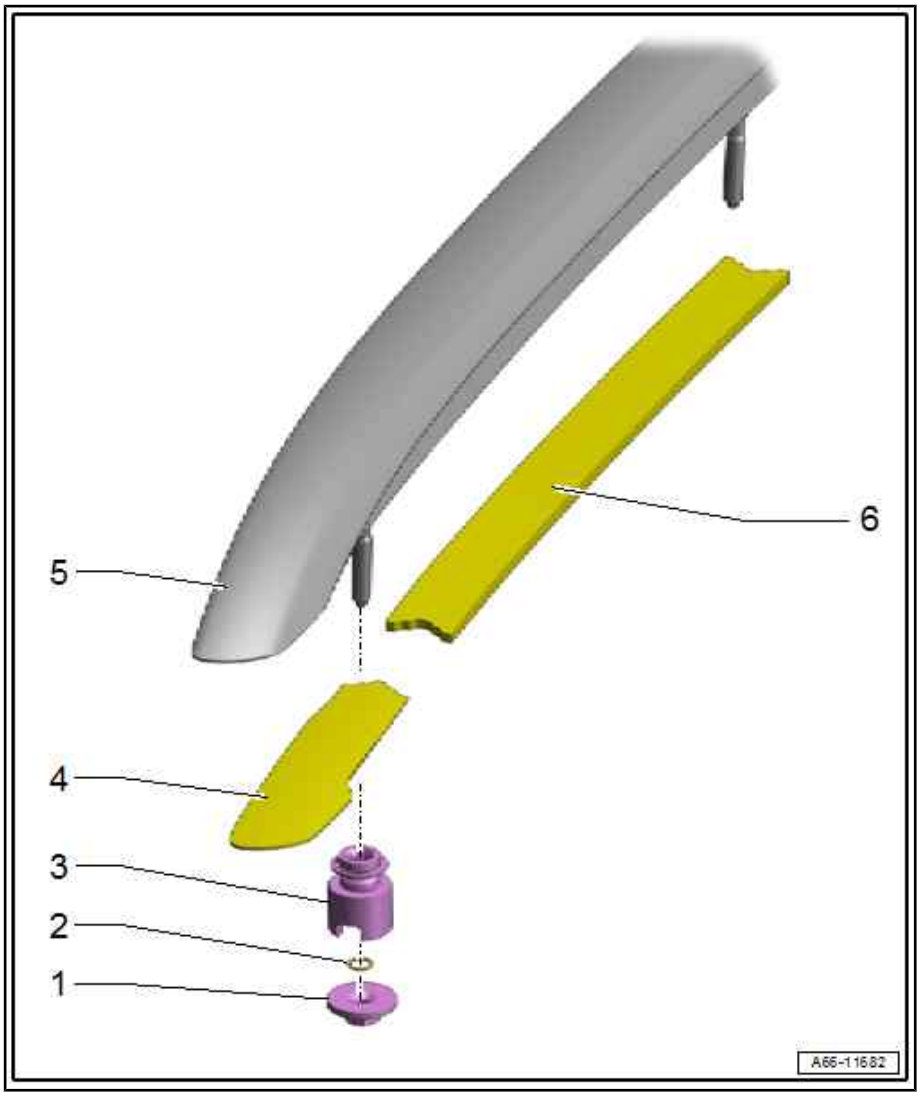
4 - Seal

5 - Roof rail

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 646

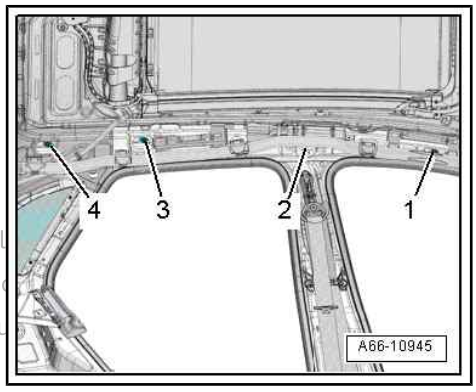
6 - Seal

- ❑ 3x



Roof rail - tightening torque and sequence

– Tighten nuts to 10 Nm in the sequence -2, 3, 4, 1-.

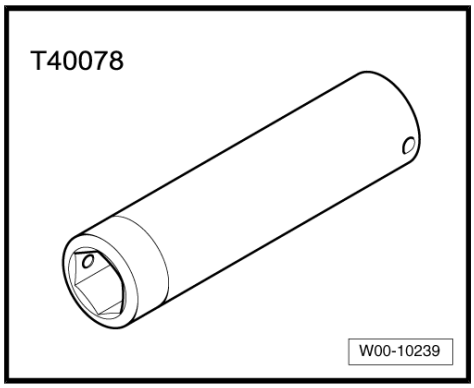


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does n
with respect to the correctness of information in this docu

6.2 Removing and installing roof rail

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Socket - T40078-



- Locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

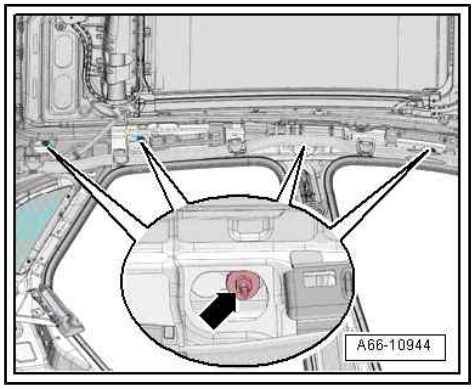
Removing

CAUTION

It is possible to trigger pyrotechnic components unintentionally.
Risk of injury
– Discharge static electricity by briefly touching door striker plate.

– Remove curtain airbag igniter from vehicle body (but leave curtain airbag installed) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 69 ; Curtain airbags; Removing and installing curtain airbag with airbag igniter .

– Unscrew nuts -arrow- using socket - T40078- .



– Lift off roof rail.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Clean thread of stud on roof rail with a wire brush.

– Check seal for damage.

– Carefully remove any locking fluid residue from the threads of the nuts fitted with locking fluid using a thread tap. Otherwise, the studs could shear off when they are removed again.

– Fit roof rail, inserting guide pin in mounting in roof of vehicle.

– Fit nuts with locking fluid and tighten.

Tightening torques

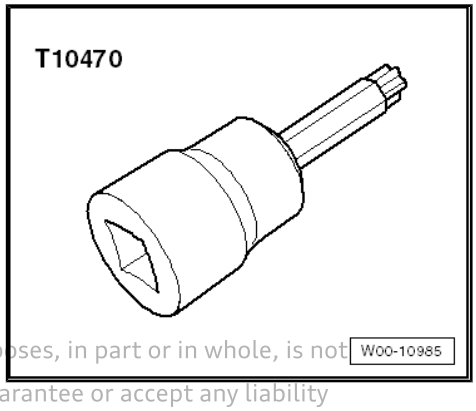
- ⇒ Fig. ""Roof rail - tightening torque and sequence"" , page 645

6.3 Removing and installing compensation element

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Socket Torx T50 - T10470-

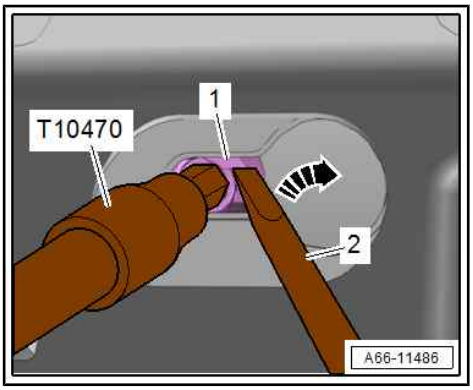


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove roof rail ⇒ page 646 .

– Loosen adjuster screw in compensation element -1- a few turns with socket Torx T 50 - T10470- (counterhold with a screwdriver -2-).



– Remove compensation element from roof opening -arrow-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Clean thread of adjuster screw -3- with a wire brush.

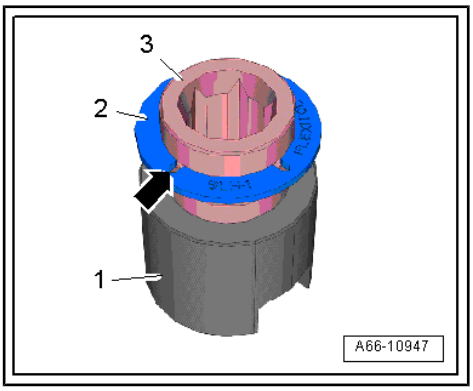
– Remove any remaining locking fluid from threaded hole of compensation element -1- with a suitable thread tap.

– Check stop washer -2- for damage and renew compensation element if necessary.

• Stop washer must be seated in groove -arrow-.

– Screw adjuster screw with locking fluid into compensation element.

– Insert compensation element in roof opening and fix in place with adjuster screw.



7 Exterior mirrors

⇒ “7.1 Exploded view - exterior mirror”, page 648

⇒ “7.2 Removing and installing exterior mirror”, page 649

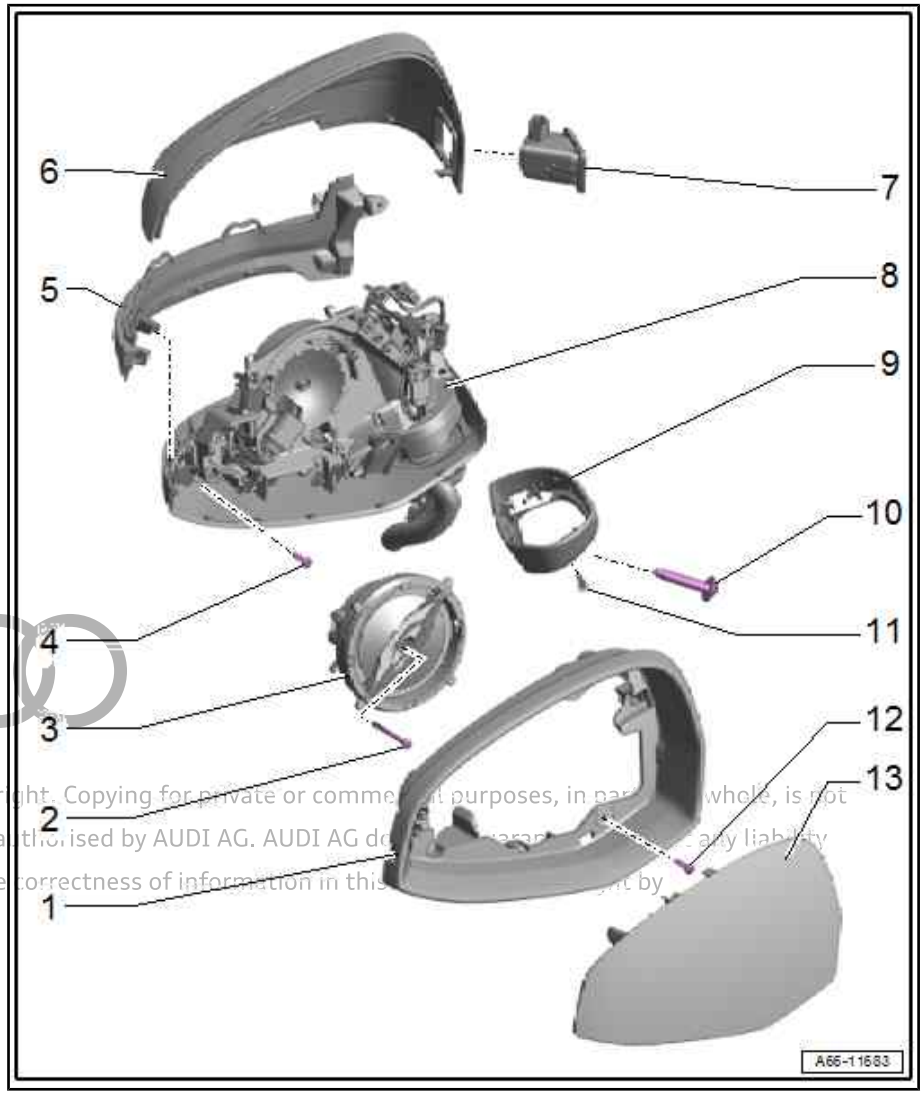
⇒ “7.3 Removing and installing mirror glass”, page 650

⇒ “7.4 Removing and installing mirror adjustment unit”, page 652

⇒ “7.5 Removing and installing cover for mirror”, page 652

⇒ “7.6 Removing and installing mirror trim”, page 652

7.1 Exploded view - exterior mirror



1 - Mirror trim

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

3 - Mirror adjustment unit

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 652

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Lights in exterior mirror; Exploded view - lights in exterior mirror

5 - Turn signal repeater in exterior mirror

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94 ; Lights in exterior mirror; Exploded view - lights in exterior mirror

6 - Cover for mirror

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 652

7 - Lane change assist warning lamp in exterior mirror

- ❑ Overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Lane change assist; Overview - lane change assist

8 - Exterior mirror

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 649

9 - Cover for mirror base

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 649

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 12 Nm

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by

12 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

13 - Mirror glass

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 650

7.2 Removing and installing exterior mirror

- Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary ⇒ page 650 .

Removing

– Move door window to “closed” position.

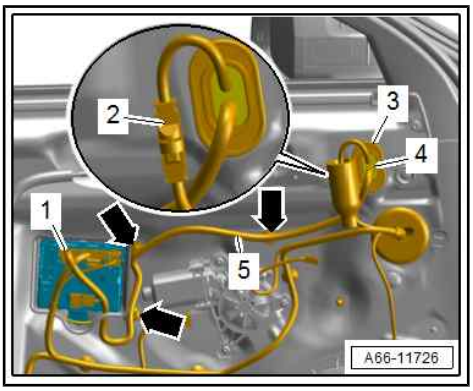
– Remove bass loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .

– Unplug electrical connector -1-.

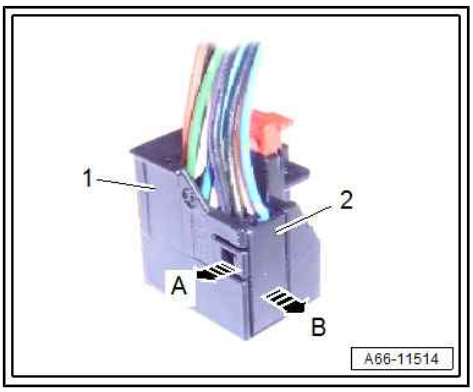
– Move electrical wiring harness -5- clear -arrows-; to do so, release retaining clip from behind using a 6 mm socket.

– On some equipment versions: Push protective sleeve to side and unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Prise out grommets -3 and 4-.

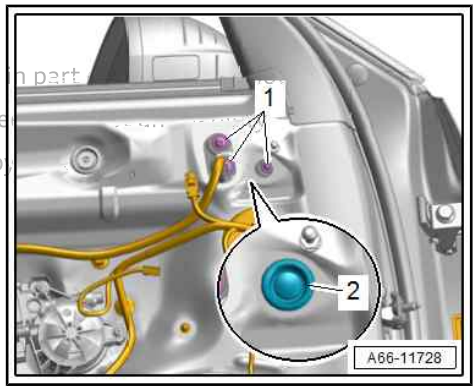


– Release fastener -arrow A- and pull connector -2- off connector housing -1- -arrow B-.



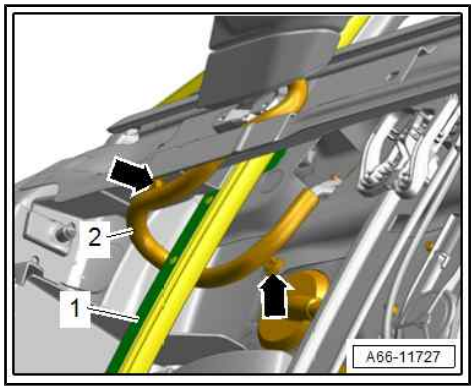
– Prise out grommet -2-.

– Remove nuts -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarante
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

– Pull cable retainers -arrows- off door shell and move electrical wiring harness -2- clear.
– Detach mounting for mirror adjustment unit and at the same time guide wiring harness with grommet out through door shell and behind guide rail -1-.

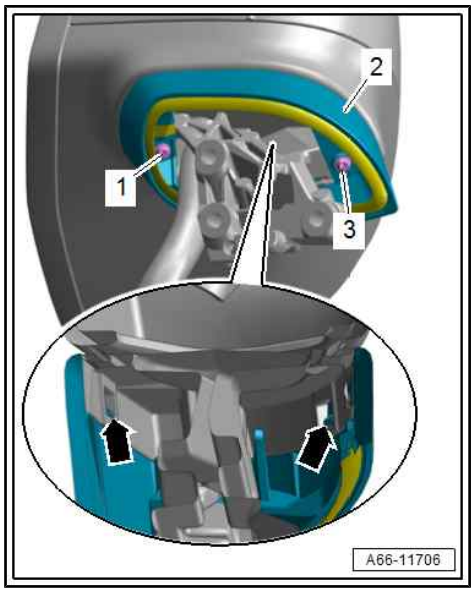


Removing cover:

– Remove bolts -1, 3-.
– Release catches -arrows- and detach cover -2- for mirror base.

Installing

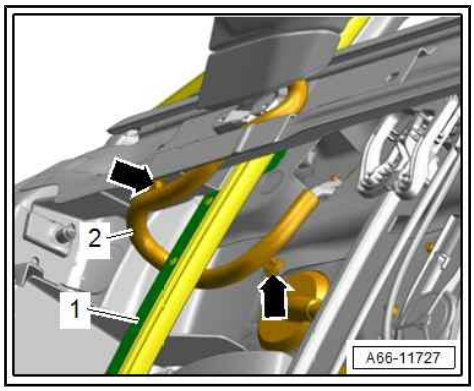
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



– Route electrical wiring harness -2- behind guide rail -1- for door window and secure cable retainers -arrows- on door shell.

Depending on equipment version, the following additional work may be necessary:

– Calibrate left overhead view camera - R244- / right overhead view camera - R245- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Overhead view camera .
• Note conditions under which it is necessary to calibrate left overhead view camera - R244- / right overhead view camera - R245- .



Tightening torques

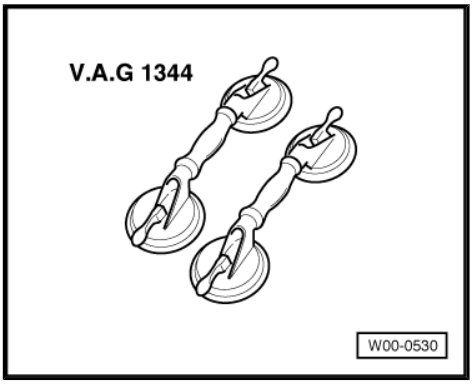
◆ ⇒ “7.1 Exploded view - exterior mirror”, page 648

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

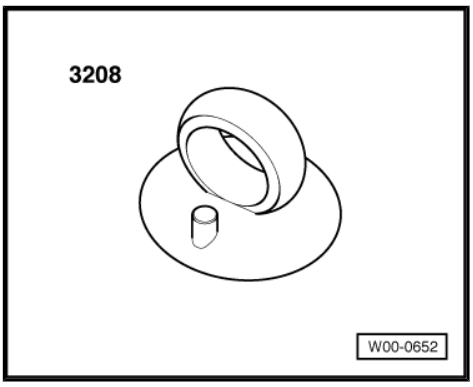
7.3 Removing and installing mirror glass

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Suction lifter - V.A.G 1344-



- Suction grip - 3208-



- Protective gloves

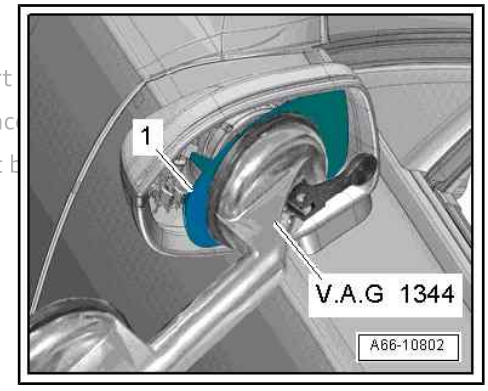
Removing

CAUTION

Risk of injury to hands and eyes due to glass splinters.
Danger of cutting yourself.
– Put on safety goggles.
– Put on protective gloves.

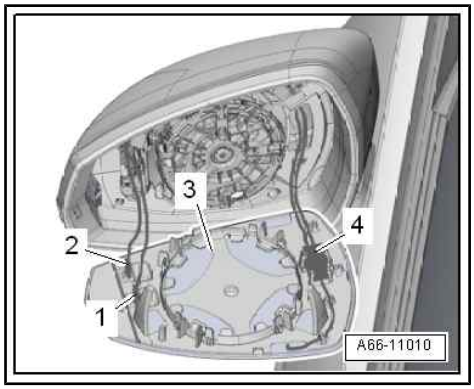
– Apply suction lifter - V.A.G 1344- or suction grip - 3208- centrally to mirror glass -1-.

– Pull mirror glass off mirror adjustment unit with suction lifter - V.A.G 1344- or suction grip - 3208- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part
permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ac
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright b

– Unplug electrical connectors -1 and 2- for mirror glass heating on rear of mirror glass -3-.
– If fitted, unclip electrical connector -4- from bracket and unplug.



Installing

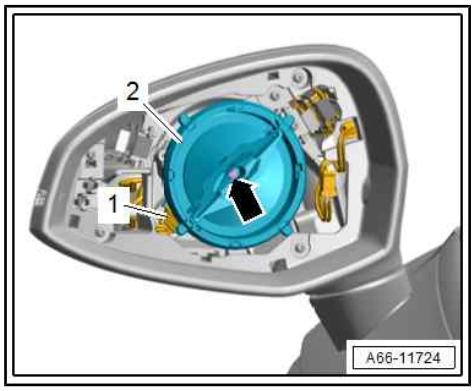
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Position mirror glass at mirror adjustment unit and press mirror glass on. Only press on centre of mirror.

7.4 Removing and installing mirror adjustment unit

Removing

– Remove mirror glass ⇒ page 650 .
– Remove bolt -arrow-.
– Disengage mirror adjustment unit -2- on outside of mounting.
– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Detach mirror adjustment unit.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

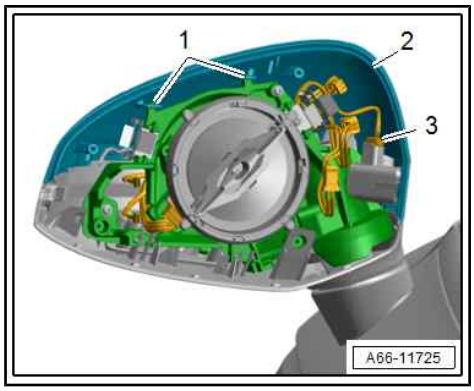
Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “7.1 Exploded view - exterior mirror”, page 648

7.5 Removing and installing cover for mirror

Removing

– Remove mirror trim ⇒ page 652 .
– Release fasteners -1- and detach cover -2- for mirror towards front as seen in direction of travel.
– On some equipment versions: Unplug electrical connector -3-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “7.1 Exploded view - exterior mirror”, page 648

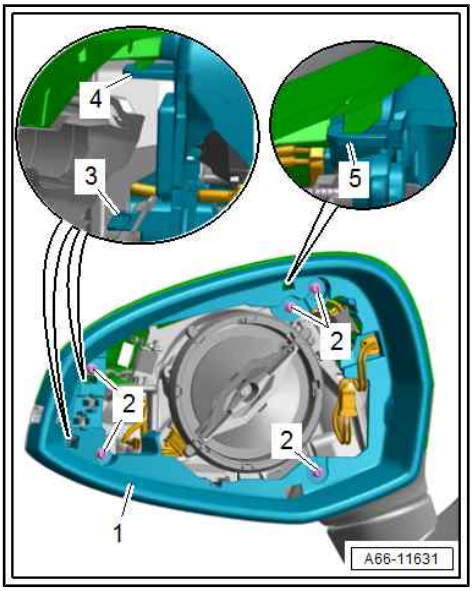
7.6 Removing and installing mirror trim

Removing

– Remove mirror glass ⇒ page 650 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolts -2-.
– Release fasteners -3, 4, 5- with a screwdriver and pull mirror trim -1- off towards rear (as seen in direction of travel).
– Guide electrical connectors out of mounting.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- You should hear mirror trim engage.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “7.1 Exploded view - exterior mirror”, page 648

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8 Wheel housing liners

⇒ “8.1 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (front)”, page 654

⇒ “8.2 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (rear)”, page 658

⇒ “8.3 Removing and installing wheel housing liner (front)”, page 658

⇒ “8.4 Removing and installing wheel spoiler (front)”, page 659

⇒ “8.5 Removing and installing drive shaft cover”, page 660

⇒ “8.6 Removing and installing wheel housing liner (rear)”, page 660

⇒ “8.7 Removing and installing spoiler for spare wheel well”, page 661

8.1 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (front)

- Exploded view - wheel housing liner ⇒ page 654
- Exploded view - wheel spoiler ⇒ page 655
- Exploded view - covers for wheel housing liner ⇒ page 656
- A5 Cabriolet, preparing cover for wheel housing liner (right-side) for installation ⇒ page 600

Exploded view - wheel housing liner

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Drive shaft cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 660

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ 2 Nm

3 - Wheel housing liner (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 658

4 - Clip

5 - Bracket

- ❑ For securing wheel housing liner to wing

6 - Bolt

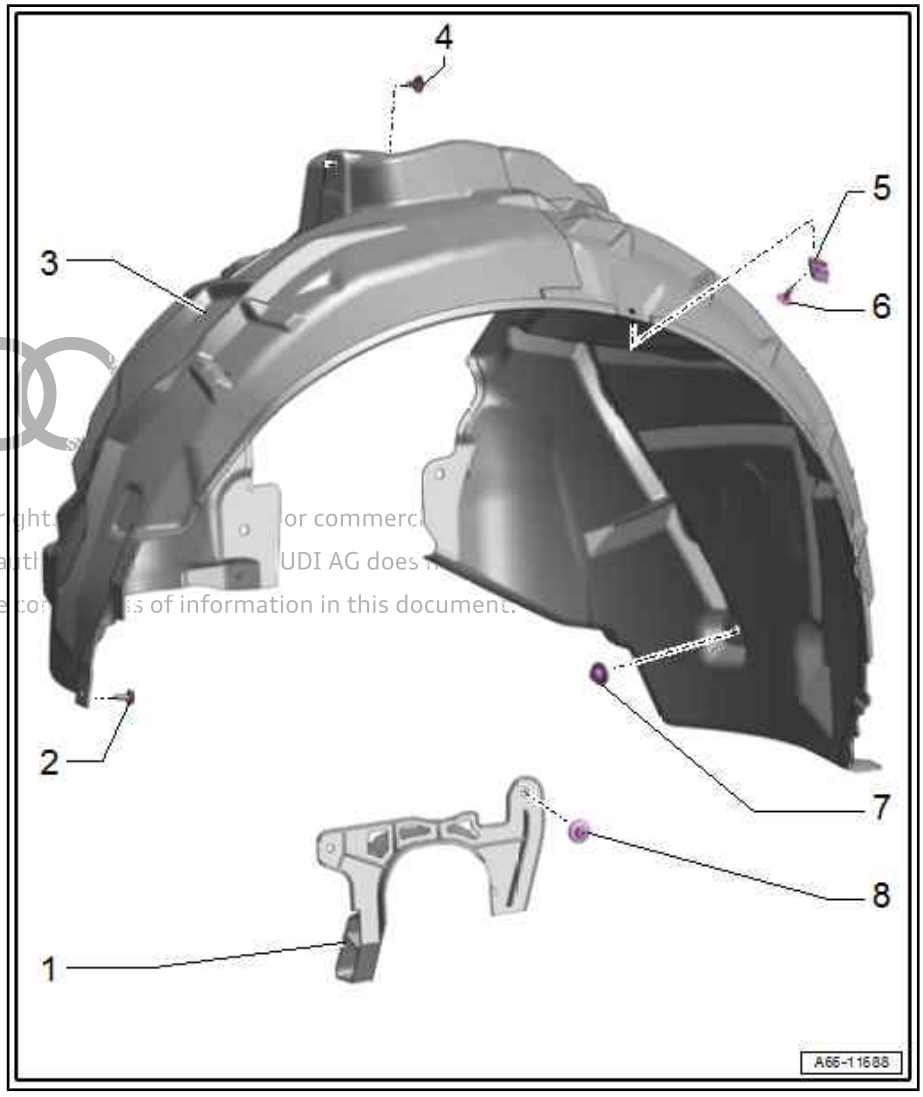
- ❑ 2 Nm

7 - Nut

- ❑ 5x
- ❑ 2 Nm

8 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm



Protected by copyright. ... or commercial ... permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG does not ... with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Exploded view - wheel spoiler

1 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 2 Nm

2 - Spoiler lip

3 - Wheel spoiler (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 659

4 - Clip/bolt

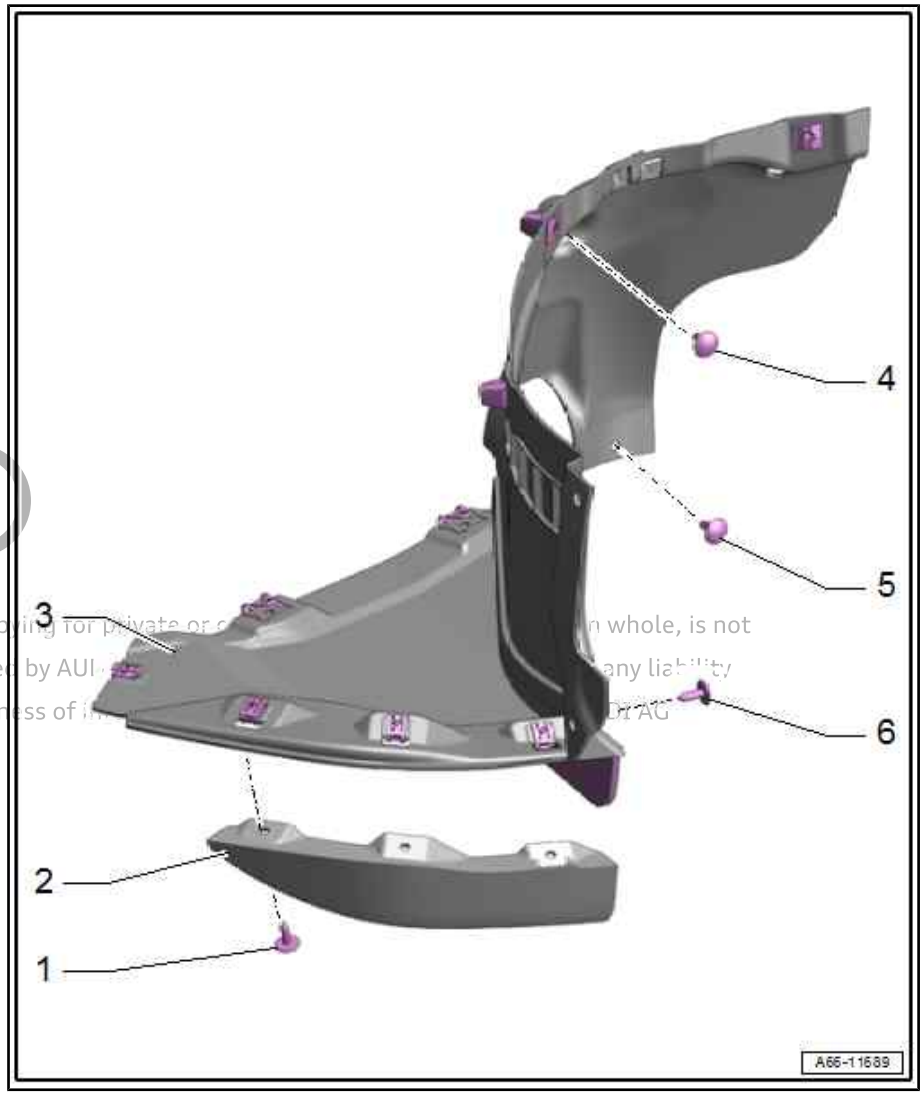
- ❑ Bolt: 7.5 Nm

5 - Spreader rivet

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or c... whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUI ... any liability with respect to the correctness of in... of AG



Exploded view - covers for wheel housing liner

1 - Spreader rivet

- ❑ 2x

2 - Spreader rivet

- ❑ 3x

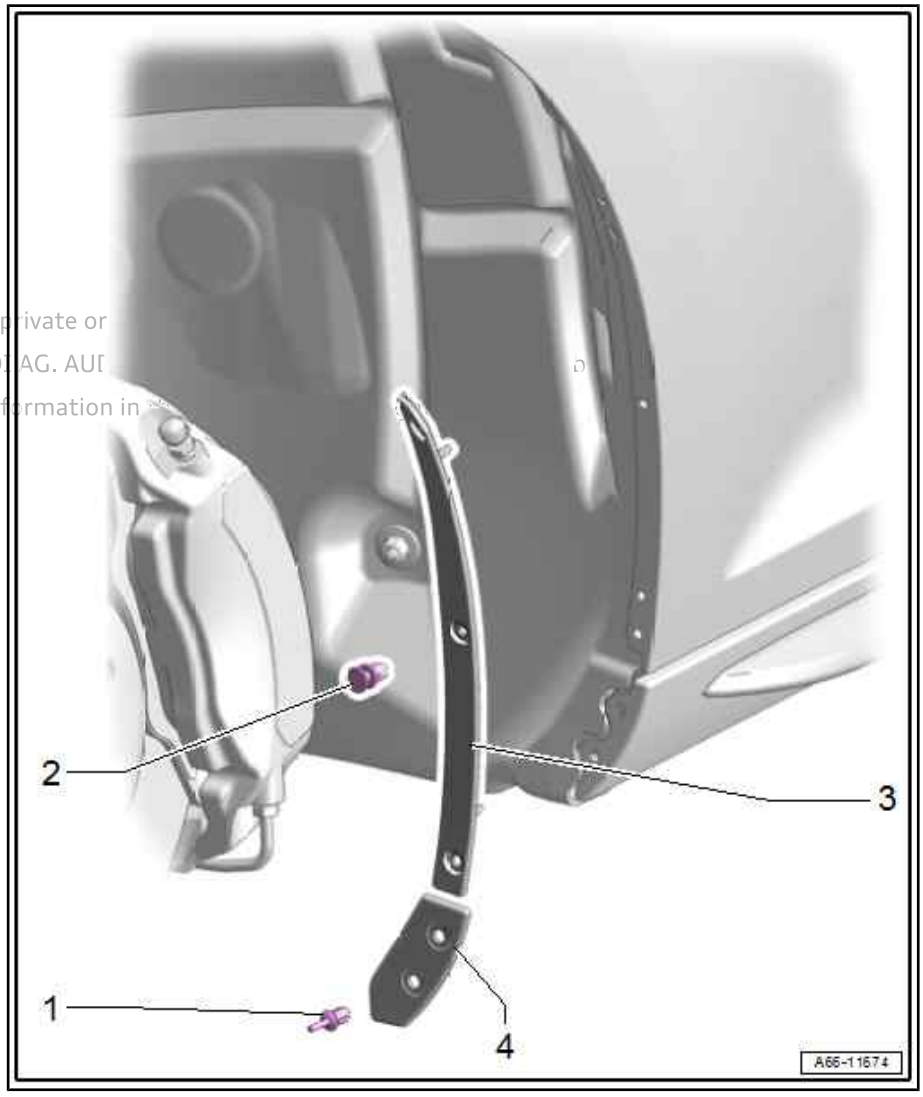
3 - Cover for wing panel

- ❑ For wheel housing liner
- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ page 599

4 - Cover for side member

- ❑ For wheel housing liner
- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ page 599

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or
permitted under authorized by AUDI AG. AUI
with re information in



8.2 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (rear)

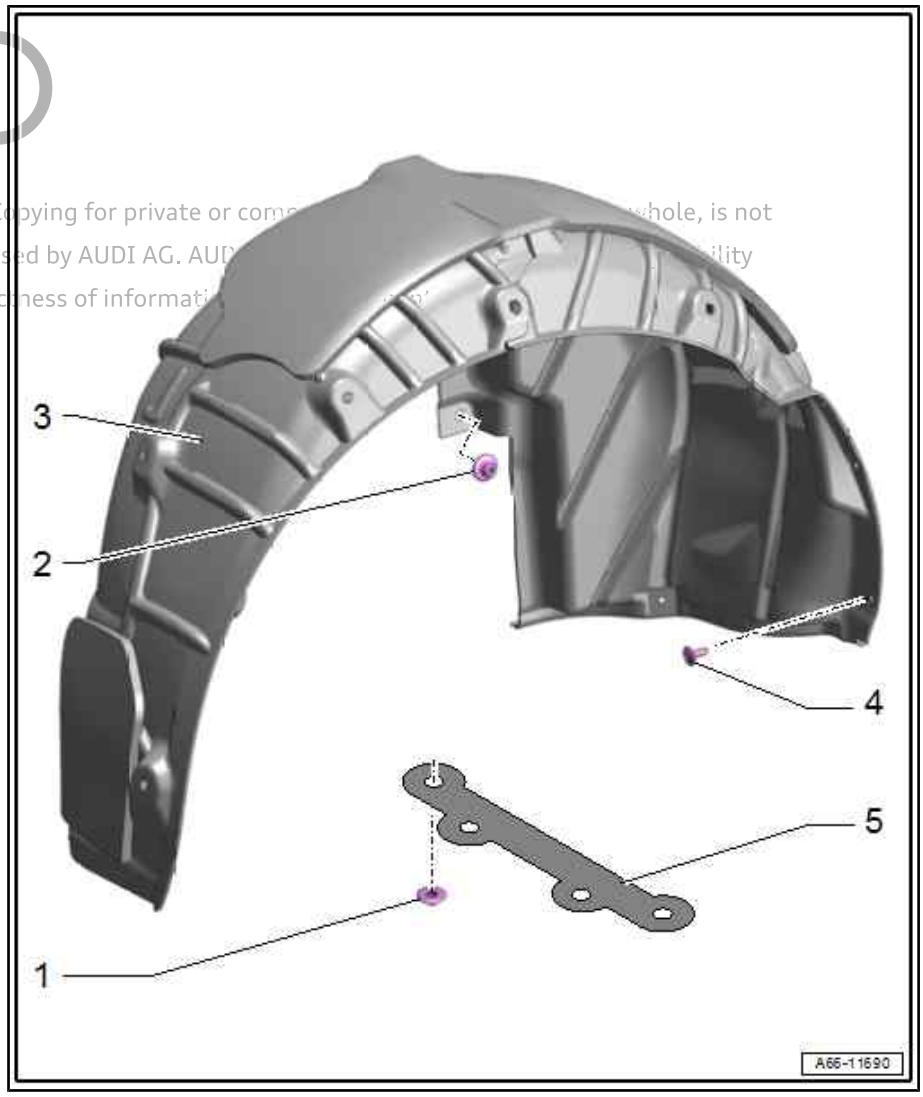
1 - Nut
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 2 Nm

2 - Nut
- ❑ 9x
- ❑ 2 Nm

3 - Wheel housing liner (rear)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 660

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 2 Nm

5 - Spoiler
- ❑ For spare wheel well
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 661



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

8.3 Removing and installing wheel housing liner (front)

Removing

– Remove drive shaft cover ⇒ page 660 .

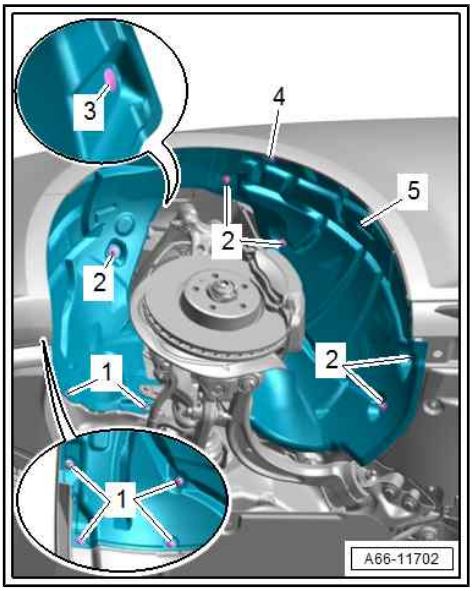
– Detach clip -3-.
– Unscrew bolt -4- and disengage bracket at wing.
– Unscrew nut -2- and bolts -1-.
– Detach wheel housing liner -5-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “8.1 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (front)”, page 654



8.4 Removing and installing wheel spoiler (front)

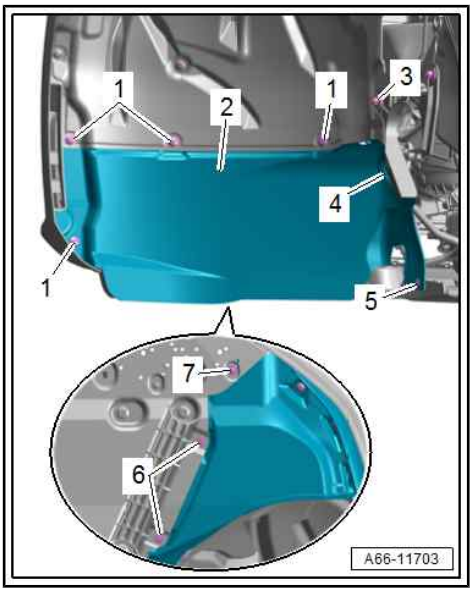
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove drive shaft cover ⇒ page 660 .
– Remove bolts -1, 7-.
– Remove spreader rivet -5-.
– Remove clip -4-/unscrew bolt.
– Unscrew front nut -3- for drive shaft cover.
– Release quick-release fastener -6- and detach wheel spoiler -2-.
– Move breather hose for headlight clear.

Installing

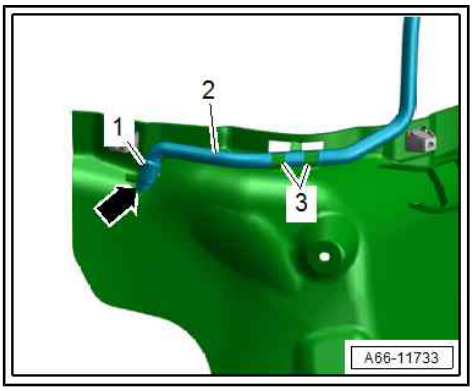
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



– Slide breather hose -2- into hole -arrow- as far as section with thicker circumference -1-.
– Insert breather hose in mounting -3- to secure it.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “8.1 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (front)”, page 654



8.5 Removing and installing drive shaft cover

Removing

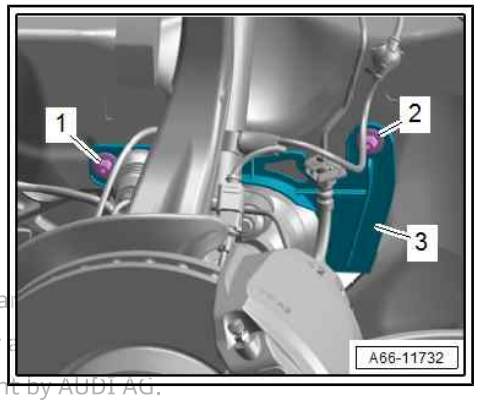
– Turn front wheel all the way to the left.

– Unscrew nut -1-.

– Turn front wheel all the way to the right.

– Unscrew nut -2-.

– Pull drive shaft cover -3- off threaded pins and take out towards rear and downwards.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torques

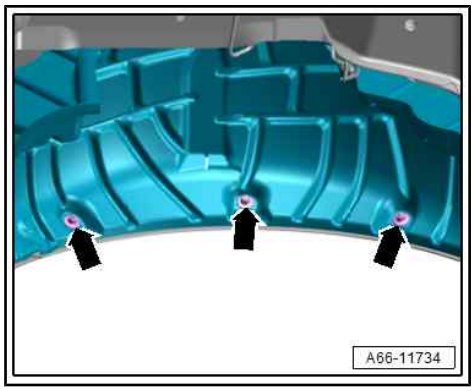
◆ ⇒ “8.1 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (front)”, page 654

8.6 Removing and installing wheel housing liner (rear)

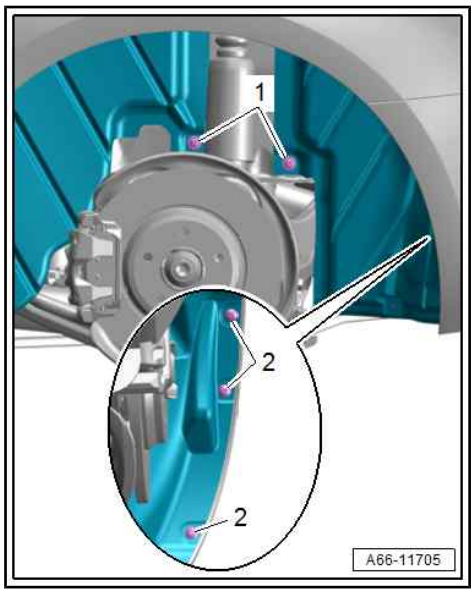
Removing

• Rear wheel removed ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 44 ; Wheels and tyres .

– Remove nuts -arrows-.



– Unscrew nuts -1- and bolts -2-.



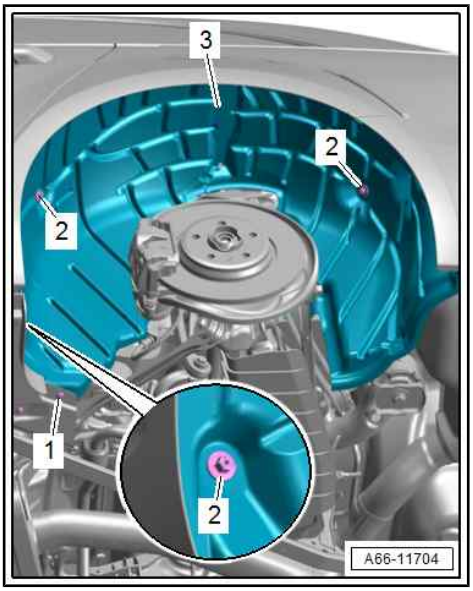
– Unscrew nuts -2- and bolt -1-.
– Take out wheel housing liner -3-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “8.2 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (rear)”, page 658



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8.7 Removing and installing spoiler for spare wheel well

Removing

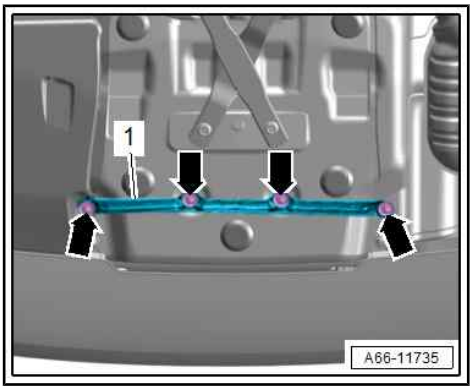
– Remove nuts -arrows-.
– Detach spoiler -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “8.2 Exploded view - wheel housing liner (rear)”, page 658



9 Model badges and brand emblems

⇒ “9.1 Exploded view - model badges and brand emblems”, page 662

⇒ “9.2 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on rear”, page 663

⇒ “9.3 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on side”, page 667

⇒ “9.4 General notes on renewing model badges and brand emblems”, page 669

⇒ “9.5 Renewing model badges and brand emblems on side”, page 670

⇒ “9.6 Removing and installing model badges and emblems for radiator grille”, page 672

9.1 Exploded view - model badges and brand emblems

1 - Emblem

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 672

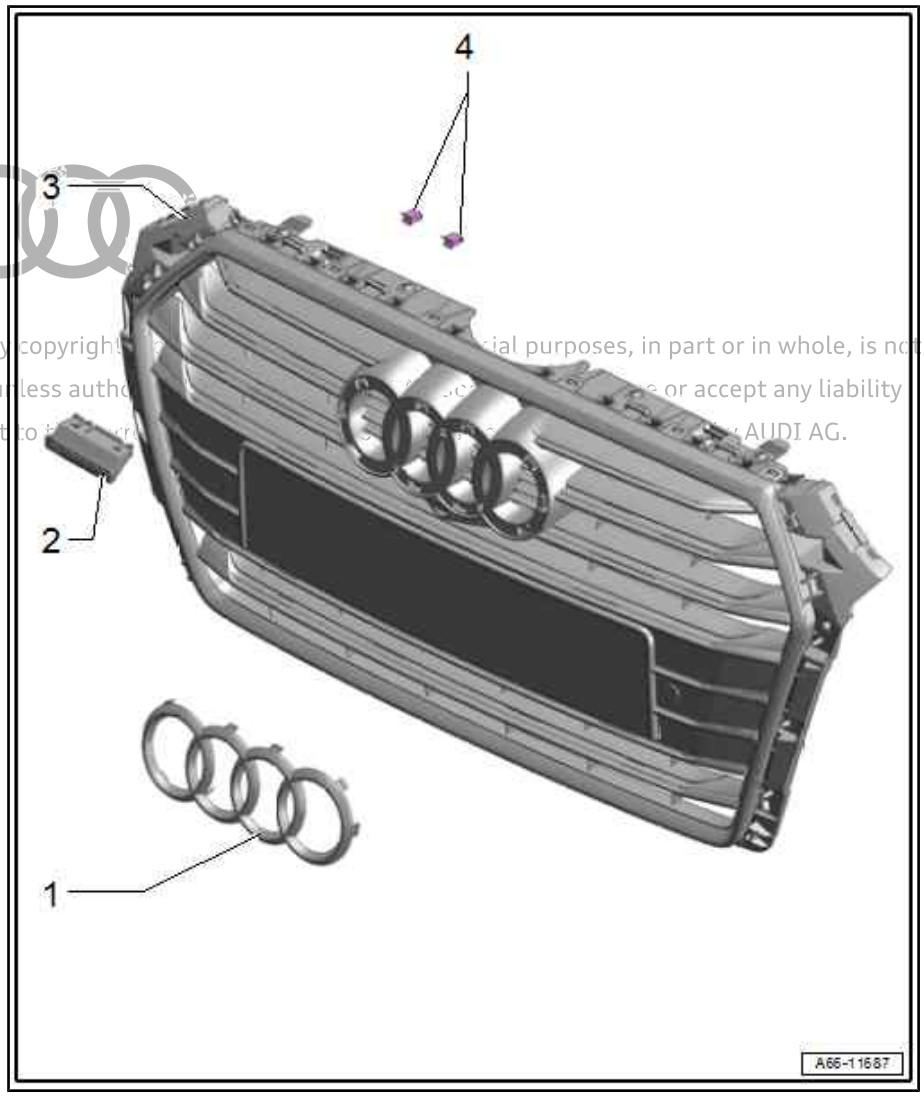
2 - Emblem

- ❑ Depending on vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and installing quattro emblem ⇒ page 673
- ❑ Removing and installing S emblem ⇒ page 673
- ❑ Removing and installing RS emblem ⇒ page 673

3 - Radiator grille

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 549

4 - Retaining clips



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

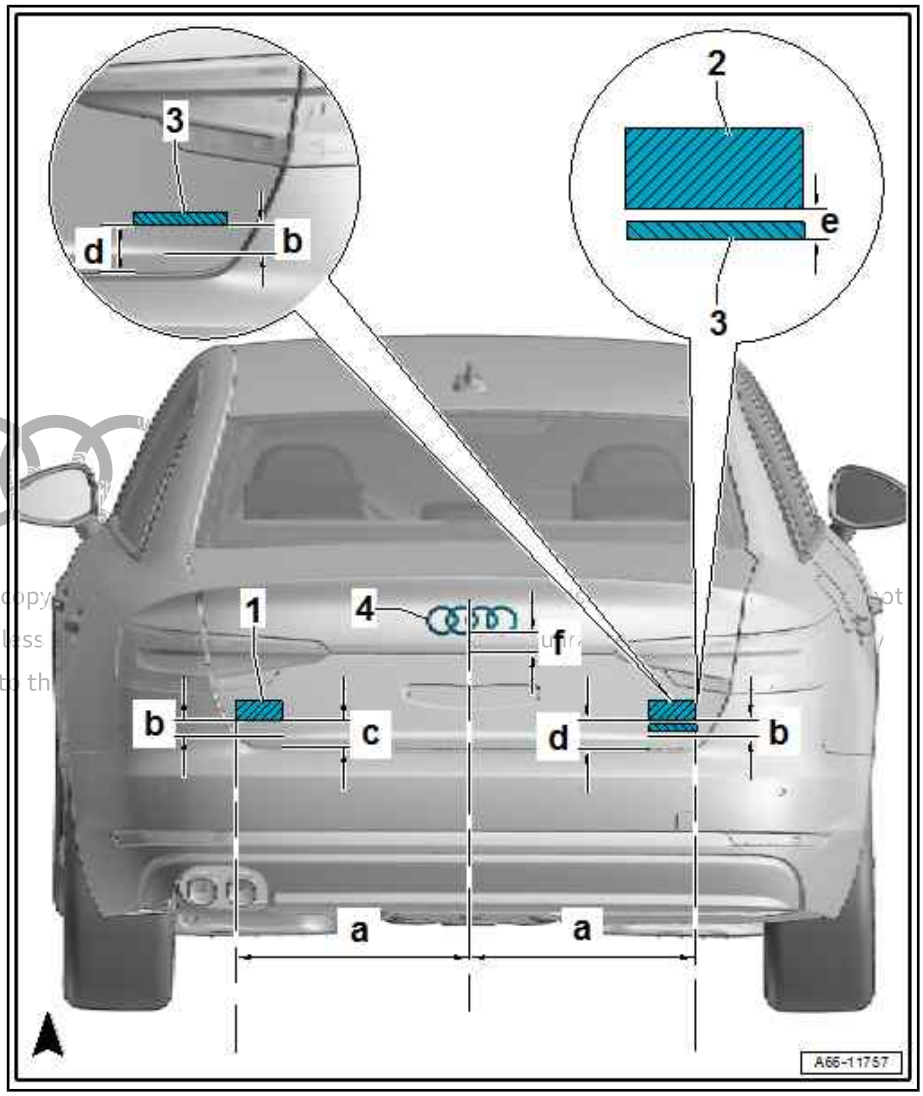
9.2 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on rear

⇒ “9.2.1 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on rear, A4 Saloon, A5”, page 663

⇒ “9.2.2 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on rear, A4 Avant”, page 665

9.2.1 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on rear, A4 Saloon, A5

- General notes on renewing model badges and brand emblems ⇒ page 669



1 - Badge (left-side)

❑ A4

A4

S4

Dimension -a- = 515 mm

Dimension -b- = 38 mm

Dimension -c- = 60 mm

❑ A5

A5

S5

RS 5

Dimension -a- = 473.5 mm

Dimension -b- = 36 mm

Dimension -c- = 59 mm

2 - Badge (right-side)

❑ A4

TFSI

1.4 T

2.0 T

30 TFSI

35 TFSI

40 TFSI

45 TFSI

TDI

2.0 TDI

3.0 TDI

25 TDI

30 TDI

Protected by copy permitted unless with respect to th

35 TDI

40 TDI

50 TDI

55 TDI

Dimension -a- = 515 mm

Dimension -b- = 38 mm

Dimension -d- = 59 mm

- ❑ A5

TFSI

2.0 T

35 TFSI

40 TFSI

45 TFSI

TDI

2.0 TDI

3.0 TDI

30 TDI

35 TDI

40 TDI

45 TDI

50 TDI

g-tron

40 g-tron

Dimension -a- = 473.5 mm

Dimension -b- = 36 mm

Dimension -d- = 59 mm

3 - Badge (right-side)

- ❑ A4

quattro

ultra

Dimension -a- = 515 mm

Dimension -b- = 38 mm

Dimension -d- = 59 mm

Dimension -e- = 17.5 mm

- ❑ A5

quattro

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

ultra

Dimension -a- = 473.5 mm

Dimension -b- = 36 mm

Dimension -d- = 59 mm

Dimension -e- = 17.5 mm

4 - Audi emblem

- ❑ A4

Dimension -f- = 41 mm

- ❑ A5 Coupé

Dimension -f- = 35 mm

- ❑ A5 Sportback

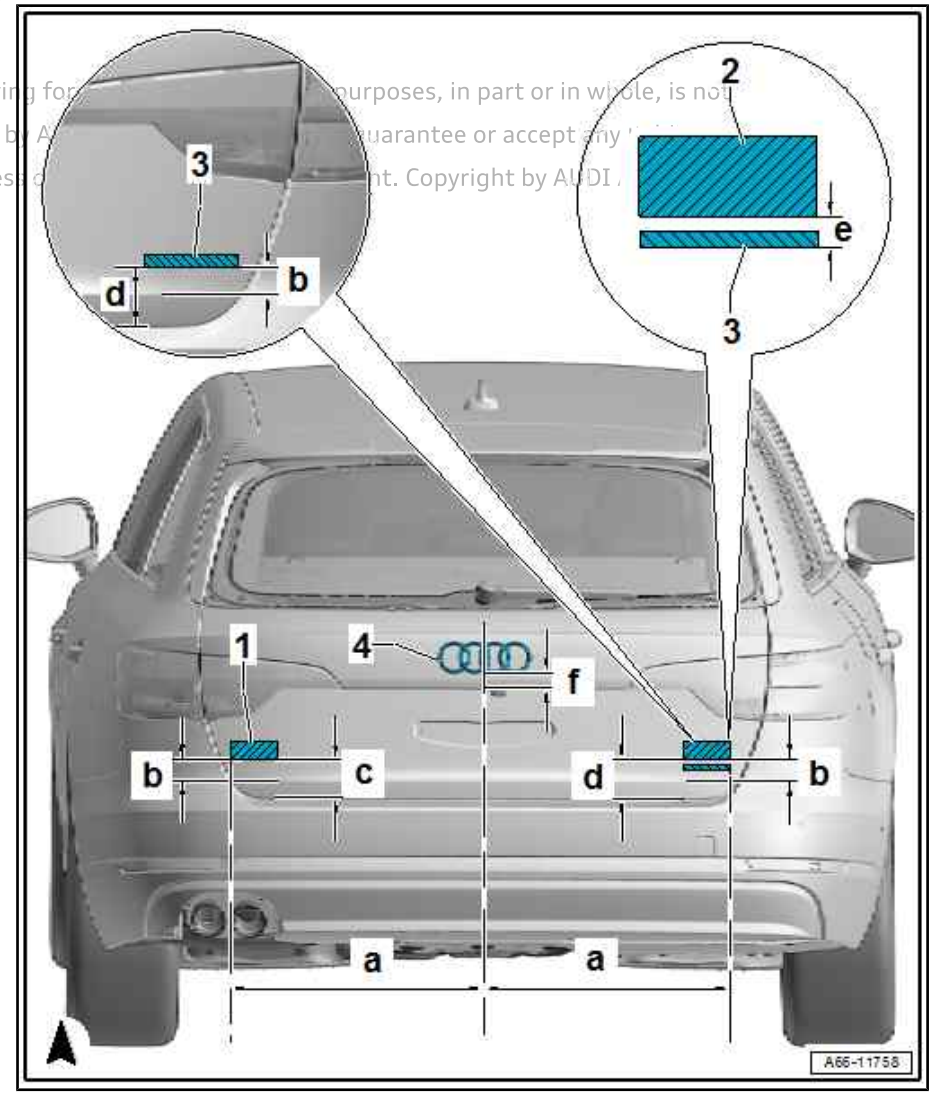
Dimension -f- = 37.8 mm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9.2.2 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on rear, A4 Avant

- General notes on renewing model badges and brand emblems ⇒ page 669

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Badge (left-side)

❑ A4

A4

S4

RS4

Dimension -a- = 552 mm

Dimension -b- = 51 mm

Dimension -c- = 59 mm

2 - Badge (right-side)

TFSI

1.4 T

2.0 T

35 TFSI

40 TFSI

45 TFSI

TDI

2.0 TDI

3.0 TDI

30 TDI

35 TDI

40 TDI

45 TDI

50 TDI

allroad

g-tron

40 g-tron

Dimension -a- = 552 mm

Dimension -b- = 51 mm

Dimension -d- = 59 mm

3 - Badge (right-side)

quattro

ultra

Dimension -a- = 552 mm

Dimension -b- = 51 mm

Dimension -d- = 59 mm

4 - Audi emblem

Dimension -f- = 35 mm

9.3 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on side

⇒ "9.3.1 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on side, A4", page 667

⇒ "9.3.2 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on sides, A4 allroad", page 668

⇒ "9.3.3 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on side, A5", page 668

9.3.1 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on side, A4

- General notes on renewing model badges and brand emblems ⇒ page 669

1 - Model/brand emblem

❑ S line

Dimension -a- = 65 mm

Dimension -b- = 40 mm

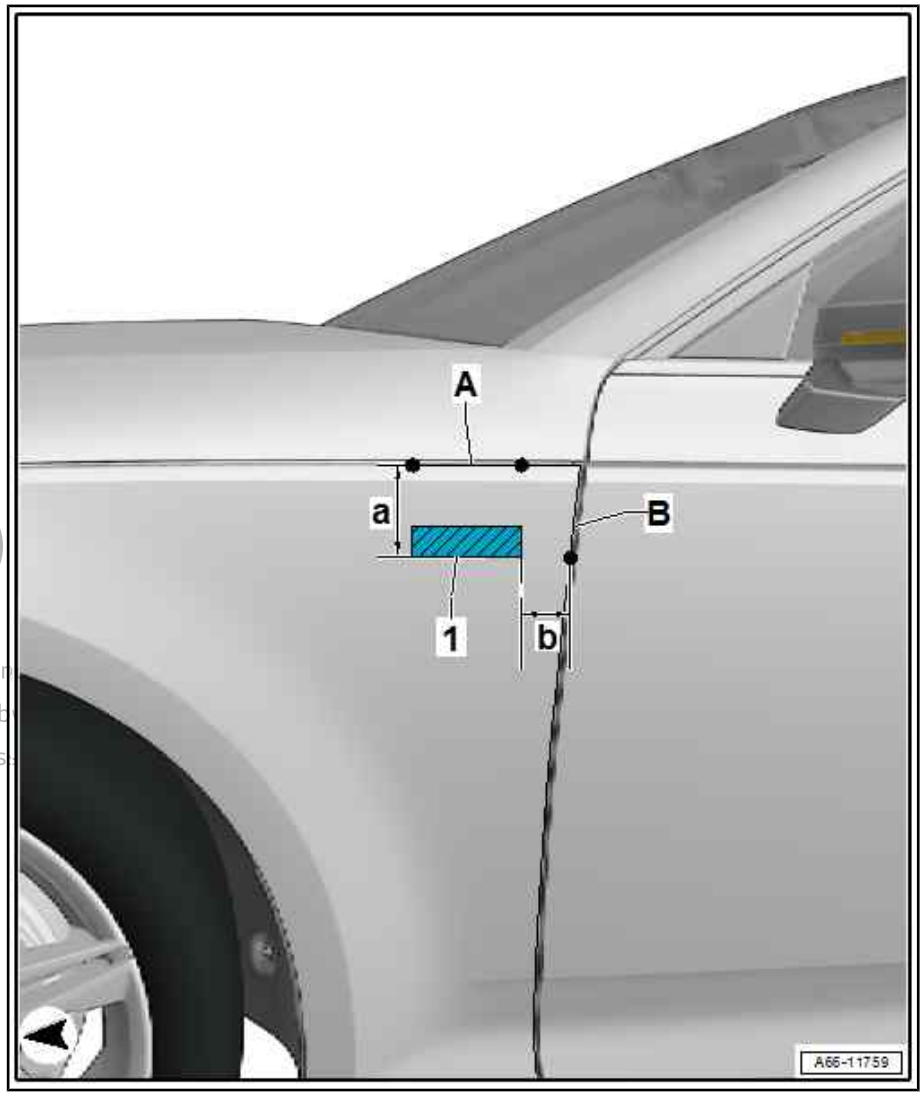
❑ V6T

Dimension -a- = 72 mm

Dimension -b- = 40 mm

A - Reference edge on wing panel

B - Rear edge of wing panel



Protected by copyright. Copyin
permitted unless authorised b
with respect to the correctnes

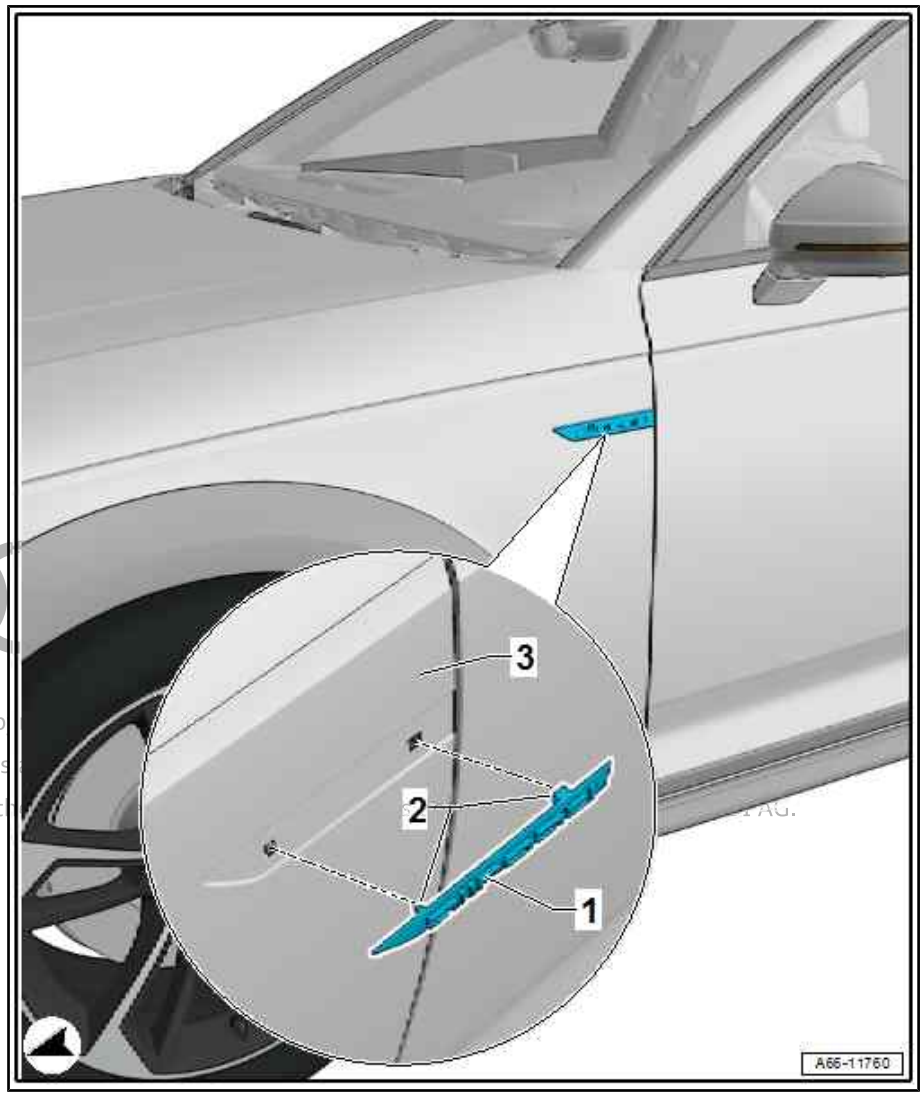
9.3.2 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on sides, A4 allroad

- General notes on renewing model badges and brand emblems ⇒ page 669

1 - Model emblem
- ❑ allroad

2 - Locating pin

3 - Wing panel



Protected by cop
permitted unless
with respect to t
AG.

9.3.3 Dimensions - model badges and brand emblems on side, A5

- General notes on renewing model badges and brand emblems ⇒ page 669

1 - Model emblem for wing panel

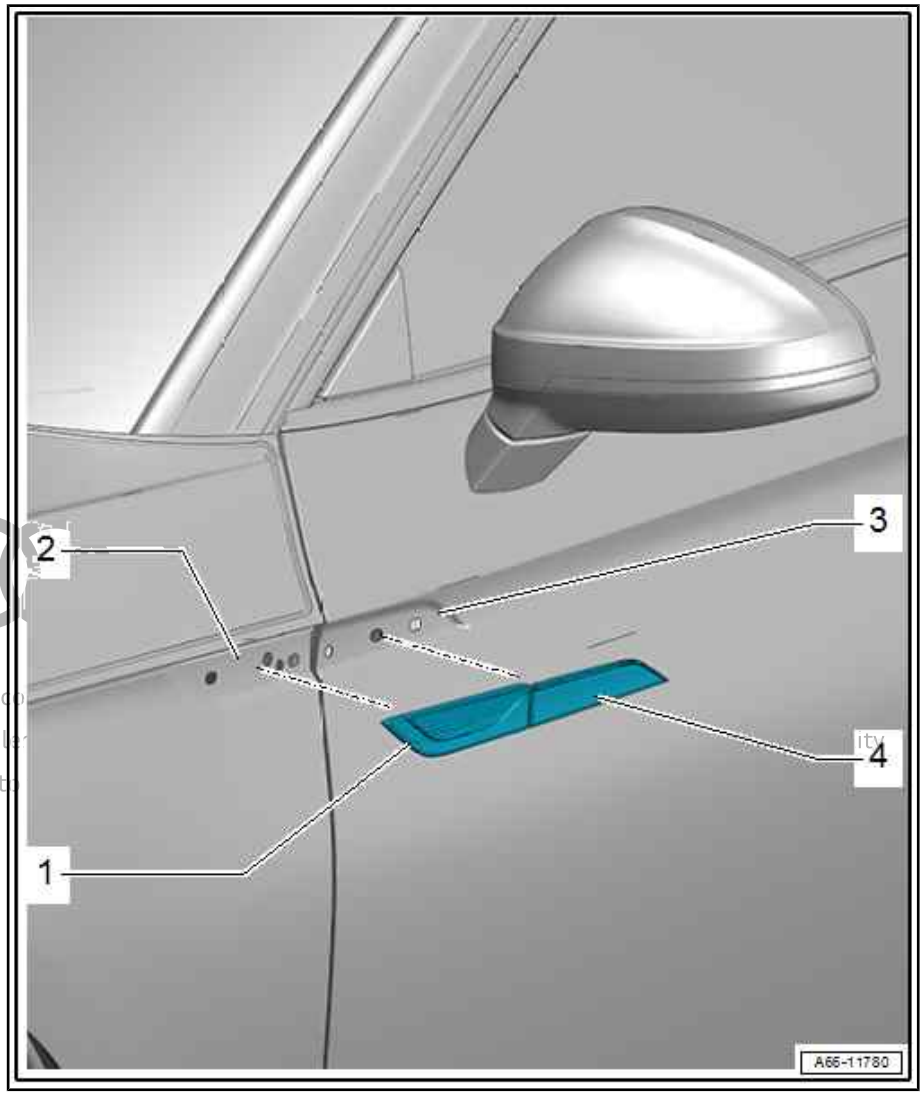
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 670

2 - Wing panel

3 - Door

4 - Model emblem for door

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 671

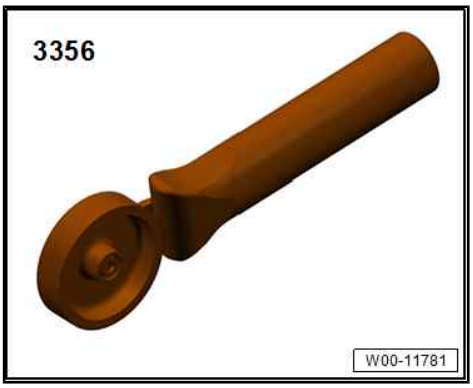


Protected by co
permitted unl
with respect t
ity

9.4 General notes on renewing model badges and brand emblems

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Roller - 3356-



- ♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-
- • Any model badges and brand emblems that are removed must be renewed.

- The vehicle and the model badges/brand emblems must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

– Heat bonding surfaces with a hot air blower to approx. 40°C.

- Adjacent components must be protected against high temperatures.

– After installing, press on emblems with roller.

- Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9.5 Renewing model badges and brand emblems on side

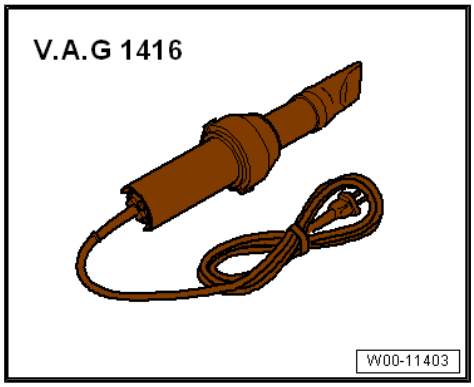
⇒ “9.5.1 Removing and installing model emblem for wing panel”, page 670

⇒ “9.5.2 Removing and installing model emblem for door”, page 671

9.5.1 Removing and installing model emblem for wing panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-

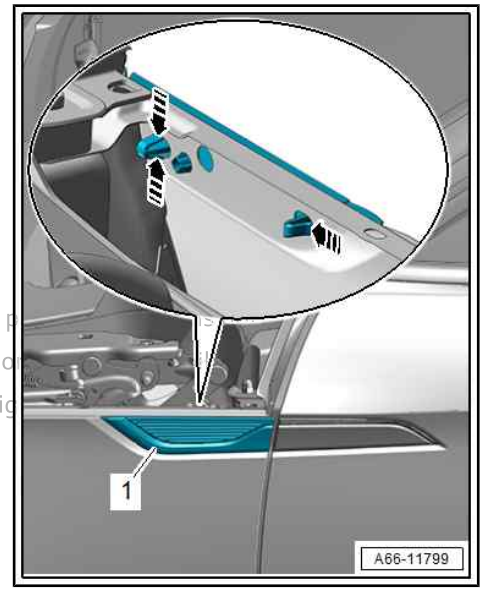


♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

Removing

– Remove cover (rear) for wing ⇒ page 30 .

– Carefully heat model emblem -1- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .
– Release fasteners -arrows- and carefully detach model emblem in area of adhesive bond.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.
– Clean bonding surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.
– Peel protective films off adhesive strip, position model emblem above locating pin and press it on until it engages audibly.

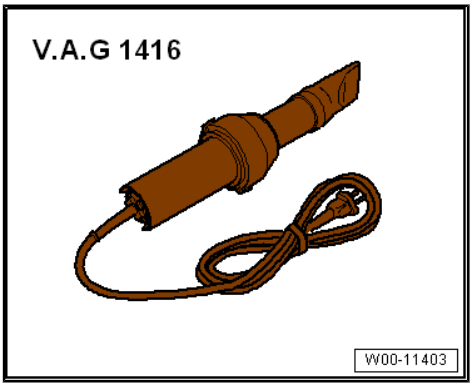
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee o
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrig

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.

9.5.2 Removing and installing model emblem for door

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-



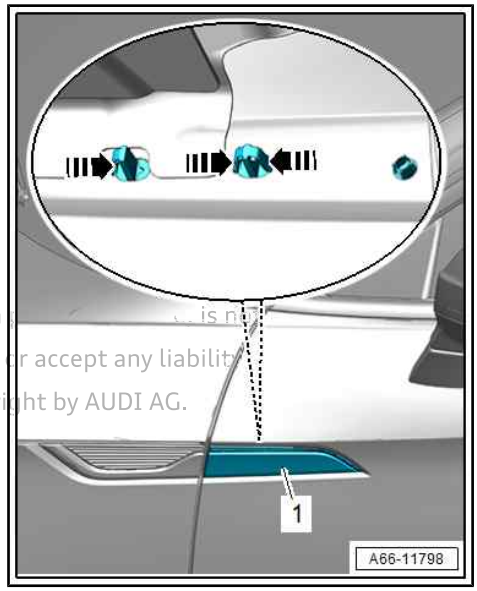
♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

Removing

– Move door window to “closed” position.
– Remove door trim ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Door trim (front); Removing and installing door trim (front) .
– Remove loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system .

– Carefully heat model emblem -1- with hot air blower - V.A.G 1416- .

– Release fasteners -arrows- and carefully detach model emblem in area of adhesive bond.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Clean bonding surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

– Peel protective films off adhesive strip, position model emblem above locating pin and press it on until it engages audibly.

• Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in ... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability ... Copyright by AUDI AG.

9.6 Removing and installing model badges and emblems for radiator grille

⇒ “9.6.1 Removing emblem”, page 672

⇒ “9.6.2 Removing quattro emblem”, page 673

⇒ “9.6.3 Removing and installing S emblem”, page 673

⇒ “9.6.4 Removing and installing RS emblem”, page 673

9.6.1 Removing emblem

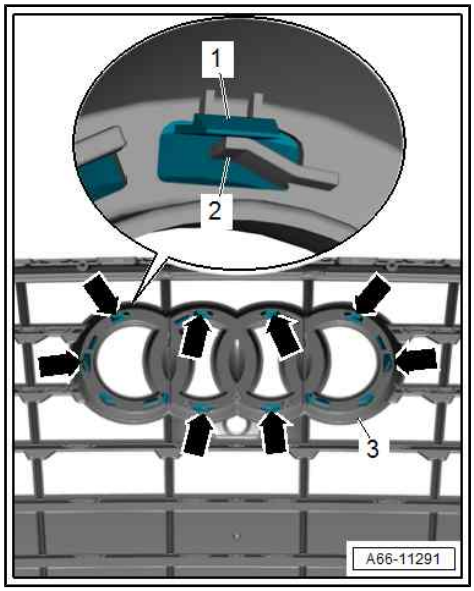
• General notes on renewing model badges and brand emblems ⇒ page 669

– Remove bumper cover (front) ⇒ page 403 .

– If fitted, remove overhead view camera ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91 ; Overhead view camera; Overview of fitting locations - overhead view camera .

– Release retainer -1- at locations marked with -arrows-; to do so, lift securing tab -2- of each retainer.

– Detach emblem from radiator grille -3-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

– Press on emblem until it engages audibly.

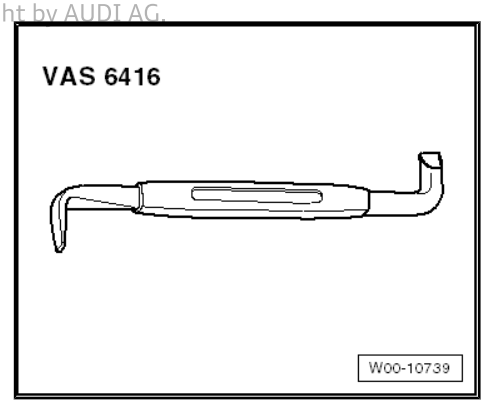
9.6.2 Removing quattro emblem

- General notes on renewing model badges and brand emblems ⇒ page 669

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Angled screwdriver - VAS 6416-

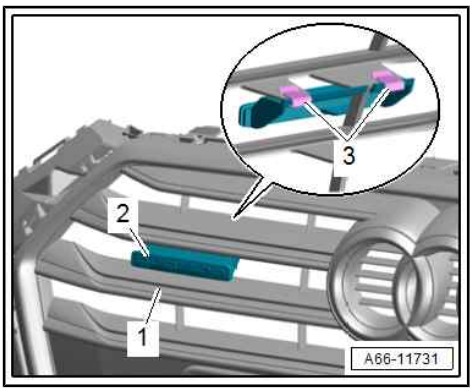


Removing

– Remove lock carrier cover ⇒ page 421 .

– Press off retaining clips -3- using angled screwdriver -VAS 6416- .

– Take quattro emblem -2- out of radiator grille -1-.



Note:

If the emblem cannot be removed as described, the bumper cover (front) must be removed ⇒ page 403 .

Installing

– Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

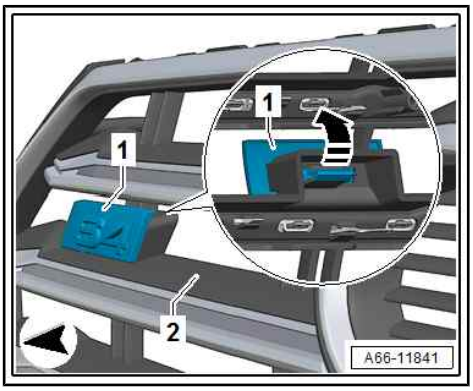
9.6.3 Removing and installing S emblem

- General notes on renewing model badges and brand emblems ⇒ page 669

Removing

– Remove lock carrier cover ⇒ page 421 .

– Release fastener -arrow- and take emblem out of radiator grille -2-.



Installing

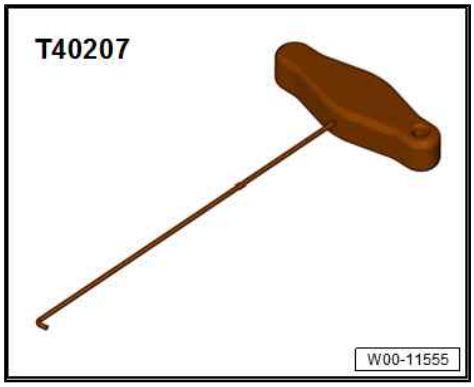
– Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

9.6.4 Removing and installing RS emblem

- General notes on renewing model badges and brand emblems ⇒ page 669

Special tools and workshop equipment required

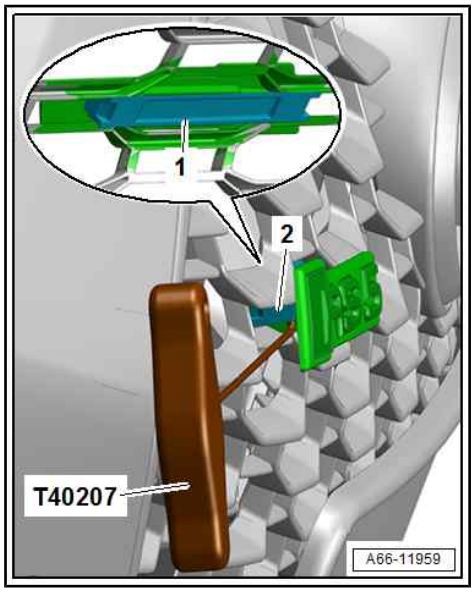
♦ Hook - T40207-



Removing

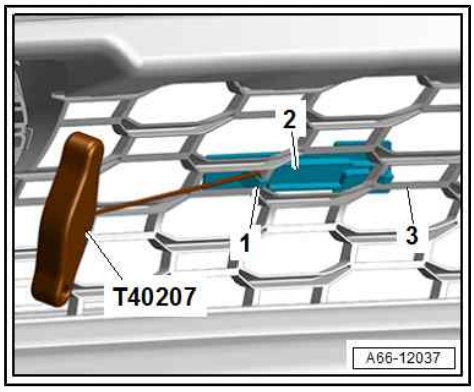
– Remove lock carrier cover ⇒ page 421 .

– Disengage fastener -2- of retaining strip -1- from outside using hook - T40207- and detach.



– Release fastener -1- from inside using hook - T40207- and disengage emblem -2- on other side.

– Detach emblem from radiator grille -3-.



Installing

– Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 Towing bracket

⇒ "10.1 Exploded view - towing bracket", page 675

⇒ "10.2 Removing and installing trailer detector control unit J345 ", page 676

10.1 Exploded view - towing bracket

DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

- **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**
- **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Warning label

- ❑ On body (rear left)

2 - Trailer detector control unit - J345-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 676

3 - Towing bracket release button - E754-

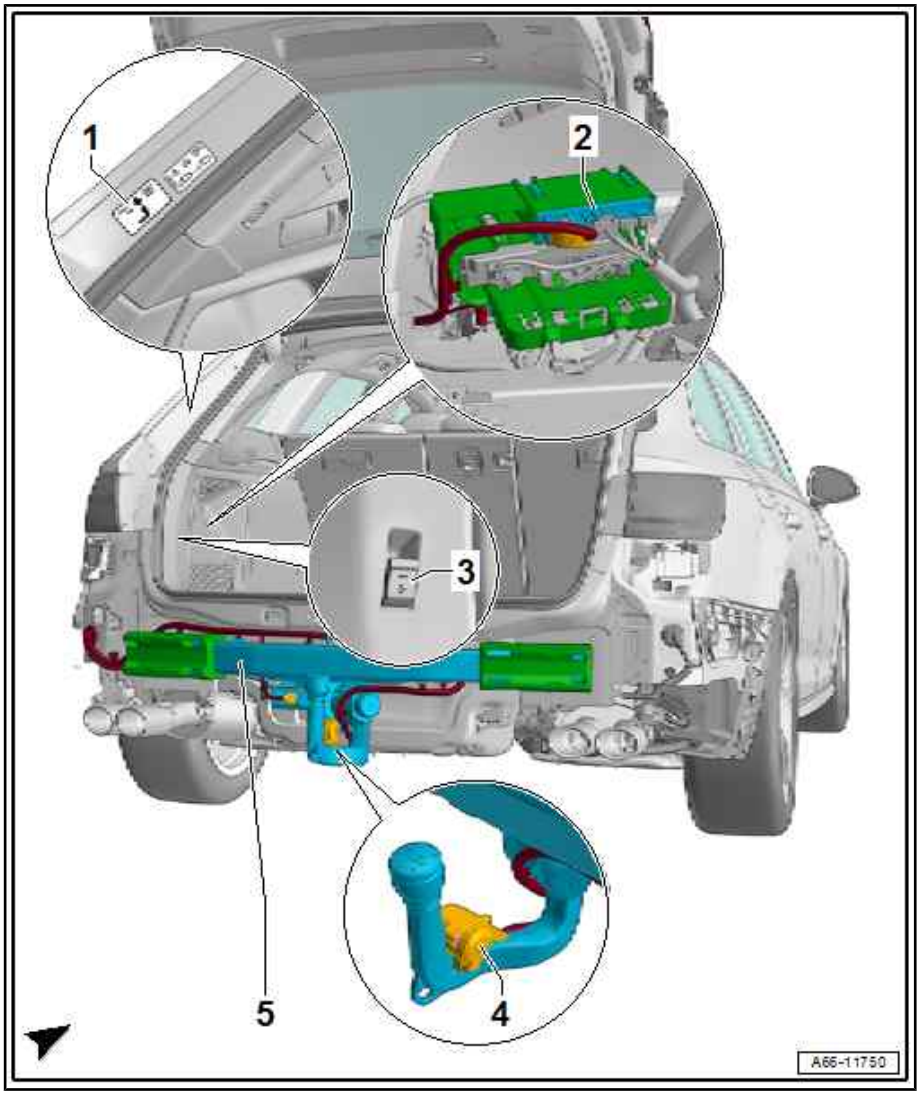
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in luggage compartment

4 - Trailer socket - U10-

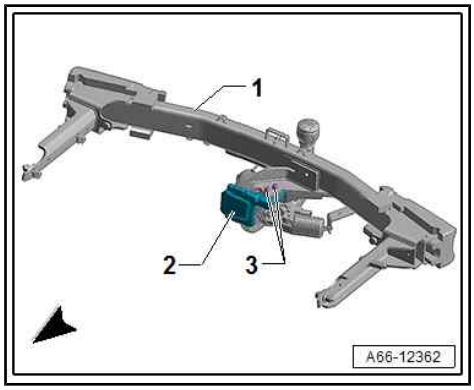
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96 ; Towing bracket; Trailer socket

5 - Towing bracket

- ❑ Can only be removed together with impact bar
- ❑ Depending on equipment version: with trailer articulation angle sensor - G820- ; removing and installing ⇒ page 676
- ❑ Equipment version with protector ⇒ page 676 , g-tron: Renew bolts after removal
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 441



Equipment version with protector at towing bracket (g-tron) - tightening torque



1 - Towing bracket

2 - Protector

3 - Bolts - tightening torque ⇒ page 676

Bolts	Tightening torque
-3- (renew after removal)	30 Nm

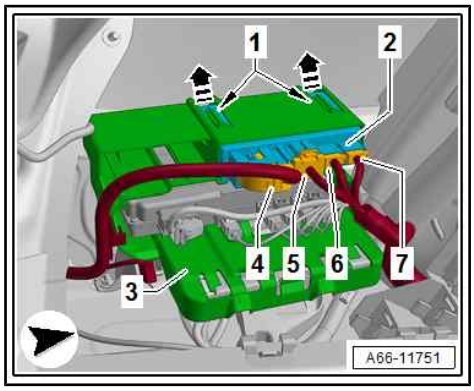
10.2 Removing and installing trailer detector control unit - J345-

Removing

– Open service cover (left-side) ⇒ General body repairs, interior; Rep. gr. 70 ; Luggage compartment trim panels; Exploded view - luggage compartment side trim .

– Unplug electrical connectors -4 ... 7-.

– Release catches -1- -arrows- and take trailer detector control unit - J345- -item 2- out of bracket -3-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- If renewing the trailer detector control unit - J345- , select the function “Replace control unit” for the corresponding control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester, Diagnosis.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10.3 Removing and installing trailer articulation angle sensor - G820-

- Removing and installing ring on trailer articulation angle sensor - G820- ⇒ page 677
- Removing and installing trailer articulation angle sensor - G820- ⇒ page 677

Removing and installing ring on trailer articulation angle sensor - G820-

Removing

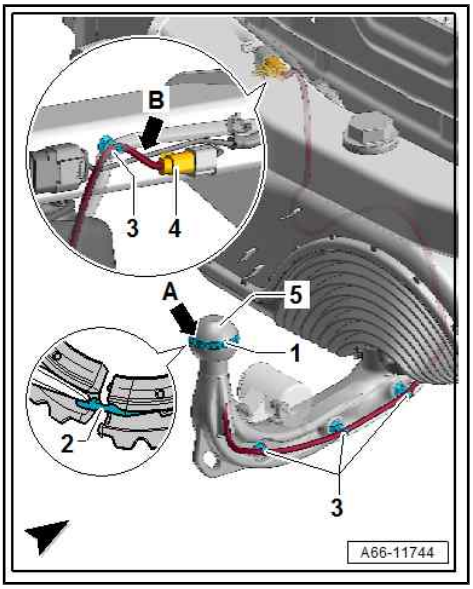
– Press outer cover of ring -1- to one side at separating point -arrow A- and release locking element -2-.

– Open ring at separating point -arrow A- and detach from ball head -5-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- The smaller diameter of the ring must face upwards.
- The ring's locking element must engage audibly.



Removing and installing trailer articulation angle sensor - G820-

Note:

The routing of the wiring harness differs from the illustration. The original routing must be marked during removal and restored during installation.

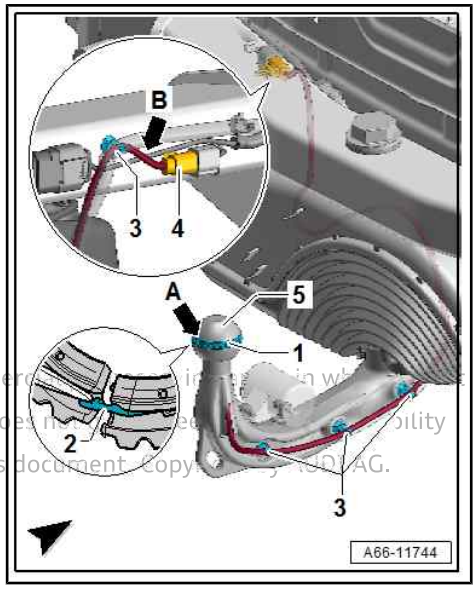
Removing

– Remove ring on trailer articulation angle sensor - G820- ⇒ page 677 .

– Cut through cable tie -3- along electrical connector -4-.

– Unplug electrical connector -4- and move wiring clear in vicinity of housing -arrow B-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Turn trailer articulation angle sensor -1- 90° -arrow A- and pull out of towing bracket ball head -2- -arrow B- together with electrical wiring.

Installing

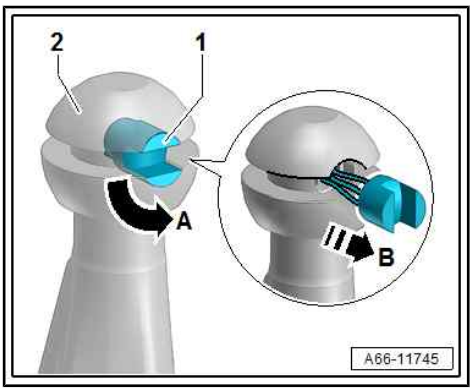
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Trailer articulation angle sensor must be flush with ball head.

– Crimp electrical wires ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97 ; Connectors .

Pin assignment on connector housing of trailer articulation angle sensor - G820-

- Pin 1: red
- Pin 2: black
- Pin 3: yellow



11 Heat shields

⇒ “11.1 Overview of fitting locations - heat shields”, page 678

⇒ “11.2 Exploded view - heat shields”, page 680

⇒ “11.3 Removing and installing heat shield on bonnet”, page 684

⇒ “11.4 Removing and installing heat shield (front) for longitudinal member”, page 685

⇒ “11.5 Removing and installing heat shield (rear) for longitudinal member”, page 686

⇒ “11.6 Removing and installing heat shield for plenum chamber partition panel”, page 686

⇒ “11.7 Removing and installing heat shield (top front) for tunnel”, page 687

⇒ “11.8 Removing and installing heat shield for tunnel (gearbox)”, page 689

⇒ “11.9 Removing and installing heat shield for propshaft”, page 690

⇒ “11.10 Removing and installing heat shield for exhaust system (centre)”, page 690

⇒ “11.11 Removing and installing heat shield for spare wheel well”, page 692

⇒ “11.12 Removing and installing heat shield for rear silencer”, page 692

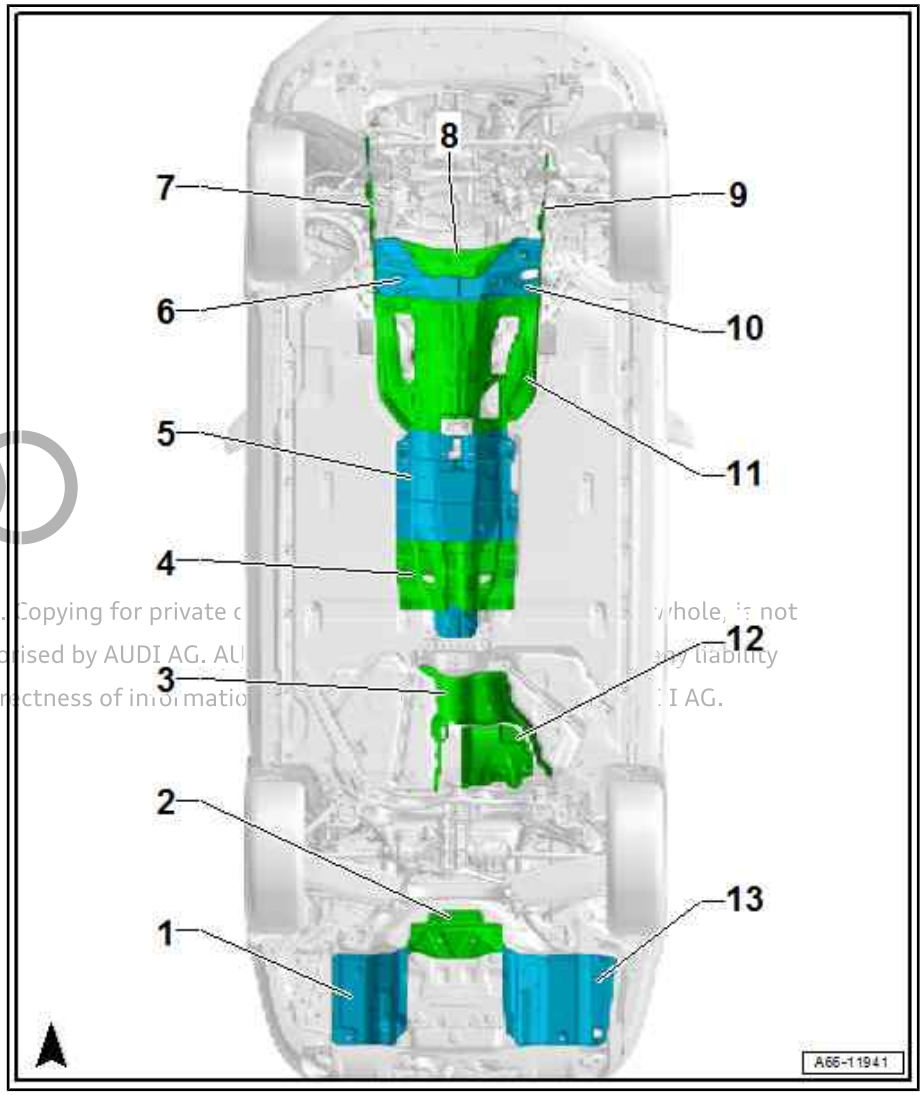
11.1 Overview of fitting locations - heat shields

DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

- **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**
- **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Heat shield

- ❑ For rear silencer
- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 682
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 692

2 - Heat shield

- ❑ For spare wheel well
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 682
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 692

3 - Heat shield

- ❑ For fuel tank
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ Fuel supply system; Rep. gr. 20 ; Fuel tank; Exploded view - fuel tank

4 - Heat shield

- ❑ For propshaft
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 682
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 690

5 - Heat shield

- ❑ For tunnel (gearbox)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 682
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 689

6 - Heat shield

- ❑ For longitudinal member (rear)
- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 680
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 686

7 - Heat shield

- ❑ For longitudinal member (front)
- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 680
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 685

8 - Heat shield

- ❑ For plenum chamber partition panel
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 680
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 686

9 - Heat shield

- ❑ For longitudinal member (front)
- ❑ Left-side
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 680
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 685

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © AUDI AG.

10 - Heat shield

- ❑ For longitudinal member (rear)
- ❑ Left-side
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 680
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 686

11 - Heat shield

- ❑ For tunnel (top front)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 680
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 687

12 - Heat shield

- ❑ For exhaust system (centre)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 682
- ❑ Version with front-wheel drive: removing and installing ⇒ page 690
- ❑ Version with four-wheel drive: removing and installing ⇒ page 691
- ❑ g-tron: removing and installing ⇒ page 691

13 - Heat shield

- ❑ For rear silencer
- ❑ Left-side
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 682
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 692

11.2 Exploded view - heat shields

⇒ “11.2.1 Exploded view - heat shields (front)”, page 680

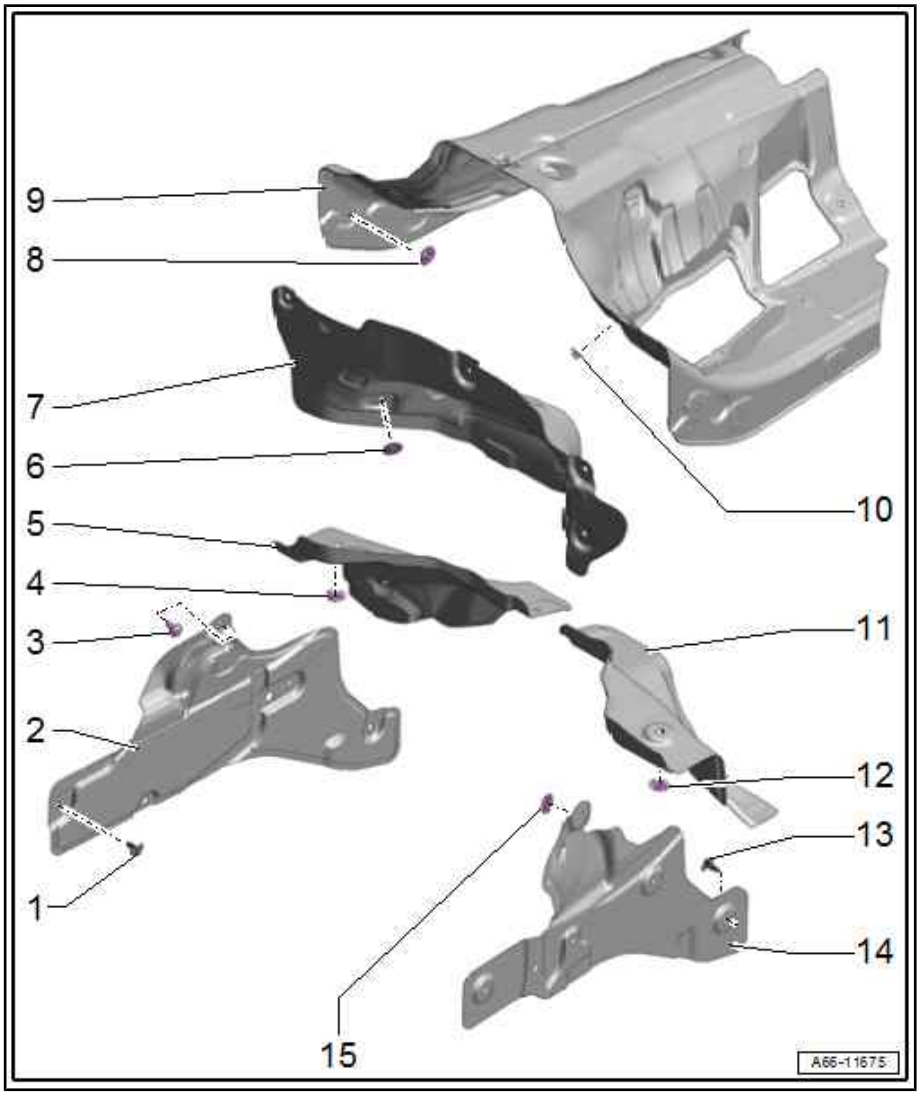
⇒ “11.2.2 Exploded view - heat shields (rear)”, page 682

11.2.1 Exploded view - heat shields (front)

- ♦ Exploded view - heat shields on floor ⇒ page 680
- ♦ Exploded view - heat shield on bonnet ⇒ page 682

Exploded view - heat shields on floor

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Clip
- ❑ 3x

2 - Heat shield
- ❑ For longitudinal member (front)
- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 685

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 8 Nm

4 - Clamping washer
- ❑ 3x

5 - Heat shield
- ❑ For longitudinal member (rear)
- ❑ Right-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 686

6 - Clamping washer/nut
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Nut: 2 Nm

7 - Heat shield
- ❑ For plenum chamber partition panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 686

8 - Clamping washer
- ❑ 6x

9 - Heat shield
- ❑ For tunnel (top front)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 687

10 - Nut
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 2 Nm

11 - Heat shield
- ❑ For longitudinal member (rear)
- ❑ Left-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 686

12 - Clamping washer
- ❑ 2x

13 - Clip
- ❑ 3x

14 - Heat shield
- ❑ For longitudinal member (front)
- ❑ Left-side
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 685

15 - Clamping washer

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

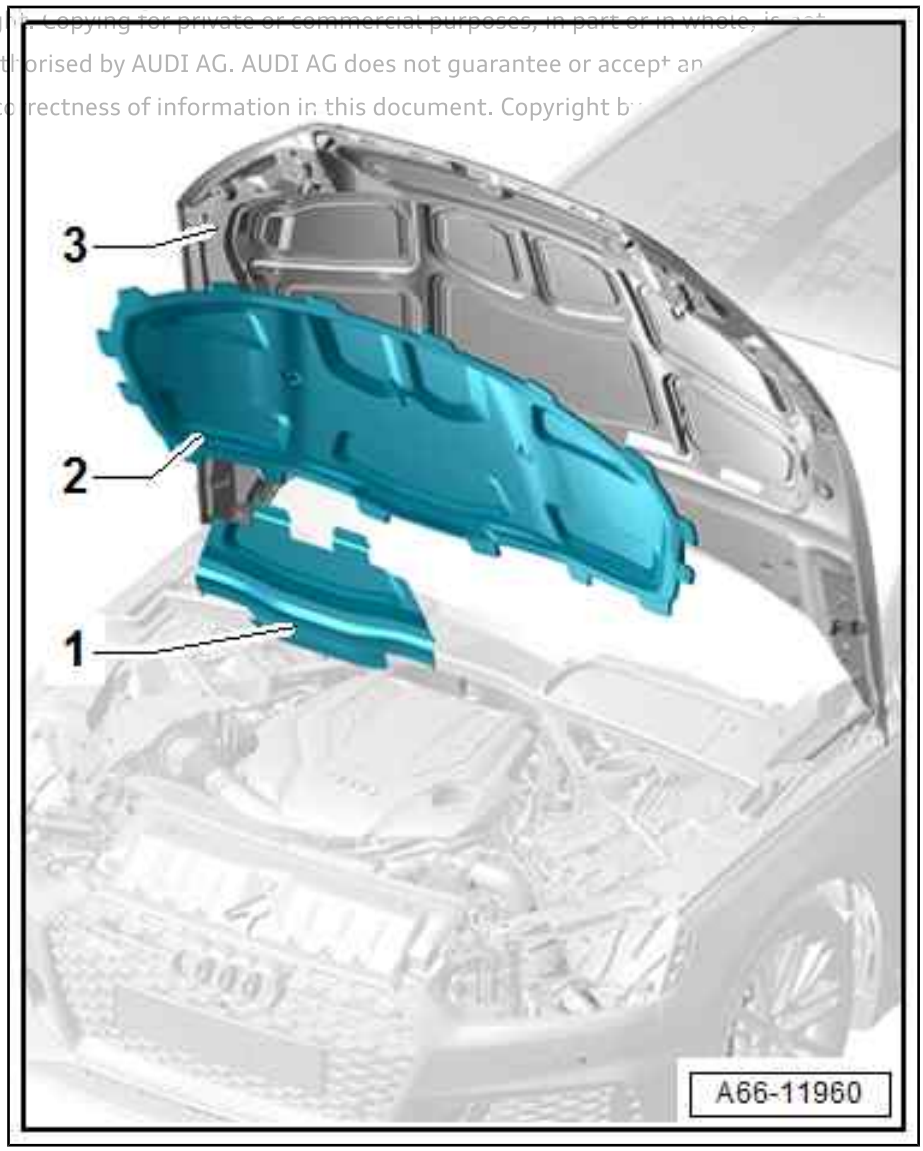
Exploded view - heat shield on bonnet

1 - Heat shield

- ❑ Renew after removing
- ❑ Removing and installing
  ⇒ page 684

2 - Bonnet insulation

3 - Bonnet

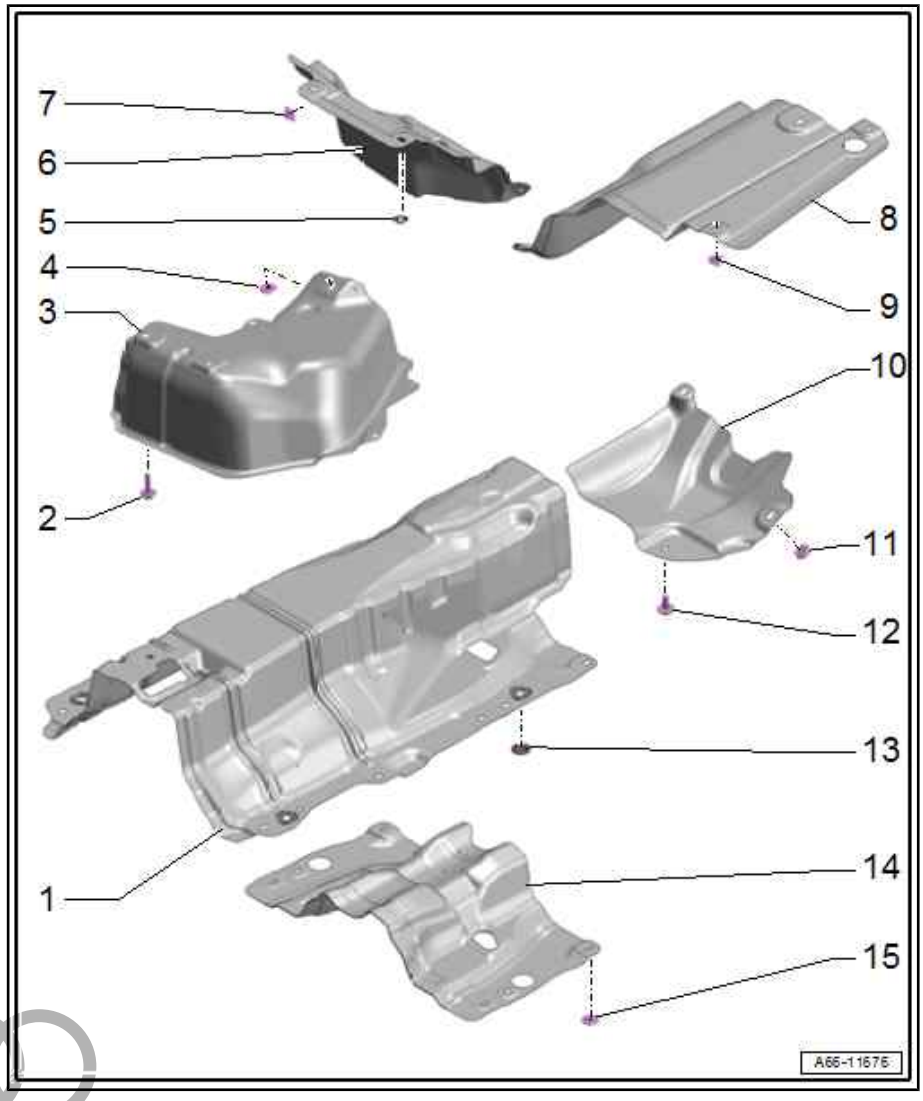


11.2.2 Exploded view - heat shields (rear)

DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

- **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**
- **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**



1 - Heat shield
- ❑ For tunnel (gearbox)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 689

2 - Bolt
- ❑ g-tron: 2x
- ❑ 20 Nm

3 - Heat shield
- ❑ For exhaust system (centre)
- ❑ Version with front-wheel drive: removing and installing ⇒ page 690
- ❑ g-tron: removing and installing ⇒ page 691

4 - Nut
- ❑ 2 Nm

5 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm

6 - Heat shield
- ❑ For spare wheel well
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 692

7 - Nut
- ❑ 2 Nm

8 - Heat shield
- ❑ For rear silencer
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 692

9 - Nut
- ❑ Heat shield (left-side): 4x
- ❑ Heat shield (right-side): 3x
- ❑ 2 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 - Heat shield
- ❑ For exhaust system (centre)
- ❑ Version with four-wheel drive
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 691

11 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torque and tightening sequence ⇒ page 684

12 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque and tightening sequence ⇒ page 684

13 - Clamping washer
- ❑ 4x

14 - Heat shield
- ❑ For propshaft
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 690

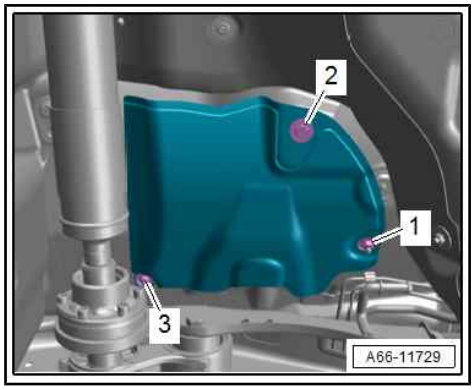
15 - Nut

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 2 Nm

Heat shield, version with four-wheel drive - tightening torque and sequence

– Tighten bolts and nuts in sequence shown.

Bolts/nut	Tightening torque
-1, 3-	2 Nm
-2-	20 Nm

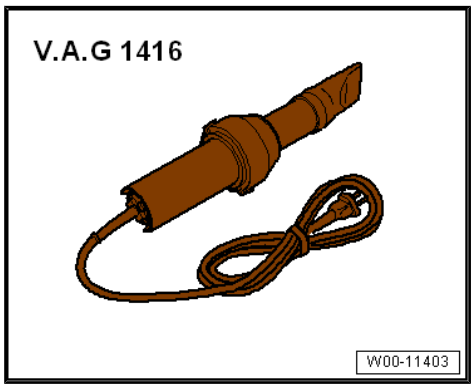


11.3 Removing and installing heat shield on bonnet

- The following components have to be renewed after removal ⇒ page 682 .

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-



♦ Cleaning solution - D 009 401 04-

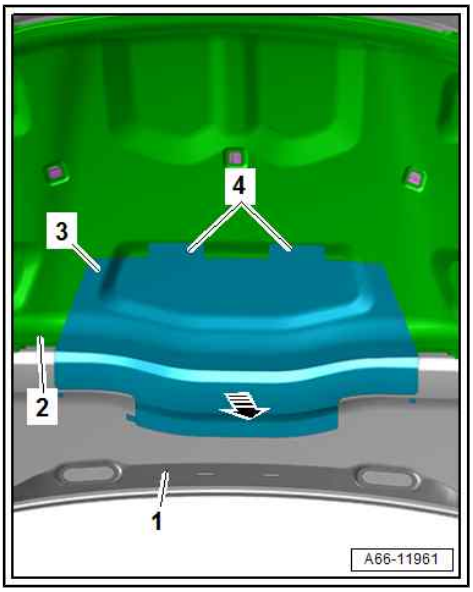
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Carefully heat up heat shield -3- in bonded section using hot air blower - V.A.G 1416-

– Carefully remove heat shield from bonnet -1- -arrow-, taking care not to damage paintwork.

– Pull tabs -4- of heat shield out of insulation -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Vehicle and heat shield must be at room temperature.
- The bonding surfaces must be free of dirt and grease.

– Remove any remaining adhesive tape on vehicle body.

– Clean bonding surface on painted surface with cleaning solution - D 009 401 04- and allow to dry.

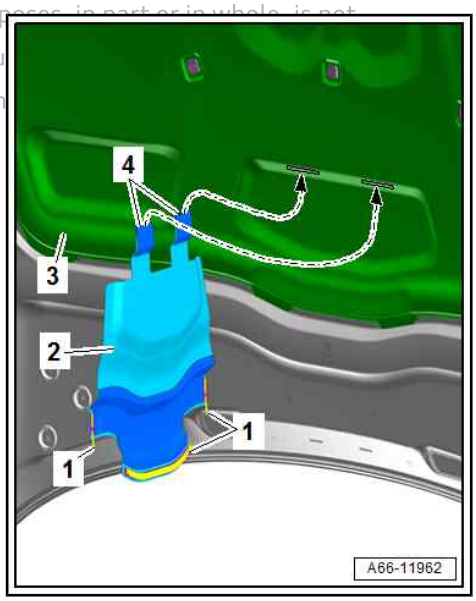
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu with respect to the correctness of information in this documen

– Peel protective film -1- off adhesive tape.

– Insert tabs -4- into recesses in insulation -3- -arrows-.

– Position heat shield -2- on body contour and press on.

- Leave vehicle standing at room temperature for at least 30 minutes.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

11.4 Removing and installing heat shield (front) for longitudinal member

Removing

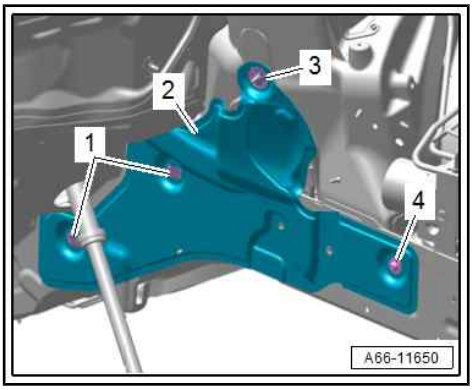
– Remove noise insulation (rear) ⇒ page 631 .

Left side:

– Remove bolt -4-.

– Remove clamping washer -3- and clips -1-.

– Remove heat shield -2-.

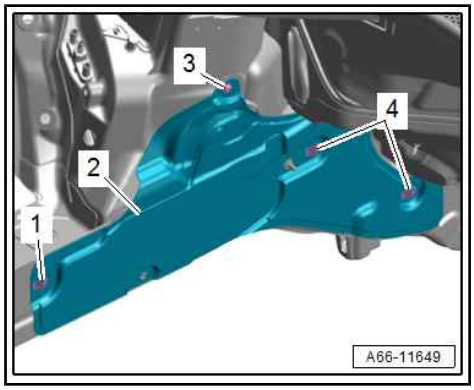


Right side:

– Remove bolt -3-.

– Remove clips -1, 4-.

– Remove heat shield -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “11.2.1 Exploded view - heat shields (front)”, page 680

11.5 Removing and installing heat shield (rear) for longitudinal member

Removing

– Remove plenum chamber partition panel ⇒ page 33 .

– Remove noise insulation (rear) ⇒ page 631 .

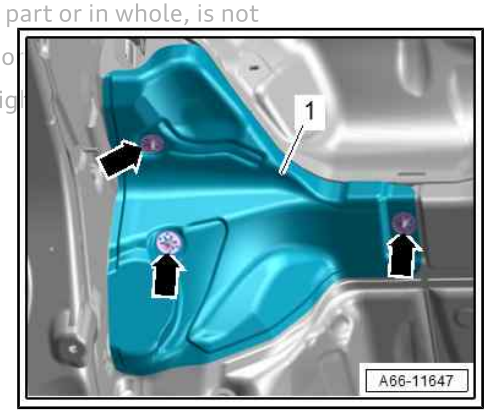
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrig

Right side:

– Remove front silencer/front exhaust pipe ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Exploded view - silencers , ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 26 ; Emission control system; Exploded view - emission control system .

– Remove clamping washers -arrows-.

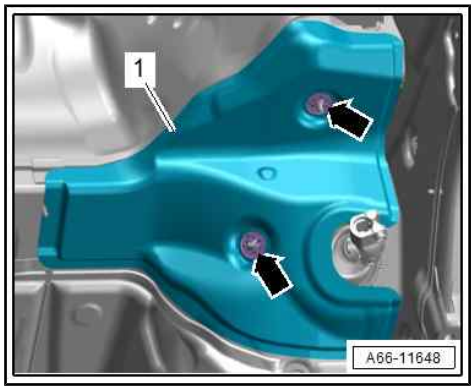
– Remove heat shield -1-.



Left side:

– Remove clamping washers -arrows-.

– Remove heat shield -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “11.2.1 Exploded view - heat shields (front)”, page 680

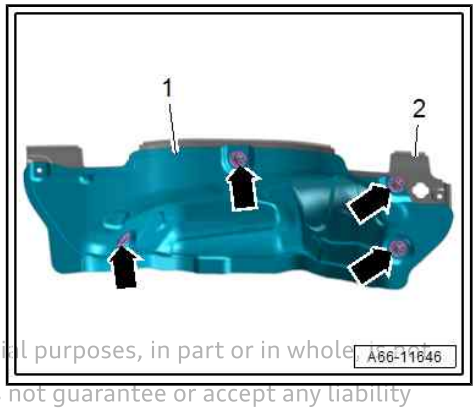
11.6 Removing and installing heat shield for plenum chamber partition panel

Removing

– Remove plenum chamber partition panel ⇒ page 33 .

– Remove clamping washers -arrows- / unscrew nuts.

– Detach heat shield -1- from plenum chamber partition panel -2-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “11.2.1 Exploded view - heat shields (front)”, page 680

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

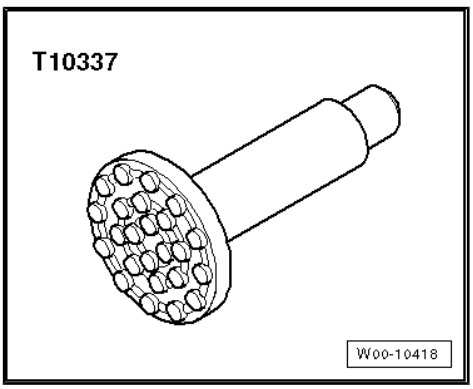
11.7 Removing and installing heat shield (top front) for tunnel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Engine and gearbox jack - 6931-



♦ Gearbox support - T10337-



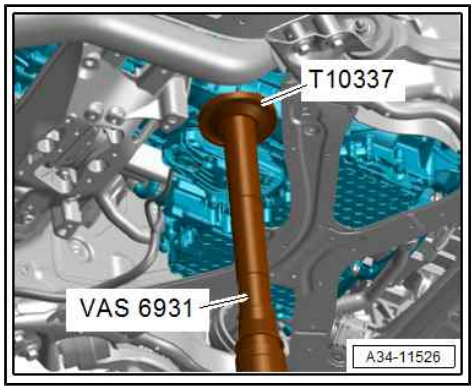
Removing

– Vehicles with TFSI engine: Remove front silencer ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Removing and installing front silencer .

– Vehicles with TDI engine: Remove front exhaust pipe ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Removing and installing front exhaust pipe .

– Remove propshaft ⇒ Rear final drive; Rep. gr. 39 ; Propshaft; Removing and installing propshaft .

– Fit gearbox support - T10337- onto engine and gearbox jack - VAS 6931- and position underneath gearbox.

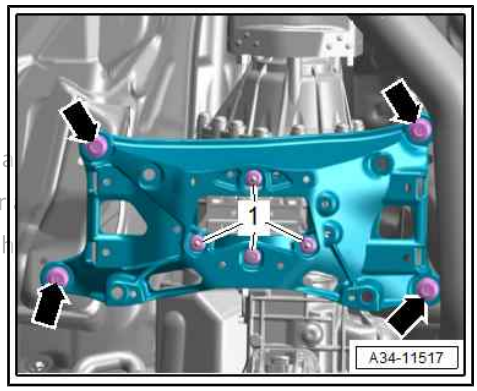


– Remove bolts -arrows- for tunnel cross member.

Note:

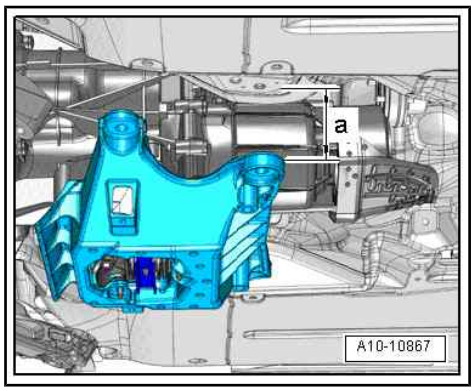
For greater clarity, the gearbox support - T10337- is not shown in the illustration.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrigh



– Lower engine/gearbox assembly using engine and gearbox jack - VAS 6931- by distance -a-.

• Distance -a- = max. 40 mm



– Move electrical wiring harness -4- clear.

– Remove clamping washers -1-.

– Remove nuts -2-.

– Remove heat shield -3-.

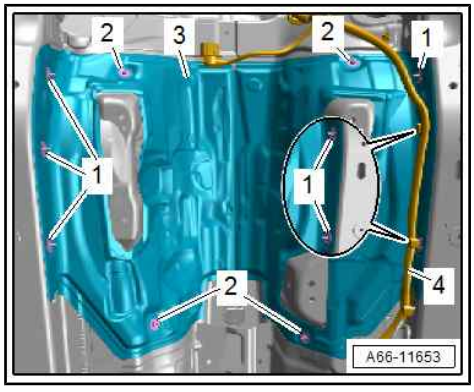
Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “11.2.1 Exploded view - heat shields (front)”, page 680

♦ ⇒ Manual gearbox; Rep. gr. 34 ; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings , ⇒ Dual clutch gearbox; Rep. gr. 34 ; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings , or ⇒ Automatic gearbox; Rep. gr. 37 ; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings



11.8 Removing and installing heat shield for tunnel (gearbox)

Removing

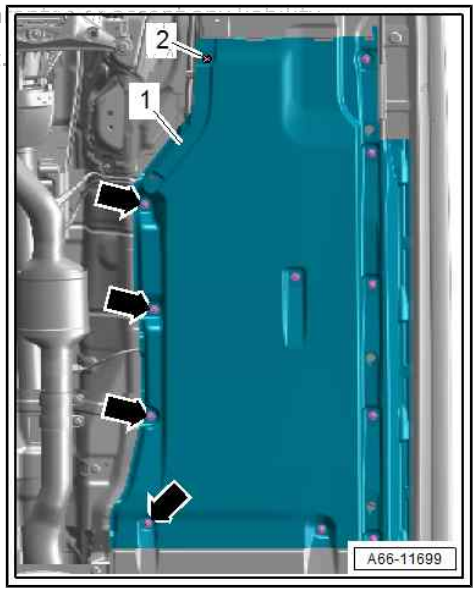
– Vehicles with TFSI engine: Remove front silencer ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Removing and installing front silencer .

– Vehicles with TDI engine: Remove front exhaust pipe ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Removing and installing front exhaust pipe .

– Remove propshaft ⇒ Rear final drive; Rep. gr. 39 ; Propshaft; Removing and installing propshaft .

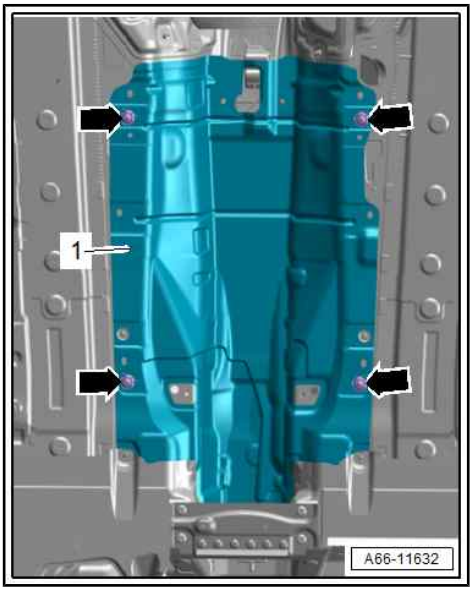
– Remove nuts -arrows- and bolt -2- for underbody trim -1- in vicinity of heat shield.

Copyright AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



– Remove clamping washers -arrows-.

– Remove heat shield -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “11.2.2 Exploded view - heat shields (rear)”, page 682

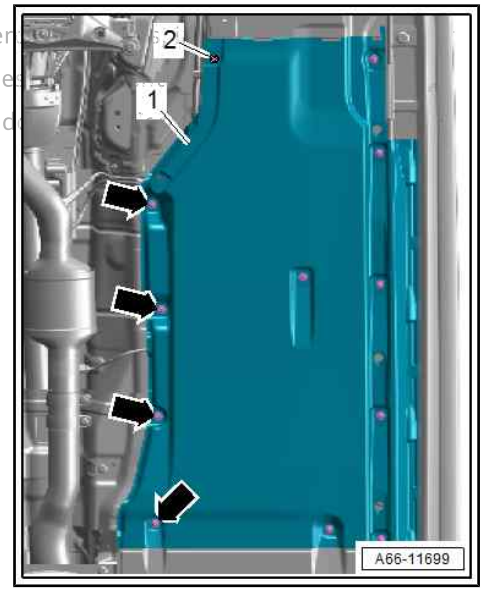
11.9 Removing and installing heat shield for propshaft

Removing

– Remove nuts -arrows- and bolt -2- for underbody trim -1- in vicinity of heat shield.

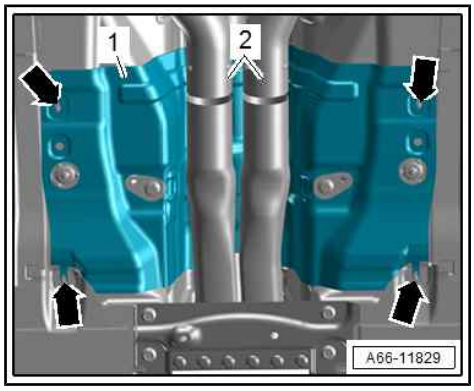
– Remove nuts -arrows-.

– Remove clamp on exhaust system ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Exploded view - silencers , ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 26 ; Emission control system; Exploded view - emission control system .



– Move heat shield -1- clear at studs -arrows-.

– Take out heat shield, guiding it out past exhaust system -2- towards front.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “11.2.2 Exploded view - heat shields (rear)”, page 682

11.10 Removing and installing heat shield for exhaust system (centre)

⇒ “11.10.1 Removing and installing heat shield for exhaust system (centre) - version with front-wheel drive”, page 690

⇒ “11.10.2 Removing and installing heat shield for exhaust system (centre) - version with four-wheel drive”, page 691

⇒ “11.10.3 Removing and installing heat shield for exhaust system (centre) - g-tron”, page 691

11.10.1 Removing and installing heat shield for exhaust system (centre) - version with front-wheel drive

Removing

– Remove exhaust system (rear) ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Exploded view - silencers .

– Remove underbody trim (rear left) ⇒ page 639 .

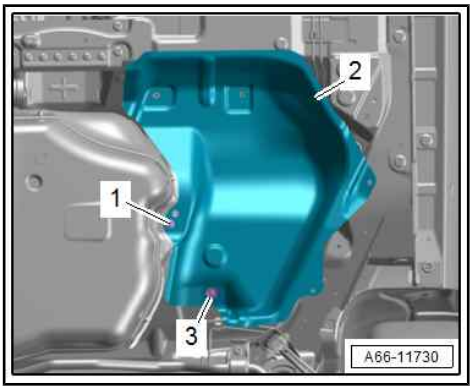
– Remove nut -3- and bolt -1-.
– Detach heat shield -2-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “11.2.2 Exploded view - heat shields (rear)”, page 682



11.10.2 Removing and installing heat shield for exhaust system (centre) - version with four-wheel drive

Removing

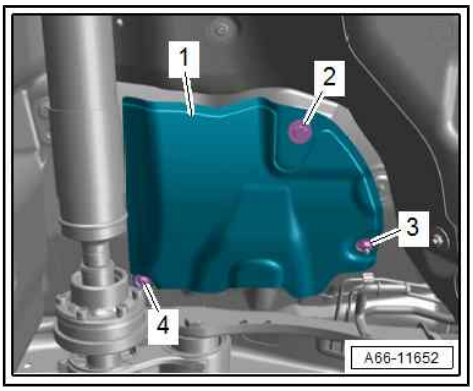
– Remove exhaust system (rear) ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Exploded view - silencers .
– Unscrew nuts -3, 4- and bolt -2-.
– Detach heat shield -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ Fig. ““Heat shield, version with four-wheel drive - tightening torque and sequence”“ , page 684



11.10.3 Removing and installing heat shield for exhaust system (centre) - g-tron

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

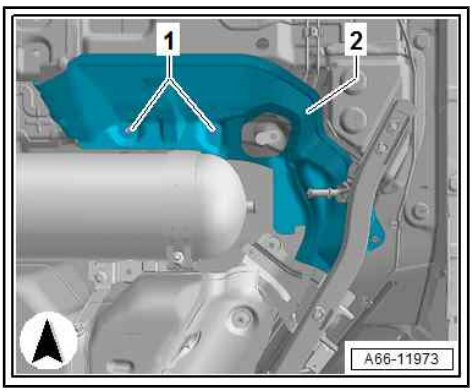
– Remove exhaust system (rear) ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Exploded view - silencers .
– Remove underbody trim (rear left) ⇒ page 639 .
– Remove natural gas fuel tanks ⇒ Fuel supply system - g-tron; Rep. gr. 20 ; Fuel tanks; Exploded view - fuel tanks .
– Remove bolts -1-.
– Detach heat shield -2-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ “11.2.2 Exploded view - heat shields (rear)”, page 682



11.11 Removing and installing heat shield for spare wheel well

Removing

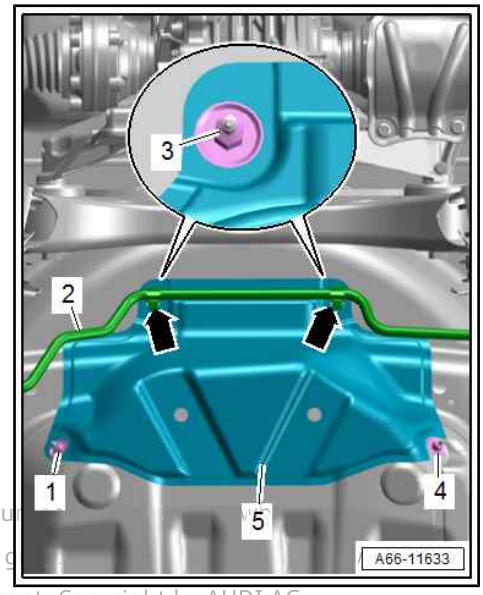
– Vehicles with diagonal struts: Remove diagonal struts ⇒ page 642 .

– Remove nuts -1, 4-.

– Vehicles with TDI engine: Move wiring -2- clear -arrows-.

– Vehicles with TFSI engine: Remove nuts -3-.

– Detach heat shield -5-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ “11.2.2 Exploded view - heat shields (rear)”, page 682

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not g
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

11.12 Removing and installing heat shield for rear silencer

DANGER

Damaged natural gas fuel tanks constitute an explosion risk - risk of death!

– **If components at the rear and/or rear side of the vehicle (e.g. bumper cover, rear lid, underbody trim, longitudinal member, rear cross panel, etc.) are removed due to accident damage, the natural gas fuel tanks must be checked for damage.**

– **Carry out assessment of damage to fuel tanks ⇒ Natural gas engines - General information; Rep. gr. 20 ; Assessing damage to fuel tanks .**

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Engine and gearbox jack - 6931-

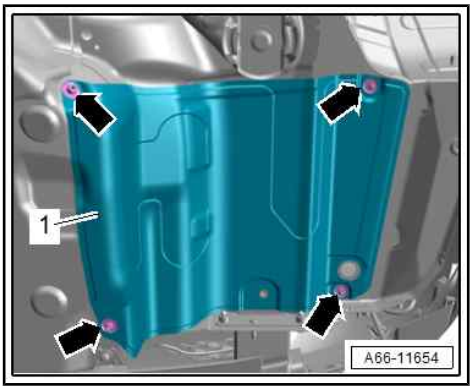


Removing

– Unfasten mounting for rear silencer and lower it slightly with engine and gearbox jack - 6931- ⇒ Engine; Rep. gr. 26 ; Exhaust pipes/silencers; Exploded view - silencers .

– Remove nuts -arrows-.

– Detach heat shield -1-.



Note:

g-tron: Attachment points for heat shield (left-side) are different from those shown in the illustration above.

- Heat shield (left-side): 4 nuts
- Heat shield (right-side): 3 nuts

Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Tightening torques

- ⇒ “11.2.2 Exploded view - heat shields (rear)”, page 682

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.